MF851Cdw

User's Guide

USRMB-1327-00 2026-08 en

Copyright CANON INC. 2026

Contents

Introduction 2

Using User's Guide 3

Screen Layout of User's Guide 4

Viewing User's Guide 8

Manuals and Their Contents 10

Notice 11

About the Machine 17

Parts and Their Functions 19

Front Side 20

Back Side 24

Interior 25

2-Sided Single Pass Feeder 26

Multi-Purpose Tray 28

Paper Drawer 29

Control Panel 30

Turning ON the Machine 32

Turning OFF the Machine 33

Placing Originals and Loading Paper 34

Placing Originals 35

Loading Paper 40

Basic Paper Loading Method 41

Loading Envelopes 49

Loading Preprinted Paper 52

Specifying Paper Size and Type 55

Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer 56

Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray 59

Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray 62

Fixing the Paper Size and Type to Use with the Multi-Purpose Tray 65

Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper) 67

Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function 68

Main Unit Maintenance 69

Regular Cleaning 71

Cleaning the Exterior 72

Cleaning the Platen Glass 73

Cleaning the Feeder 75

Replacing the Toner Cartridge 78

Replacing the Waste Toner Container 83

Relocating the Machine 86

Replacement Parts 88

Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables 92

Clearing Paper Jams 94

Paper Jams in the Feeder ... 97
Paper Jams inside the Machine or in the Fixing Unit ... 99
Paper Jams in a Paper Source ... 103
Options ... 107
Optional Equipment ... 108
Cassette Module-AL ... 109
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA ... 110
ADF Access Handle-A ... 111
Hardware Specifications ... 112
Main Unit ... 113
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder ... 116
Available Paper ... 118
Cassette Module-AL ... 126
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA ... 127

Setting Up ... 129

Preparations Required Before Use ... 130
Preventing Unauthorized Access ... 131
Setting up Using the Setup Guide ... 133
Logging in as an Administrator ... 142
Setting the Date/Time ... 144
Setting up the Network Environment ... 146
Canceling the Network Setting Lock ... 149
Selecting the Network Connection Method ... 150
Connecting to a Wired LAN ... 152
Connecting to a Wireless LAN ... 153
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS Push Button Mode ... 155
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS PIN Code Mode ... 156
Setting Up Connection by Selecting a Wireless Router ... 157
Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings ... 158
Checking the SSID and Network Key ... 159
Setting an IP Address ... 160
Setting an IPv4 Address ... 161
Setting an IPv6 Address ... 163
Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line ... 166
Adapting to the Network Environment ... 167
Making Ethernet Settings ... 168
Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network ... 170
Making DNS Settings ... 171
Making SMB Settings ... 176
Making WINS Settings ... 178
Registering the LDAP Server ... 179
Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP ... 183
Setting Static Routing ... 187
Other Network Settings ... 189
Configuring System Data Communication ... 191

Installing Drivers ... 194
Fax Line Settings ... 195
Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication ... 197
Using a Cloud Mail Server with OAuth 2.0 ... 202
Connecting to the Other Devices ... 206

Basic Operations ... 209

Using the Touch Panel Display ... 211
Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display ... 212
Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen ... 215
Timeline Display Specifications ... 218
Items Displayed in the Timeline ... 220
Basic Operation of the Touch Panel Display ... 223
Entering Characters ... 228
Logging into the Machine ... 230
List of Items That Can Be Personalized ... 232
Customizing the Touch Panel Display ... 234
Customizing the <Home> Screen ... 237
Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function ... 240
Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions ... 242
Customizing the Basic Features Screen ... 245
Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen ... 247
Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons ... 248
Switching the Displayed Language ... 252
Registering Shortcuts for Frequently Used Settings/Registered Items ... 254
Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions ... 255
Canceling Send/Print Jobs ... 258
Setting Sounds ... 259
Entering Sleep Mode ... 263
Registering Destinations ... 265
About the Address Books of the Machine ... 267
Registering Destinations in the Address Book ... 270
Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group ... 280
Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book ... 283
Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button ... 285
Registering a Group in a One-Touch Button ... 287
Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons ... 288

Copying ... 290

Copy Basic Features Screen ... 292
Basic Copy Operations ... 294
Canceling Copying ... 305
Enhancing and Adjusting Copy Quality ... 307
Selecting the Type of Original for Copying ... 308
Adjusting Sharpness for Copying (Sharpness) ... 309

Erasing Dark Borders When Copying (Erase Frame) ... 310
Adjusting the Color ... 312
One Touch Color Mode ... 314
Copying Efficiently ... 316
Copying Multiple Originals onto One Sheet (N on 1) ... 317
Copying Separately Scanned Originals Together (Job Build) ... 319
Checking the Copy Results ... 321
Copying Immediately by Interrupting Other Jobs ... 323
Functions Useful for Making and Managing Material ... 324
Finishing by Collating/Grouping ... 325
Useful Copy Functions ... 327
Shifting the Image ... 328
Notifying You of the Completion of Copying by E-Mail ... 331
Making ID Card Copies ... 333
Skipping Blank Pages When Printing ... 335
Copying while Removing a Specified Color ... 337
Reducing Copying Operations ... 339
Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings) ... 340
Recalling Settings ... 341

Faxing ... 343

Fax Basic Features Screen ... 345
Basic Operations for Sending Faxes ... 347
Canceling Sending Faxes ... 360
Receiving Faxes ... 362
Sending Faxes Successfully ... 365
Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview) ... 366
Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send) ... 368
Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending) ... 370
Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending ... 372
Simplifying Sending Operations ... 374
Sending Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build) ... 375
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings) ... 377
Useful Functions When Sending ... 379
Sending at a Specified Time ... 380
Saving a Copy of a Sent Document ... 382
Various Receiving Methods ... 385
Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception) ... 386
Keeping Received Documents Private ... 389
Forwarding Received Documents Automatically ... 391
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents ... 394
Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax) ... 397
Sending PC Faxes ... 398
Using Internet Faxes (I-Fax) ... 402

Sending I-Faxes ... 403
Receiving I-Faxes ... 411
Sending and Receiving Faxes via the Machine (Remote Fax) ... 412

Printing ... 414

Printing From a Computer ... 416
Canceling Printing ... 419
Checking the Printing Status and History ... 421
Printing from an External Network (IPP Printing) ... 423
Advanced Functions for Printing ... 425
Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine ... 426
Printing Held Documents Automatically When Logging In ... 428
Print Screen ... 429
Printing at a Specified Time (Scheduled Printing) ... 432
Various Printing Methods ... 434
Directly Printing Files without Opening Them ... 435
Printing Using a Virtual Printer ... 437
Printing From Memory Media (Media Print) ... 440
Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print) ... 441
Configuring the Universal Print User Settings ... 446
Printing Registered Documents (Print Template) ... 448

Scanning ... 451

Scan Basic Features Screen ... 453
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals ... 456
Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents ... 475
Scanning Clearly ... 477
Adjusting Image Quality ... 478
Adjusting Density ... 479
Adjusting Sharpness When Scanning (Sharpness) ... 480
Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame) ... 481
Scanning Efficiently ... 483
Sending/Saving Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build) ... 484
Creating Another Folder in a Destination Folder before Scanning ... 486
Useful Scanning Functions ... 488
Skipping Blank Pages When Scanning ... 490
Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview) ... 492
Sending/Saving at a Specified Time ... 494
Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending/Saving ... 496
Scanning with the OCR Function ... 498
Enhancing the Security of Electronic Files ... 502
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/Saving (Previous Settings) ... 507
Setting a File Name ... 509
Specifying E-Mail Settings ... 511

Scanning while Removing a Specified Color ... 513
Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) (Windows) ... 515
Using Color Network ScanGear 2 ... 516
Scanning Originals from an Application ... 518
Using WSD ... 520
Scanning Originals Using WSD (WSD Scan) ... 522

Using Storage Space ... 526

Working with Other Devices ... 528
Saving Documents in Other Devices ... 529
Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices ... 530
Printing Files in Other Devices ... 533
Working with Data in Memory Media ... 535
Saving Documents in Memory Media ... 537
Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media ... 539
Printing Files in Memory Media ... 543
Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save ... 545
Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files ... 548
Storage Locations and File Formats for Each Mode ... 552

Linking with Mobile Devices ... 554

Connecting with Mobile Devices ... 555
Connecting Directly ... 556
Utilizing the Machine through Applications ... 559
Using AirPrint ... 562
Printing with AirPrint ... 567
Scanning with AirPrint ... 570
Faxing with AirPrint ... 572
If AirPrint Cannot Be Used ... 574
Printing with Default Print Service (Android) ... 575

Managing the Machine ... 578

Applying a Security Policy to the Machine ... 580
Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings ... 581
Configuring the Security Policy Settings ... 583
Security Policy Setting Items ... 585
Managing Users ... 591
Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings ... 594
Registering User Information in the Local Device ... 597
Configuring the IPP Print User Settings ... 602
Importing/Exporting User Data ... 604
Adding and Editing User Information in a CSV File ... 608
Registering Server Information ... 613
Configuring the Authentication Functions ... 621
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer ... 628

Using Other Convenient Personal Authentication Management Functions ... 629
Setting the Department ID Management ... 630
Changing the System Manager ID and PIN ... 631
Configuring the Department ID Management Settings ... 633
Using Department IDs to Manage Printing or Remote Scanning via Computer ... 636
Configuring Personal Folders ... 637
Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM ... 640
Deleting User Setting Information ... 641
Configuring the Network Security Settings ... 643
Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls ... 645
Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings ... 646
Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings ... 649
Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line ... 650
Setting a Proxy ... 654
Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS ... 656
Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication ... 659
Configuring the IPSec Settings ... 662
Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings ... 667
Restricting the Machine's Functions ... 670
Restricting Access to Address Book and Sending Functions ... 671
Restricting Use of the Address Book ... 672
Limiting Available Destinations ... 675
Restricting the Fax Sending Functions ... 677
Restricting Printing from a Computer ... 679
Restricting the Use of Memory Media ... 682
Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files ... 683
Generating a Device Signature Certificate ... 684
Managing the Machine from a Computer (Remote UI) ... 685
Starting the Remote UI ... 687
Checking the Status and Logs ... 692
Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine ... 696
Registering Destinations via the Remote UI ... 697
Sharing an Address List with Specific Users ... 701
Registering User Groups ... 703
Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication ... 705
Configuring the Expiration Check Method for Received Certificates ... 709
Generating a Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) ... 711
Retrieving/Updating a Certificate from an SCEP Server ... 714
Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server ... 720
Managing Stored Files ... 721
Managing the Logs ... 724
Importing/Exporting the Setting Data ... 729
Importing/Exporting All Settings ... 732
Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually ... 736
Address Book Items ... 739
Updating the Firmware ... 744

Updating the Firmware (Distribution) ... 746
Setting Scheduled Updates ... 749
Displaying Messages from the Administrator ... 751
Configuring the Visual Message Function ... 753
Setting the Website for Purchasing Consumables ... 758
Sending E-Mail Notification When an Error Occurs ... 760
Remote Operation of the Control Panel ... 762
Installing System Options ... 765
Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers ... 767
Starting Setting Synchronization ... 770
Switching the Machines to Synchronize ... 773
Managing Data in the Storage ... 774
Initializing All Data/Settings ... 775
Using TPM ... 777
Checking the Number of Pages for Copy/Print/Fax/Scan ... 781
Printing Reports and Lists ... 782
Checking the Options and Functions Installed in the Machine ... 793
Paper Type Management Settings ... 794

Settings/Registration ... 801

<Preferences> ... 804
<Paper Settings> ... 806
<Display Settings> ... 809
<Timer/Energy Settings> ... 818
<Network> ... 825
<TCP/IP Settings> ... 835
<IPv4 Settings> ... 849
<IPv6 Settings> ... 851
<DNS Settings> ... 854
<Firewall Settings> ... 857
<IPv4 Address Filter> ... 858
<IPv6 Address Filter> ... 860
<MAC Address Filter> ... 862
<Wireless LAN> ... 863
<Direct Connection Settings> ... 865
<Sub Line Settings> ... 869
<Firewall Settings> ... 872
<Settings for System Data Communication> ... 875
<External Interface> ... 877
<Accessibility> ... 879
<Adjustment/Maintenance> ... 881
<Adjust Image Quality> ... 882
<Special Processing> ... 886
<Adjust Action> ... 891
<Maintenance> ... 892

<Check Maintenance Method> ... 894
<Initialize After Replacing Parts> ... 897
<Output Consumables Report> ... 898
<Function Settings> ... 899
<Common> ... 901
<Paper Feed Settings> ... 903
<Paper Output Settings> ... 905
<Print Settings> ... 906
<Default Settings for Output Report> ... 910
<Scan Settings> ... 911
<Generate File> ... 915
<Set Authentication Method> ... 919
<Copy> ... 921
<Printer> ... 924
Output Report ... 928
Custom Settings ... 929
UFR II ... 932
PCL ... 933
PS ... 935
Imaging ... 937
PDF ... 938
XPS ... 940
Utility ... 941
<Send> ... 942
<Output Report> ... 943
<Common Settings> ... 944
<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ... 956
<Fax Settings> ... 966
<Set Line> ... 975
<Remote Fax Settings> ... 977
<Receive/Forward> ... 978
<Output Report> ... 979
<Common Settings> ... 980
<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox> ... 984
<Fax Settings> ... 989
<Store/Access Files> ... 994
<Common Settings> ... 995
<Scan and Store Settings> ... 996
<Access Stored Files Settings> ... 998
<Network Settings> ... 1000
<Memory Media Settings> ... 1002
<Print> ... 1003
<Set Destination> ... 1008
<Acquire Remote Address Book> ... 1015
<Make Remote Address Book Open> ... 1017
<Management Settings> ... 1018
<User Management> ... 1019
<Authentication Management> ... 1022

<Keyboard Authentication> 1026
<Device Management> 1029
<Manage Personal Settings> 1037
<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status> 1039
<License/Other> 1040
<MEAP Settings> 1045
<Data Management> 1048
<Import/Export> 1050
<Security Settings> 1052
<Authentication/Password Settings> 1055
<Authentication Function Settings> 1056
<Password Settings> 1058
<Encryption Settings> 1063
Volume Settings (Volume Settings) 1065

Adjusting Print Quality 1067

Adjusting Gradation 1069
Adjusting Density 1071
Correcting Color Mismatch 1072
Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity 1073
Making Colors More Vivid 1075
Adjusting the Print Position 1076
Adjusting Image Size 1078
Reducing Toner Used When Color Printing 1079

Troubleshooting 1081

If the Machine Does Not Operate 1083
Cannot Print 1085
Problems with Printing Results 1086
Problems with Faxes 1099
Problems with Scanning 1101
Problems with the Network 1104
Problems with Security 1108
Other Problems 1109
A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed 1113
A Message Saying to Contact Your Dealer or Service Representative Is Displayed 1114
Countermeasures for Each Message 1116
Countermeasures for Each Error Code 1156
When a Problem Cannot Be Solved 1182

Implementing Security Measures 1184

Various Security Functions 1185

Appendix 1191

Feature Highlights 1192

Operability 1193

Utilizing Personalization 1194

Productivity 1201

Image Quality 1202

Manageability 1203

Building a Dual Network Environment 1205

Reliability 1208

Office Compatibility 1210

The List of System Functions and Items 1211

Home 1212

Copy 1214

Fax 1216

Scan and Send 1218

Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan 1220

Scan and Store 1221

Access Stored Files 1225

Fax/I-Fax Inbox 1229

Print 1231

MEAP 1232

Installing MEAP Applications 1234

Managing MEAP Applications 1237

Managing MEAP Application Licenses 1242

Changing Login Services 1245

Basic Windows Operations 1250

System Specifications 1254

Fax Function 1255

Send Functions 1256

Printer Functions 1258

Management Functions 1261

System Environment 1267

Network Environment 1269

System Options 1271

Introduction

Introduction 2
Using User's Guide 3
Screen Layout of User's Guide 4
Viewing User's Guide 8
Manuals and Their Contents 10
Notice 11

Introduction

ERJ8-000

This chapter describes the instructions on how to use the User's Guide, disclaimers, copyright information, and other important information for customers. Read this chapter as necessary.

■ Manuals for the Machine

This section describes the different manuals you can refer to for information on how to use the User's Guide (this manual) and the machine's functions and operating procedures.



Using User's Guide(P. 3)
Manuals and Their Contents(P. 10)

■ Disclaimers and Copyright

See this section for disclaimers and copyright information.

Notice(P. 11)

Using User's Guide

ERJ8-001

The User's Guide is a manual that can be viewed on your computer or smartphone, etc. This section describes the screen layout of the User's Guide and how to view the User's Guide. It also describes how to make settings for the display of the User's Guide.

■Screen Layout of User's Guide

This section explains the User's Guide screen layout and how to use the buttons on the screen. **Screen Layout of User's Guide(P. 4)**

■Viewing User's Guide

This section describes what you should be familiar to when viewing the User's Guide, including the meanings of the marks used in the User's Guide and how the buttons on the touch panel display and the computer screen are represented in the User's Guide. **Viewing User's Guide(P. 8)**

■Setting the Display of the User's Guide

You can change the character size used in the User's Guide, and switch the screen layout to one that is appropriate to the device on which the User's Guide is displayed.

NOTE

- If you are unable to view the manual in PDF format, download Adobe Acrobat Reader from the Adobe Systems website (https://get.adobe.com/reader/).

How to find the topic you are looking for

Search the contents

- You can find the page you are looking for by selecting the topic from the Contents on the left side of the screen.

Search by keyword

- Perform a search by entering a keyword, such as "fax" or "wireless LAN," and the pages containing the keyword are displayed. You can find the page you are looking for from those results. You can also enter phrases such as "connecting to a network." The keyword search also supports the AND Boolean to search for multiple keywords. For the details of the search screen and how to operate the screen, see **Search(P. 6)** .

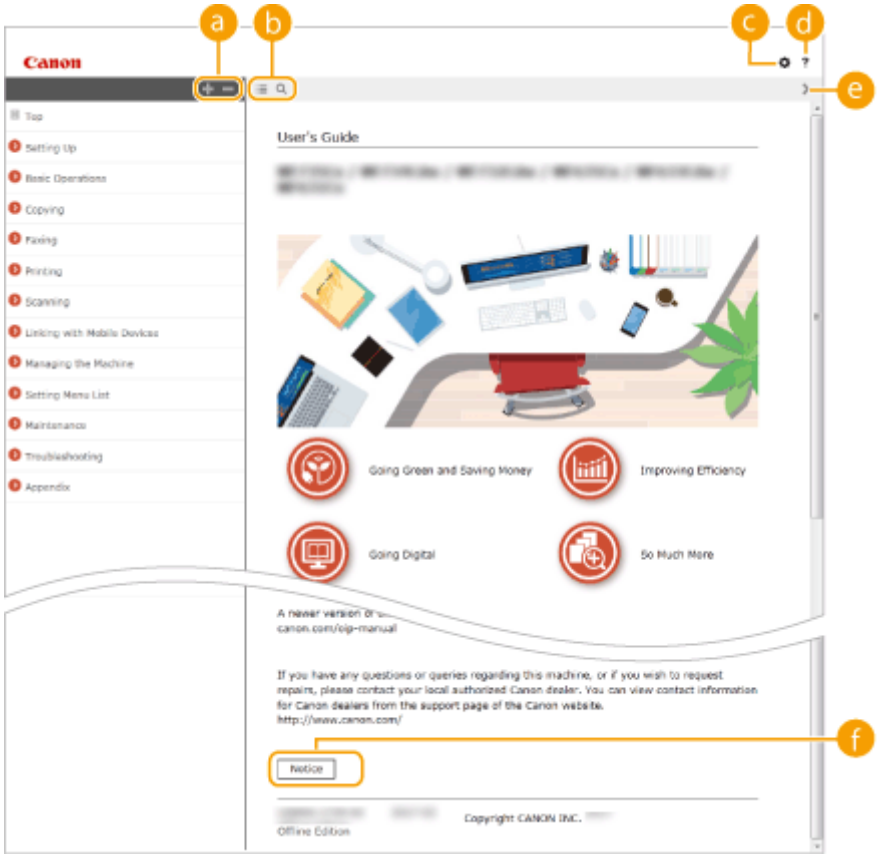
Screen Layout of User's Guide

ERJ8-002

The User's Guide is divided into different screens, and the content of each screen varies.

Top Page

Appears when the User's Guide starts.



a /

Click to display all items underneath chapters. Click to return to the original list.

b /

Click to switch between the table of contents and the search display. When the table of contents is displayed, each click on switches between hiding and showing the display. When the search display is shown, each click on switches between hiding and showing the display.

c

Click to specify settings such as text size, layout, and display method for the User's Guide.

d ?

Click to display information on how to view the User's Guide, how to perform a search, and other information.

e /

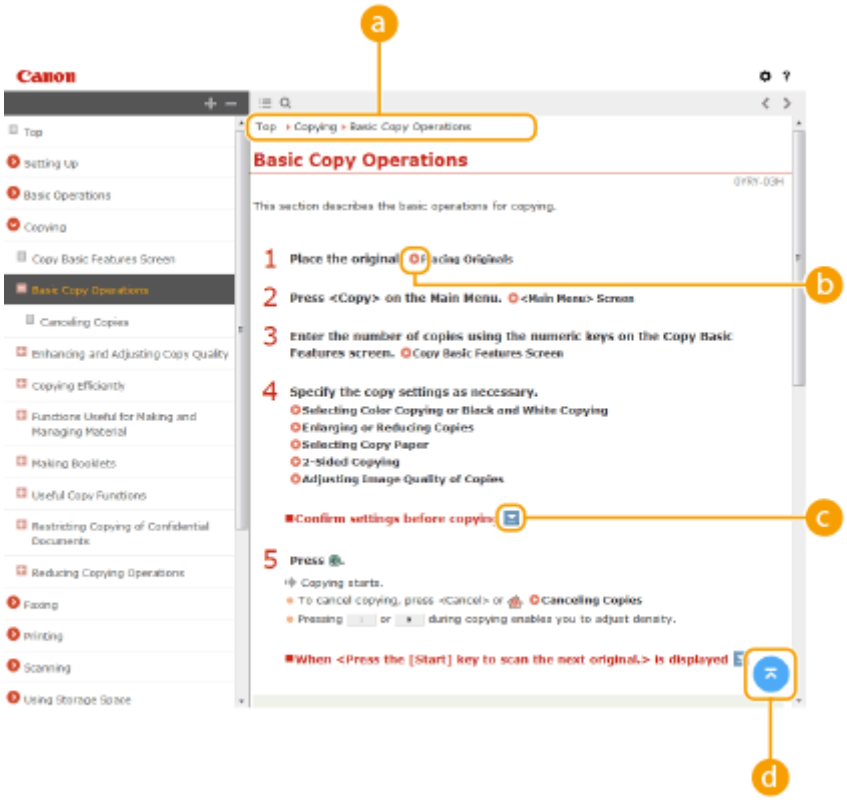
Click to display the previous or following topic.

f [Notice]

Click to view important information you should know when using the machine.

Topic Page

Contains information about how to configure and use the machine.



a Navigation

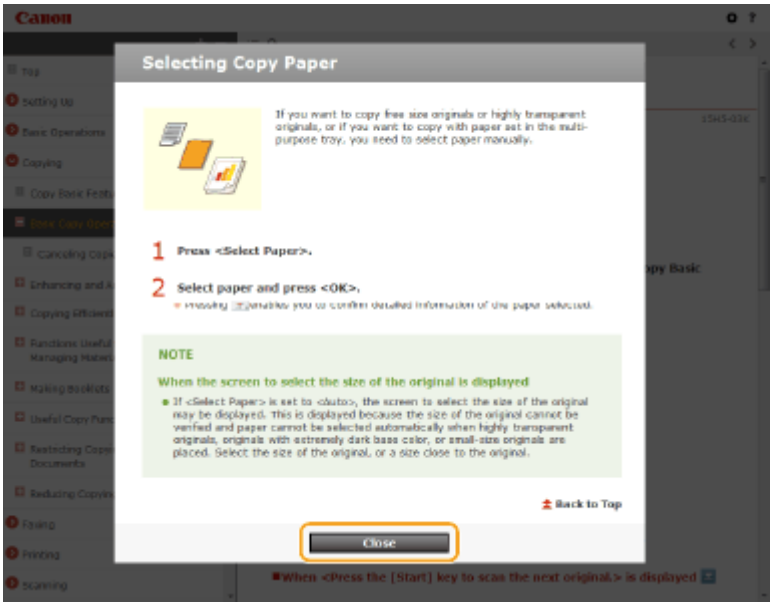
See what chapter topic you are currently viewing.

b

Click to go to the corresponding page. To return to the previous page, click "Back" on your Web browser.

NOTE:

- When you click the icon, the current page may go dark and a pop-up window may appear. To return to the page, click [Close] in the pop-up window.



c /

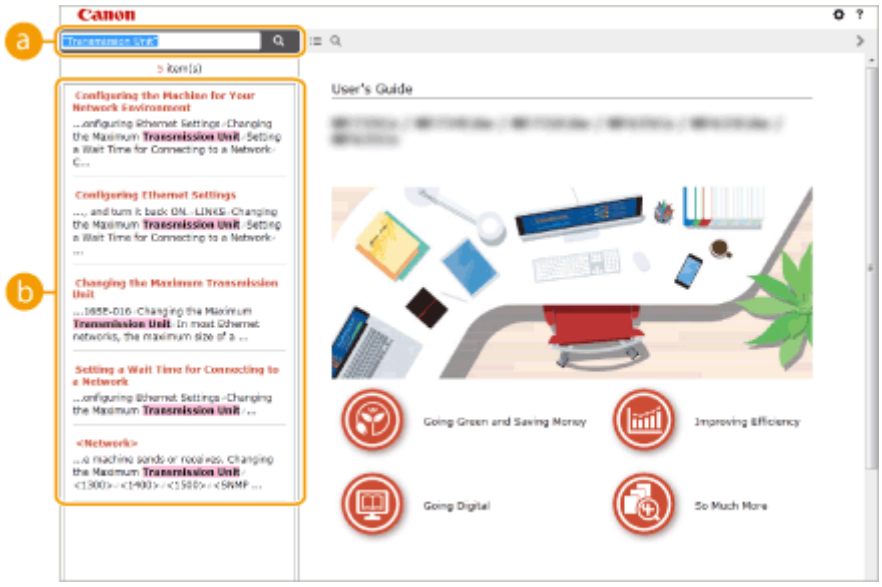
Click to display the hidden detailed descriptions. Click to close the detailed descriptions.

d

Click to return to the page top.

Search

Click to display the search screen. Contains a text box to perform a search by keyword and find the page you are looking for.



a [Enter keyword(s) here]

Enter a keyword or keywords and click to display the search results. You can search for pages containing all the keywords by separating the keywords by a space (blank). Also you can only search for pages containing an exact phrase by enclosing the keywords in double quotation marks.

Search result

Displays the search results of the pages that contain the specified keywords. From the results, locate the page you are looking for and click the topic title of the page.

NOTE:

- The keywords appear in bold in the pages displayed as search results.

Viewing User's Guide

ERJ8-003

This section describes the marks, buttons, screens, and other items used in the User's Guide. The warnings and cautions are also given in the "Important Safety Instructions" included with the machine. See also these instructions.

Marks

Cautions regarding safety, restrictions and cautions regarding the handling of the machine, useful tips, and other information are indicated using the marks below.

WARNING

Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or serious personal injury if not performed correctly. To ensure that you use the machine safely, always observe these warnings.

CAUTION

Indicates a precaution for preventing the risk of personal injury or property damage other than a product fault due to improper use of the machine. To ensure that you use the machine safely, always observe these cautions.

Indicates an operation that must not be performed. Read these items carefully, and make sure not to perform the described operations.

IMPORTANT

Indicates important operational requirements and restrictions that should always be observed when using this machine. Always observe these important items to avoid malfunctions, faults or property damage due to improper machine operation.

NOTE

Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure.

TIPS

Indicates useful functions or tips for using the machine.

Keys and buttons

Buttons displayed on the touch panel display and buttons on the computer screen are indicated as follows.

Type	Example
Keys on the control panel	
Buttons on the touch panel display*	<<Function Settings>> <Cancel> 
Buttons and other text interfaces displayed on the computer display	[Preferences] [OK]

* Operation to touch a button on the touch panel display is indicated as "Press" in the User's Guide.

Screen

Screens used in the User's Guide may differ from the screen display of your machine depending on the model, optional equipment, and version.

NOTE

- Depending on the OS you are using, a portion of the indicated screen content may differ from your computer.
- The screen content for drivers and software may differ due to version upgrades.

Illustrations

Illustrations used in the User's Guide are from "MF851Cdw" unless otherwise specifically noted.



Manuals and Their Contents

ERJ8-005

The following manuals are included with the machine. Refer to them as necessary.

Important Safety Instructions		The content described in this manual is for the prevention of damage to property and injury to users of the machine and others. 
Setup Guide		This manual, viewable using a Web browser, outlines the initial settings on the machine required when the machine is turned on for the first time; and describes how to install the software and driver. It can be viewed from the online manual Website. 
Using the Setup Guide		This manual describes the initial setup procedures required when the machine is turned on for the first time. If you view this manual with a mobile device like a smartphone, you can perform the initial setup by comparing the display on the machine and the screenshots on this manual.
User's Guide (This Manual)		This manual describes all the functions of the machine in a manual that is viewed using a Web browser. You can browse information by category or enter a keyword to search for pages on a specific topic. **Using User's Guide(P. 3)**
Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer)		This manual, viewable using a Web browser, describes how to use the PS/PCL/UFR II printer. It can be viewed from the online manual Web site.
ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM		This manual, viewable using a Web browser, describes how to use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. It can be viewed from the online manual Web site.

Notice

ERJ8-006

■IPv6 Ready Logo

The protocol stack included in this product has obtained the IPv6 Ready Logo Phase-2 established by the IPv6 Forum.

■Product Information for the requirement of COMMISSION REGULATION(EU) 2023/826

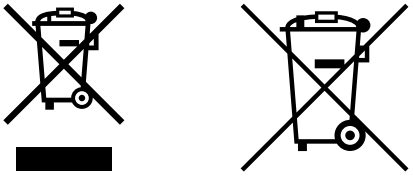
The power consumption in Off Mode or network standby and the transition time to Off or network standby are as follows:

Model Name	Power Consumption (Watt)			The Period of Time Before Equipment Automatically Switches Features into the Following Modes (Minutes)	
	Power Consumption in Plug-in Off Mode	Power Consumption in Networked Standby Mode	Power Consumption in Networked Standby Mode with All Network Ports Connected and/or Activated	Off	Networked Standby
MF851Cdw	0.5 W or less	2.0 W or less	3.0 W or less	240 minutes	One minute

NOTE

- The above value(s) are the actual values for a single machine, chosen arbitrarily, and may therefore differ from the value(s) of the actual machine used. Optional network ports are either not connected or not activated in the measurement.

■EU WEEE and Battery Directives



Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Regulation ((EU) 2023/1542) and/or national legislations implementing those Directive and Regulation.

If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Regulation, this indicates that a heavy metal (Pb = Lead) is present in this battery at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Regulation.

This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE.

Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources.

For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

■ Environmental Information

Reducing your environmental impact while saving money

Power Consumption and Activation Time
The amount of electricity a device consumes depends on the way the device is used. This product is designed and set in a way to allow you to reduce your electricity costs. After the last print it switches to Ready Mode. In this mode it can print again immediately if required. If the product is not used for a time, the device switches to its Power Save Mode. The devices consume less power (Watt) in these modes.
If you wish to set a longer Activation Time or would like to completely deactivate the Power Save Mode, please consider that this device may then only switch to a lower energy level after a longer period of time or not at all. Canon does not recommend extending the Activation Times from the optimum ones set as default.

Energy Star ®
The Energy Star® programme is a voluntary scheme to promote the development and purchase of energy efficient models, which help to minimise environmental impact.
Products which meet the stringent requirements of the Energy Star® programme for both environmental benefits and the amount of energy consumption will carry the Energy Star® logo accordingly.

Paper types
This product can be used to print on both recycled and virgin paper (certified to an environmental stewardship scheme), which complies with EN12281 or a similar quality standard. In addition it can support printing on media down to a weight of 64g/m^2.
Lighter paper means less resources used and a lower environmental footprint for your printing needs.

Duplex printing (Standard duplex printing products only)
Duplex printing capability enables you to print on both sides automatically, and therefore helps to reduce the use of valuable resources by reducing your paper consumption.
The duplex function has been auto enabled during the set up and driver installation and Canon strongly recommends that you do not disable this function. You should continue to use the duplex function to reduce the environmental impact of your work with this product at all times.

■ When disposing of used toner cartridges

- To protect the environment and make more effective use of resources, Canon promotes the recovery and recycling of used toner cartridges. Please cooperate in the recovery of toner cartridges (resource reuse). For details on resource reuse, see the Canon website:

global.canon/ctc

When disposing of toner cartridges, pack them in their original packaging to prevent toner dispersal and dispose of the cartridges in accordance with your local government instructions.

■ Trademarks

"MEAP" is a trademark of CANON Inc., referring to an "application platform" for Canon multifunction and single function printers.

Mopria®, the Mopria® Logo and the Mopria® Alliance logo are registered trademarks and service marks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

Adobe, Acrobat and Reader are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

This product contains the Universal Font Scaling Technology or UFST® under license from Monotype Imaging, Inc.
UFST® is a trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc. registered in the United States Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.
UFST: Copyright © 1989 - 1996, 1997, 2003, 2004, 2008, 2014 all rights reserved, by Monotype Imaging Inc.
Google Chrome, Chrome OS, Chromebook, Android, and Google Workspace are trademarks of Google LLC.

QR Code is a trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
Portions of this software are copyright © 2007 The FreeType Project(www.freetype.org).
All rights reserved.



Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and /or its affiliates.



Adobe, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
Copyright © 2007 -08 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Protected by U.S. Patents 5,737,599; 5,781,785; 5,819,301; 5,929,866; 5,943,063; 6,073,148; 6,515,763; 6,639,593; 6,754,382; 7,046,403; 7,213,269; 7,242,415; Patents pending in the U.S. and other countries.
All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter.
Except as otherwise stated, any reference to a "PostScript printing device," "PostScript display device," or similar item refers to a printing device, display device or item (respectively) that contains PostScript technology created or licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and not to devices or items that purport to be merely compatible with the PostScript language.
Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, the PostScript logo, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.



The PDF logo is a trademark or registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
Copyright © 2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Protected by U.S. Patents 6,185,684; 6,205,549; 7,213,269; 7,272,628; 7,278,168; Patents pending in the U.S. and other countries.
All instances of the name PostScript in the text are references to the PostScript language as defined by Adobe Systems Incorporated unless otherwise stated. The name PostScript also is used as a product trademark for Adobe Systems' implementation of the PostScript language interpreter.
Except as otherwise stated, any reference to a "PostScript printing device," "PostScript display device," or similar item refers to a printing device, display device or item (respectively) that contains PostScript technology created or licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and not to devices or items that purport to be merely compatible with the PostScript language.
Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, the PostScript Logo, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Trellix is a trademark or registered trademark of Musarubra US LLC or its affiliates in the US and other countries. Other names and brands may be claimed as the property of others. Copyright © 2023 Musarubra US LLC

Microsoft, Calibri, Excel, PowerPoint, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Edge, Microsoft Entra, Windows, Windows Phone, Windows Server, and Windows Vista are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

All brand names and product names appearing on this document are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective owners.

■ Third-Party Software

For details about third-party software included in the manual, click the following icon:



For details about third-party software in the machine, see "Third-Party Software" at the online manual site.

https://oip.manual.canon/

■ Disclaimers

- The information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MANUAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS STIPULATED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THEREOF WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF PATENT RIGHTS. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, NOR FOR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MANUAL.
- If you are unable to view the manual in PDF format, download Adobe Acrobat Reader from the Adobe Systems website (https://get.adobe.com/reader/).

■ Copyright

Unauthorized reproduction of the contents of this document in whole or in part is prohibited.

V_260306

About the Machine

About the Machine 17
Parts and Their Functions 19
Front Side 20
Back Side 24
Interior 25
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder 26
Multi-Purpose Tray 28
Paper Drawer 29
Control Panel 30
Turning ON the Machine 32
Turning OFF the Machine 33
Placing Originals and Loading Paper 34
Placing Originals 35
Loading Paper 40
Basic Paper Loading Method 41
Loading Envelopes 49
Loading Preprinted Paper 52
Specifying Paper Size and Type 55
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer 56
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray 59
Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray 62
Fixing the Paper Size and Type to Use with the Multi-Purpose Tray 65
Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper) 67
Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function 68
Main Unit Maintenance 69
Regular Cleaning 71
Cleaning the Exterior 72
Cleaning the Platen Glass 73
Cleaning the Feeder 75
Replacing the Toner Cartridge 78
Replacing the Waste Toner Container 83
Relocating the Machine 86
Replacement Parts 88
Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables 92
Clearing Paper Jams 94

Paper Jams in the Feeder 97
Paper Jams inside the Machine or in the Fixing Unit 99
Paper Jams in a Paper Source 103
Options 107
Optional Equipment 108
Cassette Module-AL 109
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA 110
ADF Access Handle-A 111
Hardware Specifications 112
Main Unit 113
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder 116
Available Paper 118
Cassette Module-AL 126
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA 127

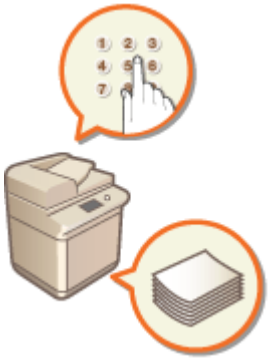
About the Machine

ERJ8-007

This chapter provides essential information for using the machine, such as parts and paper loading methods. You can also refer to this section for information on topics such as maintenance procedures for the main unit, dealing with paper jams, and the machine specifications.

■ Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the exterior and interior parts of the machine and their functions.



Parts and Their Functions(P. 19)

■ Turning ON the Machine

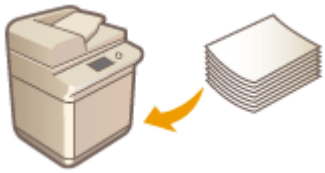
This section describes how to turn the machine ON or OFF.



Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

■ Placing Originals and Loading Paper

This section describes how to place originals to be scanned and how to load the paper used for printing.



Placing Originals and Loading Paper(P. 34)

■ Main Unit Maintenance

This section describes the maintenance and management of the machine, such as regular cleaning and the replacement of consumables.



Main Unit Maintenance(P. 69)

■ Clearing Paper Jams

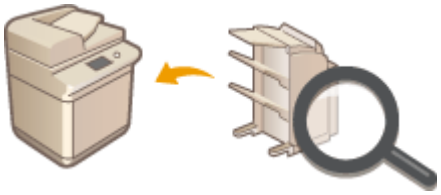
This section describes how to deal with paper jams that occur during machine use.



Clearing Paper Jams(P. 94)

■ Options

See this section to check the optional equipment to use the machine more efficiently.



Options(P. 107)

■ Machine Specifications

See this section for the specifications for the main unit and optional equipment units.

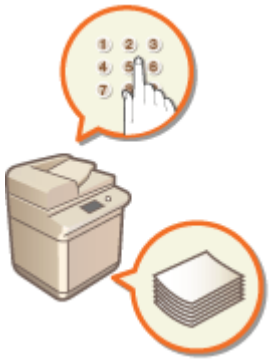


Hardware Specifications(P. 112)

Parts and Their Functions

ERJ8-008

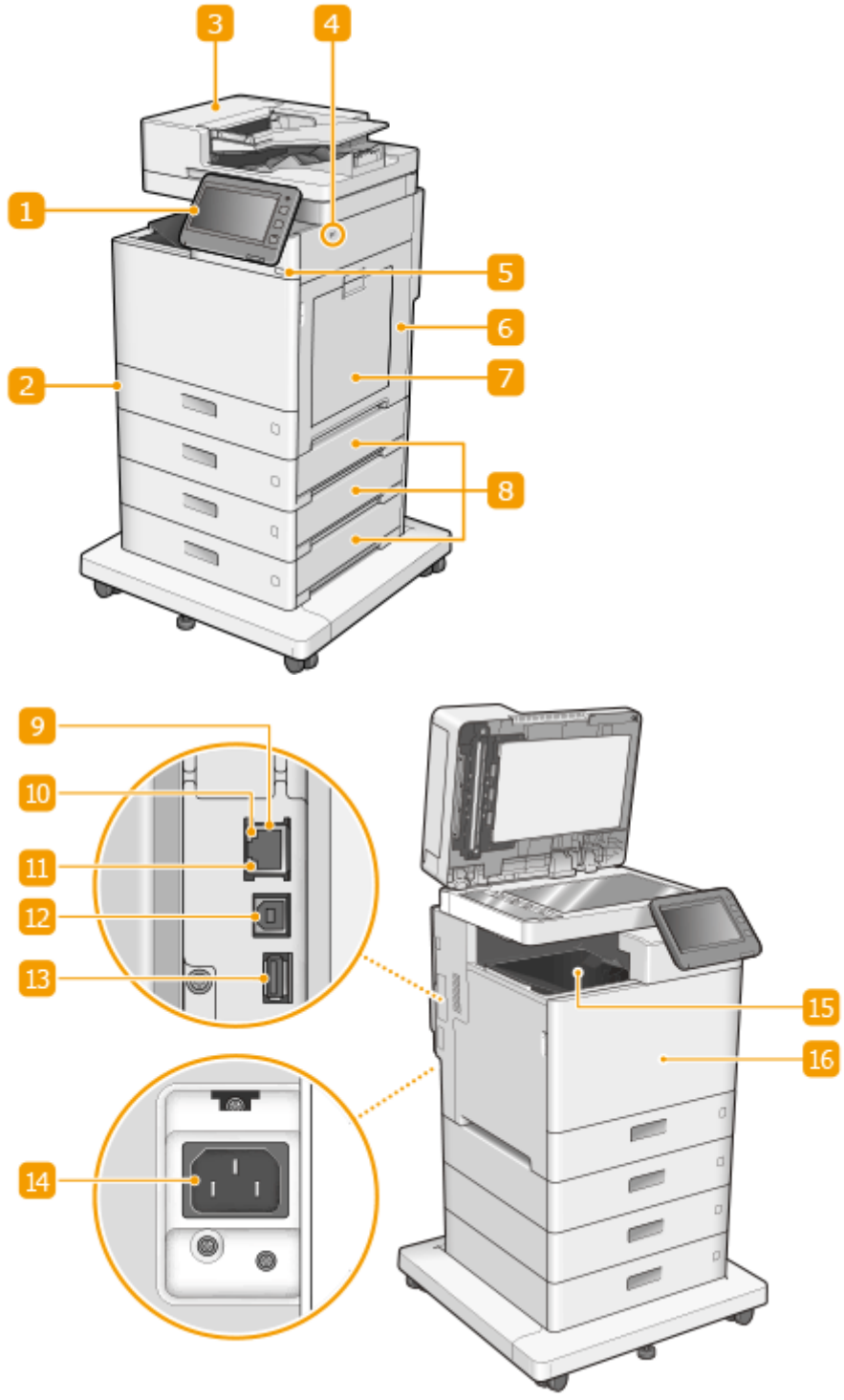
This section describes the parts of the machine (front side, back side, and interior) and how they function. This section also describes the names and usage of the keys on the control panel. Read this section for tips on how to use the machine properly.



Front Side(P. 20)
Back Side(P. 24)
Interior(P. 25)
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder(P. 26)
Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 28)
Paper Drawer(P. 29)
Control Panel(P. 30)

Front Side

ERJ8-009



1 Control panel

The control panel consists of Home key, a display, status indicators, etc. You can perform all the operations and specify settings from the control panel.

Control Panel(P. 30)
Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display(P. 212)

2 Paper drawer 1

Load frequently used paper.
Paper Drawer(P. 29)
Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

3 Feeder

Open the front cover when replacing toner cartridges.
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder(P. 26)

4 USB memory port (Front-right side of the machine)

You can connect devices such as a USB memory device to the machine. **Connecting a USB Memory Device(P. 22)**

IMPORTANT:

- The machine can supply a maximum power of 5 V 500 mA. Connecting a device that requires more power may damage the machine.

NOTE:

- Some types of memory media may not be able to save data correctly.
- The USB port (front-right side of the machine) supports USB 2.0.

5 Power switch

Press the power switch when turning ON or OFF the machine.

Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

6 Right cover of the main unit

Open the right cover when clearing paper jams. **Clearing Paper Jams(P. 94)**

7 Multi-purpose tray

Load the paper into the multi-purpose tray when you want to temporarily use a type of paper different from that which is loaded in the paper drawer.

Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 28)

Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

8 Right cover of the paper drawer

Open this when a paper jam occurs.

9 LAN port

Connect a LAN cable when connecting the machine to a wired LAN router, etc.
Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)

10 ACT indicator

The ACT indicator blinks while data is being sent or received.

11 LNK indicator

The LNK indicator blinks green when the machine is properly connected to a network.

12 USB port (for computer connection)

Connect a USB cable when connecting the machine and a computer.

NOTE:

- The USB port (for computer connection) supports USB 2.0.

13 USB port (for USB device connection)

You can connect devices such as an external hard disk to the machine.

IMPORTANT:

- The machine can supply a maximum power of 5 V 500 mA. Connecting a device that requires more power may damage the machine.

NOTE:

- The USB port (for USB device connection) supports USB 2.0.

14 Power socket

Connect the power cord.

15 Output tray

Printed paper is output to the output tray.

16 Front cover

Open to replace the toner cartridge or the waste toner container. **Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)**

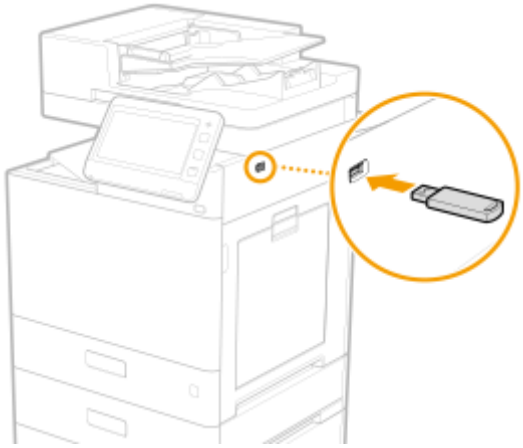
NOTE

- For more information about the configuration of optional equipment installed on the machine, see **Options(P. 107)** .

Connecting a USB Memory Device

You can connect a USB memory device to the USB ports located on the right side of the machine, and directly print data from the USB memory device. Originals scanned using the machine can also be saved directly to the USB memory device.

Working with Data in Memory Media(P. 535)



IMPORTANT

- Make sure that the USB memory device is oriented properly when connecting it to the machine. If it is not connected properly, it may cause the USB memory device or machine to malfunction.
- Make sure to follow the proper procedure when removing the USB memory device. **Removing the memory media(P. 536)** Failure to do so may cause the USB memory device or machine to malfunction.
- You can use a USB memory device with a FAT32 (up to 32 GB) or exFAT (up to 2 TB) file system.

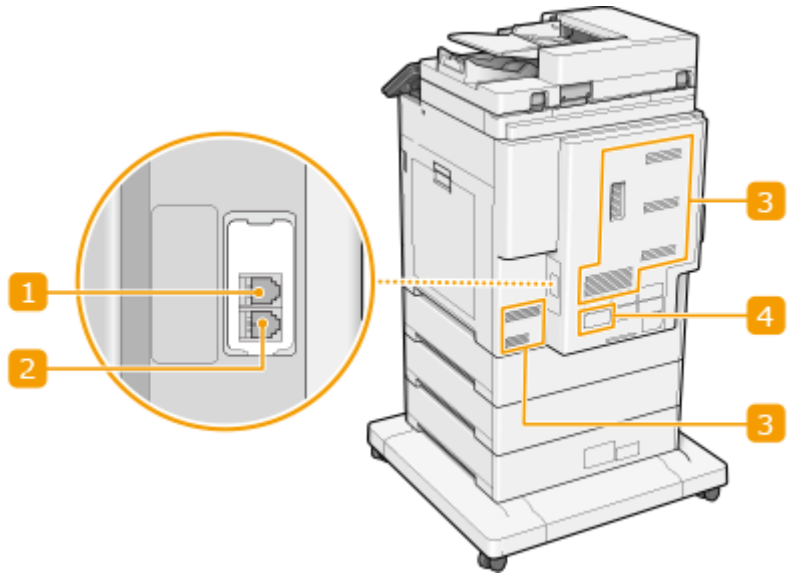
NOTE

Unsupported devices and usages

- Memory media with security functions
- Memory media that does not meet the USB specification
- Memory card readers connected via USB
- Connecting memory media via an extension cable
- Connecting memory media via a USB hub

Back Side

ERJ8-00A



1 External telephone jack

Connect an external telephone.

2 Telephone line jack

Connect a telephone cable.

3 Ventilation slot

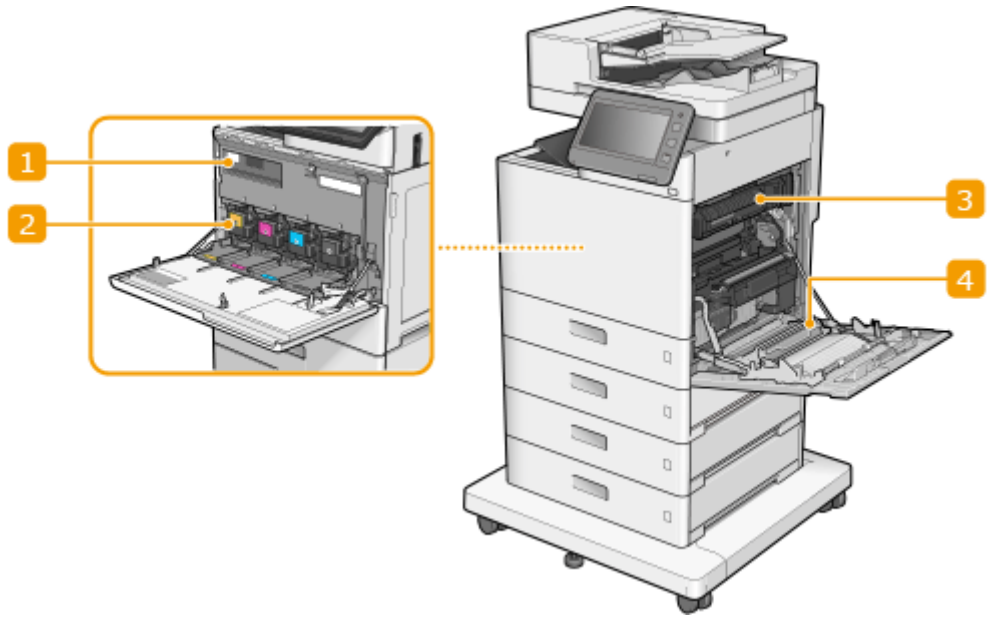
Air from inside the machine is vented out to cool down the inside of the machine. Note that placing objects in front of the ventilation slots prevents ventilation.

4 Rating label

The label shows the serial number, which is needed when making inquiries about the machine. **When a Problem Cannot Be Solved(P. 1182)**

Interior

ERJ8-00C



1 Waste toner container

When full with waste toner, remove the old waste toner container and replace with a new one. **Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)**

2 Toner cartridge

Remove the old toner cartridge and replace with a new one when the toner runs out. **Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)**

3 Fixing assembly

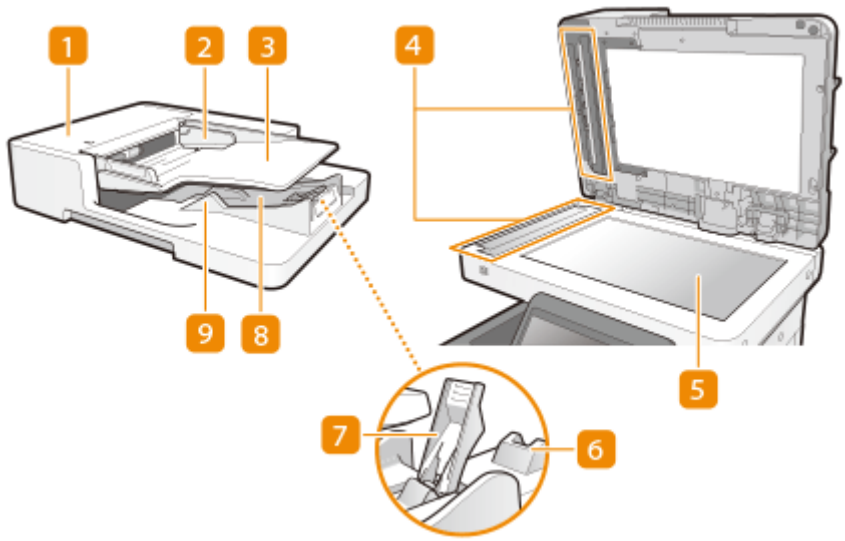
Remove it from the main unit when a paper jam has occurred. **Clearing Paper Jams(P. 94)**

4 Duplexing unit

Check this unit when a paper jam has occurred inside the main unit. **Clearing Paper Jams(P. 94)**

2-Sided Single Pass Feeder

ERJ8-00E



1 Feeder cover

Open this cover when removing originals jammed in the feeder. **Paper Jams in the Feeder(P. 97)**

2 Slide guides

Adjust these guides according to the width of an original.

3 Original supply tray

Originals placed here are automatically fed into the feeder. When two or more sheets are loaded, originals can be scanned continuously. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

4 Document feed scanning area

Originals placed in the feeder are scanned in this area.

5 Platen glass

When scanning books, thick originals, thin originals, and other originals that cannot be scanned using the feeder, place them on the platen glass. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

6 Original output tray extension

Pull out this tray when scanning large-sized originals to prevent them from dropping over the edge of the feeder.

7 Original stopper

When outputting large originals, raising the original stopper prevents the originals from slipping off the tray or drooping over the end.

8 Original output tray

Scanned originals are output here.

9 Original retainer

Holds down originals to support outputting originals neatly.

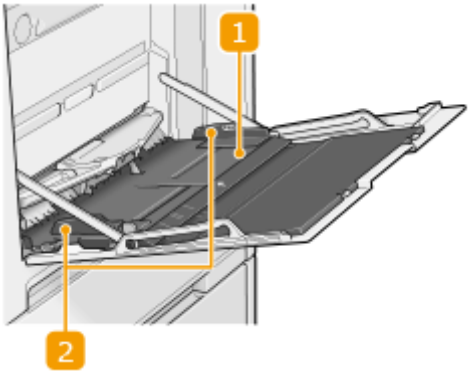
IMPORTANT

- If a thick original such as a book or magazine is placed on the platen glass, do not press down hard on the feeder.
- Do not place any objects in the original output area. Doing so may cause damage to the originals.
- Regularly clean the feeder and platen glass in order to obtain proper print results. **Regular Cleaning(P. 71)**

Multi-Purpose Tray

ERJ8-00F

Use the multi-purpose tray when you want to print on a type of paper that is not loaded in the paper drawer, such as labels or envelopes.



1 Paper tray

Load paper here.

2 Paper guides

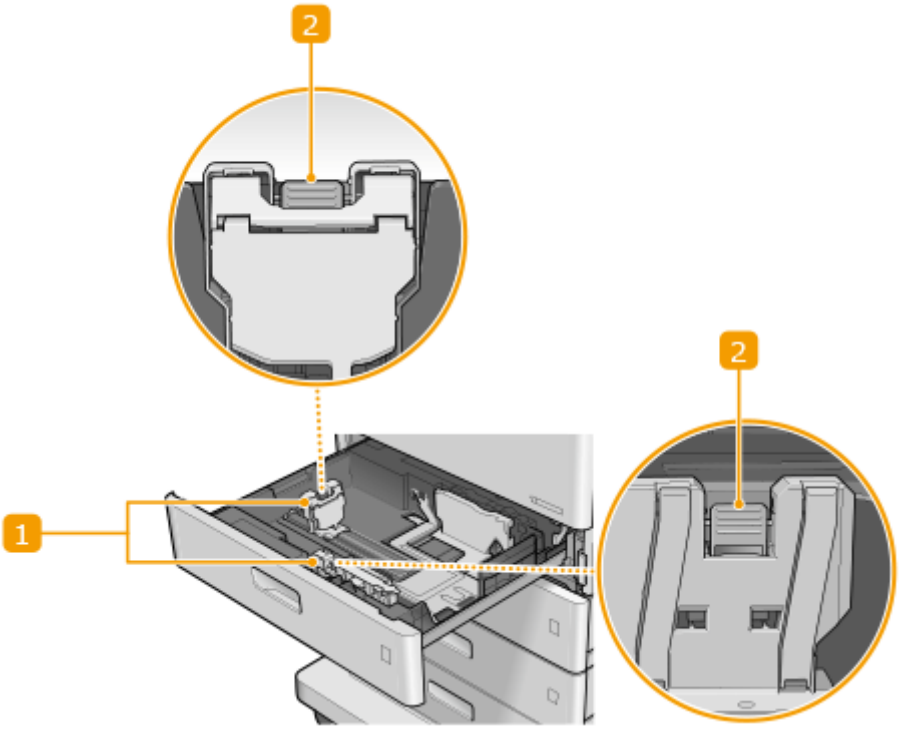
Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper to properly place the paper.

LINKS

Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)
Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 50)

Paper Drawer

ERJ8-00H



1 Paper guides

Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper to properly place the paper.

2 Lock release lever

Move the paper guides while holding the lock release lever.

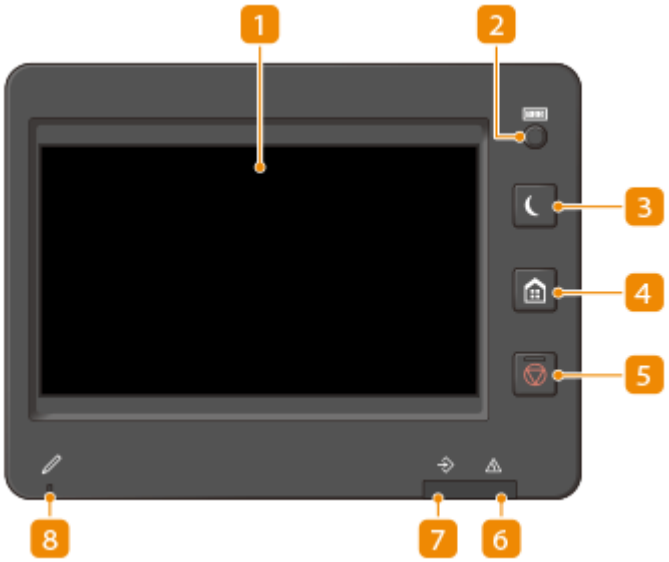
LINKS

Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 41)

Control Panel

ERJ8-00J

This section describes the names and usage of the keys on the control panel.



1 Touch panel display

In addition to the settings screen for each function, the error status is also shown on this display. **Using the Touch Panel Display(P. 211)**

2 [Counter/Device Information] key

Press to display the total number of pages used for operations such as copying or printing on the touch panel display. You can also check the serial number and IP address of the machine, and the device information of optional products. **Checking the Number of Pages for Copy/Print/Fax/Scan(P. 781)**

3 [Energy Saver] key

Press to put the machine into sleep mode. The key lights up when the machine is in sleep mode. **Entering Sleep Mode(P. 263)**

4 [Home] key

Press to display the <Home> screen, which provides access to the setting menu and functions such as copy and scan. **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**

5 [Stop] key

Stops a send job or a print job. **Canceling Send/Print Jobs(P. 258)**

6 Error indicator

Blinks or lights up when an error such as a paper jam occurs.

IMPORTANT:

- If the Error indicator blinks, follow the instructions that appear on the touch panel display. **Troubleshooting(P. 1081)**
- If the Error indicator maintains a steady red light, contact your dealer or service representative.

7 Processing/Data indicator

Blinks while operations such as sending or printing are being performed. Lights up green when there are originals waiting to be processed.

8 Panel Touch Pen

Use when operating the touch panel display, such as to enter characters.

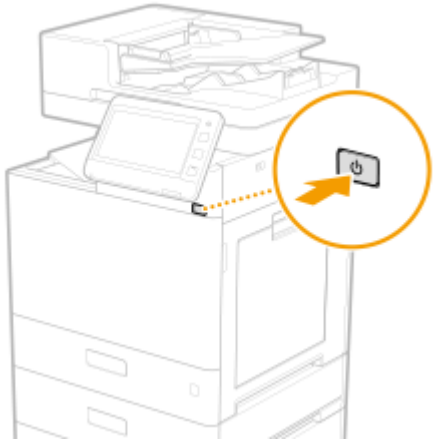
Turning ON the Machine

ERJ8-00K

This section describes how to turn ON the machine.

1 Make sure that the power plug is firmly inserted into the power outlet.

2 Press the power switch.



➡ The startup screen appears on the touch panel display.

NOTE

- You can select the screen displayed immediately after the machine is turned ON. **<Use Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>(P. 1038)**
- The response of the touch panel display and keys on the control panel may not be optimal immediately after the machine is turned ON.
- If the machine is connected to a powered off Mac computer by USB cable, the computer may turn on automatically when this machine does. In this case, disconnect the USB cable from the machine. You may also be able to solve this problem by using a USB hub between the machine and the computer.

LINKS

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

Turning OFF the Machine

ERJ8-00L

This section describes how to turn OFF the machine.

IMPORTANT

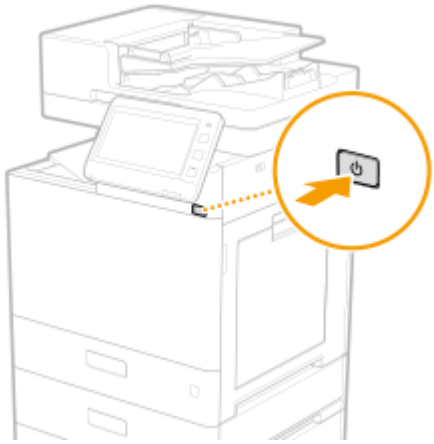
Check the machine's operation status before turning it OFF

- Do not turn OFF the machine while using the Fax/I-fax function. I-fax or fax documents cannot be sent or received when the machine is turned OFF.
- Do not turn OFF the machine if the <Backing up stored data from Remote UI...> message is displayed on the touch panel display. Doing so may cause the machine to fail to back up the stored data.
- If the machine is turned OFF during scanning or printing, a paper jam may occur.

NOTE

- You can shut down the machine from the Remote UI. **Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine(P. 696)**

1 Press the power switch.



NOTE

- The machine may take some time to completely shut down. Do not remove the power plug until the display and lamps turn OFF.
- To restart the machine, wait for at least 10 seconds after the system is turned off, and then turn the machine back ON. When <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power> is enabled, wait for at least 20 seconds to restart the machine. **<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>(P. 819)**

LINKS

Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

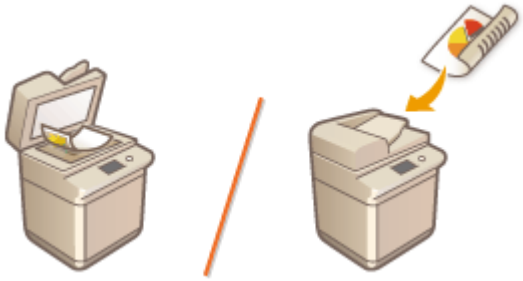
Placing Originals and Loading Paper

ERJ8-00R

This section describes how to place originals to be scanned and how to load the paper used for printing. You can check this section also for information on how to specify the paper size and type for loaded paper.

■ Placing Originals

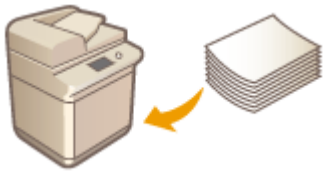
This section describes how to place originals on the platen glass and in the feeder.



Placing Originals(P. 35)

■ Loading Paper

This section describes how to load the paper into the drawer and multi-purpose tray.



Loading Paper(P. 40)

■ Specifying Paper Size and Type

This section describes how to specify the paper size and type for the paper loaded into the paper source.

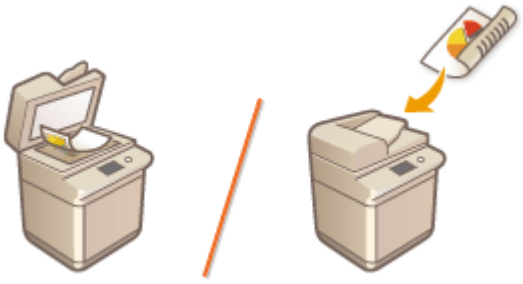


Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)

Placing Originals

ERJ8-00S

Place your originals on the platen glass or in the feeder. For originals such as books and thick/thin paper which cannot be loaded in the feeder, place the original on the platen glass. If you want to scan 2-sided originals or continue to scan several sheets of originals, place them in the feeder. For information on loadable sizes, etc., see **Main Unit(P. 113)** and **2-Sided Single Pass Feeder(P. 116)** .



Placing Originals on the Platen Glass(P. 36)
Placing Originals in the Feeder(P. 37)

IMPORTANT

Use originals that are completely dry

- When placing originals, make sure that any glue, ink, or correction fluid on the originals has completely dried.

To avoid paper jams

- The use of stiff or elastic paper may result in paper jams in some operating environments. Such paper should be loosened up slightly before being loaded.
- Do not place the following types of originals in the feeder as this may cause paper jams:



  - Wrinkled or creased paper
  - Carbon paper or carbon-backed paper
  - Curled or rolled paper
  - Coated paper
  - Torn originals
  - Originals with large holes
  - Onion skin or thin paper
  - Stapled or clipped originals
  - Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer
  - Transparencies
  - Originals with notes attached
  - Originals pasted together
  - Originals placed in a clear file
  - Business cards made of materials other than paper (fabric, leather, plastic, etc.)
  - Business cards made of rough or uneven paper, such as washi (traditional Japanese paper)
  - Business cards with special finishes, such as embossing or foil

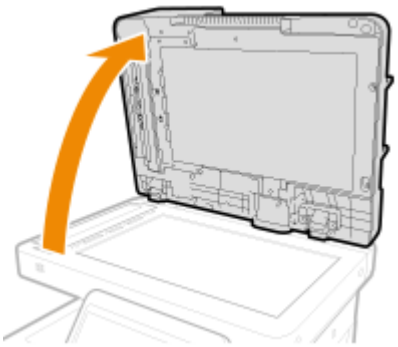
NOTE

To scan originals more accurately

- Originals placed in the feeder are scanned while being fed into the machine. On the other hand, originals placed on the platen glass remain in a fixed position while they are scanned. To ensure more accurate scanning results, placing originals on the platen glass is recommended.

Placing Originals on the Platen Glass

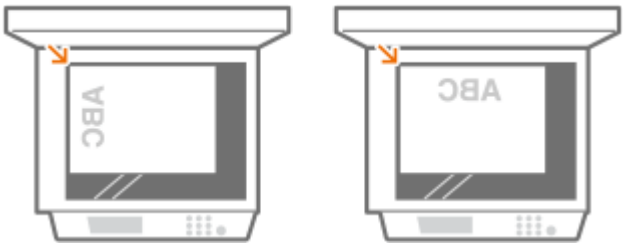
1 **Open the feeder.**



2 **Place the original face down on the platen glass.**



- Align the corner of the original with the top-left corner of the platen glass, and place the original so that the top and the bottom are properly positioned, as shown in the following illustrations.



3 **Gently close the feeder.**

➠ The original is ready for scanning.

- Before starting the scanning, specify the paper size and scanning size to match the size of the original.
- When scanning is complete, remove the original from the platen glass.

CAUTION

- When closing the feeder, take care that your eyes are not exposed to light emitted through the platen glass.

IMPORTANT

- If a thick original such as a book or magazine is placed on the platen glass, do not press down hard on the feeder.

Placing Originals in the Feeder

IMPORTANT

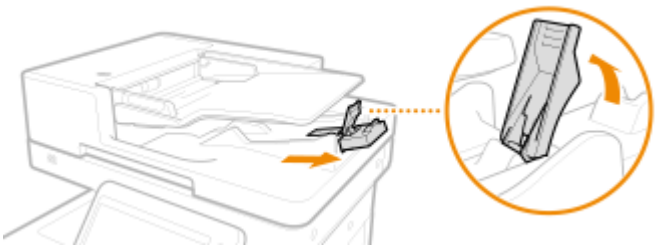
- Do not place items in the original output tray, as doing so may cause damage to your originals.
- Check that the original retainer is lowered.



1 Align the slide guides to fit the size of your originals.



- When loading originals that are LGL size, pull out the original output tray extension and raise the original stopper to prevent the ends of the originals from drooping over the end of the tray.



- If the output originals are not stacked evenly, just raise the original stopper.

2 Fan the original stack and align the edges.

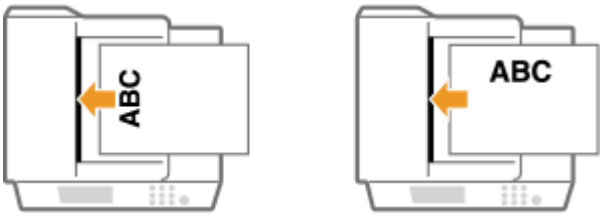
- Fan the original stack in small batches, and align the edges by lightly tapping the stack on a flat surface a few times.



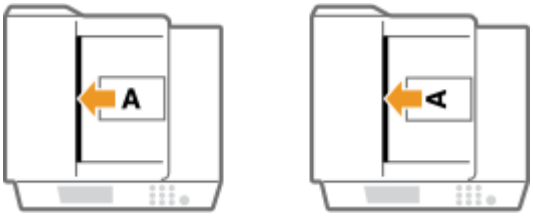
3 Place the originals face up and as far into the feeder as they will go.



- Place the original so that its top and bottom are properly positioned, as shown in the following illustrations.



- Load originals with short edges of 87 mm or less oriented as shown in the following illustrations.



- When scanning thin originals (52 g/m² or less) or A6R size or smaller originals, raise the original retainer.



➠ Originals are ready for scanning.

- Before starting the scanning, specify the paper size and scanning size to match the size of the original.

IMPORTANT:

Load limit lines

- Make sure that the original stack does not exceed the load limit lines (▼▼▼). If you place originals that exceed the limit, they may not be scanned or may cause a paper jam.

When placing an original that is folded

- Always smooth out any folds in your originals before placing them into the feeder.

Align the slide guides securely against the edges of the original

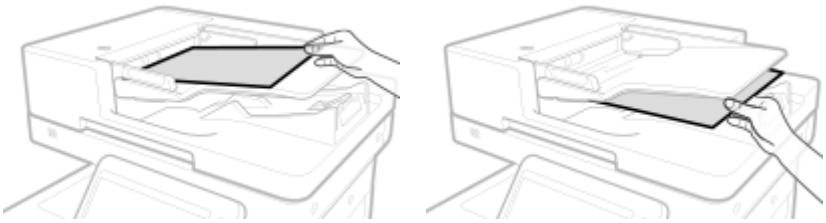
- Slide guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jam.

While originals are being scanned

- Do not add or remove originals.

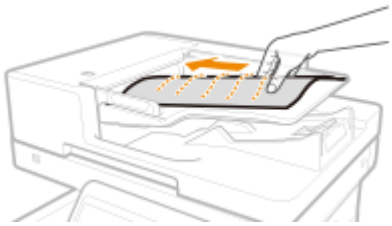
When scanning long strip originals

- If you scan long originals (which have a length of up to 630 mm), support the originals by hand when scanning and outputting paper.



When placing thin paper originals

- Thin originals may become creased, if used in a high temperature or high humidity environment.
- It may be difficult to place thin paper originals. In this case, lightly bend the paper while placing it.



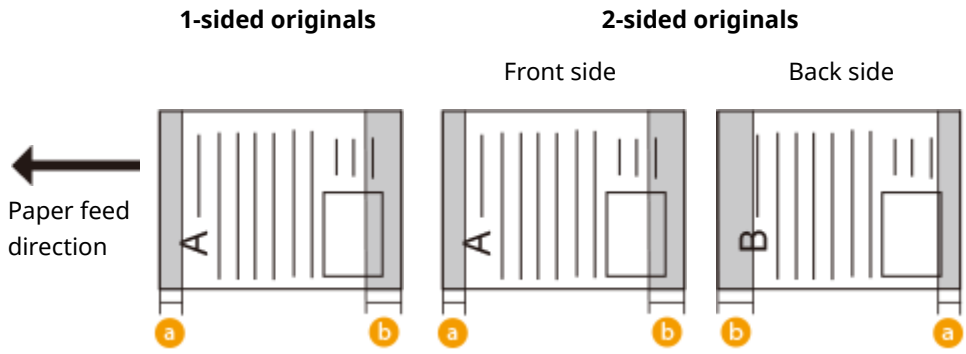
- Make sure that you do not push too hard when placing the original. The original may not be fed correctly, or may cause a paper jam.

When repeatedly scanning the same original

- It is recommended that you do not repeatedly scan the same original more than five times (this varies depending on paper quality). The original may fold or become wrinkled, or become difficult to send.

Color original scan range

- When a color original is scanned with a setting made for automatic color discrimination, it may be identified as a black-and-white document if it contains color portions only in the gray areas as shown in the following figure.



a: 10 mm

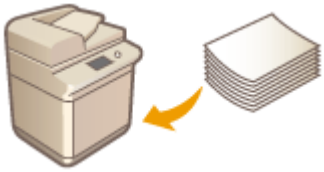
b: 17 mm

- To scan originals as color document, set the machine to Full Color mode.

Loading Paper

ERJ8-00U

The paper source to use and the paper loading method to follow vary depending on the type and size of paper you use. For more information about available paper types and sizes, see **Available Paper(P. 118)** . To obtain the optimum printing results, make sure to correctly specify the size and type of paper that is loaded. **Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)**



Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)
Loading Envelopes(P. 49)
Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52)

IMPORTANT

- Before using any paper, confirm the precautions regarding paper and the correct way to store it. **Available Paper(P. 118)**
- Loading paper while stock remains may cause a multiple sheet feed or a paper jam. If there is paper remaining, it is recommended that you wait until all of it has been used before loading more paper.
- Do not load different sizes or types of paper together.

NOTE

When using coated paper

- If misfeeds or paper jams occur, load coated paper one sheet at a time.

LINKS

Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)
Cassette Module-AL(P. 109)
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA(P. 110)

Basic Paper Loading Method

ERJ8-00W

This section describes the general method for loading paper such as plain or recycled paper. Load frequently used paper types or sizes in the paper drawer. When temporarily using paper that is not loaded in the paper drawer, load it in the multi-purpose tray.

Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer(P. 41)
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)

NOTE

- For the optional Cassette Module-AL or Cassette Feeding Unit-BA, follow the procedure of paper drawer to load paper.
- If there are instructions on the paper package about which side of the paper to load, follow those instructions.
- Paper may overlap when it is fed or a paper jam may occur, depending on the cut surface of the paper. Changing the paper orientation and loading it again may reduce the effect of the cut surface.
- If paper runs out and printing is stopped, load a new paper stack. Printing restarts after the new paper stack is loaded.

Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer

Loading Standard Size Paper(P. 41)
Loading a Custom Size Paper(P. 44)

Paper Orientation

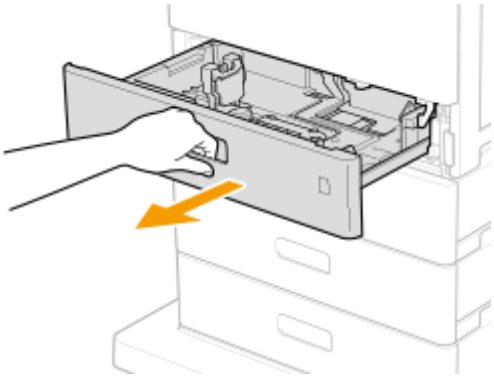
See the table below to load available paper in correct orientation.

Paper	Orientation
A4, B5, A5 (landscape), A6, B6, Legal, Letter, Statement, Executive, Foolscap/Folio, 16K, Custom (landscape)	
A5 (portrait), Custom (portrait)	

■ Loading Standard Size Paper

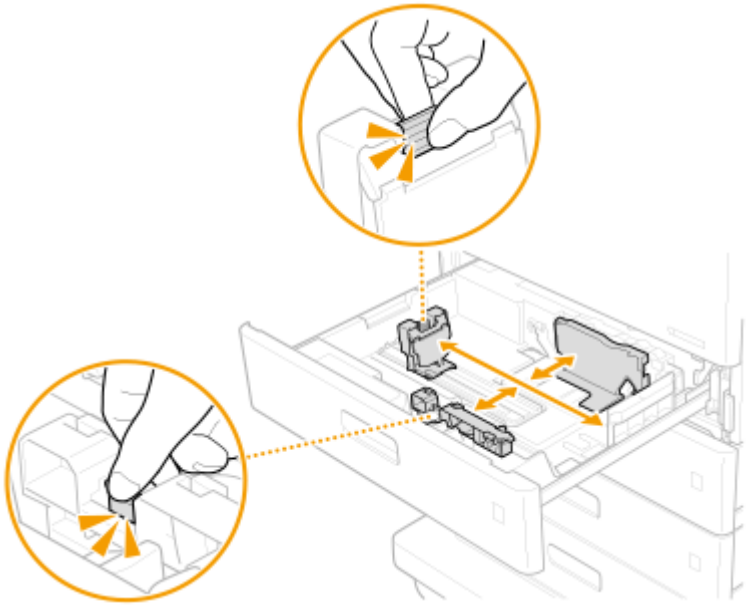
To load paper whose size is found in the paper size markings on the paper drawer, use the following procedure. For paper whose size is not found in the paper size markings, see **Loading a Custom Size Paper(P. 44)** .

1 Pull out the paper drawer until it stops.

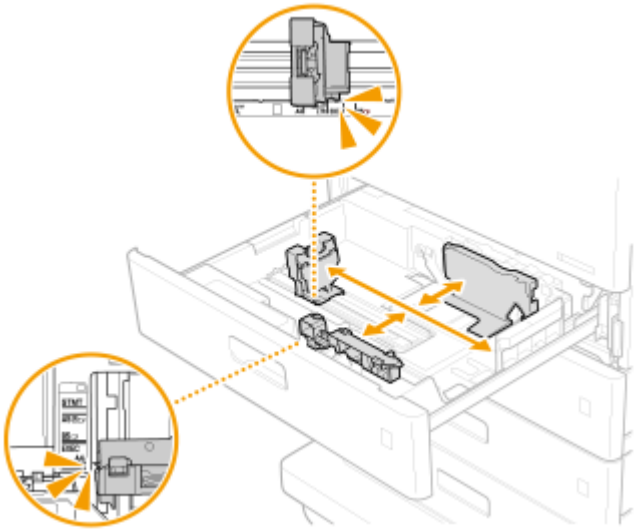


2 Adjust the positions of the paper guides to the paper size you want to use.

- While holding the lock release lever, move the paper guide.

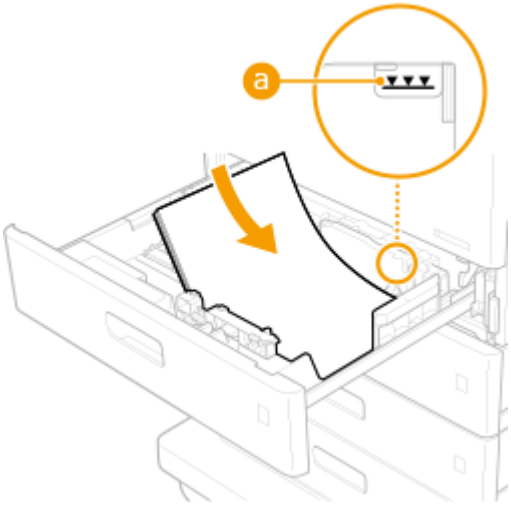


- Align the projections on the paper guides with the size indicator of the paper to be loaded.



3 Load the paper with the edge of the paper against the right side of the paper drawer.

- Insert the paper with the print side face up.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit line when loading paper

- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit line (a). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.

NOTE:

- When loading paper with a logo, see **Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52)** .

4 Set the paper drawer.

» Continue to Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56) , if necessary.

- The paper size is detected automatically. **Paper Sizes That Can Be Detected Automatically(P. 123)**

  * If the detected paper size does not match the loaded paper, the paper may not be loaded correctly. Reload the paper.

  * If paper of a size that is not detected automatically is loaded, or a different size is detected even after reloading the paper, change the paper size setting.

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper type

- The factory default settings for paper type is <Plain 2>. If you load a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the setting. If you do not change the paper type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

TIPS

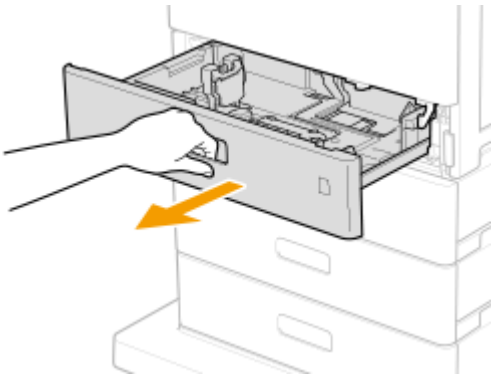
Printing on the back side of printed paper (2nd Side of 2-Sided Page)

- You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray, with the side to print face down (previously printed side face up). Then press <2nd Side of 2-Sided Page> on the screen for selecting the paper type.
- Use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

■Loading a Custom Size Paper

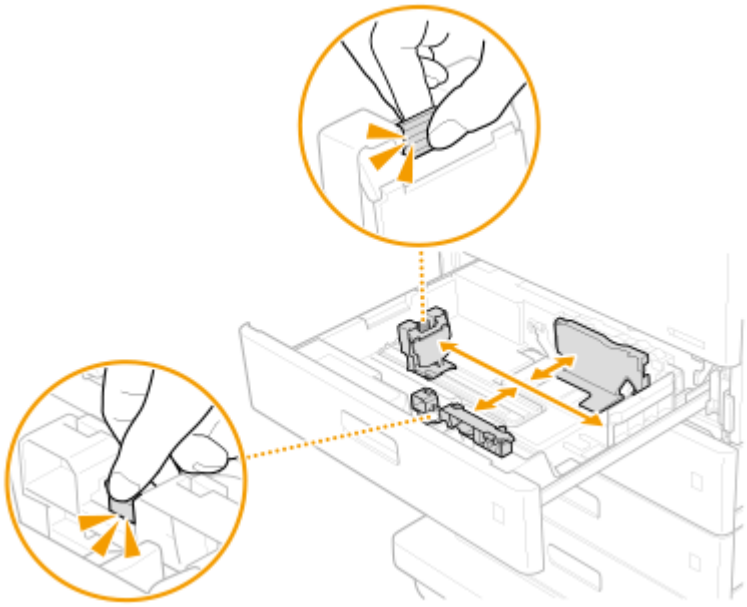
To load custom size paper or other paper whose size is not found in the paper size markings on the paper drawer, use the following procedure.

1 Pull out the paper drawer until it stops.



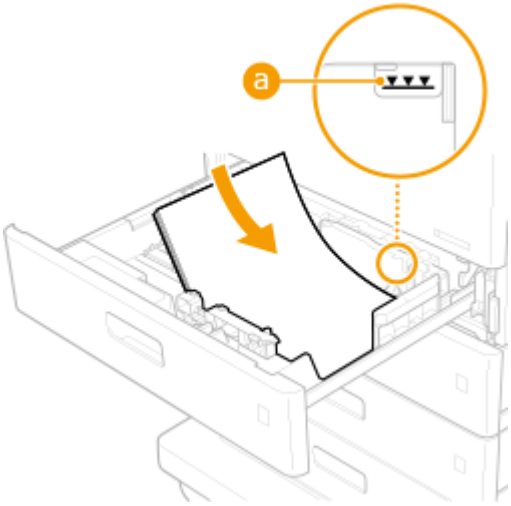
2 Slide the paper guides apart.

- Press the lock release lever to slide the paper guides outward.



3 Load the paper with the edge of the paper against the right side of the paper drawer.

- Place the paper stack with the print side face up.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit line when loading paper

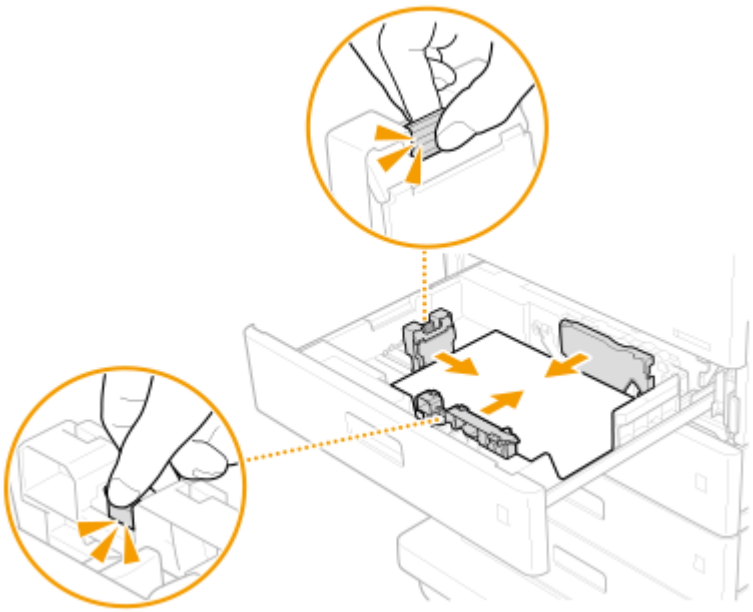
- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit line (a). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.

NOTE:

- When loading paper with a logo, see **Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52)** .

4 Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper.

- Press the lock release lever and slide the paper guides inward until they are aligned securely against the edges of the paper.



IMPORTANT:

Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper

- Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jams.

5 Set the paper drawer.

» **Continue to Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)**

- Set the size (length of side) of the loaded paper.

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper type

- If you load a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the setting. If you do not change the paper type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

TIPS

Printing on the back side of printed paper (2nd Side of 2-Sided Page)

- You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray, with the side to print face down (previously printed side face up). Then press <2nd Side of 2-Sided Page> on the screen for selecting the paper type.
- Use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

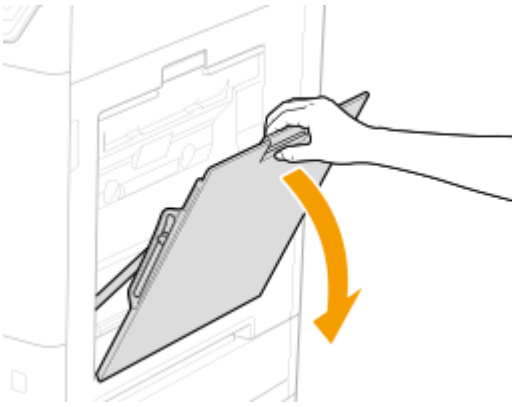
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Paper Orientation

See the table below to load available paper in correct orientation.

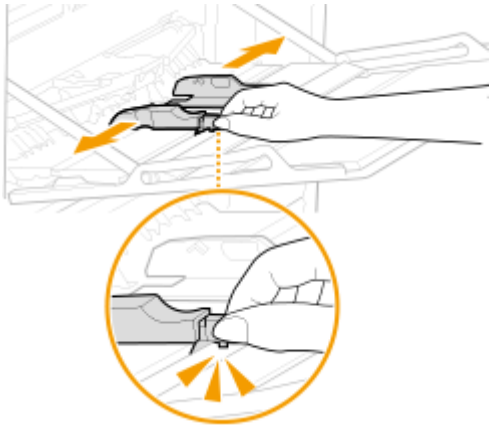
Paper	Orientation
A4, B5, A5 (landscape), A6, B6, Legal, Letter, Statement, Executive, 3" x 5", 16K, Custom (landscape), Envelope	
A5 (portrait), Custom (portrait)	

1 Open the multi-purpose tray.



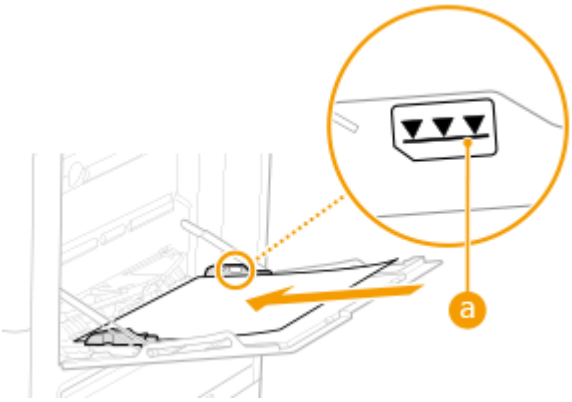
2 Slide the paper guides to the outside.

- Set the width of the paper guides slightly wider than the width of the paper.



3 Insert the paper into the multi-purpose tray until the paper stops.

- Insert the paper with the print side face down.
- Fan the paper stack well, and tap it on a flat surface to align the edges.



IMPORTANT:

Do not exceed the load limit guide when loading paper

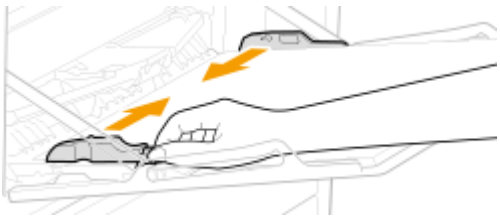
- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit guide (a). Loading too much paper can cause paper jams.

NOTE:

- If you use envelopes or paper with a logo mark, pay attention to the orientation when loading them in the paper source.
  Loading Envelopes(P. 49)
  Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52) .

4 Align the paper guides against the edges of the paper.

- Align the paper guides with the width of the paper.



IMPORTANT:

Align the paper guides securely against the edges of the paper

- Paper guides that are too loose or too tight can cause misfeeds or paper jams.

» **Continue to Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 59)**

IMPORTANT:

When changing the paper type

- The factory default setting for paper type is <Plain 2>. If you load a different type of paper into the machine, make sure to change the setting. If you do not change the paper type setting, the machine cannot print properly.

TIPS

Printing on the back side of printed paper (2nd Side of 2-Sided Page)

- You can print on the back side of printed paper. Flatten any curls on the printed paper and insert it into the multi-purpose tray, with the side to print face down (previously printed side face up). Then press <2nd Side of 2-Sided Page> on the screen for selecting the paper type.
- If a paper jam occurs, load one sheet at a time.
- Use only the paper printed with this machine.
- You cannot print on the side that has previously been printed on.

LINKS

Available Paper(P. 118)
<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>(P. 925)

Loading Envelopes

ERJ8-00X

Load envelopes in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray. When printing on envelopes, to prevent paper jams and wrinkles, make sure to flatten any curls on envelopes before loading them. Also pay attention to the orientation of envelopes and which side is face up.

Before Loading Envelopes(P. 49)
Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 50)

NOTE

- This section describes how to load envelopes with the proper orientation, as well as procedures that you need to complete before loading envelopes. For a description of the general procedure for loading envelopes in the multi-purpose tray, see **Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)** .

Before Loading Envelopes

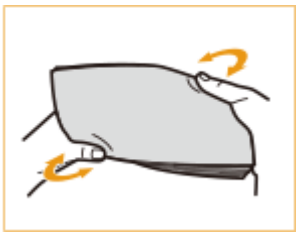
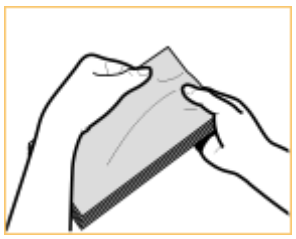
Follow the procedure below to prepare the envelopes before loading.

IMPORTANT

- Do not use envelopes that have glue attached to their flaps, as the glue may melt due to the heat and pressure of the fixing unit.
- Envelopes may become creased, depending on the type of envelopes or the conditions in which they are stored.
- Streaks may appear where envelopes overlap.

1 Flatten any curls.

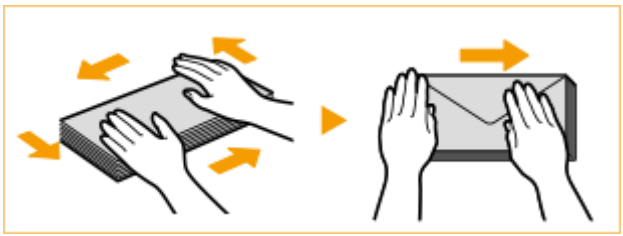
- Pick up about five envelopes. Flatten any curls, and loosen the stiff areas in the four corners.

- Repeat this step five times for each set of five envelopes.

2 Smooth the envelopes out, and remove any air inside them.

- Place the envelopes on a flat surface, and move your hands in the direction of the arrows to remove the air inside the envelopes.



- Repeat this step five times for each set of five envelopes.

3 Press down on the four sides.

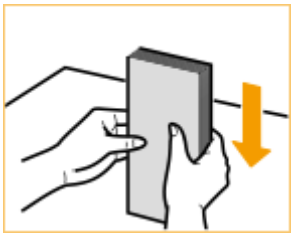
- Press down firmly on all four sides. In particular, carefully press down on the side facing the direction in which the envelopes will be fed. Press down firmly so that the flap stays flat.



IMPORTANT:

- Failure to firmly press down on the flap may result in a paper jam. If this happens, press down firmly on all four sides of each individual envelope.

4 Align the envelopes on a flat surface.



NOTE:

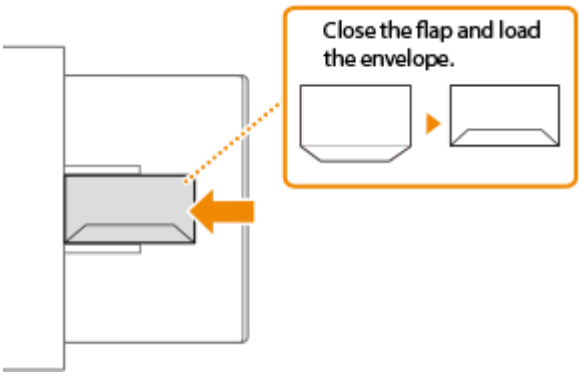
- Check that no envelopes are tucked underneath the flap of the envelope above or below them.

Loading Envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Load the envelopes as indicated below, with the front side of the envelopes (the side without the glued areas) face down (recommended).
Set the orientation in the [Orientation] setting of the printer driver. For details, click [Help] on the [Printing Preferences] screen to display help.

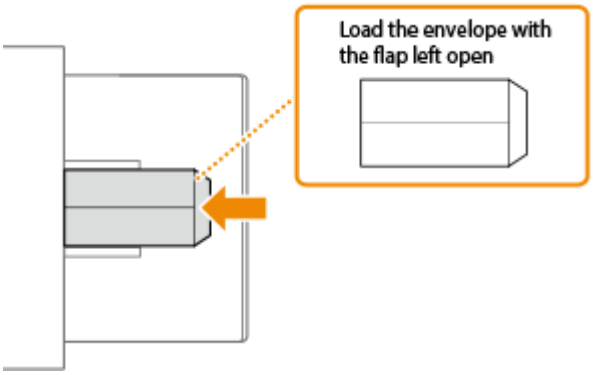
Yougatanaga 3, ISO-C5, Monarch, No.10 (COM10), DL

Close the flaps, and load the envelopes so that their flaps are on the near side.



Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4, Nagagata 40

Load the envelopes so that their flaps are on the right side.



IMPORTANT

- Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit guide. If the envelopes are not fed properly even if they have been prepared according to the procedures, load the envelopes individually in the multi-purpose tray instead of loading several envelopes together.
- Do not print on the reverse side of the envelopes (the side with the glued areas).

NOTE

- When you print on envelopes, remove them from the output tray 10 at a time.

Loading Preprinted Paper

ERJ8-00Y

When you load paper that has been preprinted with a logo, pay attention to the orientation of the paper regardless of whether you use the paper drawer or the multi-purpose tray. Load the paper properly so that printing is performed on the same side as the logo.



Loading Paper with Logos in the Paper Drawer(P. 53)
Loading Paper with Logos in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 53)

IMPORTANT

When performing a copy operation, also pay attention to the orientation of the original document

- Place the original in the feeder with the side to copy face up, or place the original on the platen glass with the side to copy face down, as shown in the following illustrations.

Feeder (A portrait layout document)



Platen glass (A portrait layout document)



Feeder (A landscape layout document)



Platen glass (A landscape layout document)



- Also, of the copy settings, make sure that <Original Content Orientation> is set correctly. **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

NOTE

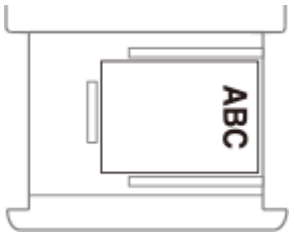
- This section describes how to load preprinted paper with the proper orientation. For a description of the general procedure for loading paper in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray, see **Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)** .

- This section describes how to load preprinted paper when performing one-sided copying/printing. When performing two-sided copying/printing using preprinted paper, load paper by interpreting that the indications in this section referring to the facing of the paper mean the opposite.
- To ensure that pages are printed on the proper side of preprinted paper irrespective of one-sided or two-sided printing, you can use the following setting methods.
  - By specifying the paper type each time to print: load the paper type registered with "Preprinted Paper" set to <On> in <Paper Type Management Settings>, specify that paper type and then perform the printing.
  - By specifying the paper source each time to print: load paper in the paper source for which <Switch Paper Feed Method> is set to <Print Side Priority>, specify that paper source and then perform the printing.
- Proper manner of loading preprinted paper when "Preprinted Paper" is set to <On> in <Paper Type Management Settings> or when <Switch Paper Feed Method> is set to <Print Side Priority>
  - Paper drawer: the logo side face down
  - Paper source other than the paper drawer: the logo side face up

Loading Paper with Logos in the Paper Drawer

The loading method varies depending on whether the orientation of the logo printed paper is portrait or landscape. Load the paper with the logo printed side (the side to print) face up, as shown in the following illustrations.

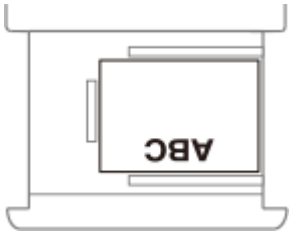
Portrait orientation paper



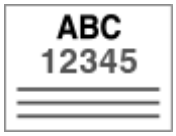
The printing results



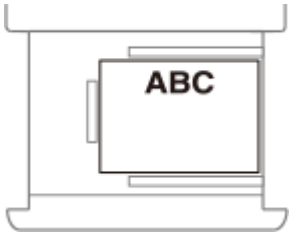
Landscape orientation paper (printing)



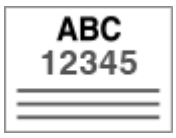
The printing results



Landscape orientation paper (copying)



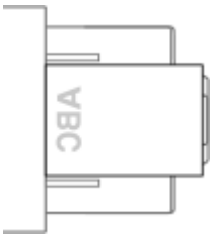
The printing results



Loading Paper with Logos in the Multi-Purpose Tray

The loading method varies depending on whether the orientation of the logo printed paper is portrait or landscape. Load the paper with the logo printed side (the side to print) face down, as shown in the following illustrations.

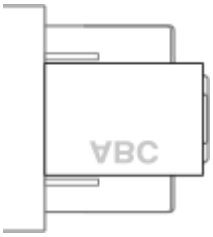
Portrait orientation paper



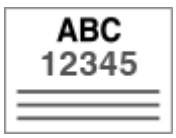
The printing results



Landscape orientation paper (printing)



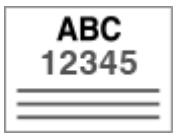
The printing results



Landscape orientation paper (copying)



The printing results



Specifying Paper Size and Type

ERJ8-010

You must specify the paper size and type settings to match the paper that is loaded. Make sure to change the paper settings when you load paper that is different from the previously loaded paper.

Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 59)
Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)
Fixing the Paper Size and Type to Use with the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 65)
Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)
Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function (P. 68)

IMPORTANT

- If the setting does not match the size and type of loaded paper, a paper jam or printing error may occur.

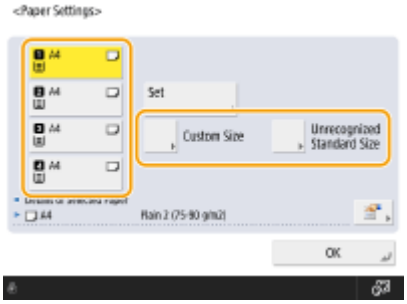
Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer

ERJ8-011

1 Press (Settings/Register)

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings> ▶ <Paper Settings>

3 Select the paper drawer whose setting you want to change, and set the paper size.



- When loading standard size paper, the paper size is automatically detected.
- The paper sources are represented by the following icons, respectively. Note that the paper source indications differ depending on the options installed.
  - 1 : The paper drawer 1
  - 2 : The paper drawer 2
  - 3 : The paper drawer 3
  - 4 : The paper drawer 4

■When Standard Size Paper is Loaded

The paper size is detected automatically. **Paper Sizes That Can Be Detected Automatically(P. 123)**

- If the displayed paper size is different from the loaded paper, the paper may not be loaded correctly. Reload the paper.
- If paper of a size that is not detected automatically is loaded, press <Unrecognized Standard Size> to select the size of the loaded paper.

When <Custom> is displayed, press <Custom Size> ▶ <Cancel Settings> to display the correct size.

■When loading custom size paper

1. Press <Custom Size>.
2. Specify the length of the <X> side and <Y> side.



- Press <X> or <Y> to enter the length of each side using the numeric keys.

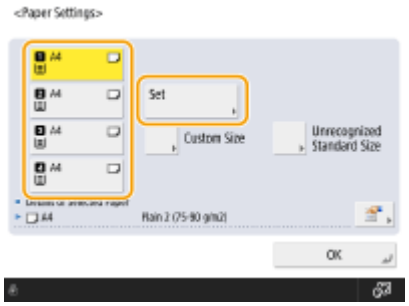
NOTE:

- If you register the paper size you use frequently on buttons <S1> to <S4>, you can call them up with one touch. **Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)**

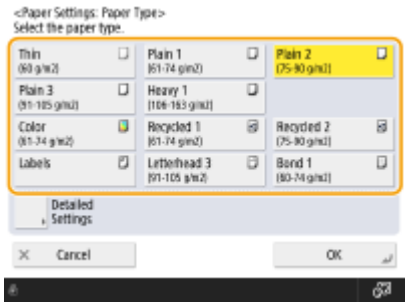
3 Press <OK>.

4 Set the paper type.

1 Select the paper drawer whose setting you want to change, and press <Set>.

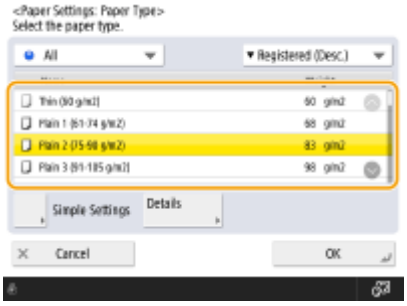


2 Select the paper type and press <OK>.



NOTE:

- If the paper type loaded is not displayed, press <Detailed Settings> to select from a list.
- If the paper type of the paper that you have loaded is not listed on the detailed setting screen, you can register it in the paper type list. **Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)**



5 Press <OK>.

LINKS

Hardware Specifications(P. 112)

Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray

ERJ8-012

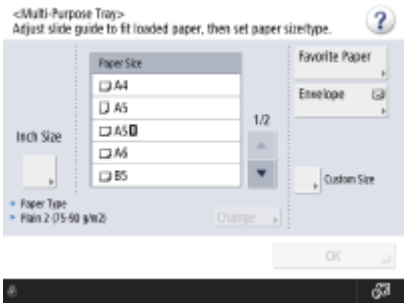
IMPORTANT

- If <Paper Feed Mode for Printer Driver Jobs with MP Tray> is set to <On>, printer driver settings are prioritized when the multi-purpose tray is specified as the paper source for jobs from the printer driver.
- A paper jam or other printing problems may occur if the size and type of paper specified in the printer driver do not match those of the actual paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

1 Load the paper in the multi-purpose tray. Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)

➠ The screen for specifying the paper size and type is displayed.

2 Specify the paper size.



NOTE:

- If the displayed paper size is different from the loaded paper size, the paper may not be loaded properly. Load the paper again.
- If you press <Favorite Paper> and register the frequently used paper size on buttons, you can call them up with a simple press. **Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)**

■When loading standard size paper

Select the paper size from <Paper Size> and press <OK>.

NOTE:

- Press <Inch Size> to select an inch paper size.

■When loading custom size paper

1 Press <Custom Size>.

2 Specify the length of the <X> side and <Y> side.



- Press <X> or <Y> to enter the length of each side using the numeric keys.

NOTE:

- If you register the paper size you use frequently on buttons <S1> to <S4>, you can call them up with a simple press. **Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)**

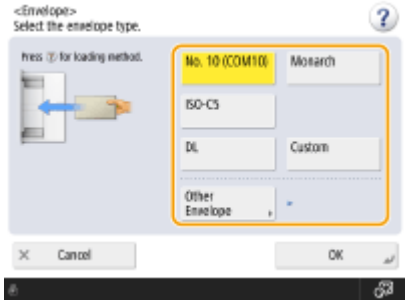
3 Press <OK>.

■When loading envelopes

1 Press <Envelope>.

- The envelope paper type cannot be selected from the details screen of <Paper Type>. To select the envelope paper type, register the paper type in <Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>, then press <Favorite Paper> in step 2 ▶ the button to which the envelope paper type has been registered ▶ <OK>. **Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)**

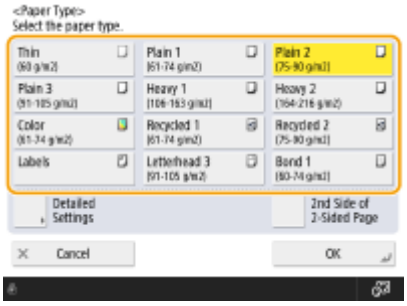
2 Select the type of envelopes.



- To register a custom size envelope, press <Custom> ▶ <Next> and press <X> or <Y> to specify the side, then use the numeric keys to enter the length of the specified side.
- Press <OK> and proceed to step 5.

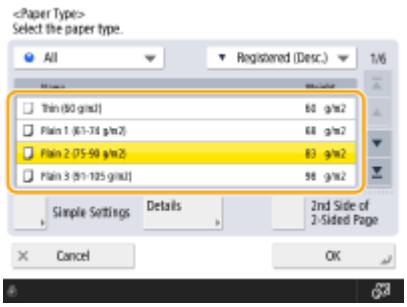
3 Press <Change> in <Paper Type>.

4 Select the paper type and press <OK>.



NOTE:

- If the paper type loaded is not displayed, press <Detailed Settings> to select from a list.
- If the paper type of the paper that you have loaded is not listed on the detailed setting screen, you can register it in the paper type list. **Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)**
- The envelope paper type cannot be selected from the details screen of <Paper Type>. To select the envelope paper type, register the paper type in <Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>, then press <Favorite Paper> in step 2 ▶ the button to which the envelope paper type has been registered ▶ <OK>. **Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)**



5 Press <OK>.

NOTE

If a screen other than that for specifying the paper size and type is displayed

- If a message prompting you to adjust the paper guide is displayed, adjust the width of the paper guide again and press <OK>.

LINKS

Hardware Specifications(P. 112)
<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>(P. 925)

Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray

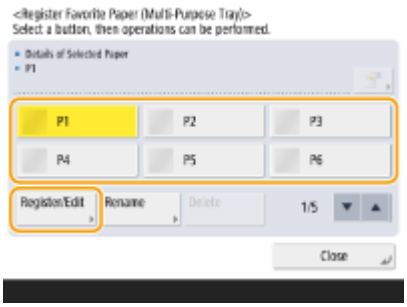
ERJ8-013

If you use a specific size and type of paper by loading in the multi-purpose tray, you can register that paper in advance as "Favorite Paper" for the multi-purpose tray. "Favorite Paper" can easily be called up from the screen which is displayed when you load the paper in the multi-purpose tray, so that you can save the time and labor to make size and type settings each time you use the specific paper.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

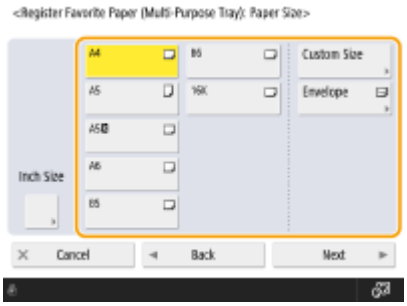
2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings> ▶ <Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>.

3 Select a button to register and press <Register/Edit>.



- You can change the registered name by pressing <Rename>.

4 Select the paper size.



■When registering standard size paper

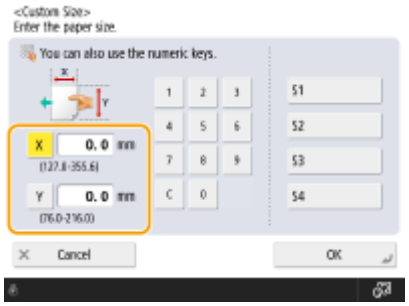
1 Select the standard size paper.

2 Press <Next>.

■When registering custom size paper

1 Press <Custom Size>.

2 Specify the length of the <X> side and <Y> side.



- Press <X> or <Y> to enter the length of each side using the numeric keys.

NOTE:

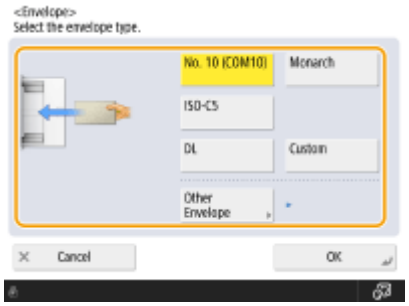
- If you register the paper size you use frequently on buttons <S1> to <S4>, you can call them up with one touch. **Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)**

3 Press <OK> ▶ <Next>.

■When registering envelopes

1 Press <Envelope>.

2 Select the type of envelopes.



- To register a custom size envelope, press <Custom> ▶ <Next> and press <X> or <Y> to specify the side, then use the numeric keys to enter the length of the specified side.

3 Press <OK> ▶ <Next>.

5 Select the paper type and press <OK>.

6 Press <Close>.

TIPS

- If <Always Specify> under <Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults> is set to <Favorite Paper>, a screen is displayed to allow you to select your "Favorite Paper" when you load the paper in the multi-purpose tray. **<Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>(P. 807)**

LINKS

Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)
Hardware Specifications(P. 112)

Fixing the Paper Size and Type to Use with the Multi-Purpose Tray

ERJ8-014

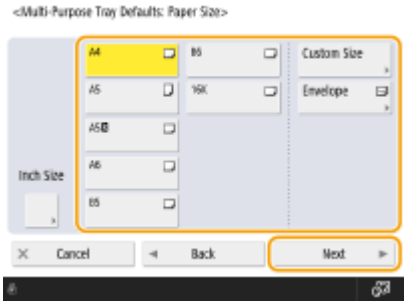
If you always use the same paper size and type with the multi-purpose tray, it is recommended that you fix the paper size and type settings for the multi-purpose tray. This is convenient because you can save the time and labor to make settings each time you load paper in the multi-purpose tray.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings> ▶ <Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>.**

3 **Press <Use Preset> ▶ <Register>.**

4 **Select the paper size.**



■When registering standard size paper

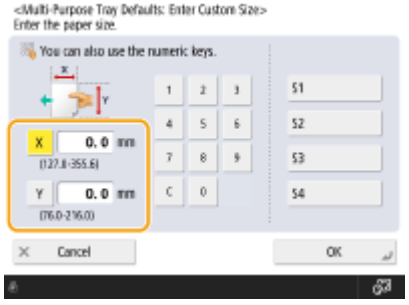
1 Select the standard size paper.

2 Press <Next>.

■When registering custom size paper

1 Press <Custom Size>.

2 Specify the length of the <X> side and <Y> side.



- Press <X> or <Y> to enter the length of each side using the numeric keys.

NOTE:

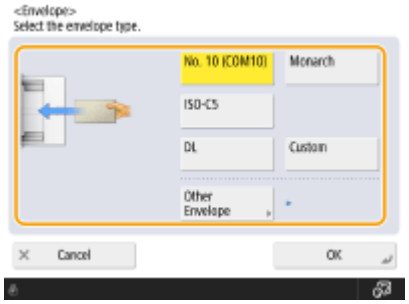
- If you register the paper size you use frequently on buttons <S1> to <S4>, you can call them up with one touch. **Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)**

3 Press <OK> ▶ <Next>.

■When registering envelopes

1 Press <Envelope>.

2 Select the type of envelopes.



- To register a custom size envelope, press <Custom> ▶ <Next> and press <X> or <Y> to specify the side, then use the numeric keys to enter the length of the specified side.

3 Press <OK> ▶ <Next>.

5 Select the paper type and press <OK>.

6 Press <OK>.

7 Press <Close>.

LINKS

Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)
Hardware Specifications(P. 112)
Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)

Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)

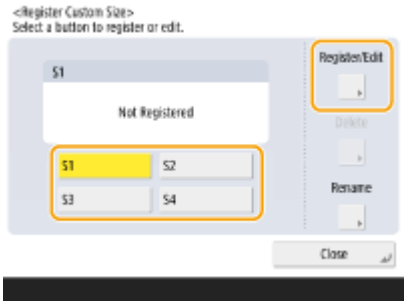
ERJ8-015

You can register up to four frequently used free sizes of paper. The paper sizes registered here are displayed on the paper size selection screen for the paper drawer and multi-purpose tray (**Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)** or **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 59)**).

1 Press (Settings/Register).

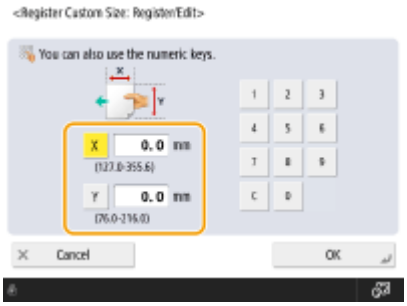
2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings> ▶ <Register Custom Size>.

3 Select a button from <S1> to <S4> and press <Register/Edit>.



- You can assign an easy to remember name to the button by pressing <Rename>.

4 Set the paper size and press <OK>.



- Specify the length of the <X> side and <Y> side. Press <X> or <Y> to enter the length of each side using the numeric keys.

5 Press <Close>.

LINKS

Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function

ERJ8-016

By setting <On> for some paper source under this setting, paper is automatically fed from this paper source. When printing from a computer, a paper source is automatically selected.
When copying or printing by using <<Access Stored Files>>, a paper source is automatically selected depending on the paper specified in <Select Paper>. For example, when paper runs out while printing from Paper Source 1, printing can be resumed automatically by switching to Paper Source 2 as long as paper of the same size is loaded in Paper Source 1 and Paper Source 2.

NOTE

- To the paper source to be selected automatically, one of the following paper types must be selected for each paper source.
  - 1-Sided Printing: Thin*1, Plain, Recycled, Heavy*1, Color*1 (in white)
  - 2-Sided Printing: Thin*1, Plain, Recycled, Heavy*1, Color*1 (in white)

*1 Only paper that can be printed on both sides are available. For more information, see **Paper Available for Two-Sided Copying/Two-Sided Printing(P. 123)** .

- When the copy ratio is set to <Auto>, a paper source will not be selected automatically.
- When one of the following modes is set, a paper source will not be selected automatically.
  - N on 1, Copy ID Card
- It is necessary to select at least one paper source. However, you cannot set only the multi-purpose tray to <On>.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Feed Settings> ▶ <Paper Source Auto Selection>.

3 Select the function.

- <Other> enables you to make settings for a paper source that is used for outputting reports.

4 Select <On> for each paper source that you want to be selected automatically.

If you selected <Printer> in step 3

Set whether to put multiple paper sources in a group. If paper source grouping is specified, paper source selection is automatically performed within a group when you print by specifying any paper source belonging to that group. To specify paper source grouping, select the <Use Group> check box, press <Change> to select a group which you want to put each paper source in, and press <OK>.

5 Press <OK> ▶ <OK>.

Main Unit Maintenance

ERJ8-017

This section describes the maintenance and management of the machine, such as regular cleaning and the replacement of consumables. It also describes the maintenance service provided by Canon. For information on precautions to take during maintenance, see the Important Safety Instructions.

IMPORTANT

Maintenance and Inspections

- The minimum holding period for performance parts for repairs and toner cartridges is seven (7) years after production of the machine model is discontinued.
- If a problem occurs during operation, see " **Troubleshooting(P. 1081)** " in the User's Guide. If the problem still cannot be resolved or you think the machine needs to be checked, contact your dealer or service representative.

Installation

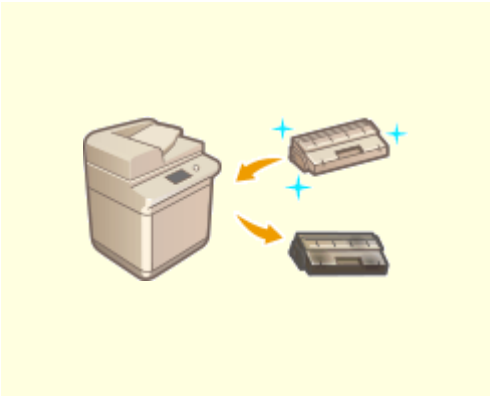
- If you find the machine's operation to be noisy in some operating modes or due to your surroundings, we recommend setting up the machine in a separate location from your office.
- Water droplets (condensation) may form inside the machine if the room where the machine is installed is heated rapidly, or if the machine is moved from a cool, dry location to a warm, humid location. Using the machine under these conditions may result in problems such as paper jams, poor print quality, or faults. Let the machine adjust to the ambient temperature and humidity for at least two hours before use.
- The machine may not operate properly when used at high altitudes (3,000 meters above sea level or higher).

■ Basic Cleaning

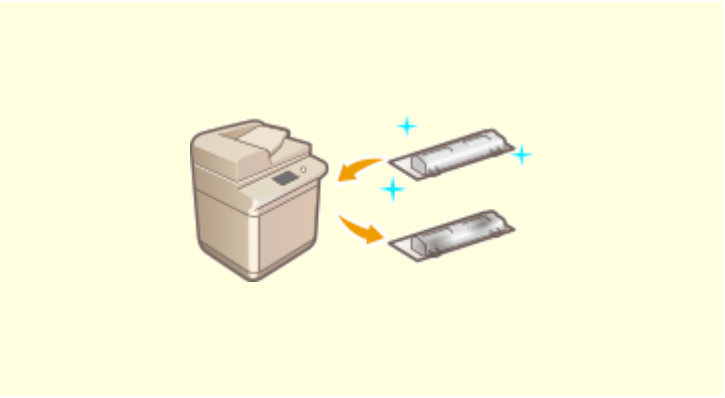


Regular Cleaning(P. 71)

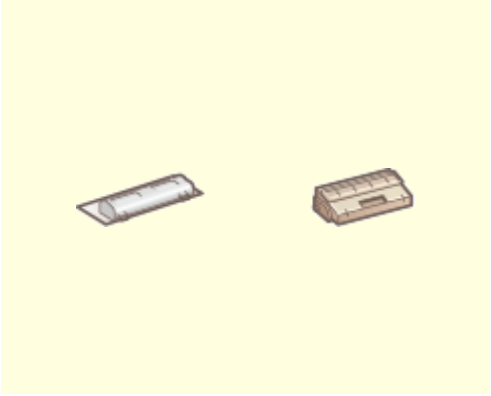
■Replacing Consumables



Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)



Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)

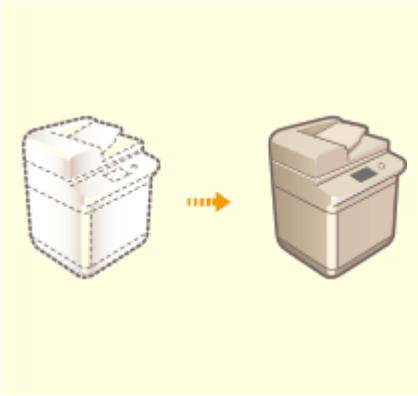


Replacement Parts(P. 88)



Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables(P. 92)

■Other Maintenance and Adjustment

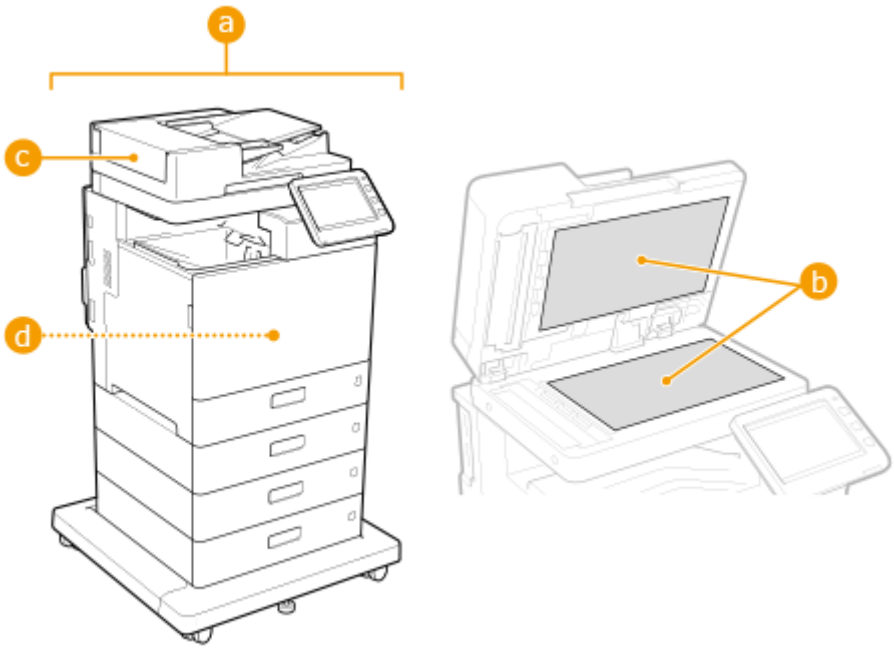


Relocating the Machine(P. 86)

Regular Cleaning

ERJ8-018

It is recommended that you periodically clean the machine to prevent loss of print quality and enable you to use the machine comfortably and safely. Clean the machine in the order indicated by a to d below.



a Exterior **Cleaning the Exterior(P. 72)**

b Platen glass **Cleaning the Platen Glass(P. 73)**

c Feeder **Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)**

d Pressure roller for fixing **<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>(P. 892)**

Cleaning the Exterior

ERJ8-019

Periodically wipe the surface of the machine to keep it clean.

NOTE

- Black dots in the surface of the machine are due to the use of recycled materials and are not a quality problem.

1 Turn the power OFF, and remove the power plug from the power outlet.

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

IMPORTANT:

- Check the operation status of the machine before turning the power OFF. You can turn the power OFF even if the machine is executing an operation, but this may cause the operation to be interrupted or data to become damaged.

2 Wipe the surface of the machine.

- Wet a soft cloth with water or diluted mild detergent, wring the cloth out well, and wipe the machine.



- Wait until the moisture has completely dried before proceeding to the next step.

3 Insert the power plug into the power outlet, and turn the power ON.

Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

Cleaning the Platen Glass

ERJ8-01A

If the platen glass is dirty, originals may not be scanned clearly, or the size of the original may not be detected clearly.

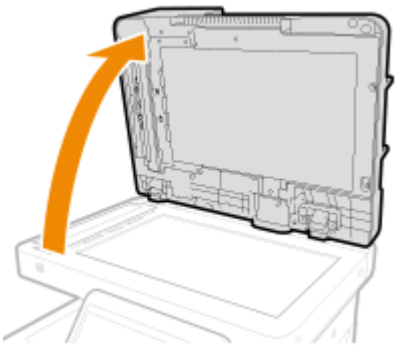
1 Turn the power OFF, and remove the power plug from the power outlet.

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

IMPORTANT:

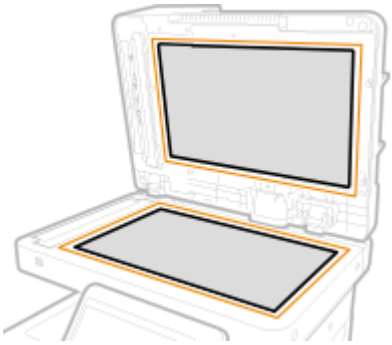
- Check the operation status of the machine before turning the power OFF. You can turn the power OFF even if the machine is executing an operation, but this may cause the operation to be interrupted or data to become damaged.

2 Open the feeder.



3 Wipe the reverse side of the feeder and the platen glass.

- Wet a soft cloth with water and wring it out well, then wipe the machine with it. Afterwards, wipe the machine with a soft and dry cloth. Wait until the moisture has completely dried before proceeding to the next step.



NOTE:

If you cannot remove the dirt

- Wet a soft cloth with mild detergent and wring it out well, then wipe the machine with it. Afterwards, wipe the machine with a soft and dry cloth.

4 Gently close the feeder.

5 **Insert the power plug into the power outlet, and turn the power ON.**

Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

Cleaning the Feeder

ERJ8-01C

If any of the following problems occurs when the document is scanned from the feeder, then perform feeder cleaning.

- The document cannot be scanned clearly
- The size of the document cannot be detected correctly
- The document gets dirty during scanning
- Paper jam occurs frequently

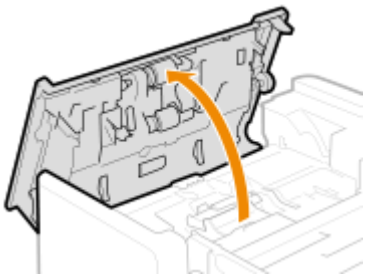
1 Turn the power OFF, and remove the power plug from the power outlet.

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

IMPORTANT:

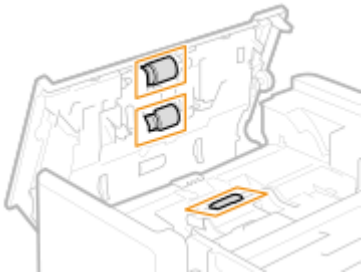
- Check the operation status of the machine before turning the power OFF. You can turn the power OFF even if the machine is executing an operation, but this may cause the operation to be interrupted or data to become damaged.

2 Open the feeder cover.



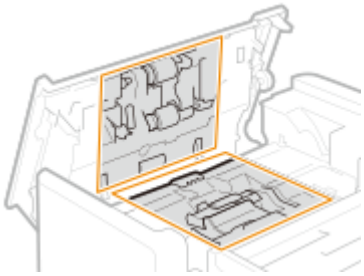
3 Clean the rollers inside the feeder cover.

- Wet a soft cloth with water and wring it out well, then wipe the rollers. Afterwards, wipe the rollers with a soft and dry cloth.



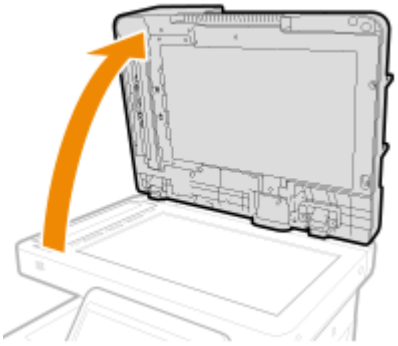
IMPORTANT:

- If the rollers and surrounding areas are very dirty, clean them out. To do this, wet a cloth with water and wring it out well, then wipe the dirty areas. Afterwards, wipe the areas with a soft and dry cloth.



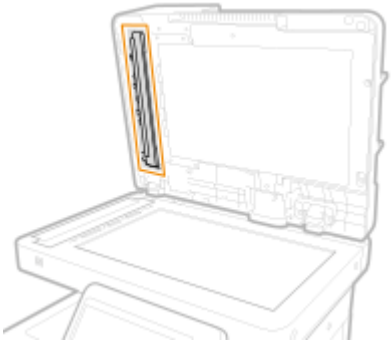
4 Gently close the feeder cover.

5 Open the feeder.



6 Wipe the document feed scanning area on the feeder side.

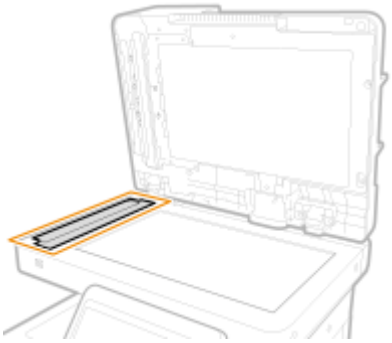
- Wipe the thin glass strip.
- Wet a soft cloth with water and wring it out well, then wipe the plate with it. Afterwards, wipe the plate with a soft and dry cloth. Afterwards, wipe the machine with a soft and dry cloth.



- Wait until the moisture has completely dried before proceeding to the next step.

7 Wipe the document feed scanning area on the platen glass side.

- Wipe the thin glass strip.
- Wet a soft cloth with water and wring it out well, then wipe the plate with it. Afterwards, wipe the plate with a soft and dry cloth. Afterwards, wipe the machine with a soft and dry cloth.



- Wait until the moisture has completely dried before proceeding to the next step.

8 Gently close the feeder.

9 Insert the power plug into the power outlet, and turn the power ON.

Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

NOTE

If streaks still appear on the originals or paper after the feeder cleaning operation

- Load about 10 sheets of A4 size paper in the feeder and perform the following procedure to execute **<Clean Feeder>(P. 892)** . When a message indicating that cleaning is complete is displayed, try using the feeder to copy an original to check if the problem has been resolved.
- It takes approximately 10 seconds to clean the feeder.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge

ERJ8-01E

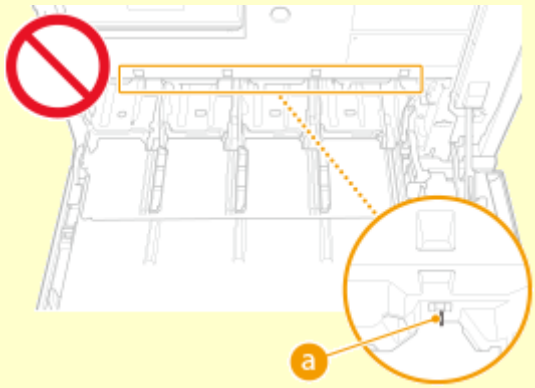
When toner starts running low or has run out, a message is displayed prompting you to prepare a new toner cartridge or perform toner cartridge replacement. Prepare a new toner cartridge or perform toner cartridge replacement according to the displayed message.

- **Cautions When Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)**
- **Before Replacing Toner Cartridges(P. 79)**
- **Procedure for Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 80)**

Cautions When Replacing the Toner Cartridge

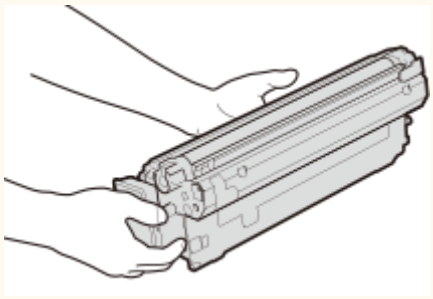
CAUTION

- Do not touch the contacts (a) inside the machine. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.

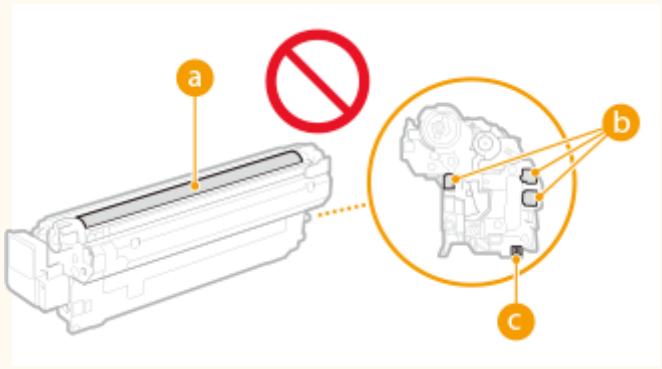


IMPORTANT

- Do not replace toner cartridges until the message prompting you to do so appears.
- Be sure to hold the toner cartridge using the handle.



- To avoid scratching the surface (a) of the drum inside the machine or exposing it to light. Do not touch the electrical contacts (b) or the toner memory (c).



NOTE

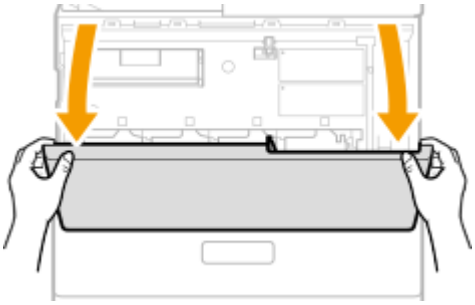
- For details about each message, see **Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)** .
- For information on the product numbers for toner cartridges, see **Consumables(P. 88)** .
- You can check the current amount of toner remaining. **Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)**

Before Replacing Toner Cartridges

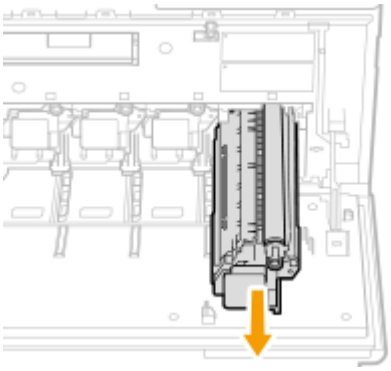
Perform the following procedure before replacing the toner cartridges. The message on the screen may disappear, and the print quality may improve.

1 Open the front cover.

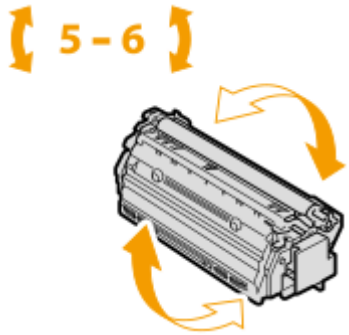
- Open the cover while holding both sides.



2 Pull out the toner cartridge.



3 Hold the toner cartridge on both sides and shake the toner cartridge about five or six times to evenly distribute the toner.

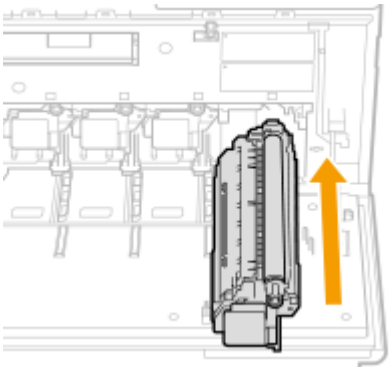


IMPORTANT:

- Do not touch the green part of the toner cartridge.

4 Install the toner cartridge.

- Check that the toner cartridge color matches the color displayed on the slot of the main unit.



IMPORTANT:

- Be careful that the drum portion does not get hit against the mouth of the slot.

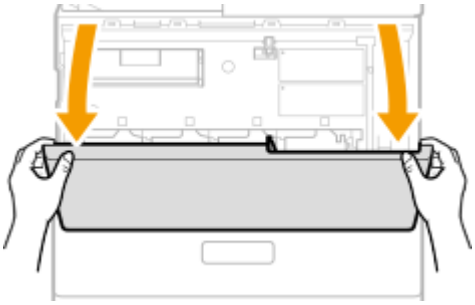
5 Close the front cover.

Procedure for Replacing the Toner Cartridge

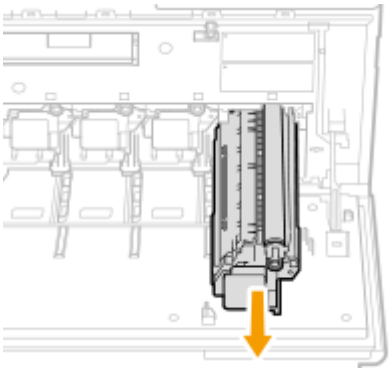
When replacing toner cartridges, follow the instructions shown in the video along with those written below.

1 Open the front cover.

- Open the cover while holding both sides.



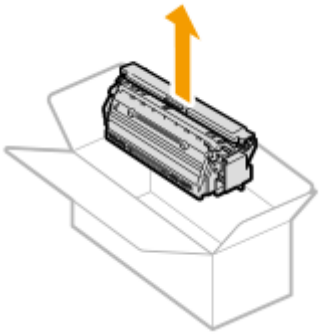
2 Pull out the toner cartridge.



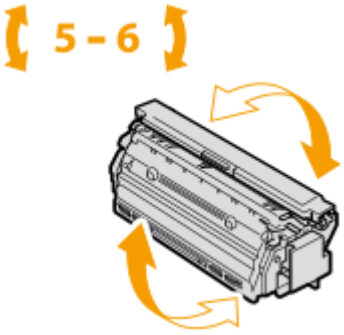
IMPORTANT:

- Be careful not to touch the lead edge of the toner cartridge or bump or otherwise impact the toner cartridge. Toner may leak.
- Prepare a piece of paper or cloth that can get dirty, and temporarily place the removed toner cartridge on it.

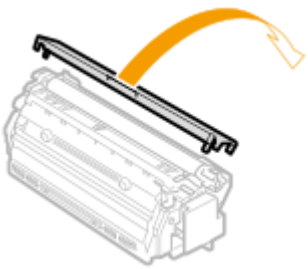
3 Remove the replacement toner cartridge from the protective case.



4 Hold the toner cartridge on both sides and shake the toner cartridge about five or six times to evenly distribute the toner.



5 Remove the protective cover.

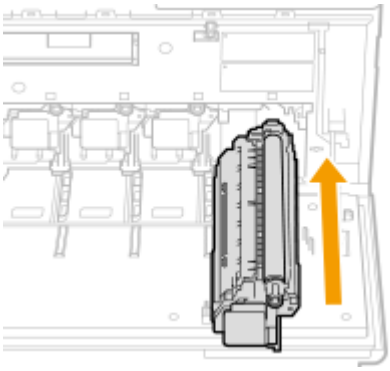


IMPORTANT:

- Do not touch the green part of the toner cartridge.

6 Install the toner cartridge.

- Check that the toner cartridge color matches the color displayed on the slot of the main unit.



IMPORTANT:

- Be careful that the drum portion does not get hit against the mouth of the slot.

7 Close the front cover.

Replacing the Waste Toner Container

ERJ8-01F

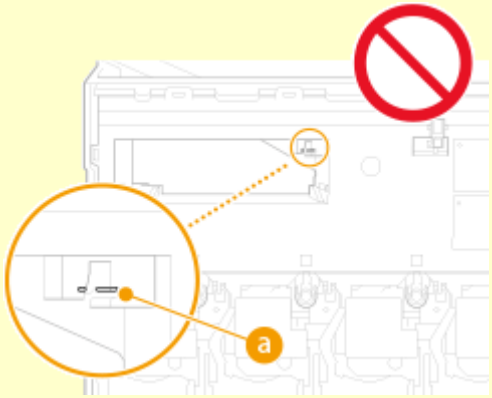
When the waste toner container is almost full or completely full, a message is displayed prompting you to prepare a new waste toner container or perform waste toner container replacement. Prepare a new waste toner container or perform waste toner container replacement according to the displayed message.

Cautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)
Procedure for Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)

Cautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Container

CAUTION

- Do not touch the contacts (a) inside the machine. Doing so may result in damage to the machine.



IMPORTANT

- Do not replace the waste toner container before the message prompting you to replace it appears on the touch panel display.

NOTE

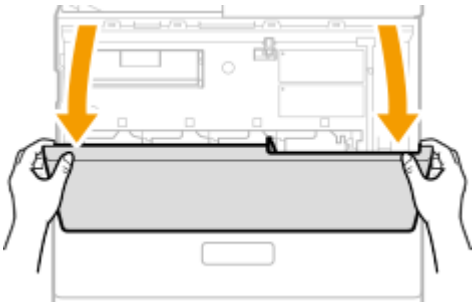
- The waste toner container is a container for collecting unused toner that remains when printing.
- For details about each message, see **Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)** .
- For information on the model number of the waste toner container, see **Consumables(P. 88)** .
- You can check the current amount of space remaining in the waste toner container.
  Checking the Space Remaining in the Waste Toner Container(P. 92)

Procedure for Replacing the Waste Toner Container

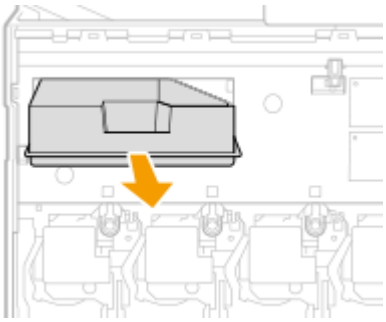
When replacing the waste toner container, the procedure is also displayed on the screen. Check the information displayed on the screen in addition to the following procedure.

1 Open the front cover.

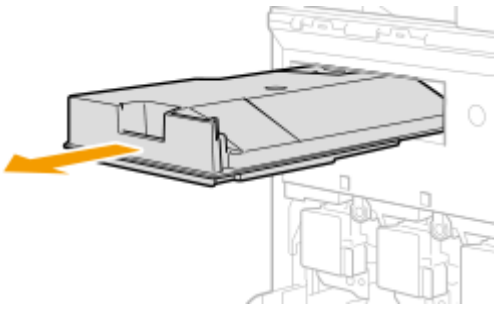
- Open the cover while holding the both sides.



2 Hold the handle and pull out the waste toner container halfway.



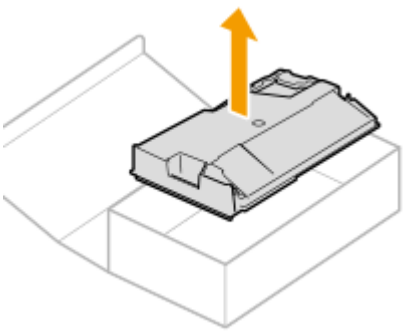
3 Lift the the waste toner container slightly upwards and pull it straight out while being careful not to spill the toner inside.



IMPORTANT:

- Prepare a piece of paper or cloth that can get dirty, and temporarily place the removed waste toner container on it.

4 Remove the new waste toner container from the box.

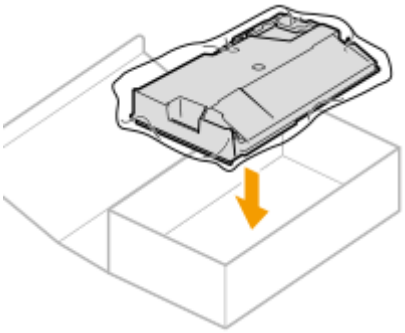


IMPORTANT:

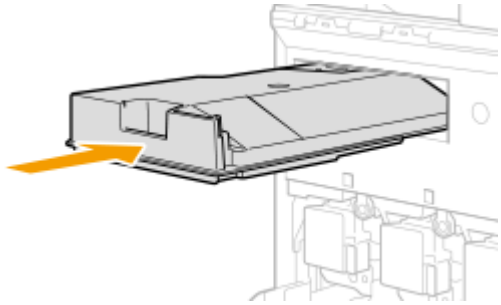
- Do not disassemble or modify the waste toner container.

5 Wrap the used waste toner container in the bag and place it in the box.

- The bag is in the box of the new waste toner container.
- After wrapping the waste toner container in the bag, twist close the opening of the bag and place it in the box so the toner does not spill.



6 Install the new waste toner container.



IMPORTANT:

- Firmly push it in as far as it will go. If the waste toner container is not pushed all the way in, toner may scatter when the waste toner container is removed.

7 Close the front cover.

Relocating the Machine

ERJ8-01H

The machine is heavy. Make sure to follow the procedures below to avoid injury when moving the machine. Also, to confirm the safety precautions before you begin to move, read the Important Safety Instructions included with the machine.

IMPORTANT

- If the machine is to be transported for relocation, removals, etc., take the following steps to prevent damage and faults during transportation:
  - Remove the toner cartridges.
  - Securely pack the machine in the original packaging (box) and packing materials.

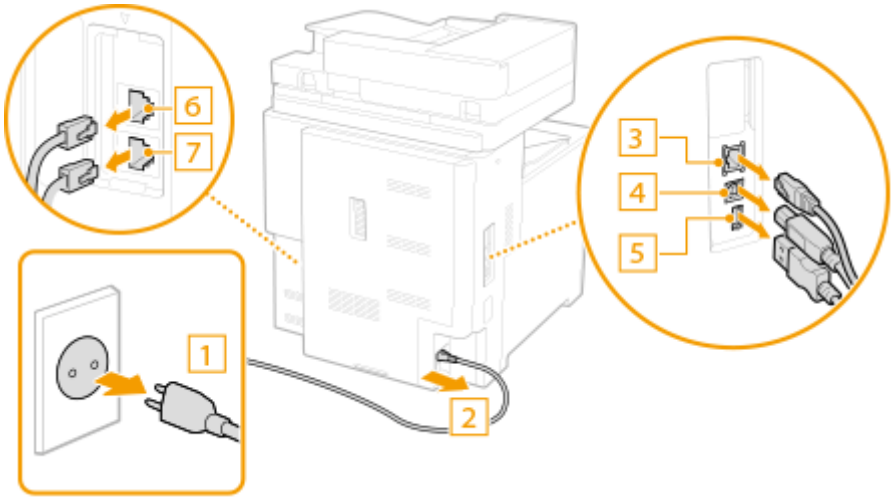
1 Turn OFF the machine and computer.

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

2 Disconnect the cables and cord from the machine in numerical order as in the illustration below.

- Whether the cables with "*" are connected depends on your environment.

1. Power plug
2. Power cord
3. LAN cable*
4. USB cable*
5. USB device*
6. External telephone*
7. Telephone cable*

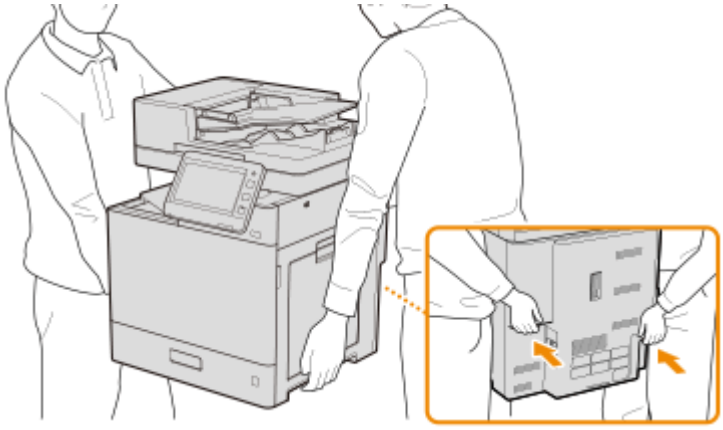


3 When transporting the machine across a long distance, remove the toner cartridge.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

4 Close all the open covers, and move the machine to a new location.

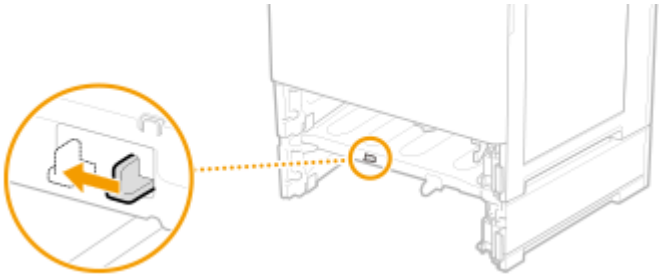
- The machine is heavy (Hardware Specifications(P. 112)). Do not try hard to carry the machine.
- Use the handles on both sides of the machine, and have at least two people carry it.



IMPORTANT:

If the optional cassette module or the cassette feeding unit is attached to the machine.

- Unlock the cassette module or the cassette feeding unit before lifting the machine, and transport the cassette module or the cassette feeding unit separately.



5 Carefully place the machine at the new installation site.

- For information about how to install the machine after relocating it, see Setup Guide. **Manuals and Their Contents(P. 10)**

Replacement Parts

ERJ8-01J

This section describes the replacement parts (consumables/consumable parts) used by the machine. Follow the precautions when handling and storing the replacement parts.

For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine Toner, Cartridge and Parts is recommended.

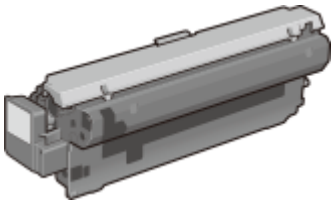
Consumables(P. 88)
Consumable Parts(P. 90)

NOTE

- Depending on the installation environment, printing paper size, or document type, you may need to replace consumables before the end of the estimated lifetime.
- To maintain print quality, the machine performs automatic calibration in accordance with changes in the environmental conditions. The machine may also perform automatic calibration when it is turned ON or recovers from sleep mode. Calibration uses the toner, and accordingly it may result in a decrease of lifetime of the toner cartridges.
- The color toner cartridges are used even in black and white printing. Therefore, much use of black and white printing may also result in decrease in the remaining number of printable pages for each color.
- You can check the current amount of replacement parts remaining.
  Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables(P. 92)

Consumables

■ Toner Cartridges



Supplied Toner Cartridges

The average yield of the toner cartridge that comes with the machine are shown below.

- Black

  Average yield *: 3,800 Sheets

- Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), and C (Cyan)

  Average yield *: 3,300 Sheets

Replacement Toner Cartridges

Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge	**Average yield and weight of toner cartridge**

Canon Cartridge 081 Black	• **Average yield** * 9,000 Sheets
Canon Cartridge 081 Yellow Canon Cartridge 081 Magenta Canon Cartridge 081 Cyan	• **Average yield** * 6,000 Sheets
Canon Cartridge 081 H Black	• **Average yield** * 19,300 Sheets
Canon Cartridge 081 H Yellow Canon Cartridge 081 H Magenta Canon Cartridge 081 H Cyan	• **Average yield** * 12,900 Sheets

* The average yield is based on "ISO/IEC 19798" (the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for monochromatic electrophotographic printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO [International Organization for Standardization]) when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

CAUTION

Store toner cartridges as described below

Storing toner cartridges in an improper location or environment may cause problems such as data loss.

- Store unopened until immediately prior to use.
- Store toner cartridges in the following conditions:
  - Storage temperature range: 0-35°C
  - Storage humidity range: 35% to 85% RH (relative humidity, condensation-free)*

*Even within the approved storage humidity range, water droplets (condensation) may develop inside the toner cartridge if the temperatures inside and outside the toner cartridge differ. Condensation will adversely affect the print quality.

- Do not store toner cartridges in the following locations:
  - Locations exposed to open flames
  - Locations exposed to direct sunlight or bright light for five minutes or more
  - Locations exposed to excessively salty air
  - Locations heavily exposed to corrosive gases (e.g. aerosol sprays or ammonia)
  - Very hot and/or humid locations
  - Locations subject to dramatic changes in temperature and humidity likely to cause condensation
  - Very dusty locations
  - Locations within the reach of children
  - Locations close to products affected by magnetism (e.g. floppy disks or disk drives)
- Do not store toner cartridges upright or upside down.
- Store the packaging material safely for future use. It will be needed for situations such as storing the machine with the toner cartridges removed.
- Canon reserves the right to reposition, reshape, add or remove packaging material without notice.

IMPORTANT

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges

- Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.
For more information, see global.canon/ctc.

NOTE

- For information on the collection of used toner cartridges, see the **Notice(P. 11)** .

Consumable Parts

■Waste Toner Container

Make sure to use the dedicated waste toner container for this machine.



- Waste Toner Box WT-E1

The average number of pages that can be printed per waste toner container is 400,000 sheets (paper size assumed to be A4 or Letter).

NOTE

- When replacing the waste toner container **Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)**

■Fixing Assembly

For how to replace the Fixing assembly, see the instructions in the PDF manual below.

- UM-J1

■ITB Unit

For how to replace the ITB unit, see the instructions in the PDF manual below.

- UM-H1

■ Roller Kit

For how to replace the Roller kit, see the instructions in the PDF manual below.

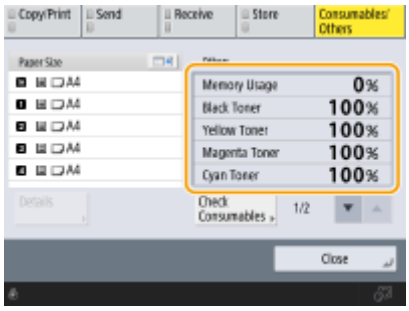


- UM-K1

Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables

ERJ8-01K

When you press (Status Monitor), the Status Monitor screen is displayed, allowing you to check the toner level or other status indications.



Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)
Checking the Space Remaining in the Waste Toner Container(P. 92)
Checking the Detailed Status of Consumables(P. 92)

TIPS

- You can check the remaining amount of consumables from the Remote UI. **Checking the Machine Status(P. 695)**

Checking the Remaining Toner Level

It is recommended that you check the remaining toner level before printing a large job to determine whether or not to prepare a new toner cartridge.

Press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Consumables/Others> ▶ check the remaining toner level.

Checking the Space Remaining in the Waste Toner Container

It is recommended that you check the space remaining in the waste toner container before performing a large job to determine whether or not to prepare a new waste toner container.

Press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Consumables/Others> ▶ checking the space remaining in the waste toner container.

Checking the Detailed Status of Consumables

Check the detailed status of consumables.

Press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Consumables/Others> ▶ <Check Consumables>.

■<Toner/Waste Toner> Screen



<Item>, <Item Name>, and <Status> are displayed.

LINKS

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)
Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)
Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)

Clearing Paper Jams

ERJ8-01L

If a paper jam occurs, a message, the location of the paper jam, and the procedure for clearing it are displayed on the screen. If you do not know how to clear the paper jam from viewing the screen, see **Paper Jam Locations(P. 95)** to clear the paper jam. For information on cautions when clearing paper jams, see the Important Safety Instructions.

CAUTION

- Do not forcibly remove the jammed paper from the machine. Forcibly removing the paper may result in injury or damage parts of the machine.
  - If you cannot remove the paper, contact your dealer or service representative.
- When all paper jams have been cleared, immediately remove your hands from the machine and optional equipment so that your clothing and hands do not get caught in the rollers.

IMPORTANT

Cautions when clearing paper jams

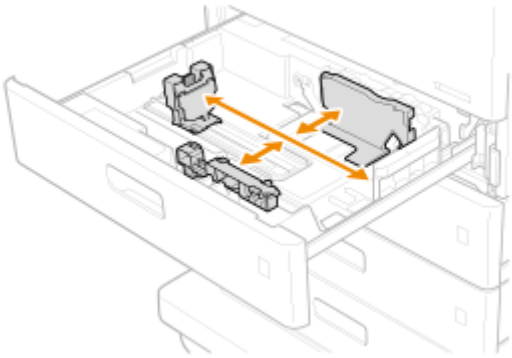
- When clearing paper jams, do not turn the power OFF. Data being printed is erased when you turn the power OFF.
  - Take particular care when a fax is being received.
- When the paper gets torn, be sure to remove the torn pieces so that they do not remain.

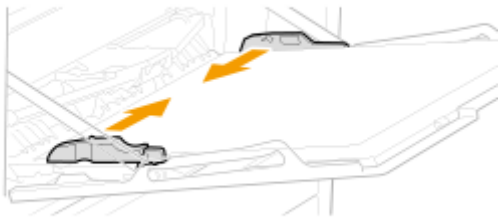
■If Paper Jams Frequently Occur

If paper jams frequently occur even though there are no problems with the machine and its optional equipment, check the following.

Are the paper guides misaligned?

- Match the paper guides with the paper loaded in the paper source.



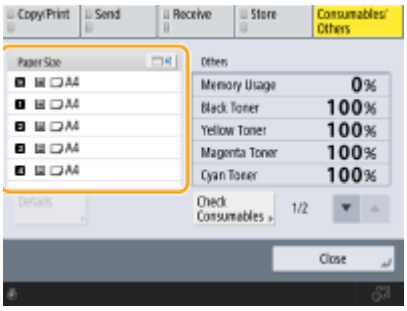


Do sheets of paper overlap when being fed?

- If paper jams occur due to overlapping of sheets of paper when being fed, reload the paper by changing the orientation.

Is the paper type correct?

- On the <Status Monitor> screen, check the paper type. **<Status Monitor> Screen(P. 213)**



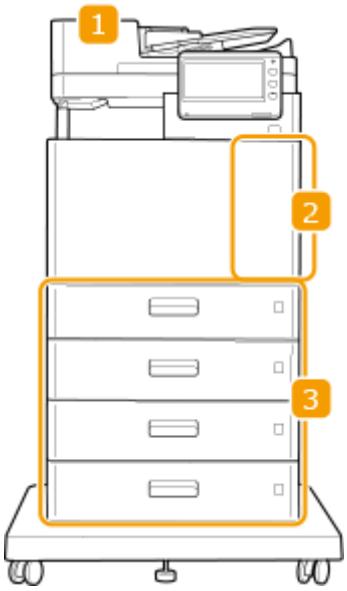
- If the paper loaded in a paper source differs from the paper type setting, see **Loading Paper(P. 40)** to set the paper type again.

Do pieces of paper remain in the machine?

- Pieces of paper may remain in the machine after removing a paper jam. Open the location where the paper was jammed, and remove any pieces of paper (Do not forcibly remove the jammed paper from the machine. Forcibly removing the paper may result in injury or damage parts of the machine. If you cannot remove the paper, contact your dealer or service representative.).

Paper Jam Locations

For information on the paper jam locations and the method for clearing paper jams, see the following diagram and references.



1 Feeder **Paper Jams in the Feeder(P. 97)**

2 Inside the main unit **Paper Jams inside the Machine or in the Fixing Unit(P. 99)**

3 Paper drawer **Paper Jams in a Paper Source(P. 103)**

NOTE

- Paper may not actually be jammed in the location you check. Even in this case, follow the instructions on the screen to check all the locations.
- The screen indicating that there is a paper jam is repeatedly displayed until you clear the paper jam.
- If you press <Close> on the screen indicating that there is a paper jam, you may be able to continue to perform operations and specify settings without immediately removing the paper jam.
- Do not remove paper from a location other than that displayed as a paper jam location on the screen. This may cause paper jams in other locations or missing pages in output documents.

Paper Jams in the Feeder

ERJ8-01R

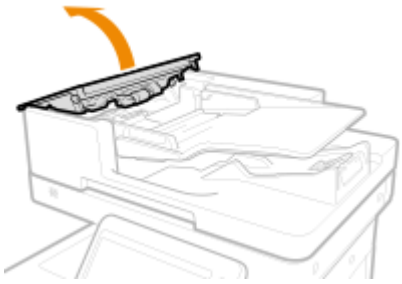
Check the paper jam location on the screen, and follow the procedure below to remove the original.

1 Remove the originals in the original supply tray.

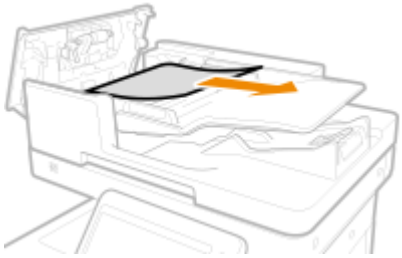


2 Check whether an original is jammed in the feeder cover.

1 Open the feeder cover.



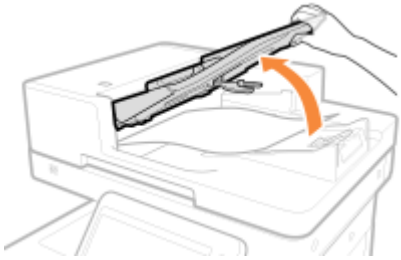
2 If an original is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.



- If you cannot remove the jammed original, proceed to the next step without forcibly removing it.

3 Check whether an original is jammed in the original output tray.

1 Lift the original supply tray.



2 If an original is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.

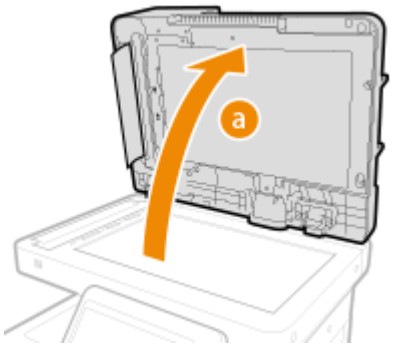


3 Return the original supply tray back into position.

4 After removing all jammed originals, close the feeder cover.

5 Lift up the feeder, and check if there is a jammed original.

1 Lift up the feeder, and check the position indicated by a.



2 If an original is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.



6 Return the feeder to its original position.

- Continue following the instructions on the screen to proceed with the interrupted operation or continue clearing paper jams.

CAUTION

- When closing the feeder, take care that your eyes are not exposed to light emitted through the platen glass.

Paper Jams inside the Machine or in the Fixing Unit

ERJ8-01S

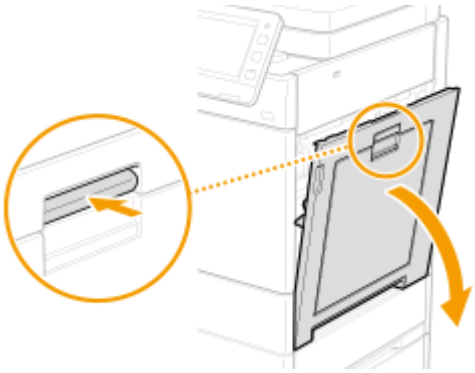
Check the paper jam location on the screen, and follow the procedure below to remove the paper.

NOTE

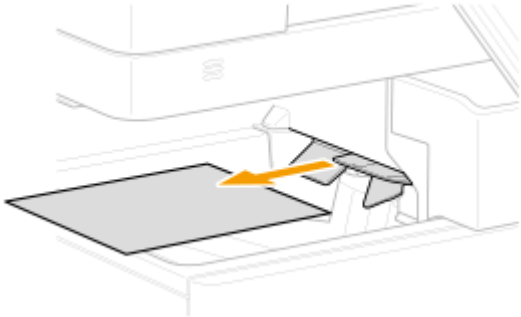
Confirm before handling

- Before starting the operation to clear paper jams, confirm that the covers and paper drawers of the machine and optional equipment are closed.

1 **Push the lever and open the right cover of the main unit.**



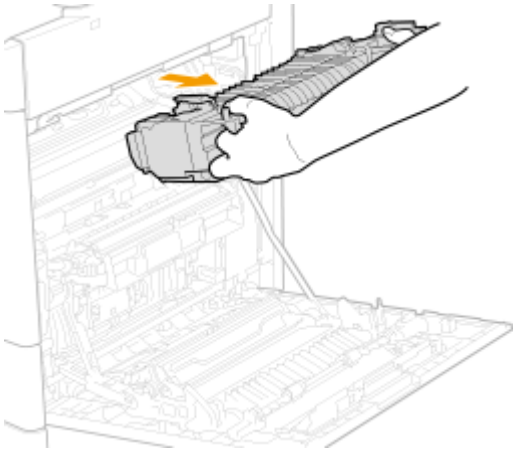
2 **If paper is jammed in the output tray, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



3 **Check whether paper is jammed inside the fixing assembly.**

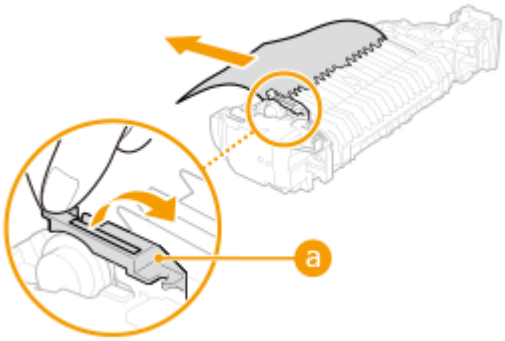
1 **Remove the fixing assembly and place it on a flat surface.**

- **Hold the light blue part of the fixing assembly with fingers of both hands, and pull it out horizontally.**



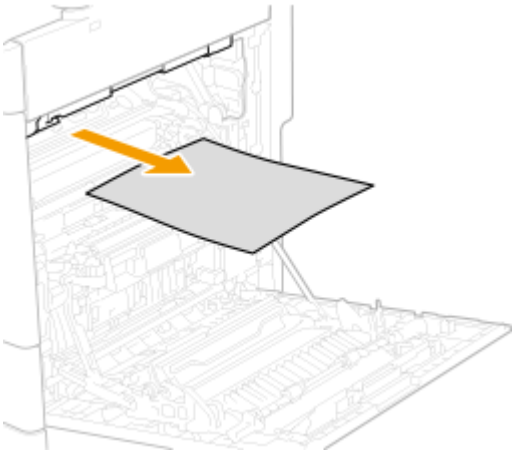
2 **If paper is jammed, open the guide (a) of the fixing assembly and gently pull out the paper in the direction of the arrow.**

- **If the paper is partly out from the lower side (entry side) of the fixing assembly, gently pull out the paper in the downward direction.**



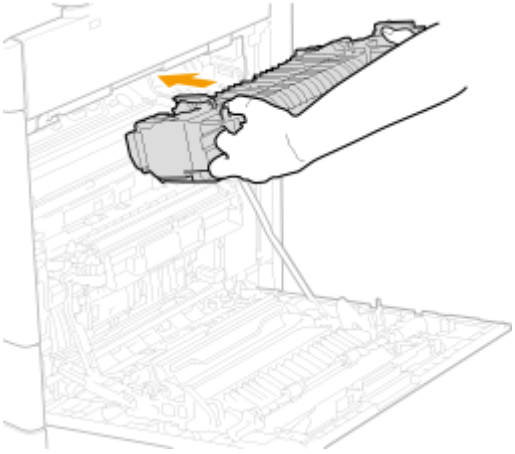
3 **Close the guide of the fixing assembly.**

4 **If paper is jammed in the area where the fixing assembly was removed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**

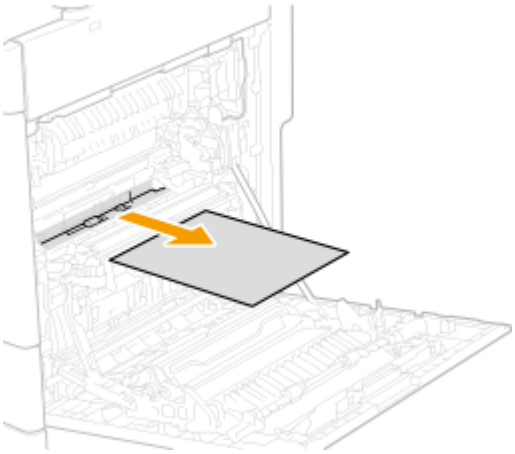


5 **Place the fixing unit back into position.**

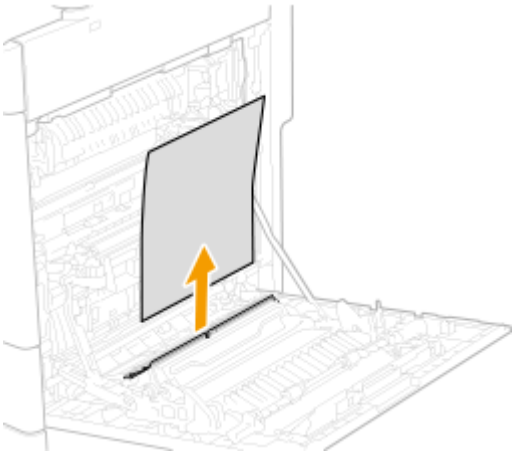
- Hold the light blue part of the fixing assembly with fingers of both hands and push the fixing assembly straight in until you hear a click.



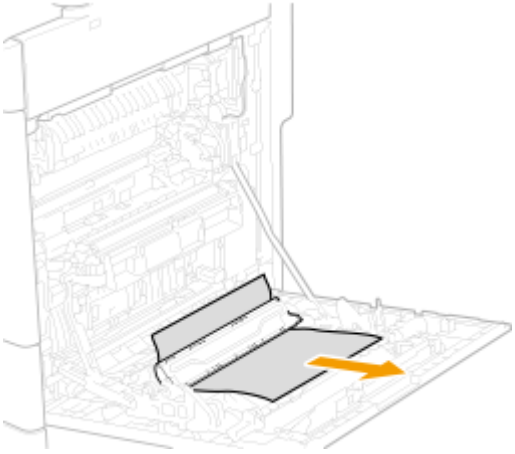
6 **If paper is jammed around the feed roller, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



7 **If paper is jammed in the multi-purpose tray paper supply area, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



8 **If paper is jammed in the duplex unit, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



9 Close the right cover of the main unit.

NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

- Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the right cover is securely closed.

Paper Jams in a Paper Source

ERJ8-01U

Check the paper jam location on the screen, and follow the procedure below to remove the paper.

Clearing Paper Jams in Paper Drawers 1(P. 103)
Clearing Paper Jams in Paper Drawers 2, 3 and 4 (Optional)(P. 104)

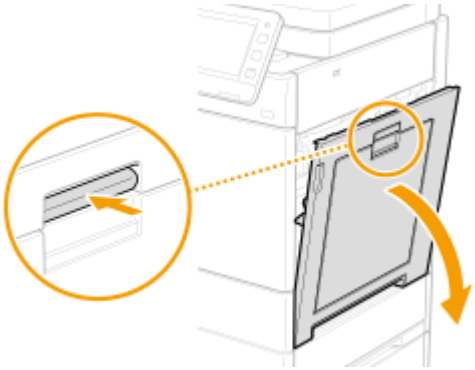
NOTE

Confirm before handling

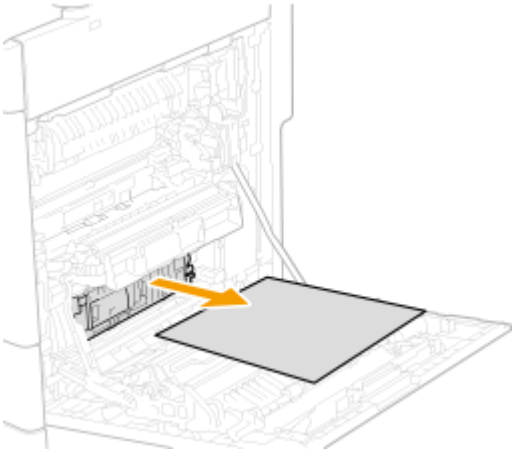
- Before starting the operation to clear paper jams, confirm that the covers and paper drawers of the machine and optional equipment are closed.

Clearing Paper Jams in Paper Drawers 1

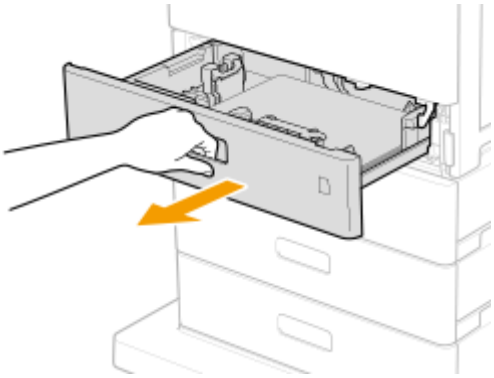
1 **Push the lever and open the right cover of the main unit.**



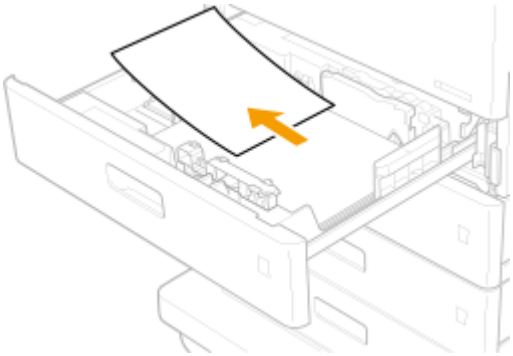
2 **If paper is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



3 **Pull out the paper drawer 1 until it stops.**



4 **If paper is jammed inside paper drawer 1, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.**



5 **Set the paper drawer 1.**

6 **Close the right cover of the main unit.**

NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

- Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the right cover of the main unit is securely closed.

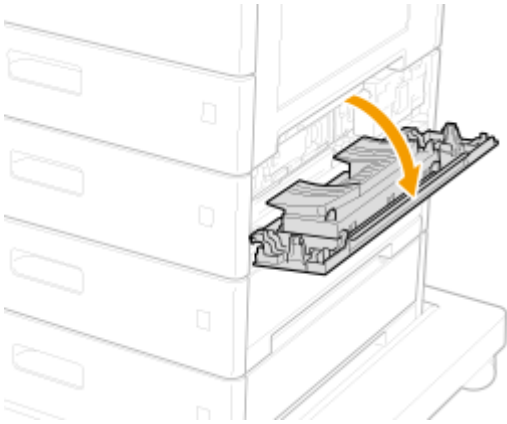
Clearing Paper Jams in Paper Drawers 2, 3 and 4 OP

NOTE

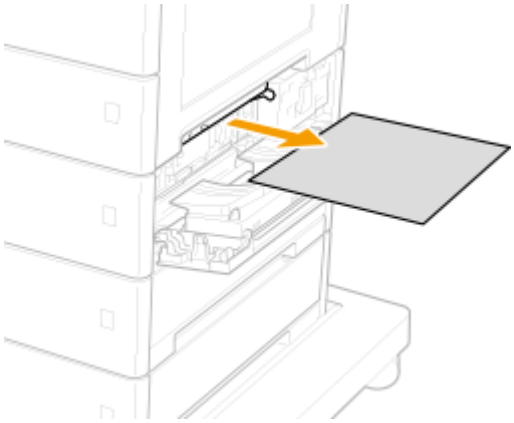
- Remove jammed paper in Paper Drawers 3 and 4 with the same procedure as Paper Drawer 2.

1 **Check whether paper is jammed inside the right cover of the paper drawer.**

1 **Open the right cover of the paper drawer.**

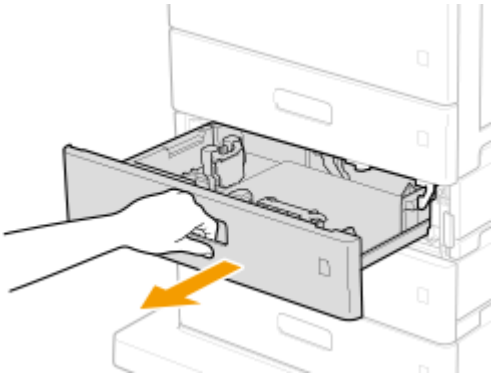


2 If paper is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.

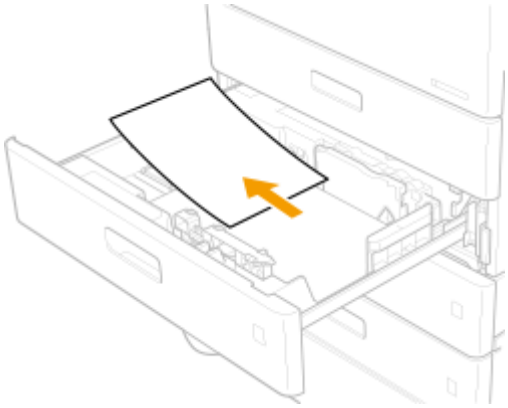


2 Check whether paper is jammed inside the paper drawer.

1 Pull out the paper drawer toward you.



2 If paper is jammed, gently pull it out in the direction of the arrow.



3 **Set the paper drawer.**

4 **Close the right cover of the paper drawer.**

NOTE:

When the message is still displayed

- Paper may be jammed in other locations. Check other locations, and remove jammed paper if any. If the message is still displayed, check whether the right cover of the paper drawer is securely closed.

Options

ERJ8-01W

The functionality of the machine can be expanded by installing options to the machine.

NOTE

- For information on system-related optional equipment, see **System Options(P. 1271)** .

■Available Options

Optional Equipment(P. 108)

■Finding Options According to Your Purposes

To add paper drawers

Cassette Module-AL(P. 109)
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA(P. 110)

To use a support tool when closing the feeder

ADF Access Handle-A(P. 111)

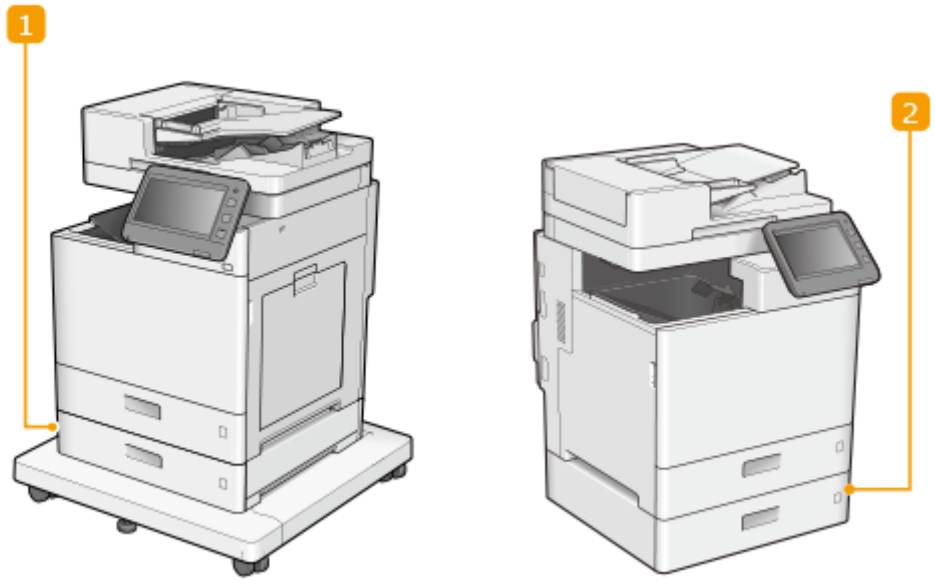
NOTE

- Some of the settings may not be displayed depending on the configuration of optional equipment installed on the machine.

Optional Equipment

ERJ8-01X

By combining options, you can use functions more efficiently.



1 Cassette Feeding Unit-BA

Load frequently used paper in the paper drawer of this product. **Cassette Feeding Unit-BA(P. 110)**

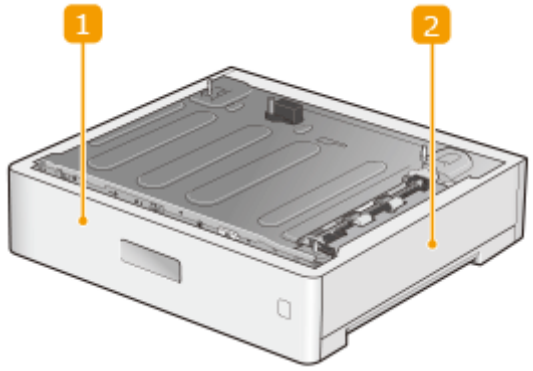
2 Cassette Module-AL

Load frequently used paper in the paper drawer of this product. **Cassette Module-AL(P. 109)**

Cassette Module-AL

ERJ8-01Y

Enables you to add a paper drawer. Loading different sized paper in the optional paper drawer enables reduced work for switching paper.



1 Paper drawer Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

Load Paper.

2 Right cover of the paper drawer

Open this cover when clearing a paper jam inside the machine. **Paper Jams in a Paper Source(P. 103)**

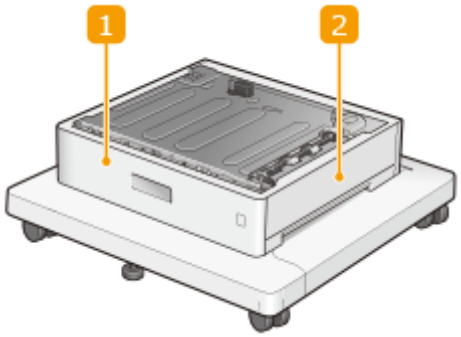
NOTE

- Up to two units of the Cassette Module-AL can be attached. The Cassette Feeding Unit-BA can be attached further so that up to three paper sources can be added.
- See the Setup Guide for the attaching procedure of the Cassette Module-AL.

Cassette Feeding Unit-BA

ERJ8-020

Enables you to add a paper drawer. Loading different sized paper in the optional paper drawer enables reduced work for switching paper.



1 Paper drawer Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

Load Paper.

2 Right cover of the paper drawer

Open this cover when clearing a paper jam inside the machine. **Paper Jams in a Paper Source(P. 103)**

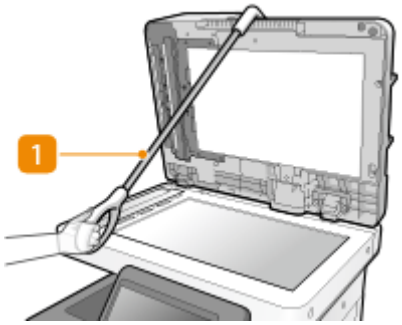
NOTE

- Up to two units of the Cassette Module-AL can be attached on top of the Cassette Feeding Unit-BA.
- See the Setup Guide for the attaching procedure of the Cassette Module-AL and the Cassette Feeding Unit-BA.

ADF Access Handle-A

ERJ8-022

This option helps you to close the feeder.



1 ADF access handle

Hook the edge of the handle to the tip of the feeder to gently close it.

Hardware Specifications

ERJ8-023

This section presents the specifications of the main unit and optional equipment of this product. Note that the specifications are subject to change without notice for product improvement or future release.

NOTE

- To check the system specifications for this product, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

■ Machine Specifications

Main Unit(P. 113)
2-Sided Single Pass Feeder(P. 116)
Available Paper(P. 118)

■ Specifications of Optional Equipment

Cassette Module-AL(P. 126)
Cassette Feeding Unit-BA(P. 127)

Main Unit

ERJ8-024

Name	Canon MF851Cdw
Type	Desktop
Resolution for Reading	• 600 dpi x 600 dpi • 300 dpi x 600 dpi • 300 dpi x 300 dpi
Resolution for Writing	600 dpi x 600 dpi
Number of Tones	256
Acceptable Originals	**Sizes of Original** Up to 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm **Types of Original** • Sheet and book
Copy Size/Copy Paper	**Paper Sizes** **Paper Drawer** • **Max**: 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm • **Min**: 101.6 mm x 148.0 mm **Multi-Purpose Tray** • **Max**: 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm • **Min**: 76.0 mm x 127.0 mm **Margin** • **Top**: 5.0 mm ± 2.0 mm • **Left**: 2.5 mm (A4) / 4.2 mm (LTR, LGL) ± 2.0 mm **Paper Weight** • **Paper Drawer**: 60 g/m² to 200 g/m² • **Multi-Purpose Tray**: 60 g/m² to 216 g/m²
Paper Type	**Available Paper(P. 118)**
Warm-Up Time *1	**After Powering ON** • **When < Quick Startup Settings for Main Power > is set to < On >:** 10 seconds or less*2 • **When < Quick Startup Settings for Main Power > is set to < Off >:** 50 seconds or less*3 **Returning from the Sleep mode** 10 seconds or less
First Copy Time	• Color: 6.8 seconds or less • Black and White: 6.2 seconds or less

Copy Speed *4(Plain A4/LTR, 100%)	• 43 sheets/minute (A4) • 45 sheets/minute (LTR)
Scanning Speed (A4/LTR)	**Full Color** • 1.42 seconds/sheet (A4) • 1.33 seconds/sheet (LTR) **Black-and-White** • 1.42 seconds/sheet (A4) • 1.33 seconds/sheet (LTR)
Magnification	**Regular Paper Size** 400%, 200%, 141.4%, 100%, 70.7%, 50%, 25% **Magnification error of Direct (100%)** • **Vertical:** ±1.3% or less • **Horizontal:** ±1.3% or less **Zoom** 25% to 400% (in 1% increments)
Paper Feeding System/Capacity *5	**Paper Drawer** • 550 sheets (80 g/m² / 75 g/m²) • 640 sheets (64 g/m²) **Multi-Purpose Tray** • 100 sheets (80 g/m² / 75 g/m² / 64 g/m²) • Coated Paper: 1 sheet (120 g/m² to 200 g/m²) • Paper other than above: height 10 mm or less
Inner Tray Capacity *5	65.2 mm or less in height or 400 sheets (64 g/m² / 75 g/m² / 80 g/m²)
Multiple Copies	999 sheets
Power Source	220 V - 240 V a.c., 50/60 Hz, 4.4 A
Power Consumption	**Maximum Power Consumption** 1,760 W **When the machine is in the Sleep mode** 1.5 W **When the main power switch is turned OFF** • **When <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power> is set to <On>**: 1.5 W • **When <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power> is set to <Off>**: 0.4 W
Dimensions (W x D x H)	500 mm x 603 mm x 645 mm
Weight (Toner cartridges included)	**Main Unit** Approximately 44.0 kg

Installation Space (W x D)	770 mm x 847 mm (When the paper drawer is pulled out and the multi-purpose tray is opened.)
Memory Capacity	**RAM**: 2.5 GB **eMMC**: 30 GB
Environmental Conditions	**Temperature**: 10 °C to 30 °C **Humidity**: 20 % to 80 % RH (no condensation)

*1 May vary depending on the environment and conditions under which the machine is being used.

*2 It takes 4 seconds until the key operation on the touch panel display is available. Depending on the situations, the machine does not startup quickly.

*3 It takes 40 seconds or less until the key operation on the touch panel display is available.

*4 The copy speed on A4/LTR size plain paper on one-side printing is measured during continuous copying. Copy speeds vary depending on the output resolution, the paper type and size, and the paper feeding direction. Copy speeds on smaller paper sizes may be slower. Plus, the machine may experience downtime or decrease the copy speed in the middle of a continuous copy run to adjust the temperature inside the machine or maintain the optimal print quality.

*5 May vary depending on the installation environment and paper to use.

2-Sided Single Pass Feeder

ERJ8-025

Original Feeding Mechanism	Automatic Document Feeder
Original Size/Type	**Size of Originals** **Max**: 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm*1*2 **Min**: 48.0 mm x 128.0 mm*3 **Weight of Originals** **Full Color**: • **1-sided/2-sided Scanning**: 64 g/m² to 128 g/m² **Black-and-White**: • **1-sided Scanning (A/B Series)**: 42 g/m² to 128 g/m² • **1-sided Scanning (Inch Series)**: 50 g/m² to 128 g/m² • **2-sided Scanning**: 50 g/m² to 128 g/m² **Business card originals**: 80 g/m² to 220 g/m² (0.1 mm to 0.23 mm thick) **Narrow width originals smaller than A6R except for business card:** 50 g/m² to 128 g/m² **Long originals**: 60 g/m² to 90 g/m²
Original Tray Capacity	• 100 sheets (80 g/m² / 75 g/m² / 64 g/m²) • 10 sheets (50 g/m² or less) • 10 mm in height or less (more than 80 g/m²) • **Business card originals**: 25 sheets • **Long originals**: 1 sheets
Original Scanning Speed (A4/LTR)	**1-sided Scanning** **Scanning (300 dpi x 300 dpi)** • **Full Color**: 95 pages/minute (A4) 100 pages/minute (LTR) • **Black-and-White**: 95 pages/minute (A4) 100 pages/minute (LTR) **Copying (600 dpi x 600 dpi)** • **Full Color**: 50 pages/minute (A4) 50 pages/minute (LTR) • **Black-and-White**: 95 pages/minute (A4) 100 pages/minute (LTR) **2-sided Scanning** **Scanning (300 dpi x 300 dpi)** • **Full Color**: 190 pages/minute (A4) 200 pages/minute (LTR) • **Black-and-White**: 190 pages/minute (A4) 200 pages/minute (LTR) **Copying (600 dpi x 600 dpi)** • **Full Color**: 100 pages/minute (A4)

	100 pages/minute (LTR) • **Black-and-White**: 140 pages/minute (A4) 145 pages/minute (LTR)

*1 Long Original: 355.6 mm to 630.0 mm (only one original for one-sided scanning)

*2 Business card originals: 55.0 mm x 91.0 mm

*3 Business card originals: 48.0 mm x 85.0 mm

Available Paper

ERJ8-026

The paper types that can be used with this machine are shown in the following table.
For available paper with options attached, see the specifications of respective options.
Also, confirm the precautions regarding paper use.

- **Supported Paper Sizes(P. 118)**
- **Supported Paper Types(P. 122)**
- **Paper Sizes That Can Be Detected Automatically(P. 123)**
- **Unusable Paper(P. 123)**
- **Precautions Regarding Paper(P. 124)**
- **Storing Paper Printed With the Machine(P. 124)**

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper Sizes	Paper Source (Standard)		Paper Source (Optional)	
	Paper Drawer 1	Multi-Purpose Tray	Cassette Module-AL	Cassette Feeding Unit-BA
A4	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5R	✓	✓	✓	✓
A6	✓	✓	✓	✓
B5	✓	✓	✓	✓
B6	✓	✓	✓	✓
16K	✓	✓	✓	✓
LTR	✓	✓	✓	✓
LGL	✓	✓	✓	✓
3x5	-	✓	-	-
STMT	✓	✓	✓	✓
EXEC	✓	✓	✓	✓
FOOLSCAP/FOLIO	✓	✓	✓	✓
Custom Size (76.0 mm x 127.0 mm to 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm)	✓*1	✓*2	✓*1	✓*1

Paper Sizes	Paper Source (Standard)		Paper Source (Optional)	
	Paper Drawer 1	Multi-Purpose Tray	Cassette Module-AL	Cassette Feeding Unit-BA
No.10 (COM10)	-	✓	-	-
ISO-C5	-	✓	-	-
DL	-	✓	-	-
Monarch	-	✓	-	-
Nagagata 3	-	✓	-	-
Nagagata 4	-	✓	-	-
Nagagata 40	-	✓	-	-
Yougatanaga 3	-	✓	-	-

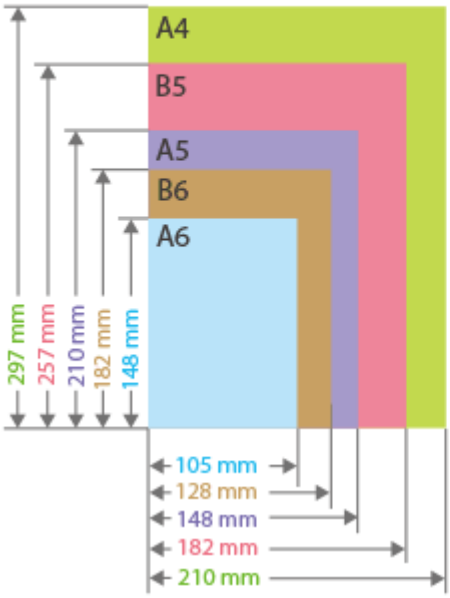
*1 You can use custom size settings ranging from 101.6 mm x 148.0 mm to 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm.

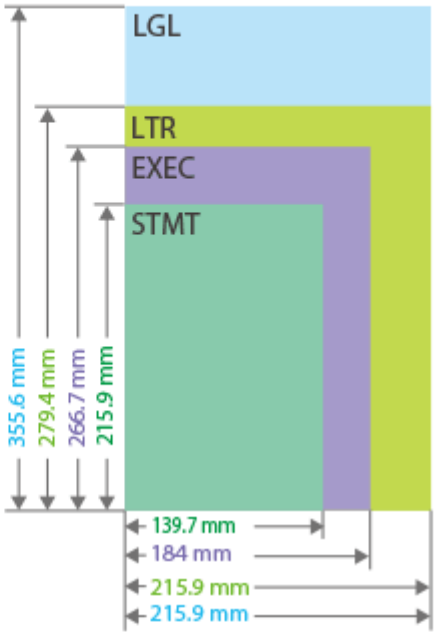
*2 You can use custom size settings ranging from 76.0 mm x 127.0 mm to 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm.

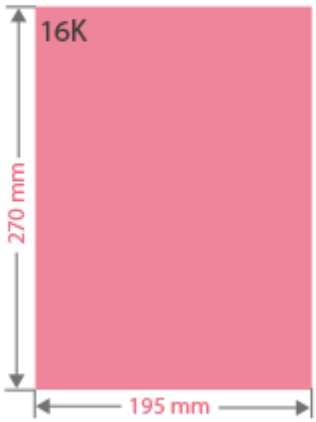
NOTE

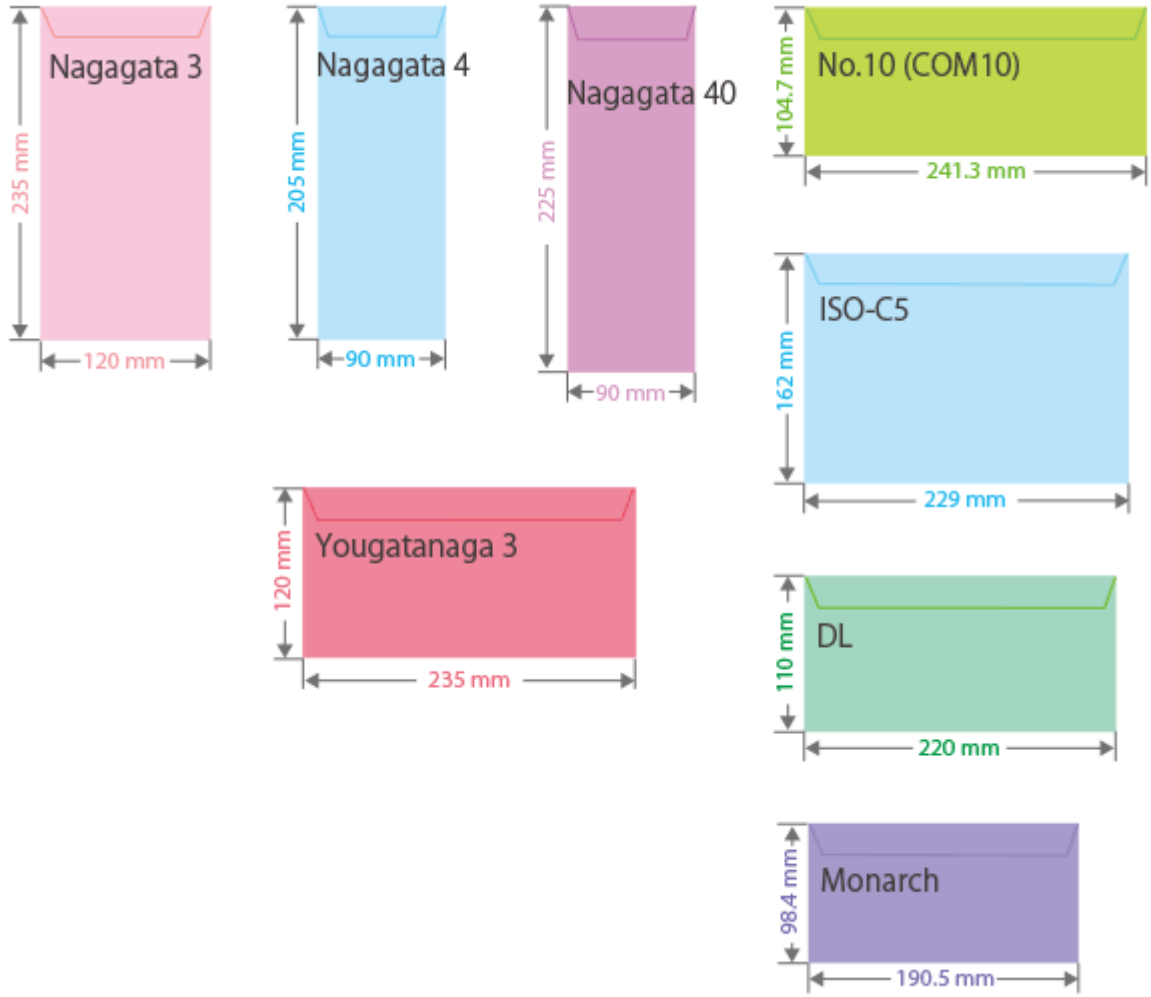
Paper sizes supported by this machine

- The following table shows most of the sizes of paper and envelope that can be used with the machine.


A4
B5
A5
B6
A6
297 mm
257 mm
210 mm
182 mm
148 mm
105 mm
128 mm
148 mm
182 mm
210 mm


LGL
LTR
EXEC
STMT
355.6 mm
279.4 mm
266.7 mm
215.9 mm
139.7 mm
184 mm
215.9 mm
215.9 mm


16K
270 mm
195 mm



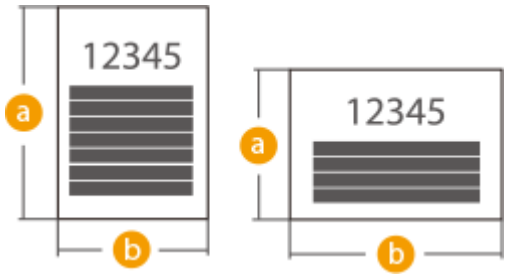
- Other supported paper sizes are as follows.

FOOLSCAP/FOLIO (215.9 mm x 330.2 mm)

3" x 5" (76.2 mm x 127.0 mm)

"Vertical" side and "Horizontal" side of paper

- In the User's Guide, regardless of the paper orientation, the side of paper perpendicular (a) to the front of the machine is referred to as the "vertical" side while the side parallel (b) to the front of the machine is referred to as the "horizontal" side.



- In the User's Guide, loading paper with the longer side perpendicular to the front of the machine is referred to as placing in "portrait orientation" while loading paper with the longer side horizontal to the front of the machine is referred to as placing in "landscape orientation."

Portrait orientation Landscape orientation



Supported Paper Types

Chlorine-free paper can be used with this machine.

Paper Type	Paper Weight	Paper Source (Standard)		Paper Source (Optional)	
		Paper Drawer 1	Multi-Purpose Tray	Cassette Module-AL	Cassette Feeding Unit-BA
Thin	60 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Plain 1	61 to 74 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Plain 2	75 to 90 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Plain 3	91 to 105 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Heavy 1	106 to 163 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Heavy 2	164 to 216 g/m²	-	✓	-	-
Color	61 to 74 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Recycled 1 *1	61 to 74 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Recycled 2 *1	75 to 90 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Coated 1	120 to 130 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Coated 2	131 to 163 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Coated 3	164 to 200 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Labels	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pre-Punched 1*1	61 to 74 g/m²	✓	-	✓	✓
Pre-Punched 2*2	75 to 84 g/m²	✓	-	✓	✓
Letterhead 1	61 to 74 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓

Paper Type	Paper Weight	Paper Source (Standard)		Paper Source (Optional)	
		Paper Drawer 1	Multi-Purpose Tray	Cassette Module-AL	Cassette Feeding Unit-BA
Letterhead 2	75 to 90 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Letterhead 3	91 to 105 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Letterhead 4	106 to 163 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Letterhead 5	164 to 216 g/m²	-	✓	-	-
Bond 1	60 to 74 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Bond 2	75 to 105 g/m²	✓	✓	✓	✓
Envelope	-	-	✓	-	-

*1 You can use 100% recycled paper.

*2 You can use A4 or letter size paper.

■ Paper Available for Two-Sided Copying/Two-Sided Printing

- When performing 2-sided copying or 2-sided printing, use paper that meets the following requirements.

Paper size: A4, B5, A5R, LGL, LTR, EXEC, 16K, Custom Size (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm to 216.0 mm x 355.6 mm)

Paper type: Thin, Plain 1, Plain 2, Plain 3, Heavy 1, Recycled 1, Recycled 2, Coated 1, Coated 2, Coated 3, Pre-Punched 1, Pre-Punched 2, Letterhead 1, Letterhead 2, Letterhead 3, Letterhead 4, Color, Bond 1, and Bond 2

Paper weight: 60 g/m² to 200 g/m²

If using other paper, use <2nd Side of 2-Sided Page> to copy/print on the back side of printed paper.

■ Paper Sizes That Can Be Detected Automatically

- Paper drawer: A4, B5, A5R, LGL, LTR, EXEC, FOOLSCAP/FOLIO
- Cassette Module-AL: A4, B5, A5R, LGL, LTR, EXEC, FOOLSCAP/FOLIO
- Cassette Feeding Unit-BA: A4, B5, A5R, LGL, LTR, EXEC, FOOLSCAP/FOLIO

Unusable Paper

Before printing, check whether the paper to use is suitable. Do not use the following types of paper, as they can cause paper jams or printing errors:

- Wrinkled, creased, curled, torn, or damp paper*1
- Thin straw paper, very thin paper, coarse paper, glossy paper
- Paper with glue or other adhesive sticking out or label paper whose back side can be easily peeled off
- Paper printed by a thermal transfer printer, back side of paper printed by a thermal transfer printer

*1 Printing on damp paper may cause steam to be emitted from the output area or water droplets to adhere to the output part, but this does not indicate a malfunction. This is because the water contained in the paper evaporates due to the heat generated when the toner fixes to the paper. This is more likely to occur when the room temperature is low.

Precautions Regarding Paper

IMPORTANT

When using paper

- Only use paper that has fully acclimatized to the environment in which this machine is installed. Using paper that has been stored under different temperature or humidity may cause paper jams or result in poor print quality.

Paper handling and storage

- We recommend using the paper immediately after opening the package. Rewrap any remaining paper in its original package, and store it on a flat surface.
- Keep the paper wrapped in its original package to protect the paper from moisture or dryness.
- Do not store the paper in such a way that may cause it to curl or fold.
- Do not store the paper vertically or stack too much paper.
- Do not store the paper in direct sunlight, or in a place subject to high humidity, dryness, or drastic changes in temperature or humidity.

NOTE

When printing on paper that has absorbed moisture

- Steam may emit from the paper output area, or water droplets may form around the paper output area. There is nothing unusual about any of these occurrences, which occur when the heat generated from fixing toner on the paper causes moisture in the paper to evaporate (most likely to occur at low room temperatures).

Storing Paper Printed With the Machine

Be aware of the following precautions when handling and storing paper printed using the machine.

■ Storing Printed Paper

- Store the paper on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper together with items made from PVC (polyvinyl chloride), such as clear folders. The toner may melt, causing paper to become stuck to PVC-based material.
- Store paper so that it does not become folded or wrinkled. Doing so may cause the toner to come off.
- If you intend to store paper for long periods (two or more years), preserve them in a binder, etc.
- Long-term storage may cause paper to discolor, which in turn may cause print to appear discolored.
- Do not store paper in places with high temperatures.

■ Precautions when sticking printouts with adhesive

- Be sure to use insoluble adhesive.
- Test the adhesive on an unneeded printout before using.

- Before stacking printouts that stuck with adhesive, check that the adhesive completely dried.

Cassette Module-AL

ERJ8-027

Paper Size/Weight/Type	**Available Paper(P. 118)**
Paper Drawers Capacity	• 550 sheets (80 g/m² / 75 g/m²) • 640 sheets (64 g/m²)
Dimensions	500 mm x 470 mm x 120 mm (when attached to the main unit)
Weight	Approximately 6.0 kg

Cassette Feeding Unit-BA

ERJ8-028

Paper Size/Weight/Type	**Available Paper(P. 118)**
Paper Drawers Capacity	• 550 sheets (80 g/m² / 75 g/m²) • 640 sheets (64 g/m²)
Dimensions	657 mm x 642 mm x 235 mm (when attached to the main unit)
Weight	Approximately 16.0 kg

Setting Up

Setting Up 129
Preparations Required Before Use 130
Preventing Unauthorized Access 131
Setting up Using the Setup Guide 133
Logging in as an Administrator 142
Setting the Date/Time 144
Setting up the Network Environment 146
Canceling the Network Setting Lock 149
Selecting the Network Connection Method 150
Connecting to a Wired LAN 152
Connecting to a Wireless LAN 153
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS Push Button Mode 155
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS PIN Code Mode 156
Setting Up Connection by Selecting a Wireless Router 157
Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings 158
Checking the SSID and Network Key 159
Setting an IP Address 160
Setting an IPv4 Address 161
Setting an IPv6 Address 163
Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line 166
Adapting to the Network Environment 167
Making Ethernet Settings 168
Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network 170
Making DNS Settings 171
Making SMB Settings 176
Making WINS Settings 178
Registering the LDAP Server 179
Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP 183
Setting Static Routing 187
Other Network Settings 189
Configuring System Data Communication 191
Installing Drivers 194
Fax Line Settings 195
Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication 197
Using a Cloud Mail Server with OAuth 2.0 202
Connecting to the Other Devices 206

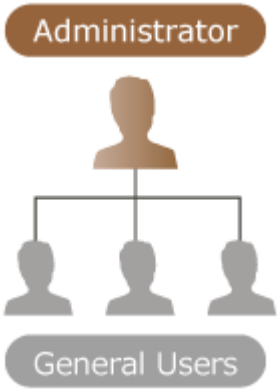
Setting Up

ERJ8-029

Setting up the usage environment is required before using each function of the machine. First, confirm the processes to complete "setting up" prior to actual setup. **Preparations Required Before Use(P. 130)**

■Administrators and General Users

To manage the machine, it is recommended to construct a system in which someone is appointed as an administrator and general users operate the machine under the management of an administrator. Administrators decide the rules for using the machine and operate important setups such as networks and security. Administrators set the access for each user when necessary.



TIPS

Carrying out the initial setup of the machine (Setup Guide)

- You can easily set up to start using the machine, such as setting the date and time and networks, by following the on-screen instructions. **Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)**

Preparations Required Before Use

ERJ8-02A

Set up the machine in order from steps 1 through 4. For details, click a link to display the corresponding pages. To use the machine safely, at the same time, confirm **Preventing Unauthorized Access(P. 131)** .

Step 1	**Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)**



Step 2	**Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)**

- Set up the network environment not included on the Setup Guide. If you do not start the Setup Guide, start setting up from this procedure.



Step 3	**Installing Drivers(P. 194)**



Step 4	**Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**



TIPS

Setting from the Remote UI

- When you complete setup for the network environment, you can set up the machine from Remote UI efficiently. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

Saving setup time by importing data from other machines

- If you have any other Canon multifunction printer and save (export) its registered setup data to a computer beforehand, setup contents such as address book and paper type setting can be immediately used by importing them to the machine. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

Preventing Unauthorized Access

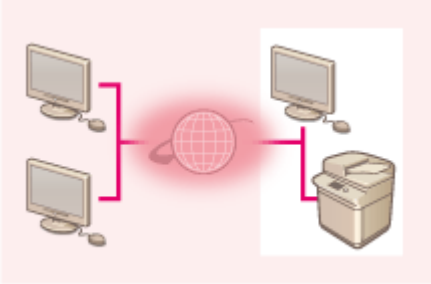
ERJ8-02C

This section describes preventive measures against unauthorized access from external networks. For administrators and users that are using the machine in a network environment, make sure to read this section before use. Connecting to networks enables you to use various functions such as printing, remote operation from a computer, sending scanned documents through the Internet, etc. However, for protection against unauthorized access from an external network, security measures are essential. This section describes some countermeasures against unauthorized access, which must be implemented before using the machine with a network environment.

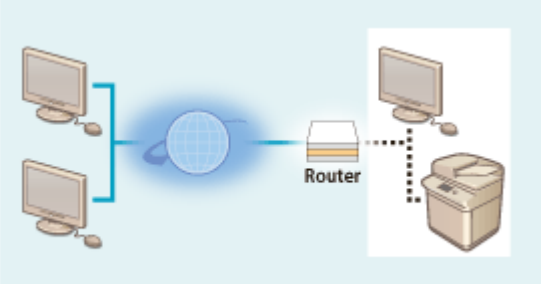
Implementing Private IP Addresses(P. 131)
Limiting Communication via a Firewall(P. 132)
Setting up TLS Encryption Communication(P. 132)
Managing the Machine's Information via Passwords(P. 132)

Implementing Private IP Addresses

An IP address is a number that is assigned to a computer on a network. A "global IP address" is used for Internet connections. A "private IP address" is used for local area networks such as an office LAN. If your IP address is a global IP address, unauthorized users on the Internet can attempt to access your local network and risks such as information leakage become larger. If your address is a private address, only users on a local area network such as the office LAN have access.



Global IP address
Accessible from outside your network



Private IP address
Accessible only from within a local area network

Generally, when setting up an IP address, use a private IP address. For a private IP address, any addresses in the following ranges can be used. Confirm if the IP address that is currently set is a private IP address.

■ Ranges of Private IP Addresses

- 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

For information on how to confirm IP addresses, see **Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)** .

NOTE

- Even if a global IP address is set for the machine, risk of unauthorized access can be reduced by using a firewall. Consult your network administrator when you want to operate the machine using a global IP address.

Limiting Communication via a Firewall

A firewall is a system that prevents unauthorized access from external networks in order to prevent attacks or invasion into the local area network. Access from outside your local network that has potential to be a risk can be shut out beforehand by limiting communication from a specific external IP address in your network environment. **Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 645)**

Setting up TLS Encryption Communication

For TLS communication, see **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)** .

Managing the Machine's Information via Passwords

Even if the machine receives unauthorized access from a malicious third party, risk of information leakage can be greatly reduced when various information resources in the machine are protected by passwords.

Password for each function / PIN code setting

- Personal authentication management using User Authentication **Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)**
- PIN code setting for system management contents **Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)**
- PIN code settings for accessing Address Book **Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)**

These are examples of preventing unauthorized access. For other details, see **Managing the Machine(P. 578)** and carry out necessary settings according to your environment.

Setting up Using the Setup Guide

ERJ8-02E

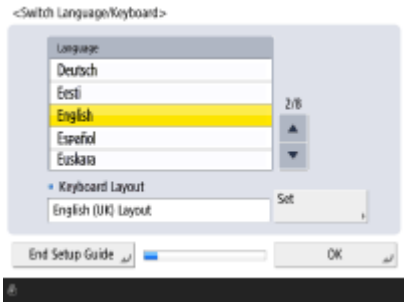
When the machine is turned ON for the first time (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**), the initial setup of the machine begins automatically. You can adjust the basic setup necessary to use the machine. Configure the basic setup in accordance with each screen, or click a link to display the corresponding page and see details.

NOTE

- It may take some time for the setting screen to be displayed.

Step 1 **Specify the language and keyboard layout.**

Select the language to be displayed on the screens. Depending on the language, you can change the layout of the keyboard that is displayed to enter characters.

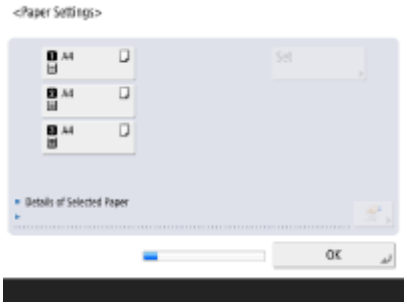


- Select the language, and press <OK>.
- To change the keyboard layout, press <Set>, select the keyboard layout, and press <OK>.
- Displaying the button for switching languages will be convenient for frequent language switching. **Switching the Displayed Language(P. 252)**

Select the country/region, and press <OK>.

Step 2 **Check the paper settings.**

Check that the paper loaded in the paper source is specified correctly.



- If the paper sizes are correct, press <OK>.
- For information on the screen and the instructions on how to change the settings, see **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)** .

- If you are not logged in as an administrator, proceed to Step 11.

Step 3 **Log in as the Administrator.**

Make an authenticated login to configure the settings that require Administrator privileges.



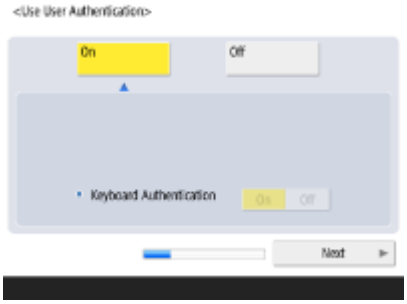
- Press <Log In>, and enter the user name and password of a user with administrator privileges. The default user name for the administrator is "Administrator" and the default password is "7654321". Press <Log In> again, and press <OK>.
- If you enter the factory default password, the screen prompting you to change the password is displayed. You can also change the password later. **Logging in as an Administrator(P. 142)**

- You can skip the settings that require Administrator privileges and proceed to the next step by pressing <Skip>. In this case, proceed to Step 11.

Step 4 **Specify the user authentication settings.**

To enhance the security of the machine, use the machine under a system that uses user authentication.

- This machine is set to use the user authentication as the login service. For more information, see **Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)** .



- Press <On> for <Use User Authentication>, press <On> for the login method to use, and press <Next>.
- If you do not use user authentication, press <Off> for <Use User Authentication>, press <OK>, and proceed to Step 5.

Specify the following settings if there are no administrators besides the "Administrator" user registered in the machine.



- To enhance the security of the machine by disabling the "Administrator" user and registering a new administrator, press <Yes>. In <Register Administrator>, enter <User Name> and <Password>, and press <OK>. Specify <E-Mail Address>,

<Department ID>, and <Display Name> as necessary. For more information, see **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)** . The "Administrator" user will be disabled the next time you log in.

- To operate as "Administrator," press <No>.



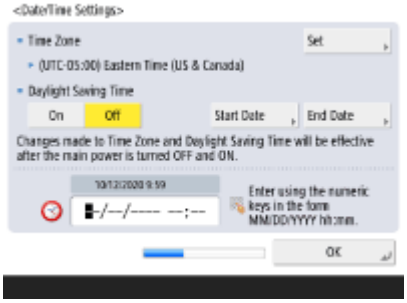
- Select the timing for displaying the login screen. If you select <Display When Func. Selected>, press <Functions> and <Color Copy/Print>, select the function to display the login screen for, and press <OK>. Also, select the setting items on the <Settings/Registration> screen to display the login screen for.
- If you select <Off> for <Keyboard Authentication>, press <OK>. Proceed to step 5.
- If you select <On> for <Keyboard Authentication>, press <Next>.



- To use authentication via numeric key entry only on the login screen, press <On>, and press <OK>.

Step 5 **Set the date and time.**

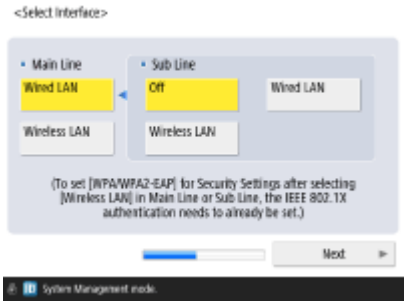
Specify the date and time of the machine.



- Enter the date and time, and press <OK>.
- Set <Time Zone> and <Daylight Saving Time> as necessary. For more information, see **Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)** .

Step 6 **Set the network connection method.**

Specify the method for connecting the machine to a network.



- You can select the method for connecting the machine to computers, etc. Select the connection method for the main line and the sub line to use, and press <Next>.
- If you selected <Wired LAN> for the main line or the sub line, proceed to step 7.
- For details on network connection methods, see **Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)** .

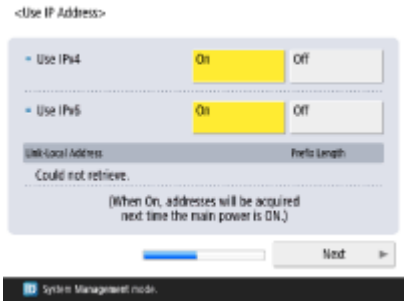
If you selected <Wireless LAN> for the main line or the sub line, specify the wireless LAN settings.



- For details on wireless LAN connections, see **Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)** .

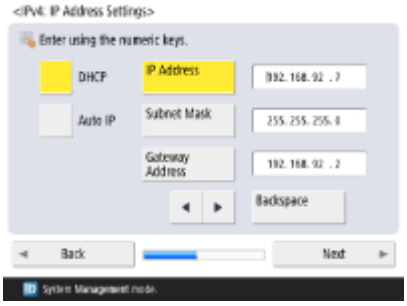
Step 7 **Set the IP address.**

Specify the settings for network connection.



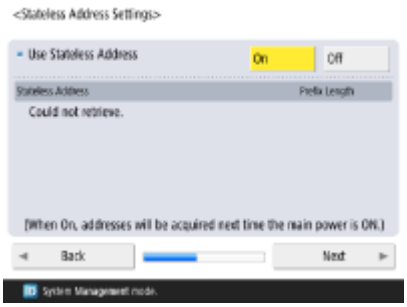
- Press <On> for <Use IPv4> or <Use IPv6>, and press <Next>. You can also use both IPv4 and IPv6.
- If you press <Off> for <Use IPv4> and <Use IPv6>, and press <OK>, skip the network settings and proceed to Step 9.

If you press <On> for <Use IPv4>, specify the following settings.



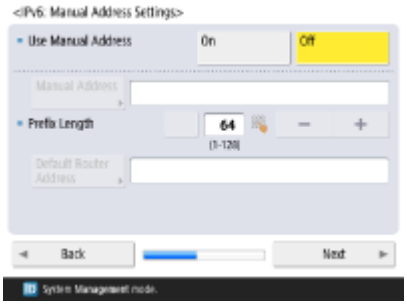
- To obtain the IP address automatically, press <DHCP> or <Auto IP>, and press <Next> or <OK>.
- To set the IP address manually, clear the selection for <DHCP> or <Auto IP>, press <IP Address>, <Subnet Mask>, and <Gateway Address> to enter each value, and press <Next> or <OK>.
- For information on the IPV4 address settings, see **Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)** .

If you press <On> for <Use IPv6>, specify the following settings.



- Press <On> to use the stateless address or <Off> to not use the stateless address, and press <Next>.
- For information on the IPv6 address, see **Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)** .

After specifying the stateless address, specify the following settings.



- Press <On> to use the manual address or <Off> no not use the manual address, and press <Next>.
- To use the manual address, press <Manual Address>, <Prefix Length>, and <Default Router Address> to enter each value.

After specifying the manual address, specify the following settings.



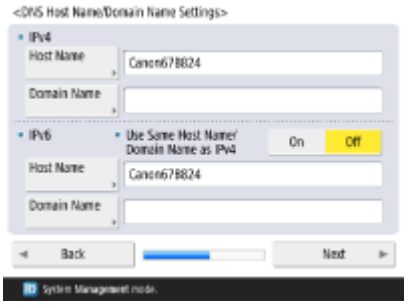
- Press <On> to use DHCPv6 or <Off> to not use DHCPv6, and press <OK>.

Step 8 **Specify the DNS settings.**

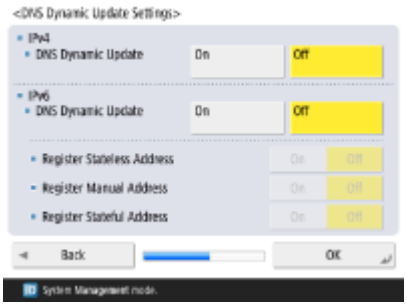
Specify the DNS server address, DNS host name, and DNS domain name.



- Press <Primary DNS Server> and <Secondary DNS Server>, enter IPV4/IPv6 address for the DNS server, and press <Next>.
- For information on the settings of the DNS server address, see **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)** .



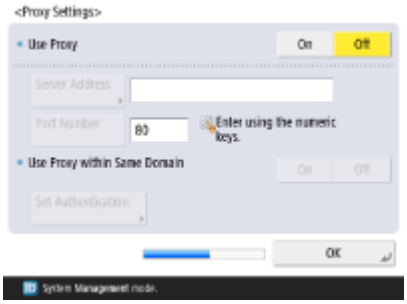
- Press <Host Name> to enter the name of the machine (host name). Press <Domain Name> to enter the domain name that the machine belongs to, and press <Next>.
- If the settings of IPv4 and IPv6 are the same, press <On> for <Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4>.



- To update automatically using the DNS Dynamic Update Settings, press <On> for <DNS Dynamic Update>, and press <OK>.
- If you set <DNS Dynamic Update> for <IPv6> to <On>, select <On> for the items to register automatically.

Step 9 **Specify the Proxy settings.**

Specify the necessary settings to use the Proxy.

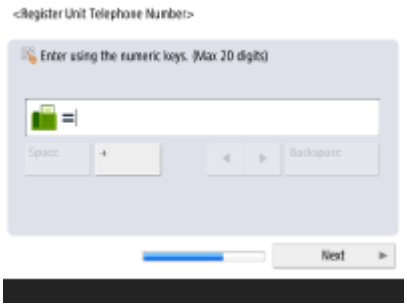


- To use the Proxy, press <On>, press <Server Address> and <Port Number> to enter each value, and press <OK>.
- If you set <Use Proxy within Same Domain> to <On>, press <Set Authentication> to specify the Proxy authentication settings.
- For information on the Proxy settings, see **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)** .

Step 10 **Specify the fax settings.**

Specify the necessary settings to use the fax function.

- If your machine does not have a fax function, proceed to Step 11.



- Enter the fax number, and press <Next>.
- For information on the fax settings, see **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)** .



- Press <Set>, enter the user name, and press <Next>.



- Select the line type, and press <Next>.



- Press <Auto RX> when using the fax function only or <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)> when a telephone or handset is connected to the machine, and press <Next>.

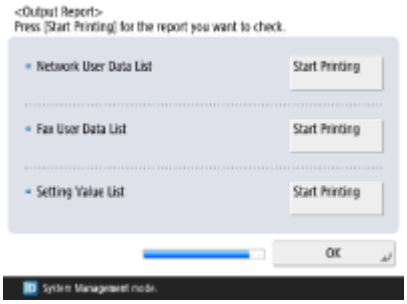
Step 11 **Perform the automatic gradation adjustment.**

Adjust the gradation to print clearly.

- Depending on the machine, the procedure differs. For information on the automatic gradation adjustment, see **Adjusting Gradation(P. 1069)** .

Step 12 **Print a report.**

You can print the network user list, fax user data list, and adjusted value list.



- Press <Start Printing> for the report you want to print.
- When printing is complete, or if you do not print a list, press <OK>.

Step 13 **Complete the Setup Guide.**

When finishing the Setup Guide, restart the machine to apply the specified settings.



- Press <OK> to restart the machine.

NOTE

- If you do not use the Setup Guide, press <End Setup Guide> in Step 1.
- You can press (Settings/Register) to individually specify settings configured during the Setup Guide at a later time.

■Starting the Setup Guide later

IMPORTANT

The Setup Guide cannot be started in the following cases.

- If the user authentication or department ID authentication is set.
- If the DepartmentID Authentication is set.
- If the authentication with a card is performed.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <Start Setup Guide> ▶ <Start>

NOTE

- If you start the Setup Guide later and log in as an administrator, Step 3 will not be displayed. Proceed to Step 4.

Logging in as an Administrator

ERJ8-02F

Log in as an administrator, otherwise important items regarding the network and security cannot be set. To set up the user management after the setup is complete, you need to log in as an administrator. The default user name for the administrator is "Administrator" and the default password is "7654321". When you are going to operate the machine as "Administrator," change the current password to improve the security. The changed password should be known by the administrator only.

NOTE

- You can disable "Administrator" and make a setting to grant administrator privilege to specific users.

Initializing the administrator password

If you have forgotten the password for "Administrator," it can be returned to the default password. Press (Counter/Device Information) ▶ <Device Info./Other> ▶ <Initialize Admin. Password> ▶ enter the license key ▶ press <Start> ▶ <OK>.

- If "Administrator" is disabled, it is enabled when initializing the password. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**
- You can prohibit initialization of the administrator password. **<Prohibit Initialization of Administrator Password>(P. 1035)**

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Log In>.

3 Log in with the procedure.

■Keyboard authentication

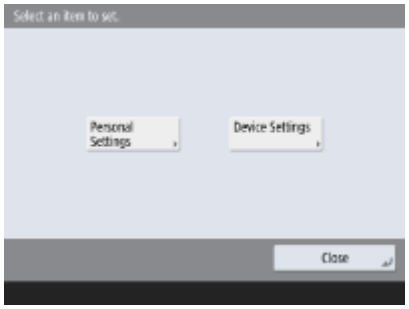
1. Set the user name and password.
   - Enter the name of a user with administrator privilege, and press <Next>.
   - Set the password and press <OK>.
2. Press <Log In>.
   - If you have not changed the administrator password, the message prompting you to change to a new password is displayed. Press <Yes> and set a new password. You need to enter the new password twice to confirm it.
   - If you have already changed the administrator password, the functions will be available after you successfully log in.

NOTE

- Log out after use.

■When logged in as an administrator

After pressing (Settings/Register), the following screen is displayed.



- If you set to <Personal Settings> and change the items that can be personalized, settings are registered as the personal settings for the users who log into the machine.
- If you set to <Device Settings>, settings are registered as the machine's settings.
- <Personal Settings> and <Device Settings> are only displayed on the <Settings/Registration> screen if you log in with administrator privileges.

LINKS

Logging into the Machine(P. 230)
Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

Setting the Date/Time

ERJ8-02H

Adjust the machine's date/time. These settings should be made properly as the date/time is used in cases such as sending an e-mail automatically at a specified time.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings> ▶ <Date/Time Settings>.

3 Enter the date/time.



a <Time Zone>

Select the time zone for your area.

To change the time zone, press <Set> and select the time zone.

NOTE

- UTC is an acronym for Universal Coordinated Time. The standard (time zone) for each country is determined on the basis of UTC. For communication via the Internet, precise time zone setting is essential.

b <Daylight Saving Time>

To set daylight saving time, press <On> and set the date/time for <Start Date> and <End Date>. To set the date, specify the day of the week and the week of the month.

NOTE

- If daylight saving time is set, the time can be put forward an hour compared to the time zone or time during a specified period in the summer.

c Date and time

Enter 4 digits for the year, 4 digits for the month and day, and 4 digits for the time in the same way that the current time appears on the display.

NOTE

- The order of the date and time may differ, depending on the country/region.
- Time is entered in 24-hour notation.
- If you make a mistake, press C (Clear) and enter again from the year.

4 Press <OK>.

IMPORTANT

- If you changed the setting of <Time Zone> or <Daylight Saving Time>, you need to restart the machine by turning the power OFF. Press the power switch to turn OFF the machine (**Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)**). When 10 or more seconds have elapsed after the touch panel display and indicators turned off, turn ON the machine again (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**).

NOTE

- If you are concerned about clock drift, periodically adjust the time of the machine.
- You can also specify to automatically synchronize the date and time with a server on the network using SNTP. **Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)**

Setting up the Network Environment

ERJ8-02J

To connect the machine to a network, connect the machine to a router using a LAN cable or Wi-Fi and specify a unique IP address in the network. To specify an IP address, there are two methods: automatic setting and manual setting. Select one of the methods that is suitable for your communication environment and devices. The machine adopts not only basic network functions, but also advanced technologies in order to flexibly cope with various environments. Carry out the necessary setup required for your environment.

IMPORTANT

For safe use

- If you connect the machine to a network without appropriate security measures, there are risks that the machine might receive unauthorized access from third parties. Set up network security to secure important data and information. **Configuring the Network Security Settings(P. 643)**

NOTE

- You can connect the machine to a computer using a USB cable (**Parts and Their Functions(P. 19)**). However, if you only connect the machine to a computer using a USB cable without connecting to a network, operations such using as a scanner or sending/transferring data from the machine to a computer are not possible.
- You can establish a wireless direct connection between the machine and mobile devices. **Connecting Directly(P. 556)**

■Confirm before handling

Follow the procedure below to make a connection to a network.

1



Confirm first.

- Are a computer and a router properly connected using a LAN cable? For details, see the instruction manual for each device or contact the manufacturers.
- Is setup of the computer network completed? If the setup is not completed, you cannot use the devices on a network even after completing the following steps.

NOTE

- Depending on your environment, you may need to change the settings of the network communication system (half-duplex/full-duplex) and Ethernet type (1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T) (**Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)**). For details, contact the network administrator.
- To confirm the MAC address, see **<Network>(P. 825)** .
- To connect to a network employing IEEE802.1X, see **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)** .

2 

Enable the network settings of the machine.

Canceling the Network Setting Lock(P. 149)

3 

Select a wired LAN or wireless LAN for connection.

Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)

4 

Connect the machine to a router.

- Is the LAN cable connector plugged into the proper place securely? Insert the connector until it clicks.
- For a wireless LAN connection, check the connection between the machine and the router.

Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)

Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)

5 

Set an IP address as necessary.

- Normally, an IP address is automatically allocated by DHCP, so this setting is not necessary. If you want to use a specific IP address or change the protocol of the automatic setting of an IP address from DHCP (initial setting) to another, this setting is necessary.

Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

6 

Confirm that proper connection is completed.

- Start the Remote UI from a computer (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**). If the Remote UI screen is displayed, the connection is completed.

NOTE

When <Sleep Mode Energy Use> is set to <Low>

- Depending on the utility software, communication may fail if the machine is in sleep mode. Press (Energy Saver) to recover from the Sleep mode before configuring this setting.

LINKS

Adapting to the Network Environment(P. 167)

Canceling the Network Setting Lock

ERJ8-02K

By default, a security lock is applied to the network settings in order to prevent unintended changes. Unlock the security lock to change them.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

NOTE

- If <Off> is selected, you cannot view or change the network settings. Also, error messages related to the network are not displayed.

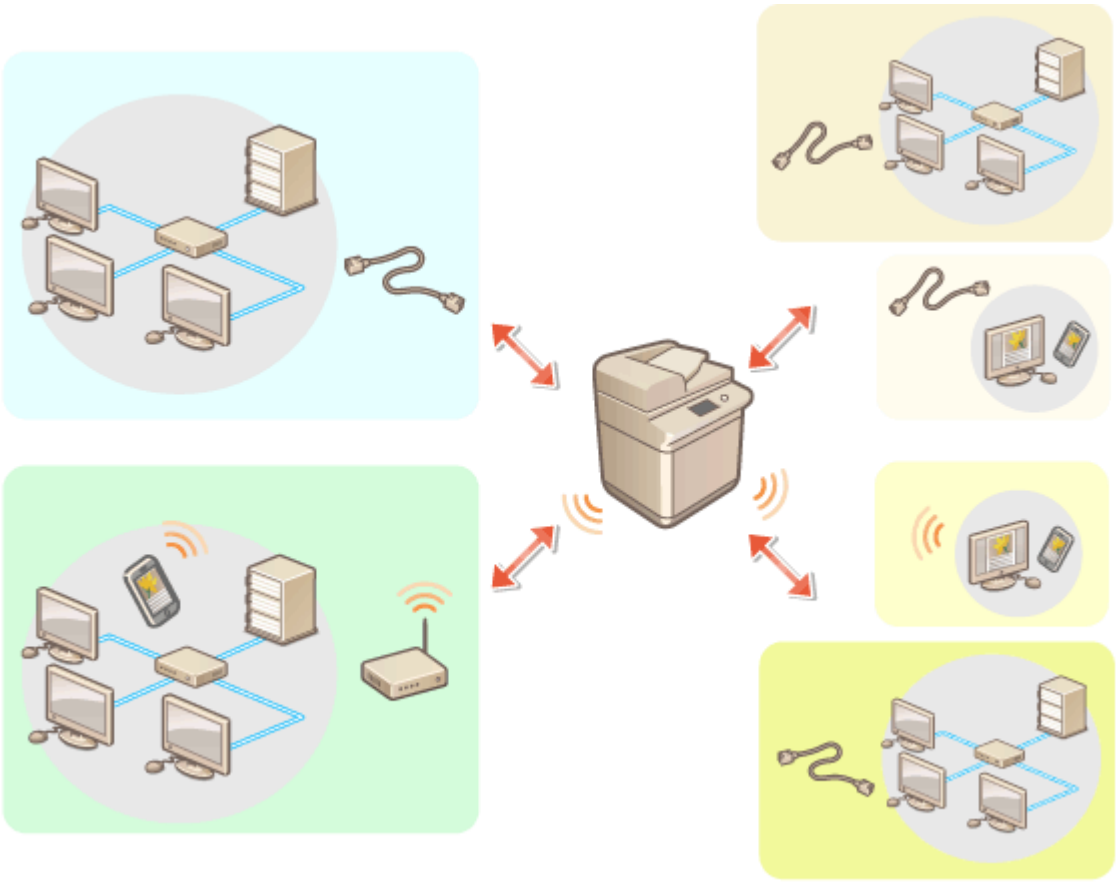
Selecting the Network Connection Method

ERJ8-02L

You can select the method for connecting the machine to computers, etc. The following connection methods are available.

- Wired LAN only
- Wireless LAN only
- Simultaneous wired LAN and wireless LAN
- Simultaneous wired LAN and another wired LAN

When using a wired LAN and a wireless LAN, or two wired LAN connections simultaneously, the primary line used in this dual network configuration is referred to as the "main line", and the secondary line is referred to as the "sub line".



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Select Interface> ▶ select the interface ▶ <OK>

IMPORTANT

- When using a sub line, see **Cautions When Using the Sub Line(P. 1206)** .
- If the wireless LAN is changed from the main line to the sub line, or from the sub line to the main line, the settings in <Wireless LAN Settings> will be cleared.

- When <Main Line> is set to <Wired LAN>, and <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off>, the machine is set to consume more power in sleep mode. **<Sleep Mode Energy Use>(P. 823)**

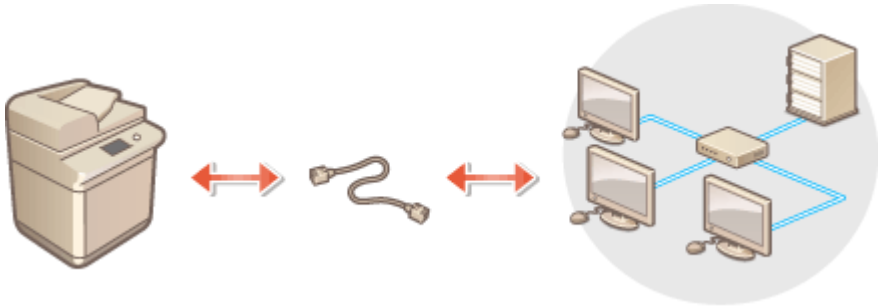
LINK

Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)
Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)

Connecting to a Wired LAN

ERJ8-02R

Connect the machine to a computer via a router using a LAN cable.



NOTE

- A router and LAN cable are not included with the machine, so please prepare them separately.
- The machine supports 1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T Ethernet.
- To make a connection using 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T, use a category 5 twisted pair cable. It is recommended to use an enhanced category 5 twisted pair cable to make a connection using 1000BASE-T.
- If devices supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX and 10BASE-T are used together, a device (such as a switching hub) supporting all of the Ethernet types you use is necessary. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.

1 Connect the machine to a router using a LAN cable.

- Push the connector in until it clicks into place.

■Connecting to a Sub-Line Wired LAN When Another Wired LAN is the Main Line

Configure the sub-line wired LAN connection when <Wired LAN> is selected for both the main line and sub line under <Select Interface>. **<Select Interface>(P. 833)**



1 Connect the USB-LAN adapter to the USB port of the machine (located towards the left side of the machine). **Parts and Their Functions(P. 19)**

IMPORTANT:

- Multiple USB-LAN adapters cannot be connected.

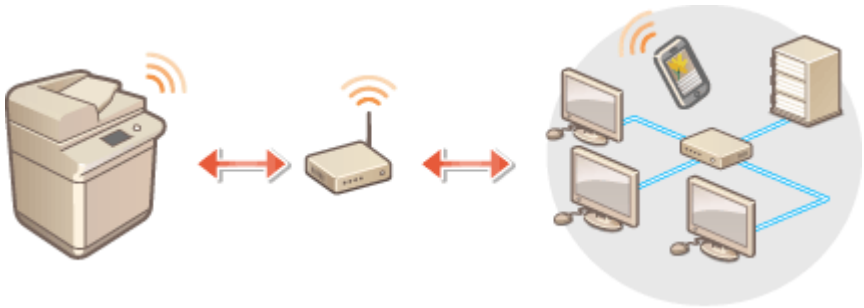
NOTE:

- For information on the USB-LAN adapters that can be used, contact your dealer or service representative.

Connecting to a Wireless LAN

ERJ8-02S

Wirelessly connect the machine to a computer or mobile device via a wireless LAN router (access point). If the wireless router is equipped with Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), configuring your network is automatic and easy. If the wireless router does not support with WPS, or if you want to specify authentication and encryption settings in detail, you need to manually set up the connection. Configure connection on the computer or mobile device side in advance.



■Setting Up the Connection Using WPS

If your wireless LAN router supports WPS, two setting modes are available: push button mode and PIN code mode.

Setting Up the Connection Using WPS Push Button Mode(P. 155)
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS PIN Code Mode(P. 156)

■Setting Up the Connection Manually

There are two manual setting methods: manually configure the setting with a wireless LAN router selected, or manually enter all the required information for wireless LAN connection. Regardless of the method, make sure that you have the required setup information, including the SSID and network key.

Setting Up Connection by Selecting a Wireless Router(P. 157)
Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings(P. 158)
Checking the SSID and Network Key(P. 159)

IMPORTANT

- Use wireless LAN connection at your own discretion and at your own risk. If the machine is connected to an unsecured network, your personal information might be leaked to a third party because radio waves used in wireless communication can go anywhere nearby, even beyond walls.
- The wireless LAN security that is supported by the machine is listed below. For the wireless security compatibility of your wireless router, see the instruction manuals for your networking devices or contact your manufacturer.
  WPA-PSK (AES-CCMP)
  WPA2-PSK (AES-CCMP)
  WPA3-SAE (AES-CCMP)
  WPA-EAP (AES-CCMP)
  WPA2-EAP (AES-CCMP)
  WPA3-EAP (AES-CCMP)
  You cannot use WPA/WPA2-EAP when connecting to a wired LAN and wireless LAN at the same time, unless IEEE 802.1X is enabled for the wired LAN.
- Depending on the network device, the operation of the wireless LAN router differs. See the instruction manuals for your networking device for help.

- When <Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption> is set to <On> (**<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>(P. 1063)**), the machine cannot be connected to the wireless LAN router without the security settings.

NOTE

- This machine does not come with a wireless router. Have the router ready.
- The wireless router must conform to IEEE 802.11b/g/n/a and be able to communication in 2.4 GHz or 5.0 GHz bandwidth. For more information, see the instruction manuals for your networking devices or contact your manufacturer.

■ Check the settings and information of the wireless LAN

Check the information you set.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN> ▶ <Wireless LAN Information>

TIPS

Connecting directly

- You can establish a direct wireless connection between a mobile device and the machine without using a wireless LAN router. **Connecting Directly(P. 556)**



Reducing the power consumption

- If you set <Power Save Mode> to <On>, you can regularly set the machine to the power saving mode to match the signal that the wireless LAN router sends. <Wireless LAN> ▶ **<Power Save Mode>(P. 864)**

Setting Up the Connection Using WPS Push Button Mode

ERJ8-02U

If your wireless router supports the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) Push Button mode, you can easily set up a connection with the WPS button on the router.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN> ▶ <Wireless LAN Settings> ▶ <WPS Push Button Mode> ▶ press and hold the WPS button on the wireless router

➡ When the wireless LAN router is detected and the configuration is complete, the screen <Connected.> will be displayed.

NOTE

- Depending on the networking device, you may need to press and hold the WPS button for 2 seconds or longer. See the instruction manuals for your networking device for help.

Setting Up the Connection Using WPS PIN Code Mode

ERJ8-02W

Some WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) routers do not support the Push Button mode. In this case, register the PIN code generated on the machine to the networking device.

Generating a PIN code on the machine

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN> ▶ <Wireless LAN Settings> ▶ <WPS PIN Code Mode>.

➡ A PIN code is generated.

Registering the PIN code to the wireless router

Register the PIN code within two minutes after the PIN code is generated. For details, see the instruction manual for your networking device.

1 Access a wireless router from a computer.

2 Display the screen for entering a WPS PIN code.

3 Register the generated PIN code to the wireless router.

➡ When the wireless LAN router is detected and the configuration is complete, the screen <Connected.> will be displayed.

Setting Up Connection by Selecting a Wireless Router

ERJ8-02X

You can search the wireless routers available for connection and select one from the display of the machine. If the security standard for your wireless LAN router is WPA/WPA2-PSK or WPA3-SAE, enter a PSK for the network key. Confirm and write down in advance information regarding your SSID, network key, security standard, or authentication/encryption method, etc. **Checking the SSID and Network Key(P. 159)**

NOTE

Security settings

- If the wireless connection is set up by selecting a wireless router, the WPA/WPA2/WPA3 encryption method is automatically set to AES-CCMP to match the selected wireless router. If you want to set a different encryption method, set it under <Enter Manually>. **Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings(P. 158)**
- When connecting to a wireless LAN router using WPA-EAP, WPA2-EAP, or WPA3-EAP security standards, use IEEE 802.1X. **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN> ▶ <Wireless LAN Settings> ▶ <Other (Set Manually)>.**

3 **Press <Select Access Point>.**

- The machine starts searching for available wireless routers.

4 **Select a wireless router, and connect to it.**

■If the security setting of your wireless LAN router is WPA/WPA2-PSK or WPA3-SAE

1. Select the wireless LAN router to use, and press <OK>.
2. Press <Encryption Key>, and enter the network key.
3. Press <OK>.

➡ When the configuration is complete, the screen <Connected.> will be displayed.

■If the security setting of your wireless LAN router is WPA/WPA2/WPA3-EAP

1. Select the wireless LAN router to use, and press <OK>.
2. The screen <The settings specified in IEEE 802.1X Settings will be applied to the connection.> is displayed, and press <OK>.

➡ When the configuration is complete, the screen <Connected.> will be displayed.

Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings

ERJ8-02Y

If you want to specify the security settings in detail or cannot establish the wireless connection using the other procedures, manually enter all the required information for the wireless LAN connection. Confirm and write down in advance information regarding your SSID, network key, security standard, or authentication/encryption method, etc.
Checking the SSID and Network Key(P. 159)

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN> ▶ <Wireless LAN Settings> ▶ <Other (Set Manually)>.

3 Press <Enter Manually>.

4 Press <SSID>, and enter the SSID that you have checked.

5 Specify the security settings in <Security Settings>.

■Using WPA/WPA2-PSK or WPA3-SAE

1. Press <WPA/WPA2- PSK>, <WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE>, or <WPA3-SAE>.
2. Press <Encryption Key>, and enter the network key that you have checked.
3. Press <OK>.

■Using WPA/WPA2/WPA3-EAP

1. Press <WPA/WPA2- EAP>.
2. Press <OK>.

6 Press <OK>.

- When set to <WPA/WPA2- EAP>, the screen <The settings specified in IEEE 802.1X Settings will be applied to the connection.> is displayed, and press <OK>.

  ➠ When the wireless LAN router is detected and the configuration is complete, the screen <Connected.> will be displayed.

Checking the SSID and Network Key

ERJ8-030

When manually setting up a wireless LAN router connection, it is necessary to specify the SSID, network key, and security standard, etc., of the wireless LAN router. The SSID and network key may be indicated on these networking devices. Check your devices before setting up the connection. If the security standard for your wireless LAN router is WPA/WPA2/WPA3-EAP, specify the IEEE 802.1X authentication settings for the machine in advance (**Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**). For more information, see the instruction manuals for your networking devices or contact your manufacturer.

SSID	A name given for identifying a specific wireless LAN. Some other terms used for SSID include "access point name" and "network name."
Network Key	A keyword or password used for encrypting data or authenticating a network. Some other terms used for network key include "encryption key," "WPA/WPA2 passphrase," "preshared key (PSK)."
Wireless Security Protocols (Authentication / Encryption)	• Security types (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK/WPA-EAP/WPA2-EAP/WPA3-EAP/WPA3-SAE) • Authentication method (IEEE 802.1X authentication) • Encryption method (AES-CCMP)

IMPORTANT

- If the wired LAN and wireless LAN are configured to be used simultaneously under <Select Interface>, <WPA/WPA2- EAP> cannot be used, unless IEEE 802.1X is enabled for the wired LAN.

Setting an IP Address

ERJ8-031

To connect the machine to a network, a unique IP address on the network is required. The machine supports two versions of IP addresses: "IPv4" and "IPv6." Set and use them according to your environment. You can use either IPv4 or IPv6. You can also use both of them at the same time.

When a connection method with a main line and sub line is selected in <Select Interface>, specify the IP address of the sub line in <IP Address Settings> in <Sub Line Settings>.

Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)
Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)

Setting an IPv4 Address

ERJ8-032

There are two methods to set an IPv4 address: allocating automatically using DHCP and entering manually. Select either of the two according to your environment. Conduct a connection test as necessary.

Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv4 Address(P. 162)

Setting an IPv4 Address

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings>.

3 Press <Use IPv4> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> to enable IPv4 settings.

4 Press <IP Address Settings> and set an IP address.

- You can set both automatic allocation and manual allocation. If you set both and deselect [Release Address Last Acquired from DHCP Server When Address Cannot Be Acquired] in the Remote UI, the manually entered IP address is used when automatic IP address retrieval fails.

■Automatic allocation using DHCP

Press <DHCP> or <Auto IP>. Select one of them according to your network environment. If you select both <DHCP> and <Auto IP>, automatic allocation using DHCP takes priority.

NOTE

- If you press <Auto IP>, the available IP address is automatically searched in the network (LAN) and the value for each item is allocated. This function allocates the IP address without using a DHCP server. However, communication outside of the router range is not available.
- In an environment where both <DHCP> and <Auto IP> cannot be used, if either of the two is selected, useless communication occurs because the machine tries to check if the service is provided on the network.

■Setting by manual entry

1. Confirm that both <DHCP> and <Auto IP> are canceled.
   - If either of the two is selected, press the button to cancel.
2. Enter the IP address, the subnet mask, and the gateway address.
   - Press the button corresponding to each and enter values.

5 Press <OK>.

6 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv4 Address

When the machine is connected properly, the Remote UI login screen can be displayed from the computer (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**). You can conduct a connection test on the control panel of the machine.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings> ▶ <PING Command> ▶ Enter the address of any other in-use device ▶ <Start>

➡ When the machine is connected correctly, the <Response from the host.> message is displayed.

IMPORTANT

- Even though IP addresses are properly set, if the machine is connected to a switching hub, the machine might not be connected to the network. In this case, delay the timing of the machine's communication start and try to connect again. **Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network(P. 170)**

LINKS

Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)
Making WINS Settings(P. 178)

Setting an IPv6 Address

ERJ8-033

The following are the types of IPv6 addresses. Register as necessary. Up to four stateless addresses can be registered. Conduct a connection test as necessary.

Type	Explanation
Link local address	Addresses that can be used only in the same link and that are automatically created without setting anything. Cannot be used out of the router range.
Stateless address	Addresses that are created automatically on the basis of the prefix notified by a router and the MAC address of the machine, even in an environment without a DHCP server.
Manual address	Addresses that are manually entered. Prefix length and a default router address are specified.
Stateful address	Addresses that are acquired from the DHCP server.

Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)
Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv6 Address(P. 164)

Setting an IPv6 Address

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>.

3 Press <Use IPv6> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> to enable IPv6 settings.

4 Set an IP address.

- Set an IPv6 address according to your environment and purposes.

■Setting a stateless address

1 Press <Stateless Address Settings>.

2 Press <On> ▶ <OK>.

■Setting a manual address

1 Press <Manual Address Settings>.

2 Press <On> in <Use Manual Address> and carry out the necessary settings.



a <Use Manual Address>

Press <On>.

b <Manual Address>

Press the <Manual Address> button and enter an address. The following addresses cannot be used.

- Addresses that begin with "ff" (multicast address)
- Addresses that consist only of "0"
- IPv4-compatible addresses (IPv6 addresses in which the upper 96 bits are "0" with an IPv4 address contained in the lower 32 bits)
- IPv4-mapped addresses (IPv6 addresses in which the upper 96 bits are "0:0:0:0:ffff:" with an IPv4 address contained in the lower 32 bits)

c <Prefix Length>

The length of the network address section can be changed.

d <Default Router Address>

Press <Default Router Address> and enter an address. The following addresses cannot be used.

- Addresses that begin with "ff" (multicast address).
- Addresses that consist only of "0"

If you don't specify an address, leave the column blank.

■Setting a stateful address

1. Press <Use DHCPv6>.
2. Press <On> ▶ <OK>.

NOTE

- Press <On> for <Only Retrieve Stateful Address Prefix> to only retrieve the first half of the stateful address from the DHCP server using DHCPv6. **<Only Retrieve Stateful Address Prefix>(P. 852)**

5 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv6 Address

When the machine is connected properly, the Remote UI login screen can be displayed from a computer (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**). If you don't have a computer to check it, confirm if a proper connection is completed with following the steps.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings> ▶ <PING Command> ▶ Enter the address of any other in-use device or the host name ▶ <Start>

➡ When the machine is connected correctly, the <Response from the host.> message is displayed.

IMPORTANT

- Even though IP addresses are properly set, if the machine is connected to a switching hub, the machine might not be connected to the network. In this case, delay the timing of the machine's communication start and try to make a connection again. **Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network(P. 170)**

LINKS

Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line

ERJ8-034

Specify the IPv4 address to use for the sub line.

NOTE

- Only IPv4 addresses can be used with the sub line.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>.

3 Press <IP Address Settings> and set the IP address of the sub line.

- You can also set both automatic assignment and manual entry. If you set both and deselect [Release Address Last Acquired from DHCP Server When Address Cannot Be Acquired] in the Remote UI, the manually entered IP address is used when automatic IP address retrieval fails.

■Automatically Assigning the IP Address with DHCP

Press <DHCP>. Select this item according to the network environment of your wireless LAN.

NOTE

- If <DHCP> is selected, communication is performed to check whether network services are being provided, regardless of whether the environment can use DHCP. It is recommended that you deselect this item if you are not using DHCP.

■Manually Entering the IP Address

1. Confirm that <DHCP> is deselected.
   - If it is selected, press the button to deselect it.
2. Enter the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address.
   - Press each button and enter the required setting.

NOTE

- When connecting to another network via a router, enter the gateway address and also configure <Static Routing Settings>. **Setting Static Routing(P. 187)**

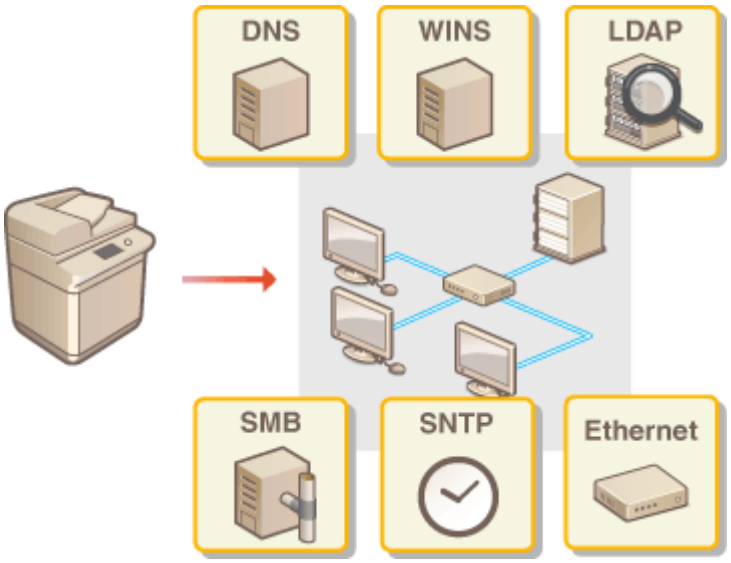
4 Press <OK>.

5 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Adapting to the Network Environment

ERJ8-035

The scale and form of a network varies depending on the purpose and use. The machine adopts various technologies for adapting to as many environments as possible. Consult your network administrator and carry out necessary settings according to your environment.



Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)
Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network(P. 170)
Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
Making SMB Settings(P. 176)
Making WINS Settings(P. 178)
Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)
Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP(P. 183)
Setting Static Routing(P. 187)
Other Network Settings(P. 189)
Configuring System Data Communication(P. 191)

Making Ethernet Settings

ERJ8-036

Ethernet is a standard that stipulates communication methods within a LAN. Normally, the communication system (half-duplex/full-duplex), Ethernet type (1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T) and whether to use the EEE function can be set automatically. You can set them separately by switching the setting to manual operation.

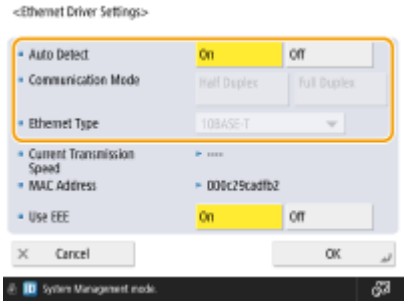
<Ethernet Driver Settings> exists for both the main line and sub line. Register the settings as necessary.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Ethernet Driver Settings>.

- To specify the Ethernet settings for the sub line, press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Ethernet Driver Settings>.

3 Make Ethernet settings.

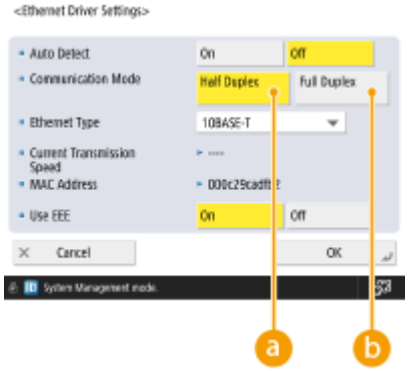


- Normally, press <On> in <Auto Detect>. The communication system and Ethernet type are detected and automatically configured.

■Making Ethernet settings manually

1 Press <Off> in <Auto Detect>.

2 Select the communication system.



a <Half Duplex>

Carry out send/receive functions alternately. Select this when the connected router is set for half-duplex communication.

b <Full Duplex>

Carry out send/receive functions at the same time. Select this as a general rule.

3 Select the Ethernet type.

- Select <10BASE-T>, <100BASE-TX>, or <1000BASE-T> in <Ethernet Type>.

4 Select whether to use the EEE function.

- Select <On> to reduce power consumption when performing wired LAN communication.

NOTE:

- Depending on the network environment, the connection between the machine and the network may become unstable. In such a case, setting <Use EEE> to <Off> may improve the symptoms.

4 Press <OK>.

5 Press (Settings/Register) <Yes>.

LINKS

Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network(P. 170)

Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network

ERJ8-037

If you intend to implement network redundancy by connecting several switching hubs, a mechanism is necessary to avoid packet looping. In this case, it is effective to determine the roles of the switching ports, but communication may not be properly transmitted in cases just after changes such as adding a new device to the network. To connect the machine to such a network, set the waiting time which is the time until the communication starts.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Waiting Time for Connection at Startup> ▶ Set the waiting time ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>

LINKS

Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)

Making DNS Settings

ERJ8-038

The DNS server is a computer which converts the names of devices (domain names) on the Internet into IP addresses. There are many DNS servers on the Internet worldwide. They cooperate with each other to make correspondence between domain names and IP addresses. This section describes the steps for setting the machine's DNS server address, host name, and domain name. You can also set the machine so that an automatic update is carried out if correspondence between the host name and the IP address is changed. If you set DNS under an IPv6 environment, confirm if IPv6 addresses can be used (**Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**). In addition, you can make correspondence with an IP address by acquiring the host name through a DHCP server without manually entering the host name of the machine.

Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
Using a DHCP Server(P. 174)

Making DNS Settings

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>.

3 Specify a DNS server address.

1 Press <DNS Server Address Settings>.

2 Carry out the necessary settings.

- According to your environment, enter an IP address of the DNS server.

NOTE:

- For details about the setting information, contact your provider or network administrator. You can also refer to the computer settings. **Viewing the Network Connection Information of the Computer(P. 1110)**



a <IPv4>

- Press <Primary DNS Server>, and enter an IPv4 address of the DNS server.
- If there is a secondary DNS server, enter its IP address. If you don't set a secondary DNS server, enter "0.0.0.0".

b <IPv6>

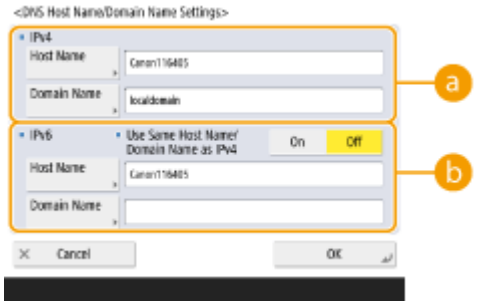
- Press <Primary DNS Server>, and enter an IPv6 address of the DNS server. You cannot enter addresses that begin with "ff" (multicast address), addresses that consist of only "0," or local link addresses.
- If there is a secondary DNS server, enter its IP address. You cannot enter addresses that begin with "ff" (multicast address), addresses that consist of only "0," or local link addresses. This column can be left blank.

3 Press <OK>.

4 Specify the machine's host name and domain name.

1 Press <DNS Host Name/Domain Name Settings>.

2 Carry out the necessary settings.



a <IPv4>

- Press <Host Name>, and enter the host name of the machine to register on the DNS server using alphanumeric characters.
- Press <Domain Name>, and enter the domain name which the machine belongs to using alphanumeric characters (**Example:** "example.com").

b <IPv6>

- To set the host name and domain name to be the same as IPv4, press <On> in <Use Same Host Name/ Domain Name as IPv4>. To set to be different from those of IPv4, press <Off>.
- To set the host name to be different from IPv4, press <Host Name> and enter the host name of the machine to register on the DNS server using alphanumeric characters.
- To set the domain name to be different from IPv4, press <Domain Name> and enter the domain name that the machine belongs to using alphanumeric characters. (**Example:** "example.com").

NOTE

- If you set <Use DHCPv6> to <On> for the stateful address settings (**Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**), the manually configured domain name is overwritten. If you set <Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4> to <On>, the domain name that is retrieved from DHCPv6 server is used.

3 Press <OK>.

5 Set automatic correspondence updates.

1 Press <DNS Dynamic Update Settings>.

2 Carry out the necessary settings.



a <IPv4>

- To automatically update the information when correspondence between the host name and the IP address is changed in an environment such as DHCP, press <On> in <DNS Dynamic Update>.

b <IPv6>

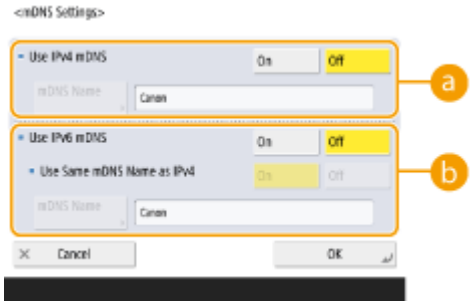
- To automatically update the information when correspondence between the host name and the IP address is changed in an environment such as DHCP, press <On> in <DNS Dynamic Update>.
- Turn <On> the address you want to register as a DNS server in <Register Stateless Address>/<Register Manual Address>/<Register Stateful Address>. Please note that automatic update cannot be carried out if all are set to <Off>.

3 Press <OK>.

6 Specify the mDNS settings.

1 Press <mDNS Settings>.

2 Carry out the necessary settings.



a <Use IPv4 mDNS>

- To enable the DNS function in an environment without a DNS server, press <On>.
- Press <mDNS Name>, and enter an mDNS name of your choice using alphanumeric characters.

b <Use IPv6 mDNS>

- To enable the DNS function in an environment without a DNS server, press <On>.
- To set the same settings as IPv4 for the mDNS name, press <On> for <Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4>. To use different settings, press <mDNS Name> and enter an mDNS name of your choice using alphanumeric characters.

IMPORTANT

- If you set <Use IPv4 mDNS> to <On>, the machine will not completely enter the Sleep mode.
- If you set <Use IPv6 mDNS> to <On>, the machine will not completely enter the Sleep mode.

3 Press <OK>.

7 Specify encrypted DNS communication settings.

1 Press <DNS Encryption Settings>.

2 Specify necessary settings.



a <Use DNS over TLS>

- Select <On> when using TLS to encrypt communication with the DNS server.

b <Port Number to Use>

- Enter the port number that is used for encrypted communication with the DNS server.

c <Host Name to Verify>

- Enter the host name listed in the SAN (Subject Alternative Name) of the certificate that is obtained from the DNS server.

3 Press <OK>.

8 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Using a DHCP Server

You can acquire a host name by using the DHCP server.

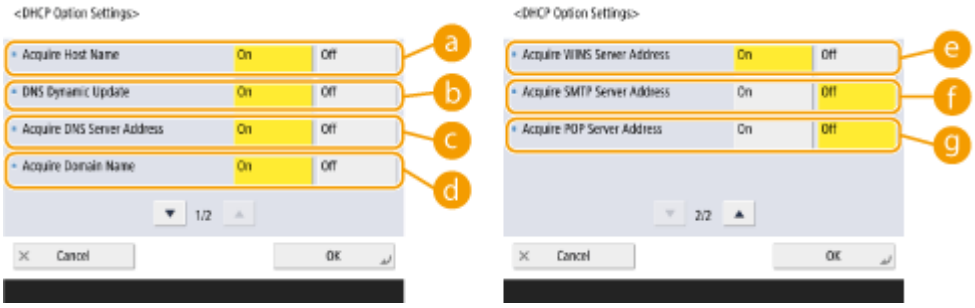
NOTE

- The DHCP optional setting only applies to the main line.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings> or <IPv6 Settings> ▶ <DHCP Option Settings>.

3 Carry out the necessary setup.



- Some items may not be displayed in <IPv6 Settings>.

a <Acquire Host Name>

To acquire a host name through the DHCP server, press <On>.

b <DNS Dynamic Update>

To make the DHCP server automatically update information regarding correspondence between the IP addresses and the host names without using the machine, press <On>.

c <Acquire DNS Server Address>

To acquire the DHCP server IP address, press <On>.

d <Acquire Domain Name>

To acquire a domain name through the DHCP server, press <On>.

e <Acquire WINS Server Address>

To acquire a domain name through the WINS server, press <On>.

f <Acquire SMTP Server Address>

To acquire a domain name through the SMTP server, press <On>.

g <Acquire POP Server Address>

To acquire a domain name through the POP server, press <On>.

4 Press <OK>.

5 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Making SMB Settings

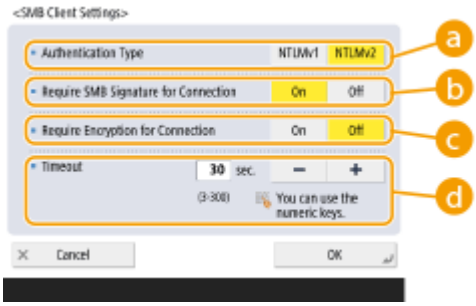
ERJ8-039

This section describes how to specify the settings to use when the machine connects to a network as an SMB client.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <SMB Client Settings>.

3 Specify the required settings.



a <Authentication Type>

Select the authentication protocol version. Select either <NTLMv1> or <NTLMv2>, according to the destination SMB server. You can also select both.

b <Require SMB Signature for Connection>

To request an SMB packet signature when connecting to an SMB server, press <On>.

c <Require Encryption for Connection>

To request a connection with SMB 3.0/3.1 encrypted communication when connecting to an SMB server, press <On>.

d <Timeout>

Set the time until the SMB connection destination responds.

- When sending to an SMB server, the network connection was lost or the response on the server side was slow, causing a wait time timeout on the machine side before the data could be sent or forwarding could be completed. If this happens, you may be able to avoid a timeout by increasing the wait time.

4 Press <OK>.

5 Press <Specify SMB Client Version>, and select the SMB version used by the SMB client.

6 Press <OK>.

IMPORTANT

- When <Require Encryption for Connection> is set to <On>, the machine can only connect to SMB servers that support SMB 3.0/3.1 encrypted communication. When <1.0> and <2.0> are set to <On> for <Specify SMB Client Version> but <3.0> is not set to <On>, the machine cannot connect to SMB servers that do not support SMB 3.0 encrypted communication.
- Use the same version of SMB with the SMB server and SMB client. SMB cannot be used if the versions differ.

NOTE

- Depending on the network settings, an error may be displayed when sending to the SMB server. In this case, adjust the time in <Timeout>.

LINKS

Making WINS Settings(P. 178)

Making WINS Settings

ERJ8-03A

WINS is the name of a solution service that converts a NetBIOS name (a computer name and a printer name on an SMB network) into an IP address. To use WINS, you need a specified WINS server.

IMPORTANT

- To register the WINS server on the machine, set <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings> for <TCP/IP Settings>. **<Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>(P. 836)**
- If you set <Use NetBIOS> to <Off> in <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>, the WINS setting is disabled. Make sure to set <Use NetBIOS> to <On> when using WINS.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <WINS Settings>.**

3 **Press <On> in <WINS Resolution>, and enter the IP address of the WINS server in <WINS Server Address>.**

IMPORTANT

- If the WINS server IP address is acquired from the DHCP server, the IP address acquired from the DHCP server has priority.

4 **Press <OK>.**

5 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.**

LINKS

Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

Registering the LDAP Server

ERJ8-03C

In environments where an LDAP sever is employed, fax numbers and e-mail addresses can be searched, specified as destinations from the machine, and registered in the machine's Address Book.

NOTE

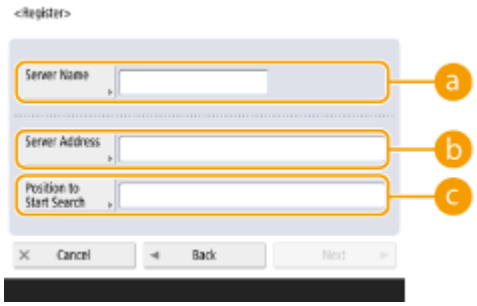
- You can register up to five LDAP servers.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Set Destination> ▶ <Register LDAP Server>.

3 Register the LDAP server.

1. Press <Register>.
2. Enter the necessary information.



a <Server Name>

Enter a name for the LDAP server.

b <Server Address>

Enter the IP address or host name of the LDAP server using alphanumeric characters (**Example:** "ldap.example.com").

IMPORTANT:

<Server Address> and DNS

To prevent errors, pay attention to the following when a destination search is carried out from the machine to the LDAP server.

- When entering the IP address, check if the usable DNS server supports only forward lookup. When the DNS server supports forward lookup only, press <Do Not Use> or <Use> in <Authentication Information> in step 4. When selecting <Use (Security Authentication)>, confirm that the DNS server supports reverse lookup.

c <Position to Start Search>

Specify where to start searching in the directory tree of the LDAP server.

- For LDAPv3, you can skip the setting because the machine retrieves automatically the server's setting. For LDAPv2, always specify the point.

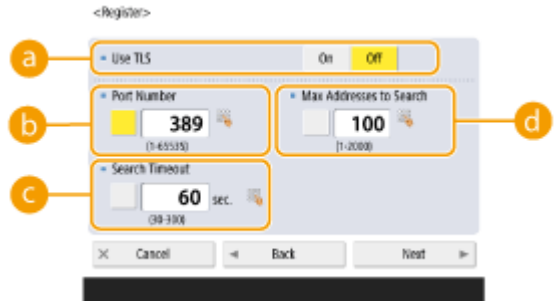
NOTE

Entering the format of <Position to Start Search>

- When you use Windows Server, enter the domain name of the Active Directory in units of strings divided by a dot ".". Add "DC=" for each unit and separate them with commas ",".
  Example: When the domain name is "john.example.com", enter "DC=john,DC=example,DC=com".
- When you use Lotus Notes Domino, enter the directory tree node identification name (dn) like "cn=user1,ou=team1,ou=salesdept,o=canon".

3 Press <Next>.

4 Enter the necessary information.



a <Use TLS>

To encode the communication to/from the LDAP server using TLS, press <On>.

b <Port Number>

Enter the port number used when communicating to/from the LDAP server.

c <Search Timeout>

Specify in seconds how long the search can continue.

d <Max Addresses to Search>

Specify how many destinations can be searched.

5 Press <Next>.

4 Set authentication information.

- Specify authentication methods according to the settings of the LDAP server.
- You can check the connection by pressing <Check Connection> after specifying the settings.

NOTE

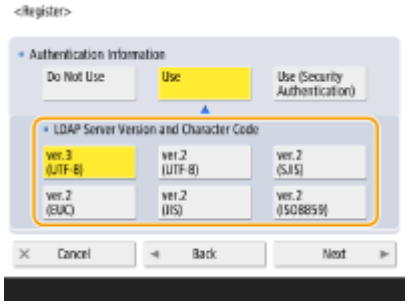
- When authentication information is specified on the Remote UI, if the server address is changed by selecting [Server Address] in [LDAP Server Settings] or if [Check Connection] is selected after changing the server address, entering the password is required.

■When authenticating using login information

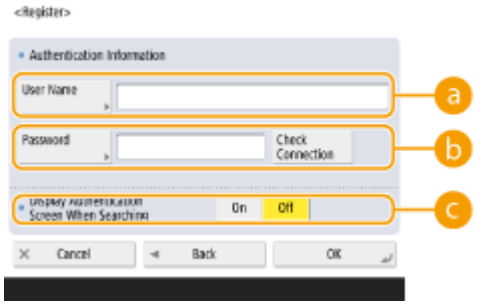
Enter the user name and the password used as authentication information.

1 Press <Use> in <Authentication Information>.

2 Select the combination of the server LDAP version and character encoding, and press <Next>.



3 Enter the user name and the password and carry out the necessary settings.



a <User Name>

Enter the user name of the machine registered on the LDAP server.

NOTE

Entering the format of the user name

- When you use Windows Server, enter in the format of "(Windows domain name)\(Windows user name)".
  Example: When the Windows domain name is "example" and Windows user name is "user1", enter "example\user1".
- When you use Lotus Notes Domino, enter the authenticated user identification name (dn) like "cn=user1,ou=team1,ou=salesdept,o=canon".

b <Password>

Enter the password registered on the LDAP server. When the password is entered, <Confirm> is displayed for confirmation. Enter the password again.

c <Display Authentication Screen When Searching>

When searching destinations, to display the user name and password entry screen, press <On>.

4 Press <OK>.

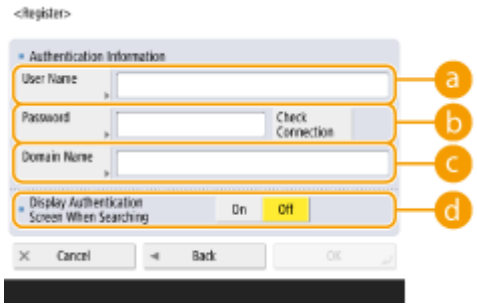
■When authenticating using encoded data

Authentication can be done more safely by encoding the data exchange. When this measure is employed, the LDAP version and character code information are set to <ver.3(UTF-8)>. The time of the machine and LDAP server need to be synchronized.

1 Press <Use (Security Authentication)> in <Authentication Information>.

2 2 Press <Next>.

3 Enter the user name and the password and carry out the necessary settings.



a <User Name>

Enter the username of the machine registered in the LDAP server (**Example:**"user1").

b <Password>

Enter the password registered on the LDAP server. When the password is entered, <Confirm> is displayed for confirmation. Enter the password again.

c <Domain Name>

Enter the domain name of the machine.

d <Display Authentication Screen When Searching>

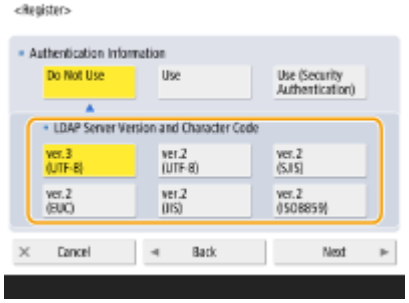
When searching destinations, to display the user name and password entry screen, press <On>.

4 Press <OK>.

■When authenticating anonymously without using login information

1 Press <Do Not Use> in <Authentication Information>.

2 Select the combination of the LDAP version and the character code of the server.



3 Press <Next>.

4 Press <OK>.

LINKS

- **Registering Server Information(P. 613)**
- **<Set Destination>(P. 1008)**
- **Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)**

Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP

ERJ8-03E

SNMP is a protocol for monitoring and controlling communication devices on a network on the basis of a management information database called MIB. You can check the machine's error information and the number of prints through a computer. The machine supports SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 in which security functions are enhanced. You can use either of the two or both. Set each function according to your environment and purposes.

SNMPv1

SNMPv1 determines the communication range on the basis of information called community name. However, as community names are sent to networks as plain text, they may be vulnerable to security issues. To ensure safety, invalidate SNMPv1 and use SNMPv3.

SNMPv3

SNMPv3 enables you to implement network device management with strong security functions.

NOTE

- When SNMP management software is usable, you can set, monitor, and control the machine through a computer. For details, see your software's instruction manuals.

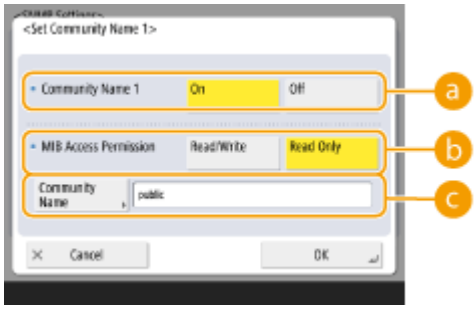
1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <SNMP Settings>.

3 Set SNMPv1.

1. Press <On> in <Use SNMPv1>.
   - If you don't use SNMPv1, press <Off>.
2. Press <Set Dedicated Community>, <Set Community Name 1> or <Set Community Name 2>.
   - Dedicated Community is a preset community for Canon Device Management software. To use the Dedicated Community, press <Set Dedicated Community>. To specify a general community, press <Set Community Name 1> or <Set Community Name 2>.

     * For details, see the manual of the software you are using.
3. Set the community.



a <Dedicated Community>/<Community Name 1>/<Community Name 2>

To use the selected community, press <On>. When you don't want to use the community, press <Off>.

b <MIB Access Permission>

For each community, select MIB access privileges from <Read/Write> or <Read Only>.

c <Community Name>

Enter a community name that you belong to using alphanumeric characters. If you select <Set Dedicated Community>, you cannot set an dedicated community name.

4 Press <OK>.

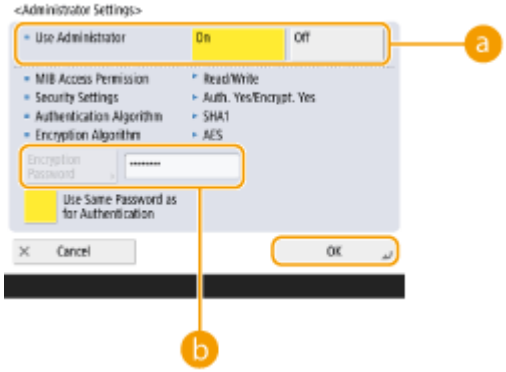
4 Set SNMPv3.

1 Press <On> in <Use SNMPv3>.

- If you don't use SNMPv3, press <Off>.

2 Press <Administrator Settings>.

3 Specify the necessary settings, and press <OK>.



a <Use Administrator>

If you use Administrator, set to <On>.

b <Encryption Password>

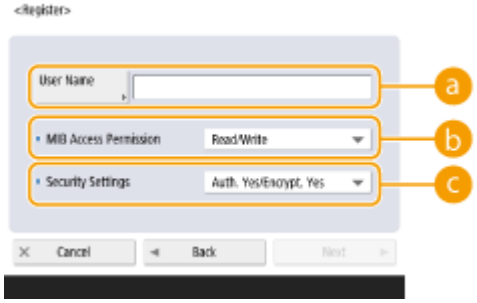
If you use a password which is different from the authentication, deselect <Use Same Password as for Authentication>, press <Encryption Password>, and enter the password.

NOTE

- If "Administrator" is disabled, you cannot set <Administrator Settings> (the setting of <Use Administrator> is fixed to <Off>).

4 Press <User Settings> ▶ <Register>.

5 Enter the necessary information.



a <User Name>

Enter a user name using alphanumeric characters.

NOTE:

- You cannot use the characters "Administrator" for a user name to register. If you want to use the characters "Administrator," you need to set <Use Administrator> to <Off> under <Administrator Settings>.

b <MIB Access Permission>

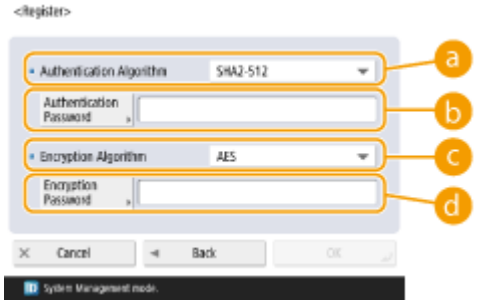
Select MIB access privileges from <Read/Write> or <Read Only>.

c <Security Settings>

Set a combination of authentication and encoding. Select <Auth. Yes/Encrypt. Yes>, <Auth. Yes/Encrypt. No>, or <Auth. No/Encrypt. No>.

6 Press <Next>.

7 Enter the necessary information.



a <Authentication Algorithm>

Select MD5, SHA1, or SHA2 according to your environment. For SHA2, select from four hash lengths (224 bit, 256 bit, 384 bit, or 512 bit).

b <Authentication Password>

Enter a password to use for authentication. When the password is entered, <Confirm> is displayed for confirmation. Enter the password again.

c <Encryption Algorithm>

Select <DES> or <AES> according to your environment.

d <Encryption Password>

Enter a password to use for encoding. When the password is entered, <Confirm> is displayed for confirmation. Enter the password again.

8 Press <OK> ▶ <OK>.

9 Press <OK>.

5 Configure settings in <Retrieve Printer Mngt. Information from Host>.

- If you set to <On>, you can periodically acquire printer management information such as printing protocol from a computer on the network by using SNMP.

6 Press <OK>.

7 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

Disabling SNMPv1

- If SNMPv1 is disabled, some of the functions of the machine become unavailable, such as obtaining machine information via the printer driver.

Enabling Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv3

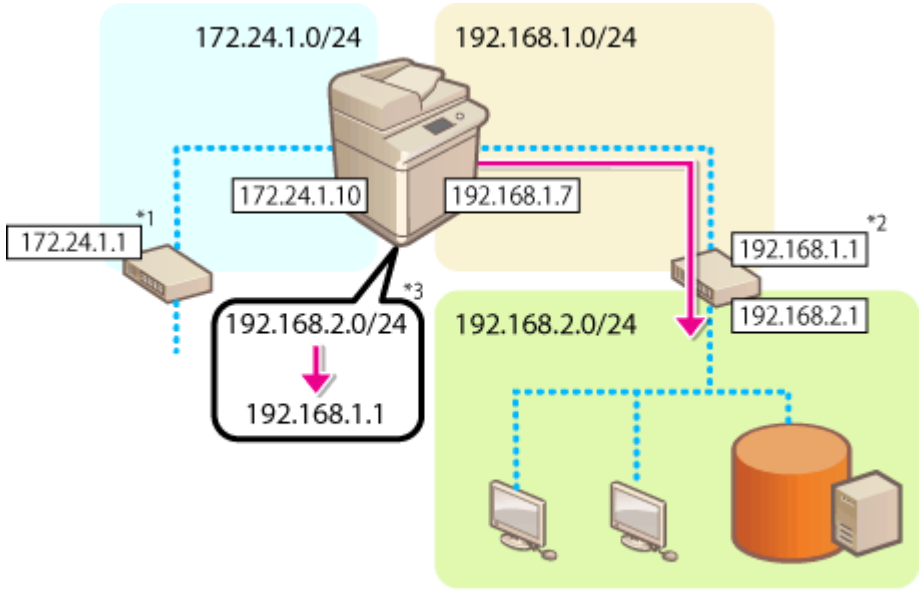
- When using SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 in combination, it is recommended to set MIB access privileges for SNMPv1 to <Read Only>. If you set <Read/Write>, almost all of the machine's operations become practicable and the strong security functions of SNMPv3 will not be effective. Access privileges to MIB can be set in either SNMPv1 or SNMPv3. In SNMPv3, you can set them for each user.

Setting Static Routing

ERJ8-03F

You can set static routing to manually specify the network route.

For example, when sending data from a machine connected to other networks via a router with both the main line and sub line, the data can be sent via the gateway of the sub line instead of the gateway of the main line that is normally used.



*1 Main line gateway

*2 Sub line gateway

*3 Static routing settings

NOTE

- When connecting to another network via a router, enter the gateway address in <IP Address Settings> in advance. **Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)** **Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)**

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Static Routing Settings>.

3 Press <On> for <Static Routing Settings>.

4 Select the line to register the static routing information from the list ▶ press <Edit>.

5 Enter <Address> and <Prefix Length> ▶ press <Next>.

- Press each button and enter the required setting.

6 **Enter the gateway address ▶ press <OK> ▶ <OK>.**

7 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.**

NOTE

- The route order is displayed in <Order> on the static routing settings screen.
- You can register up to 16 devices that can be connected.
- The success/failure of the static routing settings is displayed in <Routing Regist.>. An error message is also displayed on the bottom of the screen.
- When failure is indicated in <Routing Regist.>, select the static routing settings that failed and set the address and gateway address again.

Other Network Settings

ERJ8-03H

Set the following according to your network environment.

Setting the PASV Mode of FTP(P. 189)
Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)
Monitoring the Machine From Device Management Systems(P. 190)

Setting the PASV Mode of FTP

PASV is an FTP communication mode that is used during file transfer. Press <On> for this setting to enable the machine to connect to an FTP server even if the machine is within a firewall. Confirm beforehand that the PASV mode is set on the FTP server side.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <Use FTP PASV Mode> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

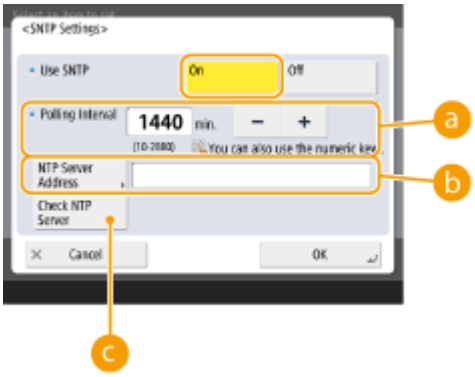
Making SNTP Settings

SNTP is a protocol to adjust time using a time server on the network. SNTP is used when time needs to be adjusted between the machine and the server in cases when security authentication is done at the time of accessing an LDAP server. Set the time difference (time zone) beforehand because actions are based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). **Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)**

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <SNTP Settings>.

3 Press <On> in <Use SNTP> and carry out the necessary settings.



a <Polling Interval>

Specify the prescribed interval in minutes to adjust the time.

b <NTP Server Address>

Enter the IP address of the NTP server. When the DNS server is used, instead of an IP address, you can enter "host name.domain name" (FQDN) using alphanumeric characters. (**Example:** "ntp.example.com").

<Check NTP Server>

You can check the communication status between a registered server and the SNTP. When a connection is made properly, "OK" is displayed. However, only the communication status is confirmed and time adjustment is not carried out.

NOTE

- To perform time synchronization via SNTP with the NTP server, setting the time zone where the machine is used is required in advance. **Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)**
- If SNTP is not set, the machine may access an external SNTP server to synchronize the clock when certain services are used.

4 **Press <OK>.**

5 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.**

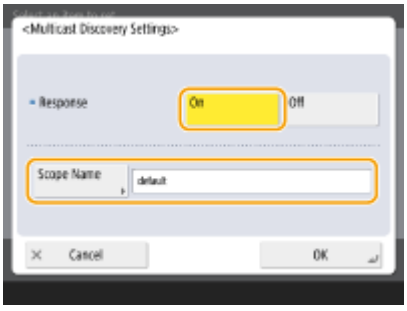
Monitoring the Machine From Device Management Systems

When device management software is employed, you can collect/manage various information such as setting information, address information, and device failure information on the network through the server.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <Multicast Discovery Settings>.**

3 **Set <Response> to <On>, press <Scope Name> and enter a scope name.**



- Enter a scope name specified using Multicast Discovery Settings in <Scope Name>.

4 **Press <OK>.**

5 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.**

LINKS

<Network>(P. 825)

Configuring System Data Communication

ERJ8-03J

The settings described in this section are required to use the sub line for performing DNS name resolution and data communication via a proxy. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required to specify these settings.

NOTE

- The DNS server address setting and proxy settings for the sub line can only be used for specific system data communication, such as using the sub line to access a firmware distribution server. They cannot be used for a regular internet connection. When using a DNS server or proxy server for the sub line for applications other than system data communication, register the addresses and port numbers to use with the sub line in the settings of the main line.
- You can also perform certain types of system data communication with the main line.

Setting the DNS of the Sub Line(P. 191)
Proxy Settings of the Sub Line(P. 192)
Selecting the line to use(P. 192)

Setting the DNS of the Sub Line

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication> ▶ <DNS Server Address Settings>.

3 Specify the required settings.

- Enter the IP address of the DNS server, according to your environment.



4 Press <OK>.

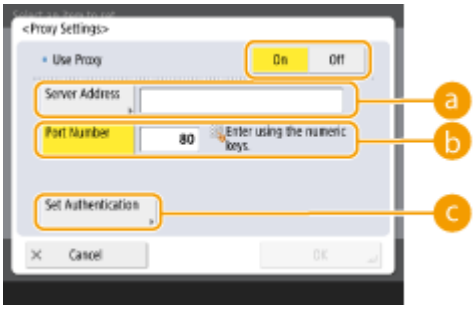
5 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.

Proxy Settings of the Sub Line

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication> ▶ <Proxy Settings>.**

3 **Press <On> for <Use Proxy> ▶ configure the required settings ▶ press <OK>.**



a <Server Address>

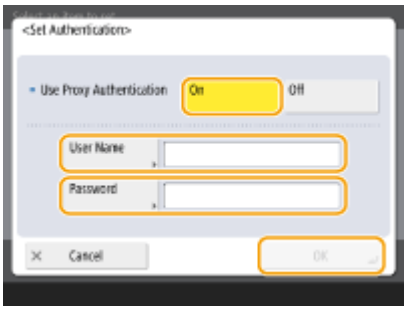
Enter the address of the proxy server to use. Specify the settings, such as the IP address and host name, according to your environment.

b <Port Number>

Enter the port number of the proxy server.

c <Set Authentication>

Press this to set the authentication information when using the authentication function of a proxy server. Press <On> on the displayed screen, enter the user name and password for proxy authentication, and press <OK>.



4 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes>.**

Selecting the line to use

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication> ▶ <Select Line to Use>.

3 Select <Main Line> or <Sub Line> ▶ press <OK>.

NOTE

- If you select <Main Line> for <Select Line to Use>, the settings for <Main Line> are reflected in <DNS Server Address Settings> and <Proxy Settings>.

LINKS

Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)
Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

Installing Drivers

ERJ8-03K

Install the printer driver, fax driver, and drivers for other system options as well as related software on your computer.

1 Make preparations before installation.

- Equip the main unit with optional equipment (**Optional Equipment(P. 108)**).
- Install the drivers and software to use from the included CD/DVD-ROM or by downloading them from the Canon website for your country/region accessed via the URL indicated below.
(https://global.canon/en/support/)

NOTE

- The latest versions of drivers and software are uploaded to the Canon website when they become available. Download them as needed after checking the operating environment for your machine.
- Some functions of drivers and software may not be available depending on the model of the machine or operating environment.
- Some drivers may not be fully compatible with the operating system you are using. Check the driver compatibility with latest versions of operating systems on the Canon website.

2 Carry out installation of the drivers.

- For details on the installation, see the manuals for the drivers and software you want to use.

IMPORTANT

- If communication via the relevant IP address is not permitted in <Firewall Settings>, you cannot install the driver. For more information, see Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings.
- After you have installed the driver, if communication via the IP address of the computer you have installed it on is not permitted in <Firewall Settings>, you cannot print or send a fax from that computer.

Fax Line Settings

ERJ8-03L

To use the fax on the machine, register the fax number and company or department name to be displayed/printed at the receiving party's fax machine when sending a fax. Also, set the communication channel type.

NOTE

Models with an optional fax function

- To use the fax function, the required fax options must be installed. **System Options(P. 1271)**

If the machine is used as a Remote Fax client machine

- The <Register Unit Name> and <Select Line Type> settings in the procedure below are not required.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Set Line>.**

3 **Press <Line 1> ▶ <Register Unit Telephone Number>.**

4 **Enter a fax number and press <OK>.**

- The fax number you registered will be notified to the recipient.

5 **Enter a name in <Register Unit Name> and press <OK>.**

- The name you registered will be notified to the recipient.

NOTE

- Instead of the unit name you specified, you can show or print the sender's name. **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

6 **Select a line type in <Select Line Type>, press <OK>.**

- If you are not sure what kind of line type you are using, please contact your dealer or the sales office of your telephone company.

NOTE

Configure the setting according to the fax option.

- You can set to automatically switch of the incoming fax and incoming call in <RX Mode>. **<RX Mode>(P. 989)**

LINKS

Faxing(P. 343)
Options(P. 107)

Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication

ERJ8-03R

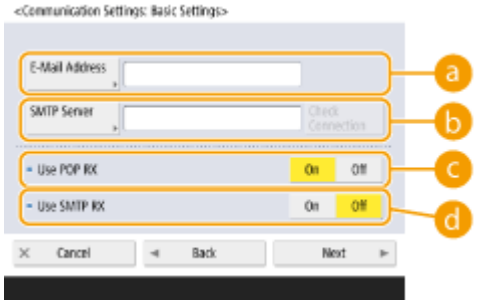
To directly send scanned documents via e-mail/I-fax without going through a computer, you need to configure communication settings such as a mail server, authentication methods, etc. Generally, an SMTP server is used for sending, and an SMTP server or a POP3 sever is used for receiving. You can set encoding and other parameters. For details about necessary settings, contact the Internet service provider or network administrators.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ <Communication Settings>.

3 Set communication.

1 Specify the basic settings.



a <E-Mail Address>

Enter the machine's e-mail address.

- You can specify any name as the user name (part at the left of @ mark). Enter the registered host name at the right of the @ mark.

b <SMTP Server>

Enter an SMTP server name (or an IP address).

- After specifying the settings, check the connection for <SMTP>.

NOTE:

- When [Password] is specified in [Use SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)] on the Remote UI, if you want to change and register the server address in [SMTP Server], entering the password in [Password] in [Use SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)] is required.

c <Use POP RX>

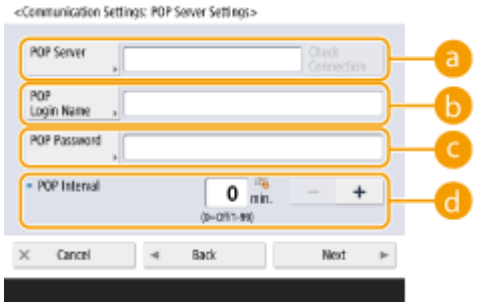
Press <On> when you want to receive e-mails and I-faxes using a POP3 server.

d <Use SMTP RX>

Press <On> when you want to make the machine an SMTP server to receive e-mails and I-faxes. Be aware that you cannot receive via SMTP if you don't register the host name of the machine on the DNS server.

2 Press <Next>.

3 Specify the POP server settings.



a <POP Server>

Enter a POP3 server name (or an IP address).

- After specifying the settings, check the connection for <POP Server>.

b <POP Login Name>

To use a POP3 server, enter the user name of the specified mail account using alphanumeric characters.

c <POP Password>

To use a POP3 server, enter the password of the specified mail account.

NOTE:

- When [POP Password] is specified on the Remote UI, if you want to change and register the server address in [POP Server], entering the password in [POP Password] is required.

d <POP Interval>

You can set the interval to automatically issue POP in minutes.

4 Press <Next>.

5 Specify the settings for encrypted communication.



a <SMTP TX>

To encode the communication to/from the SMTP server using TLS, press <On>. When <On> is set, you can confirm the TLS server certificate during communication with the server and add CN to the verification items. <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ **<Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX>(P. 959)**

b <SMTP RX>

To encode communication using TLS when receiving e-mails and I-faxes using the SMTP server, press <Always TLS> or <On>. When you don't want to receive data other than encoded data, select <Always TLS>.

- To encrypt SMTP reception with TLS, prepare the key pair in advance. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

c <POP>

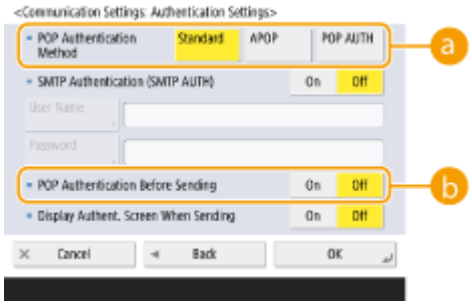
To encode the communication to/from the POP3 server using TLS, press <On>. When <On> is set, you can confirm the TLS server certificate during communication with the server and add CN to the verification items. <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ **<Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX>(P. 959)**

6 Press <Next>.

■Setting POP authentication before sending

POP authentication before sending (POP before SMTP) is a confirmation of users by the POP server (reception mail server) before sending, which is a function to block unauthorized e-mails sent by third parties.

1 Specify each item.



a <POP Authentication Method>

Set the authentication methods of the POP3 server. To encode the password during authentication, select <APOP>. To authenticate users when receiving mail (POP), select <POP AUTH>.

b <POP Authentication Before Sending>

To perform authentication using the POP3 server, press <On>.

■Setting SMTP authentication

SMTP authentication (SMTP AUTH) verifies users by checking user names and passwords when e-mails are sent. It can also encode SMTP communication (sent and received).

1 Specify each item.



a <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)>

To use SMTP authentication, press <On>, enter the user name and password of the specified mail accounts in <User Name> and <Password>.

NOTE:

User name and password

- <User Name> and <Password> for <SMTP Authentication> are also used when forwarding received documents.
- Forwarding is performed as "Fixed Device Authentication" regardless of the <Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication> settings. (**<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>(P. 919)**)

<Display Authent. Screen When Sending>

When sending e-mails and I-faxes, to display the user name and password entry screen, press <On>.

NOTE:

When setting SMTP authentication

- Specify the authentication method using one of the following three methods.
  - Fixed Device Authentication
  - Entering the authentication information when sending
  - Registering information for each user

Fixed Device Authentication: When <User Name> and <Password> entered into <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)> are used and the authentication screen (<Log in to SMTP Server>) is not displayed when sending

- Specify the settings as follows.
  - <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)>: <On>
  - <User Name>: Enter the user name.
  - <Password>: Enter the password.
  - <Display Authent. Screen When Sending>: <Off>
  - **<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>(P. 919)** : <Device Settings>

Entering the authentication information when sending: When <User Name> and <Password> entered into <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)> are used and the authentication screen (<Log in to SMTP Server>) is displayed when sending

- <User Name> and <Password> entered into <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)> are entered as the authentication information when sending.
- When <User Name> and <Password> for <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)> are not entered (blank), the authentication information when sending is also blank.
- Specify the settings as follows.
  - <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)>: <On>
  - <User Name>: Enter the user name.
  - <Password>: Enter the password.
  - <Display Authent. Screen When Sending>: <On>
  - **<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>(P. 919)** : <Device Settings>

Registering information for each user: When <Registered Info. for Each User> is used and the authentication screen (<Log in to SMTP Server>) is not displayed when sending

- SMTP authentication is performed using the user name and password registered in the local device.
- Specify the settings as follows.
  - <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)>: <On>
  - <Display Authent. Screen When Sending>: <Off>
  - **<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>(P. 919)** : <Registered Info. for Each User>

4 Press <OK>.

IMPORTANT

- Depending on your environment, you might need to specify the SMTP/POP3 port number. For details, contact the Internet service provider or the network administrators. **<Specify Port Number for SMTP TX/POP RX>(P. 958)**

LINKS

Specifying E-Mail Settings(P. 511)
Using Internet Faxes (I-Fax)(P. 402)

Using a Cloud Mail Server with OAuth 2.0

ERJ8-03S

Configure the settings to use Microsoft's cloud service, Microsoft Exchange Online, or Google's cloud service, Google Workspace, with the OAuth 2.0 authorization framework.

Configuring the OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft) Settings(P. 202)
Configuring the OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings(P. 203)

Configuring the OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft) Settings

Configure this setting using Remote UI from a computer. You cannot use the control panel to configure the setting. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required.

1 Log in to Remote UI as an administrator. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 On the Portal page of Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration]. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Send] ▶ [OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft) Settings].

➡ The [OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft) Settings] screen is displayed.

4 In [Basic Settings], click [Edit].

➡ The [Edit Basic Settings] screen is displayed.

5 Select the [Use OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft)] checkbox.

6 Select whether to verify the certificate when performing TLS encrypted communication with the server.

- To verify the certificate, select the [Verify Server Certificate] checkbox.
- To add a Common Name (CN) to the verification items, select the [Add CN to Verification Items] checkbox.

7 In [Microsoft Entra ID Authorization Server Endpoint], enter the URL address of the authorization server.

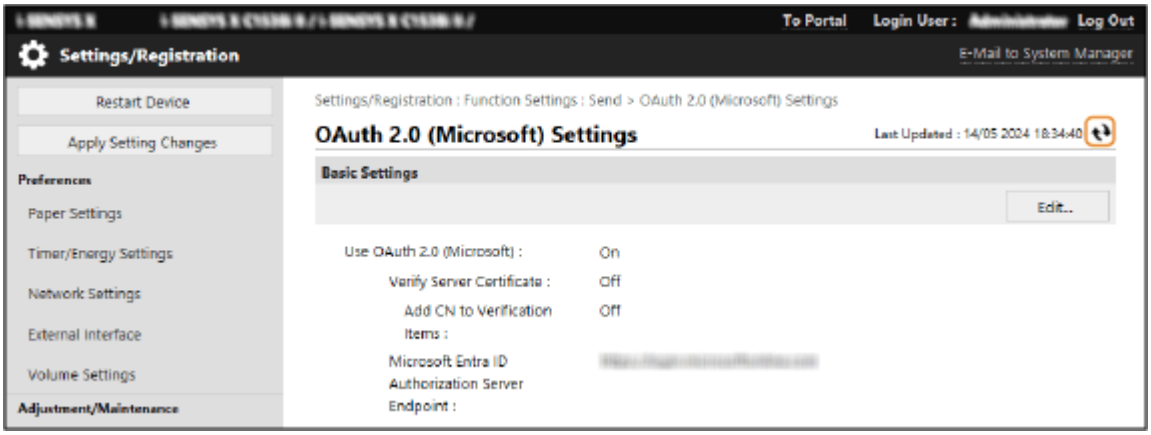
```
https://login.microsoftonline.com/<Tenant name>/oauth2/v2.0
```

- In <tenant>, enter [common], [consumers], or [organizations] according to the usage environment of the machine.

8 Click [OK].

➡ The [OAuth 2.0 (Microsoft) Settings] screen is displayed again.

9 **Wait for several seconds, and then click [↻].**



10 **Check that [Successfully Connected] is displayed for [Server Connection Status].**

11 **Click the link displayed next to [Microsoft Entra ID Authorization Endpoint], and authorize the server according to the instructions on the screen.**

- Follow the instructions in [Message] and enter the user code displayed in [User Code].
- Authorization is performed within the time frame indicated in [User Code Expires In].

12 **Wait for several minutes, and then click [↻].**

13 **Check that [Active] is displayed for [Token Status].**

14 **Log out from Remote UI.**

Configuring the OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings

Configure this setting using Remote UI from a computer. You cannot use the control panel to configure the setting. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required.

1 **Log in to Remote UI as an administrator. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **On the Portal page of Remote UI, click [Settings/Registration]. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Send] ▶ [OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings].**

➡ The [OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings] screen is displayed.

4 **In [Basic Settings], click [Edit].**

➡ The [Edit Basic Settings] screen is displayed.

5 **Select the [Use OAuth 2.0 (Google)] checkbox.**

6 **Select whether to verify the certificate when performing TLS encrypted communication with the server.**

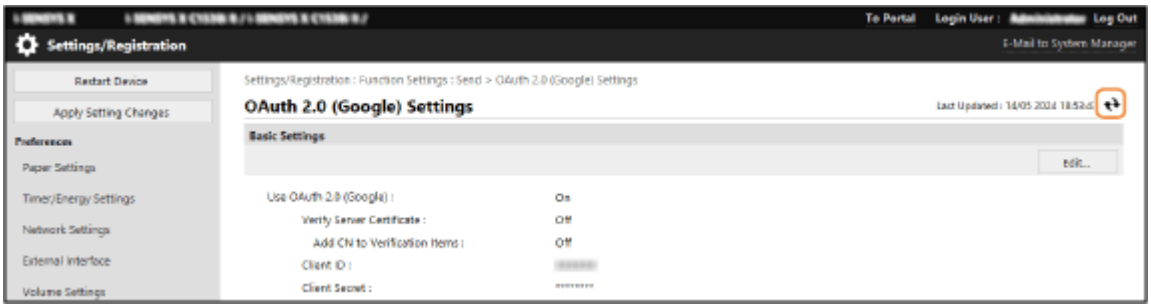
- To verify the certificate, select the [Verify Server Certificate] checkbox.
- To add a Common Name (CN) to the verification items, select the [Add CN to Verification Items] checkbox.

7 **Enter [Client ID] and [Client Secret], and click [OK].**

➡ The [OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings] screen is displayed again.

- Enter the client ID and client secret obtained from Google Workspace. For details, see the Google Workspace website.

8 **Wait for several seconds, and then click [↻].**



9 **In [Information for Authorization], click [Register].**

➡ The [Register Information for Authorization] screen is displayed.

10 **Click the link displayed next to [URL for Google Authorization Server], and authorize the server according to the instructions on the screen.**

- In [Authorization Code], enter the <Authorization Code> part of the URL displayed on the error screen at the time of authorization.

```
https://xxxxxxxxxx&code=<Authorization Code>&scope=xxxxxxxxxx
```

11 **Click [OK].**

➡ The [OAuth 2.0 (Google) Settings] screen is displayed again.

12 **Wait for several minutes, and then click [↻].**

13 **Check that [Active] is displayed for [Token Status].**

14 **Log out from Remote UI.**

Connecting to the Other Devices

ERJ8-03U

The machine can be connected to a computer (Windows server) or Advanced Space of other Canon multifunction printers on a network. The machine can print/send data saved in the connected Windows server or Advanced Space.

NOTE

- To connect the machine to the storage spaces on other multifunction printers, settings of the other printers are also necessary.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings>.

3 Specify each item.

■Registering multifunction printers to connect to

Register the Windows server or Advanced Space of other multifunction printers to connect to.

1 Press <Network Place Settings> ▶ <Register>.

2 Enter the necessary information and press <OK>.



a <Name>

Enter the name of the Advanced Space to connect to. As a name entered here is displayed on the list at the time of access, enter a name that is easy to read.

b <Protocol>

Select <SMB> or <WebDAV>, depending on whether the Windows server or Advanced Space of destination is made available as an SMB server or WebDAV.

c <Location>/<Host Name>

<Location> is displayed when you select <SMB>, and <Host Name>is displayed when you select <WebDAV> in the protocol setting.

- Enter the address in <Location> as "\\ (host name or IP address) \share" to connect to a shared space, or "\\ (host name or IP address) \users" to connect to personal space.
- Enter the address in <Host Name> as "https:// (host name or IP address)", and press <Next>. Then, enter "/share" for the shared space or "/users" for the personal space in <Folder Path>.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not register something other than the Advanced Space of another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine or a Windows server which is opened externally, as this may cause the machine to malfunction.

Controlling communication protocols

Select the communication protocol to use when making an external reference to a Windows server or Advanced Space of other Canon multifunction printers on a network. However, if only one of them is used, you can increase the security by disabling unnecessary settings.

1. Press <Protocol for External Reference>.
2. Press <On> of the protocol you use, then press <OK>.

IMPORTANT:

- When connection via SMB is not used, set the <SMB> setting to <Off>. When connection via WebDAV is not used, set the <WebDAV> setting to <Off>.

Verifying the certificate when connecting

When the Windows server or Advanced Space to connect to is set to use TLS, you can verify the TLS server certificate sent from the connected device when connecting. Because a connection will be canceled if an error occurs, attacks such as identity theft by third parties can be prevented.

1. Press <Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access>.
2. Press <On> ▶ <OK>.
   - When you press <On>, the screen for adding the verification items is displayed. If you need to verify the CN (Common Name), add a check mark.

IMPORTANT:

- If you do not verify the certificate, TLS communication is performed, even with an invalid certificate.

LINKS

Working with Other Devices(P. 528)
<Store/Access Files>(P. 994)
Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

Basic Operations

Basic Operations 209
Using the Touch Panel Display 211
Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display 212
Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen 215
Timeline Display Specifications 218
Items Displayed in the Timeline 220
Basic Operation of the Touch Panel Display 223
Entering Characters 228
Logging into the Machine 230
List of Items That Can Be Personalized 232
Customizing the Touch Panel Display 234
Customizing the <Home> Screen 237
Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function 240
Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions 242
Customizing the Basic Features Screen 245
Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen 247
Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons 248
Switching the Displayed Language 252
Registering Shortcuts for Frequently Used Settings/Registered Items 254
Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions 255
Canceling Send/Print Jobs 258
Setting Sounds 259
Entering Sleep Mode 263
Registering Destinations 265
About the Address Books of the Machine 267
Registering Destinations in the Address Book 270
Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group 280
Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book 283
Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button 285
Registering a Group in a One-Touch Button 287
Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons 288

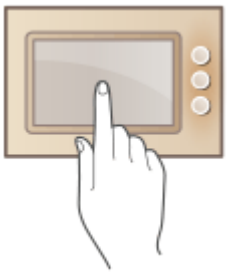
Basic Operations

ERJ8-03W

This chapter describes basic operations that are common to the use of all functions, such as how to use the control panel. This chapter also provides information on how to read and use the touch panel display, which is the main way of controlling operations from the main unit.

■ Using the Touch Panel Display

This section describes how to use the buttons on the touch panel display to perform various operations, such as adjusting and checking the settings. This section also describes how to enter text and numbers, which are necessary for operations such as registering information in the Address Book and sending faxes.



Using the Touch Panel Display(P. 211)

■ Logging into the Machine

This section describes how to log in when a login screen is displayed.



Logging into the Machine(P. 230)

■ Customizing the Touch Panel Display

This section describes how to arrange buttons and customize menus, making it easier to use the screens displayed on the touch panel.



Customizing the Touch Panel Display(P. 234)

■ Canceling Jobs

This section describes how to cancel active send or print jobs.



Canceling Send/Print Jobs(P. 258)

■ Specifying the Sound Settings

This section describes how to specify the settings for sounds, such as those produced when fax sending is complete or when an error occurs.



Setting Sounds(P. 259)

■ Entering Sleep Mode

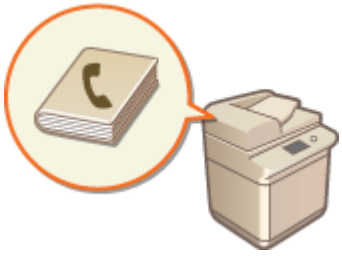
This section describes how to set sleep mode.



Entering Sleep Mode(P. 263)

■ Registering Destinations

This section describes how to register destinations in the Address Book or one-touch buttons for sending faxes or scanned documents.

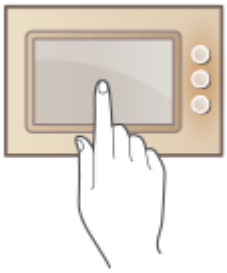


Registering Destinations(P. 265)

Using the Touch Panel Display

ERJ8-03X

The display of the machine is a touch panel that can be operated by touching directly with your fingers. The screen is used not only for basic functions such as copying and scanning, but also to display various settings, text input, communication status and error messages. In this manual, however, "touch" is indicated as "press."



Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display(P. 212)
Basic Operation of the Touch Panel Display(P. 223)
Entering Characters(P. 228)

IMPORTANT

Regarding the handling of the touch panel display

- Do not press the touch panel display too hard. Doing so may break the touch panel display.
- Do not use an object with a sharp end, such as a mechanical pencil or ballpoint pen. Doing so may scratch the surface of the touch panel display or break it.
- Placing objects on the display or wiping the display may cause the touch panel to react and lead to a malfunction.

NOTE

- Peel off the protective film from the touch panel display before use.
- You can customize menus and rearrange frequently used buttons for easier access. You can also combine multiple settings into one button to simplify operations. **Customizing the Touch Panel Display(P. 234)**

Adjust the brightness of the touch panel display

If it is hard to see the content of the touch panel display, perform the following operation on the <Home> screen to adjust the brightness.

<Adjust Brightness> ▶ adjust the brightness with <+> or <-> ▶ <Close>

LINKS

Control Panel(P. 30)

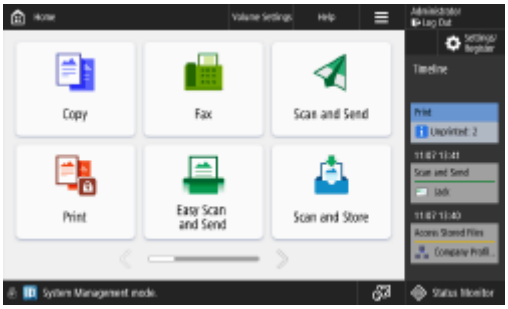
Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display

ERJ8-03Y

This section describes the various screens displayed on the touch panel display.

<Home> Screen

The <Home> screen is displayed when you press (Home). The <Home> screen displays a list of function buttons and acts as the entrance to various functions. **Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen(P. 215)**



Basic Features Screen of Each Function

On the <Home> screen, press the function buttons to display the Basic Features screen where you can access basic functions such as copying, faxing and scanning. Though the display and setting items on the Basic Features screen differ depending on functions, you can change the settings to suit your needs. **Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)**

Example: Copy Basic Features screen



Items displayed differ depending on functions.

Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)
Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)
Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

<Settings/Registration> Screen

Press (Settings/Register) to display the <Settings/Registration> screen. Press this key first to make changes for each setting, such as paper settings, display settings, and network settings. On this screen, you can also register destinations, such as e-mail addresses and fax numbers.

Settings/Registration(P. 801)
Registering Destinations(P. 265)



a Current menu level

The screen names of the current level and one level above are displayed.

b Setting item list

Setting items that belong to the current menu level are displayed in a list.

NOTE:

- When there is no menu under the lower level, the setting screen is displayed.

<Status Monitor> Screen

When you press (Status Monitor), the <Status Monitor> screen is displayed. On this screen, you can check the printing status and transmission status, as well as the remaining amount of toner and memory level.



a Status and logs of copy/print/transmission/saved documents

The current status or log of the selected item is displayed. You can cancel copying, printing, and fax transmission on this screen.

- **Canceling Copying(P. 305)**
- **Canceling Sending Faxes(P. 360)**
- **Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**
- **Canceling Printing(P. 419)**
- **Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)**

b Consumables

You can check the status of the machine, such as the amount of toner or paper remaining and memory levels.

- **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)**
- **Checking the Remaining Amount of Consumables(P. 92)**

Error Screen

In some cases when an error occurs, instructions on how to respond to the error are displayed. Follow the on-screen instructions to solve the problem. **Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)**
Example: When a paper jam occurs



TIPS

- Press ☰ displayed on the <Home> screen and the Basic Features screen to customize the screen such as rearranging buttons or creating a shortcut key. **Customizing the Touch Panel Display(P. 234)**





- You can change settings regarding the screen display, such as which screen appears immediately after turning ON the machine, and whether the message appears for remaining paper and toner. **<Display Settings>(P. 809)**
- You can set the screen to be displayed when a certain amount of time has passed without operation. **<Function After Auto Reset>(P. 821)**

NOTE

- 🔒 indicates that data in the memory/storage is encrypted. **Managing Data in the Storage(P. 774)**

LINKS

Control Panel(P. 30)

Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen

ERJ8-040

This section describes the items displayed on the <Home> screen.



a Function buttons

These buttons enable you to open the basic function screens, such as "Copy" and "Scan and Send".

When frequently used settings and destinations are registered as <Personal>/<Shared>, they are added as buttons.

NOTE:

- When you press and hold a button, the settings related to the button appear.

b Shortcuts

You can assign shortcuts to frequently used function buttons. Under the initial settings, shortcuts to <Volume Settings> and <Help> are registered. **Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function(P. 240)**

c ☰

This button enables you to customize and manage the <Home> screen. You can also display the menu by pressing and holding the background.
Customizing the <Home> screen enables you to change the background and button size. Management settings enable you to display/hide the timeline, etc. **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**

NOTE:

- You can also display <Menu> by pressing and holding the background of the <Home> screen.

d <Log In>/<Log Out>

You can log in/log out by pressing this button. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**

e ⚙ (Settings/Register)

You can display the <Settings/Registration> screen by pressing this button.

f <Timeline>

You can display the setting history and notices for some functions. For details, see **Timeline Display Specifications(P. 218)** .

g (Status Monitor)

You can check the print status, fax sending/receiving status, usage history, etc. It also enables you to check the amount of remaining paper and toner, the error status, etc. **Using the Touch Panel Display(P. 211)**

h Button display area

Depending on the mode and usage status of the machine, the following three types of buttons appear from left to right. Note that the buttons displayed differ depending on your model and the installed options.

- Button for removing USB memory

  : Memory media removal confirmation screen

- Button to the procedure for recovery/replacement/supply

  : Paper jam recovery procedure screen

  : Toner cartridge replacement procedure screen

  : Waste toner container replacement procedure screen

  : Replacement part replacement procedure screen

- <Switch Language/Keyboard> button

  : Display language/keyboard switching screen

i Status display area

The status of the machine, processes that are executing, errors, etc. are displayed via messages and icons. **Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)**

j Numeric keys ([0] to [9], [*], [#])

Press to enter numerical values, *, and #. **Entering Characters(P. 228)**

k (Reset)

Press to cancel the settings and restore the previously specified settings.

l (Start)

Press to start copying or scanning documents. You can adjust the touch time required to begin the start process. **<Start Key Touch Recognition Delay>(P. 891)**

m C (Clear)

Press to clear entered values or characters.

n /

Press to widen or narrow the range of the numeric keys displayed on the screen.

NOTE:

- j to n are displayed on screens other than the <Home> screen.

Timeline Display Specifications

ERJ8-041

The following two types of information are displayed in the timeline.

Setting History(P. 218)
Notices(P. 219)

NOTE

- For information on the icons and items displayed in the timeline, see **Items Displayed in the Timeline(P. 220)** .
- A timeline can be displayed for each login user. If not logged in, a shared timeline can be displayed for users who do not use authentication, such as unauthenticated users and guest users. Change the settings for <Allow Non-Authentication Users to Use Timeline> and <Allow Each Login User to Use Timeline> according to your needs. **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**
- The timeline for users that do not use authentication, such as unauthenticated users and guest users, is retained when **<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>(P. 819)** is set to <On> and quick startup is performed. When the power is turned OFF with **<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>(P. 819)** set to <Off> or quick startup could not be performed, the timeline for users that do not use authentication, such as unauthenticated users and guest users, is deleted.
- The timeline cannot be imported/exported. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

Setting History

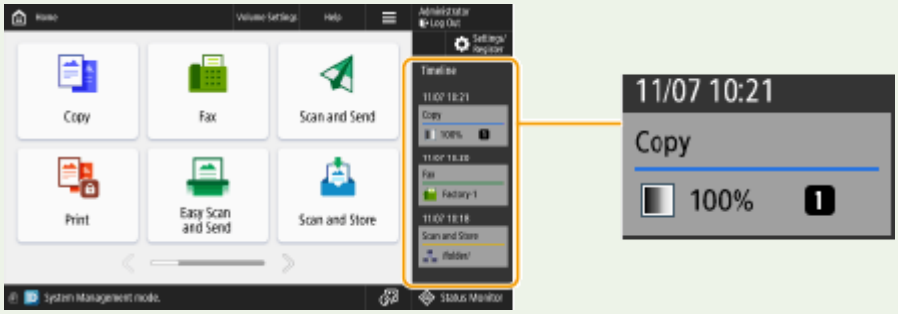
The timeline is convenient for users who repeatedly use the same settings and destinations for a function such as "Copy" and "Scan and Send". The history of settings used are automatically added to the timeline and can be pressed to recall the same settings.

The timeline displays the settings of the following functions.

- Copy
- Fax
- Scan and Send
- Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan
- Scan and Store (Network)
- Access Stored Files (printing Network files)

NOTE

- The latest 10 items of history are retained as the timeline in chronological order. The history of earlier jobs is deleted from the timeline. When the job before last is used again, the order of the top two jobs is switched but the number of jobs in the timeline does not change. However, if the settings are changed after being recalled, they are deemed to be new settings.



- To delete history that has been automatically added or store the settings of that history to the <Home> screen as a Personal button/Shared button, press and hold the history. However, <Display Confirmation Screen When Recalling> and <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)> cannot be set when registering a Personal button/Shared button from the timeline. **Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons(P. 248)**
- When <Restrict Resending from Log> is set to <On>, the history of "Fax" and "Scan and Send" is not retained in the timeline.
- The following passwords can be included in the timeline for each login user.
  - Login passwords to destination file servers for Scan and Send
  - Encryption passwords for Scan and Store (<Password Required to Open Document> and <Password Required to Change Permission>)
- Whether to include the password in the timeline of the logged in user can be changed in **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)** . However, the password in <Password> for the fax function is retained in the timeline, regardless of the **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)** setting.
- The password is not retained in the timeline for unauthenticated users or guest users regardless of the **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)** setting. However, if the password in <Password> for the fax function is set, it is not displayed in the timeline.
- If **<Manage Address Book Access Numbers>(P. 1010)** is set to <On>, the send job log ("Fax" and "Scan and Send") for unauthenticated users and guest users is not displayed in the timeline.
- The setting history of the user that is logged in can be shared with multiple machines as personalization data using setting synchronization. **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**
- With Access Stored Files, files are saved to the timeline together with the settings they are printed with. You cannot select another file and reuse the settings only. The corresponding timeline settings also cannot be used if a file has been deleted or moved.

Notices

Notices are displayed when the user that is logged in has unprinted jobs. Printing can be executed by displaying the print screen from the displayed timeline.

NOTE

- Notices are not displayed in the timeline if <Personal> is set to <Off> in **<Job List Display Settings>(P. 1005)** .
- If **<Display Other User Jobs>(P. 1004)** is set to <On>, the total number of unprinted jobs for the user that is logged in and unprinted jobs for other users is displayed in the notices.

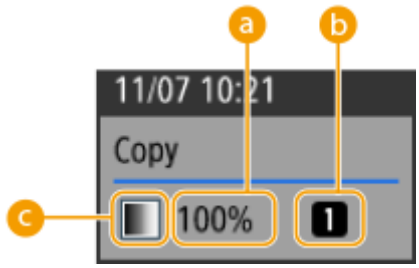
Items Displayed in the Timeline

ERJ8-042

The items displayed in the timeline differ according to the function. The items for each function are described here.

- **Copy(P. 220)**
- **Fax(P. 220)**
- **Scan and Send/Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan(P. 221)**
- **Scan and Store (Network)(P. 221)**
- **Access Stored Files (Network)(P. 221)**
- **Print(P. 222)**

Copy

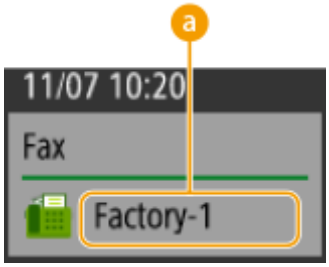


a Zoom ratio

b Paper source

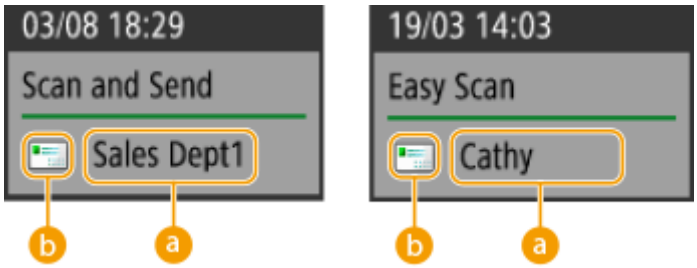
c Color mode

Fax



a Destination

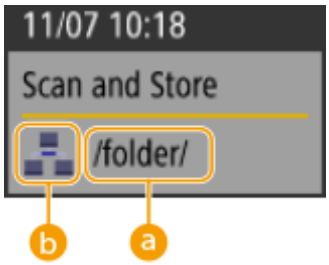
Scan and Send/Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan



a First destination

b Destination type of the first destination

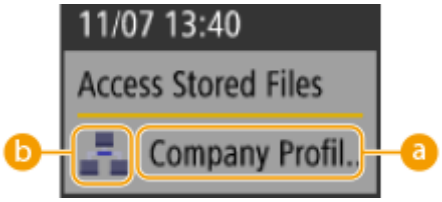
Scan and Store (Network)



a Folder name

b Mail Box icon

Access Stored Files (Network)



a File name

b Mail Box type

NOTE:

- When multiple files are selected, the name of the file selected first is displayed.

Print



a Number of jobs waiting to be printed

Basic Operation of the Touch Panel Display

ERJ8-043

Even though functions and settings are different, the operation methods for buttons displayed on the screen and the procedure to select items are the same. This section describes the operation methods for buttons frequently displayed on the screen as well as how to select items.

Selecting a Setting Status(P. 223)
Selecting a Button(P. 223)
Selecting an Item from Drop-down List(P. 224)
Adjusting a Value to Increase or Decrease(P. 224)
Applying/Canceling Settings(P. 224)
Switching Pages(P. 225)
Changing the Display Order in the List(P. 225)
Using Help(P. 226)

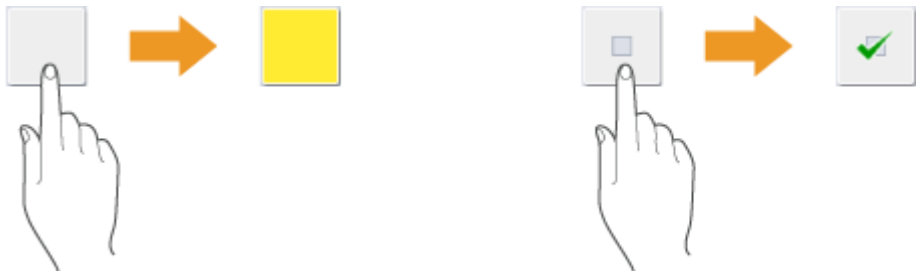
Selecting a Setting Status

The setting status, such as copy ratio, copy paper, and number of copies, are displayed. When you want to change a setting, select the desired setting item.

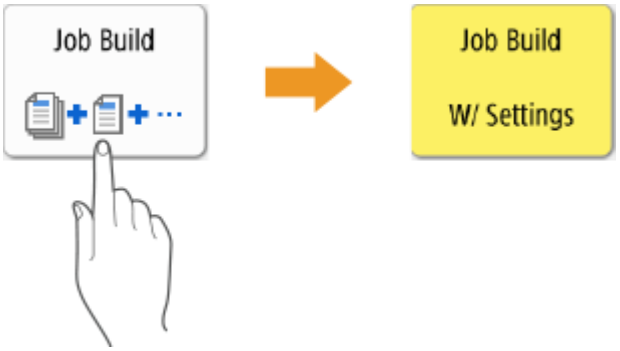


Selecting a Button

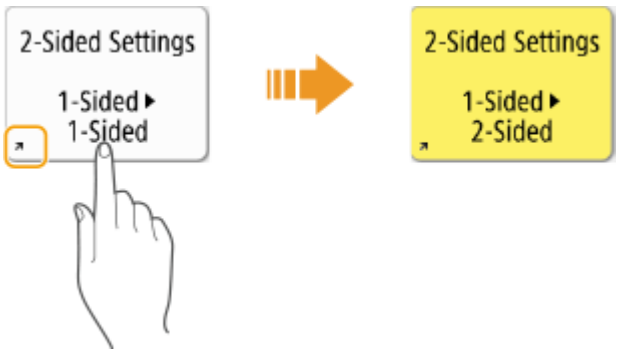
When you press a button, the button color may change or a check mark may be added to indicate that it has been selected.



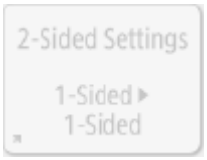
- Press the function setting button to display the setting status in the lower section of a button and the color is changed.



- Press a button in which ↗ is located in the lower-left to display the setting screen. When the setting is made, the setting status is displayed in the lower section of the button and the color is changed.

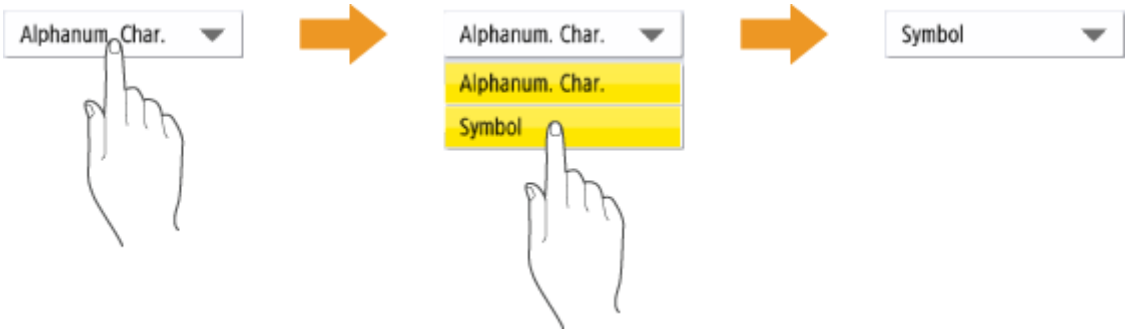


- When a button is displayed in a lighter color, you cannot select that button. Such displays appear depending on login status or because its related function cannot be used as another function has been set.



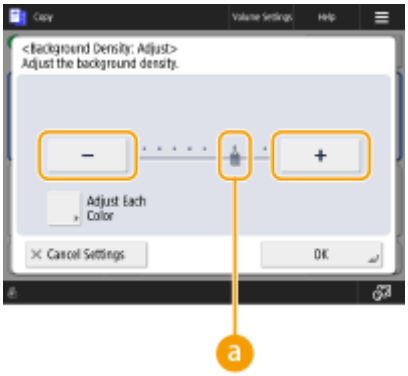
Selecting an Item from Drop-down List

Press a button in which ▼ is located in the right to display the drop-down list. Press the item on a list to select an item.



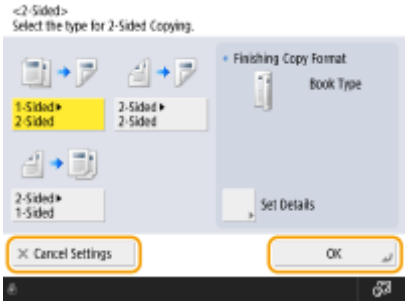
Adjusting a Value to Increase or Decrease

Press the <-> or <+> buttons to decrease or increase values, such as when adjusting the density. Each time you press the button, the slider (ⓐ) moves to increase or decrease the numerical value. By holding down the button, you can change the value quickly.

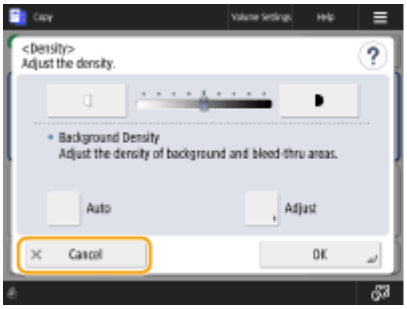


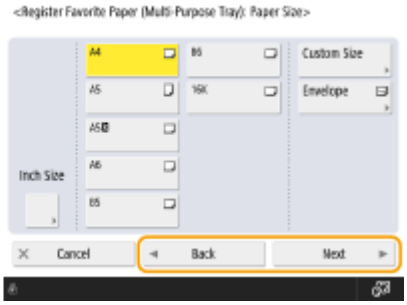
Applying/Canceling Settings

Press <OK> to apply settings and press <Cancel Settings> to discard the changes and restore the previous settings.



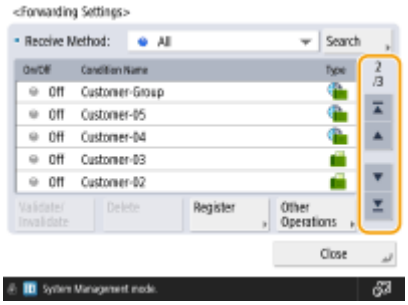
- In addition, buttons such as <Cancel> which cancels the setting and returns to the previous screen, <Next> which applies the setting to proceed to the next screen, <Back> which returns to the previous setting screen and <Close> which closes the screen currently open are displayed.





Switching Pages

When a list display is two pages or more, press ▲/▼ or ◀/▶ to switch the page. Press ⏫ to jump to the first page, press ⏬ to jump to the last page.



Changing the Display Order in the List

When there are multiple jobs/files in a list, you can press <Name> or <Date/Time> to sort the list of items. When ▲ is displayed, items are displayed in ascending order, or when ▼ is displayed, items are displayed in descending order.



NOTE:

- Sorting conditions differ depending on the function you are using.
- If you log in with personal authentication management, the sorting condition that was last used is retained. **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**

Using Help

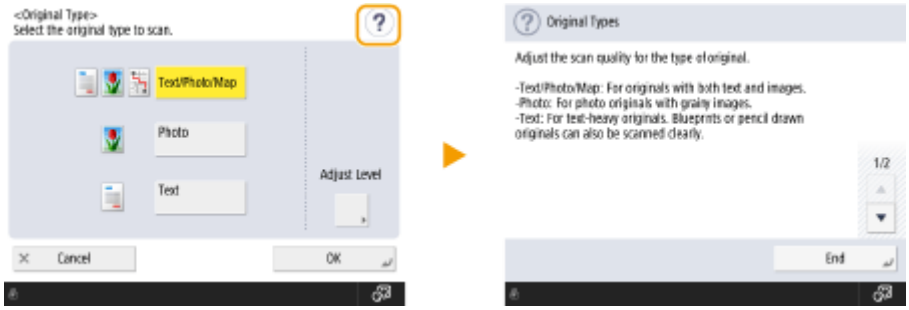
By pressing <Help>, a QR code is displayed. By scanning this QR code with a mobile device such as smartphone or tablet, you can access the User's Guide page for this machine.



- When pressing <Help> on the basic screen of Fax or Scan, a QR code is displayed to access the Fax or Scan pages of the User's Guide.



Depending on the displayed function, (?) may be displayed on the top right of the display. By pressing (?), you can confirm the description of the function or how to use the function.



When a QR code is displayed on a Details window of an error log, scanning the QR code with a mobile device such as smartphone or tablet allows you to access a page of the User's Guide for this machine, which tells you how to manage the error.



TIPS

Operate in the same manner as with a smartphone (flick/drag-and-drop)

On some screens, you can switch the page or scroll by flicking your finger up/down or left/right on the screen as you would with a smartphone.

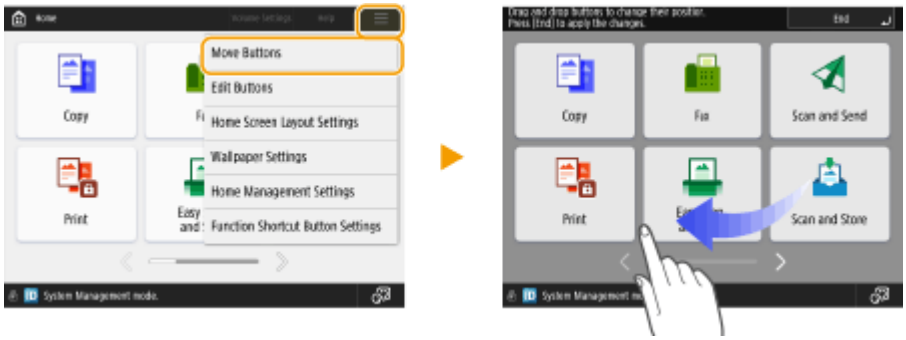




NOTE:

- You can also disable flick operations. **<Use Flick Function>(P. 880)**
- Flick operations and drag-and-drop operations cannot be used when <Invert Screen Colors> is set to <On>. **<Invert Screen Colors>(P. 879)**

On screens with movable buttons, the buttons can be dragged and dropped to move them.



Flick and scroll exceeding a list

On some screens, flicking toward the outside of a list still scrolls the list.



LINKS

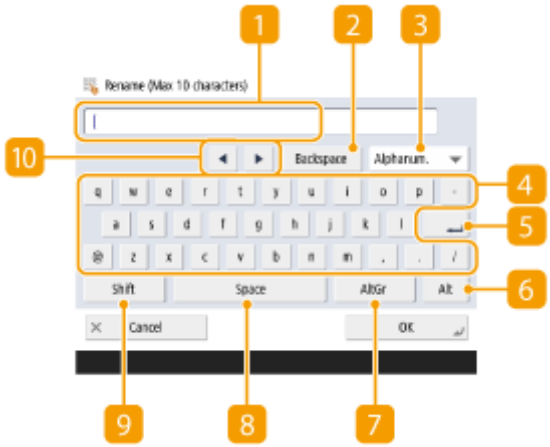
Control Panel(P. 30)
Entering Characters(P. 228)

Entering Characters

ERJ8-044

For screens that require alphanumeric entries, enter characters using the keys on the touch panel display. To enter numbers, you can also use the numeric keys on the right of the touch panel display.

Example: <Alphanum.> mode



1 Character input field

Characters entered are displayed.

2 <Backspace> button

Each time you press the button, you can delete a character to the left of the cursor one by one.

NOTE:

- If a character you want to delete is not to the left of the cursor, press ◀ or ▶ (10) to move the cursor.
- Press C (Clear) if you want to delete all the characters you entered.

3 Entry mode button

Select the entry mode from the drop-down list.

<Alphanum.>	Alphanumeric character entry mode
<Symbol>	Symbol entry mode

NOTE:

- You may not be able to select the entry mode because the type of characters that you can enter is predetermined for some screens.

4 Character input button

The same keyboard layout as that of a computer.

5 Enter button

Press to start a new line.

6 <Alt> button

Press to display only the numeric keys.

7 <AltGr> button

Press to display characters with accent marks.

8 <Space> button

Press to enter a space.

9 <Shift> button

Press to enter uppercase characters or symbols.

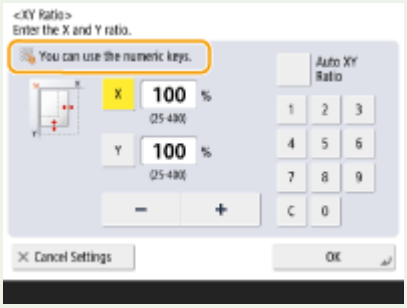
10 Cursor button

Move the cursor in the input field.

NOTE

When displaying the numeric keys icon

- When < You can use numeric keys.> is displayed, you can enter numerical values using the numeric keys on the right of the touch panel display.
  Example: <XY Ratio> setting screen



- When < Enter using the numeric keys.> is displayed, only the numeric keys on the right of the touch panel display can be used for entering numbers.

Enter characters from the USB keyboard

To enter characters, you can also use a USB keyboard by connecting it to the USB port (**Front Side(P. 20)**). Note the following points when entering from a USB keyboard.

- Set <Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device> in <USB Settings> to <Off>. **<Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device>(P. 877)**
- You can only enter ASCII characters from a USB keyboard.
- Keys that are not displayed on the keyboard screen of the touch panel display, such as Delete, End, Tab, Esc, and function keys, cannot be used on a USB keyboard.
- The entering sound of a USB keyboard is produced based on the <Entry Tone> and <Invalid Entry Tone> settings on the sound setting screen. **Setting Sounds(P. 259)**

Logging into the Machine

ERJ8-045

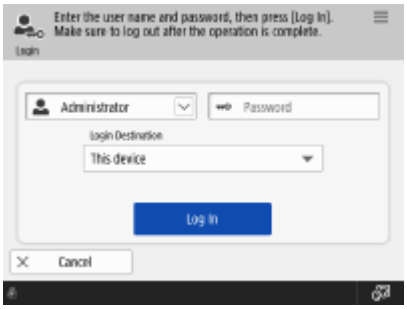
When the login screen is displayed, registered authorized users are required to log in to continue operating the machine. To log in, each user must enter his or her own user name and password. This ensures the security of the machine. Also, the users can use the machine as conveniently as possible by customizing (personalizing) the display and the settings according to their preferences. The items displayed on the login screen vary depending on the user management settings. Perform the login operation based on the items that are displayed.

When the User Name and Password Input Screen Is Displayed(P. 230)

NOTE

- For the functions and settings that can be personalized, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** .
- If you are not using the Personalization function, set <Enable Use of Personal Settings> (**<Enable Use of Personal Settings>(P. 1037)**) to <Off>.
- If <Auto Reset Time> is set, the user is automatically logged out when no operations are performed for a specified period. **<Auto Reset Time>(P. 820)**
- Depending on the Visual Message settings, the Visual Message screen may appear prior to login. To log in, first close the Visual Message screen. **Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)**

When the User Name and Password Input Screen Is Displayed



Use the on-screen keyboard to enter the user name and password.

1 Press <User Name>.

- If the login user's cache is remaining, you can also select the user name from the login history drop-down list. When a user name is selected, press <Password> and proceed to step 3.

2 Enter the user name and press <Next>.

3 Enter the password and press <OK>.

4 Select the login destination from the <Login Destination> drop-down list, and press <Log In>.

➠ When login is successful, the machine functions become available.

- Log out after use.

NOTE

- You can specify whether to save passwords entered during login in the cache. **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)**
- If you set <Display Button to Change Password on Settings Menu> to <On>, the password can be changed from ☰ on the top right of the login screen. **<Display Button to Change Password on Settings Menu>(P. 1026)**
- You can specify whether to save or delete the login user's cache. **<Number of Caches for Login Users>(P. 1026)**

LINKS

Using the Touch Panel Display(P. 211)
Customizing the Touch Panel Display(P. 234)
Managing Users(P. 591)
Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

List of Items That Can Be Personalized

ERJ8-046

The following items can be personalized for each login user.

Category	Setting Value	Corresponding Settings
Display language *1*2	Display language and keyboard layout	**<Switch Language/Keyboard>(P. 811)**
Accessibility *1*2	Key Repetition Settings	**<Key Repetition Settings>(P. 879)**
	Invert Screen Colors	**<Invert Screen Colors>(P. 879)**
Initial screen *1*2	Screen displayed after logging in	**<Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>(P. 809)**
Home *1*2	Personal buttons	Personal buttons (**Registering Personal Buttons/ Shared Buttons(P. 248)**)
	Timeline*3*5	Timeline (**Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen(P. 215)**)
	Home settings	**Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**
Network	SSID, Network key, Automatically Enable/ Disable Direct Connection at Login/Logout	**<Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>(P. 867)** , **<SSID/Network Key Settings>(P. 866)**
Default job settings *1*2*3	Copy	**<Change Default Settings>(P. 921)**
	Fax	**<Change Default Settings>(P. 967)**
	Scan and Send*4	**<Change Default Settings>(P. 945)**
	Scan and Store*4	**<Change Default Settings>(P. 996)**
	Access Stored Files	**<Change Default Settings>(P. 998)**
Shortcuts *1*2	Copy	**<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 922)**
	Fax	**<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 968)**
	Scan and Send	**<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 946)**
Previous Settings *1*3*5	Copy	**Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings)(P. 340)**
	Fax	**Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings)(P. 377)**
	Scan and Send*4	**Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/ Saving (Previous Settings)(P. 507)**
Address Book	Personal address lists*1	**Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)** , **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**
	Group address books*1*6 (user group address list 01 to user group address list 50)	

Category	Setting Value	Corresponding Settings
Conditions for changing the list order *5	Scan and Store	**Saving Documents in Other Devices(P. 529)** , **Saving Documents in Memory Media(P. 537)**
	Access Stored Files	**Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices(P. 530)** , **Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media(P. 539)**
	Print	**Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)**
Automatic print after login settings	Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In	**<Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In>(P. 1007)**
Other	Keychain*1	-

*1 Deleted when <Delete Oldest User Settings> is specified. **<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)**

*2 When a client machine synchronizes custom settings for the first time, the synchronization of this item may not finish before the machine starts up.

*3 When synchronizing custom settings, this item can be specified for individual machines within the scope of data sharing. (Other settings for the server machine are required on the multifunction printer with the server function.)

*4 Even if this item is set to be shared, destinations are left blank and not synchronized.

*5 This item cannot be imported from another machine or exported to another machine. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

*6 It is necessary to use the login service that supports the group function (User Authentication supports the group function).

■Items That Cannot Be Personalized but Can Be Synchronized by Synchronizing Custom Settings

The following items cannot be personalized but can be shared between multiple Canon multifunction printers by synchronizing custom settings.

- Destination for sharing user group address lists **Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)**
- Home settings (when not logged in) **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**

NOTE

- Set <Shared across All Devices> to share the <Shared> and <Wallpaper Settings> (when not logged in) settings of the <Home> screen with all client machines using synchronization of custom settings. If you want to manage these settings for each client machine separately, select <Device-Specific (Not Shared)> when starting the service for the first time (when no client machines are connected to the server machine). The data may be initialized if the scope of data sharing is changed after the service is started. (Other settings for the server machine are required on the multifunction printer with the server function.)
- For information on the keychain, see **Managing Users(P. 591)** .
- When the <Switch Language/Keyboard>, <Accessibility>, and <Personal SSID and Network Key Settings> settings could not be reflected immediately after logging in, they can be reflected when it becomes possible. For more information, see **Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)** .

Customizing the Touch Panel Display

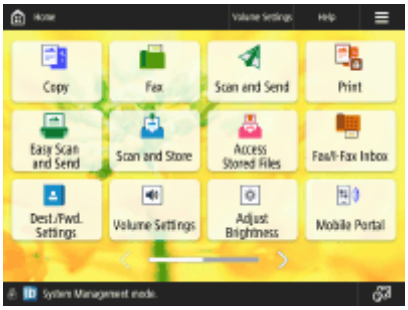
ERJ8-047

In order to more easily use the <Home> screen and the Basic Features screen of each function, you can customize the screen by rearranging buttons or creating shortcut buttons. In addition, you can work more efficiently by registering the settings already specified for frequently used functions to <Personal>/<Shared>, or the Personal Settings to customize the operation environment to your preferences.



Customizing the <Home> Screen

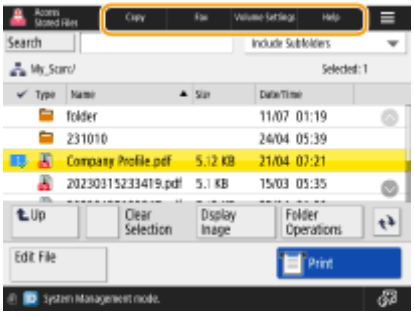
The order, size, and number of buttons displayed on the <Home> screen can be changed, and the background image can be changed. <Home Management Settings> enables you to configure the timeline display settings and display/hide the function buttons.



Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)

Creating a Shortcut

Function shortcut buttons can be displayed on each function screen. Registering frequently used functions is convenient because it enables functions to be continuously used without returning to the <Home> screen.

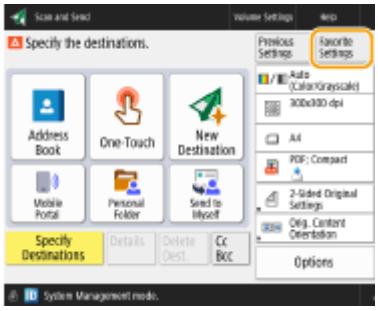


Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function(P. 240)

Registering Favorite Settings

If you frequently use the same combination of settings for copy, fax, and scan, it is convenient that you have those settings registered as <Favorite Settings>.



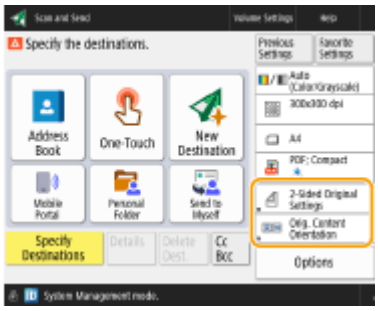


Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)

Customizing the Basic Features Screen

You can change the setting buttons that are displayed on the Basic Features screens (for copy, fax, and scan). You can also display a different Basic Features screen customized for each logged-in user.





Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

Creating the <Personal>/<Shared> Button

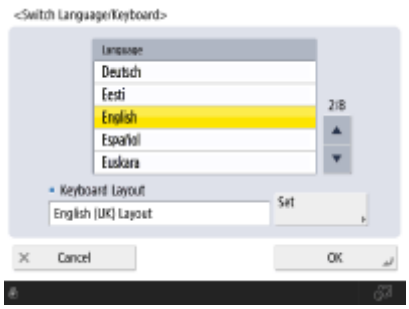
It is possible to freely register frequently used functions and setting procedures on the <Home> screen.



Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen(P. 247)

Changing the Language Displayed

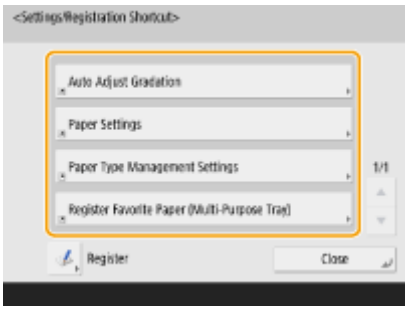
You can change the language displayed on the touch panel display and keyboard.



Switching the Displayed Language(P. 252)

Creating the Settings/Registration Shortcut

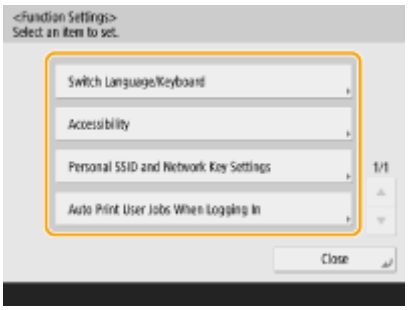
You can create a shortcut for any setting item that is displayed with a press of (Settings/Register). If you frequently use a setting item provided at a very deep level, you can conveniently use the shortcut for that item to quickly switch the display.



Registering Shortcuts for Frequently Used Settings/Registered Items(P. 254)

Settings for Each User (Personal Settings)

The displays and operation environment can be changed for each user.



Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions(P. 255)

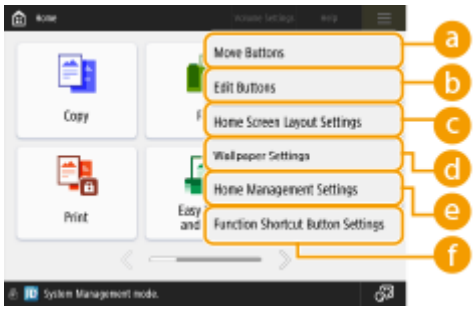
LINKS

Using the Touch Panel Display(P. 211)

Customizing the <Home> Screen

ERJ8-048

This section describes what can be customized and managed from the items displayed when ☰ is pressed on the <Home> screen.



NOTE:

- Depending on the setting for <Allow Home Screen Customization for Common Use> and the privileges of the login user, a screen for selecting either <Customize for Personal Use> or <Customize for Common Use> may be displayed when <Move Buttons>, <Edit Buttons>, <Home Screen Layout Settings>, or <Wallpaper Settings> is selected.
  - <Customize for Personal Use>: Select this to customize the Home screen for the current login user. The default settings for <Customize for Personal Use> follow the settings for <Customize for Common Use>.
  - <Customize for Common Use>: Select this to customize the Home screen for the users who have no personalized screen, such as non-login users, Guest users, etc. The settings in <Customize for Common Use> are applied until the authenticated user configures <Customize for Personal Use>.
- If the settings in <Customize for Common Use> are changed, the changes are also reflected to <Customize for Personal Use> until the authenticated user configures <Customize for Personal Use>.
- <Home> screen settings can be imported/exported between machines that support the <Home> screen. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- <Home> screen settings are not imported to machines that support the <Quick Menu> screen but do not support the <Home> screen.
- Even if any of the settings in <Home Management Settings for Personal Use> is disabled when exporting, personal settings are exported if they are already configured.

a <Move Buttons>

You can move function buttons and Personal buttons/Shared buttons.

b <Edit Buttons>

Only <Move:> can be used for function buttons.
<Rename>, <Delete>, and <Move> can be used for Personal buttons/Shared buttons.

c <Home Screen Layout Settings>

You can select one of the following items for the size and number of buttons displayed on a single screen.

- <3 large buttons per page>
- <4 medium-small buttons per page>
- <6 large buttons per page>
- <9 medium buttons per page>

- <12 medium-small buttons per page>

<Wallpaper Settings>

You can change the background image.

<Home Management Settings>

The following settings are available. (**Red and bold text** indicates the default setting.)

- <Allow Home Screen Customization for Common Use>: <On>/<**Off**>
- <Allow Non-Authentication Users to Use Timeline>: <**On**>/<Off>
- <Allow Each Login User to Use Timeline>: <**On**>/<Off>
- <Return to Home After Job is Performed>: <**On**>/<Off>
- <Restrict Function Display>: Select the functions or MEAP applications to hide on the <Home> screen.
- <Home Management Settings for Personal Use>: The following settings can be configured.
  - <Allow Registration/Editing of Personal Buttons>: <**On**>/<Off>
  - <Allow Use of Move Buttons When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>/<Off>
  - <Allow Use of Home Screen Layout Set. When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>/<Off>
  - <Allow Use of Wallpaper Settings When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>/<Off>

NOTE:

- Operating this setting requires administrator privileges.
- <Allow Home Screen Customization for Common Use>

  When set to On, General users and users that are not logged in can register shared buttons and customize the Home screen for common use.
- <Return to Home After Job is Performed>

  When set to On, the Home screen will be displayed after performing jobs using Shared buttons, Personal buttons or Timeline.
- History is not retained in the timeline when a user is not logged in and <Allow Non-Authentication Users to Use Timeline> is set to <Off>, or when a user is logged in and <Allow Each Login User to Use Timeline> is set to <Off>.
- When <Enable Use of Personal Settings> is disabled, <Home Management Settings for Personal Use> is grayed out and personal settings cannot be used. **<Enable Use of Personal Settings>(P. 1037)**
- <Allow Registration/Editing of Personal Buttons>

  Disable this to hide personal buttons.
- If <Allow Use of Move Buttons When Customizing for Personal Use> is disabled after moving buttons on the personalized screen with <Allow Use of Move Buttons When Customizing for Personal Use> enabled, buttons become unable to be moved on the personalized screen but their position is retained.
- <Allow Use of Home Screen Layout Set. When Customizing for Personal Use>

  Disable this to apply the settings in <Device Settings>.
- <Allow Use of Wallpaper Settings When Customizing for Personal Use>

  Disable this to apply the settings in <Device Settings>.

<Function Shortcut Button Settings>

You can register function buttons as shortcuts. Select the registration destination, and then the function to register.

NOTE:

- Operating this setting requires administrator privileges.

- If you do not use shortcuts, select <Unassigned> from the list.

Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function

ERJ8-049

You can create a shortcut button for the functions on the <Home> screen. Use this button to access a different function without returning to the <Home> screen. To create a shortcut, log in with administrator privileges. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**



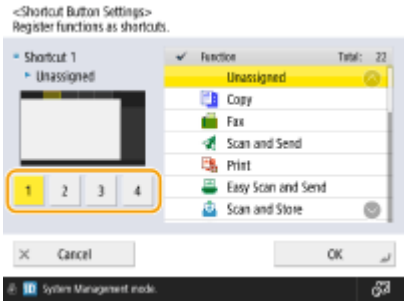
NOTE

- Shortcuts that can be registered: 4
- Under the initial settings, <Volume Settings> is registered to Shortcut 3 and <Help> is registered to Shortcut 4.

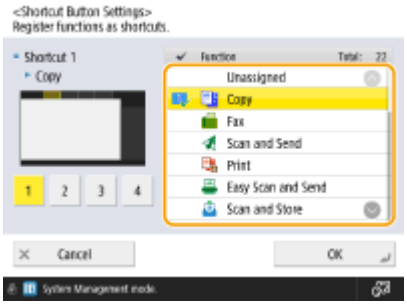
1 Press ☰. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Shortcut Button Settings>.

3 Select a number for the shortcut to be created.



4 Select the function you want to create a shortcut for.



- Select the function from the list. You can check the position of the shortcut selected and the function assigned to it in the preview screen on the left of the list.
- If you do not use shortcuts, select <Unassigned> from the list.

5 Press <OK>.

Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions

ERJ8-04A

If you use the same settings every time for the Copy, Fax, or Scan function or want to save complicated settings, you can register settings as favorite settings, which can then be conveniently recalled.



Registering Settings(P. 242)
Recalling Registered Settings(P. 243)

NOTE

- The settings stored in memory are not deleted, even if the main power is turned OFF.

Registering Settings

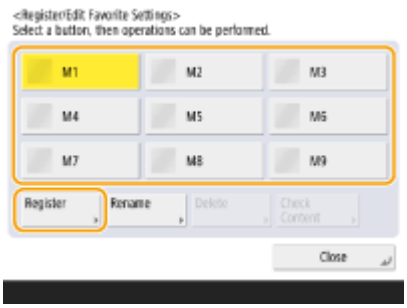
Example: Copy Function

1 Press <Copy>, and specify the settings you want to register.

<Home> Screen(P. 212)
Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)

2 Press ▶ <Register/Edit Favorite Settings>.

3 Select a button, and press <Register>.



- To change a button name, select the button, press <Rename>, and enter the new name.
- To delete registered settings, select the button and press <Delete>.
- The name for the button is not deleted. To change a key name, press <Rename>.

- If an address included in a favorite settings button is deleted from the address book, it is also deleted from the settings registered in the favorite settings button.
- If you select <Device Login Authentication Information> for <Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>, a password for a file destination cannot be stored in <Favorite Settings>.

4 Press <Yes> ▶ <Close>.

- For certain functions, press <Next>, enter a comment as necessary, and press <OK>. You can set <Show Comments> to <On> to display comments.

NOTE

- <The information for the new file destination specified may include a password. Do you want to include the password when registering? (Press [No] to register the destination without the password.)>
  If the above messages is displayed when registering <Favorite Settings> for <Scan and Send>, perform the following operations.
  - If you want to recall favorite settings without entering a password, press <Yes> to retain the password information.
  - If you want to recall favorite settings by entering a password, press <No> to delete the password information. (If you often import favorite settings to other devices, you can require a password to be entered each time to prevent users from impersonating other users.)
  - You can include the name of the stored file in the "Favorite Settings" on <Scan and Send> and <Scan and Store>.

Recalling Registered Settings

Example: Copy Function

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

NOTE:

- With <Fax> and <Scan and Send>, you can change the default screen to the <Favorite Settings> screen.
  - Scan and Send: **<Default Screen>(P. 945)**
  - Fax: **<Default Screen>(P. 967)**

3 Press <Favorite Settings> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Select the button ▶ press <OK> ▶ <Yes>.



- You can also change the settings you recall after pressing <Yes>.

NOTE:

- For the Copy/Scan and Send function, you can also set the machine not to display the confirmation screen when the registered settings are recalled.
  - Copy: **<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>(P. 921)**
  - Scan and Send: **<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>(P. 945)**

5 Press (Start).

➠ Copying starts.

NOTE

- The limit to the number of <Favorite Settings> you can register is as follows.
  - Copy: 9
  - Fax: 18
  - Scan and Send: 18
  - Scan and Store (Network/Memory Media): 9
  - JPEG/TIFF files in Access Stored Files (Network/Memory Media): 9
  - PDF/XPS files in Access Stored Files (Network/Memory Media): 9

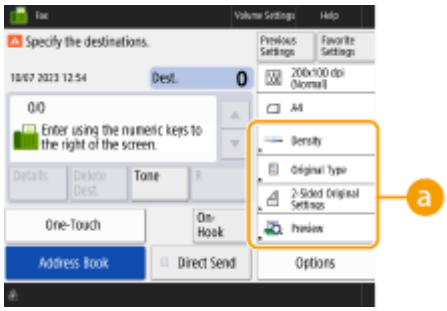
Customizing the Basic Features Screen

ERJ8-04C

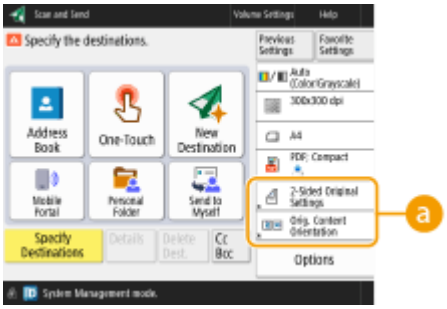
The setting buttons that are displayed on the Basic Features screens (for copy, fax, and scan) can be changed with other setting buttons in <Options>. By locating frequently used setting buttons on the Basic Features screen, you can use functions more efficiently. In addition, by logging in with personal authentication management, you can display a different Basic Features screen customized for each user.



Copy Basic Features screen



Fax Basic Features screen



Scan Basic Features screen

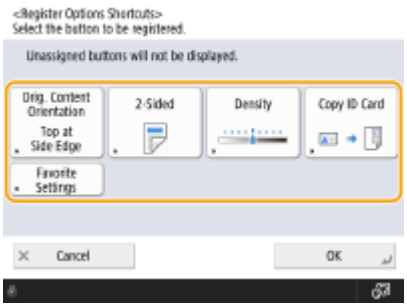
a Buttons that can be replaced

Example : Copy Basic Features screen

1 Press <Copy> and press . <Home> Screen(P. 212)

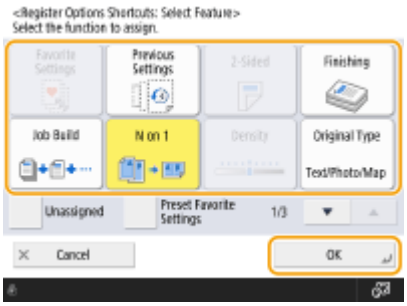
2 Press <Register Options Shortcuts>.

3 Select a button to be replaced.



- Buttons displayed here are currently being displayed on the Basic Features screen. Buttons selected in this step will not be displayed on the Basic Features screen.

4 Select a button you want to display on the Basic Features screen and press <OK>.



- If you do not want to display the button, press <Unassigned>.
- For the Copy function, you can register the configured favorite settings as a shortcut from <Preset Favorite Settings>.

5 Press <OK>.

➠ By replacing with the button selected in step 3, the new button selected in step 4 is displayed on the Basic Features screen.

NOTE

- The number of setting items located on the Basic Features screen and the location to be displayed differ depending on functions.
- A shortcut button is not displayed if <Unassigned> is set as a shortcut.
- The limit to the number of shortcuts for <Options> you can register is as follows.
  - Copy: 5
  - Fax: 4
  - Scan and Send: 2

TIPS

Registering in <Favorite Settings>

- In <Favorite Settings>, you can register frequently used procedures for copying, as well as frequently specified destinations and settings for scanning. For more information, see **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)** .

Changing the default setting on the Basic Features screen

- After changing the settings for each function, you can register the current settings as a default on the Basic Features screen by pressing ☰ followed by <Change Default Settings>. If you log into the machine with personal authentication management (**Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**) before performing this setting, it is registered as your own personal default setting (**List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**).

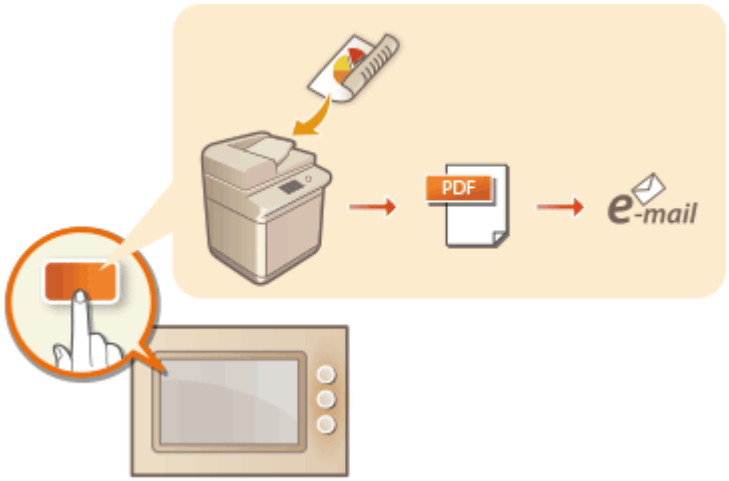
Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen

ERJ8-04E

Frequently used settings and destinations can be registered to the <Home> screen as Personal buttons/Shared buttons to recall those settings with a single button.

Shared buttons can be used by all users.

Personal buttons can only be used by login users.



Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons(P. 248)

Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons

ERJ8-04F

You can register Personal buttons for your own use, or Shared buttons that can be shared with all users.

NOTE

- To register a Personal button, you need to log in with personal authentication management. **Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)**
- If you select <Device Login Authentication Information> for <Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>, a password for a file destination is not stored in a Personal button. **<Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>(P. 920)**
- For information on the maximum number of Personal buttons and Shared buttons that can be registered, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** .
- Personal buttons cannot be changed to Shared buttons, and vice-versa. To do so, recall the settings and register another button from .
- Press and hold a button to change its name/comment or move/delete it. The same operations (changing the name/comment of a button or moving/deleting a button) can be performed from on the <Home> screen. **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**
- Personal buttons can be shared between multiple devices by synchronizing personalized data. **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**

Settings that can be registered in Personal buttons/Shared buttons

Functions and settings that can be registered in Personal buttons/Shared buttons are indicated below.

- Settings that can be registered in <Favorite Settings> for the <Copy> function **Reducing Copying Operations(P. 339)**
- <Fax> function settings of the machine **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**
- Settings that can be registered in <Favorite Settings> for the <Scan and Send> function **Useful Scanning Functions(P. 488)**
- Settings that can be registered in <Favorite Settings> for the <Scan and Store> function **Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)**
- Save locations for the <Scan and Store> and <Access Stored Files> functions **Using Storage Space(P. 526)**
- Shortcuts to the Basic Features screen for the <Fax/I-Fax Inbox> function
- Access to a server and the login password can be registered to Personal buttons/Shared buttons. This is convenient for skipping password entry when recalling the registered button. If you want to set password in the settings stored in the registered button, as you often import settings in a Personal button or Shared button to another machine and you want to prevent users from pretending to be other users, exclude a password when registering.

Importing/exporting the registered buttons

- You can import and export the registered Personal/Shared buttons from the Remote UI. **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**
- Batch import of Personal buttons/Shared buttons may not be available, depending on the model of the machine to import from. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.

Example: Registering copy function

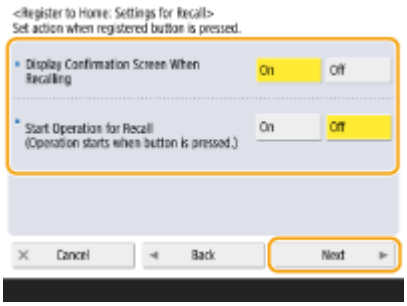
1 Press <Copy> ▸ specify the copy settings. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 **Press ▶ <Register to Home> when the setting is complete.**

3 **Confirm the settings and press <Next>.**



4 **Specify the action that is performed when the registered button is pressed, and press <Next>.**



- The setting described below results in a different operation immediately after pressing the registered button. For more information, see **Executing Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons(P. 250)** .
- If you select <On> for <Display Confirmation Screen When Recalling>, the confirmation screen below is displayed when you press the registered button. Select <Off> if you do not want to display the confirmation screen.

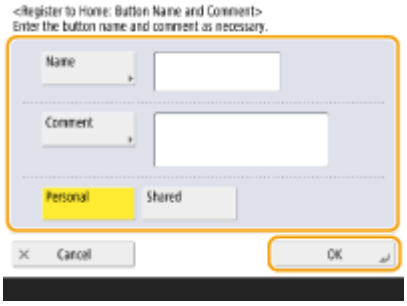


- If you select <On> for <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)>, copying starts when you press the registered button without pressing (Start). Select <Off> if you want to start copying manually by pressing (Start).

NOTE:

- If you select <On> for both <Display Confirmation Screen When Recalling> and <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)>, copying starts after you select <Yes> on the confirmation screen.

5 **Enter the button name and a comment, select <Personal> or <Shared>, and press <OK>.**



- Press <Name> or <Comment> to enter. It is convenient if you enter a setting name in <Name> and a memo in <Comment>.

NOTE:

- To register a button for yourself only, press <Personal>. To register a button to share with other users, press <Shared>.
- If <12 medium-small buttons per page> is selected in <Home Screen Layout Settings>, <Comment> is not displayed for Shared/Personal buttons. **Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)**

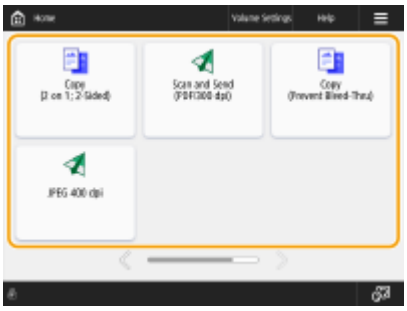
■Executing Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons

This section describes how to execute Personal buttons/Shared buttons. The procedure for executing the function differs according to the settings specified when registering the Personal button/Shared button and the registered function.

NOTE

- The destinations registered in the one-touch buttons on the Quick Menu of the client machine are not updated even if those registered in the one-touch buttons of a server machine are updated. Confirm if the destination is updated when you cannot send to the registered destinations.

1 Press the button you want to use.



- Each icon indicates the function type as shown below.
  - <Copy>
  - <Fax>
  - <Scan and Send>
  - <Scan and Store>
  - <Access Stored Files>
  - <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

NOTE:

- You can also execute the content of the button with the following procedure: press and hold the Personal button/Shared button ▶ press <Recall>.

2 Perform the following operation according to the content registered in the button.

■When <Display Confirmation Screen When Recalling> is set to <On>

A confirmation screen asking whether to recall the settings is displayed.

- If <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)> is set to <On>, operations registered in the button start when you press <Yes>.
- If <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)> is set to <Off>, the setting screen is displayed when you press <Yes>. This enables you to change the settings before pressing (Start) to start.

■When <Display Confirmation Screen When Recalling> is set to <Off>

- If <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)> is set to <On>, operations registered in the button start immediately.
- If <Start Operation for Recall (Operation starts when button is pressed.)> is set to <Off>, the setting screen is displayed. This enables you to change the settings before pressing (Start) to start.

■When you select <Scan and Store> function button

The folder specified as the save location for the scanned originals is displayed. Scan the originals you want to save.
Working with Other Devices(P. 528)

■When you select <Access Stored Files> function button

The specified save folder is displayed. Select a file in the folder for sending or printing.
Working with Other Devices(P. 528)

■When you select the <Fax/I-Fax Inbox> function button

The registered settings screen is displayed. Proceed with the operation that you want to perform.
Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
Keeping Received Documents Private(P. 389)

LINKS

Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)
Creating a Shortcut for a Frequently Used Function(P. 240)
Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

Switching the Displayed Language

ERJ8-04H

You can change the language and keyboard layout displayed on the touch panel display. If you switch languages frequently, it is convenient to use the <Switch Language/Keyboard> button. Follow the procedure below to show this button on the touch panel display.

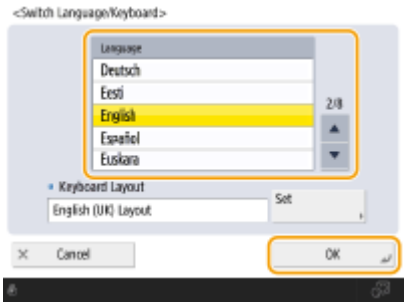
Switching the Displayed Language and Keyboard Layout(P. 252)
Showing the <Switch Language/Keyboard> Button on the Touch Panel Display(P. 252)

Switching the Displayed Language and Keyboard Layout

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings> ▶ <Switch Language/Keyboard>.**

3 **Select a language from the list and press <OK>.**



NOTE:

- For some languages, the keyboard layout can be changed. After selecting the language, press <Set>, select the layout type, and press <OK>.

Showing the <Switch Language/Keyboard> Button on the Touch Panel Display

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings> ▶ <Display Switch Language/Keyboard Button>.**

3 **Press <On> ▶ <OK>.**

- If you set it to <On>,  appears at the bottom of the touch panel display. You can switch the currently displayed language to another by pressing the <Switch Language/Keyboard> button, selecting the desired language from the list, and then press <OK>.

NOTE

- You can change the displayed language for each login user. **Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions(P. 255)**

Registering Shortcuts for Frequently Used Settings/ Registered Items

ERJ8-04J

You can register shortcuts for the settings that are displayed when you press (Settings/Register), in <Settings/ Regist. Shortcut>. This allows you to quickly display even those settings that are configured deep in the menu hierarchy.

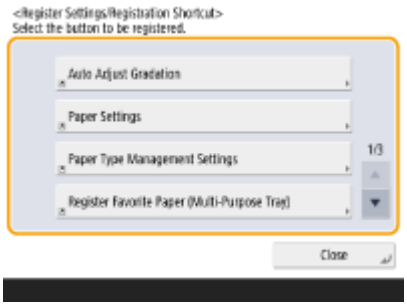
NOTE

- If <Settings/Regist. Shortcut> is not displayed on the <Home> screen, press ▶ <Home Management Settings> ▶ <Restrict Function Display> ▶ <Set> ▶ set <Settings/Regist. Shortcut> to be displayed.
- Shortcuts that can be registered: 10

1 Press <Settings/Regist. Shortcut>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

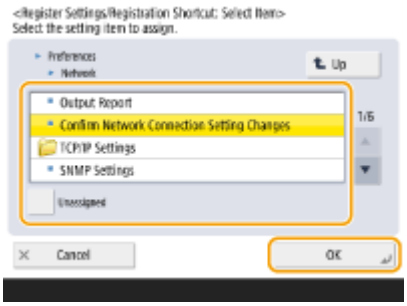
2 Press <Register>.

3 Select the button in which you want to register settings.



- You can select the assigned button to change the registered settings.

4 Select the settings to register as shortcuts and press <OK>.



- If you do not want to register settings, select <Unassigned>.

Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions

ERJ8-04K

Individual users can customize the operational conditions to meet their preferences. For example, users who are English speakers can make a setting so that the English version of touch panel display appears when logging in, and other users can register their own SSID and network key to enable the machine to be easily connected to their mobile device. Because these settings are only enabled when the user who configured the settings logs in, they do not affect the settings of other users.

NOTE

- To use personal settings, you need to log in with personal authentication management. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

Available settings

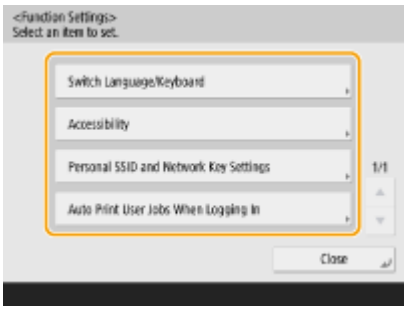
The settings listed below can be configured.

- The language used on the touch panel display
- Accessibility functions for users who have difficulty seeing or performing input operations on the touch panel display
- Personal access point (personal SSID/network key)
- Automatically printing jobs after logging in

1 Press <Personal Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

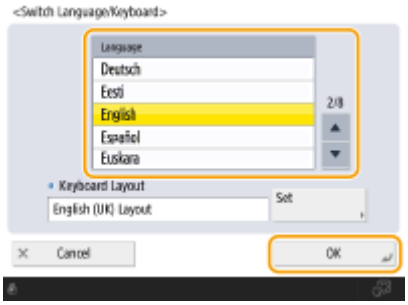
- When the login screen is displayed, log in. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**

2 Press the setting button that you want to configure.



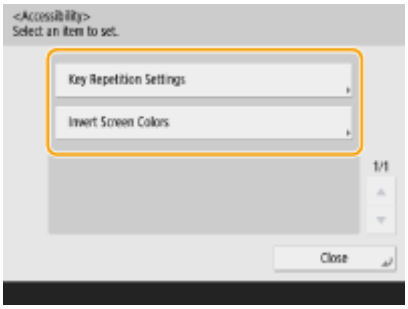
■To set the displayed language

Press <Switch Language/Keyboard>, select a language from the list, and press <OK>.



■To set accessibility

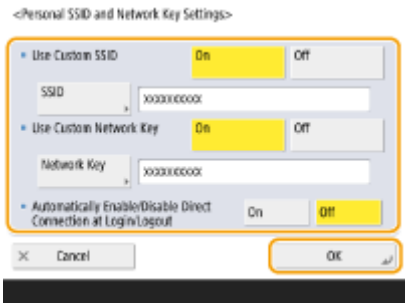
Press <Accessibility>, and select the setting you want to configure.



- Press <Key Repetition Settings> to change the speed at which the same character is entered repeatedly when a button is held down. This setting may prevent users from inadvertently entering the same character more than once when performing input operations slowly.
- Press <Invert Screen Colors> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> to invert the screen colors and make text easier to read.

■To specify a personal SSID and network key

Press <Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>, specify a personal SSID and network key, and press <OK>.



- When <Automatically Enable/Disable Direct Connection at Login/Logout> is set to <On>, direction connections are possible when logging in without the need to press <Enable> for <Direct Connection> in <Mobile Portal>.

NOTE:

- This setting can be used when <Use Personal SSID and Network Key> is set to <On> in <Access Point Mode Settings>. **<SSID/Network Key Settings>(P. 866)**
- Only one mobile device may connect at a time when a personal SSID and network key are set.

■Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In

- Press <On> to enable the <Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In> setting.

NOTE:

- This setting is disabled if any of the following settings is specified.
  - If <Use User Authentication> is set to <Off>
  - If <Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In> is set to <Off>
  - If <Enable Use of Personal Settings> is set to <Off>
  - If <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> is set to <On>
  - If <Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs> is set to <On>
  - If <Personal> of <Job List Display Settings> is set to <Off>

- If <Display Warning When Starting to Print> of <Held Jobs Warning Settings> is set to <On>

- For details on this function, see **Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)** .

NOTE

Set the screen that is displayed when the machine starts

- If the machine is configured so that users are required to log in when it starts up (**Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)**), <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration> is displayed as an item in <Personal Settings>. The screen that is displayed after the machine starts up can be set for each user.

LINKS

List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)
Switching the Displayed Language(P. 252)
<Accessibility>(P. 879)
<SSID/Network Key Settings>(P. 866)

Canceling Send/Print Jobs

ERJ8-04L

If you press (Stop) on the control panel while a send/print job is being processed and a screen that leads to <Send Jobs>/<Print Jobs> is being displayed, the ongoing send/print job is paused, and <Send Jobs>/<Print Jobs> appears.



Select the job that you want to cancel, and press <Cancel>.

NOTE

- Screens that lead to <Send Jobs>/<Print Jobs>
  - <Home> screen
  - <Print> screen
  - Top screens of (Status Monitor) (<Copy/Print>, <Send>, <Receive>, <Store>, <Consumables/Others>)
  - <Visual Message Settings> screen
- If you press (Stop) on the control panel while a send/fax job is being processed and the <Fax>/<Scan and Send> screen is being displayed, a pop-up screen that directly cancels the ongoing job appears. When multiple jobs are in process, you can set which job to cancel: the job that was last made, or the job that is in the process of sending. (**<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>(P. 954)**)
- If there is a job that was started after pressing (Stop) on the control panel, the job is performed.
- For instructions on canceling jobs from the <Copy> screen or <Fax> screen, see **Canceling Copying(P. 305)** or **Canceling Sending Faxes(P. 360)** .

Setting Sounds

ERJ8-04R

You can adjust the volume of sounds produced by the machine when sending/receiving a fax. In addition to setting sounds for faxes, you can specify whether or not confirmation and warning sounds are produced.

Adjusting the Volume for Sending/Receiving Faxes(P. 259)
Setting the Incoming Fax Tone(P. 260)
Setting the Confirmation Sound and Warning Sound(P. 261)

NOTE

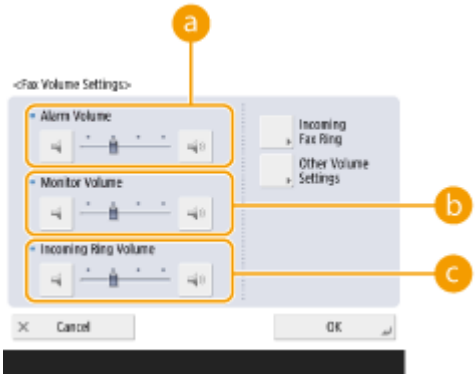
- This setting works only for Line 1 (the standard line). Use this setting with Line 1 (the standard line).

Adjusting the Volume for Sending/Receiving Faxes

You can adjust the volume of the communication sounds during fax transmission and the sound produced for the fax sending/receiving result.

1 Press <Volume Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Adjust the volume or specify the setting, and press <OK>.



a <Alarm Volume>

Adjust the volume of the tone that sounds when the sending or receiving faxes is complete (except when printing received faxes) and the volume of the tone that sounds when a fax is canceled or ends due to an error. To mute the sound, press several times to set the volume to the far left.

b <Monitor Volume>

Adjust the volume of the following tones. To mute the sound, press several times to set the volume to the far left.

- The tone that sounds when sending faxes
- The tone that sounds when printing of a received fax is complete, and the tone that sounds when a fax ends due to an error

c <Incoming Ring Volume>

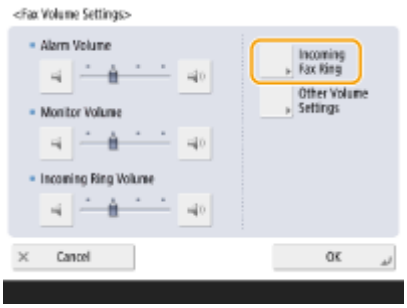
Press to adjust the volume of incoming faxes when <RX Mode> is set to <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)>. To mute the sound, press several times to set the volume to the far left.

Setting the Incoming Fax Tone

You can set the incoming fax tone not only when your machine has a fax function but also when a commercial telephone is connected.

1 Press <Volume Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Incoming Fax Ring>.



3 Set the incoming tone.



- Select <On> to emit the incoming tone or <Off> to not. If you selected <Off>, proceed to step 5.

4 Select the incoming tone count.



- Set the count using <->/<+> or the numeric keys.

5 Press <OK>.

NOTE

- Even if the incoming tone is set to <Off>, the incoming tone will be emitted when a fax arrives during the Sleep mode if the power consumption during Sleep mode is set to low. **<Sleep Mode Energy Use>(P. 823)**

Setting the Confirmation Sound and Warning Sound

You can individually adjust the tone that sounds when control panel keys and touch panel buttons are pressed and the error tone that sounds when a problem occurs with the machine. You can also set whether to sound a tone indicating the result of Fax Memory Lock sending/receiving.

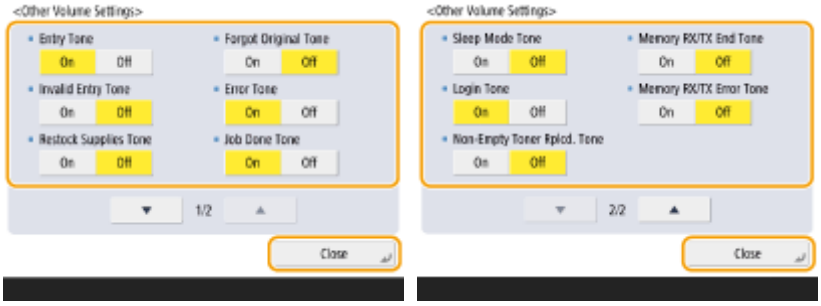
1 Press <Volume Settings>. **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

- If your machine does not have a fax function, proceed to Step 3.

2 Press <Other Volume Settings>.

- If the option to enable use of the fax function is not installed (**System Options(P. 1271)**), <Volume Settings> is displayed.

3 Set each confirmation sound/warning sound and press <Close>.



Setting Items	Description
<Entry Tone>	Sound produced each time a key on the control panel or a button on the touch panel display is pressed
<Invalid Entry Tone>	Sound produced when an invalid key/button operation is performed, or when you enter a number outside the valid setting range
<Restock Supplies Tone>	Sound produced when the amount of toner is low
<Forgot Original Tone>	Sound produced if original is remained on the platen glass after operation is finished
<Error Tone>	Sound produced when a malfunction such as paper jam or operational error occurs
<Job Done Tone>	Sound produced when an operation such as copying or scanning is complete
<Sleep Mode Tone>	Sound produced when the machine enters sleep mode, or when the machine is turned OFF if you set <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power> to <On>. (Depending on the situations, the machine does not startup quickly and the tone does not sound.)
<Login Tone>	Sound produced when login is successful
<Non-Empty Toner Rplcd. Tone>	Sound produced when a non-empty toner cartridge is removed

Setting Items	Description
<Memory RX/TX End Tone>	Sound produced when Fax Memory Lock sending/receiving completes without an error **Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception) (P. 386)**
<Memory RX/TX Error Tone>	Sound produced when Fax Memory Lock sending/receiving completes with an error **Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)**

4 Press <OK>.

Entering Sleep Mode

ERJ8-04S

The sleep mode function reduces power consumption by temporarily disabling some internal operations of the machine. You can easily put the machine into sleep mode by pressing (Energy Saver) on the control panel. When the machine is in the sleep mode, the touch panel display turns off and (Energy Saver) lights up. **Control Panel(P. 30)**

IMPORTANT

Press (Energy Saver) if the machine will not be used for a long period of time, such as overnight

- Put the machine into Sleep mode as a safety precaution.

NOTE

- The machine may not enter sleep mode depending on the machine's operation status and conditions.
- The Processing/Data indicator flashes or maintains a steady green light even when the machine enters the Sleep mode.

Exiting Sleep Mode

The machine exits the sleep mode when one of the following operations is performed:

- When (Energy Saver) is pressed on the control panel*1
- When originals are placed in the feeder
- When the feeder is opened
- When paper is loaded in/removed from the multi-purpose tray*1
- When a cover on the machine is opened/closed*1

*1 Some models of the machine do not support this function.

When You Want to Set the Auto Sleep Timer

You can use the <Auto Sleep Time> setting to automatically put the machine into sleep mode. If you want to change the amount of time that elapses before the machine enters auto sleep mode, follow the procedure below.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings> ▶ <Auto Sleep Time> ▶ ▲ or ▼ to set the amount of time that elapses before the machine automatically enters sleep mode ▶ <OK>.

NOTE

- You can set the time range to automatically enter sleep mode by the day of the week. **<Auto Sleep Weekly Timer>(P. 823)**

Energy Consumption in Sleep Mode

You can set the amount of energy that the machine consumes when it is in sleep mode. Follow the procedure below to set the amount of energy consumed in sleep mode.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings> ▶ set <Sleep Mode Energy Use> to <Low> or <High>.

NOTE

When using a wireless LAN also while in sleep mode

- Set <Sleep Mode Energy Use> to <High>. **<Sleep Mode Energy Use>(P. 823)**

Exiting Sleep Mode at a Specified Time

You can configure a setting so that the sleep mode is released at the specified time. If you want to set the time at which the machine recovers from the sleep mode, follow the procedure below.

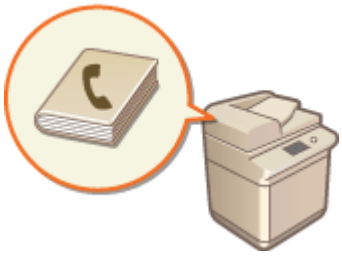


(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings> ▶ <Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings> ▶ select the amount of time that elapses before the machine automatically returns from the sleep mode.

Registering Destinations

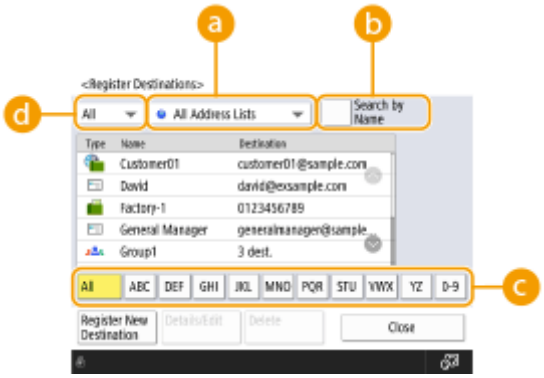
ERJ8-04U

Destinations for sending faxes and scanned data can be registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons.



Address Book

If you want to register many destinations or classify them by department or business partner, register them in the Address Book. The Address Book allows you to search destinations by the first character of the name or by selecting a destination type such as fax or e-mail. You can register destinations for all users, destinations for your own use, and destinations that only an administrator can edit. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**



a Address list drop-down list

Select an address list for a department or business partner.

b <Search by Name>

Enter the destination name.

c First letter button

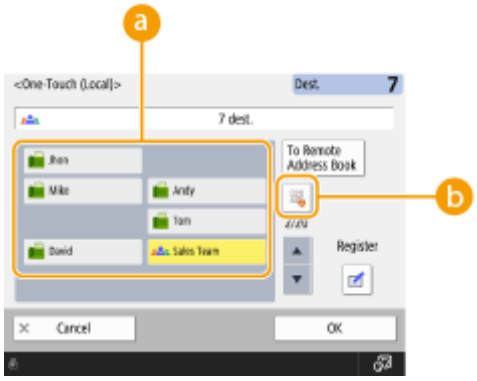
Select the alphanumeric button for the first character of the destination name.

d Destination type drop-down list

Select the button to filter destinations by destination type such as fax or e-mail.

One-Touch Button

You can register frequently used destinations in one-touch buttons to simplify operations. The one-touch buttons with registered destinations are displayed on the touch panel display, enabling you to quickly search and specify the destinations with the simple press of a button. **Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button(P. 285)**



a One-touch button

You can easily specify the desired destination with the simple press of a button.

b One-touch number button

You can enter the three-digit number of a registered one-touch button if it is not shown on the touch panel display.

NOTE

For the administrator

- The Address Book and one-touch buttons can be exported/imported. This can be used for backup data if a failure occurs or to simplify the procedure for registering destinations between supported machines. For more information, see **Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually(P. 736)** .
- The Address Book can be personalized for each logged-in user (**List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**). Furthermore, the Synchronize Custom Settings facility can be used to enable the Address Book to be shared by a number of Canon multifunction printers (**Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)**).
- You can set a password to avoid unauthorized editing or deletion in the Address Book. **Setting a PIN for Address Book(P. 672)**
- If there are destinations that you do not want to display in the Address Book or if you want to limit user access to destinations, enter an access number when registering a destination. To use the access number, it is necessary to activate the setting in advance in **Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)** .
- Configure User Group Address Lists from the Remote UI. (**Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)**)

About the Address Books of the Machine

ERJ8-04W

Local Address Book and Remote Address Book

Local Address Book: The address book stored on the storage device of the machine. This address book is comprised of the following address lists.

- Address List 01 to 10
- Address List, One-Touch
- Address List for Administrator
- Personal Address List
- User Group Address List 01 to 50

Remote Address Book: The address book of another Canon machine connected to the machine via a network. It can be accessed in the same way as the Local Address Book to specify destinations.

NOTE

- To use a Remote Address Book, it is necessary to register the Remote Address Book to access on the client machine (**<Acquire Remote Address Book>(P. 1015)**) and make the Remote Address Book open on the server machine (**<Make Remote Address Book Open>(P. 1017)**).
- Up to eight machines including this machine can be connected as client machines at the same time to the server machine with the Remote Address Book that is opened externally. However, if the server machine is performing other network communication during this time, the number of machines that can connect may be reduced. If the machine cannot connect, a network error notice is sent.
- The server machine destinations registered in Favorite Settings and the <Personal>/<Shared> button of the client machine are not updated when the destinations are updated on the server machine. Confirm if the destination is updated when you cannot send to the registered destinations
- Destinations registered in the Remote Address Book cannot be edited/deleted from a client machine. To edit/delete destinations in the Remote Address Book, edit/delete the Local Address Book on the serves that discloses the Remote Address Book.

Overview of Address Lists

■Address List 01 to 10

Address lists that are open to all users.

■Address List, One-Touch

The one-touch button destinations displayed on the <Fax> screen and <Scan and Send> screen. Only the one-touch buttons for fax destinations are displayed on the <Fax> screen. Fax destinations are also displayed on the <Scan and Send> screen if <Enable Fax in Scan and Send Function> is set to <On>.

■Address List for Administrator

Used to register destinations used in <Forwarding Settings> and <Archive TX Document>.

■Personal Address List

The personal address list displayed when user authentication is used.

■User Group Address List 01 to 50

The group address list available to a group of users when user authentication is used. A User Group Address List corresponds to a single user group.

NOTE

- <Use Personal Address List> and <Use User Group Address List> must be enabled to use **<Use Personal Address List>(P. 1014)** and **<Use User Group Address List>(P. 1014)** .
- To use a User Group Address List, it is necessary to create a user group in advance (**Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**) and associate the created user group with the User Group Address List (**Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)**).
- You can set the type of address list to be displayed as the default setting when you call up the Address Book. **<Change Default Display of Address List>(P. 1009)**

Moving/Copying Destination Addresses

The table below indicates whether destination addresses can be moved or copied between the various address books.

		Move/Copy to:		
		Address List 01 to 10, Address List for Administrator	Personal Address List	User Group Address List 01 to 50
Move/ Copy from:	Address List 01 to 10, Address List for Administrator	Move	Copy	Copy
	Personal Address List	Copy	--	Move
	User Group Address List 01 to 50	Copy	Move	Move

NOTE

Destination addresses cannot be moved/copied in the following situations.

- Situations when destination addresses cannot be copied to <Address List 1> to <Address List 10>
  - When a general user is performing the operation and <Address Book PIN> has been set but the user has not entered the PIN
  - When the user is performing the operation from the control panel and <Use User Group Address List> is set to <On (Browse Only)> (Copying can be performed from the Remote UI)
- Situations when destination addresses cannot be copied to the <Personal Addr. List>
  - When <Use Personal Address List> is set to <Off>
  - When <Use User Group Address List> is set to <On (Browse Only)>
- Situations when destination addresses cannot be moved/copied to "User Group Address List 01 to 50"
  - When <Use User Group Address List> is set to <On (Browse Only)> or <Off>

Differences in Address List Types

	Address List 01 to 10	Address List, One-Touch	Address List for Administrator	Personal Address List	User Group Address List 01 to 50
People who can use the address book	All users	All users	All users	Each logged-in user	Each user group*1
Address Book PIN (registration restriction)	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Manage Address Book Access Numbers function	Yes	No	No	No	No
Printing the address list	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Can be set as a <Forwarding Destination> in <Forwarding Settings>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Can be set with <URL Send Settings> in <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Can be set as a notification destination of <Job Done Notice>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Can be set as <Reply-to>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Creating <Group> in an address list	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1 Only the user groups that the user logged in on the control panel belongs to can be accessed. All User Group Address Lists can be accessed when a user with Administrator privileges logs in from the Remote UI.

NOTE

- For information on the maximum number of destinations that can be registered to each address list, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** "Max. Destinations Registered to Address Book."
- The maximum number of Personal Address Lists and User Group Address Lists that can be stored in the machine depends on the limit in the user settings information. See **Management Functions(P. 1261)** "Maximum number of users whose setting information can be saved in the machine."

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

ERJ8-04X



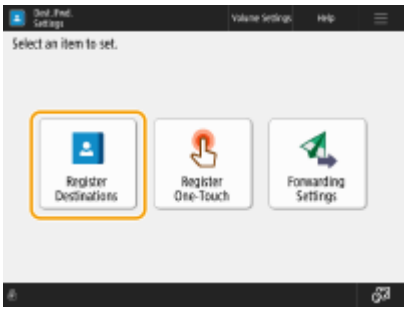
You can register a recipient's fax number or an e-mail address that can be used when sending scanned documents in the Address Book. You can also register an I-fax destination, a file server folder location (IP address and path), and the storage (Advanced Space) of a Canon multifunction printer in the Address Book as a destination.

NOTE

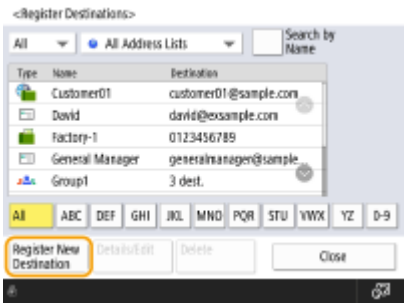
- To register a destination for your own use, you need to log in with personal authentication management. **Managing Users(P. 591)**
- Registering/editing/deleting of destinations can also be performed from the following screens:
  - <Address Book> on the Fax Basic Features screen **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**
  - <Address Book> on the Scan Basic Features screen **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

1 Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Register Destinations>.



3 Press <Register New Destination>.

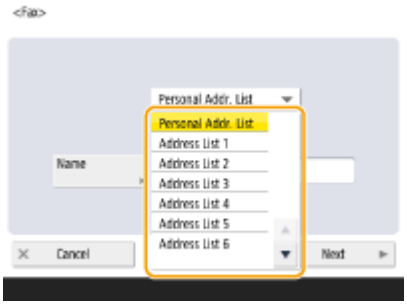


4 Select the type of destination to register.



- Select <Fax>, <E-Mail>, <I-Fax>, or <File> as the type of destination to register.

5 Select where to register the destination from the address list drop-down list.



- If you want to register the destination for your own use, select <Personal Addr. List>.
- If you want to register the destination which only an administrator can edit, select <Address List for Admin.>.
- If you want to share the destination with a registered user group, select a registered User Group Address List.

NOTE:

- <Address List 1> to <Address List 10> can be regarded as 10 separate address books. Classifying an address list by departments or by business partners makes them easier to find when specifying a destination. It is also easier to manage an address list if you change their names to department name or business partner name (**<Rename Address List>(P. 1009)**).
- You can also manage User Group Address Lists by enabling only the administrator to register/edit destinations from the Remote UI. (<Set Destination> ▶ **<Use User Group Address List>(P. 1014)**)

6 Press <Name> ▶ enter the destination name, and press <OK>.

7 Configure the settings according to the type of destination selected in step 4.

■Fax

1 Enter the fax number.



a Fax number field

Enter the fax number using the numeric keys. Enter b to g as necessary.

b <Backspace>

Delete numbers to the left of the cursor in the fax number field (a) one by one.

c ◀ / ▶

Press when moving the fax number field cursor (a) to the left or right.

d <Tone>

If you press this button, the character "T" (tone) is inserted. Even if you are using pulse dial, numbers following "T" will be sent using tone dial.

e <R> key

If the machine is connected to a PBX (Private Branch Exchange), press this button before entering the destination. If this button is not available, you need to register the R-key settings. **<R-Key Setting>(P. 972)**

f <Space>

Enter a blank space between numbers to make them easier to read.

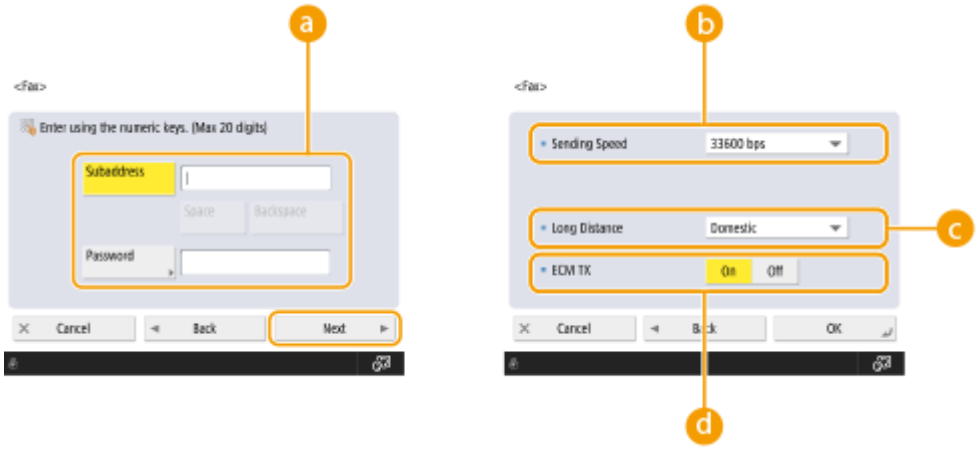
g <Pause>

If you press this button, the character "P" (pause) is inserted. When sending a fax overseas, insert pauses after the international access code or fax number. This helps to improve the connection.

NOTE:

- You cannot insert a pause at the beginning of a number.

2 Press <Set Details> and specify settings as necessary.



ⓐ <Subaddress>/<Password>

Specify when sending or receiving documents to increase security by attaching a subaddress and password to all of your fax transactions. **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

ⓑ <Sending Speed>

Depending on the recipient's fax machine or the status of the line, a transmission error may occur due to the transmission speed. If errors occur frequently, lower this setting value.

ⓒ <Long Distance>

If transmission errors occur frequently when you make overseas calls, select <International (1)>. If errors persist, change the setting to <International (2)> or <International (3)>.

ⓓ <ECM TX>

Select <On> to correct image errors. Select <Off> if the recipient's fax machine does not support the Error Correction Mode (ECM).

IMPORTANT:

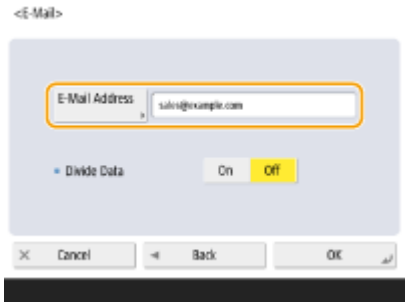
- To send faxes using ECM, it is also necessary to set <Fax Settings> ▶ **<ECM TX>(P. 969)** to <On>.

NOTE:

- Although there are items you can set in the fax setting (**Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)**), it is convenient to set them here if you want to change the sending conditions for each destination.
- Set **<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>(P. 974)** to <On> to send and receive faxes more accurately when the line or other party is prone to errors. If you set this to <On>, the communication speed is limited to 14,400 bps or slower, which reduces errors.

■E-mail

1 Press <E-Mail Address> ▶ enter the e-mail address.



2 Select <On> or <Off> in <Divide Data>.
If the size of the data being sent exceeds the maximum limit (**<Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)**), select whether you want to divide the data by size or by page.

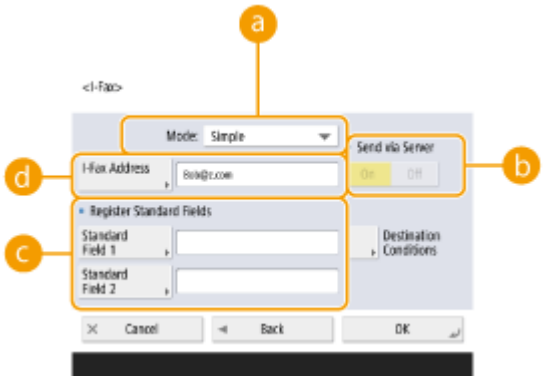
- If you select <On>, the data is divided into smaller sizes that do not exceed the limit and is sent in several sections. The recipient's e-mail software must be able to combine the data received.
- If you select <Off>, the number of pages to be sent at one time decreases and the total transmission is divided into several sections. For example, 10 pages of data are transmitted twice, 5 pages each time. Therefore, your counterpart receives two e-mails. However, if you send data that cannot be separated into pages, such as JPEG, a transmission error occurs.

NOTE:

- When the domain to use is fixed, you can skip domain entry. You can register a domain name to **<Auto Add Specified Domain to Dest. Without Domain>(P. 964)** and enable <When Sending E-Mail> in advance to automatically add a domain when sending, without the need to enter "@" and the domain name.
- You can register frequently used domain names in <Register'd Characters> on the keyboard, and you can recall them when entering an e-mail address. **<Registered Characters for Keyboard>(P. 812)**

■I-fax

1 Specify settings as necessary.



a <Mode:>

You can select the type of sending results that are displayed when (Status Monitor) is pressed. Select <Full> if you want to check whether an I-fax is delivered to the recipient's machine, or select <Simple> if you want to check whether an I-fax is delivered to a mail server. Note that you cannot confirm the delivery status if the recipient's machine does not support the <Mode:> function.

NOTE:

- If you send an I-fax using the <Full> mode to a machine that does not support the <Full> mode, <Awaiting result...> is displayed when you press (Status Monitor) to check the delivery status, even if the transmission is complete. It continues to be displayed until the time set in **<Full Mode TX Timeout>(P. 962)** passes.
- You can check the delivery status by pressing (Status Monitor) ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log>. If the document was sent successfully, <OK> will be displayed, if it failed to send, <NG> will be displayed, and if the results cannot be confirmed, <--> will be displayed. In the Simple mode, even if the delivery was successful, <--> will be displayed because delivery confirmation cannot be carried out.

b <Send via Server>

Specify whether or not to send I-faxes to destinations via the mail server. Select <On> if you want to send I-faxes via the mail server. Select <Off> if you want to send data directly to a recipient on the same local area network (LAN). By sending directly to a recipient, you can send large amounts of data without placing a burden on the mail server.

NOTE:

- To send an I-fax that is not in an IP address format such as "user name@[the recipient's IP address]" without using a mail server, settings such as an MX (Mail eXchange) record need to be configured on the DNS server. Ask your Network administrator whether or not this type of setting is available.
- When you set <Off> in <Send via Server>, you are required to set <On> in **<Use Send via Server>(P. 963)** in advance. If this setting is <Off>, the setting in <Send via Server> cannot be changed. It is recommended to set **<Allow MDN Not via Server>(P. 963)** to <On>.

- Even if you set <Send via Server> to <Off>, delivery confirmation of documents sent using the Full mode is carried out via the server.

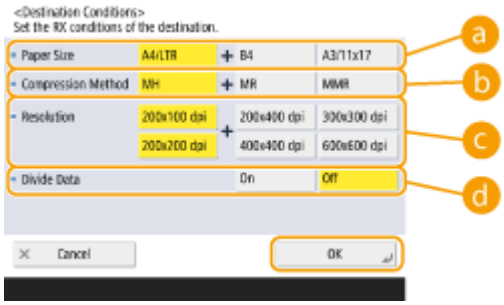
c <Register Standard Fields>

This setting is required for using an Internet fax service. If you do not use an Internet fax service, this setting is not necessary. For more information, contact your Internet service provider.

d <I-Fax Address>

- Enter the I-fax address using the following format: adv01@example.com.
- When sending to a recipient on the same network, use the following format: adv01@[192.168.11.100] (the recipient device name@[IP address]).
- When the domain to use is fixed, you can skip domain entry. You can register a domain name to **<Auto Add Specified Domain to Dest. Without Domain>(P. 964)** and enable <When Sending I-Fax> in advance to automatically add a domain when sending, without the need to enter "@" and the domain name.
- You can register frequently used domain names in <Register'd Characters> on the keyboard, and you can recall them when entering an I-fax address. **<Registered Characters for Keyboard>(P. 812)**

2 Press <Destination Conditions> ▶ specify each setting and press <OK>.



a <Paper Size>

Set the paper size that the recipient can receive. Specify this setting after checking whether the paper size of the data to send matches the specifications of the recipient's device.

- <A4/LTR>: Sends with the A4/LTR size.
- <A4/LTR> + <B4>: Sends with the A4/LTR size or B4 size.
- <A4/LTR> + <A3/11x17>: Sends with the A4/LTR size or A3/11" x 17" size.
- <A4/LTR> + <B4> + <A3/11x17>: Sends with the A4/LTR size, B4 size, or A3/11" x 17" size.

NOTE:

- If the paper size of the scanned data is smaller than the sizes set in <Paper Size>, the data is sent with the smallest paper size set in <Paper Size> with blank margins.
- If the paper size of the scanned data is larger than the sizes set in <Paper Size>, the data is reduced and sent with the largest paper size set in <Paper Size>.
- Set the destination conditions according to the specifications of the recipient's machine. If the paper size of the data to send is larger than the paper sizes that can be used with the recipient's device, the image may be clipped or cut off.

b <Compression Method>

Select compression method. The compression rate is highest for MMR, followed by MR, and then MH. The higher the compression rate, the shorter the required transmission time.

c <Resolution>

Select a higher value to increase the resolution and image quality. However, the higher the resolution, the longer the required transmission time.

d <Divide Data>

If the size of the data being sent exceeds the maximum limit (**<Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)**), select whether you want to divide the data by size or by page.

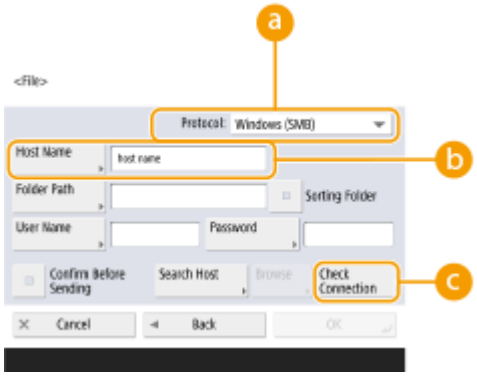
- If you select <On>, the data is divided into smaller sizes that do not exceed the limit and is sent in several sections. The recipient's device must be able to combine the data received.
- If you select <Off> in <Send via Server> (a) in step 1 for configuring the I-fax setting, the data is sent without being divided, even if it exceeds the maximum limit.

IMPORTANT:

- Set the destination conditions according to the specifications of the recipient's machine. If you set conditions that the recipient's machine does not support, a transmission error may occur.

■File server/Advanced Space

1 Enter the host name of the file server/Advanced Space which transmits data.



- Ask your Network administrator about the information on the file server/Advanced Space.

a <Protocol>

Select a protocol for the file server from <Windows (SMB)>, <FTP> and <WebDAV>.

When sending a document to the Advanced Space, select <Windows (SMB)> or <WebDAV>.

NOTE:

- If you select <Windows (SMB)>, the <Search Host> and <Browse> buttons are displayed. You can easily specify a file server/Advanced Space by searching or viewing the network.
- You can only use <Browse> if <1.0> is set to <On> in <Specify SMB Client Version>.
- You can register up to five Directory servers used in <Browse>.

b <Host Name>

Enter the host name of the file server/Advanced Space.

- If you select <FTP> for protocol, enter <Host Name> as follows.

When TLS is disabled

Example:

To save to the Shared Space: ftp://<host name>/share

To save to the Personal Space: ftp://<host name>/users

When TLS is enabled

Example:

To save to the Shared Space: ftps://<host name>/share

To save to the Personal Space: ftps://<host name>/users

When using SFTP

Example:

To save to the Shard Space: sftp://<host name>/share

To save to the Personal Space: sftp://<host name>/users

NOTE:

- You can specify whether to authenticate the destination SFTP server when using SFTP. **Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server(P. 720)**

When sending a document to the Advanced Space, enter <Host Name> as follows.

- If you select <Windows (SMB)> for the protocol

  Example:

  To save to the Shared Space: \\192.168.100.50\share

  To save to the Personal Space: \\192.168.100.50\users

- If you select <WebDAV> for protocol, enter <Host Name> as follows and press <Next>.

  When TLS is disabled

  Example:

  To save to the Shared Space: http://<IP address or host name>/

  To save to the Personal Space: http://<IP address or host name>/

  When TLS is enabled

  Example:

  To save to the Shared Space: https://<IP address or host name>/

  To save to the Personal Space: https://<IP address or host name>/

c <Check Connection>

Press this button after entering the host name to confirm the connection with the file server/Advanced Space.

NOTE:

- If you are using a login service such as personal authentication management, it is necessary to enter <User Name> and <Password>.

2 Configure the file server/Advanced Space information.



- Ask your Network administrator about the file server/Advanced Space information and the folder.

a <Folder Path>

Specify the folder's directory to which data is sent.

When sending a document to the Advanced Space with <WebDAV> selected for the protocol, enter <Folder Path> as follows.

Example:

To save to the Shared Space: /share

To save to the Personal Space: /users

<Sorting Folder>

If <Sorting Folder> is enabled, when you scan and send a document, you can create a new folder in the destination folder specified in <Folder Path> and store the scanned document in the new folder. **Creating Another Folder in a Destination Folder before Scanning(P. 486)**

<Password>

Enter the login password of the file server/Advanced Space.

<Confirm Before Sending>

Select this to display the entry screen for the password entered in ( ) when sending to a file server/Advanced Space.

<User Name>

Enter the login user name of the file server/Advanced Space.

NOTE:

- When the file server/Advanced Space destination is included in the group (**Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group(P. 280)**), set <Confirm Before Sending> to <Off>. If it is set to <On>, you cannot send data.
- If you specify the destination for which you activate <Confirm Before Sending> as the forwarding destination, the screen to enter the password does not appear. The registered password is used and forwarding is performed.
- You can use different authentication information from the user name in ( ) and password in ( ) to register to the address book. For more information, see **<Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>(P. 920)** .
- If you set <Protocol> to <Windows (SMB)> or <FTP>, specifying a folder that does not exist in <Folder Path> will result in the folder being automatically created and files being stored within. However, a sending error will occur if you specify a folder with multiple levels.
- When checking a WebDAV connection, the HEAD method of HTTP is used to check the connection. The folder specified in <Folder Path> is accessed using the HEAD method. If access via the HEAD method is prohibited for the corresponding folder, an error occurs for the connection check. Examples of settings that prohibit access via the HEAD method are indicated below.
  - IIS7: Access cannot be performed via the HEAD method unless [Source] is selected in the access permissions for the WebDAV authoring rules of the target folder.
  - Apache: Access cannot be performed via the HEAD method unless HEAD is described using the [Limit] directive in httpd.conf.

8 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

NOTE:

- When destinations are managed by access numbers, enter the access number (**Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)**) after pressing <Next> in step 8.
- If you try to send to a file server/Advanced Space in which <Confirm Before Sending> is set to <On>, a screen appears prompting you to enter a user name and password. In this case, enter the previously set password. If you want to register a file server/Advanced Space in a group address, set <Confirm Before Sending> to <Off>. You cannot send to a group address including a file server/Advanced Space in which <Confirm Before Sending> is set to <On>.

NOTE

- Multiple destinations registered in the Address Book can be combined into a group. For details, see **Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group(P. 280)** .
- To change or delete the information of destinations registered in the Address Book, see **Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book(P. 283)** .
- UPN can be used only if you are sending to a computer belonging to a domain operated with Active Directory.

TIPS

If the LDAP server has already been registered in the machine (**Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)**), you can search for destinations and register them in the Address Book. Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings> ▶ <Register Destinations> ▶ <Register New Destination> ▶ <Register from LDAP Server> and search for destinations using <Search by Conditions>.

- When the user name and password are correct but the search result is empty, check the time setting both on the LDAP server and the machine. If the time setting between the LDAP server and the machine differs by five minutes or more, a search cannot be performed.
- If multiple destinations are displayed as search results, you can register up to 256 of them at one time.
- The information that can be obtained via the LDAP server consists of only names and fax numbers/addresses. Register other information from <Details/Edit> as necessary.
- You cannot search for destinations on an LDAP server from both the control panel and the Remote UI at the same time.
- When searching for destinations on an LDAP server from the control panel of the machine, you can specify four search conditions. On the other hand, when searching for destinations on an LDAP server from the Remote UI, you can only specify one search condition.
- You may need to enter the user name and password. Enter the user name and password of the machine registered in the LDAP server. If authentication information is not used, search with the user name and password fields in the Remote UI left blank.

Specifying/registering destinations from the send history

- You can specify destinations and register destinations to the address book from the send history on the <Status Monitor> screen. This saves you the effort of directly entering the address, and also helps avoid sending to an incorrect destination due to entering the wrong address.
  - When specifying a destination:  (Status Monitor) ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select the destination to send to ▶ <Specify as Send Dest.> ▶ <OK>
  - When registering a destination:  (Status Monitor) ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select the destination to register ▶ <Register Destination> ▶ register the destination from the registration screen for each destination type
    Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)
    Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)

LINKS

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)
Using Storage Space(P. 526)
<Change Default Display of Address Book>(P. 1010)
<Set Destination>(P. 1008)

Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group

ERJ8-04Y



Multiple destinations registered in the Address Book(**Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**) can be combined into a group. You can use this feature to send documents and back up data at the same time because different types of destinations can be registered in the same group. For example, you can register e-mail addresses and file server IP addresses together in one group.

NOTE

- To register a group that contains destinations for your own use, you need to log into the machine. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**
- You cannot register new destinations in a group address. Register destinations in the Address Book in advance.
- Only destinations in the same address list can be grouped. Destinations registered in a different address list cannot be grouped.
- You can register up to 256 destinations in a group address.
- Since each address entry is treated as a single entry, if you register a fax number in a group address, the fax number and group address entry are counted as two separate entries.

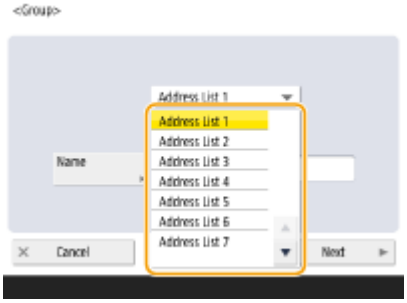
1 Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Register Destinations>.

3 Press <Register New Destination>.

4 Press <Group>.

5 Select where to register the group from the address list drop-down list.



- You can create a group from the destinations registered in the selected address list. For example, if you select <Address List 2>, you cannot add a destination registered in <Address List 1> to the group. The created group is registered in the address list you select in this step.

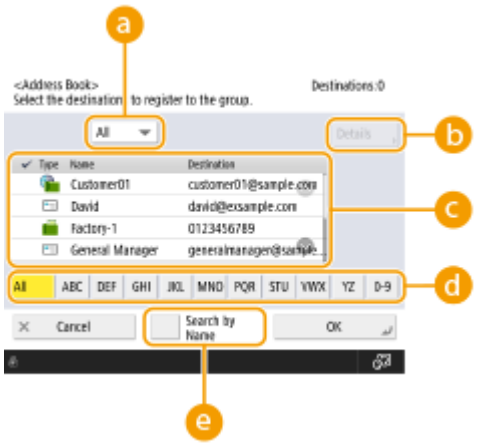
- If you want to register a group that contains destinations for your own use, select <Personal Addr. List>.
- If you want to register destinations in a group which only an administrator can edit, select <Address List for Admin.>.

6 Press <Name> ▶ enter the group name, and press <OK>.

7 Select the destinations you want to include in the group.

1 Press <Add from Address Book>.

2 Select the destinations you want to register in a group, and press <OK>.



a Destination type drop-down list

Select (e-mail), (fax), (I-fax) or (file) to filter the destinations displayed in the address list (c). Press <All> to display all registered destinations.

b <Details/Edit>

Select a destination and press <Details/Edit> if you want to check the settings of the destination. Press <OK> to return to the previous screen.

c Destination list

Destinations registered in the address list that you selected in step 6 are displayed. From this list, select the destinations you want to register in a group.

NOTE:

- When destinations are managed by access numbers, they are not displayed in the list unless you enter the access number (**Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)**) after pressing <Access No.>.

d First letter button

Select the alphanumeric button for the first character of the destination name. Press <All> to display all registered destinations.

e <Search by Name>

Enter the destination name. Press <Search by Name> again to return to the previous screen.

8 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

NOTE:

- When destinations are managed by access numbers, enter the access number (**Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)**) after pressing <Next> in step 8.
- If you try to send to a file server in which <Confirm Before Sending> is set to <On>, a screen appears prompting you to enter a user name and password. In this case, enter the previously set password. If you want to register a file server in a group address, set <Confirm Before Sending> to <Off>. You cannot send to a group address including a file server in which <Confirm Before Sending> is set to <On>.

Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book

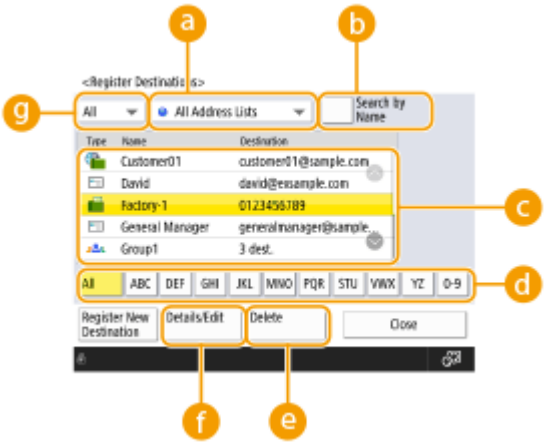
ERJ8-050

After registering destinations, you can change or delete their settings.

1 Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Register Destinations>.

3 Select the destination you want to edit.



a Address list drop-down list

Select <Personal Addr. List>, <Address List 1> to <Address List 10> or <Address List for Admin.> to filter the destinations to be displayed in the address list.

b <Search by Name>

Enter the destination name. Press <Search by Name> again to return to the previous screen.

c Destination list

Select the destination you want to edit or delete.

d First letter button

Select the alphanumeric button for the first character of the destination name. Press <All> to display all registered destinations.

e <Delete>

Press to delete the destination.

f <Details/Edit>

Press to check or edit the settings of destinations.

g Destination type drop-down list

Select (e-mail), (fax), (I-fax), (file), or (group) to filter the destinations displayed in the destination list (c). Press <All> to display all registered destinations.

NOTE:

- When destinations are managed by access numbers, enter the access number (**Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)**) after pressing <Access No.>.
- Destinations in <Personal Addr. List> are only displayed for the login user that registered them. Even if you have administrator privileges, you cannot view or edit the destinations in <Personal Addr. List> for other users.

4 Press <Details/Edit>.

- If you want to delete a destination, select the destination and press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

5 Edit the settings of the destination.

- For details about how to edit the settings, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

6 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button

ERJ8-051

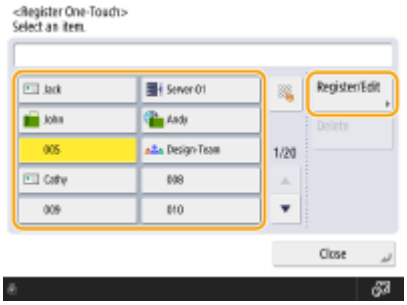


It is convenient to register a frequently used destination in a one-touch button. This enables you to quickly specify a destination with the simple press of a button. In addition to registering a fax number or e-mail address in a one-touch button, you can also register a file server folder location (IP address and path) to use when storing scanned data.

1 Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

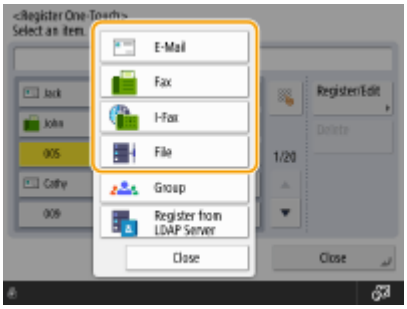
2 Press <Register One-Touch>.

3 Select the one-touch number to register the destination in, and press <Register/Edit>.



- A three-digit number (001 to 200) is assigned to each one-touch button. You can also specify a one-touch button by pressing and entering the three-digit number using the numeric keys.

4 Select the type of destination to register.



- Select <Fax>, <E-Mail>, <I-Fax>, or <File> as the type of destination to register. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**

5 Press <Name> enter the destination name, and press <OK>.

6 Press <One-Touch Name> ▶ enter the one-touch button name to be displayed, and press <OK> ▶ <Next>.

7 Configure the settings according to the type of destination selected in step 4.

- For more information about the settings, see step 7 in **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

8 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

NOTE

- Destinations registered in one-touch buttons can be combined into a group and registered as a single destination. For details, see **Registering a Group in a One-Touch Button(P. 287)** .
- To change or delete the information of destinations registered in one-touch buttons, see **Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons(P. 288)** .
- Destinations stored in one-touch buttons also appear in the Local Address Book.

TIPS

If the LDAP server has already been registered in the machine (**Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)**), you can search for destinations and register them in one-touch buttons. Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings> ▶ <Register One-Touch> ▶ select the one-touch button you want to register ▶ press <Register/Edit> ▶ <LDAP Server> and search for destinations using <Search by Conditions>. After confirming the settings of the destination, press <One-Touch Name> ▶ enter the one-touch name to be displayed ▶ press <OK>.

- When the user name and password are correct but the search result is empty, check the time setting both on the LDAP server and the machine. If the time setting between the LDAP server and the machine differs by five minutes or more, a search cannot be performed.
- Unlike the Address Book, you cannot select more than one destination at a time to register.
- The information that can be obtained via the LDAP server consists of only names and fax numbers/addresses. Register other information from <Details/Edit> as necessary.

Registering an address from the send history

- You can register a destination in a one-touch button from sent job logs in the <Status Monitor> screen. This saves the labor of manually entering a fax number and other destination information, and contributes to prevention of wrong transmission due to use of destination information registered incorrectly. When you specify an address in sent job logs and press <Register Destination> ▶ <One-Touch>, a screen for registering various items of destination information in a one-touch button.
  Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)
  Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)

Registering a Group in a One-Touch Button

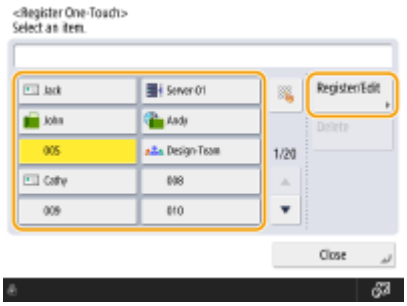
ERJ8-052

Destinations registered in one-touch buttons can be combined into a group and registered as a single destination.

1 **Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

2 **Press <Register One-Touch>.**

3 **Select the one-touch button you want to register and press <Register/Edit>.**



4 **Press <Group>.**

5 **Press <Name> ▶ enter the group name, and press <OK>.**

6 **Press <One-Touch Name> ▶ enter the one-touch button name to be displayed, and press <OK> ▶ <Next>.**

7 **Select the destinations you want to register in a group.**

- Press <Add from One-Touch> ▶ select the destination ▶ press <OK>.

8 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons

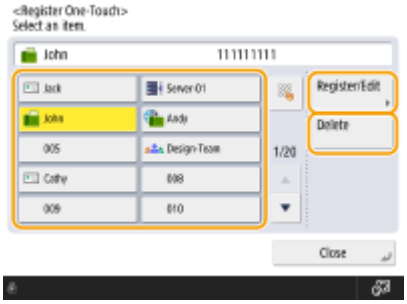
ERJ8-053

After registering destinations, you can change or delete their settings.

1 Press <Dest./Fwd. Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Register One-Touch>.

3 Select the one-touch button you want to edit or delete.



- If you want to edit the settings of the one-touch button, press <Register/Edit>. For details about how to edit the settings, see step 7 in **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** . Press <OK> after you finish editing.
- If you want to delete a one-touch button, select the one-touch button and, press <Delete> <Yes>.

4 Press <Close>.

Copying

Copying 290
Copy Basic Features Screen 292
Basic Copy Operations 294
Canceling Copying 305
Enhancing and Adjusting Copy Quality 307
Selecting the Type of Original for Copying 308
Adjusting Sharpness for Copying (Sharpness) 309
Erasing Dark Borders When Copying (Erase Frame) 310
Adjusting the Color 312
One Touch Color Mode 314
Copying Efficiently 316
Copying Multiple Originals onto One Sheet (N on 1) 317
Copying Separately Scanned Originals Together (Job Build) 319
Checking the Copy Results 321
Copying Immediately by Interrupting Other Jobs 323
Functions Useful for Making and Managing Material 324
Finishing by Collating/Grouping 325
Useful Copy Functions 327
Shifting the Image 328
Notifying You of the Completion of Copying by E-Mail 331
Making ID Card Copies 333
Skipping Blank Pages When Printing 335
Copying while Removing a Specified Color 337
Reducing Copying Operations 339
Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings) 340
Recalling Settings 341

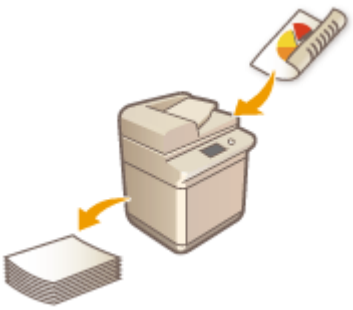
Copying

ERJ8-054

This chapter describes basic copy operations and various other useful functions.

■Introduction to Basic Copy Operations

This section describes the Copy Basic Features screen and basic copy operations.



Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)
Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)
Canceling Copying(P. 305)

■Enhancing Quality and Efficiency

This section describes functions useful for enhancing copy quality and operational efficiency such as adjusting sharpness to obtain clearer print results and combining multiple originals to efficiently copy them at once.



Enhancing and Adjusting Copy Quality(P. 307)
Copying Efficiently(P. 316)

■Making Handouts

This section describes functions useful for sorting/grouping materials for distribution.



Functions Useful for Making and Managing Material(P. 324)

■Using Useful Copy Functions

This section describes various copy functions such as shifting the image position and copying the front and back sides of ID cards on a single sheet of paper.



Useful Copy Functions(P. 327)
Reducing Copying Operations(P. 339)

Copy Basic Features Screen

ERJ8-055

Pressing <Copy> (<Home> Screen(P. 212)) displays the Copy Basic Features screen.



1 Current setting status

Displays setting status such as the copy ratio, paper size, and number of copies. Make sure to confirm the settings in order to copy properly. When you want to change a setting, select the desired setting item. **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

2 <Check Settings>

You can check the settings in the list. You can also make changes to the settings. **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

3

Press this icon to register the current settings in <Favorite Settings> of 4 or to change the buttons displayed in 4.

Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)

Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

Registering Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons(P. 248)

4 Function setting buttons

Displays the most frequently used buttons from <Options>. The setting status is displayed on the buttons. You can also press 3 to change which buttons are displayed.

- If the button for the function that you want to use is not displayed, press <Options> and select the desired button. **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

5 <Options>

Displays all of the function setting buttons. For convenience, you can display frequently used function setting buttons in 4.

6 <Interrupt>

You can interrupt waiting copy jobs and make your copy immediately. **Copying Immediately by Interrupting Other Jobs(P. 323)**

NOTE

- Some functions cannot be used in combination with each other. Buttons that cannot be selected are displayed in light gray.
- Depending on the number of copies and settings, <Copy Sample> is displayed to check the copy result by printing a sample copy. **Checking the Copy Results(P. 321)**



- The number of pages remaining is displayed if a page limit is set with Department ID Management. For information on setting Department ID Management and page limits, see **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)** .



Basic Copy Operations

ERJ8-056

This section describes the basic operations for copying.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

NOTE:

- If <Auto Collate> is set to <On>, the Collate mode is automatically set when you place your originals in the feeder. **<Auto Collate>(P. 922)**

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keys on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Specify the copy settings as necessary.

- Selecting Color Copying or Black and White Copying
- Enlarging or Reducing Copies
- Selecting Copy Paper
- 2-Sided Copying
- Adjusting Image Quality of Copies
- Specifying the Orientation of the Original

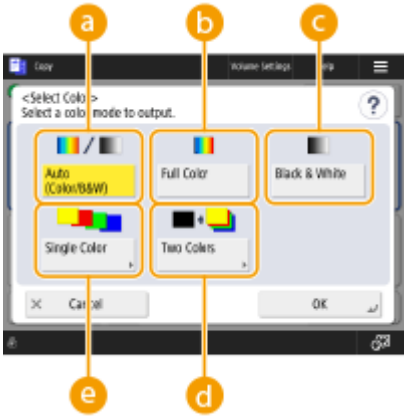
Selecting Color Copying or Black and White Copying



You can select the color mode for copying. For example, this enables you to save toner by copying color originals in black and white, or copying tickets with a single color such as red or blue to indicate the date they are distributed.

1 Press <Select Color>.

2 Select the color to copy with.



a <Auto (Color/B&W)>

Automatically detects the color of the original. Color pages are copied in four colors (CMYK), and black and white pages are copied in black (K) only.

b <Full Color>

Copies in four colors (CMYK), regardless of the color of the original.

c <Black & White>

Copies in black (K) only, regardless of the color of the original.

d <Two Colors>

Copies in black and the color you specify. Select <Red>, <Green>, <Blue>, <Yellow>, <Magenta>, or <Cyan>.

NOTE:

- You can set whether to replace a chromatic color other than the specified color (or approximate color) with black or the specified color. **<Chromatic Color Conversion for Two Colors Printing>(P. 907)**

e <Single Color>

Copies with the color you specify only. Select <Red>, <Green>, <Blue>, <Yellow>, <Magenta>, or <Cyan>.

Example: If you copy with red



3 Press <OK>.

IMPORTANT:

- The color of the original may not be detected correctly even when <Auto (Color/B&W)> is set.
  - Depending on the condition of the black and white original and the background, the original may be scanned in color mode. In this case, set the color mode to <Black & White>.
  - Color originals may be detected as black and white depending on the condition of the original and the size, such as when only the edges of the original are in color. To avoid this, set the color mode to <Full Color>.

- When the Auto (Color/B&W) mode is set, black-and-white copies are output at the same speed as color copies.
- If a black-and-white document is copied in the <Full Color>, <Single Color>, or <Two Colors> mode, it is counted as a color copy.

Enlarging or Reducing Copies



You can enlarge or reduce copies from standard paper sizes to other standard paper sizes.
Enlarging or Reducing Copies with Standard Paper Sizes



You can enlarge or reduce by specifying the copy ratio (%). You can specify the vertical and horizontal ratios individually.
Enlarging or Reducing Copies by Specifying the Copy Ratio



You can enlarge or reduce to automatically fit the paper size selected.
Enlarging and Reducing Copies to Fit Paper Size

■ Enlarging or Reducing Copies with Standard Paper Sizes

1 Press <Copy Ratio>.

2 To reduce, select the copy ratio from ⓐ, to enlarge, select the copy ratio from ⓑ, and press <OK>.



IMPORTANT

Place your original horizontally when enlarging in the following ways with a preset zoom: Placing an original horizontally means setting the original with the longer side sideways.

- A5 → A4

■Enlarging or Reducing Copies by Specifying the Copy Ratio

1 Press <Copy Ratio>.

2 Specify the copy ratio and press <OK>.



NOTE:

- To specify vertical and horizontal ratios individually, press <XY Ratio> and then specify the ratios for each. Depending on the ratio, the image on the printout may be rotated by 90 degrees.

■Enlarging and Reducing Copies to Fit Paper Size

1 Press <Select Paper>.

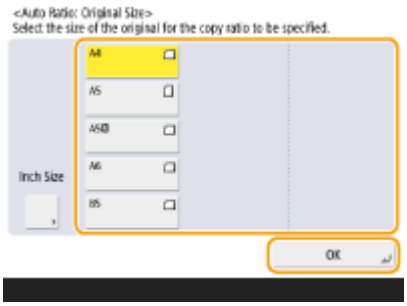
2 Select paper and press <OK>.

3 Press <Copy Ratio>.

4 **Press <Auto>**



5 **Select the size of the original, and press <OK>.**



NOTE

- When copying in equal copy ratio to paper that has the same size as the original, the edges of the copied image may be slightly missing. To avoid this, reduce the size of the image by pressing <Copy Ratio> ▶ <Fit to Page> to obtain the missing edges of the image.
- If you select <Fit to Page>, <Shift> is automatically set to <Center>.
- You cannot scan highly transparent originals, such as transparencies, using the Auto setting for Copy Ratio. Use the Preset Zoom or Zoom by Percentage mode instead.
- If you set <Auto>, you have to select a paper size manually. If you do not select a paper size, the copy ratio is automatically set to match the size of paper loaded in paper drawer 1.

Selecting Copy Paper



If you want to copy free size originals or highly transparent originals, or if you want to copy with paper set in the multi-purpose tray, you need to select paper manually.

1 **Press <Select Paper>.**

2 Select paper and press <OK>.

- Pressing enables you to confirm detailed information of the paper selected.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to correctly set the paper type. If the type of paper is not set correctly, it may adversely affect image quality. If a service repair is needed, contact your dealer or service representative.
- Take care when copying an original with an image that extends all the way to the edges. If you copy on the same size paper, the periphery of the original image may be cut off slightly on the copy. For more information on how much may be cut off, see **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)** .

2-Sided Copying



You can copy 1-sided originals on both sides of the paper. You can also copy a 2-sided original on both sides of the paper, or on two separate sheets.

Copying 1-Sided to 2-Sided

Copying 2-Sided to 2-Sided

Copying 2-Sided to 1-Sided

NOTE

- Place the original in a proper orientation as shown in the illustrations below.





- Originals of heavy or thin paper cannot be placed in the feeder. Place the original on the platen glass. In this case, place the original in a proper orientation as shown in the illustrations below.





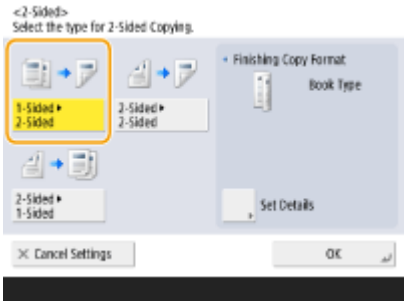
- When making 2-sided copies, functions of some settings such as the paper size and type are limited. For more information, see **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)** .

■Copying 1-Sided to 2-Sided

When copying a horizontally long original, place the original in landscape orientation.

1 Press <Options> ▶ <2-Sided Settings>.

2 Press <1-Sided ▶ 2-Sided>.



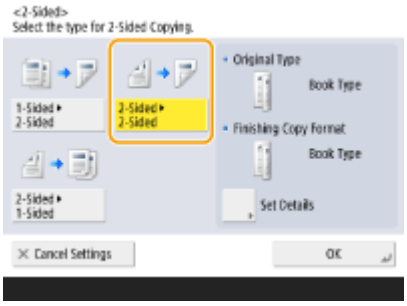
3 Set <Finishing Copy Format> and press <OK>.

- To change the print orientation, press <Set Details>. Select <Book Type> to make the front and back sides of the printout have the same top-bottom orientation. Select <Calendar Type> to make the front and back sides of the printout have opposite top-bottom orientations.

■Copying 2-Sided to 2-Sided

1 Press <Options> ▶ <2-Sided Settings>.

2 Press <2-Sided ▶ 2-Sided>.



3 Set <Original Type> and <Finishing Copy Format>, and press <OK>.

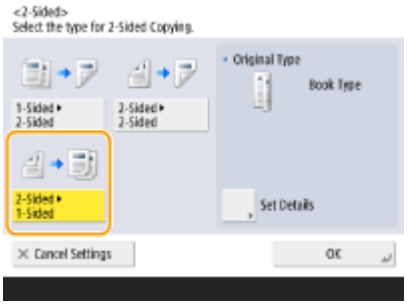
- To specify orientation of the original and change the print orientation, press <Set Details>. Select <Book Type> when the front and back sides of the original have the same top-bottom orientation. Select <Calendar Type> when the front and back sides of the original have opposite top-bottom orientations. You can also set the page orientation of the printout with <Book Type> or <Calendar Type>.

■Copying 2-Sided to 1-Sided

Place the original in the feeder.

1 **Press <Options> ▶ <2-Sided Settings>.**

2 **Press <2-Sided ▶ 1-Sided>.**



3 **Set <Original Type> and press <OK>.**

- To specify the orientation of the original, press <Set Details>. Select <Book Type> when the front and back sides of the original have the same top-bottom orientation. Select <Calendar Type> when the front and back sides of the original have opposite top-bottom orientations.

Adjusting Image Quality of Copies



You can adjust density of the entire document. For example, increasing copy density enables you to easily read faint characters written in pencil.
Adjusting the Density of Copies



You can adjust density of the background. This enables you to make clear copies of originals such as newspapers or originals with colored backgrounds.
Adjusting the Density of the Background of Copies

■Adjusting the Density of Copies

1 **Press <Options> ▶ <Density>.**

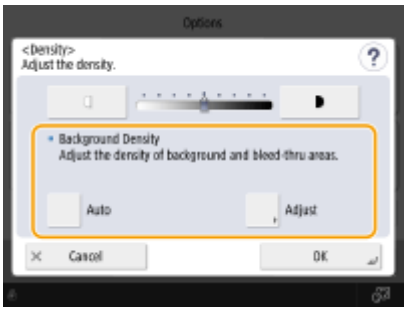
2 Adjust density and press <OK>.

- Press ◀ to decrease density. Press ▶ to increase density.

■Adjusting the Density of the Background of Copies

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Density>.

2 Press <Adjust> in <Background Density>.



- To adjust the background automatically, press <Auto> and proceed to step 4.

3 Adjust density and press <OK>.

- Press <-> to decrease the density of the entire background. Press <+> to increase the density of the entire background.

NOTE:

- Depending on the colors of originals, sections other than the background may be affected.
- Press <+> to scan the blue text of documents such as receipts or invoices clearly.
- Press <-> to remove the background when scanning originals like newspapers or originals with a colored background.
- If you press <Adjust> ▶ <Adjust Each Color>, you can adjust the background density by color.

4 Press <OK>.

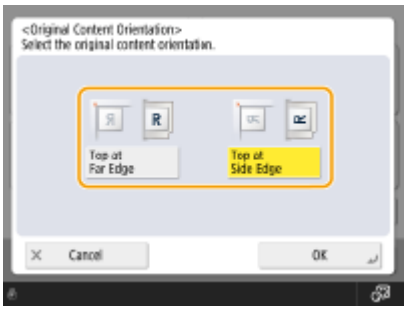
Specifying the Orientation of the Original



You can specify the orientation of an original placed on the platen glass or into the feeder as horizontal or vertical.

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Original Content Orientation>.

2 Select the orientation of the original.



- Select <Top at Far Edge> for horizontally-oriented originals, or <Top at Side Edge> for vertically-oriented originals.

For Originals in Portrait Orientation

Type of Original	Platen Glass	Feeder
		

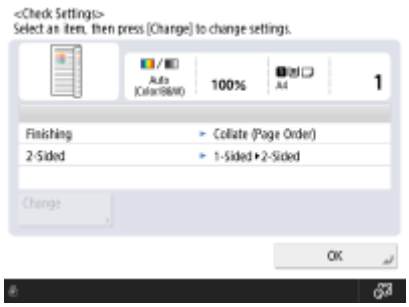
For Originals in Landscape Orientation

Type of Original	Platen Glass	Feeder
		

3 Press <OK>.

■Confirm settings before copying

If you press <Check Settings>, the list of the specified settings is displayed.



- If you select a setting on the list and press <Change>, you can change the setting.

5 Press (Start).

➡ Copying starts.

- To cancel copying, press <Cancel> or (Stop). **Canceling Copying(P. 305)**

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original and press (Start). After scanning all of the originals, press <Start Copying> to start copying.

TIPS

Reserving a copy

- Scanning can be performed in advance, even if the machine is preparing to print or printing. This function is called "Reserved copy." For example, to perform reserved copy while the printing or waiting screen is displayed, press <Close>, specify the copy settings in the usual manner, and press (Start).
- You can specify up to 50 jobs to be reserved, including the current job. Interrupt copy jobs are not included in this count.

LINKS

Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)
Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)
Hardware Specifications(P. 112)
Loading Paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 46)
Optional Equipment(P. 108)
< **<Common>(P. 901)** > <Paper Output Settings>

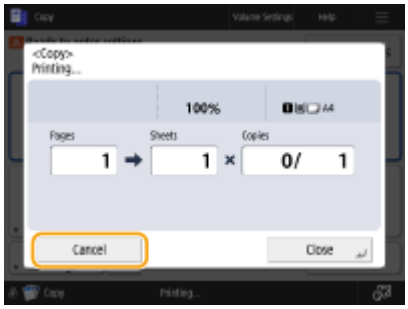
Canceling Copying

ERJ8-057

You can cancel copying while scanning originals or cancel waiting copy jobs.

■ Canceling Copying While Scanning

The following screen is displayed while scanning originals. Press <Cancel> to cancel copying.



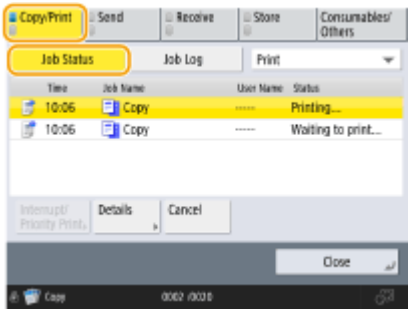
NOTE

- If you press (Stop) on the control panel while the Copy Basic Features screen is being displayed, the copy job is paused and, the message <<Stop>Select the Copy job you want to cancel.> and the list of copy jobs are displayed. You can select the copy job from the list and cancel the job by pressing <Cancel>.
- If you log in with personal authentication management and log out after pressing (Stop) on the control panel to display the message <<Stop>Select the Copy job you want to cancel.> and the list of copy jobs, the last job that the logged out user executed is canceled and other jobs are resumed.

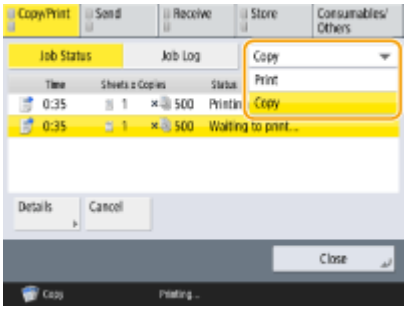
■ Canceling Waiting Copy Jobs

1 Press (Status Monitor).

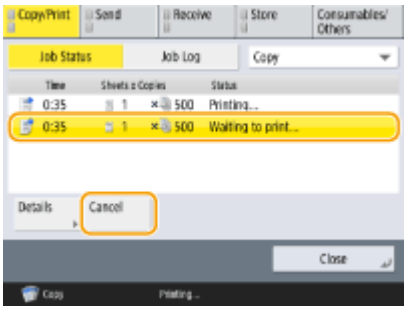
2 Press <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Status>.



3 Select <Copy> from the drop-down list and display waiting copy jobs.



4 Select the copy job to cancel and press <Cancel>.



NOTE:

- If you press <Details>, detailed information such as the number of copies and the Department ID is displayed.

5 Press <Yes>.

➠ Copying stops.

6 Press <Close>.

NOTE

- If you press (Stop) on the control panel when copy jobs are waiting, all the copy jobs are paused and then the message <<Stop>Select the Copy job you want to cancel.> and the list of the copy jobs are displayed. You can select a copy job from the list and cancel the copy job by pressing <Cancel>. If you want to resume copying, press <Resume Copying>.

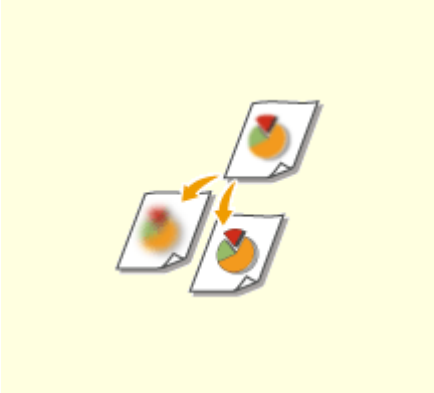
Enhancing and Adjusting Copy Quality

ERJ8-058

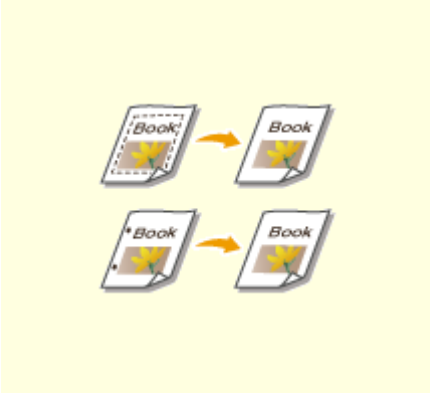
You can enhance the copy quality by making fine adjustments such as adjusting sharpness and erasing unnecessary dark borders.



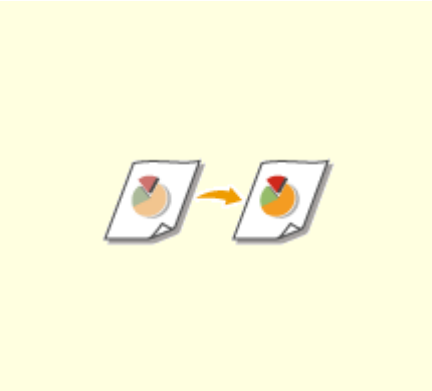
Selecting the Type of Original for Copying(P. 308)



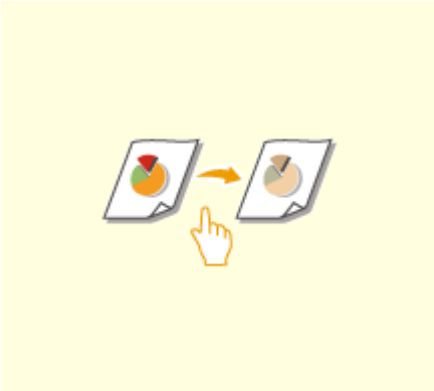
Adjusting Sharpness for Copying (Sharpness)(P. 309)



Erasing Dark Borders When Copying (Erase Frame)(P. 310)



Adjusting the Color(P. 312)



One Touch Color Mode(P. 314)

Selecting the Type of Original for Copying

ERJ8-059



You can select the optimal image quality for the copy depending on the type of original such as originals with only characters or magazines with photographs.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Press <Original Type>.

5 Select the type of original.

- For information on types of original, see the help screen displayed when you press ? at the top right of the screen.
- To adjust the text/photo processing priority level, press <Adjust Level> ▶ select <Text Priority> or <Photo Priority>.

NOTE:

- For thin black-and-white originals such as newspapers, it is recommended that you specify <Options> ▶ <Density> ▶ <Background Density> ▶ <Auto>. **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

6 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➡ Copying starts.

Adjusting Sharpness for Copying (Sharpness)

ERJ8-05A



You can copy the image with clear contours and lines by increasing the sharpness, or soften the copied image by decreasing the sharpness. Use this function when you want to sharpen blurred text and diagrams, or to reduce moire (a striped, wavy pattern) to smooth the finished image.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen.** **Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Sharpness>.**

5 **Adjust sharpness and press <OK>.**



- Set the sharpness to <High> when you want to copy originals containing text or fine lines. Set the sharpness to <Low> when you want to copy originals containing printed photographs or other halftones.

6 **Press <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

Erasing Dark Borders When Copying (Erase Frame)

ERJ8-05C



When copying originals that are smaller than the output paper size, frame lines of the originals may appear in the copied image. When copying thick books, dark borders may appear. <Erase Frame> enables you to erase these frame lines and dark borders. You can also set the machine to not copy punch holes in the originals.

IMPORTANT

- Place originals with punch holes on the platen glass. Placing them in the feeder may result in damage.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Press <Erase Frame>.

5 Specify erasing type and width.

■Erasing the frames in copies of documents

1 Press <Erase Original Frame> and set <Original Size>.



- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the original you set, press <Change> to select the size.

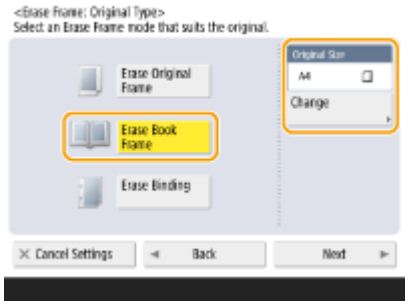
2 Press <Next>.

3 Enter the width of the frame to erase.

■Erasing the dark borders in copies of books

You can erase the dark borders both in the center and contour lines that appear when you copy facing pages in a book.

1 Press <Erase Book Frame> and confirm <Original Size>.



- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the book you set, press <Change> to select the size.

2 Press <Next>.

3 Press <Center> or <Sides>, and enter each erasing width.

■Erasing punch holes in copies of documents

1 Press <Erase Binding>.



2 Press <Next>.

3 Specify the position of the punch holes, and enter the erasing width.

NOTE:

- If you want to adjust the width for each border independently, press <Erase Original Frame> or <Erase Book Frame>, and then press <Adjust Independently> to enter the erasing widths.

6 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➠ Copying starts.

Adjusting the Color

ERJ8-05E



Adjust the density of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black separately.

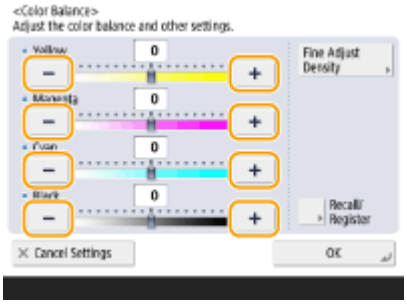
1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

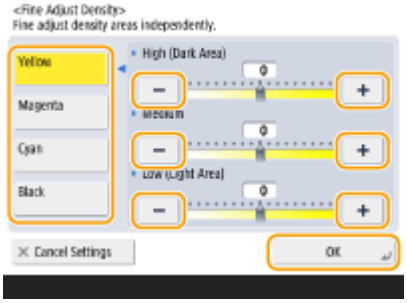
3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Color Balance>.**

5 **Press <-> or <+> for each color to adjust the color balance.**



6 **Press <Fine Adjust Density>, and perform other adjustments as necessary.**



- Select a color and adjust its density level by its density area using the <-> or <+> button. When adjustment is complete, press <OK>.

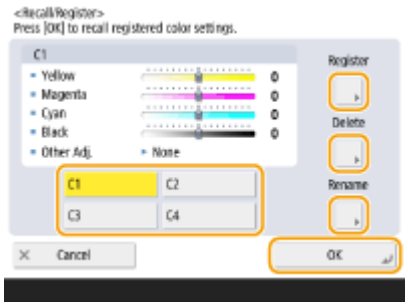
7 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

8 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

TIPS

- You can register up to four settings after adjustment. After adjusting the color, press <Recall/Register> ▶ select a button from <C1> to <C4> ▶ press <Register> ▶ <Yes> ▶ <OK>.



NOTE:

- To recall registered settings, press <Recall/Register>, select a button, and press <OK>.
- You can change the button names of <C1> to <C4>. Select the button to change, press <Rename>, and enter a new name.
- To delete registered settings, select the button ▶ press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

One Touch Color Mode

ERJ8-05F



You can intuitively select the image quality with a single button, such as having subtle colors or having a retro finish like an old photograph.

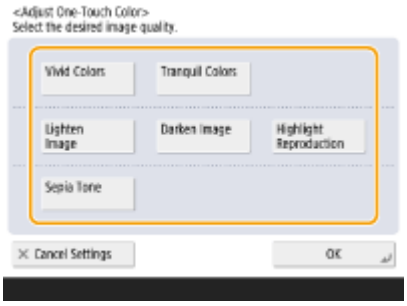
1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

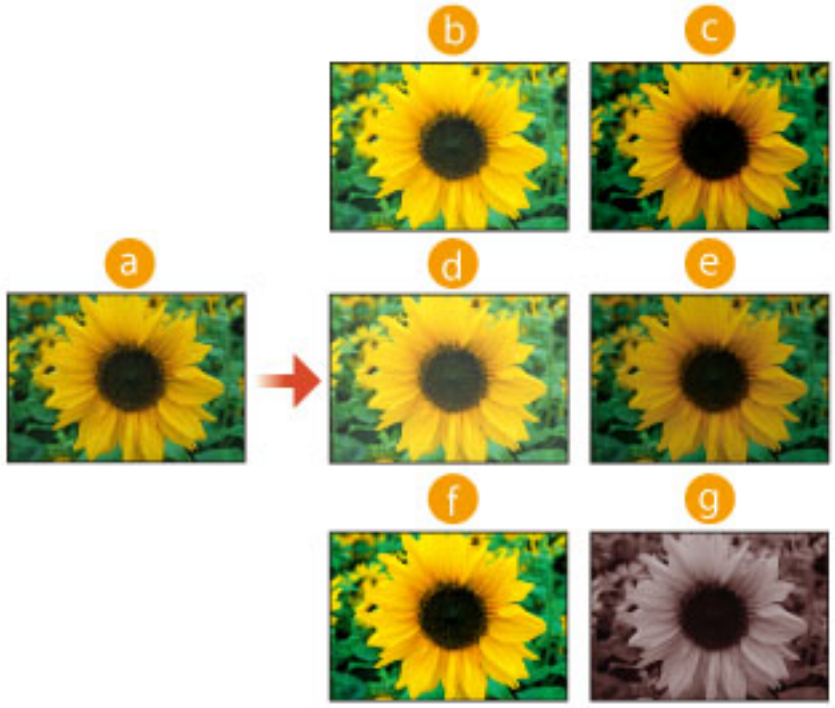
3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Adjust One- Touch Color>.**

5 **Select the desired image quality.**



Example adjustment:



- a Original
- b Vivid Colors
- c Tranquil Colors
- d Lighten Image
- e Darken Image
- f Highlight Reproduction
- g Sepia Tone

- If you select <Highlight Reproduction>, the image quality is adjusted so that highlights are not blown out.
- You can select multiple types of image quality at the same time. However, <Vivid Colors> and <Tranquil Colors> cannot be selected at the same time, and <Lighten Image>, <Darken Image>, and <Highlight Reproduction> cannot be selected at the same time.

6 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➠ Copying starts.

NOTE

- The settings in <Options> ▶ <Color Balance> automatically change according to the image quality you select.
- If you select <Sepia Tone>, <Single Color (Sepia Tone) > is displayed in <Select Color> on the Basic Features screen.

Copying Efficiently

ERJ8-05H

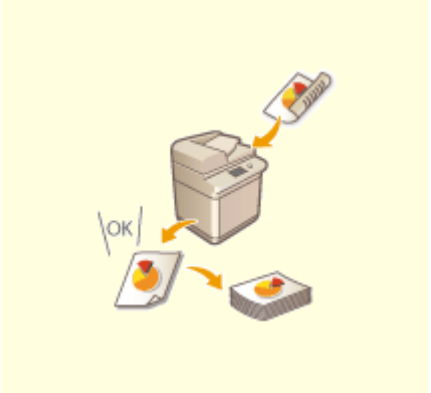
You can save paper by copying several originals onto one sheet or checking the copy result before making copies.



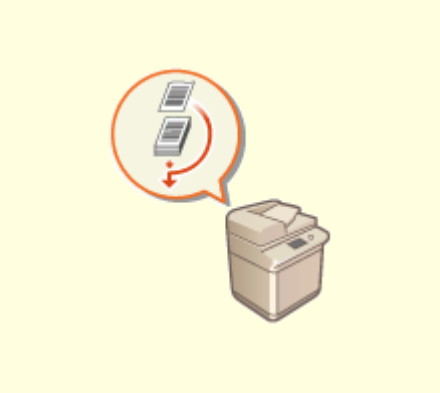
Copying Multiple Originals onto One Sheet (N on 1)(P. 317)



Copying Separately Scanned Originals Together (Job Build) (P. 319)



Checking the Copy Results(P. 321)



Copying Immediately by Interrupting Other Jobs(P. 323)

Copying Multiple Originals onto One Sheet (N on 1)

ERJ8-05J



You can copy several pages of originals onto a single sheet. This function enables you to copy with a smaller amount of paper than the original number of pages.

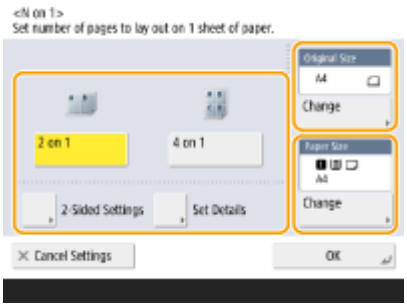
1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <N on 1>.**

5 **Select the way to arrange pages and select the original size and paper size for copying.**



- Select how many pages to be arranged onto a single sheet of paper. You can change the arrangement order as well.
- To make 2-sided copies, or to scan 2-sided originals to make 1-sided copies, press <2-Sided Settings>. For more information on the setting, see "2-Sided Copying" in step 4 of **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)** .
- Pressing <Change> in <Original Size> enables you to select the size of original and pressing <Change> in <Paper Size> enables you to select the paper size.

6 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

IMPORTANT

- Originals must all be the same size.

NOTE

- If you set <N on 1>, <Shift> is automatically set to <Center>.

Copying Separately Scanned Originals Together (Job Build)

ERJ8-05K



Even if you have too many originals to be placed in the feeder at once, you can scan the originals separately and copy them as a batch of documents. Originals scanned with both the feeder and the platen glass also can be copied at one time.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Press <Job Build> <Close>.

5 Press (Start) to scan the originals.

When scanning is complete, the screen appears prompting you to scan the next original.

6 Place the next original and press (Start) to scan the original.

- Repeat this step until you finish scanning all of the originals.
- To change the scan settings, press <Change Settings>.

NOTE:

- The following functions can be used in <Change Settings>: You need to set the necessary scan settings in advance, since you cannot change the other functions during the Job Build mode.
  - <Select Color>
  - <Copy Ratio>
  - <2-Sided Original>
  - <Density>
  - <Original Type>
- If you specify the <N on 1 > mode together with the Job Build mode, you cannot change <Select Color>, <Copy Ratio>, and <Density> in <Change Settings>.

7 Press <Start Copying>.

➠ Copying starts.

Checking the Copy Results

ERJ8-05L



Prior to a large amount of copying, you can check the copy result by printing a copy sample. Confirming the copy results enables you to eliminate output mistakes.

Checking the Copy Result by Making a Copy (Copy Sample)(P. 321)

NOTE

- <Copy Sample> is displayed when <Collate (Page Order)> and making multiple copies are specified at the same time.

Checking the Copy Result by Making a Copy (Copy Sample)

When you specified multiple numbers of copies, you can first make a copy of your whole original to check the result and then start making the rest of the copies. You can also copy only specific pages of your original.

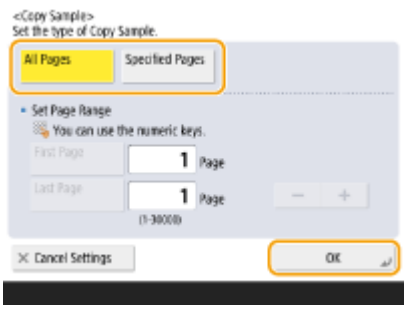
1 **Place the originals in the feeder.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Enter the number of copies, and specify the copy settings according to your purpose and objective.** **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

4 **Press <Copy Sample> on the Copy Basic Features screen.** **Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

5 **Select pages for the copy sample and press <OK>.**



- If you want to copy all of the pages, select <All Pages>.

- To copy specific pages, select <Specified Pages>. Enter the pages by pressing <First Page> or <Last Page>.

NOTE:

If you select <All Pages>

- If you select <All Pages>, the machine's counter counts the sample set as a copy.

If you select <Specified Pages>

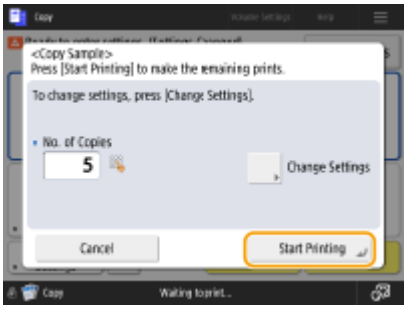
- Settings such as finishing and booklet are not performed.
- Specify the pages based on the output page numbers. For example, if the number of pages of document is 10 and you copy with the 2 on 1 setting (**Copying Multiple Originals onto One Sheet (N on 1) (P. 317)**), the number of finished pages becomes 5. If you want to copy the seventh to tenth pages of the original, specify the fourth page for <First Page> and the fifth page for <Last Page>.

6 Press (Start) to scan the originals, and press <Start Copying>.

➠ The copy sample is printed. Check the result.

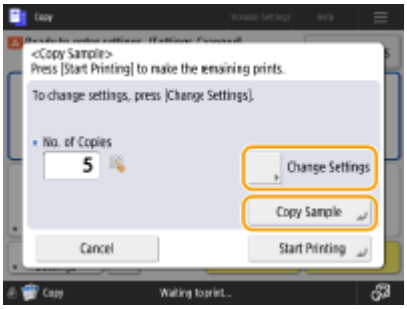
■If there is no problem with the copy result

Press <Start Printing> to print the number of copies you specified. If you selected <All Pages> in step 5, the number of copies minus one is printed. If you select <Specified Pages> in step 5, the total number of copies is printed.



■If you want to change settings

Press <Change Settings> to change the settings. <Copy Sample> is displayed after the settings are changed. Copy a sample again.



Copying Immediately by Interrupting Other Jobs

ERJ8-05R



You can copy immediately even while another operation is being performed. This is convenient for cases in which you only want to copy several pages urgently, but another person's output will not finish soon.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Interrupt> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Specify the copy settings as necessary. Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)

5 Press (Start).

➡ The previous job is paused and interrupt copying starts.

- To cancel interrupt copying, press <Interrupt> again before pressing (Start).

NOTE

- When interrupt copying finishes, the previous job restarts automatically.
- During interrupt copying, you cannot perform another interrupt copying. After the current interrupt copying finishes, perform the next interrupt copying.
- Even when the number of reserved copy jobs has reached its limit, interrupt copying can still be performed.

TIPS

You can interrupt jobs with a reserved copy job (**Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**).

- To interrupt the current job and perform a reserved copy job, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Status> ▶ Select the document to copy ▶ <Interrupt/Priority Print> ▶ <Interrupt and Print>.
- To perform a reserved copy job right after the current job finishes, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Status> ▶ Select the document to copy with the first priority ▶ <Interrupt/Priority Print> ▶ <Priority Print>.

Functions Useful for Making and Managing Material

ERJ8-05S

You can set the collating or grouping function to sort materials for distribution.



Finishing by Collating/Grouping(P. 325)

Finishing by Collating/Grouping

ERJ8-05U



When copying two copies or more from the feeder, you can select collating or grouping for the order of printouts. Select "Collate" to print in sequential page order. Select "Group" to print bundles of each page, as in 10 sheets for the first page, 10 sheets for the second page, and so forth.

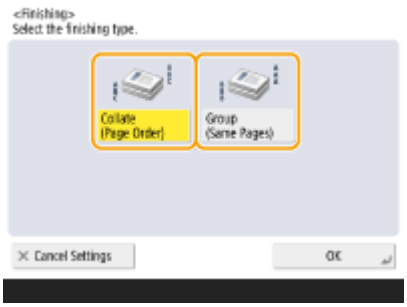
1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Finishing>.**

5 **Press <Collate (Page Order)> or <Group (Same Pages)>.**



6 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start).**

➡ Copying starts.

NOTE

- Depending on the paper type, you cannot use finishing functions. **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)**

When placing an original on the platen glass

- Pressing <Options> ▶ <Job Build> on the Copy Basic Features screen enables you to use the Collate/Group function even if the original is placed on the platen glass.

Insert a job separator between each page during a group output

- If you select <Group (Same Pages)>, you can insert a job separator between each group. For more information, see <Job Separator Between Groups>. **<Job Separator Between Groups>(P. 923)**

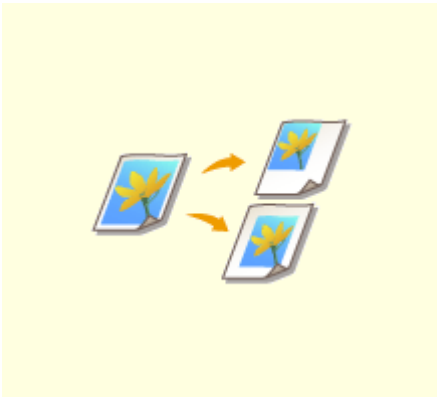
When configuring settings in <Access Stored Files>

- You can use finishing functions only when printing PDF/XPS files.

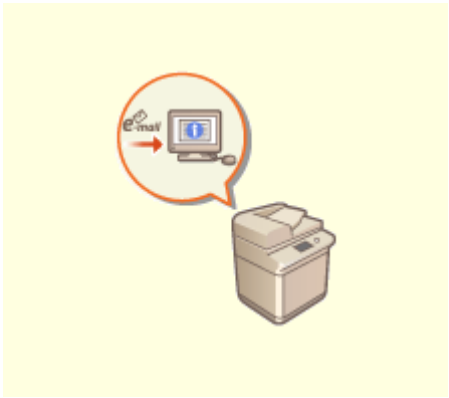
Useful Copy Functions

ERJ8-05W

This section describes useful copy functions to save paper and improve copying operation efficiency.



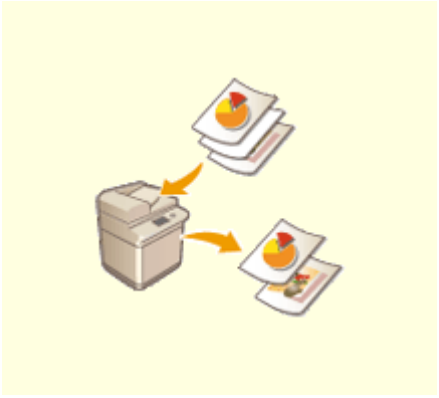
Shifting the Image(P. 328)



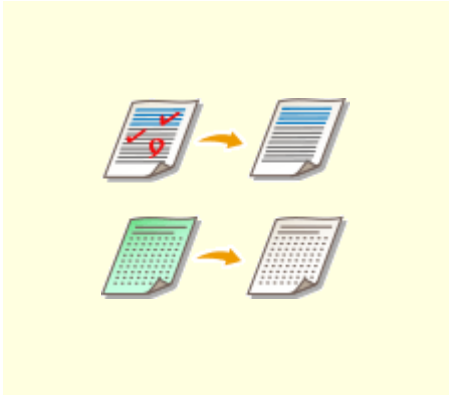
Notifying You of the Completion of Copying by E-Mail(P. 331)



Making ID Card Copies(P. 333)



Skipping Blank Pages When Printing(P. 335)



Copying while Removing a Specified Color(P. 337)

Shifting the Image

ERJ8-05X



This function enables you to make copies with the entire image shifted towards an edge or the center of the page. Shift the image when you want to make blank space on the page to input or arrange text and images on material.

Shifting the Image to an Edge or the Center(P. 329)
Specifying Moving Distance(P. 329)

NOTE

Shift Direction Settings

- Depending on the orientation of the original and the location where it is placed, the direction to which the image will be shifted will differ.
  - When the original is placed on the platen glass

    Top at Side Edge: Image will shift to the right and/or bottom.

    Top at Far Edge: Image will shift to the left and/or bottom.

  - When the original is placed in the feeder

    Top at Side Edge: Image will shift to the left or right, and/or bottom.

    Top at Far Edge: Image will shift to the top or bottom, and/or right.

- If using the By Position function: The image will shift but its position will be adjusted so that the entire image is copied without being cut off.
- If using the By Numeric Keys function: The copied image may be cut off.

Shifting the Image to an Edge or the Center

You can make margins around the image by copying to paper larger than the original or by reducing the copied image to a size smaller than the paper size. When these margins are available, the image can be shifted to an edge or the center of the paper.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen.** **Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Shift>.**

5 **Press <By Position> ▶ <Next>.**

6 **Select the direction to move the image.**



- Press an arrow button or <Center> to select the direction of movement.

7 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

8 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

Specifying Moving Distance

If no blank space exists because the original image and the output paper are the same size, or if you want to shift images by a few millimeters, specify the moving distance.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Shift>.**

5 **Press <By Numeric Keys> ▶ <Next>.**

6 **Specify the position to move to.**



- Press <Set> in <Front Side> and specify the moving distance. Press the up/down/left/right buttons indicating directions and enter the moving distance using the numeric keys.
- If you want to move the image on the back side when copying both sides, the <Back Side> setting is needed. To move to the same position as the front side, press <Same as Front Side>. To move symmetrically, press <Opposite to Front Side>. To move to a position different from the front side, press <Set> and enter the moving distance.

7 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

8 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

Notifying You of the Completion of Copying by E-Mail

ERJ8-05Y



You can receive an e-mail notifying you that originals are finished copying. When performing a large copying job or reservation copies (**Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**), you do not need to wait beside the machine for the print completion.

IMPORTANT

- The destination for the notification e-mail needs to be specified from the Address Book. Register the desired destination beforehand. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

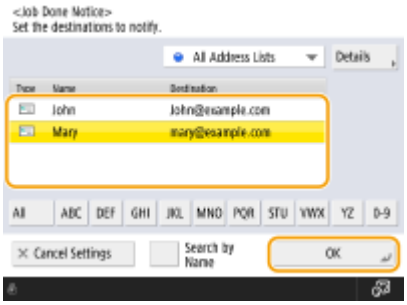
2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the copy settings as necessary. Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**

4 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

5 **Press <Job Done Notice>.**

6 **Select an e-mail address from the Address Book and press <OK>.**



- For information on how to view and use the Address Book, see **Address Book(P. 265)** .

7 **Press <Close>.**

8 Press (Start).

➠ Documents are scanned and copying starts. When copying is complete, the notification e-mail is sent to the specified address.

Making ID Card Copies

ERJ8-060



This function enables you to copy both the front and back of an ID card onto a single sheet of paper. This function is useful when copying ID cards (identification cards) such as driver's licenses, because the orientation and print position of the images of both sides of the ID card are aligned automatically according to the paper size.

IMPORTANT

- Place the ID card on the platen glass. Place the ID card face down with its corner aligned with the top-left corner of the platen glass, as shown below. The Copy ID Card mode cannot be used when the ID card is placed in the feeder.



NOTE

- If another original is set in the feeder, you cannot start copying. Remove the original from the feeder.
- LTR/A4 size paper can be used for <Copy ID Card>.

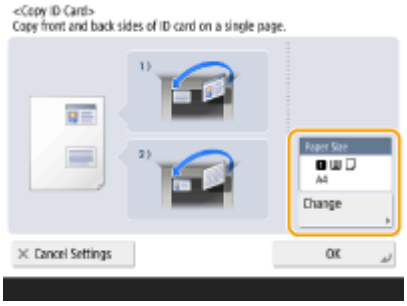
1 **Place the ID card on the platen glass face down. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Copy ID Card>.**

5 **Press <Change>, select the paper to use, and press <OK>.**



6 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start) to scan the front side.**

➠ Once scanning is completed, a screen will appear notifying you that preparations to scan the back side are complete.

8 **Turn the ID card over so that its back side is facing down and press (Start) to scan the back side.**

➠ After the back side is scanned, printing starts automatically.

Skipping Blank Pages When Printing

ERJ8-061



The machine can detect blank pages when scanning, and print all the pages except blank pages.

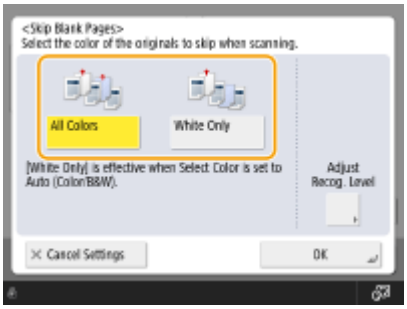
1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

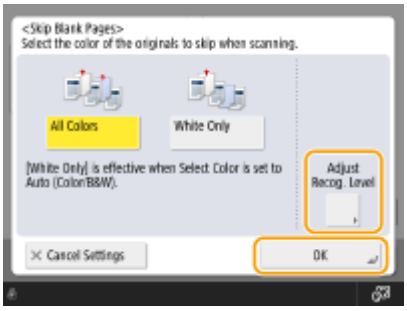
4 Press <Skip Blank Pages>.

5 Select the color of the originals to skip.



- To skip blank originals regardless of their color, select <All Colors>. To skip blank originals only in white, select <White Only>.
- If a setting other than <Auto (Color/B&W)> is set in <Select Color>, the same operations as <All Colors> is performed even if you select <White Only>.

6 Press <Adjust Recog. Level>, set the accuracy to detect blank paper, and then press <OK>.



➠ Pressing <+> makes the detection accuracy higher.

7 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

8 Press (Start).

➠ Copying starts.

IMPORTANT

- If the size of the original is smaller than the scan size setting, it may not be skipped correctly.

NOTE

- To check the number of pages that have been printed, follow the procedures below:
  - (Status Monitor) ▶ <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select a document ▶ <Details> ▶ check the number displayed for <No. of Orig. Pages>.
  - The status screen and report display the number including blank paper. **Checking the Status of Copies/Prints(P. 692)**
  - The copy counter is not incremented for blank paper that is saved. However, the scan counter is incremented for those pages.

Copying while Removing a Specified Color

ERJ8-062



You can copy an original while removing a specified color. You can copy originals while removing the background color (paper color) or red markings, such as grading marks.

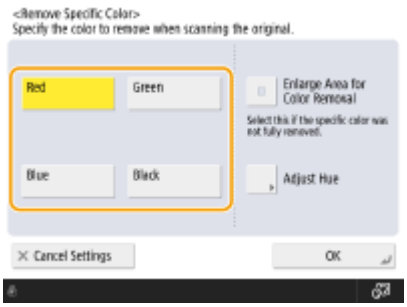
1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features Screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)

4 Press <Remove Specific Color>.

5 Select the color that you want to remove.



- If the specified color is not removed and remains, select <Enlarge Area for Color Removal>.

6 Press <Adjust Hue> to adjust the hue of the color to be removed, if necessary.



- You can adjust the hue when you select <Red>, <Green>, or <Blue>.

7 Press <OK> <Close>.

8 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

Reducing Copying Operations

ERJ8-063

You can eliminate the need to specify the same settings every time you make copies by recalling previously used settings. In addition, switching the Copy Basic Features screen (**Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**) to the "Express Copy Screen" enables you to change the settings with fewer steps.



Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings)(P. 340)



Recalling Settings(P. 341)

Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings)

ERJ8-064



You can recall the previously used copy settings. The details of the recalled setting can be changed before copying.

NOTE

- The three most recent settings that were stored in memory are not deleted even when the main power is turned Off.

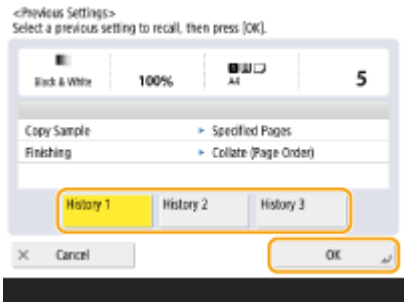
1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Copy>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Options> on the Copy Basic Features screen. Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 292)**

4 **Press <Previous Settings>.**

5 **Select the setting to recall and press <OK>.**



- When personal authentication management is in use, the machine recalls the settings specified in the past by the user who is logging in to the machine.

6 **Press (Start).**

➠ Copying starts.

Recalling Settings

ERJ8-065



Registering frequently used copy settings in advance enables the settings to be easily recalled when they are required. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

Faxing

Faxing 343
Fax Basic Features Screen 345
Basic Operations for Sending Faxes 347
Canceling Sending Faxes 360
Receiving Faxes 362
Sending Faxes Successfully 365
Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview) 366
Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send) 368
Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending) 370
Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending 372
Simplifying Sending Operations 374
Sending Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build) 375
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings) 377
Useful Functions When Sending 379
Sending at a Specified Time 380
Saving a Copy of a Sent Document 382
Various Receiving Methods 385
Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception) 386
Keeping Received Documents Private 389
Forwarding Received Documents Automatically 391
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents 394
Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax) 397
Sending PC Faxes 398
Using Internet Faxes (I-Fax) 402
Sending I-Faxes 403
Receiving I-Faxes 411
Sending and Receiving Faxes via the Machine (Remote Fax) 412

Faxing

ERJ8-066

This chapter introduces the basic methods for sending and receiving faxes as well as convenient fax functions you can use according to your needs.

■ Introduction to Basic Operations

This section describes the Fax Basic Features screen and the basic sending and receiving methods.



Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)
Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Receiving Faxes(P. 362)
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)

■ Successfully, Easily, Conveniently

You can find and choose among various sending and receiving methods right for you. Fully using functions can provide you with an efficient way to send and receive faxes.



Sending Faxes Successfully(P. 365)
Simplifying Sending Operations(P. 374)
Useful Functions When Sending(P. 379)
Various Receiving Methods(P. 385)
Forwarding Received Documents Automatically(P. 391)

■ Sending Faxes from Your Computer

You can directly fax a document saved on a computer. This method can eliminate the need to print, saving paper and toner, as well as make the images and fine print on documents more clear.



Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax)(P. 397)

■Using Fax Functions More Fully

This section describes how to send and receive faxes via the Internet. You can also learn how to use a multifunction printer without the ability to fax for sending and receiving faxes via other multifunction printers on the network.



Using Internet Faxes (I-Fax)(P. 402)
Sending and Receiving Faxes via the Machine (Remote Fax) (P. 412)

Fax Basic Features Screen

ERJ8-067

Pressing <Fax> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) displays the Fax Basic Features screen.



1 Destination

Displays the destination's name, the fax number, and the number of destinations you specified.

2 <Details>

Enables you to check the detailed information of the destination displayed in 1.

3 <Delete Dest.>

Enables you to delete the destination displayed in 1.

4 <Tone>

If you press this button when specifying the destination, the character "T" (tone) is inserted. Even if you are using pulse dial, numbers following "T" will be sent using tone dial. Press this button when using fax information services.

5 <One-Touch>

Enables you to specify a fax destination registered in one-touch buttons.

6 <Address Book>

Enables you to specify a fax destination registered in the Address Book.

7 <On-Hook>

Press to send a fax document manually. **Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending)(P. 370)**

8 <Direct Send>

Press to check the connection to the recipient's fax machine before scanning originals. **Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send)(P. 368)**

9 <Options>

Displays all of the function setting buttons. For convenience, you can display frequently used function setting buttons in 10.

10 Function setting buttons

Displays the most frequently used buttons from <Options>. The setting status is displayed on the buttons. You can also press 13 to change which buttons are displayed.

- If the button for the function that you want to use is not displayed, press <Options> and select the desired button. **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

11 Current setting status and setting buttons

Displays setting status such as the resolution. Make sure to confirm the settings in order to scan properly. To change the settings, press the desired button. **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

12 <Favorite Settings>

Register frequently used scan settings here in advance to easily recall them when necessary. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

13 ☰

Press this icon to register the current settings in <Favorite Settings> of 12 and change the button displayed in 10.

Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)

Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

14 <Previous Settings>

Press to recall the previously specified settings. **Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings)(P. 377)**

15 <R>

Press to use the R key. **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

NOTE

- You can select whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons to restrict use of the Address Book. **<Restrict Address Book Use>(P. 945)**
- Some functions cannot be used in combination with each other. Buttons that cannot be selected are displayed in light gray.
- The total number of specified destinations is displayed on the top of the screen.

LINKS

Registering Destinations(P. 265)

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes

ERJ8-068

This section describes the basic operations for sending fax documents.

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)**

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book

Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons

Entering Destinations Manually

Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server

NOTE:

- To check the detailed information about the specified destination, select the desired destination using ▲ and ▼ and press <Details>. To delete a destination from the specified destinations, press <Delete Dest.>.
- You can only change destinations from <Details> specified using the New Destination and destinations obtained via an LDAP server.
- <ECM TX>, <Sending Speed>, and <Long Distance> do not appear when you specify a destination from the Remote Address Book.
- If the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings, authentication between the server machine and the client machine is performed while the client machine is obtaining the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons. Authentication is performed by matching the System Manager ID and System Manager PIN set by the server machine and client machine. **Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)**
  The availability of the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons depends on the status of the System Manager information settings for the server machine and client machine, as shown below.

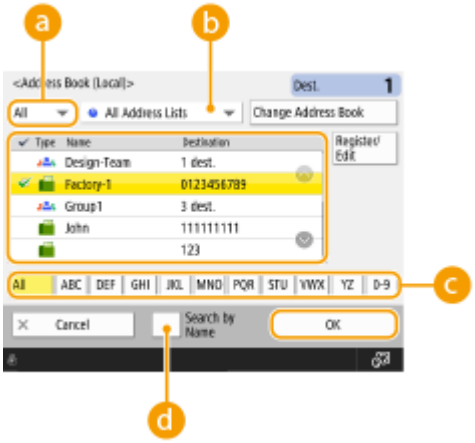
When the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings	When the client machine is performing the System Manager information settings	The System Manager ID and System PIN for the server machine and client machine match	Can use the Remote Address Book/One-Touch Button
Performing	Performing	Matches	Yes
		Does Not Match	No
	Not Performing	-	No
Not Performing	Performing	-	Yes
	Not Performing	-	Yes

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Select the destination and press <OK>.

- If an access number is set when the destination is registered, press <Access No.> and enter the access number using the numeric keys. The corresponding destination is displayed in the Address Book.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>. When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <Remote>.



a Destination type drop-down list

Pressing and displays fax and group destinations, respectively.

b Address list drop-down list

Enables you to display a specific group of destinations. When you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management, selecting <Personal Addr. List> displays your personal Address Book.

c Search buttons by first letter

Enables you to narrow down a search by the first letter of the destination name.

d <Search by Name>

Enables you to search the destination by the name you are entering.

IMPORTANT

- If you select the group destination containing destinations other than fax destinations, sending a fax is not allowed.

NOTE

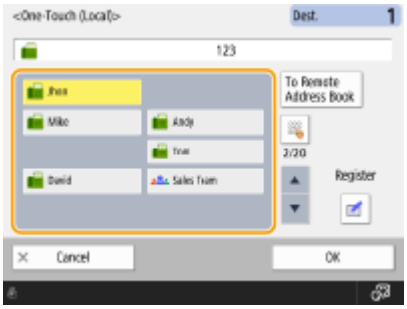
- <Register New Destination>, <Details/Edit>, and <Delete> in <Register/Edit> on the <Address Book (Local)> screen can be used to register new destinations, check details, and edit/delete destinations.
- To use the Remote Address Book, it is necessary to configure the server machine settings. Set to open the Remote Address Book externally on the server machine.

Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons

1 Press <One-Touch>.

2 Select the desired one-touch button and press <OK>.

- To specify the destination using a one-touch button number (one-touch number), press and enter the number for the desired one-touch button.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>.



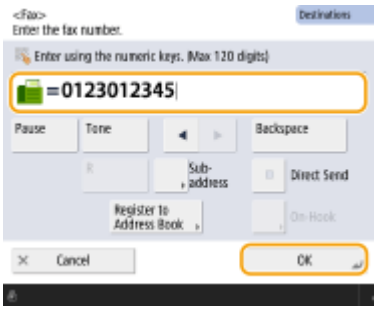
NOTE

- The destinations registered in the one-touch buttons of the server machine are updated in the following times:
  - When a fax job has been sent on the client machine
  - When you press (Reset) on the client machine
  - When Auto Reset is activated on the client machine

Entering Destinations Manually

You can specify destinations manually that are not registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons.

1 Enter a fax number using the numeric keys and press <OK>.



- To add another fax number, repeat this step.
- If the machine is connected to a PBX (Private Branch Exchange), press <R> before entering the destination. If <R> is not available, you need to register the R-key settings. **<R-Key Setting>(P. 972)**

NOTE:

- You can press <Register to Address Book> to register the entered destination. Set the required conditions, and specify <Name> and the address list from the address list drop-down list. For information on the settings, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

NOTE

To send faxes overseas

- Enter the international access number, the country code, and the fax number, in that order. If you cannot successfully connect to the destination overseas, press <Pause> to insert a pause between a number and the next number.

To send faxes with a subaddress

- The machine supports the use of ITU-T* standard subaddresses. If the recipient's fax machine is compatible with the use of ITU-T subaddresses, you can enhance the confidentiality of sent documents using a subaddress and password. To send a document with a subaddress, enter a fax number, press <Subaddress>, and then enter the subaddress and password.

* Stands for International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector, which is the group that makes recommendations towards the standardization of worldwide telecommunications.

Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server

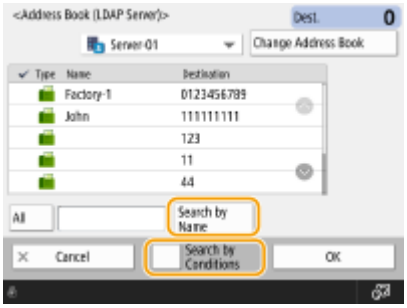
You can search and specify destinations registered in the LDAP server.

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Press <To LDAP Server>.

- When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <LDAP Server>.
- If the network password input screen is displayed, enter the user name and password and press <OK>.

3 When searching destinations in the LDAP server, press either <Search by Name> or <Search by Conditions>.



■When searching by name

Press <Search by Name> ▶ enter the text to search ▶ press <OK>.

NOTE:

- You can specify attributes used when performing "Search by Name" for a destination from the LDAP server. **<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>(P. 1013)**

■When searching by conditions

- Press <Search by Conditions>, specify the search conditions on the screen, and press <Start Searching>.



a Search categories

Select a criterion to search for destinations from name, fax number, organization name, and organization unit (department name, etc).

b Search conditions

Select a search condition such as a destination name that contains "John" and a department name that begins with "Development."

c Search characters

Press <Set> and enter search characters for the search condition.

NOTE:

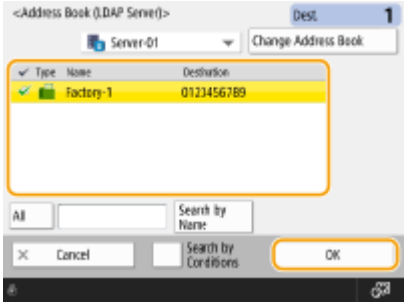
To search with multiple conditions

- You can search destinations with multiple conditions. Specify the first search condition, press <Add Search Condition>, and then select <or> or <and> for the next condition.

To change conditions and search again

- Press <Delete> to delete the specified contents, and specify the conditions again.

4 Select the destination and press <OK>.



4 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

- Specifying How to Scan Originals
- Adjusting Image Quality
- Erasing Dark Borders (Erase Frame)

Specifying How to Scan Originals



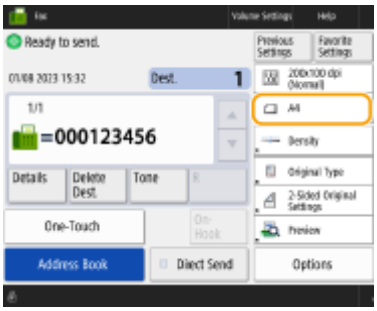
If you are scanning free size/highly transparent originals, or the edge of image is missing when scanning, you need to manually specify the scanning size.
Specifying the Scanning Size of Originals



The machine can automatically scan both the front and back sides of an original.
Scanning Both Sides of Originals

■Specifying the Scanning Size of Originals

1 Press the setting button for scanning size.



2 Select the scanning size and press <OK>.

- To scan the original in A4, select <A4>.

■When scanning a free size original

Place the original in the feeder and select <Free Size>.

■When specifying the values of scanning size

Place the original on the platen glass/in the feeder, select <Custom>, and enter the length and width of the original.

NOTE:

- When a scanning size smaller than the minimum size that can be scanned with the feeder is set, scanning cannot be performed with the feeder. For information on the document sizes that can be scanned with the feeder, see **Cassette Module-AL(P. 126)** .

■When scanning a long original

Place the original in the feeder and select <Long Original>.

NOTE

To register the scanning size

- If you frequently specify the scanning size with the same values, register the size in <Custom> ▶ <Register Size> to quickly recall the setting for convenience.

■Scanning Both Sides of Originals

Place the original in the feeder. For landscape-oriented originals, place them horizontally.

1 Press <Options> ▶ <2-Sided Original Settings>.

2 Select <Book Type> or <Calendar Type> and press <OK>.

- Select <Book Type> for originals whose images on the front and back sides face the same direction, or <Calendar Type> for originals whose images on the front and back sides face in opposite directions.

3 Press <Close>.

Adjusting Image Quality



You can select the resolution suitable for your type of original. The higher the resolution is, the clearer the image becomes, but the longer it takes to send.
Selecting Resolution



Specifying the type of original such as documents with characters only or magazines with photographs enables you to send with optimal image quality.
Selecting the Type of Original



You can adjust the density of the entire original. For example, increasing the density enables you to easily read faint characters written in pencil.
Adjusting the Density of the Entire Original



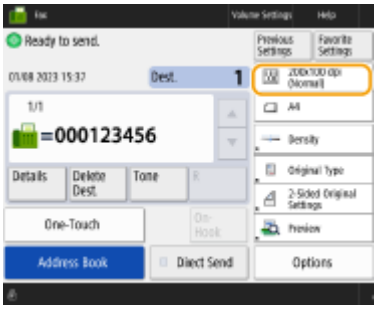
You can adjust the density of the background. You can clearly send originals with a colored background or thin originals such as newspapers whose characters and images on the back side are transparently visible.
Adjusting the Density of the Background



You can scan the image with clear contours and lines by increasing the sharpness, or soften the image by decreasing the sharpness. Use this function when you want to sharpen blurred text and diagrams, or to reduce moire (a shimmering, wavy pattern) to smoothen the finished image.
Adjusting Sharpness (Sharpness)

■Selecting Resolution

1 Press the setting button for resolution.



2 Select the resolution and press <OK>.

- A lower resolution is suitable for originals containing text only, while a higher resolution is suitable for originals containing photographs. The higher the resolution is, the more finely originals can be scanned.

NOTE:

- When a resolution higher than 200 dpi x 400 dpi is set, even if <Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan> is set to <Quality Priority>, the setting is not enabled.

■ Selecting the Type of Original

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Original Type>.

2 Select the type of original and press <OK>.

- To adjust the text/photo processing priority level, press <Adjust Level> ▶ select <Text Priority> or <Photo Priority>.

3 Press <Close>.

■ Adjusting the Density of the Entire Original

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Density>.

2 Adjust the density and press <OK>.

- Press to decrease the density. Press to increase the density.

3 Press <Close>.

■ Adjusting the Density of the Background

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Density>.

2 Press <Adjust> in <Background Density>.

- To adjust the background automatically, press <Auto> and proceed to step 4.

3 Adjust the density and press <OK>.

- If <-> is pressed, the density of the entire background decreases. If <+> is pressed, the density of the entire background increases.

NOTE:

- Depending on the colors of originals, sections other than the background may be affected.

4 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

■Adjusting Sharpness (Sharpness)

NOTE:

- The setting for <Sharpness> is invalid when all of the conditions below are met. The setting is reflected in the image displayed for <Preview>, but not for the actual scanned image.
  - <Original Type>: <Text>
  - <Resolution>: <200x100 dpi (Normal)>

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Sharpness>.

2 Adjust the sharpness and press <OK>.

- To sharpen blurred text, adjust the control to <High>.
- To reduce moire when scanning originals that contain printed photos, such as magazines or pamphlets, adjust the control to <Low>.

3 Press <Close>.

Erasing Dark Borders (Erase Frame)

When scanning originals that are smaller than the scanning size, frame lines of the originals may appear in the scanned image. When scanning a thick book, dark borders may appear. This function enables you to erase these frame lines and dark borders. You can also set the machine to not copy punch holes in the originals.

IMPORTANT

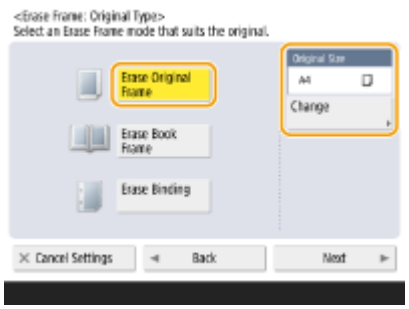
- Place the original with punch holes on the platen glass. Placing in the feeder may result in damage.

1 Press <Options> ▶ <Erase Frame>.

2 Specify the erasing type and width.

■Erasing the frames of documents

1 Press <Erase Original Frame> and check <Original Size>.



- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the original, press <Change> to select the size. You can only set the Erase Original Frame mode for the original sizes shown on the touch panel display.

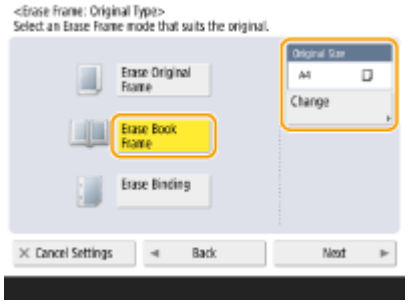
2 Press <Next>.

3 Enter the width of the frame to erase.

■Erasing dark borders in copies of books

You can erase the dark borders both in the center and contour lines that appear when you scan facing pages in a book.

1 Press <Erase Book Frame> and check <Original Size>.



- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the book, press <Change> to select the size. You can only set the Erase Book Frame mode for the original sizes shown on the touch panel display.

2 Press <Next>.

3 Press <Center> or <Sides> and enter each erasing width.

■Erasing punch holes in copies of documents

1 Press <Erase Binding>.



2 Press <Next>.

3 Enter the erasing width.

NOTE

- If you want to adjust the width for each border independently, press <Erase Original Frame> or <Erase Book Frame> ▶ <Next> ▶ <Adjust Independently> ▶ enter the erasing widths.
- If you are using <Erase Binding>, the borders you do not select are also erased by 4 mm.

3 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

5 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending starts.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). When scanning all of the originals is complete, press <Start Sending> to send the fax.

- To cancel sending, see **Canceling Sending Faxes(P. 360)** .

NOTE

To check the total number of specified destinations

- The total number of specified destinations is displayed on the top right of the screen. This enables you to confirm that the number of destinations is correct before sending.

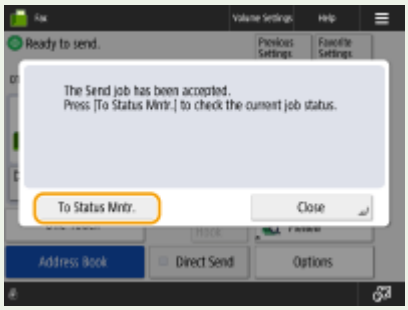


To send with the sender information

- You can send with the sender's name and fax number. **<TX Terminal ID>(P. 947)**

To check the statuses for sent documents

- On the <Status Monitor> screen, you can check the statuses for sent documents. This screen enables you to send faxes again or cancel sending after checking the statuses. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**
- When <Display Notification When Job Is Accepted> is set to <On>, the <Status Monitor> screen can be displayed from the following screen that is shown after a send job is received. **<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>(P. 954)**



When a transmission error occurs because the recipient's line is busy

- The machine automatically redials after a certain period of time. You can change the settings such as how many times the machine redials and the interval between redials. **<Auto Redial>(P. 970)**

To print the report for the results of sending

- On the Fax Basic Features screen, pressing <Options> ▶ <TX Result Report> enables you to set to automatically print the report listing the results of sending.

- To set this for each job from <Options>, it is necessary to select <For Error Only> or <Off> in **<TX Result Report>(P. 946)** , and then set <Allow Printing from Options> to <On>.

When photos in the sent image are too dark or light colors in the background of color originals cannot be removed

- The quality of the sent image may be able to be improved if the following conditions/settings are met.
  - Job type: Fax (Memory Sending) or Scan and Send (Fax/I-fax)
  - <Select Color>: <Black & White> (Scan and Send)
  - <Original Type>: <Text>
  - <Density> ▶ <Background Density>: <Auto>
  - <Resolution>: 200 dpi x 400 dpi, 300 dpi x 300 dpi*, 400 dpi x 400 dpi, or 600 dpi x 600 dpi*
    *Can be set for Scan and Send
  - <Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan> ▶ Fax/I-Fax Send Jobs: <Quality Priority> (**<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan>(P. 912)**)

TIPS

Saving a copy of a sent document

- You can set the machine so that a copy of a sent document is automatically saved in a file server. The copy is converted into an electric file such as PDF and saved, allowing you to easily check the contents from your computer. **Saving a Copy of a Sent Document(P. 382)**

Selecting a sender's name

- On the Basic Fax Features screen, pressing <Options> ▶ <Sender Name (TTI)> enables you to select a name from a list of registered sender's names to include in the sender information. **<Register Sender Name (TTI)>(P. 968)**
- If logging in using User Authentication, the login name appears in <100> of Sender Name (TTI).

Checking scanned images before sending

- You can check scanned images on the preview screen before sending. **Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview)(P. 366)**

Registering frequently used settings

- You can combine frequently used destinations and scan settings into a button of the machine for later use. By pressing the registered button when scanning originals, you can quickly complete your settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

LINKS

Canceling Sending Faxes(P. 360)
Sending Faxes Successfully(P. 365)
Simplifying Sending Operations(P. 374)
Useful Functions When Sending(P. 379)
Registering Destinations(P. 265)
Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)
Managing Users(P. 591)
<Set Destination>(P. 1008)

Canceling Sending Faxes

ERJ8-069

You can cancel scanning originals or sending faxes that are being sent or waiting to be sent.

■ Canceling Scanning Originals

1 Press <Cancel> on the displayed screen or (Stop).

2 Press <Yes>.

➠ Scanning originals is canceled.

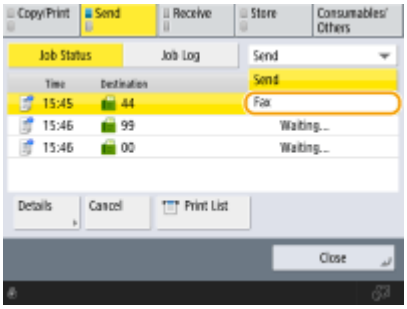
■ Canceling Sending Faxes Being Sent or Waiting to Be Sent

1 Press <To Status Mntr.> on the displayed screen or (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Send> ▶ <Job Status>.

3 Select <Fax>.

➠ A list of jobs being sent or waiting to be sent is displayed.



4 Select the job to cancel and press <Cancel>.

5 Press <Yes>.

➠ Sending the fax is canceled.

NOTE

To immediately cancel a job that is being sent

If you press (Stop) on the control panel to cancel a fax job while it is being sent, the message <Is it OK to cancel the following Send job?> appears. Press <Yes> to cancel sending the fax.

- You can select <Latest Received Job> or <Job Being Sent> to choose the job to cancel. **<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>(P. 954)**
- Press (Stop) when there are multiple send jobs to display the screen for selecting the send job to cancel. If the send job you want to cancel is not displayed, press <Check Other Jobs> to display <Send Jobs>. Select the job that you want to cancel, and press <Cancel>.

LINKS

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)

Receiving Faxes

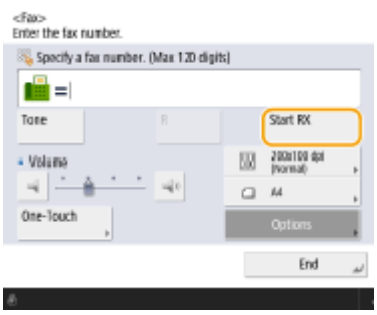
ERJ8-06A

This section describes the methods for receiving faxes and how to set up the machine to receive faxes. You need to complete some procedures for using fax functions before specifying the receiving settings.

■ Methods for Receiving Faxes

The machine provides the following receiving methods. Select the method that best suits your needs and then set it up by following the procedure in **<RX Mode>(P. 989)** .

<Auto RX> 	**Dedicated to receiving faxes** The machine receives faxes automatically. Even if someone makes a call to you, you cannot talk to the caller.
<Fax/Tel (Auto Switch)> 	**When the call is a fax** The machine receives the fax automatically. **When the call is a telephone call** An incoming call rings. Pick up the handset to answer the call. **NOTE:** • You need to connect your telephone to the machine beforehand.
<Answering Machine> 	**When the call is a fax** After an incoming call rings, the machine receives the fax automatically. **When the call is a telephone call** The answering machine activates, enabling the caller to leave a message. If you pick up the handset before the answering machine starts recording a message, you can talk with the caller. **NOTE:** • You need to connect your answering machine to the machine beforehand. • Set the answering machine to answer after a few rings. • We recommend that you add approximately 4 seconds of silence at the beginning of the message or set the maximum recording time to 20 seconds.
<Manual RX> 	**When the call is a fax** An incoming call rings. Pick up the handset. If you hear a beep, select (Home) ▶ <Fax> ▶ <On-Hook> ▶ <Start RX> to receive faxes.

	 **When the call is a telephone call** An incoming call rings. Pick up the handset. If you do not hear a beep, start your conversation. **NOTE:** • You need to connect your telephone to the machine beforehand. • You can set the machine to automatically receive faxes when an incoming call rings within a specified timeframe. **<Switch to Auto RX>(P. 991)**
<Net Switch>*1 	The machine distinguishes between fax and telephone calls. This mode is only available for certain countries and requires a subscription to a network switch service. **NOTE:** • You need to connect your telephone to the machine beforehand.

*1 Indicates items that may not be displayed on the Settings/Registration screen, depending on the region.

■When a fax is received

The Processing/Data indicator on the control panel blinks green. When receiving is complete, the document is automatically printed and the indicator turns off.

NOTE

- To cancel receiving, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Receive> ▶ <Job Status> ▶ select a document ▶ <Cancel>.

■Output paper

The delivered fax is printed in the same paper size as the received document. If the same size paper as that of the delivered fax is not available, it can be printed using one of the following methods or through several processes, depending on the size of the received document and paper that is available.

- Prints a received document by dividing it into several papers without changing its size
- Prints with blank spaces on the paper which is larger than the received document
- Reduces the size of the image and text, and then prints

NOTE

- Depending on the type of telephone connected to it, the machine may not be able to send or receive faxes properly.

- If you are connecting an external telephone with fax functions, set the telephone to not receive faxes automatically.
- If you pick up the telephone handset and hear a beep, the call is a fax. You can receive the fax just by using the telephone to enter a specific ID number. **<Remote RX>(P. 990)**
- If you require more information about the service, contact the company providing the service.

Receiving with a subaddress

- The machine supports the use of ITU-T* standard subaddresses. To receive a document with a subaddress, see **<Forwarding Settings>(P. 982)** .

* Stands for International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector, which is the group that makes recommendations towards the standardization of worldwide telecommunications.

TIPS

- You can save paper when printing.
  - **<Print on Both Sides>(P. 980)**
  - **<Reduce Fax RX Size>(P. 980)**
- You can include information, such as reception time, in received documents when printing. **<Print RX Page Footer>(P. 981)**
- If you set the machine to check a reception password for subaddress communication, you can prevent the machine from receiving spam faxes. **<RX Password>(P. 992)**
- Setting <Forward Temporarily Stored File to Memory RX Inbox> to <Yes> enables you to forward received documents to the storage location of the machine (Memory RX Inbox) if they cannot be printed due to paper jams or lack of paper. In this case, <Fax Memory Lock>/<Use I-Fax Memory Lock> is automatically set to <On>, and forwarded documents can be checked from the screen. Also, forwarded documents can be printed later. (**Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)**) To return to normal printing, set <Fax Memory Lock>/<Use I-Fax Memory Lock> to <Off>.

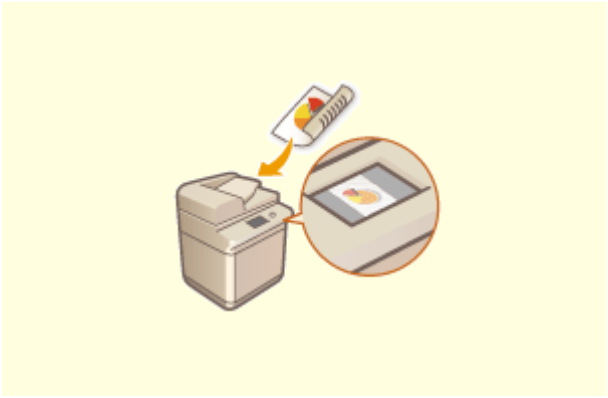
LINKS

Various Receiving Methods(P. 385)
Forwarding Received Documents Automatically(P. 391)
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)

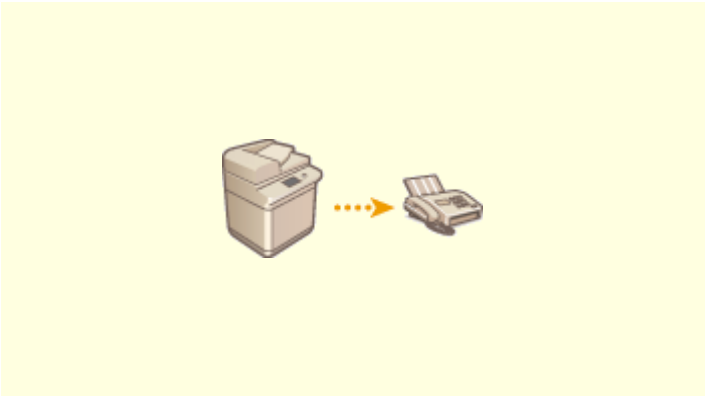
Sending Faxes Successfully

ERJ8-06C

This section describes how to avoid potential sending errors caused by incorrectly scanning documents or a busy line, etc.



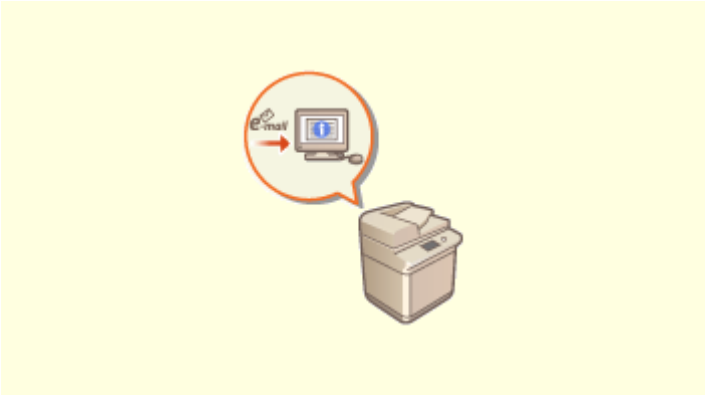
Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview)(P. 366)



Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send)(P. 368)



Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending) (P. 370)



Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending(P. 372)

Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview)

ERJ8-06E



You can check scanned images on the preview screen before sending. You can also delete, move, or switch pages on the preview screen.

NOTE

- The original cannot be checked before sending with the Direct Sending or Manual Sending mode, even if <Preview> is set.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Fax>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen.** **Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary.** **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

5 **Press <Options> ▶ <Preview> ▶ <Close>.**

6 **Press (Start).**

➡ Originals are scanned and the preview screen appears.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). When scanning all of the originals is complete, press <Preview and Send> to display the preview screen.

7 **Check the scanned images on the preview screen.**

- Edit the scanned image on the preview screen as necessary.

■To delete a page

You can delete the page currently displayed on the preview screen.

1. Press <Delete Page>.

■To move a page

You can move a page to the specified destination.

1. Press <Edit Scanned Data>.
2. Press <Move Pg. Position>.
3. Enter the page numbers corresponding to <Move Page> and <Behind Page>.
4. Press <OK>.

■To switch the locations of pages

You can switch the locations of specified pages.

1. Press <Edit Scanned Data>.
2. Press <Switch Pg Position>.
3. Enter the page numbers corresponding to <Target Page A> and <Target Page B>.
4. Press <OK>.

8 Press <Start Sending>.

➠ Sending starts.

Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send)

ERJ8-06F



To successfully send faxes to the destination you intend, you can check beforehand that the recipient is connected and ready to start communication. As the machine bypasses memory when scanning originals, you can send faxes even if there is no memory available.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

- To send multiple pages, place the originals in the feeder. When the original is placed on the platen glass, only one page can be sent.

2 Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)

5 Press <Options> ▶ <Direct Send> ▶ <Close>.

6 Press (Start).

➠ The machine dials the recipient's number. When the machine connects the call, originals are scanned and sending starts.

- The machine does not start sending when the recipient's line is busy.

IMPORTANT

Direct Send is not available in the following cases

- When any of the following functions is specified in the scan settings:
  - <2-Sided Original Settings>
  - <Erase Frame>
  - <Job Build>
- Multiple destinations are specified.
- <Limit Functions> is set to <Off> for any function when the machine is in the Department ID mode. **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)**
- <Use TX Document Archiving> is set to <On>.

NOTE

To specify the scanning size of originals

- The scanning size of originals placed in the feeder is automatically set. To specify the size yourself, use the platen glass.

Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending)

ERJ8-06H



You can manually send fax documents after checking that the destination is ready to receive fax transmissions.

NOTE

- If you have added additional lines, you can only use Line 1 (the standard line) for manual sending.
- To send fax documents manually by pressing <On-Hook>, set <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> to <Off>. If it is set to <On>, you may not be able to send documents. **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

- When you want to send multiple pages, place originals in the feeder. When the original is placed on the platen glass, you can only send one page.

2 Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <On-Hook> on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)

4 Enter the recipient's phone number.

5 Make sure that you hear the recipient or a high-pitched tone.

6 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and sending starts.

IMPORTANT

Manual Sending is not available in the following cases

- When any of the following functions is specified in the scan settings:
  - <2-Sided Original Settings>
  - <Erase Frame>
  - <Job Build>

- <Limit Functions> is set to <Off> for any function when the machine is in the Department ID mode. **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)**

Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending

ERJ8-06J



You can receive an e-mail notifying you that sending documents is complete. Even if documents are waiting to be sent, you can use your computer or portable device to check whether sending documents is complete, giving you reassurance. When an error occurs, you are notified of destinations whose documents failed to be sent.

IMPORTANT

- To select the destination to notify from <Address Book>, it is necessary to register the destination in advance. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**
- To select <Send to Myself> as the destination to notify, it is necessary to register your e-mail address in the user information in advance, and log in using personal authentication management. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

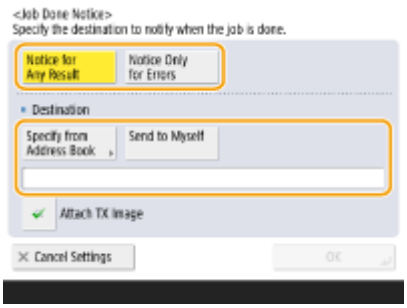
2 **Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

5 **Press <Options> ▶ <Job Done Notice>.**

6 **Select the notification timing, and set the destination to notify.**



- If you select <Notice for Any Result>, a notification e-mail is sent for each send job. If you select <Notice Only for Errors>, a notification e-mail is sent only when an error occurs.
- For more information on how to view and use the Address Book, see **Address Book(P. 265)** .

- If you want to check the content of the sent document, select <Attach TX Image> to attach the first page of the document as a PDF file to a notification e-mail.

7 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

8 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending starts. When sending is complete, the notification e-mail is sent to the specified address.

Simplifying Sending Operations

ERJ8-06K

You can send separately scanned documents together. By recalling previously used settings, you can simplify sending operations.



Sending Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build)(P. 375)



Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings)(P. 377)

Sending Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build)

ERJ8-06L



Even if you have too many originals to be placed in the feeder at the same time, you can scan the originals separately and send them as a batch of documents. Documents scanned with both the feeder and the platen glass can also be sent at the same time.

1 **Place the first original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**

5 **Press <Options> ▶ <Job Build> ▶ <Close>.**

6 **Press (Start) to scan the original.**

➡ When scanning is complete, the screen appears prompting you to scan the next original.

NOTE:

- If you place your originals in the feeder, remove the originals from the original output area when the scanning of each batch is complete.

7 **Place the next original and press (Start).**

- Repeat this step until you finish scanning all of the originals.
- To change the scan settings, press <Change Settings>.

NOTE:

- The following functions can be used in <Change Settings>. You cannot change the setting for the other functions while in the Job Build mode. You need to specify the necessary scan settings in advance.
  - <Scan Size>
  - <2-Sided Original>
  - <Density>

- <Original Type>
- <Copy Ratio>

- When scanning and sending 1-sided originals and 2-sided originals together, if the first document you scan is a 2-sided original, set <2-Sided Original>. When scanning a 1-sided original, disable the <2-Sided Original> setting in <Change Settings>.

8 Press <Start Sending>.

➡ All scanned documents are combined into one and sent to the specified destination.

Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings)

ERJ8-06R



You can recall the destinations specified in the past. Their scan settings such as density are also recalled at the same time.

NOTE

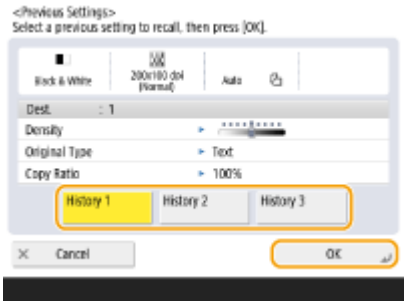
- You can store a series of destination, scan, or send settings specified before pressing (Start) as a single group of Previous Settings.
- The three most recent settings that were stored in memory are not deleted even when the main power is turned Off.
- When you use fax information services, you cannot specify a destination that is stored in the Address List or use <Previous Settings>.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Previous Settings> on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)

4 Select the log to recall and press <OK>.



➠ The destination and its scan settings are specified according to the selected log.

- When personal authentication management is in use, the machine recalls the settings specified in the past by the user who are logging in to the machine.
- You can change the recalled settings before sending.

5 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending starts.

- If you set <Manage Address Book Access Numbers> to <On>, you cannot recall settings from memory.
- If you set any address type to <On> in <Restrict New Destinations>, the currently stored Previous Settings are deleted.

LINKS

Managing Users(P. 591)

Useful Functions When Sending

ERJ8-06S

This section describes how to send a document at a specified time and how to save a copy of a fax document in an external file server.



Sending at a Specified Time(P. 380)



Saving a Copy of a Sent Document(P. 382)

Sending at a Specified Time

ERJ8-06U



You can scan originals in advance and send the scanned documents at a specified time.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Fax>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

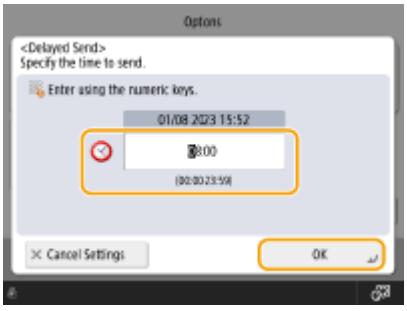
3 Specify the destination on the Fax Basic Features screen. Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 345)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)

5 Press <Options> ▶ <Delayed Send>.

6 Enter the time to send and press <OK>.

- Enter all four digits of the time. For example, for 5 minutes past 7, enter "0705" and for 18 minutes past 23, enter "2318."



7 Press <Close>.

8 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sent at the specified time.

NOTE

- You can check on the <Status Monitor> screen whether sending is complete or not. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**

LINKS

Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending(P. 372)

Saving a Copy of a Sent Document

ERJ8-06W



You can save a copy of a sent fax in a pre-specified destination (e-mail or file server, etc.). Depending on the destination, the saved fax copy is converted into another digital file format such as PDF, thus keeping documents organized and manageable. This method also helps you easily manage logs because a folder categorized by sender name or date is automatically created in the specified destination on the server.

IMPORTANT

- A copy of a document is saved even if a sending error occurs.
- Depending on the type of destination, the following restrictions may apply.
  - E-Mail: An e-mail without a message is sent.
  - Fax/I-Fax: The sent fax cannot be saved as an electronic file.

Registering the Storage Location and File Format

In order to back up fax documents, it is necessary to register settings such as the storage location and file format in advance.

IMPORTANT

- You cannot perform Direct Sending if you set <Archive TX Document> to <On>.
- This setting automatically switches to <Off> in the following cases. Specify the destination again or return the setting to <On> as required.
  - When the backup destination has been deleted from the address book
  - When an address book has been imported from the Remote UI **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
  - When an address book has been received from Address Book Management Software **<Import/Export from Addr. Book Management Software>(P. 1029)**

1 Press (Settings/Register) ▸ <Function Settings> ▸ <Send> ▸ <Common Settings> ▸ <Archive TX Document>.

2 Press <On> for <Use TX Document Archiving>.

3 Press <Backup Location> ▸ select the destination ▸ press <OK>. Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)

NOTE

- A destination in <Personal Addr. List> cannot be specified as the destination.

4 Press <Folder Name> ▶ set how to organize the created folders ▶ press <OK>.

- You can select <Sender Information>, <Date>, or <Off> to categorize folder names.
- File names are specified by send date and time, job number, sender information, destination information, and result information.

  Example: 201603151005_0050_John_1112223333_OK.pdf

NOTE

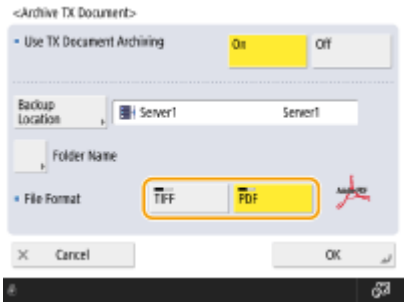
Sender information

- Information regarding the sender is displayed in the following situations.
  - Sender Name: When <Sender Name (TTI)> is set to <W/Settings>
  - User Name: When <Sender Name (TTI)> is set to <No Settings>, and the user is authenticated
  - Line Name: When <Sender Name (TTI)> is set to <No Settings>, the user is not authenticated, and the user name is registered for the line used to send the fax
  - Telephone Number: When <Sender Name (TTI)> is set to <No Settings>, the user is not authenticated, and the user telephone number is registered, but the user name is not registered, for the line used to send the fax
  - ----: When none of the above information is available

Destination information

- Information regarding the destination is displayed in the following situations.
  - Destination Unit Name: When the destination unit name is available
  - Telephone Number: When the destination unit name is not available
  - Destination name of first successful sending: When performing a sequential broadcast transmission

5 Press <File Format> ▶ select the file format for saving the sent data.



6 Press <OK>.

- Registration is complete.

TIPS

Specifying multiple destinations including a fax destination

- You can save a copy of a sent document by sending to multiple destinations which include a fax destination from the Scan Basic Features screen. To display fax destinations on the Scan Basic Features screen, it is necessary to set <Enable Fax in Scan and Send Function> to <On>. **<Display Fax Function>(P. 810)**

LINKS

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)

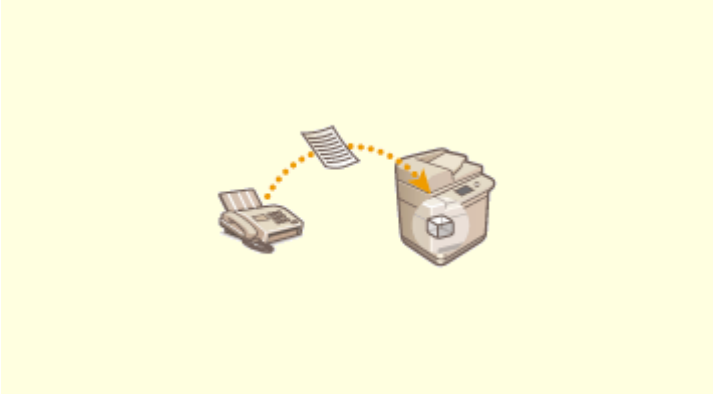
Various Receiving Methods

ERJ8-06X

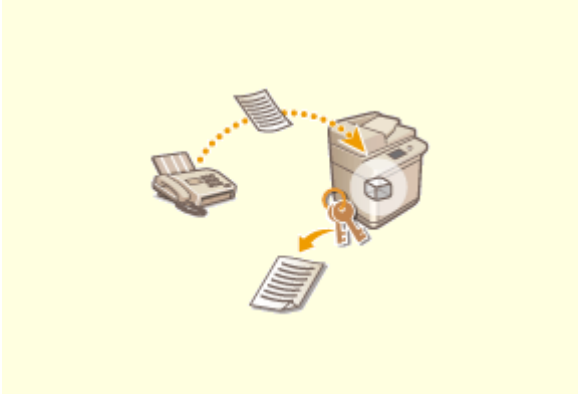
The machine can be set to temporarily save received documents in it without printing. By checking and selecting documents you want to print, you can save paper. There is also a function to receive and keep confidential documents private.

NOTE

- If image files attached to received I-fax documents are not compatible with this machine, the machine does not process (print, forward, or store) these files. The files are deleted instead. In this case, the names of the deleted files and the message "No programs can process the file attachment." are printed with the text of the received I-fax.



Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)



Keeping Received Documents Private(P. 389)

Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)

ERJ8-06Y



You can have incoming documents saved in the storage location (Memory RX Inbox) of the machine without printing. By printing just what you need and deleting unnecessary documents such as direct mails from the Memory RX Inbox, you can save paper.

Saving in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)

Saving in the Memory RX Inbox

To use this function, you need to activate the memory reception function first (**<Use Fax Memory Lock>(P. 985)** and **<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>(P. 986)**), and then follow the procedure below to specify the settings so that incoming documents can be received in memory.

1 Press <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Memory RX Inbox>.

- If the password is set for the Memory RX Inbox, the screen appears prompting you to enter the password (**<Memory RX Inbox PIN>(P. 985)**). Enter the password and press <OK>.

3 Select <Memory RX Inbox> and set <Fax Memory Lock> to <On>.

- To receive I-faxes in memory, set <I-Fax Memory Lock> to <On>.

Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox

When the Processing/Data indicator on the control panel maintains a steady green, follow the following procedures to check/print saved documents.

1 Press <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Memory RX Inbox>.

NOTE

Divided Data RX Inbox

Pressing <Divided Data RX Inbox> enables you to check the receive status of an I-fax that has been divided into several parts before being sent, and the remaining capacity of the Divide Data RX Inbox.
The following can be performed using <Divided Data RX Inbox>.

- Pressing <Divided Data List> enables you to check the document list.
- Pressing <Delete> enables you to delete a document that was divided and sent. Selecting <Print When Deleted> enables you to set the machine to print the divided received data document when it is deleted.

3 Select <Memory RX Inbox>.

➡ A list of saved documents is displayed.

4 Select a document to print and press <Print>.



- Pressing <Details> enables you to check information about the document, including senders' names and the number of pages received. Pressing <Display Image> enables you to check the contents of the document as well as select and delete pages.
- Pressing <Delete> ▶ <Yes> deletes the document. You cannot delete multiple documents simultaneously. To delete multiple documents, select and delete one document at a time.
- Pressing <Send> enables you to specify destinations to send the document. To delete the document from the Fax/I-Fax Inbox after sending, press <Delete File After Sending> before sending.
- Pressing <Select All (Max 32 files)> enables you to select the documents at once. When a document is selected, <Clear Selection> is displayed enabling you to clear all selections.

NOTE:

- To print all the documents in memory, press <Off> for <Fax Memory Lock> or <I-Fax Memory Lock>. You can skip step 5.
- You cannot print multiple documents simultaneously. To print multiple documents, select and print one document at a time.

5 Press <Start Printing>.

➡ Once a document is printed, it is automatically deleted from memory.

TIPS

- You can specify a day of the week or the time such as on weekends or night time during which received documents are saved in memory. **<Memory Lock Start Time>(P. 986)** and **<Memory Lock End Time>(P. 987)**
- Registering an arbitrary level of the Memory RX Inbox to the <Personal>/<Shared> button enables operations to be executed quickly and efficiently.

LINK

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Sending I-Faxes(P. 403)
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

Keeping Received Documents Private

ERJ8-070



This function is to save in the specified storage location (Confidential Fax Inbox) the received documents that match specific conditions. The Confidential Fax Inbox contains multiple boxes, and each box can be protected by password. By specifying a condition such as saving all documents from Company A in Box No. 10, you are allowed to only check the documents you need. This function also enables you to prevent unauthorized persons from seeing confidential documents unintentionally by setting a password. When the Processing/Data indicator on the control panel maintains a steady green, follow the following procedures to check/print saved documents.

IMPORTANT

To use this function

- Some settings such as the save location and password for documents need to be registered beforehand.

Forwarding Received Documents Automatically(P. 391)
<Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>(P. 984)

1 Press <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

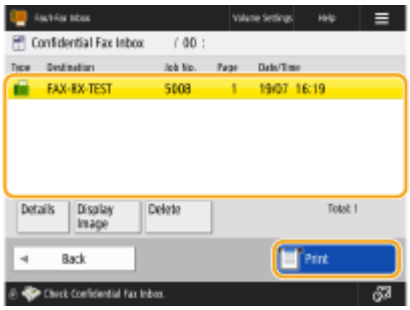
2 Press <Confidential Fax Inbox>.

3 Select the box where documents are saved.

- If the password is set for the box, the screen appears prompting you to enter the password. Enter the password and press <OK>.

  ➠ A list of saved documents is displayed.

4 Select the document to print and press <Print>.



- Pressing <Details> enables you to check information about the document, including senders' names and the number of pages received.
- Pressing <Display Image> enables you to check the contents of the document as well as select and delete pages.

- Pressing <Delete> ▶ <Yes> deletes the document. You cannot delete multiple documents simultaneously. To delete multiple documents, select and delete one document at a time.

NOTE:

- You cannot print multiple documents simultaneously. To print multiple documents, select and print one document at a time.

5 Press <Start Printing>.

- To delete the document to print, press <Delete File After Printing> before printing.

  ➡ Printing starts.

TIPS

- You can set to receive the URL of the save location by e-mail when receiving documents. Just entering the URL in the address bar of a Web browser enables you to check the contents of documents from your computer through the Remote UI. **<Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>(P. 984)**
- Registering an arbitrary level of Fax Inboxes to the <Personal>/<Shared> button enables operations to be executed quickly and efficiently.

LINKS

Managing the Machine from a Computer (Remote UI)(P. 685)

Forwarding Received Documents Automatically

ERJ8-071



You can set to forward received documents to specified destinations. Fax numbers as well as e-mail addresses and shared folders in computers can be specified as forwarding destinations.

Forwarding All Documents Automatically (Forwarding All)

The machine forwards all received documents to specified destinations. This method is useful when you want to get faxes even if you are out of the office. You can also set to print forwarded documents or receive an e-mail notifying you that forwarding documents is complete.

Forwarding Automatically by Specified Conditions (Conditional Forwarding)

The machine forwards received documents that only match the specific conditions, such as sender's fax number and received dates/times. For example, you can set conditions such as forwarding documents from Company A to all branch offices and forwarding documents received on holidays to e-mail addresses. Just like with the Forwarding All method above, you can also set to print forwarded documents or receive an e-mail notifying you that forwarding documents is complete.

Configuring Forwarding Settings

To use automatic forwarding, it is necessary to specify the forwarding destination and file format, etc., in advance.

1 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Forwarding Settings>.

NOTE

- You can also display the <Forwarding Settings> screen by pressing <Dest./Fwd. Settings>(**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) ▶ <Forwarding Settings>.

2 Press <Register>.

3 Press <Condition Name> and enter the name.

4 Press <Conditions> and specify the conditions for the destinations to forward.

- A document will be forwarded if it is received from a destination that meets the conditions specified here.

  Example: Forwarding a fax from 1111111111

  - <Receive Method>: <Fax: Line Shared>
  - <Fax Number>: Select <Equals> from the drop-down list and enter "1111111111."

  Example: Forwarding an I-fax to xxxxx@canon.com

  - <Receive Method:>: <I-Fax>
  - <To:>: Select <Equals> from the drop-down list and enter "xxxxx@canon.com".

NOTE

- You cannot change <Receive Method> after registering <Forwarding Settings>. To use forwarding settings with <Receive Method> changed, you have to register the forwarding settings again.

5 Press <Forwarding Destination> and specify the destination to forward to.

Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)

NOTE

- A destination in <Personal Addr. List> cannot be specified as the forwarding destination.
- When **<Acquire Address Book>(P. 1015)** is set to <On>, forwarding destinations can also be selected from a remote address book.
  About the Address Books of the Machine(P. 267)
- You can store received fax/I-fax files in the Confidential Fax Inbox by specifying it as a forwarding destination.
- If a Confidential Fax Inbox is selected as the forwarding destination, the following settings cannot be used.
  - File Name
  - Store/Print Received File
  - Forwarding Done Notice
  - File Format
- If you select a fax number as the forwarding destination, the subaddress and password registered in the Address Book are ignored.

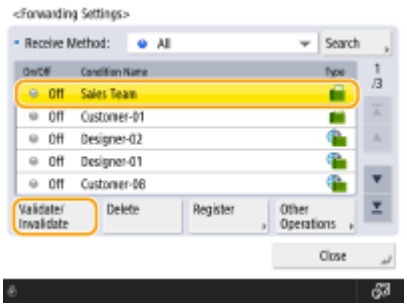
6 Press <Next> and specify the settings as needed.

- If you specify the Confidential Fax Inbox for forwarding or storing, you can only configure the <Specify Fwd. Time> setting.

7 Press <OK>.

- This completes the registration.

8 Select the registered forwarding settings and press <Validate/Invalidate> to switch the forwarding conditions to <On>.



IMPORTANT:

- When a forwarding destination is deleted from the address book, <Validate/Invalidate> automatically switches to <Off>. To resume forwarding with the same conditions, specify the destination again and switch the forwarding conditions to <On>.

NOTE

- You cannot specify a WebDAV server as an I-fax forwarding destination.
- If you specify a destination for which <Confirm Before Sending> is enabled as a forwarding destination, the screen to enter the password does not appear. The registered password is used and forwarding is performed. **Registering Destinations(P. 265)**
- Documents with forwarding errors are handled according to the **<Handle Files with Forwarding Errors>(P. 982)** settings.
- You can store up to 1,000 forwarding settings.

TIPS

- Selecting <Forward without Conditions> enables you to forward all received documents that do not meet the specified conditions to the desired destination.
- You can forward to multiple destinations by specifying a group destination in <Forwarding Destination>.
- You can specify the subject used when forwarding or storing a received document in <Subject>.
- <Specify Fwd. Time> enables you to specify the time and day to perform forwarding.
- If you set <Forwarding Done Notice>, you can send a notification that forwarding was performed. You can select <Notice Only for Errors>, so that you are not notified of a successful forwarding.
- If you set <Store/Print Received File> to <On>, you can store or print the received file by following the Memory Lock settings. The received file is stored if Memory Lock is <On> and it is printed if Memory Lock is <Off>.

Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents

ERJ8-072

You can check the statuses and communication logs for sent and received documents.

Checking the Statuses for Sent Documents(P. 394)
Checking the Statuses for Received Documents(P. 395)
Checking If Documents Are Sent or Received Successfully(P. 395)

NOTE

- When personal authentication management is used, you can restrict users from performing operations on the jobs of other users on the <Status Monitor> screen. **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**

Checking the Statuses for Sent Documents

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Send> ▶ <Job Status>.

- To display only fax documents, select <Fax> from the drop-down list in the upper-right of the screen.

3 Check the statuses.

- Selecting a document and pressing <Details> enables you to check detailed information such as the destinations and the number of pages.
- Selecting a document and pressing <Cancel> enables you to cancel sending. You cannot select multiple jobs and cancel them all at once. Select and cancel one job at a time.
- Pressing <Print List> prints a status list of sent documents displayed on the screen.

NOTE

- Pressing <Details> ▶ <Resend> enables you to resend the documents that failed to send. To specify another destination, press <Change Destination>. For documents with multiple destinations specified using the same sending method, press <Broadcast List>, select a destination, and then press <Resend> or <Change Destination>.
- You can resend documents when <Delete Failed TX Jobs> is set to <Off> (**<Delete Failed TX Jobs>(P. 948)**). Note that you cannot resend the documents sent with Direct Send/Manual Sending/PC fax.
- You can change the destinations of documents that are set to be sent at a specified time as well as documents that failed to send. Note that you cannot change the destinations for documents with multiple destinations specified that are being sent, or when entering a new destination is restricted (**Limiting Available Destinations(P. 675)**).
- The destination can be changed for a job that is canceled because of transmission errors, or a job that is waiting to be sent in the Delayed Send mode.

- You cannot change multiple destinations at one time. Also, you cannot change the destinations in a group at one time.

Checking the Statuses for Received Documents

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Receive> ▶ <Job Status>.

- To display only fax documents, select <Fax> from the drop-down list in the upper-right of the screen.

3 Check the statuses.

- Selecting a document and pressing <Details> enables you to check detailed information such as the sender's names and the number of pages.
- Selecting a document and pressing <Cancel> enables you to cancel receiving. You cannot select multiple jobs and cancel them all at once. Select and cancel one job at a time.
- If you press <Check I-Fax RX>, reception starts if an I-fax has been received by the POP server. You can display <Check I-Fax RX> by selecting <Forward> from the drop-down list on the top right of the screen.

NOTE

- To use <Check I-Fax RX>, set <POP> to <On> in <Communication Settings> to enable the machine to receive via POP. **Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**
- You can automatically receive I-faxes in the following cases: **Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**
  - <POP Interval> in <Communication Settings> is set to a value other than '0'.
  - I-faxes are received with SMTP without going via a server.

Checking If Documents Are Sent or Received Successfully

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Send> or <Receive> ▶ <Job Log>.

- To display only fax documents, select <Fax> from the error code list at the top right of the screen.

3 Check if documents are sent or received successfully.

- <OK> is displayed in the <Result> column when a document was sent or received successfully. If <NG> is displayed, this shows that a document failed to be sent or received because it was canceled or there was some error.
- You can check the error code by selecting a document and pressing <Details>. You can check the causes and solutions for errors based on error codes. **Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)**

- Pressing <Communic Mngt Rprt.> or <Fax Activity Report> prints a log list of sent and received documents displayed on the screen.
- Up to 100 send logs and up to 100 receive logs can be displayed.

TIPS

Registering an address from the send history

- You can register an address to the Address Book or a one-touch button via the send history on the <Status Monitor> screen. This saves you the effort of directly entering the fax number, and also helps avoid sending a fax to an incorrect number due to entering the wrong fax number.

Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)
Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button(P. 285)

LINKS

Sending at a Specified Time(P. 380)
Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send)(P. 368)
Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending)(P. 370)
Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax)(P. 397)
Printing a List of Usage History(P. 783)
Outputting a Communication Result Report(P. 785)

Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax)

ERJ8-073

You can send fax documents created on your computer directly from your computer, just like printing operations. This method eliminates the need to print documents for faxing, allowing you to save paper. To use this function, you need to install a fax driver in your computer (**Installing Drivers(P. 194)**).
If the machine is configured to allow IPP printing, it becomes possible to send a fax from an external network over the Internet. **Printing from an External Network (IPP Printing)(P. 423)**



Sending PC Faxes(P. 398)

■ Help for fax driver

Clicking [Help] (Windows) or (Mac OS) on the fax driver setting screen displays the Help screen. For information that is not in the User's Guide, including driver features and how to set up those features, see Help.

Sending PC Faxes

ERJ8-074

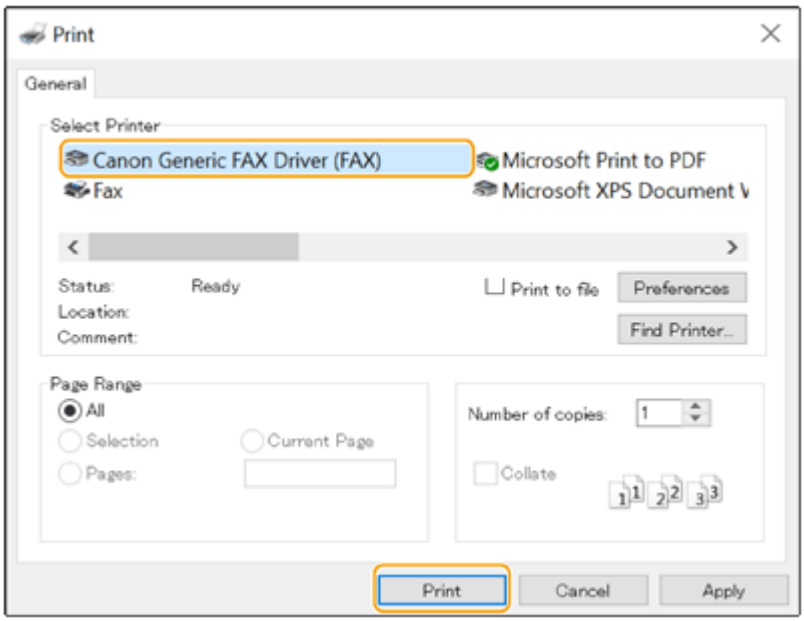
This section describes the basic flow of sending PC faxes from a computer.

For Windows(P. 398)
For Mac OS(P. 399)

Windows

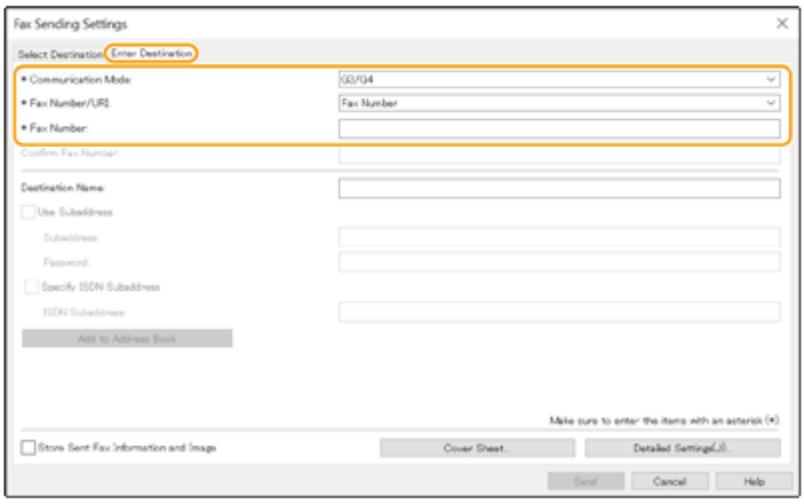
1 Open a document and display the print screen.

2 Select the machine and click [Print] or [OK].



3 Click the [Enter Destination] tab, and specify the communication mode and fax number you are using.

- [* Communication Mode]: Make sure that [G3] is selected.
- [* Fax Number/URI]: Make sure that [Fax Number] is selected.
- [* Fax Number]: Enter a fax number.
- If you need to specify a number to dial an outside line, click [Detailed Settings] ▶ [Add Outside Dialing Prefix to G3/IP Fax Number], and enter a fax number in the [G3] text box.



NOTE:

- If [Confirm Fax Number/URI when Setting Destination] is set in the [Security Settings] dialog box, enter the specified fax number in the [Confirm Fax Number]. For details, see Help for fax driver.

4 Click [Send].

➠ Sending starts.

- To cancel sending, double-click the printer icon displayed in the task tray of the desktop, select the file to cancel, and click [Document] ▶ [Cancel] ▶ [Yes]. If the icon is not displayed, you can cancel from the control panel of the machine. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**

NOTE

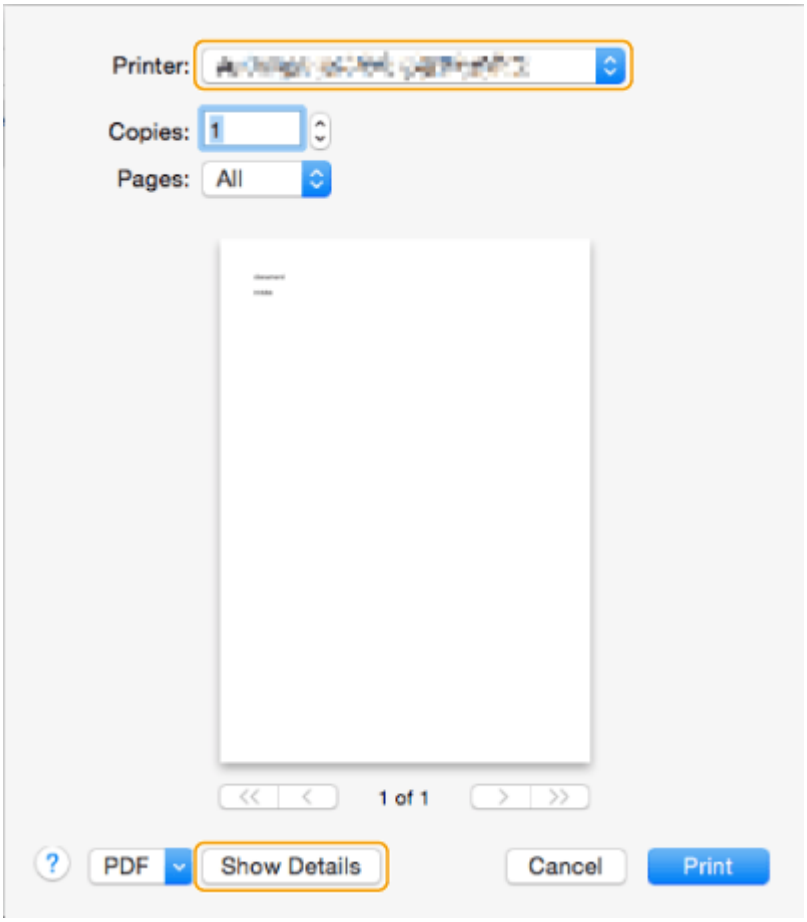
When the department ID and password or the user name and password input screen is displayed

- Enter the department ID and password or the user name and password.

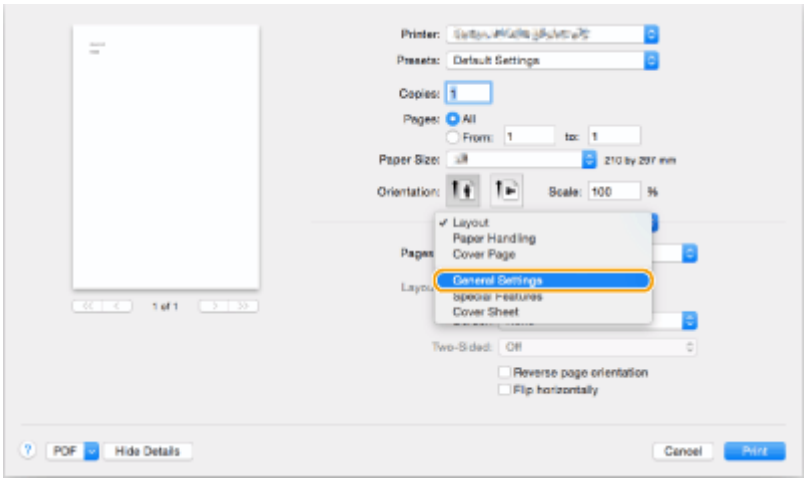
Mac OS

1 Open a document and display the print screen.

2 Select the machine and click [Show Details].



3 **Click [General Settings].**



4 **Click [Add Destination].**

5 **Enter the destination name in [Destination Name] and fax number in [Fax Number], and then click [Add] ▶ [Cancel].**

- If you need to specify a number to dial an outside line, click [Outside Dialing Prefix] ▶ [Settings] on the [Special Features] panel, and then enter the number.

6 **Click [Print].**

➠ Sending starts.

- To cancel sending, click the printer icon displayed in the Dock, select the file to cancel ▶ click [Delete] or ⊗. If the icon is not displayed, you can cancel from the control panel of the machine. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**

NOTE

When the department ID and password input screen is displayed

- Enter the department ID and password.

Using Internet Faxes (I-Fax)

ERJ8-075

Internet fax (I-fax) is a function to send and receive faxes via the Internet. Scanned documents are converted into TIFF format image and are sent as e-mail attachments. Even if you are sending to a distant place or you have lots of documents to send, you do not have to worry about transmission costs because telephone lines are not used. With this function, you can also send and receive I-faxes between devices in the same network using an office LAN.



Sending I-Faxes(P. 403)
Receiving I-Faxes(P. 411)

NOTE

- To send documents to an e-mail address used on a computer or mobile device, see **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)** .
- Standards for I-fax are defined by ITU-T (International Telecommunication Union - Telecommunication Standardization Sector). You can send and receive with other manufacturer's machines as long as that machine is ITU-T compliant. The machine is compliant with Recommendation T.37 (Procedures for the transfer of facsimile data via store-and-forward on the Internet).

Sending I-Faxes

ERJ8-076

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book

Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons

Entering Destinations Manually

Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server

NOTE:

- You can only change destinations from <Details> specified using the New Destination and destinations obtained via an LDAP server.
- If the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings, authentication between the server machine and the client machine is performed while the client machine is obtaining the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons. Authentication is performed by matching the System Manager ID and System Manager PIN set by the server machine and client machine. **Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)**
  The availability of the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons depends on the status of the System Manager information settings for the server machine and client machine, as shown below.

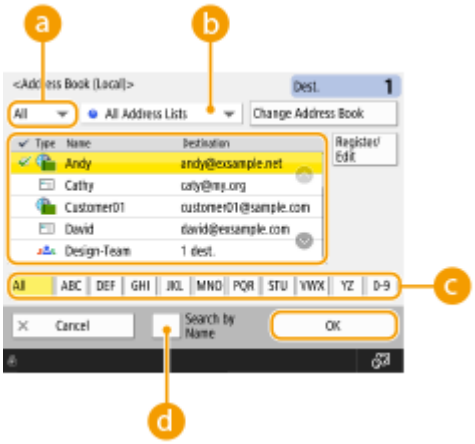
When the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings	When the client machine is performing the System Manager information settings	The System Manager ID and System PIN for the server machine and client machine match	Can use the Remote Address Book/One-Touch Button
Performing	Performing	Matches	Yes
		Does Not Match	No
	Not Performing	-	No
Not Performing	Performing	-	Yes
	Not Performing	-	Yes

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Select the destination and press <OK>.

- If an access number is set when the destination is registered, press <Access No.> and enter the access number using the numeric keys. The corresponding destination is displayed in the Address Book.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>. When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <Remote>.



a Destination type drop-down list

Pressing and displays I-fax and group destinations, respectively.

b Address list drop-down list

Enables you to display a specific group of destinations. When you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management, selecting <Personal Addr. List> displays your personal Address Book.

c Search buttons by first letter

Enables you to narrow down a search by the first letter of the destination name.

d <Search by Name>

Enables you to search the destination by the name you are entering.

NOTE

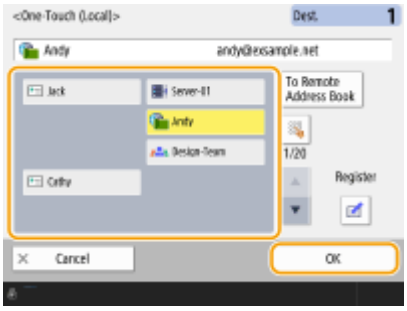
- To use the Remote Address Book, it is necessary to configure the server machine settings. Set to open the Remote Address Book externally on the server machine.

Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons

1 Press <One-Touch>.

2 Select the desired one-touch button and press <OK>.

- To specify the destination using a one-touch button number (one-touch number), press and enter the number for the desired one-touch button.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>.



NOTE

- The destinations registered in the one-touch buttons of the server machine are updated in the following times:
  - When a fax job has been sent on the client machine
  - When you press (Reset) on the client machine
  - When Auto Reset is activated on the client machine

Entering Destinations Manually

You can specify destinations manually that are not registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons.

1 Press <New Destination> ▶ <I-Fax>.

2 Select the transmission mode.

- If you want to set the machine so that you can check the sending result of a document on the <Status Monitor> screen, select <Full>. If not, select <Simple>. Note that the recipient also needs to support the transmission mode in order to check the sending result. Depending on the recipient's machine, sending an I-fax is not allowed unless you select <Simple>.



NOTE:

- If you send an I-fax to a destination that does not support the transmission mode, the <Status Monitor> screen displays <Awaiting result...> even if sending is complete. This message is displayed until the time set for <Full Mode TX Timeout> passes. **<Full Mode TX Timeout>(P. 962)**

3 Enter the I-fax destination.

- Press <I-Fax Address>, enter the destination, and then press <OK>. The destination needs to be specified in a format such as "adv01@example.com." To send to a device within the same network, enter the destination in a format such as "adv01@192.168.11.100 (recipient's name@IP address)."

4 Press <Destination Conditions>.

5 Specify the receiving conditions the recipient supports and press <OK>.

- Be sure to check the receiving functions the recipient supports before specifying the conditions.
- To add another I-fax address, press <Next Destination> and repeat steps 2 through 5.
- In <Compression Method>, the compression ratio of files increases in the order of MH→MR→MMR, and shortens transmission time.
- In <Divide Data>, select <On> to divide large amounts of document data for sending. If the recipient does not have the function to combine divided data, select <Off>. For the <Off> setting, a transmission error occurs when the size of send data exceeds a certain value. **<Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)**

IMPORTANT:

- Specifying the conditions the recipient does not support may cause a transmission error.

NOTE:

- You can press <Register to Address Book> to register the entered destination. Set the required conditions, and specify <Name> and the address list from the address list drop-down list. For information on the settings, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

6 Press <OK>.

NOTE

To send to a device within the same network

- When sending an I-fax to a device within the same network, you can send directly to the device without going through the mail server. Set <Send via Server> to <Off> before sending an I-fax.

Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server

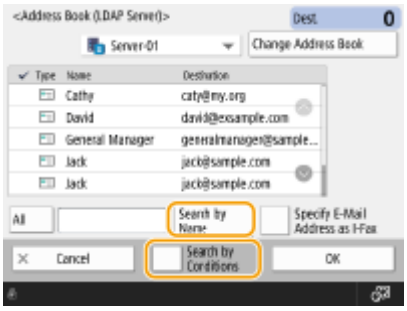
You can search and specify destinations registered in the LDAP server.

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Press <To LDAP Server>.

- When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <LDAP Server>.
- If the network password input screen is displayed, enter the user name and password and press <OK>.

3 When searching destinations in the LDAP server, press either <Search by Name> or <Search by Conditions>.



■When searching by name

Press <Search by Name> ▶ enter the text to search ▶ press <OK>.

NOTE:

- You can specify attributes used when performing "Search by Name" for a destination from the LDAP server. **<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>(P. 1013)**

■When searching by conditions

Press <Search by Conditions>, specify the search conditions on the screen, and press <Start Searching>.



a Search categories

Select a criterion to search for destinations from name, e-mail address, organization name, and organization unit (department name, etc).

b Search conditions

Select a search condition such as a destination name that contains "John" and a department name that begins with "Development."

c Search characters

Press <Set> and enter search characters for the search condition.

NOTE:

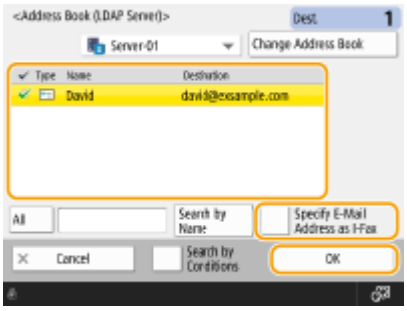
To search with multiple conditions

- You can search destinations with multiple conditions. Specify the first search condition, press <Add Search Condition>, and then select <or> or <and> for the next condition.

To change conditions and search again

- Press <Delete> to delete the specified contents, and specify the conditions again.

4 Select destination and press <Specify E-Mail Address as I-Fax> ▶ <OK>.



5 Check the displayed message and press <OK>.

6 Press <Details>.

7 Specify the receiving conditions the recipient supports and press <OK>.

- Press <Destination Conditions> and select the functions the recipient supports. Be sure to check the receiving functions the destination before specifying the conditions.
- In <Compression Method>, the compression ratio of files increases in the order of MH → MR → MMR, so shortens transmission time.
- In <Divide Data>, select <On> to divide large amounts of document data for sending. If the recipient does not have the function to combine divided data, select <Off>. For the <Off> setting, a transmission error occurs when the size of send data exceeds a certain value. **<Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)**

IMPORTANT:

- Specifying the conditions the recipient does not support may cause a transmission error.

8 Press <OK>.

4 Press <Options> and specify the scan settings as necessary.

- See the following for details.

Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)
Scanning Clearly(P. 477)
Scanning Efficiently(P. 483)
Useful Scanning Functions(P. 488)

5 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending starts.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). When scanning all of the originals is complete, press <Start Sending> to send the I-fax.

- To cancel sending, press <To Status Mntr.> ▶ select a document ▶ <Cancel> ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

To check the total number of specified destinations

- The total number of specified destinations is displayed on the top right of the screen. This enables you to confirm that the number of destinations is correct before sending.



To send with the sender information

- You can send with the sender's name and I-fax address. **<TX Terminal ID>(P. 947)**

To check the statuses for sent documents

- On the <Status Monitor> screen, you can check the statuses for sent documents. This screen enables you to send faxes again or cancel sending after checking the statuses. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**
- When <Display Notification When Job Is Accepted> is set to <On>, the <Status Monitor> screen can be displayed from the following screen that is shown after a send job is received. **<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>(P. 954)**



To print the report for the results of sending

- On the Scan Basic Features screen, pressing <Options> ▶ <TX Result Report> enables you to set to automatically print the report listing the results of sending. **Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)**
- To set this for each job from <Options>, it is necessary to select <For Error Only> or <Off> in **<TX Result Report>(P. 946)** , and then set <Allow Printing from Options> to <On>.

To send files securely

- Using TLS communication enables you to send an encrypted file. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

When photos in the sent image are too dark or light colors in the background of color originals cannot be removed

- The quality of the sent image may be able to be improved if the following conditions/settings are met.
  - Job type: Fax (Memory Sending) or Scan and Send (Fax/I-fax)
  - <Select Color>: <Black & White> (Scan and Send)
  - <Original Type>: <Text>
  - <Density> ▶ <Background Density>: <Auto>
  - <Resolution>: 200 dpi x 400 dpi, 300 dpi x 300 dpi*, 400 dpi x 400 dpi, or 600 dpi x 600 dpi*

*Can be set for Scan and Send

- <Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan> ▶ Fax/I-Fax Send Jobs: <Quality Priority> (**<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan>(P. 912)**)

TIPS

Checking scanned images before sending

- You can check scanned images on the preview screen before sending. **Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview)(P. 492)**

Registering frequently used settings

- You can combine frequently used destinations and scan settings into a button of the machine for later use. By pressing the registered button when scanning originals, you can quickly complete your settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

LINKS

Registering Destinations(P. 265)
Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)
<Set Destination>(P. 1008)

Receiving I-Faxes

ERJ8-077

■When an I-fax is received

The Processing/Data indicator on the control panel blinks green. When receiving is complete, the document is automatically printed and the indicator turns off.

NOTE

- To cancel receiving, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Receive> ▶ <Job Status> ▶ select a document ▶ <Cancel>.
- You can specify the time before reception is canceled when receiving a divided I-fax and the subsequent data cannot be received. Data received by the specified time is printed. **<Divided Data RX Timeout>(P. 988)**

NOTE

To receive I-faxes manually

- Press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Receive> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ <Check I-Fax RX>. Pressing <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>(**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) ▶ <Memory RX Inbox> ▶ <Divided Data RX Inbox> enables you to check the receiving statuses of I-faxes divided and their data size.

TIPS

- You can save paper when printing.
  <Print on Both Sides>(P. 980)
  <Reduce Fax RX Size>(P. 980)
- You can include information, such as reception time, in received documents when printing. **<Print RX Page Footer>(P. 981)**

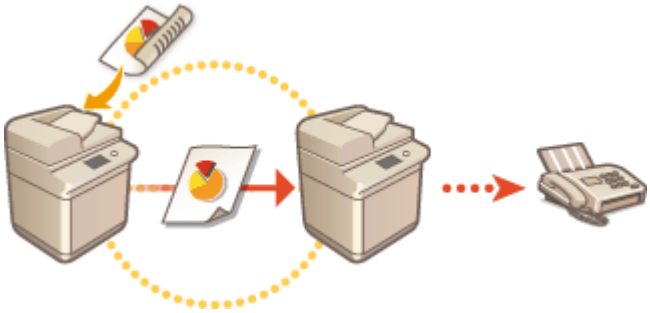
LINKS

Various Receiving Methods(P. 385)
Forwarding Received Documents Automatically(P. 391)
Checking Status and Log for Sent and Received Documents(P. 394)

Sending and Receiving Faxes via the Machine (Remote Fax)

ERJ8-078

By specifying this machine as a relay, you can send and receive faxes from another multifunction printer on the same network, even if it does not have fax functionality. This is called the Remote Fax function. When using this function, the machine with fax functionality (this machine) and the machine without fax functionality can be likened to a server machine and client machine, respectively. Sharing fax functionality and communication lines reduces introduction costs and offers an efficient use of fax functions.



Before Using a Remote Fax

You must specify settings in advance to use this machine as a server machine. **<Send>(P. 942)** ▶ <Remote Fax Settings>

Sending a Fax

When sending a fax, you only need to operate the client machine. There is no need to operate the server machine (this machine).

Receiving a Fax

When sending a fax, you only need to operate the client machine. There is no need to operate the server machine (this machine). **<Forwarding Settings>(P. 982)**

NOTE

- The sender information of a fax sent from the client machine is printed according to the setting in the server machine. **<TX Terminal ID>(P. 947)**

LINKS

Receiving I-Faxes(P. 411)

Printing

Printing 414
Printing From a Computer 416
Canceling Printing 419
Checking the Printing Status and History 421
Printing from an External Network (IPP Printing) 423
Advanced Functions for Printing 425
Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine 426
Printing Held Documents Automatically When Logging In 428
Print Screen 429
Printing at a Specified Time (Scheduled Printing) 432
Various Printing Methods 434
Directly Printing Files without Opening Them 435
Printing Using a Virtual Printer 437
Printing From Memory Media (Media Print) 440
Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print) 441
Configuring the Universal Print User Settings 446
Printing Registered Documents (Print Template) 448

Printing

ERJ8-079

You can print documents and images prepared on a computer. This section introduces basic procedures and convenient printing functions.

■Introduction of basic operations

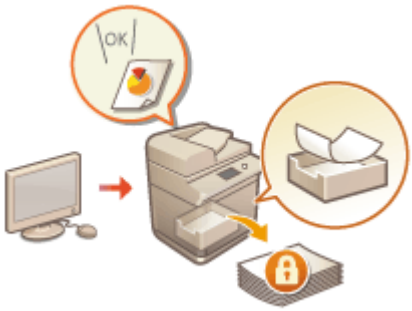
This section describes the basic operation methods when printing from a computer.



Printing From a Computer(P. 416)
Canceling Printing(P. 419)
Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)
Printing from an External Network (IPP Printing)(P. 423)

■Advanced functions for printing

This section introduces functions used when you want to print a sample set or edit the document before printing large quantities, avoid to leave or to be copied printed paper, etc.



Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)
Printing at a Specified Time (Scheduled Printing)(P. 432)

■Printing in various environments

This section introduces printing methods for printing without the printer driver of the machine such as printing without your computer during a business trip, etc.



Directly Printing Files without Opening Them(P. 435)
Printing Using a Virtual Printer(P. 437)
Printing From Memory Media (Media Print)(P. 440)
Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print) (P. 441)

TIPS

- You can print photographs, PDF files, etc. from a mobile device such as a smart phone, tablet, etc. For more information, see **Linking with Mobile Devices(P. 554)** .

Printing From a Computer

ERJ8-07A

This section describes basic printing from a computer with the printer driver installed.

Help for Printer Drivers(P. 416)
Basic Printing Operations(P. 416)

Help for Printer Drivers

Clicking [Help] (Windows) or (Mac OS) on the printer driver setting screen displays the Help screen. For information that is not in the User's Guide, including about driver features and how to set up those features, see Help.

Basic Printing Operations

This section describes the basic flow when printing from a computer.

In case of Windows(P. 416)
In case of Mac OS(P. 417)

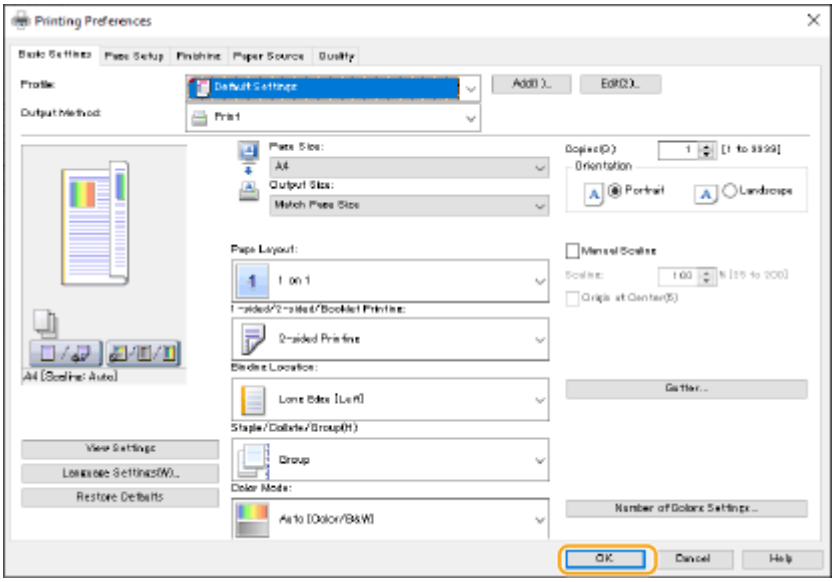
Windows

1 Open a document and display the print screen.

2 Select the machine and click [Preferences] or [Properties].

3 Specify the print settings as necessary and click [OK].

- Switch tabs as necessary to specify the desired print settings.



4 Click [Print] or [OK].

➡ Printing starts.

- If you want to cancel, see **Canceling Printing(P. 419)** .

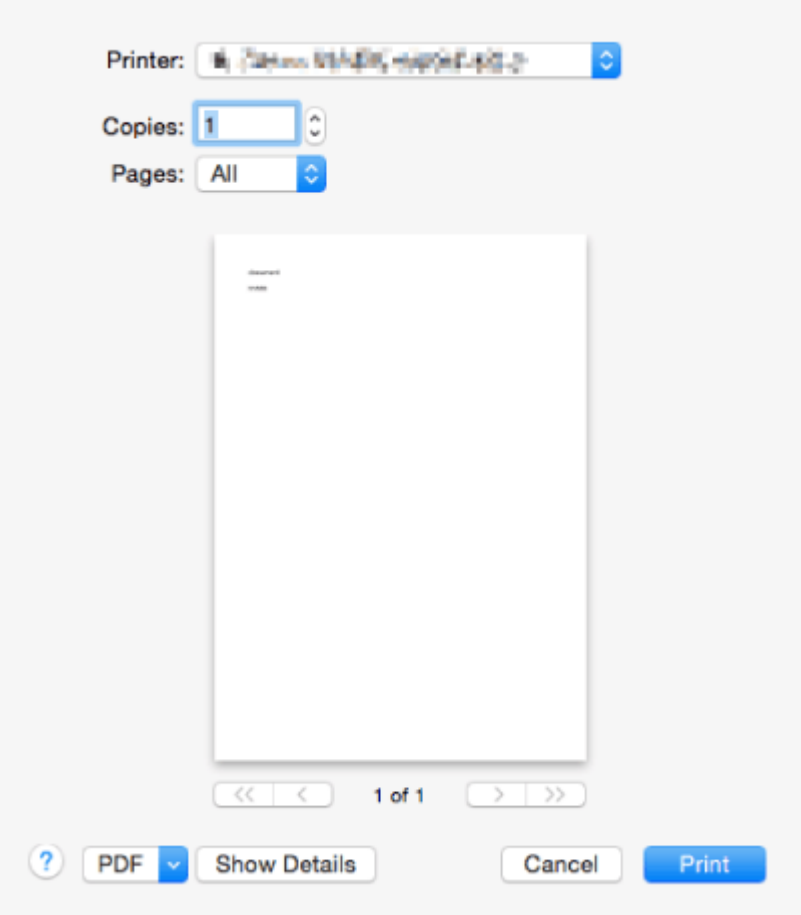
Mac OS

1 Open a document and display the print screen.

2 Select the machine.

3 Specify the print settings as necessary.

- After selecting the setting panel from the drop-down list, set for printing on each panel.



4 Click [Print].

➡ Printing starts.

- If you want to cancel, see **Canceling Printing(P. 419)** .

LINKS

Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)
<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>(P. 925)

Canceling Printing

ERJ8-07C

You can cancel printing before it has finished. You can also cancel a print job on the control panel of the machine. **Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)**

In case of Windows(P. 419)
In case of Mac OS(P. 420)

Windows

1 If the printing screen is displayed, click [Cancel].



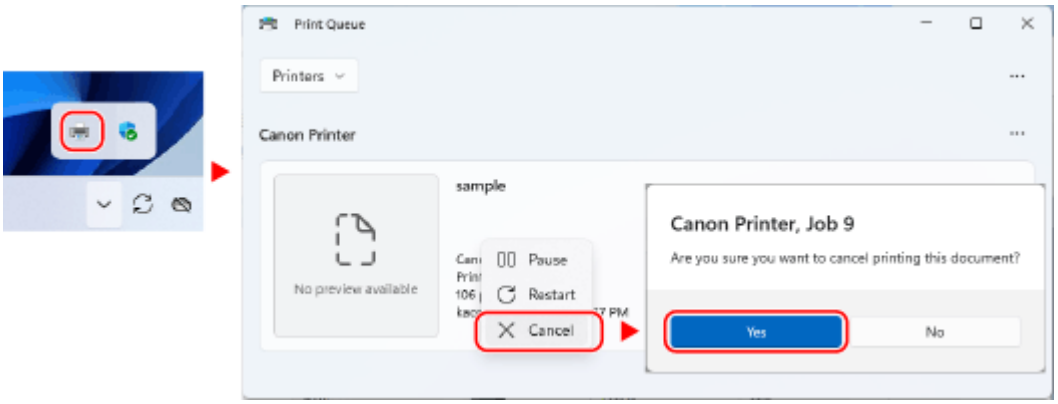
NOTE

When the printer icon is not displayed

- Open the printer folder, and click or double-click the icon for the machine.

2 If the screen of step 1 is not displayed, double-click the printer icon in the Windows notification area, select the document to cancel, and right-click ▶ [Cancel] ▶ [Yes].

- If the printer icon is not displayed in the Windows notification area or the document to be canceled is not displayed, the print data is sent to the machine after being processed on the computer.
  In this case, cancel printing using the control panel of the machine or Remote UI. **Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)**



3 Click [Yes].

➠ Printing is canceled.

Mac OS

1 **Click the printer icon displayed on the Dock.**



2 **Select the document to cancel and click .**

➠ Printing is canceled.

Checking the Printing Status and History

ERJ8-07E

You can check the wait status for print jobs and whether or not an error has occurred during printing. Operations such as printing the document ahead of other documents and temporarily suspending or canceling printing are possible as well.

NOTE

- When personal authentication management is used, you can restrict users from performing operations on the jobs of other users on the <Status Monitor> screen. **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Status>.

- To display only the documents to be printed, select <Print> from the drop-down list in the upper-right of the screen.

3 Check the status.

- Pressing <Details> after selecting a document, enables you to cancel printing, to check the status of the job, etc.
- Pressing <Cancel> after selecting a document, enables you to cancel printing.
- When pressing <Interrupt/Priority Print> after selecting a document, <Interrupt and Print> and <Priority Print> appear. Press <Interrupt and Print> to suspend a print job in process and immediately start printing the document selected. Press <Priority Print> to jump the selected document to the top of the waiting list, and print it after printing the print job in progress.

NOTE

- To ignore an error and continue printing, press <Details> ▶ select a document ▶ <Skip Error>.
- To forcibly print any unprinted job in the machine, press <Details> ▶ select a document ▶ <Paper Feed>.
- You cannot interrupt an interrupt print job with another job. If you try to interrupt an interrupt print job, the job is started after the current interrupt job is complete.

■ Checking the printing history

Press <Job Log> to display a list of printed documents. If a document is printed without problems, the <Result> column displays <OK>. If <NG> is displayed, it shows that printing was canceled or an error occurred.

NOTE

- To see the detailed information, press <Details> after selecting a document.
- To print a history list, press <Print List>.
- Up to 100 print logs can be displayed.

LINKS

Canceling Printing(P. 419)

Printing from an External Network (IPP Printing)

ERJ8-07F

Using the IPP port enables you to print from an external network via the Internet. To use IPP printing, you must specify the IPP port in the printer driver. To use IPPS also, you must install this machine's key and certificate on your computer. **Installing This Machine's Key and Certificate on Your Computer(P. 424)**

IMPORTANT

- To use IPP printing, you must specify the <IPP Print Settings>. **<IPP Print Settings>(P. 840)**
- To perform the following procedure, you need to log in to your computer with the administrator account.

1 Prepare the printer driver.

- If the machine is supplied with a CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM into the drive on the computer.
- To download the printer driver, go to the Canon website (https://global.canon/en/support/) and download your printer driver.

2 Click [ ] (Start) ▶ [ ] (Settings) ▶ [Bluetooth & devices] ▶ [Printers & scanners].

3 Click [Add device] for [Add a printer or scanner].

4 Click [Add manually] for [The printer that I want isn't listed].

5 Select [Select a shared printer by name], enter the connection destination and click [Next].

- To use IPP, enter "http://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination.
- To use IPPS, enter "https://<IP address of the machine>/ipp" for the connection destination.

6 Click [Have Disk...].

7 Click [Browse...].

8 Specify the folder containing the printer driver, select the INF file and click [Open].

- The INF file is stored in the [Driver] folder.

9 Proceed with the settings by following the on-screen instructions.

➡ The printer driver is installed. To use IPPS, install this machine's key and certificate on your computer.

■Installing This Machine's Key and Certificate on Your Computer

This description shows the procedure for installing the key and certificate using the Microsoft Edge.

1 Start the Web browser.

2 Enter "https://<IP address of the machine>/" in the address input field and press the [ENTER] key on the computer keyboard.

3 Click [Not Secure] ▶ [Your connection to this site isn't secure] ▶ [ ] (Show certificate) in the URL input field.

4 Click [Export] on the [Details] tab.

5 Select the necessary file type and save the certificate file to the computer.

- Select Base64 or DER for the file type (certificate format).

6 Close the [Certificate Viewer] screen and the web browser.

7 Install the certificate saved in step 5 on your computer.

1. Double-click the saved certificate.
2. On the [General] tab, click [Install Certificate...].
3. Select a save location and click [Next].
4. Select [Place all certificates in the following store] then [Browse...] ▶ [Trusted Root Certification Authorities], and then click [OK].
5. Click [Next] ▶ [Finish].

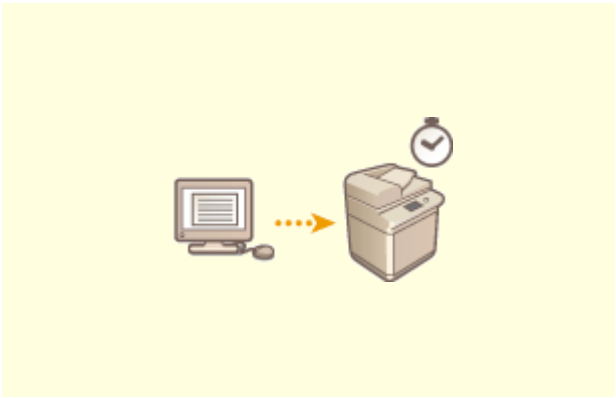
Advanced Functions for Printing

ERJ8-07H

This section introduces printing functions such as running a print job efficiently, or improving the security on printing.



Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)



Printing at a Specified Time (Scheduled Printing)(P. 432)

Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine

ERJ8-07J



To avoid leaving printed material or accidental information leakage, etc., the machine may be configured so that it will not print data soon after it receives the data from a computer. **Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings(P. 679)**
In that case, you need to operate the machine to print the held data. When you print the document data, you can check the content of the document or change the print settings.

IMPORTANT

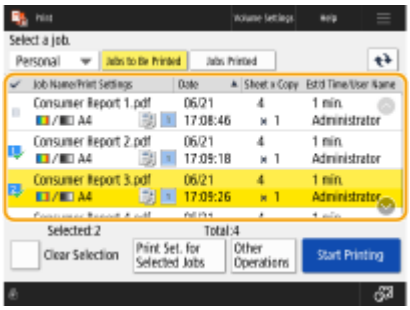
- When a certain length of time elapses before the held data is printed, the data is deleted automatically and cannot be printed.

NOTE

- The documents retained in the machine are saved even if the machine is turned OFF.
- You can change the length of time for retaining the held data. **<Job Storage Period>(P. 1003)**

1 Press <Print>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Select the document to print.



NOTE:

- You can select and print up to 100 documents at the same time.
  When multiple documents are selected, the documents are printed in the order in which the documents are selected (in the order of the checked mark numbers).
- On the print screen you can check the content of the document or change the print settings.
  Print Screen(P. 429)

3 Press <Start Printing>.

➡ Printing starts.

NOTE:

- When you want to cancel printing, operate the control panel to cancel printing. **Canceling Send/Print Jobs(P. 258)**
- From , you can check the printing status or history. **Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)**

TIPS

Printing automatically when logging in

- If the auto print function is enabled, you can set the machine to print your own held documents automatically when you log in to the machine. **Printing Held Documents Automatically When Logging In(P. 428)**

Printing from mobile devices

- You can print the documents held in the machine by using the release and print function of the dedicated Canon application Canon PRINT.
  For details of Canon PRINT, see the following.
  Canon PRINT(P. 559)

Printing Held Documents Automatically When Logging In

ERJ8-07K

If the auto print function is enabled, you can set the machine to print your own held documents automatically when you log in to the machine.

NOTE

- The auto print function is available by enabling <Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In>. **<Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In>(P. 1006)**
- The auto print function is set for each login user.

1 **Log in to the machine. Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**

2 **Press <Personal Settings>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In>.**

➡ The <Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In> screen is displayed.

4 **Press <On> ▶ <OK>.**

5 **Press <Close>.**

IMPORTANT:

- The auto print function will be enabled the next time you log in.

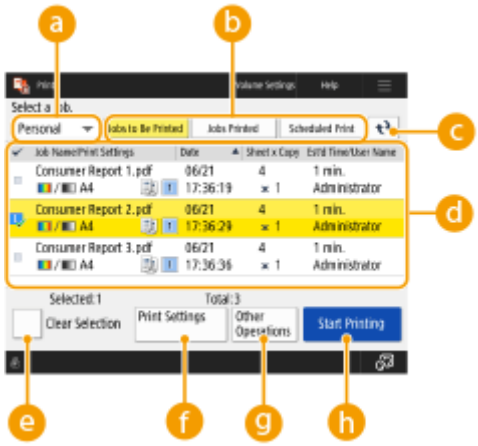
NOTE

- When a user logs in, only the documents belonging to the login user are printed automatically. The following documents that need a PIN or a password when printing are not printed automatically.
  - Secured print documents
    When <Require PIN for Printing/Displaying User Jobs> is set to <On> under <PIN Settings for Secure Print Jobs> **<PIN Settings for Secure Print Jobs>(P. 1006)**
  - Encrypted secured print documents
  - Encrypted PDF
- When multiple documents are held for a single user, the documents are printed in the displayed order on the print screen. **Print Screen(P. 429)**
- Up to 100 documents are printed at a single occasion of a user login.

Print Screen

ERJ8-07L

When you press <Print> on the <Home> screen of the control panel, the print screen is displayed.
On this screen, you can print held documents, secured print documents, or encrypted secured print documents. You can check the content of these documents or scheduled print documents or change the print settings.



a <Personal>/<Shared>/<Group>

Select the type of the documents displayed on the list from the drop-down menu.

- <Personal>: Displays the documents of a log in user
- <Shared>: Displays the documents that are held under specific conditions
  *The documents under <Shared> are displayed for every user and can be printed by every user.
- <Group>: Displays the documents under the same department ID as that of a login user.

b <Jobs to Be Printed>/<Jobs Printed>/<Scheduled Print>

The list of documents is changed according to the print status.

c

Refreshes the list of documents.

d List of documents

The following documents are displayed in the list.

- Held
- Secured printed
- Encrypted secured printed
- Scheduled printed

  When you select a document, a check mark and a number is added. When multiple documents are selected and printed, the documents are printed in the order of the added numbers.

NOTE:

- Up to 100 documents can be selected at the same time.

- By pressing <Date/Time>, the documents are listed according to the date and time of the documents. If you set this setting while you are logged in to the machine, this setting is retained the next time you log in to the machine.
- Following icons are displayed depending on documents:
  : Secured print documents / encrypted secured print documents
  : Held documents that violate the warning conditions

<Select All (Max 100 jobs)> / <Clear Selection>

- If you press <Select All (Max 100 jobs)> when no document is selected, all documents in the list are selected.
- If you press <Clear Selection> when documents are selected, the entire selection is canceled.

<Print Settings>/<Print Set. for Selected Jobs>

You can check and change the print settings of selected documents.

NOTE:

- You can select multiple documents and change the print settings at once. However, if the following documents are selected at the same time, you cannot change the print settings at once.
  - Held documents
  - Secured print documents
  - Encrypted secured print documents

<Other Operations>

- <Display Image>
  You can display the preview images of selected documents and check the content of the documents. You can also delete a page or print the documents while displaying the preview image.
- <Delete Job>
  Deletes selected documents.
- <Cancel Printing>
  Cancels printing selected documents.

<Start Printing>

Starts printing selected documents.

NOTE:

- If you start printing held documents that violate the warding conditions, a warning screen is displayed. **<Held Jobs Warning Settings>(P. 1005)**

Changing print settings/displaying a preview screen

Depending on the type of the printer driver used for printing or on the file format of direct printing, print settings may not be changed or a preview screen may not be displayed.

✓: Possible -: Impossible

Operations	Printer driver types				Direct printing file format				
	UFR II	PS *4	XPS	PCL *5	PDF	JPEG	TIFF	EPS	PS
<Print Settings>	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
<No. of Copies>	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
<Print Range>*1	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	-	-	✓	✓
<Select Color>*2	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
<2-Sided Printing>	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
<Select Paper>*1*3	✓	-	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-	-
<N on 1>	✓	-	-	✓	✓	-	-	-	-
<Toner Save>*1	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓
<Display Image>	✓	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	-	-
<Delete Page>	✓	-	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-

*1 You cannot change the print settings when multiple documents are selected.

*2 When multiple documents are selected or the file format is PDF, EPS, or PS, the color can only be changed to <Black & White>.

*3 You cannot change the paper source if different sizes of paper are specified in the print job.

*4 Settings can only be changed for jobs from the Canon PS3 printer driver, excluding PPD.

*5 <Print Settings> or <Display Image> can be displayed only for PCL XL.

NOTE

When <Some jobs could not be stored after being received.> or <Some jobs have been deleted.> is displayed

- These messages may be displayed if an error occurs when receiving a document or a document is automatically deleted because its retention period has elapsed, etc. In this case, press to cancel the message.

Restrictions when printing from mobile devices

- When you print the documents held in the machine by Canon PRINT using the release and print function, you cannot change the print settings of multiple jobs at once and you cannot delete a page on the preview image screen.

Printing at a Specified Time (Scheduled Printing)

ERJ8-07R



You can set a time to start printing, which is useful when printing large amounts of documents at night, etc.

Sending Scheduled Print Documents from a Computer (Windows)(P. 432)
Checking the Scheduled Print Jobs(P. 433)

IMPORTANT

- To use the scheduled print function, it is necessary to set **<Forced Hold>(P. 1003)** to <Off> in advance.
- To use the scheduled print function, it is necessary to set **<Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM>(P. 1043)** to <Off> in advance.
- The scheduled print jobs are deleted when **<Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM>(P. 1043)** is set to <On>.

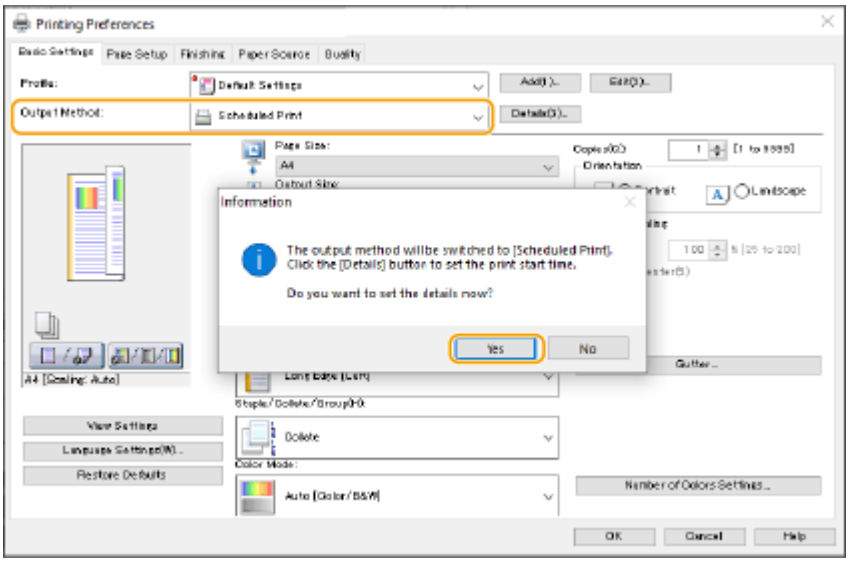
Sending Scheduled Print Documents from a Computer Windows

1 Open the document and display the print screen.

- For information on displaying the print screen, see the help for the application.

2 Select the machine, and click [More settings] or [Properties].

3 Select [Scheduled Print] from [Output Method] and click [Yes].



4 **Specify [Print Start Time] and click [OK].**

5 **Configure the print settings as necessary, and click [OK].**

6 **Click [Print] or [OK].**

➡ The document is sent to the machine.

NOTE

- The scheduled print jobs are executed according to the time set in the machine. Confirm that the time set in the machine matches that of your computer in advance.
- If a print job is scheduled at a time longer than 24 hours in advance, the job is canceled.
- A print start time between 0:00 and 23:59 is specified on the printer driver screen, but the time is processed in the format year, month, day, hour, minute, and second (with the second fixed to 0).

Checking the Scheduled Print Jobs

1 **Press <Print>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

2 **Press <Scheduled Print>, and check the print jobs waiting to be output.**

- The scheduled print date and time can be checked in <Scheduled>.
- To delete a print job, select the document, and press <Delete Job>.
- Scheduled print jobs are deleted after they are executed. They are also not displayed in <Jobs Printed>.

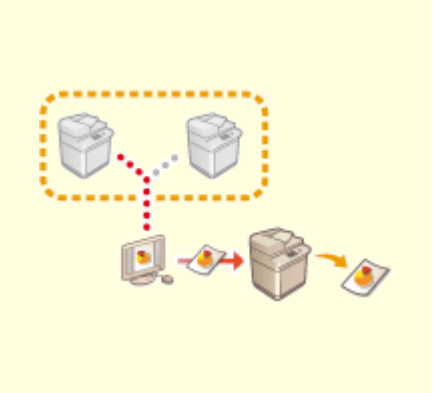
Various Printing Methods

ERJ8-07S

This section introduces printing method using the Remote UI, or how to print a file stored in memory media.



Directly Printing Files without Opening Them(P. 435)



Printing Using a Virtual Printer(P. 437)



Printing From Memory Media (Media Print)(P. 440)



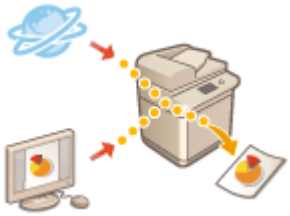
Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print) (P. 441)



Printing Registered Documents (Print Template)(P. 448)

Directly Printing Files without Opening Them

ERJ8-07U

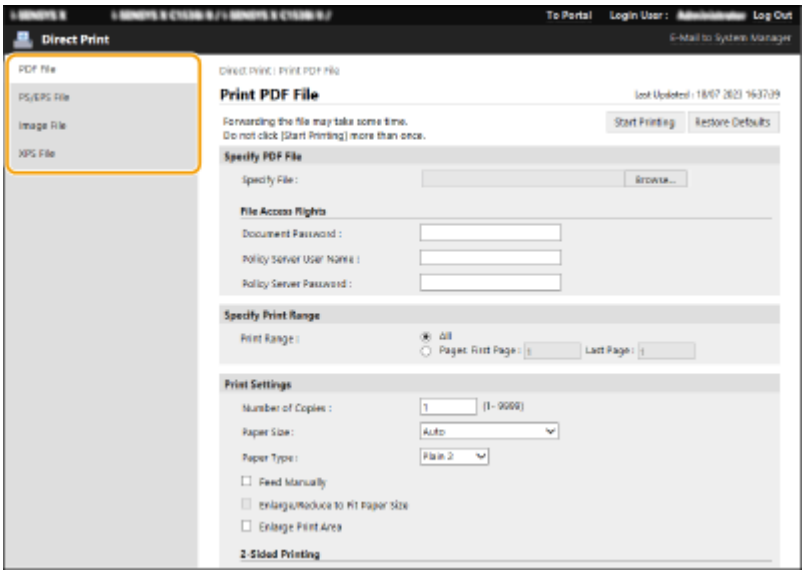


By using remote UI, it is possible to print files saved on a computer or network directly from the machine without using the printer driver. You do not need to open files on the computer for printing.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Direct Print] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Select a file format and then a file.



NOTE:

- In [Image File], you can print JPEG or TIFF files.

4 Specify the print settings as necessary.

- If a password is set for the PDF file, press [Specify PDF File] ▶ enter the password in [Document Password].
- To print the PDF file which is prohibited for printing, or to print PDF files that only allow low-resolution printing in high resolution, enter the master password.
- Depending on the selected paper size, PDF/XPS files may be canceled on printing.

5 Click [Start Printing].

➠ Printing starts.

IMPORTANT

- Do not click [Start Printing] repeatedly during file transfer. Otherwise, file malfunction may occur and the file may not be transferred.
- Printing may not be performed properly depending on the data.

NOTE

- If printing with Direct Print is not possible or the printing position deviates, opening files from the application and using the printer driver may enable proper printing.

Printing Using a Virtual Printer

ERJ8-07W



A virtual printer enables you to use LPD printing or FTP printing with the print settings registered as a virtual printer in advance. For example, registering settings such as the paper type, number of copies, and two-sided printing in advance eliminates the need to specify these settings for each job.

Adding a Virtual Printer(P. 437)
Printing with a Virtual Printer(P. 438)

IMPORTANT

- Set **<Forced Hold>(P. 1003)** to <Off>. If <Forced Hold> is set when a job is executed, the results may differ depending on the settings. **Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings(P. 679)**
  - If the job matches the set conditions for <Job Action> and <Cancel>: The job is canceled.
  - If the job matches the set conditions for <Job Action> and <Print>: The job is printed according to the virtual printer.
  - If the job matches the set conditions for <Job Action> and <Hold as Shared Job>: The virtual printer is disabled and the job is held in the machine.
- For Secure Print and Encrypted Secure Print, the virtual printer is disabled and the job is held in the machine.

NOTE

- Set **<LPD Print Settings>(P. 837)** to <On> to perform LPD printing.
- Set **<FTP Print Settings>(P. 839)** to <On> to perform FTP printing.
- The page description language and file format that can be used with a virtual printer is PS and PDF.

Adding a Virtual Printer

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

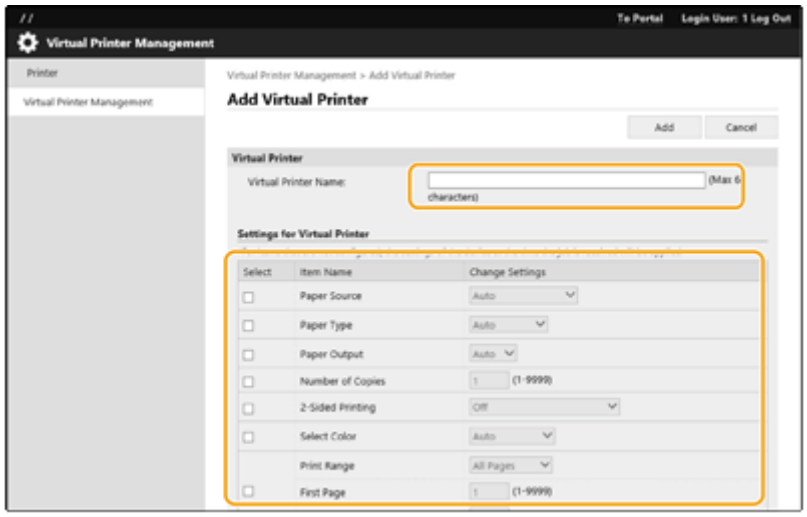
3 **Click [Printer] ▸ [Virtual Printer Management].**

4 **Click [Add Virtual Printer].**

NOTE

- Operations cannot be performed from multiple browsers at the same time.

5 Enter the virtual printer name and specify the required settings.



NOTE

- Multiple virtual printers with the same name cannot be registered.
- A maximum of 20 virtual printers can be registered.

6 Click [Add].

NOTE

- You are required to log in to the Remote UI with any of the following privileges to perform this setting. For more information, see the items in [Select Role to Set:] in **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)** .
  - Administrator
  - DeviceAdmin
  - NetworkAdmin
- This setting can be imported/exported with models that support batch importing of this setting. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- This setting is included in [Settings/Registration Basic Information] when batch exporting. **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**

Printing with a Virtual Printer

For LPD printing

- LPR -S [IP address of the machine] -P [virtual printer name] [file name]
  Example: Printing "sample.pdf" with a virtual printer named "001"
  lpr -S IP address of the machine -P 001 sample.pdf

For FTP printing

- put [file name] [virtual printer name]

  Example: Printing "sample.pdf" with a virtual printer named "001"

  > put sample.pdf 001

Printing From Memory Media (Media Print)

ERJ8-07X



It is possible to print files saved on memory media directly from the machine without using a computer. This is convenient when printing after bringing data back from an outside location or when printing data you have brought with you to a business destination.

NOTE

Using memory media

- For available memory media and information on inserting/removing memory media, see **Connecting a USB Memory Device(P. 22)** .
- For instructions on using memory media, see **Working with Data in Memory Media(P. 535)** .
- Depending on the file format, an optional product may be required. **System Options(P. 1271)**

Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print)

ERJ8-07Y



Universal Print is a Microsoft service that enables you to print documents via the cloud. There is no need to install a printer driver to print documents from your computer. You can also print documents from a remote location as long as your computer is connected to the Internet.

Conditions of Use

To use Universal Print, you must first register as a Microsoft 365 service user and use the Microsoft Entra ID Service.

NOTE

- You cannot use Universal Print for communication using a sub line.

Required Settings

Administrator settings

Use the Remote UI to register this machine in Microsoft Entra ID. **Registering This Machine in Microsoft Entra ID(P. 442)**

User settings

Configure your computer so that Universal Print can be used. **Configuring a Printer Registered in Microsoft Entra ID on the Computer(P. 444)**

NOTE

When a proxy server is used

- To use Universal Print via a proxy server, you must also configure the proxy settings on your computer.

Associating Users and Universal Print Jobs

You can associate Universal Print jobs with users authenticated through User Authentication. You can still use Universal Print without configuring these settings. **Configuring the Universal Print User Settings(P. 446)**

Printing with Universal Print

See the Microsoft website for information on printing with Universal Print.

IMPORTANT

- In some operating systems, print errors or problems with the print results may occur. See Universal Print Troubleshooting on the Microsoft website for information on the compatibility of your operating system.

NOTE

- If Forced Hold printing is enabled, Universal Print jobs will run as specified in the <Forced Hold> settings. **<Forced Hold>(P. 1003)**

Registering This Machine in Microsoft Entra ID

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Network Settings] [Settings for Universal Print].

4 Click [Edit...] for [Basic Settings].

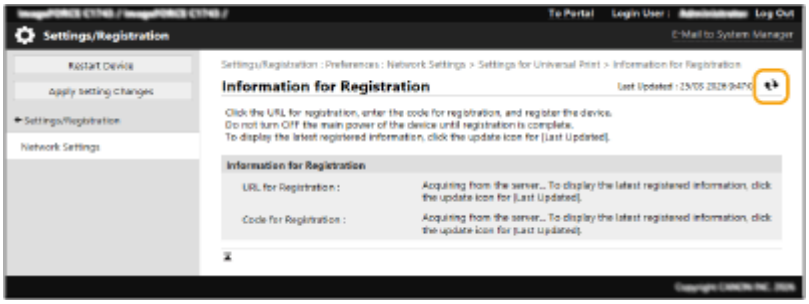
5 Select the [Use Universal Print] checkbox and enter the printer name in the [Printer Name] field.

- To verify the server certificate sent from the server, select the [Verify Server Certificate] checkbox.
- To add CN (Common Name) to the items to be verified, select the [Add CN to Verification Items] checkbox.
- Normally, you do not need to change [Application ID], [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL], or [Microsoft Entra ID Registration URL]. You need to change the settings only when using a specific cloud environment.
- To return [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL], [Microsoft Entra ID Registration URL], and/or [Application ID] to the initial settings, click [Initial Settings] for the setting(s), or enter the following initial settings manually:
  - [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL]: https://login.microsoftonline.com/organizations/oauth2/v2.0
  - [Microsoft Entra ID Registration URL]: https://register.print.microsoft.com/api/v1.0/register
  - [Application ID]: f9fc375c-c7ba-4e5c-b213-23affd792cc1

6 Click [OK].

7 Click [Register...] in [Registration Status].

8 Wait a few seconds, and then click [ ].



9 **Click the URL link displayed for [URL for Registration].**

10 **Follow the instructions on the screen to register the machine.**

11 **Wait a few minutes, and then click [ ] in the Remote UI screen.**

➠ Once registration is completed, [Registered] appears in [Registration Status].

12 **View the Universal Print management screen of Microsoft Entra ID in your web browser.**

13 **Select the registered machine and click [Share Printer].**

- To change the name displayed on the computer, enter the new name in [Printer Share Name], and then click [Share Printer].

  ➠ [Printer shared.] appears at the top right of the screen.

14 **Click [Members], and then click [Add].**

15 **Select the members and groups who will use the registered printer from the list.**

- The selected members and groups will be able to use the printer.

■To Delete a Registered Printer

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Network Settings] ▶ [Settings for Universal Print].**

4 **Click [Registration Status] for [Unregister].**

5 **Click [OK].**

6 **View the Microsoft Entra ID device management screen in your web browser.**

7 **Select the model to be deleted and click [Delete].**

Configuring a Printer Registered in Microsoft Entra ID on the Computer

In case of Windows(P. 444)
In case of Mac OS(P. 444)

Windows

1 **Click [ ] (Start) ▶ [ ] (Settings) ▶ [Accounts].**

2 **Click [Access work or school] ▶ [Connect].**

3 **Follow the on-screen instructions to sign in to your Microsoft 365 account.**

4 **Click [Home] ▶ [Devices].**

5 **Click [Printers & scanners] ▶ [Add a printer or scanner].**

6 **Select the machine, and click [Add device].**

Mac OS

1 **Install the Universal Print app.**

2 **Click [System Settings] ▶ [Universal Print] on the Mac.**

➡ The Universal Print screen is displayed.

3 **Click [Sign In] to sign in using your Microsoft 365 account.**

4 **Click [Add printers].**

➠ A list of printers is displayed.

5 **Select the machine, and click [Add].**

Configuring the Universal Print User Settings

ERJ8-080

Configure these settings if you want to manage users authenticated through User Authentication and their associated Universal Print jobs. Universal Print can still be run without configuring these settings.

Set by the User(P. 446)
Set by the Administrator(P. 446)
Set by the Administrator Using a CSV File(P. 447)

Set by the User

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

4 Enter [User Name for Universal Print:] in [Information for Universal Print].

- In [User Name for Universal Print:], enter the email address or phone number used in the Microsoft 365 account.

Set by the Administrator

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

4 Click [Edit...] for the user to be set.

NOTE:

If the Universal Print user is not registered

- Click [Add User] and register the user information. When registering the user information, enter the [User Name for Universal Print:] in [Information for Universal Print].

5 Enter [User Name for Universal Print:] in [Information for Universal Print].

- In [User Name for Universal Print:], enter the email address or phone number used in the Microsoft 365 account.

6 **Click [Update].**

Set by the Administrator Using a CSV File

You can associate User Authentication users with a Microsoft 365 account by editing a CSV file.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] [Authentication Management] [Settings for Universal Print].**

4 **Click [Start Exporting].**

- If there is no user information that is associated with a Microsoft 365 account, you cannot configure the settings using a CSV file. Click [Add Association...], add the associated user and then click [Start Exporting].

5 **Editing the exported CSV file**

- Enter a registered user name in "mcp_uid".
- In "azureaccount_name", enter the email address or phone number used in the Microsoft 365 account.

6 **Click [Import...] and specify the file edited in step 5.**

7 **Click [Start Importing].**

Printing Registered Documents (Print Template)

ERJ8-081



You can print images and documents registered in advance. By registering templates of frequently used documents, you can easily print them when required.

Registering/Editing Documents(P. 448)
Printing Documents(P. 449)

Registering/Editing Documents

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

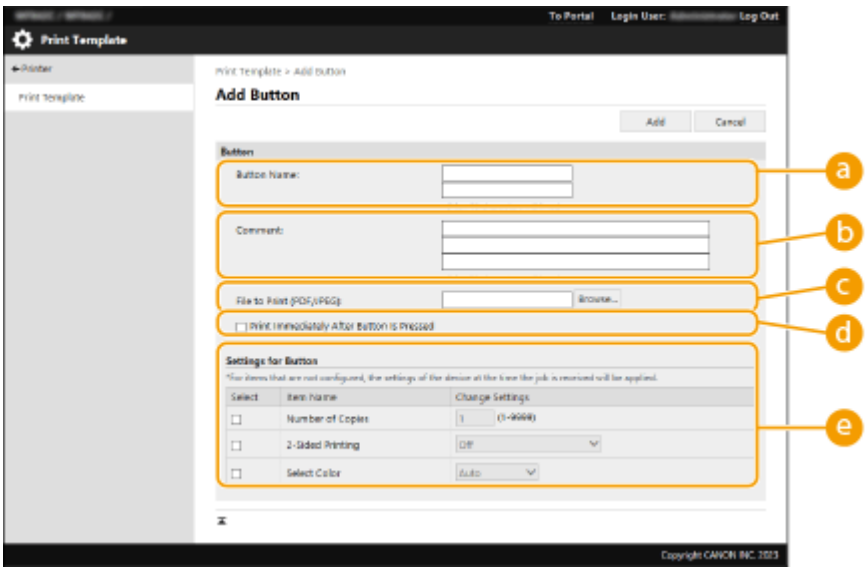
2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Printer] ▶ [Print Template].

4 Click [Add Button...].

- To change the settings in a button, click the button name.
- To delete a button, click [Delete].

5 Enter the button information, and configure the required settings.



a [Button Name:]
Enter the name of the button to display on the <Home> screen.

b [Comment:]

Enter a description or note, as required.

[File to Print (PDF/JPEG):]
Specify whether to print PDF or JPEG files.

[Print Immediately After Button Is Pressed]
Select this to immediately execute jobs after the button is pressed. The mark is displayed for buttons with this set.

[Settings for Button]
Configure the settings related to printing, such as the number of copies and two-sided printing.

NOTE:

- If settings are not configured, printing is performed according to <Custom Settings> in <Printer>.

6 Click [Add].

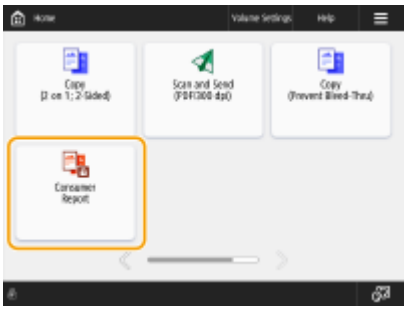
NOTE

Files for Printing

- A maximum of five documents can be registered.
- Documents with a maximum size of 48 MB can be registered.
- The minimum guaranteed storage space for registering documents is 4 GB, including the space for hold print and secure print jobs.

Printing Documents

1 Press the button for a registered document on the <Home> screen.



- If [Print Immediately After Button Is Pressed] is set, printing starts immediately.

2 Press <Start Printing>.

➡ Printing starts.

NOTE:

- PDF files with a password set or that require password entry to print cannot be printed.
- To cancel a job that is printing, press <Cancel Printing>.

Scanning

Scanning 451
Scan Basic Features Screen 453
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals 456
Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents 475
Scanning Clearly 477
Adjusting Image Quality 478
Adjusting Density 479
Adjusting Sharpness When Scanning (Sharpness) 480
Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame) 481
Scanning Efficiently 483
Sending/Saving Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build) 484
Creating Another Folder in a Destination Folder before Scanning 486
Useful Scanning Functions 488
Skipping Blank Pages When Scanning 490
Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview) 492
Sending/Saving at a Specified Time 494
Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending/Saving 496
Scanning with the OCR Function 498
Enhancing the Security of Electronic Files 502
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/Saving (Previous Settings) 507
Setting a File Name 509
Specifying E-Mail Settings 511
Scanning while Removing a Specified Color 513
Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) (Windows) 515
Using Color Network ScanGear 2 516
Scanning Originals from an Application 518
Using WSD 520
Scanning Originals Using WSD (WSD Scan) 522

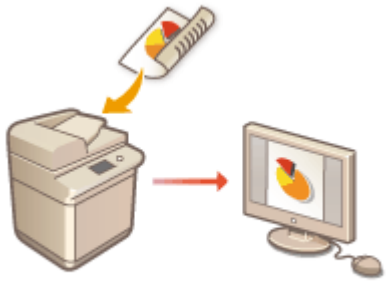
Scanning

ERJ8-082

Scanning paper originals enables you to convert them into electronic files, such as PDF, commonly supported by a computer. Converted files can be sent as e-mail attachments from the machine, or saved in a file server. This chapter describes a variety of useful functions for easy scanning as well as basic operations.

■Introduction to Basic Operations

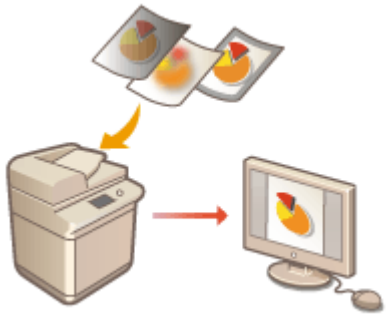
This section describes the Scan Basic Features screen and the basic sending/saving methods.



Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

■Scanning Clearly

This section describes the methods to solve problems such as blurry photographs, illegible text due to dark paper, and the appearance of dark borders.



Scanning Clearly(P. 477)

■Scanning Various Types of Originals

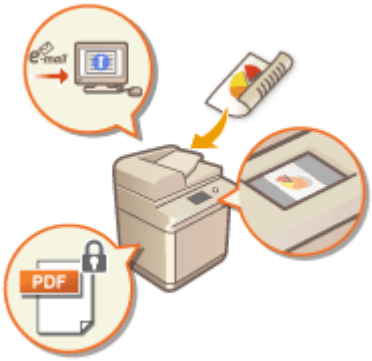
You can efficiently scan originals with many pages and originals made up of multiple documents.



Scanning Efficiently(P. 483)

■ Efficiently, Reliably, Safely

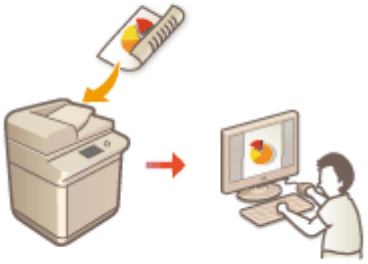
This section describes a variety of functions useful for increasing working efficiency, avoiding operation errors, and enhancing security.



Useful Scanning Functions(P. 488)

■ Scanning Using a Computer

If you are editing a scanned document in a computer, save directly into the computer for convenience.

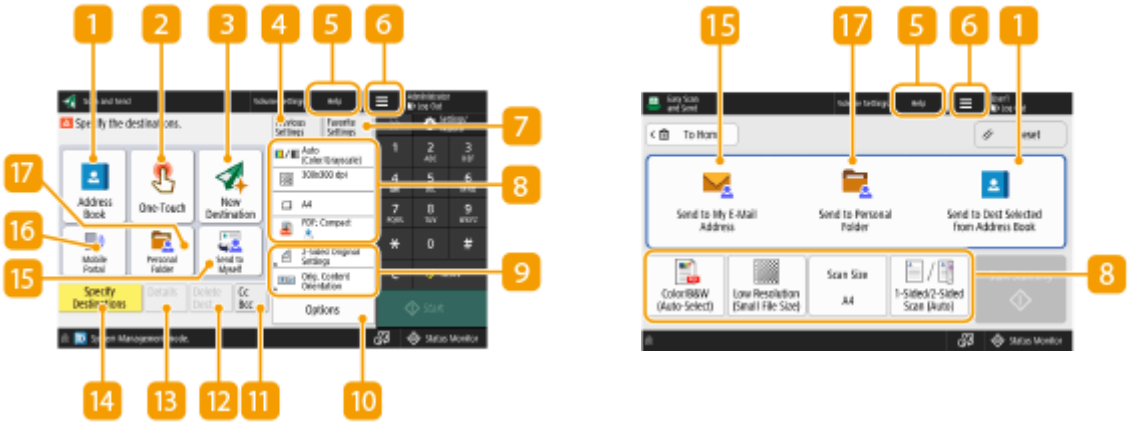


Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) (Windows)(P. 515)

Scan Basic Features Screen

ERJ8-083

Pressing <Scan and Send> or <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) displays the Scan Basic Features screen.



1 <Address Book>/<Send to Dest Selected from Address Book>

Enables you to specify a sending destination and a save location registered in the Address Book.

2 <One-Touch>

Enables you to specify a sending destination and a save location registered in one-touch buttons.

3 <New Destination>

Enables you to specify destinations manually that are not registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons.

4 <Previous Settings>

Press to recall the previously specified settings. **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

5 <Help>

Press to display the QR code to access the <Scan and Send> page in the User's Guide.

6 ☰

When using <Scan and Send>, press this icon to register the current settings in <Favorite Settings> of 7 and change the button displayed in 9.

When using <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>, press this icon to use the text detected from the scanned document as the file name.

Managing the Machine(P. 578)

Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

7 <Favorite Settings>

Register frequently used scan settings here in advance to easily recall them when necessary. **Managing the Machine(P. 578)**

8 Current setting status and setting buttons

Displays setting status such as the color and the original size when scanning. Make sure to confirm the settings in order to scan properly. To change the settings, press the desired button. **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

9 Function setting buttons

Displays the most frequently used buttons from <Options>. You can also press 6 to change which buttons are displayed.

- If the button for the function that you want to use is not displayed, press <Options> and select the desired button. **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

10 <Options>

Displays all of the function setting buttons. For convenience, you can display frequently used function setting buttons in 9.

11 <Cc Bcc>

Enables you to specify e-mail destinations as Cc or Bcc. **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

12 <Delete Dest.>

Enables you to delete the specified destination.

13 <Details>

Enables you to check the detailed information about the specified destination.

14 <Specify Destinations>

Displays the methods for specifying destinations or a list of specified destinations.

15 <Send to Myself>/<Send to My E-Mail Address>

Enables you to directly specify your own e-mail address. This button is available only when you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

16 <Mobile Portal>

Enables you to specify a destination from the address book of a mobile device.

Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

17 <Personal Folder>/<Send to Personal Folder>

Enables you to specify your personal folder registered as a save location. This button is available only when you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management.

Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)

Managing Users(P. 591)

NOTE

- You can select whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons to restrict use of the Address Book. **<Restrict Address Book Use>(P. 945)**

- Some functions cannot be used in combination with each other. Buttons that cannot be selected are displayed in light gray.
- The total number of specified destinations is displayed on the top right of the screen.

LINKS

Registering Destinations(P. 265)

Basic Operations for Scanning Originals

ERJ8-084

This section describes the basic operations for scanning originals. To scan and send originals, you can either send with the <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan> or configure the detailed settings with the <Scan and Send>.
With <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>, you can configure basic functions such as the specified destinations and color settings by performing simple button operations.

Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)
Sending with <Scan and Send>(P. 461)

Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features Screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

Sending to Destinations from the Address Book
Sending to Your Own E-Mail Address
Send to a Personal Folder

NOTE:

- When specifying multiple destinations, press <Add> in the destination displaying area and select the address to be added; and repeat this procedure.
- Up to 10 destinations can be specified.
- When deleting a destination, select the destination to be deleted in the list displayed by pressing the destination displaying area and press <Delete>.

Sending to Destinations from the Address Book

1 Press <Send to Dest Selected from Address Book>.

2 Select a destination.



a Address list drop-down list

When you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management, selecting <Personal Addr. List> displays your personal Address Book. You can also display dedicated user group address lists (User Group Address Lists) in which you are included.

b Search buttons by first letter

Enables you to narrow down a search by the first letter of the destination

NOTE

- Destinations that are configured with an access number are not displayed for a user other than Administrator.
- Destinations of e-mail, SMB, FTP, and WebDAV are displayed. Destinations in a group and destinations in LDAP server address book or a remote address book are not displayed.

Sending to Your Own E-Mail Address

You can specify the e-mail address of the user who is logged in to the machine with personal authentication management. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

1 Press <Send to My E-Mail Address>.

➡ The e-mail address of the user who is logged in to the machine is specified as the destination.

Send to a Personal Folder

You can specify the personal folder of the user who is logged in to the machine with personal authentication management.
Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)
Managing Users(P. 591)

1 Press <Send to Personal Folder>.

➡ The personal folder of the user who is logged in to the machine is specified as destination.

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

Select Color Setting

Specifying the Scanning Size of the Original

Setting One-Sided or Two-Sided Scanning of the Original

NOTE:

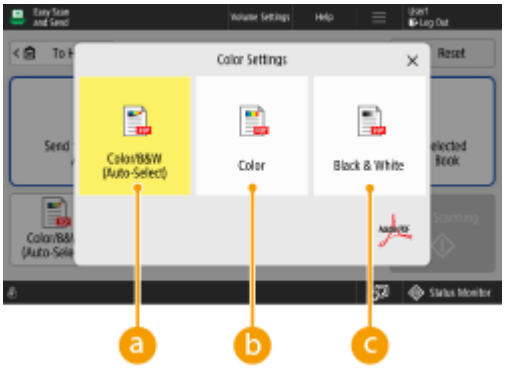
- The scanning resolution cannot be changed.
- The stored file is in the PDF format.

Select Color Setting

You can select the color mode when the original is scanned.

1 Press the color setting button.

2 Select the color mode when the original is scanned.



a <Color/B&W (Auto-Select)>

The color of the original is automatically recognized. Color originals are scanned in color, and black and white originals are scanned in grayscale. Depending on the condition of the color original and the size, it may be recognized as black and white, such as when only the edges are in color. In such a case, select <Color>.

b <Color>

Scans in color regardless of a document's color. When <Color> is selected, scanning black and white originals is also counted as color scanning.

c <Black & White>

Scans in grayscale regardless of an original's color.

Specifying the Scanning Size of the Original

You can specify the scanning size and orientation of the original. The original of a non-standard size can be scanned.

1 Press the scan size setting button.

2 Select the scanning size and orientation of the original and press <OK>.

- When a standard-size original is scanned, press the button of the original size.
- Select <Top at Far Edge> or <Top at Side Edge> for the orientation of the placed original so that the top and bottom of the scanned image are correctly displayed.



■Scanning the Original of a Non-Standard Size

Place the original in the feeder and select <Free Size>.

NOTE:

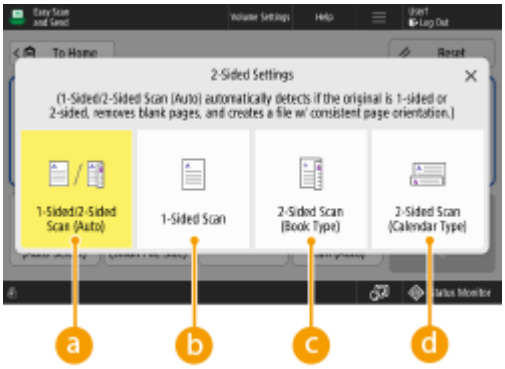
- For information on the document sizes that can be scanned with the feeder, see **2-Sided Single Pass Feeder(P. 26)** .

Setting One-Sided or Two-Sided Scanning of the Original

You can specify whether to scan both sides of the original automatically.

1 Press the 2-sided scan setting button.

2 Select one of the 1-sided/2-sided scanning settings.



a <1-Sided/2-Sided Scan (Auto)>

The machine automatically recognizes whether the original is 1-sided or 2-sided and scans accordingly. The machine automatically deletes pages determined to be blank. (Skip Blank Originals). The machine performs OCR processing when the original is scanned, and a text-searchable PDF file is created. The machine detects the orientation of the text in the original and creates a file with the same orientation.

b <1-Sided Scan>

Scans 2-sided originals one side at a time.

c <2-Sided Scan (Book Type)>

Select this if the top and bottom orientation of the front and back sides of the original are the same.

d <2-Sided Scan (Calendar Type)>

Select this if the top and bottom orientation of the front and back sides of the original are opposite.

NOTE

- When <1-Sided/2-Sided Scan (Auto)> is selected, set <Specify File Name from OCR (Text Searchable) Result> to <On> under <Menu> allows you to use the text at the top of the original as the file name. You can change the number of characters extracted as the file name. **<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>(P. 915)**
- When <Specify File Name from OCR (Text Searchable) Result> is enabled, the file name is not applied to the following:
  - Send status displayed in the status display at the bottom of the screen. **Items Displayed on the <Home> Screen(P. 215)**
  - TX report **Outputting a Communication Result Report(P. 785)**
  - TX log when a sending error occurs **Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)**

5 Press (Start Scanning).

➡ The original is scanned and sending or saving starts.

- When you want to stop scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Scan Next Original] key to scan the next original.> is Displayed

Place the next original to be scanned and press <Scan Next Original>. By pressing <Start Sending> after scanning all originals, a file is sent or stored.

- Depending on the communication settings, you may be prompted to enter the user name and password. **Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**

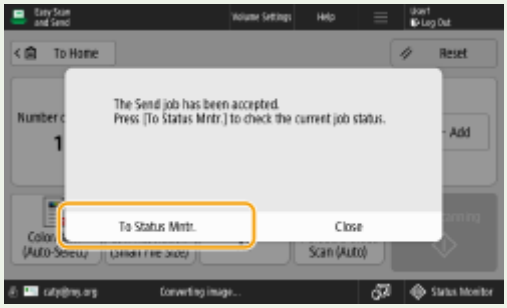
NOTE

To immediately cancel a job that is being sent

- If you press (Stop) on the control panel while a job is being sent, the message <Is it OK to cancel the following Send job?> appears. Press <Yes> to cancel sending.
- You can select <Latest Received Job> or <Job Being Sent> to choose the job to cancel. **<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>(P. 954)**
- Press (Stop) when there are multiple send jobs to display the screen for selecting the send job to cancel.
  If the send job you want to cancel is not displayed, press <Check Other Jobs> to display <Send Jobs>. Select the job that you want to cancel, and press <Cancel>.

To check the statuses for sent/saved documents

- On the <Status Monitor> screen, you can check the statuses for sent/saved documents. This screen enables you to send/save documents again or cancel sending/saving after checking the statuses. **Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)**
- When <Display Notification When Job Is Accepted> is set to <On>, the <To Status Mntr.> screen can be displayed from the following screen that is shown after a send job is received. **<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>(P. 954)**



File name

- When a mode other than <1-Sided/2-Sided Scan (Auto)> is selected, the file name of a sent or saved file is set in the format "YYYYMMDDhhmmss.extension", such as "20261030133541.pdf". You can configure to set a different file name. **Setting a File Name(P. 509)**

E-mail subject

- The subject entered in <Default Subject> is automatically set **<Default Subject>(P. 960)** .

Sending with <Scan and Send>

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book
Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons
Entering Destinations Manually
Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server
Specifying Your Own E-Mail Address
Specifying Personal Folder
Specifying Destinations from the Address Book of a Mobile Device
Specifying Addresses in Cc/Bcc

NOTE:

- To specify multiple destinations, press <Specify Destinations> and specify an additional destination.
- To delete a destination, select the destination you want to delete, and press <Delete Dest.>.
- You can select a destination and press <Details> to confirm the detailed information for the destination.
- You can only change destinations from <Details> specified using the New Destination and destinations obtained via an LDAP server.
- If the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings, authentication between the server machine and the client machine is performed while the client machine is obtaining the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons. Authentication is performed by matching the System Manager ID and System Manager PIN set by the server machine and client machine. **Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)**
  The availability of the Remote Address Book/one-touch buttons depends on the status of the System Manager information settings for the server machine and client machine, as shown below.

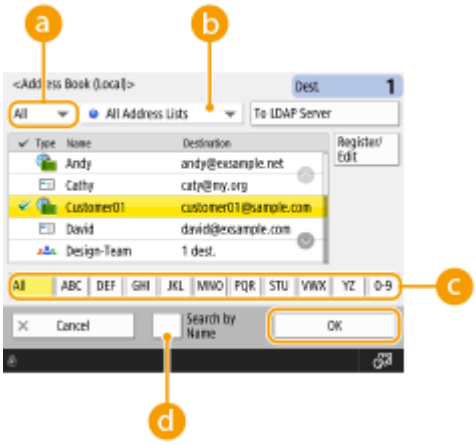
When the server machine is performing the System Manager information settings	When the client machine is performing the System Manager information settings	The System Manager ID and System PIN for the server machine and client machine match	Can use the Remote Address Book/One-Touch Button
Performing	Performing	Matches	Yes
		Does Not Match	No
	Not Performing	-	No
Not Performing	Performing	-	Yes
	Not Performing	-	Yes

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Select the destination and press <OK>.

- If an access number is set when the destination is registered, press <Access No.> and enter the access number using the numeric keys. The corresponding destination is displayed in the Address Book.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>. When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <Remote>.



a Destination type drop-down list

Pressing , , and displays e-mail, file server, and group destinations, respectively.

b Address list drop-down list

When you are logged in to the machine with personal authentication management, selecting <Personal Addr. List> displays your personal Address Book. You can also display dedicated user group address lists (User Group Address Lists) in which you are included.

c Search buttons by first letter

Enables you to narrow down a search by the first letter of the destination

d <Search by Name>

Enables you to search the destination by the name you are entering.

NOTE

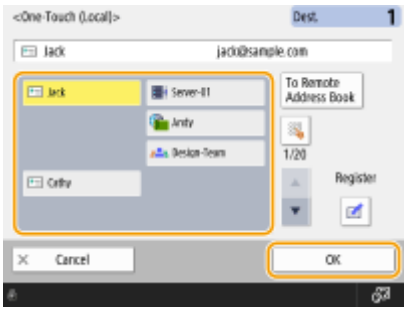
- <Register New Destination>, <Details/Edit>, and <Delete> in <Register/Edit> on the <Address Book (Local)> screen can be used to register new destinations, check details, and edit/delete destinations.
Registering Destinations(P. 265)
- To use the Remote Address Book, it is necessary to configure the server machine settings. Set to open the Remote Address Book externally on the server machine.

Specifying Destinations from One-Touch Buttons

1 Press <One-Touch>.

2 Select the desired one-touch button and press <OK>.

- To specify the destination using a one-touch button number (one-touch number), press and enter the number for the desired one-touch button.
- To use the Remote Address Book, press <To Remote Address Book>.



NOTE

- To select a destination from the <One-Touch> screen after scanning, set <One-Touch> for <Default Screen>. The work required for sending scanned documents to the same destination can be reduced.
<Default Screen>(P. 945)
- The destinations registered in the one-touch buttons of the server machine are updated in the following times:
  - When a fax job has been sent on the client machine
  - When you press (Reset) on the client machine
  - When Auto Reset is activated on the client machine

Entering Destinations Manually

You can specify destinations manually that are not registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons.

1 Press <New Destination> and select the destination type (<E-Mail> or <File>).

NOTE:

- Selecting <I-Fax> enables you to send scanned documents as a fax via the Internet.

2 Specify the destination and press <OK>.

NOTE:

- You can press <Register to Address Book> to register the entered destination. Set the required conditions, specify <Name>, and specify the address list from the address list drop-down list. For information on the settings, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .
- If you select <File> in step 1, specify the settings such as the IP address of a file server and the path of the save location folder. For details about the setting items, consult your network administrator.

Specifying Destinations in the LDAP Server

You can search and specify destinations registered in the LDAP server.

1 Press <Address Book>.

2 Press <To LDAP Server>.

- When <Change Address Book> is displayed, press <Change Address Book> ▶ <LDAP Server>.
- If the network password input screen is displayed, enter the user name and password and press <OK>.

3 When searching destinations in the LDAP server, press either <Search by Conditions> or <Search by Name>.

- To display all the destinations in the LDAP server, proceed to step 4.

NOTE:

- A maximum of 2,000 destinations can be displayed in the search results.

■When searching by conditions

Press <Search by Conditions>, specify the search conditions on the screen, and press <Start Searching>.



a Search categories

Select a criterion to search for destinations from name, e-mail address, organization name, and organization unit (department name, etc).

b Search conditions

Select a search condition such as a destination name that contains "John" and a department name that begins with "Development."

Search characters

Press <Set> and enter search characters for the search condition.

NOTE:

To search with multiple conditions

You can search destinations with multiple conditions. Specify the first search condition, press <Add Search Condition>, and then select <or> or <and> for the next condition.

To change conditions and search again

Press <Delete> to delete the specified contents, and specify the conditions again.

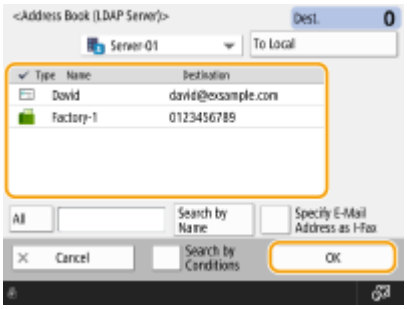
■When searching by name

Press <Search by Name> ▶ enter the text to search ▶ press <OK>.

NOTE:

You can specify attributes used when performing "Search by Name" for a destination from the LDAP server.
<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>(P. 1013)

4 Select the destination and press <OK>.



Specifying Your Own E-Mail Address

You can specify the e-mail address of the user who is logged in to the machine with personal authentication management. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

1 Press <Send to Myself>.

➡ The e-mail address of the user who is logged in to the machine is specified as the destination.

Specifying Personal Folder

You can specify the personal folder of the user who is logged in to the machine with personal authentication management.
Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)
Managing Users(P. 591)

1 Specify <Personal Folder>.

➡ The personal folder of the user who is logged in to the machine is specified as destination.

Specifying Destinations from the Address Book of a Mobile Device

You can specify a destination from the address book of a mobile device.

NOTE

- Only e-mail destinations can be specified from the address book of a mobile device.
- To use this function, you must install the "Canon PRINT" application to your mobile device. **Utilizing the Machine through Applications(P. 559)**

1 Connect to the mobile device. Connecting with Mobile Devices(P. 555)

2 Send the address from the mobile device to the machine.

- For detailed information on operations using the mobile device, see the Help of the application.

NOTE:

- You can send information including the subject, message body, and file name from the mobile device to the machine. **Specifying E-Mail Settings(P. 511)**

Specifying Addresses in Cc/Bcc

E-mail addresses can be specified in Cc (Carbon copy) and Bcc (Blind carbon copy).

1 Press <Cc Bcc>.

2 Press <Cc> or <Bcc> ▶ <Specify Destinations>.

NOTE:

- To move a destination from Cc or Bcc, press <To/Bcc|Cc> or <To/Cc|Bcc> and specify the destination to move to To, Cc, or Bcc.

3 Specify the destination ▶ press <OK>.

- For information on specifying the destination, see the method for specifying each type of destination.

NOTE:

- A destination other than an e-mail destination can be specified with <Specify Destinations>, but cannot be specified in Cc or Bcc or moved to Cc or Bcc.

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

Selecting a File Format

- Selecting Resolution
- Specifying the Scanning Size of Originals
- Selecting Color Scan/Black & White Scan
- Scanning Both Sides of Originals

Selecting a File Format



Scanned originals are converted into electronic files such as PDF. Select the file format according to your purposes and environment of use.

1 Press the setting button for file format.



2 Select the file format.

<JPEG>	This file format is suitable for photographic originals. Multiple-page originals will be divided into one file per page.
<TIFF>	This file format is suitable for graphical originals. Originals are scanned in black and white.
<PDF>	This file format is suitable for text documents. Documents can be displayed in the same way on any computer, regardless of the operating system used.
<XPS>	This is a file format taken from Windows Vista. Documents can be displayed in the same way on any Windows computer, regardless of the operating system used.
<OOXML>	This file format can be edited in Microsoft Office Word or PowerPoint.

■If you selected <PDF>, <XPS>, or <OOXML>

You can set various additional functions.

- For details of the additional functions, see the help screen displayed when you press ? at the top right of the screen.

■If you selected <JPEG> or <TIFF>

This completes the procedure. Press <OK>.

NOTE

- <PDF; Compact> or <XPS; Compact> is only valid with the following settings:
  - Select Color: Color mode other than the Black-and-White mode
  - Resolution: 300 dpi x 300 dpi
- <Word> documents to which <OOXML> is set can only be sent with the following settings.
  - Select Color: Color mode other than the Black & White mode
  - Resolution: 300 dpi x 300 dpi
- <PowerPoint> documents to which <OOXML> is set can only be sent with the following settings.
  - Select Color: Color mode other than the Black & White mode
  - Resolution: 300 dpi x 300 dpi

When creating a PDF file for long-term storage

- Press <Format to PDF/A> to select the format. To deselect the format, press <Cancel Settings>.
- For <Scan and Store>, press <Format to PDF/A> to select it. The file will be created in the PDF/A-1b format.
- When <Format to PDF/A> is set to On, you cannot use certain features, such as the encrypted PDF format, visible signatures, and OCR (except in PDF/A-1b).

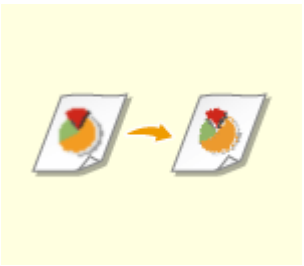
When creating files by pages

- To scan a multiple-page original and save each page as a separate file instead of saving all pages as a single file, press <Divide into Pages>.
- To specify the number of pages to include in each file, after pressing <Divide into Pages>, specify the desired number of pages. To save each page as a separate file, specify <1> for the number of pages.
- If you select <TIFF/JPEG>, each page will automatically be created as a separate file according to the Select Color mode.
  - When Black & White is set for the Select Color mode: TIFF
  - When a setting other than Black & White is set for the Select Color mode: JPEG
- You cannot specify the number of pages to include in one file if you are currently using the <Scan and Store> function.

TIPS

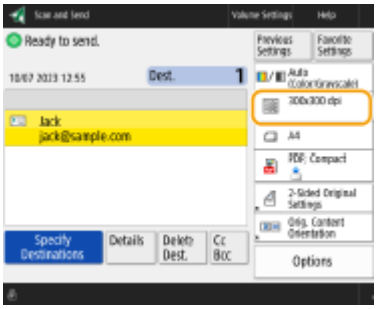
Installing an option can expand functions for scanning to create files. For information on the required optional products and on the file formats, see **System Options(P. 1271)** .

Selecting Resolution



To scan an original clearly, increase the resolution. To reduce the file size, decrease the resolution.

1 Press the setting button for resolution.



2 Select the resolution and press <OK>.

- Depending on the file format you are selecting, the resolution that you can select is limited.

NOTE

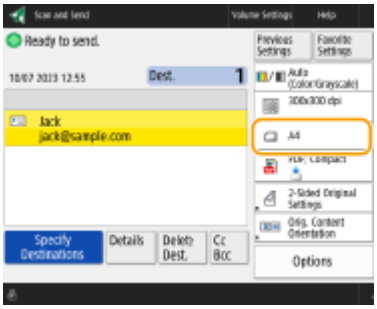
- When <Fax> or <I-Fax> is specified for the destination and a resolution higher than 300 dpi is set, even if <Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan> is set to <Quality Priority>, the setting is not enabled.

Specifying the Scanning Size of Originals



If you are scanning free size/highly transparent originals, or the edge of image is missing when scanning, you need to manually specify the scanning size.

1 Press the setting button for scanning size.



2 Select the scanning size and press <OK>.

To scan the original in A4, select <A4>.

■When scanning a free size original

Place the original in the feeder and select <Free Size>.

■When specifying the values of scanning size

Place the original on the platen glass/in the feeder, select <Custom>, and enter the height and width of the original. Sent images are not rotated.

NOTE:

- When a scanning size smaller than the minimum size that can be scanned with the feeder is set, scanning cannot be performed with the feeder. For information on the document sizes that can be scanned with the feeder, see **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)** .

NOTE

To register the scanning size

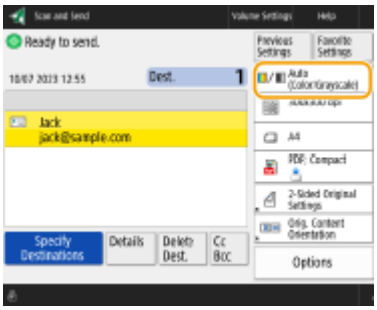
- If you frequently specify the scanning size with the same values, register the size in <Custom>
  ▶ <Register Size> to quickly recall the setting for convenience.

Selecting Color Scan/Black & White Scan



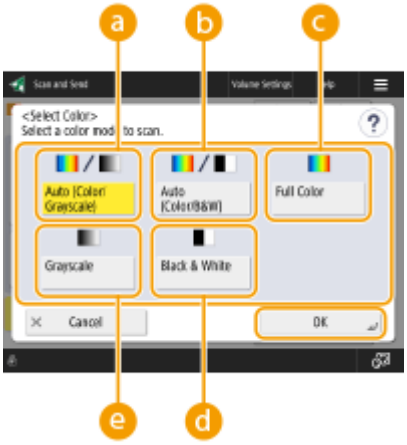
You can specify color when scanning original.

1 Press the setting button for color.



2 Select the color and press <OK>.

- Depending on the file format you are selecting, the setting item that you can select is limited.



a <Auto (Color/Grayscale)>

Determines automatically what color is used for scanning according to the color of an original. For example, color pages are scanned in color, and monochrome pages are scanned in grayscale (monochrome gradation).

b <Auto (Color/B&W)>

Determines automatically what color is used for scanning according to the color of an original. For example, colored pages are scanned in color, and monochrome pages are scanned in black and white. Select this mode when text is faint with <Auto (Color/Grayscale)>, or when the original mainly consists of text.

c <Full Color>

Scans in color regardless of a document's color. Depending on the state of the color original and the size, it may be detected as black and white when scanned, even if you set <Auto (Color/Grayscale)> or <Auto (Color/B&W)>. To avoid this, set the color mode to <Full Color>.

d <Black & White>

Scans in black and white regardless of an original's color. This mode is automatically set for the TIFF file format.

e <Grayscale>

Scans in grayscale regardless of an original's color. This mode uses different shades of color, such as black, dark gray, gray, light gray, and white, making color look more natural and beautiful compared with <Black & White>.

NOTE:

- If a black-and-white original is scanned in the Full Color mode, it is counted as a color scan.
- If you select <JPEG> as the file format, <Black & White> is changed to <Grayscale>.
- If you select <TIFF> as the file format, <Black & White> is set.
- If <OOXML> is selected as the file format, you can only send in <Auto (Color/Grayscale)>, <Full Color>, or <Grayscale>.

Scanning Both Sides of Originals



The machine can automatically scan both the front and back sides of an original.

NOTE

- Place the original in the feeder.
- If you want to scan each side of the 2-sided originals placed on the platen glass, specify the <Job Build> settings. **Sending/Saving Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build)(P. 484)**

1 Press <2-Sided Original Settings>.

2 Select <Book Type> or <Calendar Type> and press <OK>.

- Select <Book Type> for originals whose images on the front and back sides face the same direction, or <Calendar Type> for originals whose images on the front and back sides face in opposite directions.

5 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). When scanning all of the originals is complete, press <Start Sending> to send/save the file.

- Depending on the communication settings, you may be prompted to enter the user name and password. **Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**

NOTE

To check the total number of specified destinations

- The total number of specified destinations is displayed on the top right of the screen. This enables you to confirm that the number of destinations is correct before sending.



To immediately cancel a job that is being sent

If you press (Stop) on the control panel while a job is being sent, the message <Is it OK to cancel the following Send job?> appears. Press <Yes> to cancel sending.

- You can select <Latest Received Job> or <Job Being Sent> to choose the job to cancel. **<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>(P. 954)**
- Press (Stop) when there are multiple send jobs to display the screen for selecting the send job to cancel. If the send job you want to cancel is not displayed, press <Check Other Jobs> to display <Send Jobs>. Select the job that you want to cancel, and press <Cancel>.

To check the statuses for sent/saved documents

- On the <Status Monitor> screen, you can check the statuses for sent/saved documents. This screen enables you to send/save documents again or cancel sending/saving after checking the statuses. **Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)**
- When <Display Notification When Job Is Accepted> is set to <On>, the <Status Monitor> screen can be displayed from the following screen that is shown after a send job is received. **<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>(P. 954)**



To print the report for the results of sending/saving

- On the Scan Basic Features screen, pressing <Options> ▶<TX Result Report> enables you to set to automatically print the report listing the results of sending/saving.
- To set this for each job from <Options>, it is necessary to select <For Error Only> or <Off> in **<TX Result Report>(P. 946)** , and then set <Allow Printing from Options> to <On>.

File name

When a file is sent/saved, its file name is automatically set based on the following format. You can change the setting so that a different name can be assigned. **Setting a File Name(P. 509)**

- When sending by e-mail
  "Job numbers (four digits)_page numbers (three digits).file extension name" format, such as "1042_001.jpg"
- When saving in a file server
  "The year, month, day, hour, minute, and second the file is saved (14 digits).file extension name" format, such as "20151030133541.jpg"

E-mail subject

- The subject entered in <Default Subject> is automatically set (**<Default Subject>(P. 960)**). If you specify a different subject, change the setting, or specify each time you send an e-mail (**Specifying E-Mail Settings(P. 511)**).

TIPS

Determining the top and bottom of the original

- You can set the orientation of the document before scanning so that its top and bottom are positioned correctly when the sent/saved file is displayed on a computer.
- Press <Options> on the Scan Basic Features screen ▶ <Orig. Content Orientation> ▶ <Top at Far Edge> ▶ <OK>.

Specifying multiple destinations including faxes

- Setting <Enable Fax in Scan and Send Function> to <On> enables you to specify fax destinations from the Scan Basic Features screen (**<Display Fax Function>(P. 810)**). This setting is useful for specifying multiple destinations including faxes, such as when saving a copy of a sent fax in a file server.

Checking scanned images before sending/saving

- You can check scanned images on the preview screen before sending/saving. **Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview)(P. 492)**

Registering frequently used settings

- You can combine frequently used destinations and scan settings into a button of the machine for later use. By pressing the registered button when scanning originals, you can quickly complete your settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

LINKS

Scanning Clearly(P. 477)
Scanning Efficiently(P. 483)
Useful Scanning Functions(P. 488)
Registering Destinations(P. 265)
Sending I-Faxes(P. 403)
Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)
Managing Users(P. 591)
Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)
<Set Destination>(P. 1008)

Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents

ERJ8-085

You can check the statuses and communication logs for sent and saved documents.

Checking the Statuses for Sent/Saved Documents(P. 475)
Checking If Documents Are Sent or Saved Successfully(P. 475)

NOTE

- When personal authentication management is used, you can restrict users from performing operations on the jobs of other users on the <Status Monitor> screen. **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**

Checking the Statuses for Sent/Saved Documents

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Send> ▶ <Job Status>.

3 Check the statuses.

- Selecting a document and pressing <Details> enables you to check detailed information such as destinations and the number of pages.
- Selecting a document and pressing <Cancel> enables you to cancel sending/saving.
- Pressing <Print List> prints a status list of sent/saved documents displayed on the screen.

NOTE

- Pressing <Details> ▶ <Resend> enables you to resend/resave the documents that failed to send/save. To specify another destination, press <Change Destination>. For documents with multiple destinations specified using the same sending/saving method, press <Broadcast List>, select a destination, and then press <Resend> or <Change Destination>.
- You can resend/resave documents when <Delete Failed TX Jobs> is set to <Off>. **<Delete Failed TX Jobs>(P. 948)**
- You can change the destinations of documents that are set to be sent/saved at a specified time as well as documents that failed to send/save. Note that you cannot change the destinations for documents with multiple destinations specified that are being sent/saved, or when entering a new destination is restricted (**Restricting New Destinations(P. 675)**).

Checking If Documents Are Sent or Saved Successfully

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Press <Send> ▶ <Job Log>.

3 Check if documents are sent or saved successfully.

- <OK> is displayed in the <Result> column when a document was sent or saved successfully. If <NG> is displayed, this shows that a document failed to be sent or saved because it was canceled or there was some error.
- You can check the error code by selecting a document and pressing <Details>. You can use the error code to check the causes of errors and their solutions. **Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)**
- By pressing <Communic Mngt Rprt.>, the displayed send/save log can be printed as a list.
- Up to 100 send or save logs can be displayed.

TIPS

Specifying/registering destinations from the send history

- You can specify destinations and register destinations to the address book from the send history on the <Status Monitor> screen. This saves you the effort of directly entering the address, and also helps avoid sending to an incorrect destination due to entering the wrong address.
  - When specifying a destination: <Status Monitor> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select the destination to send to ▶ <Specify as Send Dest.> ▶ <OK>
  - When registering a destination: <Status Monitor> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select the destination to register ▶ <Register Destination> ▶ register the destination from the registration screen for each destination type

Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270) **Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button(P. 285)**

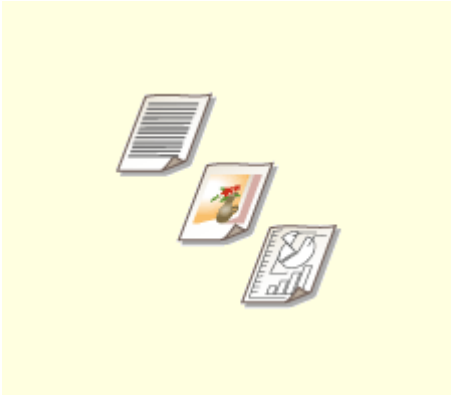
LINKS

Sending/Saving at a Specified Time(P. 494)
Printing a List of Usage History(P. 783)
Outputting a Communication Result Report(P. 785)

Scanning Clearly

ERJ8-086

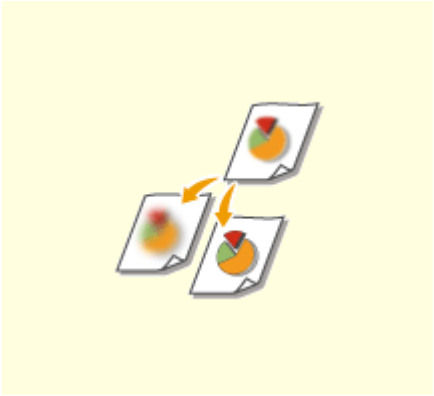
For catalogs with many photographs included, reports written in pencil, and thick magazines, adjusting the density and sharpness and erasing unnecessary shadows can scan originals clearly.
The settings below are not available for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.



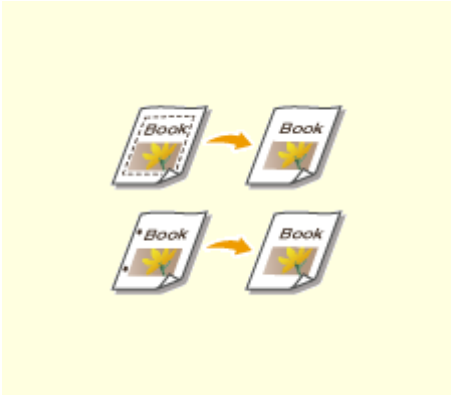
Adjusting Image Quality(P. 478)



Adjusting Density(P. 479)



Adjusting Sharpness When Scanning (Sharpness)(P. 480)



Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame)(P. 481)

Adjusting Image Quality

ERJ8-087



You can scan with optimal image quality suitable for your type of original. For example, making the color tone beautiful for originals with photos, while making the contrast sharp for text-only originals, which makes it easy to read.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Press <Options> ▶ <Original Type>.

5 Select the type of original and press <OK>.

- To adjust the text/photo processing priority level, press <Adjust Level> ▶ select <Text Priority> or <Photo Priority>.

6 Press <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

NOTE

- If the phenomenon called moire (striped pattern noise) occurs when scanning an original, adjust the sharpness. **Adjusting Sharpness When Scanning (Sharpness)(P. 480)**

Adjusting Density

ERJ8-088



You can scan originals more clearly by manually adjusting the density according to the contents of the original. For example, increasing the density enables you to easily read faint characters written in pencil.

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Press <Options> <Density>.**

5 **Adjust the density and press <OK>.**

- Press to decrease the density. Press to increase the density.

NOTE:

To adjust the density of the background

- You can send/store documents such as newspapers, or documents with colored backgrounds clearly. Press <Auto> to automatically adjust the background density.
- Press <Adjust> to manually adjust the background density, and adjust the background density of each color in <Adjust Each Color>.

6 **Press <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start).**

➡ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

Adjusting Sharpness When Scanning (Sharpness)

ERJ8-089



You can scan the image with clear contours and lines by increasing the sharpness, or soften the image by decreasing the sharpness. Use this function when you want to sharpen blurred text and diagrams, or to reduce moire (a shimmering, wavy pattern) to smoothen the finished image.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen.** **Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Press <Options> <Sharpness>.**

5 **Adjust the sharpness and press <OK>.**

- To sharpen blurred text, adjust the control to <High>.
- To reduce moire when scanning originals that contain printed photos, such as magazines or pamphlets, adjust the control to <Low>.

6 **Press <Close>.**

7 **Press (Start).**

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame)

ERJ8-08A



When scanning originals that are smaller than the scanning size, frame lines of the originals may appear in the scanned image. When scanning a thick book, dark borders may appear. This function enables you to erase these frame lines and dark borders. You can also set the machine to not copy punch holes in the originals.

IMPORTANT

- Place the original with punch holes on the platen glass. Placing in the feeder may result in damage.

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

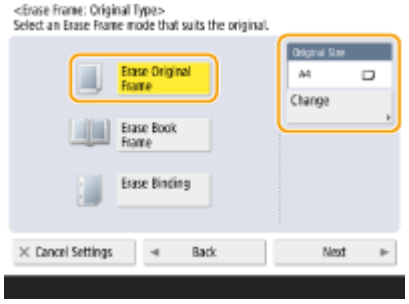
3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Press <Options> <Erase Frame>.**

5 **Specify the erasing type and width.**

■Erasing the frames in copies of documents

1 Press <Erase Original Frame> and check <Original Size>.



- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the original, press <Change> to select the size. Only the original sizes shown on the touch panel display can be scanned.

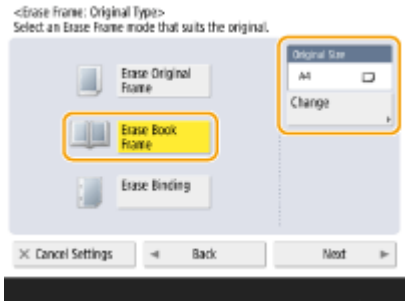
2 Press <Next>.

3 Enter the width of the frame to erase.

■Erasing dark borders in copies of books

You can erase the dark borders both in the center and contour lines that appear when you scan facing pages in a book.

1 Press <Erase Book Frame> and check <Original Size>.



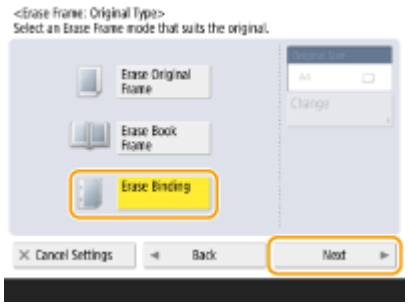
- If the size displayed in <Original Size> is different from the size of the book, press <Change> to select the size. Only the original sizes shown on the touch panel display can be scanned.

2 Press <Next>.

3 Press <Center> or <Sides> and enter each erasing width.

■Erasing punch holes in copies of documents

1 Press <Erase Binding> ▶ <Next>.



2 Select the punch hole location and enter the erasing width.

NOTE:

- If you want to adjust the width for each border independently, press <Erase Original Frame> or <Erase Book Frame>, and then press <Adjust Independently> to enter the erasing widths.
- If you are using <Erase Binding>, the borders you do not select are also erased by 4 mm.

6 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

Scanning Efficiently

ERJ8-08C

This section describes convenient functions, such as scanning a large number of originals separately to put into one. The settings below are not available for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.



Sending/Saving Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build)(P. 484)



Creating Another Folder in a Destination Folder before Scanning(P. 486)

Sending/Saving Separately Scanned Documents Together (Job Build)

ERJ8-08E



Even if you have too many originals to be placed in the feeder at the same time, you can scan the originals separately and send/save them as a batch of documents. Originals scanned with both the feeder and the platen glass can also be sent/saved at the same time.

1 Place the first original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Press <Options> ▶ <Job Build> ▶ <Close>.

6 Press (Start) to scan the original.

➡ When scanning is complete, the screen appears prompting you to scan the next original.

NOTE:

- If you place your originals in the feeder, remove the originals from the original output area when the scanning of each batch is complete.

7 Place the next original and press (Start).

- Repeat this step until you finish scanning all of the originals.
- To change the scan settings, press <Change Settings>.

NOTE:

- If you want to scan one-sided and two-sided originals and store them as two-sided documents, divide the originals into one-sided and two-sided batches. For example, if the first batch consists of two-sided originals, set the <2-Sided Original> mode. Thereafter, you have to manually set or cancel the <2-Sided Original> mode for each batch of originals that you scan.

- The following functions can be used in <Change Settings>. Other functions must be configured in advance, as they cannot be changed during the Job Build mode.
  - <Select Color>
  - <Scan Size>
  - <2-Sided Original>
  - <Density>
  - <Original Type>

8 Press <Start Sending>.

➡ All scanned documents are combined into one and sent/saved to the specified destination.

Creating Another Folder in a Destination Folder before Scanning

ERJ8-08F



When you want to create another folder in a specified destination folder to save a scanned document, you can perform both creating another destination folder and saving a scanned document to that folder on the same Send screen.

1 **Place the originals in the feeder. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press [Scan and Send]. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Select one File destination from Address Book.**

4 **Press <Register/Edit> <Details/Edit>.**

5 **Press <Next>.**

6 **Select <Sorting Folder>.**

7 **Press <OK> <OK>.**

8 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

9 **Press (Start).**

A window to enter the name of the new destination folder is displayed.

NOTE:

- If multiple destinations are selected, an error occurs and transmission fails.

10 **Press <Folder Name>.**

11 Enter the name of the new destination folder and press <OK>.



➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

NOTE:

- When the specified folder already exists, the scanned document is saved in that folder. When the specified folder does not exist, a folder of the specified name is created and the scanned document is saved in the created folder.

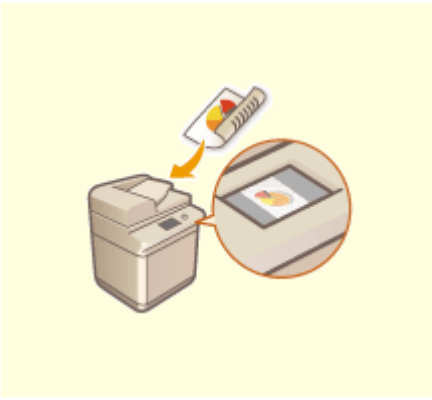
Useful Scanning Functions

ERJ8-08H

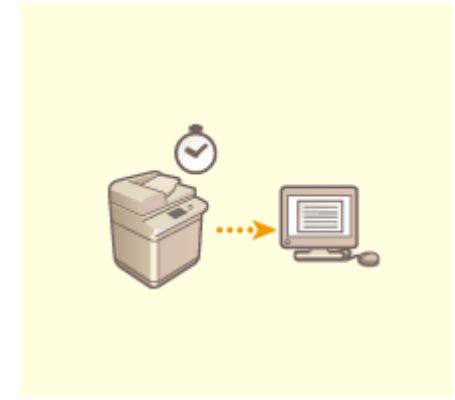
The machine has various useful functions, including notifying you of the completion of sending/saving scanned originals.
Some functions below are available for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.



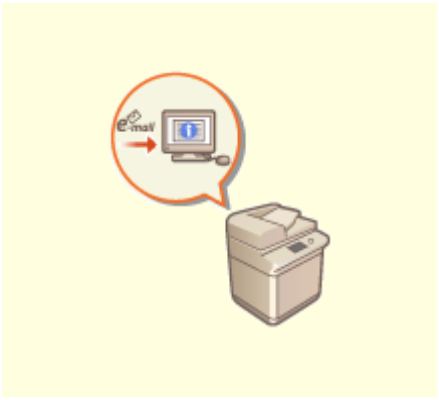
Skipping Blank Pages When Scanning(P. 490)



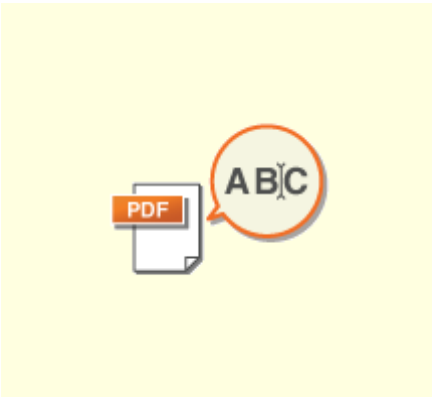
Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview) (P. 492)



Sending/Saving at a Specified Time(P. 494)



Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending/ Saving(P. 496)



Scanning with the OCR Function(P. 498)



Enhancing the Security of Electronic Files(P. 502)



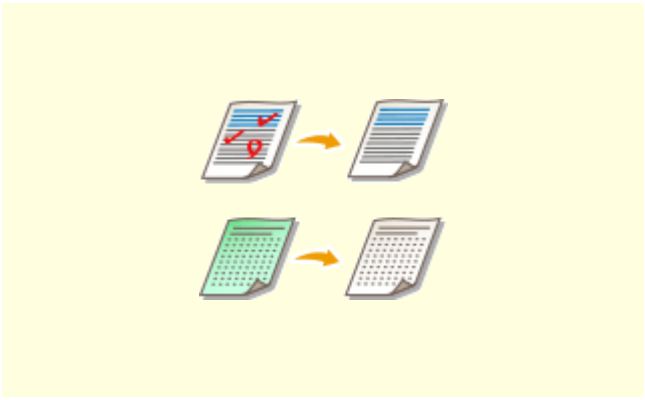
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/Saving (Previous Settings)(P. 507)



Setting a File Name(P. 509)



Specifying E-Mail Settings(P. 511)



Scanning while Removing a Specified Color(P. 513)

Skipping Blank Pages When Scanning

ERJ8-08J



The machine can detect blank pages when scanning, and send/store all the pages except blank pages.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

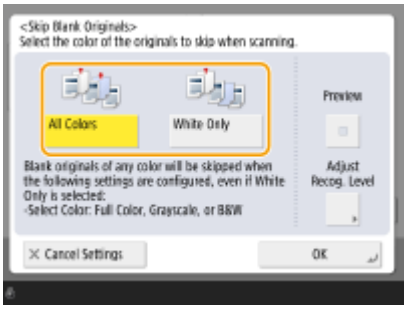
2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Press <Options> <Skip Blank Originals>.

6 Select the color of the originals to skip.



- To skip blank originals regardless of their color, select <All Colors>. To skip blank originals only in white, select <White Only>.
- When something other than <Auto (Color/B&W)> or <Auto (Color/Grayscale)> is selected in <Select Color>, the same operation as <All Colors> is performed, even if <White Only> is set.

NOTE

- Pressing <Preview> to select the button enables you to check the contents of the scanned originals on the preview screen. <Preview> is not displayed when <Mail Box> is selected in <Scan and Store>. **Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview)(P. 492)**

7 Press <Adjust Recog. Level>, set the accuracy to detect blank paper, and then press <OK>.

- Pressing <+> makes the detection accuracy higher.

8 Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.

9 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

IMPORTANT

- Only <E-Mail> or <File> type destinations can be specified when <Skip Blank Originals> is set. Sending cannot be performed if a destination with a type other than <E-Mail> or <File> is set.
- If the size of the original is smaller than the scan size setting, it may not be skipped correctly.

NOTE

- To check the number of pages that have been sent/saved, follow the procedures below: (Status Monitor) ▶ <Send> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ select a document ▶ <Details> ▶ check the number displayed for <Send Pages>
  The status screen and Communication Management Report display the number including blank paper.
  Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)

Checking Scanned Originals Before Sending/Saving (Preview)

ERJ8-08K



You can check scanned originals on the preview screen before sending/saving. You can also delete, move, or switch pages on the preview screen.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Press <Options> ▶ <Preview> ▶ <Close>.

6 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and the preview screen appears.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). When scanning all of the originals is complete, press <Preview and Send> to display the preview screen.

7 Check the scanned originals on the preview screen.

- Edit the scanned original on the preview screen as necessary.

■To delete a page

You can delete the page currently displayed on the preview screen.

1 Press <Delete Page>.

■To move a page

You can move a page to the specified destination.

1. Press <Edit Scanned Data>.
2. Press <Move Pg. Position>.
3. Enter the page numbers corresponding to <Move Page> and <Behind Page>.
4. Press <OK>.

■To switch the locations of pages

You can switch the locations of specified pages.

1. Press <Edit Scanned Data>.
2. Press <Switch Pg Position>.
3. Enter the page numbers corresponding to <Target Page A> and <Target Page B>.
4. Press <OK>.

8 Press <Start Sending>.

➠ Sending/saving starts.

Sending/Saving at a Specified Time

ERJ8-08L



You can scan originals in advance and send/save the scanned documents at a specified time.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

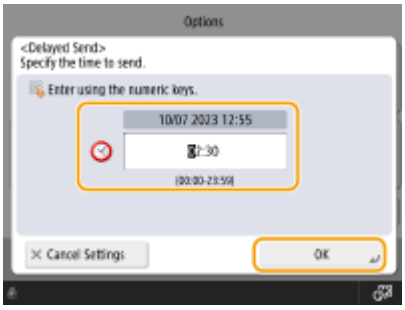
3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Press <Options> <Delayed Send>.

6 Enter the time to send/save and press <OK>.

- Enter all four digits of the time. For example, for 5 minutes past 7, enter "0705" and for 18 minutes past 23, enter "2318."



7 Press <Close>.

8 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sent/saved at the specified time.

NOTE

- You can check on the <Status Monitor> screen whether sending/saving is complete or not. **Checking Status and Log for Scanned Documents(P. 475)**
- You can reserve up to 64 jobs for delayed sending. However, the actual number of send jobs that the machine can handle may be fewer than 64, depending on the following conditions:
  - When multiple documents are being sent at the same time
  - When large documents are being sent
  - When a large amount of memory is being used for the Fax/I-Fax Inbox

LINKS

Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending/Saving(P. 496)

Notifying You by E-Mail of the Completion of Sending/Saving

ERJ8-08R



You can receive an e-mail notifying that sending/saving documents is complete. Even if documents are waiting to be sent/saved, you can use your computer or portable device to check whether sending documents is complete, giving you reassurance. When an error occurs, you are notified of destinations whose documents failed to be sent/saved.

IMPORTANT

- To select the destination to notify from <Address Book>, it is necessary to register the destination in advance. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**
- To select <Send to Myself> as the destination to notify, it is necessary to register your e-mail address in the user information in advance, and log in using personal authentication management. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

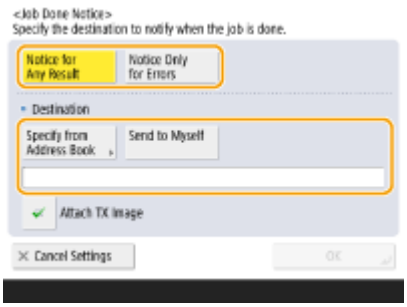
2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

5 **Press <Options> ▶ <Job Done Notice>.**

6 **Specify the notification condition and the destination to notify.**



- If you select <Notice for Any Result>, a notification e-mail is sent for each send job. If you select <Notice Only for Errors>, a notification e-mail is sent only when an error occurs.
- For more information on how to view and use the Address Book, see **Address Book(P. 265)** .
- If you want to check the content of the sent document, select <Attach TX Image> to attach the first page of the document as a PDF file to a notification e-mail.

7 Press <OK> <Close>.

8 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts. When sending/saving is complete, the notification e-mail is sent to the specified address.

Scanning with the OCR Function

ERJ8-08S



This mode enables you to perform OCR (optical character recognition) to extract data that can be recognized as text from the scanned image and create a PDF/XPS/OOXML (pptx/docx) file that is searchable. You can also set <Compact> if you select PDF or XPS as the file format.

Scanning with OCR(P. 498)
OCR Results Are Not Satisfactory(P. 499)

Scanning with OCR

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Select a file format.

If you want to separate multiple images and send them as separate files, each of which consists of only one page, press <Divide into Pages> ▶ enter the number of pages to divide by ▶ press <OK>. If you want to scan the images as a single file, press <Divide into Pages> ▶ <Cancel Settings>.

■To select PDF

1 Select <PDF> ▶ press <Set Details> ▶ <OCR (Text Searchable)>.

2 To change a language to use for OCR, press <OCR Language> select a language press <OK>.

■To select XPS

1 Select <XPS> ▶ press <Set Details> ▶ <OCR (Text Searchable)>.

2 To change a language to use for OCR, press <OCR Language> ▶ select a language ▶ press <OK>.

■To select the Word format for OOXML

1 Select <OOXML> ▶ select <Word> from the drop-down list.

NOTE:

- To change the language to use for OCR, press <Set Details> ▶ <Change> ▶ select the language ▶ press <OK>.

■To select the PowerPoint format for OOXML

1. Select <OOXML> ▶ select <PowerPoint> from the drop-down list.
2. Select <Set Details> ▶ <OCR (Text Searchable)>.
3. To change a language to use for OCR, press <OCR Language> select a language press <OK>.

6 Press <OK>.

NOTE

- If you select <PDF; OCR>, <XPS; OCR>, or <OOXML; OCR> as the file format, and <Smart Scan> is set to <On> in <OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>, the orientation of the original is detected, and the document is automatically rotated if necessary before it is sent. **<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>(P. 915)**
- If you select <PDF> or <XPS> as the file format, you can set <Compact> and <OCR (Text Searchable)> at the same time. In that case, <PDF; Compact> or <XPS; Compact> is displayed as the file format on the Scan and Send Basic Features screen.
- If you select <Word> for <OOXML>, you can set to delete the scanned background images. You can generate Word files which are easy to edit without unwanted images. **<Include Background Images in Word File>(P. 916)**
- Select one language or one group according to the language used in the originals to scan. **Settings and Languages for OCR Processing(P. 499)**

OCR Results Are Not Satisfactory

When you create text-searchable PDF/XPS/OOXML files, OCR (Optical Character Recognition) may not be properly processed. This may be because the settings on the machine, or the language, character type or format of the original document are not appropriate for OCR processing.

■Checking the Machine Settings and Supported Languages

You can improve OCR processing by customizing the machine settings regarding character recognition according to the originals, or by using suitable character types or fonts in the originals so that the machine can recognize the characters.

■Settings and Languages for OCR Processing

Item	Details
Language Settings for Character Recognition	**When a language is specified with OCR selected in <File Format>:** Characters are recognized based on the language you select for each file format.

Item	Details
	When a language is not specified with OCR selected in <File Format>: Characters are recognized based on the language you select in <Switch Language/ Keyboard> (**<Switch Language/Keyboard>(P. 811)**).*1
Recognizable Asian Languages	Japanese, Chinese (Simplified), Chinese (Traditional), Korean **Recognizable Character Types and Fonts (Asian Languages)(P. 500)**
Recognizable European Languages and Language Groups	**Languages:** English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, Albanian, Catalan, Danish, Finnish, Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish, Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Slovak, Estonian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Russian, Greek, Turkish **Language Groups:** Western European (ISO)*2, Central European (ISO)*3, Baltic (ISO)*4 **Recognizable Character Types and Fonts (European Languages)(P. 501)**

*1 Displayed languages in the list may vary. If you select English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, Thai, or Vietnamese, the selected language is recognized as Western European (ISO).

*2 Including English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, Albanian, Catalan, Danish, Finnish, Icelandic, Norwegian, and Swedish.

*3 Including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, and Slovak.

*4 Including Estonian, Latvian, and Lithuanian.

■ Recognizable Character Types and Fonts (Asian Languages)

Item	Details
Recognizable Character Types	**Japanese:** Alphanumeric characters, Kana characters, Kanji characters (JIS first level, and some of the JIS second level), Symbols **Chinese (Simplified):** Alphanumeric characters, Chinese characters, Symbols (GB2312-80) **Chinese (Traditional):** Alphanumeric characters, Chinese characters, Symbols (Big5) **Korean:** Alphanumeric characters, Chinese characters, Hangul characters, Symbols (KSC5601)
Recognizable Fonts	• Multiple fonts are supported. (Ming-cho type is recommended.) • Italicized characters cannot be recognized.
Fonts Used for Converted Characters (Only when Word is selected as the file format)	**Japanese:** Asian characters: MS Mincho European characters: Century **Chinese (Simplified):** Asian characters: SimSun European characters: Calibri **Chinese (Traditional):** Asian characters: PMingLiU European characters: Calibri

■ Recognizable Character Types and Fonts (European Languages)

Item	Details
Recognizable Character Types	Alphanumeric characters, Special characters of the recognized language*, Symbols
Recognizable Fonts	• Multiple fonts are supported. (Times, Century, and Arial are recommended.) • Italicized characters can be recognized.
Fonts Used for Converted Characters (Only when Word is selected as the file format)	• Calibri • Italic style is not reproduced.

* The following special Greek characters can be recognized. Special characters for each language can also be recognized. Some special characters cannot be recognized depending on the languages.
Α, Β, Γ, Δ, Ε, Ζ, Η, Θ, Ι, Κ, Λ, Μ, Ν, Ξ, Ο, Π, Ρ, Σ, Τ, Υ, Φ, Χ, Ψ, Ω, α, β, γ, δ, ε, ζ, η, θ, ι, κ, λ, μ, ν, ξ, ο, π, ρ, σ, τ,υ, φ, χ, ψ, ω

■ Checking the Format of the Original Documents

Use originals suitable for OCR processing to improve the processing accuracy when creating searchable PDF/XPS/OOXML files.

Item	Details
Original Format	Printed documents, Word processor documents (documents consisting of text, graphics, photographs, or tables, and with no character slant)
Text Format	• Horizontal and vertical writing (documents containing both horizontal and vertical writing can also be recognized) • Only horizontal writing can be recognized for European languages and Korean text. • One to three column documents with no complex column settings
Character Size	8 to 40 point
Table Format (For Word Format Only)	Tables that meet the following conditions: • Tables consist of squares divided with solid lines • Tables with up to 32 columns • Tables with up to 32 rows

IMPORTANT

Some originals suitable for OCR processing may not be processed properly.

- High accuracy may not be achieved with originals including a large amount of text on each page.
- Characters may be replaced with unintended characters or be missing due to the background color of the original, form and size of characters, or slanted characters.*
- Paragraphs, line breaks, or tables may not be reproduced.*
- Some parts of illustrations, photographs, or seal impressions may be recognized as characters and be replaced with characters.*

* When Word is selected as the file format.

Enhancing the Security of Electronic Files

ERJ8-08U



Electronic files are vulnerable to security threats, such as those of files being viewed easily and tampered without leaving any traces. When scanning important papers, you can enhance the security of the files by encrypting or adding a digital signature to them.
For information on the optional products required to use this function and the file formats, see **System Options(P. 1271)** .

NOTE

- Only PDF files can be encrypted.
- PDF and XPS files can have digital signatures.
- For PDF files, the encryption and digital signature functions can be used together.
- A PDF file created with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan> cannot be encrypted or digitally signed.

Performing Encryption(P. 502)
Adding a Digital Signature(P. 504)

Performing Encryption

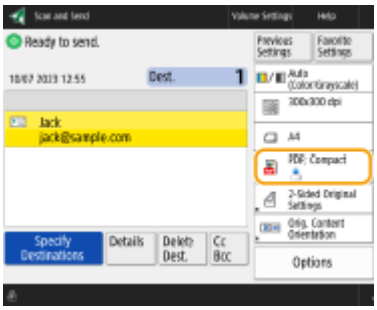
Setting a password when scanning an original enables PDF files to be encrypted for sending/saving. This helps reduce the risk of the files being viewed or edited by others.

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Press the setting button for file format.

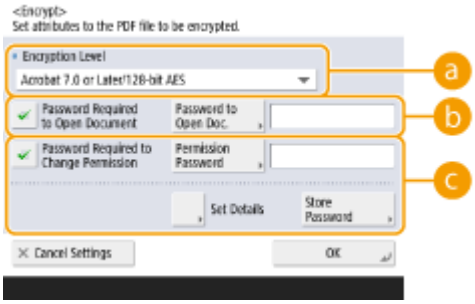


5 Press <PDF> ▶ <Set Details> ▶ <Encrypt>.

NOTE:

- To perform encryption, it is necessary to disable <Format to PDF/A>.
- You cannot set the Encrypted PDF mode when <Auto (OCR)> is set for <File Name>.
- This mode can be used only if an e-mail address or file server is specified as the destination.

6 Set the password and press <OK>.



a <Encryption Level>

Select the encryption level. If you want to use <Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES> rather than <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES> as the encryption level, use this setting to change the selections you can make. **<256-bit AES Settings for Encrypted PDF>(P. 918)**

b <Password Required to Open Document>

Enables you to set the password that is required when opening the file. Press <Password Required to Open Document> ▶ <Password to Open Doc.> to enter the password.

c <Password Required to Change Permission>

Enables you to set the password that is required when printing the file or editing the file, such as deleting pages, as well as to specify the operations that are allowed. Press <Password Required to Change Permission> ▶ <Permission Password> to enter the password, and then press <Set Details> and specify the operations to be permitted.

NOTE:

- <Allow Printing>
  - <Do Not Allow>: Printing is not allowed.
    (Even if you select <Do Not Allow>, the document can be printed if it is opened with the permission password in Adobe Acrobat 5 or earlier.)
  - <Allow (Low Resolution Only)>: Only low-resolution printing is allowed.
    (Appears only if you select <Acrobat 6.0 or Later/128-bit RC4>, <Acrobat 7.0 or Later/128-bit AES>, <Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>, or <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>.)
  - <Allow>: Printing is allowed.
- <Allow Changes>
  - <Do Not Allow>: Changing of files is not allowed.
  - <Insert, Delete, or Rotate Pages>: Inserting, deleting, and rotating pages are allowed. (Appears only if you select <Acrobat 6.0 or Later/128-bit RC4>, <Acrobat 7.0 or Later/128-bit AES>, <Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>, or <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>.)
  - <Signature Field Signing>: If there is already a signature field in the PDF, adding a digital signature to that signature field is allowed. (Appears only if you select <Acrobat 6.0 or Later/128-bit RC4>, <Acrobat 7.0 or Later/128-bit AES>, <Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>, or <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES>.)
  - <Commenting and Signature Field Signing>: Adding comments, and adding a digital signature to a signature field (if there is already a signature field in the PDF) are allowed.
  - <Changes but Add Comments/Extract Pages>: Changes to the document are allowed, except for adding comments and extracting pages. (Appears only if you select <Acrobat 3.0 or Later/40-bit RC4>.)

- <Changes but Extract Pages>: Changing of files except for extracting pages is allowed.

- <Enable Copying and Extraction of Images/Text>
  - Appears only if you select an item other than <Acrobat 3.0 or Later/40-bit RC4> for <Encryption Level>. If you select this item, you can copy or extract image/text from the scanned file.
- <Enable Access for Visually Impaired>
  - Appears only if you select an item other than <Acrobat 3.0 or Later/40-bit RC4> for <Encryption Level>. Selecting this item enables functions for reading aloud the text inside a file for the visually impaired.
- <Enable Accessibility, Copy, Extraction of Image/Text>
  - Appears only if you select <Acrobat 3.0 or Later/40-bit RC4> for <Encryption Level>. Selecting this key sets both <Enable Copying and Extraction of Images/Text> and <Enable Access for Visually Impaired> at the same time.

NOTE

- If you are logging in to the machine with personal authentication management (**Managing Users(P. 591)**), the <Store Password> button is displayed. Pressing this button saves the passwords you entered so that you can eliminate the need to enter passwords for the next setting.
- One password can be stored for each user. If you enter a new password when a password is already stored, the existing password is overwritten (the password is deleted if it is left blank).
- You cannot set the same password for both <Password to Open Document> and <Permission Password>.
- If you leave <Password to Open Document> or <Permission Password> empty, the stored password is erased.
- If you log in using User Authentication when all of the following conditions are true, multiple passwords may exist. In this case, a message confirming whether or not to use the password stored in <Store Password> may appear. Press <Yes> to use the password stored in <Store Password>. Press <No> to use the password registered in Favorite Settings.
  - A password is stored in <Store Password>
  - An encrypted PDF file is stored in Favorite Settings
  - The encrypted PDF file is recalled and sent from Favorite Settings
- To set digital signatures when <Password Required to Change Permission> is set, set <Allow Changes> to <Changes but Extract Pages>.
- Even if you set restrictions for a PDF file with <Permission Password>, some of the restrictions may be ignored if the reader opens the PDF with certain software.

7 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

Adding a Digital Signature

You can convert scanned originals into PDF/XPS files with a digital signature. A digital signature is similar to the act of signing and sealing papers, which enables you to check where and when the file was created and if the file was tampered or forged after it was signed. For detailed information about a digital signature and its settings, see **Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files(P. 683)** .

1 Place the original. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

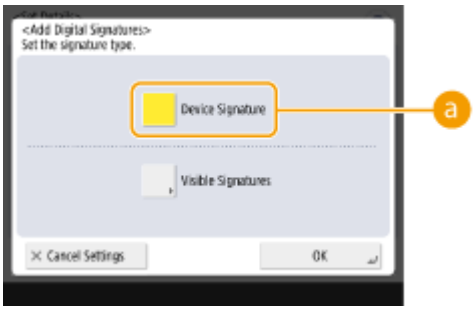
4 **Press the setting button for file format.**



5 **Press <PDF> or <XPS> <Set Details> <Add Digital Signatures>.**

- If you do not log in to the machine with personal authentication management and select <XPS>, press <Add Device Signature>.

6 **Select the digital signature and press <OK>.**



a <Device Signature>

The name of the machine is added to the file as a signature. The reader can verify that the file is scanned from the machine.

7 **Press (Start).**

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

NOTE

Making a digital signature recognized at a glance by the reader (visible signature) (only for a PDF file)

- Pressing <Visible Signatures> makes the signature appear on the first page of the file, enabling the reader to check at a glance who created the file.

When using together with PDF file encryption

- If you want to set a password for <Password Required to Change Permission> when encrypting a PDF file, select <Changes but Extract Pages> for <Allow Changes>. **Performing Encryption(P. 502)**
- Setting S/MIME enables you to send an e-mail with a digital signature as well as encryption. **<S/MIME Settings>(P. 958)**

LINKS

Managing Users(P. 591)

Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/Saving (Previous Settings)

ERJ8-08W



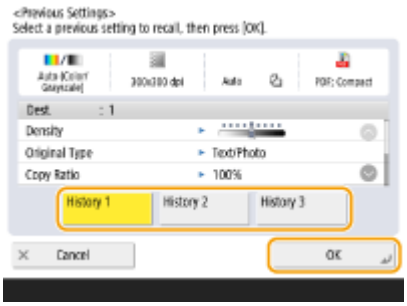
You can recall destinations specified in the past. Their scan settings such as density are also recalled at the same time.

1 **Place the original.** **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>.** **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Press <Previous Settings> on the Scan Basic Features screen.** **Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Select the log to recall and press <OK>.**



➠ The destination and its scan settings are specified according to the selected log.

- When personal authentication management is in use, the machine recalls the settings specified in the past by the user who are logging in to the machine.
- You can change the recalled settings before sending/saving.

5 **Press (Start).**

➠ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

IMPORTANT

- If you set <Manage Address Book Access Numbers> to <On>, you cannot recall recently used settings.
- If you set any address type to <On> in <Restrict New Destinations>, the currently stored Previous Settings are deleted.

NOTE

- If **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)** is set to <On>, the following password will not be stored in <Previous Settings>.
  - A password entered by specifying the destination in <New Destination>, and then pressing <File>

LINKS

Managing Users(P. 591)

Setting a File Name

ERJ8-08X



A scanned document is sent/saved with its file name automatically assigned. If you want to change the file name of documents so that the contents can be guessed from the name, specify the following settings before scanning.

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

5 **Press <Options> ▶ <File Name>.**

6 **Press <File Name>, enter the file name, and then press <OK>.**

- If you use characters such as "\", "/", ":", "*", "?", "<", ">", or "|" in the document name, you are unable to send the file to file servers that run on operating systems that do not recognize such characters.

7 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

8 **Press (Start).**

➡ Originals are scanned and sending/saving starts.

- When sending a document by e-mail, it is sent with its file name assigned in the format of "entered file name_page numbers (three digits).file extension," such as "business log_001.jpg." If you do not enter a file name, the format will be "Job numbers (four digits)_page numbers (three digits).file extension."
- When saving a document in a file server, it is saved with its file name assigned in the format of "entered file name_the year, month, day, hour, minute, and second the file is saved (14 digits).file extension," such as "business log_20151030133541.jpg." If you do not enter a file name, the format will be "the year, month, day, hour, minute, and second the file is saved (14 digits). file extension."

NOTE:

- Pressing to add a check mark to <Rmv Date/Job No. from File Name> excludes the data/time and the job number from the file name.

- If you are saving a document in a file server, selecting <Divide into Pages> when specifying a file format adds a page number (five digits) at the end of a file name.

TIPS

Extracting a text block in the document for use as its file name

If you set <OCR (Text Searchable)> for <PDF>, <XPS>, or <OOXML> in <File Format>, and then press <Auto (OCR)> for <File Name>, the text in the original is extracted and automatically entered into <File Name>. The maximum number of characters to be extracted can be set in <Max Number of Characters for File Name> for **<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>(P. 915)** .

- You cannot set <Encrypt> and <Auto (OCR)> at the same time.
- If you manually enter the file name and set <Auto (OCR)>, the extracted text is appended to the end of the filename. Characters over the character limit will be cut off.

Specifying a file name from the Remote UI

- You can specify <File Name> set in <Favorite Settings> from the Remote UI.



Start the Remote UI ▶ click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Function Settings] ▶ [Send] ▶ [Favorite Settings] ▶ [Edit...]

NOTE

- The file name generated with <Auto (OCR)> is not reflected to the following items:
  - The send job status (status display (on the bottom of the touch panel display))
  - TX Report
  - <File Name> in the job log

LINKS

System Options(P. 1271)
Performing Encryption(P. 502)

Specifying E-Mail Settings

ERJ8-08Y



You can specify the subject, body, reply-to address, and priority used when sending your documents as e-mail attachments.

IMPORTANT

- The reply-to address needs to be specified from among those registered in the Address Book. Register the desired address in the Address Book beforehand. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**
- You can specify a destination from the address book of a mobile device. You can also send information including the subject, body, and file name from the mobile device to the machine. **Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

4 Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

5 Press <Options> and specify e-mail settings.

■To specify subject/body

1 Press <Subject/Message>.

2 Press <Subject>, enter the subject, and then press <OK>.

NOTE:

- If nothing is entered, the subject entered in <Default Subject> is automatically set. **<Default Subject>(P. 960)**
- You can set the <Name> of a destination registered in the Address Book as the subject of the e-mail. **<Use Destination Name for Subject>(P. 960)**

3 Press <Message>, enter the body, and then press <OK>.

4 Press <OK>.

NOTE:

- If you send the subject/body from a mobile device to the machine, the complete sent text may not appear in the entry field. If this happens, press <Cancel Settings> on the subject/body entry screen.

■To specify reply-to address

1. Press <Reply-to>.
2. Select a reply-to address and press <OK>.
   - For instructions on how to specify destinations, see **Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)** .

NOTE:

- When you send an e-mail, the selected destination is set as the reply-to e-mail address when the recipient replies.
- When you send an I-fax, a Full mode delivery confirmation message is sent to the selected reply-to address.
- If you set a login service for the machine and set <Specify Authentication User for Reply-To> to <On>, the e-mail address of the login user appears as the reply-to address.

■To specify priority

1. Press <E-Mail Priority>.
2. Select a priority level and press <OK>.

6 Press <Close>.

7 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and sending starts.

Scanning while Removing a Specified Color

ERJ8-090



You can scan an original while removing a specified color. You can scan originals while removing the background color (paper color) or red markings, such as grading marks.

1 **Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)**

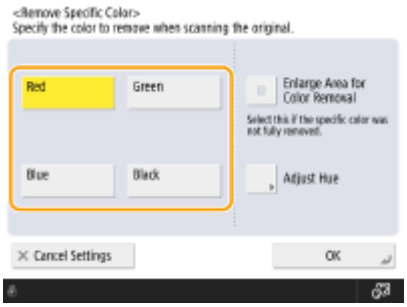
2 **Press <Scan and Send>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**

3 **Specify the destination on the Scan Basic Features Screen. Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)**

4 **Specify the scan settings as necessary. Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)**

5 **Press <Options> <Remove Specific Color>.**

6 **Select the color that you want to remove.**



- If the specified color is not removed and remains, select <Enlarge Area for Color Removal>.

7 **Press <Adjust Hue> to adjust the hue of the color to be removed, if necessary.**



- You can adjust the hue when you select <Red>, <Green>, or <Blue>.

8 **Press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

9 **Press (Start).**

➠ The original is scanned and sending or saving starts.

Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) Windows

ERJ8-091

You can scan originals placed on the machine by operating your computer. There are two methods for scanning, using the "Color Network ScanGear 2" scanner driver supplied with the machine and the WSD function available for Windows.



Using Color Network ScanGear 2 to Scan

You can scan originals directly into your favorite application for editing. This method is useful when you want to edit scanned photos in Photoshop or want to paste scanned picture into a Word document. **Using Color Network ScanGear 2(P. 516)**

Using WSD to Scan

Even if you do not have a dedicated scanner driver, you can scan an original easily from a computer using the WSD function available for Windows. **Using WSD(P. 520)**

Using Color Network ScanGear 2

ERJ8-092

You can scan an original by starting Color Network ScanGear 2 from an application such as Adobe Photoshop and Microsoft Office Word. Scanned documents can be edited or saved using the application's functions. You need to complete some procedures before using Color Network ScanGear 2. **Preparing to Use Color Network ScanGear 2(P. 516)**

Scanning Originals from an Application(P. 518)

NOTE

- For information about system environments in which Color Network ScanGear 2 can be used, see Help for Color Network ScanGear 2.
- Depending on the version of the Windows operating system you are using, the Color Network ScanGear 2 screens in this section may differ from your screens.
- Starting Color Network ScanGear 2 requires TWAIN-compliant applications. Check Help for each application to determine whether it supports TWAIN or not.

■Help for Color Network ScanGear 2

Clicking [Help] ▶ [Color Network ScanGear 2 Help] on the Color Network ScanGear 2 screen displays the Help screen. For information that is not in the User's Guide, including driver features and how to set up those features, see Help.

■Preparing to Use Color Network ScanGear 2

After installing Color Network ScanGear 2 on a computer (**Installing Drivers(P. 194)**), follow the following procedures to connect Color Network ScanGear 2 to the machine.

1 Click [Start] ▶ the list of applications ▶ [Color Network ScanGear 2] ▶ [Color Network ScanGear 2 Tool].

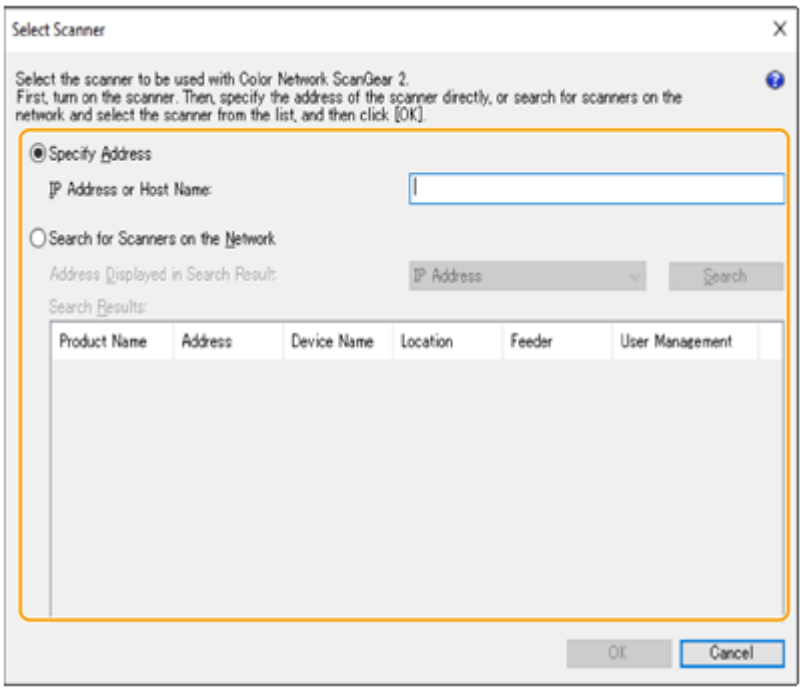
2 Search the machine.

■Specifying the IP address or host name of the machine

1. Click [Specify Address] and enter the IP address or host name of the machine in the [IP Address or Host Name] text box.

■Searching for the machine automatically

1. Click [Search for Scanners on the Network].
2. Select [IP Address] or [IP Address or Host Name] from the [Address Displayed in Search Result] drop-down list and click [Search].
3. Click to select the machine from the [Search Results] list box.



3 Click [OK].

- The [Select Scanner] dialog box closes.

4 Check that this machine is selected and click [Exit].

- To check if it can be connected properly, click [Test Connection].

Scanning Originals from an Application

ERJ8-093

This section describes the method for scanning an original by starting Color Network ScanGear 2 from an application. You can also scan a part of the original by specifying the scanning area.

From the control panel

1 Place the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

- To specify the scanning area, place the original on the platen glass.
- To scan multiple pages successively, place the originals in the feeder.

2 Press <Remote Scanner>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Online>.

➠ Now you are ready for scanning from your computer.

- During the online state, other functions such as copying are not available.

NOTE

- You can also set the machine to automatically go online. **<Auto Online>(P. 913)**

From a computer

NOTE

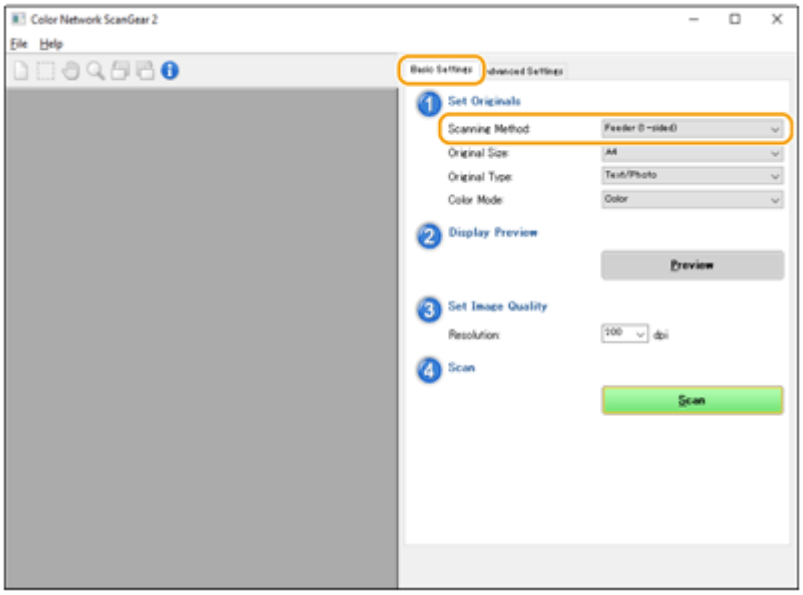
- When using this driver with the WIA-TWAIN compatibility mode of the operating system, etc., a UI dependent on the operating system is displayed and the procedure differs from that described here.

4 From the application menu, select the command that starts the scanning.

- Color Network ScanGear 2 starts. For more information, see the instruction manual for each application.

5 At [Scanning Method] of the [Basic Settings] tab, select the location where the original is placed.

- When placing the original on the platen glass, select [Platen Glass].
- When placing a 1-sided original in the feeder, select [Feeder (1-sided)]. For 2-sided originals, select [Feeder (2-sided)].



6 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

- You can specify the color, resolution, and original size for scanning. Clicking the [Advanced Settings] tab enables you to perform detailed settings such as original orientation. For more information, see Help for Color Network ScanGear 2.

7 Click [Scan].

➠ Scanning an original starts.

- When scanning is complete, the Color Network ScanGear 2 screen closes and the scanned original is displayed on the application screen.
- When the scanning operations are complete, press <Offline> on the <Scanner> screen.

NOTE

- You can also set the machine to automatically go offline. **<Auto Offline>(P. 913)**

Using WSD

ERJ8-094

"WSD (Web Services on Devices)" is a function to search devices located on the network. Using WSD enables you to automatically find the machine on the network from a computer, and start scanning the original on the machine. This function is called "WSD Scan." You need to complete some procedures before using WSD Scan. **Preparing for WSD Scan(P. 520)**

Scanning Originals Using WSD (WSD Scan)(P. 522)

IMPORTANT

In the following cases, WSD Scan is not available.

- ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM is activated **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**
- DepartmentID Authentication is in use as a login service **Changing Login Services(P. 1245)**

■Preparing for WSD Scan

From the control panel

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <WSD Settings>.**

3 **Press <On> for <Use WSD Scan>.**

4 **Press <OK>.**

5 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Yes> ▶ Restart the machine.**

From a computer

6 **Click [ ] (Start) ▶ [ ] (Settings) ▶ [Bluetooth & devices] ▶ [Printers & scanners].**

7 **Click [Add device] for [Add a printer or scanner].**

8 **Click [Add device] for the machine.**

➠ The machine is registered to the computer.

NOTE:

- If this machine is not displayed, a Firewall setting problem may exist. For details, contact the network administrator.

Scanning Originals Using WSD (WSD Scan)

ERJ8-095

This section describes how to scan originals from a computer using WSD.

NOTE

- The available scanning size is A4(LTR). Note that even if you place an original larger than A4(LTR), only A4(LTR) size is scanned.

From the control panel

1 Place the original. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**

2 Press <WSD Scan>. **<Home> Screen(P. 212)**

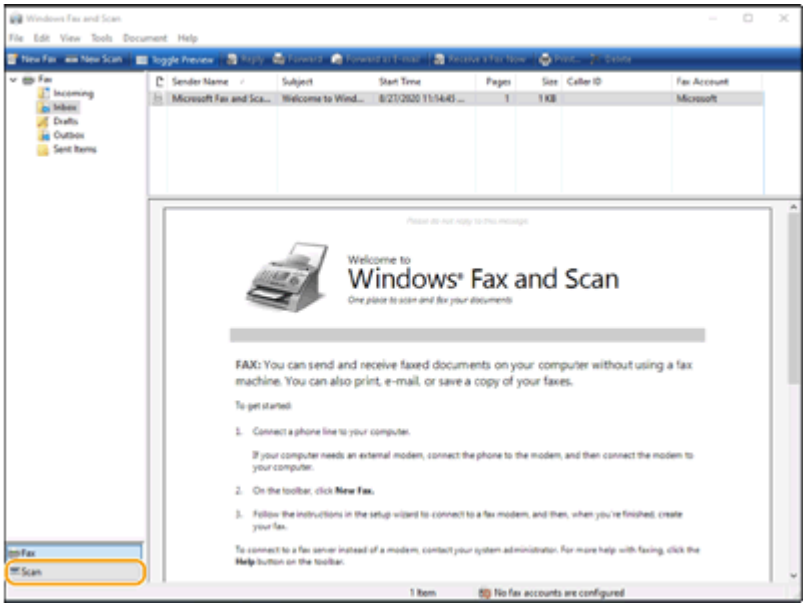
3 Press <Allow Remote Scanner>.

➠ Now you are ready for scanning from your computer.

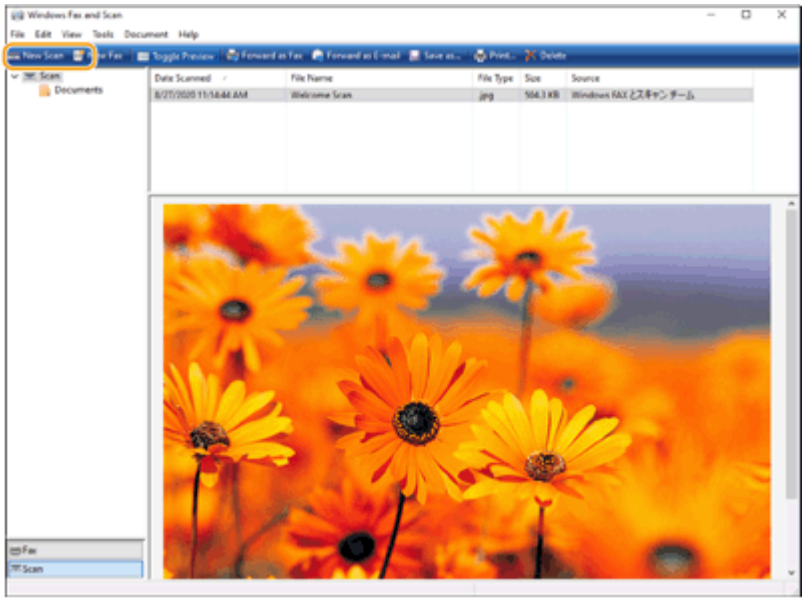
From a computer

4 Click [ ] (Start) ▶ [All] ▶ [Windows Tools] ▶ double-click [Windows Fax and Scan].

5 Click [Scan].



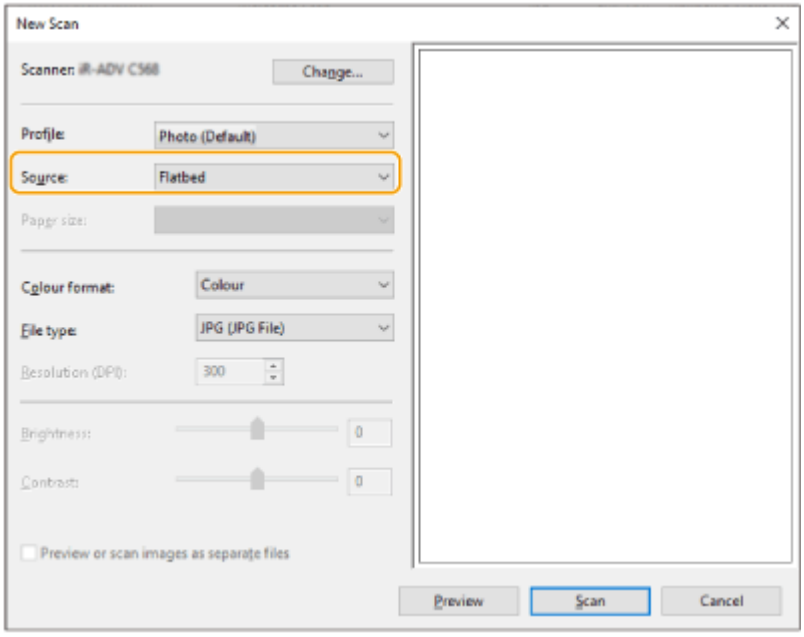
6 Click [New Scan].



- When the [Select Device] dialog box is displayed, select the machine and click [OK].

7 From the [Source] drop-down list, select the location where the original is placed.

- When placing the original on the platen glass, select [Flatbed]. When placing in the feeder, select [Feeder (Scan one side)].



8 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

- Selecting the type of original from the [Profile] drop-down list enables you to make adjustments for the optimal image quality. For originals mainly consisting of text, select [Document]. For originals consisting of photographs only, select [Photo (Default)].
- From the [File type] drop-down list, select the file format for the saved image of the scanned original.
- To check the scanned image with the specified settings reflected, click [Preview].

9 Click [Scan].

➡ Scanning an original starts.

- When scanning is complete, the scanned document is displayed in the list of files on the [Windows Fax and Scan] screen and saved in the [Scanned Documents] folder of [Documents].

NOTE

Registering frequently used scan settings

- If you always scan with the same settings, follow the procedures below to register the settings. You can easily and conveniently recall them when scanning.
  Select [Add profile] from the [Profile] drop-down list ▶ Specify the scan settings you want to register ▶ Enter a name in the [Profile name] text box ▶ Click [Save Profile]

Sending the document to a computer using WSD

- You can also send the scanned document to computers on the network that support WSD. In this case, press <WSD Scan> ▶ select the computer you want to send to ▶ <Enable>. The [Windows Fax and Scan] screen and the folder open in the computer, and the scanned document is displayed.
- Up to 40 destination computers are displayed.

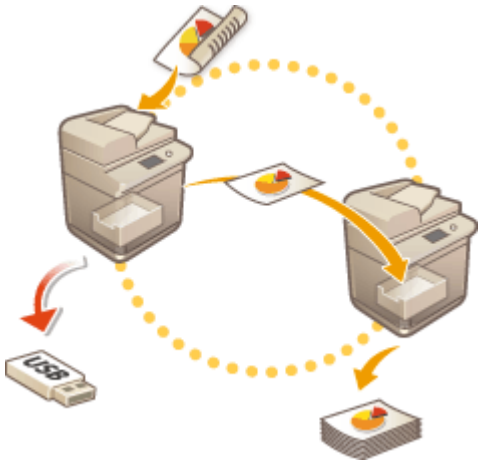
Using Storage Space

Using Storage Space 526
Working with Other Devices 528
Saving Documents in Other Devices 529
Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices 530
Printing Files in Other Devices 533
Working with Data in Memory Media 535
Saving Documents in Memory Media 537
Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media 539
Printing Files in Memory Media 543
Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save 545
Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files 548
Storage Locations and File Formats for Each Mode 552

Using Storage Space

ERJ8-096

Documents scanned from your machine can be saved in the Advanced Space of other Canon multifunction printers, or files saved in the Advanced Space of other printers can be printed and deleted from your machine. Connecting memory media to the machine also provides you with an external storage space. Find and use the ideal storage space according to your needs.



Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)
Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files(P. 548)

■Working with Other Devices

You can access a shared storage, "Advanced Space" of other Canon multifunction printers* from your machine for remote operations of files, such as saving and deleting. You can also access a Windows server from your machine to perform file operations such as printing.

* Available only for imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machines connected to a network



Working with Other Devices(P. 528)

■Working with Data in Memory Media

Even if the machine is not connected to a network, the use of memory media allows for easy data exchange with computers. With memory media, you can also rename data and delete unwanted data in the media from the machine, as well as save scanned data and print data.



Working with Data in Memory Media(P. 535)

Working with Other Devices

ERJ8-097

Documents scanned from your machine can be saved in the Advanced Space of other Canon multifunction printers*, or files saved in the Advanced Space of other printers can be printed and deleted from your machine. You can also access a Windows server from your machine to perform file operations such as printing.

* Available only for imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machines connected to a network



Saving Documents in Other Devices(P. 529)
Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices(P. 530)
Printing Files in Other Devices(P. 533)

IMPORTANT

- To access other devices, some settings need to be specified beforehand. **Connecting to the Other Devices(P. 206)**
- To prevent unauthorized operations from being performed, the Advanced Space that is open to a network requires a user authentication. The machine being accessed also requires a user authentication. When the login screen is displayed when accessing the Advanced Space of the other machine, enter the user name and password used to log in to that machine. When your operations are complete, be sure to log out.

Saving Documents in Other Devices

ERJ8-098

Follow the procedures below to save scanned documents in the Advanced Space of another Canon multifunction printer or in a Windows server.

1 Set the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

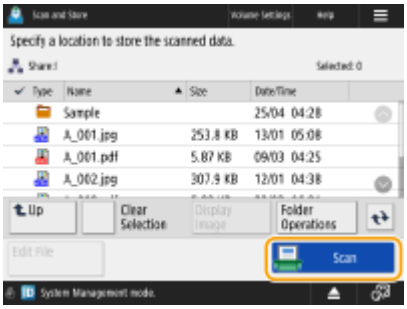
2 Press <Scan and Store>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

3 Press <Network>.

4 Select the device you want to access.

- For information on the items on the screen and instructions on how to use them, see **Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices(P. 530)** .

5 Display the save location and press <Scan>.



6 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

- For scan settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)** .

7 Press (Start).

➠ Originals are scanned and saved as files.

- When canceling scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). After scanning all of the originals, press <Start Storing> to save the file.

NOTE

- To check the result of saving, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Store> ▶ <Job Log>. If <NG> is displayed, the file is not saved successfully. Try operating again.

Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices

ERJ8-099

You can use the machine to perform remote operations, such as checking and deleting files, in the Advanced Space of another Canon multifunction printer or in a Windows server.

1 Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Network>.

3 Select the device you want to access.





a <Up>

Press to move to the upper level from the current one.

b <Check Storage Information>

Selecting a device and pressing <Details> enables you to check the information (protocol/path) of the device.

NOTE:

- You can also use a personal folder as the destination. For information on the personal folder settings, see **Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)** .

4 Operate files and folders.



a Location currently displayed

Displays the location (path) where files and folders of b are saved.

b Files and folders saved

Displays whether files or folders are selected, icons indicating the file type or folder, names, file sizes, and saved dates/times.

- Press <Name> or <Date/Time> to sort the list of files and folders by name or date/time in ascending (▲) or descending (▼) order.
- If you log in with personal authentication management, the sorting condition that was last used is retained. **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**
- When files are selected, numbered icons are displayed in the order you select the files. If you are printing multiple files at the same time, they are printed in that order.
- In the Shared Space, a folder named "folder" is prepared.

c Number of selected files

Displays the number of files in the selection.

d <Print>

Prints files. **Printing Files in Other Devices(P. 533)**

e <Folder Operations>

Press to create folders.

f <Display Image>

Displays the preview image of a file. You can also print after checking the preview image.

g <Clear Selection>

Deselects all the files selected in b.

h <Edit File>

Press to display the menu for adding a file or displaying the details for, deleting, or renaming the selected file.

i Display switch button

Press <Up> to move to the upper level from the current one. To update the contents of the displayed screen, press .

■To change a file name

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Change File Name>.
2. Enter a file name and press <OK>.

■To display the preview image of a file

1. Select a file and press <Display Image>.
2. After checking the preview image, press <Back>.
   - To print the file, press <Print>.

■To check the detailed information of a file

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Details>.
2. After checking the detailed information, press <OK>.

■To delete a file

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Delete>.
2. Press <Yes>.

NOTE:

- You can select and delete up to 32 files at a time.

■To scan and save documents

1. Set the original. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**
2. Press <Edit File> ▶ <Add Files (Scan and Store)>.
3. Specify the scan settings as necessary and press .
   - For scan settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)** .

■To create a folder

1. Press <Folder Operations>.
2. Press <Create Folder>.
3. Enter a folder name and press <OK>.
4. Press <OK>.

■To check the detailed information of a folder

1. Display a folder whose information you want to check and press <Folder Operations>.
2. Select a folder and press <Details>.
3. After checking the detailed information, press <OK>.

NOTE

- When the operation is complete, press <Disconnect>. <Disconnect> is displayed when all of the following conditions are met.
  - User authentication is not performed
  - The machine is logged in to the connected file server

Printing Files in Other Devices

ERJ8-09A

You can use the machine to directly print files saved in the Advanced Space of another Canon multifunction printer or in a Windows server.

1 Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Network>.

3 Select the device you want to access.

- For information on the items on the screen and instructions on how to use them, see **Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices(P. 530)** .

4 Select a file and press <Print>.

- If you select PDF or XPS files, proceed to step 6.

NOTE:

- You can select and print up to 6 files in the same folder at a time.

5 Select the paper source and press <OK>.

6 Enter the number of prints using the numeric keys.

- If you select multiple files in step 4, press <Change No. of Copies> and enter the number of prints.

7 Specify the print settings as necessary.

- For print settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files(P. 548)** .

NOTE:

- To print a PDF file with a password, press <Options> ▶ <Password to Open Doc.> ▶ <Encryption Password>, enter the password, and press <OK>. To print PDF files that forbid printing, or print PDF files that only allow low-resolution printing in high resolution, enter the specified password.

8 Press <Start Printing>.

➠ Printing starts.

- To cancel printing, press <Cancel> ▶ <Yes>.

LINKS

Saving Documents in Other Devices(P. 529)

Loading Paper(P. 40)

Working with Data in Memory Media

ERJ8-09C

Connecting memory media to the USB port of the machine enables you to save scanned data or print files in the media. Rename files or delete unwanted files from the machine so that you can manage and organize data in the media without using a computer.



Saving Documents in Memory Media(P. 537)
Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media(P. 539)
Printing Files in Memory Media(P. 543)

Inserting a memory media

For available memory media or how to insert a memory media, see **Connecting a USB Memory Device(P. 22)** .

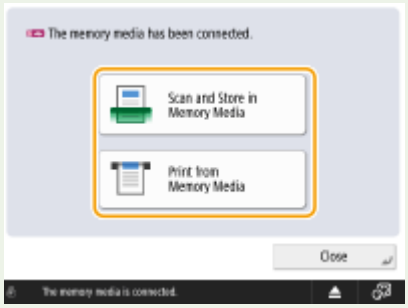
IMPORTANT

Be sure to check before using memory media

- To use the memory media, it is necessary that <Memory Media> in <Store Location Display Settings> is set to <On>. **<Store Location Display Settings>(P. 811)**
- Set <Use Scan Function> and <Use Print Function> to <On>. **<Use Scan/Print Function>(P. 1002)**
- When the memory media is not recognized even if it is connected properly, the machine may be set to use the MEAP driver for USB external storage device. Set <Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device> to <Off>. **<Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device>(P. 878)**

NOTE

- If <Select Option When Connecting Memory Media> is set to <On>, shortcuts to the available functions are displayed when you insert memory media. **<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>(P. 1002)**

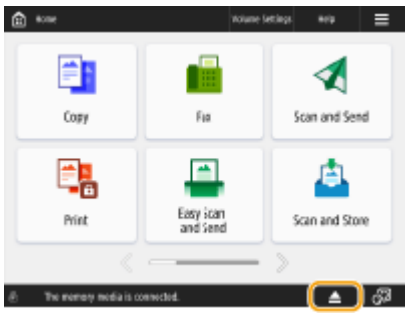


- Since the shortcuts may not be displayed if the machine is in the Sleep mode, insert the memory media after the machine has recovered from the Sleep mode.

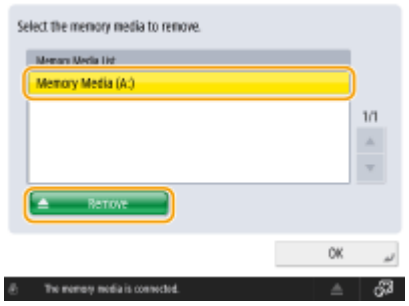
Removing the memory media

When removing the memory media, always use the following procedure. Using a different procedure to remove the memory media may cause damage to the memory media and the main unit of the machine.

1 Press .



2 Select the memory media that you want to disconnect and press <Remove>.



3 Disconnect the memory media from the USB port and press <OK> <OK>.

Saving Documents in Memory Media

ERJ8-09E

Follow the procedures below to convert scanned documents into a file format commonly supported by a computer to save in memory media. This method is convenient when you need to move files to a computer not connected to a network.

NOTE

- You cannot store documents in the memory media if there is no free space available.

1 Set the original. Placing Originals(P. 35)

2 Press <Scan and Store>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

- If <Select Option When Connecting Memory Media> is set to <On>, a shortcut to <Scan and Store in Memory Media> is displayed when you insert memory media. Press <Scan and Store in Memory Media> and proceed to step 4. **<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>(P. 1002)** **Inserting a memory media(P. 535)**

3 Press <Memory Media>.

4 Select the desired memory media.

- For information on the items on the screen and instructions on how to use them, see **Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media(P. 539)** .

5 Display the save location and press <Scan>.



6 Specify the scan settings as necessary.

- For scan settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)** .

7 Press (Start).

➡ Originals are scanned and saved as files.

- To cancel scanning, press <Cancel> or (Stop) ▶ <Yes>.

■When <Press the [Start] key to scan the next original.> is displayed

Place the next original to scan and press (Start). After scanning all of the originals, press <Start Storing> to save the file.

NOTE:

- To check the result of saving, press (Status Monitor) ▶ <Store> ▶ <Job Log>. If <NG> is displayed, the file is not saved successfully. Try the operation again.

Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media

ERJ8-09F

You can create folders and delete files saved in memory media from the machine. For example, you can save a file created on a computer in memory media, and delete it from the machine after printing.

1 Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

2 Press <Memory Media>.

3 Select the desired memory media.



a <Up>

Press to move to the upper level from the current one.

b <Check Media Information>

Enables you to check the serial number and the free space of the memory media.

c 

Press to remove the memory media. Be sure to press this button to safely remove the memory media. For instructions on how to remove, see **Removing the memory media(P. 536)** .

4 Operate files and folders.



a Files and folders saved

Displays whether files or folders are selected, icons indicating the file type or folder, names, file sizes, and saved dates/times.

- Press <Name> or <Date/Time> to sort the list of files and folders by name or date/time in ascending (▲) or descending (▼) order.
- If you log in with personal authentication management, the sorting condition that was last used is retained. **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**
- When files are selected, numbered icons are displayed for each file, in the order selected. If you are printing multiple files at the same time, they are printed in that order.

ⓑ Number of selected files

Displays the number of files in the selection.

ⓒ <Print>

Prints files. **Printing Files in Memory Media(P. 543)**

ⓓ <Folder Operations>

Press this in the following cases.

- When checking <Details> for a folder that exists in the displayed level
- When performing <Create Folder> in the displayed level

NOTE:

- The following items can be checked in <Details>. You can also press <Rename Folder> to rename the folder.
  - Folder Name
  - Location
  - Updated

ⓔ <Display Image>

Displays the preview image of a file. You can also print after checking the preview image and deleting unnecessary pages.

ⓕ <Clear Selection>

Deselects all the files selected in ⓐ.

ⓖ <Edit File>

Press to display the menu for adding a file or displaying the details for, deleting, or renaming the selected file.

You can press <Details> to display the following items. You can also press <Change File Name> to rename the file.

- File Name
- Location
- File Type
- Size
- Updated

ⓗ Display switch button

Press <Up> to move to the upper level from the current one. To update the contents of the displayed screen, press ↻.

■To change a file name

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Change File Name>.
2. Enter a file name and press <OK>.

■To display the preview image of a file

1. Select a file and press <Display Image>.
2. After checking the preview image, press <Back>.

■To check the detailed information of a file

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Details>.
2. After checking the detailed information, press <OK>.

■To delete a file

1. Select a file and press <Edit File> ▶ <Delete>.
2. Press <Yes>.

NOTE:

- You can select and delete up to 32 files at a time.

■To scan and save documents

1. Set the original. **Placing Originals(P. 35)**
2. Press <Edit File> ▶ <Add Files (Scan and Store)>.
3. Specify the scan settings as necessary and press .
   - For scan settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save(P. 545)** .

■To create a folder

1. Press <Folder Operations>.
2. Press <Create Folder>.
3. Enter a folder name and press <OK>.
4. Press <OK>.

■To change a folder name

1. Display a folder whose name you want to change and press <Folder Operations>.
2. Select a folder and press <Details>.
3. Press <Rename Folder>.
4. Enter a folder name and press <OK>.
5. Press <OK>.

■To check the detailed information of a folder

1. Display a folder whose information is to be checked and press <Folder Operations>.
2. Select a folder and press <Details>.
3. After checking the detailed information, press <OK>.

Printing Files in Memory Media

ERJ8-09H

Even if the machine is not connected to a computer, or a printer driver is not installed in the computer, you can print files saved in memory media from the machine.

1 Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)

- If <Select Option When Connecting Memory Media> is set to <On>, a shortcut to <Print from Memory Media> is displayed when you insert memory media. Press <Print from Memory Media> and proceed to step 3. **<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>(P. 1002)** **Inserting a memory media(P. 535)**

2 Press <Memory Media>.

3 Select the desired memory media.

- For information on the items on the screen and instructions on how to use them, see **Working with Files and Folders in Memory Media(P. 539)** .

4 Select a file and press <Print>.

- If you select PDF or XPS files, proceed to step 6.

NOTE:

- You can select and print up to 6 files in the same memory media at a time.

5 Select the paper source and press <OK>.

6 Enter the number of prints using the numeric keys.

- If you select multiple files in step 4, press <Change No. of Copies> and enter the number of prints.

7 Specify the print settings as necessary.

- For print settings, see **Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files(P. 548)** .

NOTE:

- To print a file with a password, press <Options> ▶ <Password to Open Document> ▶ <Encryption Password>, enter the password, and press <OK>. To print PDF files that forbid printing, or print PDF files that only allow low-resolution printing in high resolution, enter the specified password.
- If you press <Start Printing> without entering a password, a password entry screen is displayed if the file has an encryption password.

8 Press <Start Printing>.

➠ Printing starts.

- To cancel printing, press <Cancel> ▶ <Yes>.

LINKS

Saving Documents in Memory Media(P. 537)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

Setting Screen and Operations for Scanning to Save

ERJ8-09J

When you press <Scan and Store> on the <Home> screen, and then press <Network> or <Memory Media> to scan originals, the following setting screen is displayed.



1 ☰

Press this icon to register the current settings in <Favorite Settings> of 2 or in the Home. **Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen(P. 247)**

2 <Favorite Settings>

Register frequently used scan settings here in advance to easily recall them when necessary.

3 Current setting status and setting buttons

Displays setting status such as resolution and scanning size. Make sure to confirm the settings in order to scan properly. To change the settings, press the button under the display section. For information on file formats, see **System Options(P. 1271)** .

- You can select the color mode for scanning by pressing <Select Color>. You can also select the following scan settings.
  - <Auto (Color/Grayscale)>, <Auto (Color/B&W)>, <Full Color>, <Grayscale>, <Black & White>
- Depending on the state of the color original, it may be detected as black and white when scanned, even if you set <Auto (Color/Grayscale)> or <Auto (Color/B&W)>. To avoid this, set the color mode to <Full Color>.
- When it is necessary to specify a particular size, press <Scan Size> and specify the size of the original to be scanned.
- Set <Resolution> to high when you want to scan the original clearly, and set <Resolution> to low when you want to reduce the file size.
- Press <File Format> to select the file format to convert to according to your purposes and environment.

4 <Options>

Enables you to specify the settings of functions that are not displayed in 3 / 7. For details about each setting item, see **Options(P. 1224)** .

5 <Restore Default Set.>

Changes scan setting into setting values registered in <Change Default Settings>. **<Change Default Settings>(P. 996)**

6 <Cancel>

Cancels scan settings and returns to the file selection screen.

7 Function setting buttons

Displays the most frequently used buttons. The setting status is displayed on the buttons. To change the settings, press the desired button.

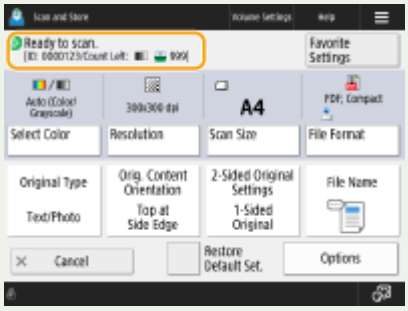
- If you press <Original Type>, you can manually select the scanning mode according to the type of originals, such as materials with only letters and magazines with pictures on them. To adjust the text/photo processing priority level, press <Adjust Level> select <Text Priority> or <Photo Priority>.
- Press <Orig. Content Orientation> to change the scanning orientation to a portrait orientation or a landscape orientation.
- Select <2-Sided Original Settings> to scan both the front and back sides of the original.
  - Select <Book Type> if the front and back sides of the original have the same top-bottom orientation.
  - Select <Calendar Type> if the front and back sides of the original have the opposite top-bottom orientation.
- If you press <File Name>, you can assign a file name for a file when saving.
  - You cannot use the following characters in a file name: \ / : , * ? " < > |. Also, you cannot use a . (period) or space for the first or last character of a file name.
  - If you do not specify anything, the saved date and time is automatically assigned as a file name. For example, if a file is saved as a JPEG at 1:05:12 p.m. on October 30, 2015, its name will be "20151030130512.jpg."

NOTE:

- If a file name is too long, the string (path) indicating the file location may exceed the maximum of 256 characters, causing the file to not be specified.
- If you enter a file name that already exists in the save location, (1) to (9) is added to the file name, for example, "a(1).pdf" (except for the files in the Mail Box).
- If <Divide into Pages> is selected when specifying the file format, a three-digit page number is added to the end of a file name. For a file with the name "a.pdf," for example, the file is divided into "a_001.pdf," "a_002.pdf," and "a_003.pdf" when saved.

NOTE

- The number of pages remaining is displayed if a page limit is set with Department ID Management. For information on setting Department ID Management and page limits, see **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)** .



LINKS

Saving Documents in Other Devices(P. 529)
Saving Documents in Memory Media(P. 537)

Setting Screen and Operations for Printing Saved Files

ERJ8-09K

When you press <Access Stored Files> on the <Home> screen, and then press <Network> or <Memory Media> to print files, the following setting screen is displayed.

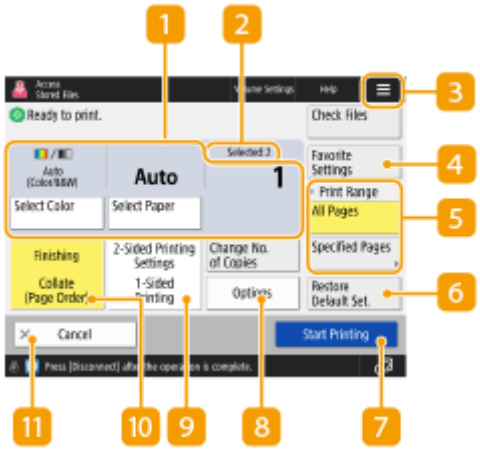
Setting screen for Network/Memory Media(P. 548)

NOTE

- Depending on the function, see the <Copy> function for details.

Setting screen for Network/Memory Media

■ Print Settings Screen



1 Current setting status and setting buttons

Displays setting status such as paper size to print on and the number of prints. Make sure to confirm the settings in order to print properly. To change the settings, press the button under the display section. To change the number of prints, enter the number using the numeric keys.

- You can select the color mode for printing by pressing <Select Color>.
- You can select the paper size/type and the paper source by pressing <Select Paper>.

2 Number of selected files

Displays the number of selected files.

- When selecting multiple files, the <Change No. of Copies> button appears. To change the number of prints, press this button.

3 ☰

Press this icon to register the current settings in <Favorite Settings> of 4 or to change the factory default print settings.

4 <Favorite Settings>

Register frequently used scan settings here in advance to easily recall them when necessary.

5 <Print Range>

Specify this setting when you select a file with two pages or more. To print all pages of a file, press <All Pages>, or to specify the pages to print, press <Specified Pages> and enter the range of pages to print.

6 <Restore Default Set.>

Changes print settings into setting values registered in <Change Default Settings>. **<Change Default Settings>(P. 998)**

7 <Start Printing>

Starts printing.

8 <Options>

Enables you to specify the settings of functions that are not displayed in 1 / 9. For details about each setting item, see **Options(P. 550)** .

9 <2-Sided Printing Settings>

Select the type of 2-sided printing.

NOTE:

- If you select a PDF file when <Select Paper> is set to <Auto>, and the sizes of the front and back page differ, the pages are printed as one-sided prints on paper of their respective sizes. If you want such pages to be printed as two-sided documents, select the appropriate paper sizes in advance.

10 <Finishing>

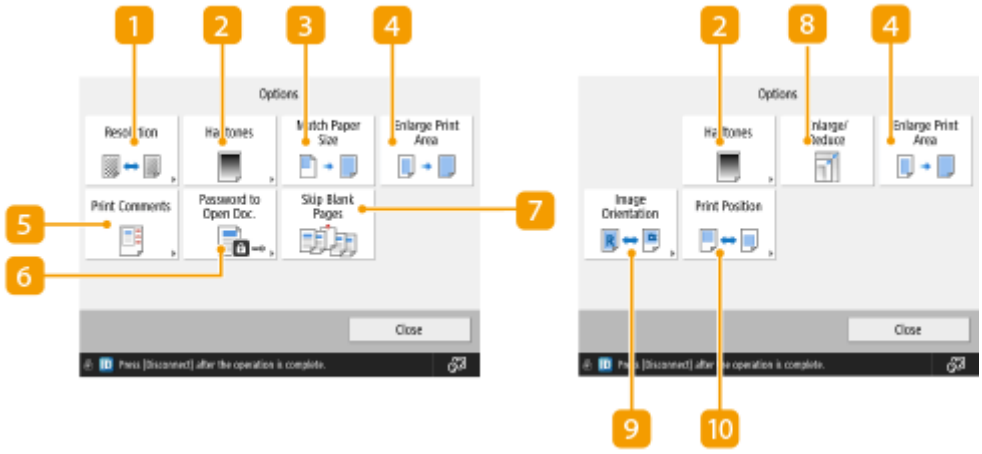
Select the finishing method.

- Available when printing PDF/XPS files.

11 <Cancel>

Cancels print settings and returns to the file selection screen.

■Options



1 <Resolution>

Enables you to select the resolution.

2 <Halftones>

Enables you to select the halftone printing mode to match the file you want to print.

- <Resolution>: Enables fine printing so that the outlines of text data, etc. are clearer. This mode is optimal for printing data containing a lot of text or fine lines.
- <Gradation>: Enables printing with both smooth gradations and clear outlines. You can adjust this setting to smoothly print shapes and graphs using gradation.
- <Error Diffusion>: Suitable for sharply printing the contours of CAD data, and data that includes text and fine lines, etc.

3 <Match Paper Size>

Adjusts the size of a PDF/XPS file to match the paper size when printing.

4 <Enlarge Print Area>

Narrows the blank borders at each side of the page and enlarges the printablearea.

5 <Print Comments>

Adds comments when printing PDF files.

6 <Password to Open Doc.>

Prints password protected PDF files by entering the password required to open them.

NOTE:

- When printing multiple PDF files with a password, each PDF file must have the same password to use this function.

7 <Skip Blank Pages>

Enables you to set the machine to detect blank pages included in documents and not print them.

8 <Enlarge/Reduce>

Enables you to adjust the image size of JPEG and TIFF files to match the paper size when printing.

9 <Image Orientation>

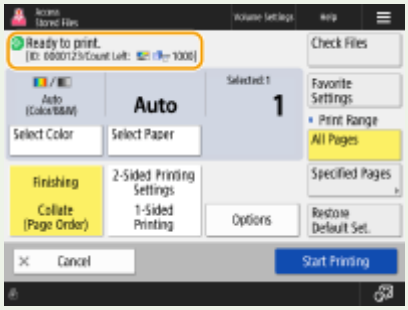
Enables you to set the machine to automatically detect the aspect ratio of the image for a JPEG or TIFF file, and print it vertically or horizontally as required. You can also manually specify to print vertically or horizontally.

10 <Print Position>

Enables you to set the print position for JPEG and TIFF files to the center or top left of the page when printing.

NOTE

- For information on file formats, see **System Options(P. 1271)** .
- The number of pages remaining is displayed if a page limit is set with Department ID Management. For information on setting Department ID Management and page limits, see **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)** .



- Only the following functions can be set/changed when different file types (such as PDF and JPEG) are selected at the same time.
  - Color
  - Select Paper
  - 2-Sided Printing
  - Change No. of Copies

LINKS

Printing Files in Other Devices(P. 533)
Printing Files in Memory Media(P. 543)

Storage Locations and File Formats for Each Mode

ERJ8-09L

You can use <Options> from the print settings screen to access a wide variety of print options to meet your needs. The <Options> that you can use differ based on the storage location and file format.
The following <Options> are supported for each storage location and file format.

✓: Available

-: Unavailable

Options	Storage		
	Network/ Memory Media		
	TIFF/ JPEG	PDF	XPS
<Resolution>	-	✓	✓
<Halftones>	✓	✓	✓
<Enlarge/Reduce>	✓	-	-
<Enlarge Print Area>	✓	✓	✓
<Image Orientation>	✓	-	-
<Print Position>	✓	-	-
<Match Paper Size>	-	✓	✓
<Print Comments>	-	✓	-
<Password to Open Doc.>	-	✓	-
<Skip Blank Pages>	-	✓	✓

Linking with Mobile Devices

Linking with Mobile Devices 554
Connecting with Mobile Devices 555
Connecting Directly 556
Utilizing the Machine through Applications 559
Using AirPrint 562
Printing with AirPrint 567
Scanning with AirPrint 570
Faxing with AirPrint 572
If AirPrint Cannot Be Used 574
Printing with Default Print Service (Android) 575

Linking with Mobile Devices

ERJ8-09R

Linking the machine with mobile devices such as smart phones and tablets enables you to easily print and scan using applications. In addition, you can operate the machine from mobile devices via remote control to confirm printing status and change the settings of the machine.



Connecting with Mobile Devices(P. 555)
Utilizing the Machine through Applications(P. 559)
Using AirPrint(P. 562)
Printing with Default Print Service (Android)(P. 575)

IMPORTANT

- Depending on your mobile device, the machine may not operate correctly.

Connecting with Mobile Devices

ERJ8-09S

There are two methods to connect the mobile devices with the machine, "Connecting via a Wireless LAN Router" and "Direct connection." Select a connection method in accordance with the communication environment and the device you are using.
Perform communication with mobile devices from <Mobile Portal> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**). You can confirm the information of connected mobile devices, etc., from here.

■ Connecting via a Wireless LAN Router

For information on how to connect a mobile device to your wireless LAN router, see the manuals provided with the devices, or contact the manufacturer.
Connect with the machine using either a wired LAN or wireless LAN router. **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)**



NOTE

- If you connect to the machine via a wireless LAN router, you can confirm details of the machine on the <LAN Connection> screen by pressing <Mobile Portal> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) ▶ <LAN Connection>.

■ Connecting Directly

Directly connect a mobile device to the machine wirelessly without using wireless LAN. It is possible to immediately connect to the machine wirelessly even outside of a wireless LAN environment. **Connecting Directly(P. 556)**



Connecting Directly

ERJ8-09U

Even in an environment without a wireless LAN router, you can still directly connect your mobile device to the machine via "Access Point Mode," which enable connections between the device and the machine without the need to configure complicated settings.



Preparing to Connect Directly(P. 556)
Connecting Directly (Access Point Mode)(P. 557)

Preparing to Connect Directly

Establish a connection by using Access Point Mode in the following order.

1 

Check the network settings of the machine.

- Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings> ▶ set <Use IPv4> to <On>.

2 

Prepare the mobile device.

- Configure the mobile device to enable Wi-Fi connection.

3 

Prepare the machine for connection.

- Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings> ▶ set <Use Direct Connection> to <On>.
- Press <Mobile Portal> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**) ▶ <Direct Connection> ▶ <Enable>.
- If <Automatically Enable/Disable Direct Connection at Login/Logout> is set to <On> in <Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>, direct connections are possible when logging in without pressing <Mobile Portal> ▶ <Direct Connection> ▶ <Enable>. **<Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>(P. 867)**

NOTE

- For details on using Canon PRINT, see the related manuals. (https://global.canon/cpis/)

- If the message <Cannot be used with the current settings. Contact the system manager.> is displayed on the top of the touch panel display and <Enable> cannot be pressed, confirm that <Use Direct Connection> is set to <On>. If <Use Direct Connection> is set to <On> but <Enable> cannot be pressed, change the IP address in <IP Address Settings for Direct Connection>.
  <Use Direct Connection>(P. 865)
  <IP Address Settings for Direct Connection>(P. 867)
- When using the Access Point Mode, if the machine is started with <Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified> set to <On>, direct connections are possible without pressing <Mobile Portal> <Enable>. **<Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified>(P. 866)**

Connecting Directly (Access Point Mode)

IMPORTANT

- It may take some time for connection between the machine and the mobile device to be established.

■ Connecting Manually

1 With the machine as the connection destination, configure the wireless LAN settings on your mobile device, using the SSID and network key information shown on the touch panel display of the machine.

2 After completing the desired operations, press <Disconnect>.

■ Connecting with a QR Code

For Canon PRINT

1 Start Canon PRINT on the mobile device.

2 Read the QR code shown on the touch panel display of the machine.

3 After completing the desired operations, press <Disconnect>.

NOTE

- If you cannot read the QR code, update Canon PRINT to the latest version.

For devices using iOS (iOS11 or later)

1 Start the standard camera app on the iOS device.

2 Read the QR code shown on the touch panel display of the machine.

3 After completing the desired operations, press <Disconnect>.

TIPS

- To check the connected mobile devices, press <Mobile Dev. Info> on the <Direct Connection> screen.
- You can enable connection associated with login users by setting <Use Personal SSID and Network Key> to <On> in the <Access Point Mode Settings>. **<SSID/Network Key Settings>(P. 866)**

IMPORTANT

- While connecting via direct connection, you may not be able to connect to the Internet depending on the mobile device you are using.
- If a wireless connection from a mobile device is not performed within 5 minutes while the SSID and network key are displayed, the status waiting for connection ends.
- If the status without data transmission between a mobile device and the machine continues during communication by direct connection, the communication may end.
- Power saving performance of sleep mode degrades while connecting via direct connection.
- When you finish the desired operation, be sure to terminate the connection between the machine and the mobile device. If they remain connected, power saving performance of sleep mode degrades.
- If you use the direct connection, do not set the IP address manually on the mobile device. Doing so may prevent proper communication after using the direct connection.

Utilizing the Machine through Applications

ERJ8-09W

Print by using applications from a mobile device connected to the machine. Various applications including those exclusive to Canon are supported. Use properly in accordance with your device, the application, and the situation.

■ Canon PRINT

An application for printing, etc. from mobile devices that support iOS/Android. No operations on the machine are necessary to perform printing. For information on supported operating systems, detailed setting methods, and operational procedures, see the Help of the application or the Canon website (https://global.canon/cpis/).

IMPORTANT

- Canon PRINT can be downloaded free of charge, but the customer is responsible for any fees regarding internet connection.

■ Printing with Canon Print Service

You can easily print from the menu of applications that support the Android print subsystem. For more information on supported operating systems and detailed settings and procedures, see the Canon website (https://global.canon/psmp/).

■ Printing and Scanning with Mopria®

The machine also supports Mopria®. Using Mopria® enables you to print from mobile devices that support Android using common operations and settings, even if manufacturers and models differ. For example, if you are using printers supporting Mopria® made by multiple manufacturers or a printer supporting Mopria® that is located in a place you are visiting, you can print without installing an application exclusive for each manufacturer or model. Mopria® can also be used to directly import the data scanned with the machine to mobile devices that support Android. For more information on supporting models or operation environments, see http://www.mopria.org.

Confirming Mopria® settings

Log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**) ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [Mopria Settings] ▶ select the [Use Mopria] check box ▶ [OK]

IMPORTANT

- If you enable the Mopria® setting, <Use Network Link Scan> also changes to <On>.

- To use the Mopria® scan service, <Use Network Link Scan> must be set to <On>. **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**

■ Printing with IPP Everywhere

This machine also supports IPP Everywhere. If your Chromebook supports IPP Everywhere, you can print directly from your Chromebook using IPP Everywhere.

Confirming IPP Everywhere



Log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**) ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [IPP Everywhere Settings] ▶ select the [Use IPP Everywhere] check box ▶ [OK]

IMPORTANT

- If you select [Use IPP Everywhere], the following settings in <TCP/IP Settings> are set to <On>.
  - <Use HTTP>
  - <IPP Print Settings>
  - <Use IPv4 mDNS>
  - <Use IPv6 mDNS>

■ Printing from Windows Phone (Windows 10 Mobile and Later)

You can perform printing from a Windows Phone without downloading a dedicated application or installing a driver. Make sure that the <Use WSD Printing>, <Use WSD Browsing>, and <Multicast Discovery Settings> are enabled.
<WSD Settings>(P. 839)
<Multicast Discovery Settings>(P. 841)

TIPS

Scan for Mobile

- The MEAP application, "Scan for Mobile" enables you to use the Scan function of the machine from the mobile device. You can operate the machine from your mobile device to scan originals, and then send the image that you scanned on the machine to your mobile device using WebDAV communication.

■ Printing from Chrome OS

You can perform printing from Chrome OS without downloading a dedicated application or installing a driver. To print with the machine, it is necessary to enable Mopria®.

Confirming Mopria® settings



Log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**) ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [Mopria Settings] ▶ select the [Use Mopria] check box ▶ [OK]

IMPORTANT

- If you enable the Mopria® setting, <Use Network Link Scan> also changes to <On>.
- To use the Mopria® scan service, <Use Network Link Scan> must be set to <On>. **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**

Printing

1 Before printing, make sure that the machine is turned ON and connected to a Chromebook.

- For information on checking the connection status, see **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)** .
- See the Chromebook Help page (https://support.google.com/chromebook/answer/7225252) for more information on printing.

NOTE

- You can also connect the machine to a Chromebook using a USB cable. See the Chromebook website (https://support.google.com/chromebook/answer/7225252) for information on the connection procedure.

IMPORTANT

- Printing from Chrome OS may not be supported, depending on your country or region.

Using AirPrint

ERJ8-09X

This section describes the settings required to use AirPrint and the procedure for printing, scanning, and sending faxes from Apple devices.



AirPrint Settings

Configuring AirPrint Settings(P. 562)
Displaying the Screen for AirPrint(P. 564)

Functions of the AirPrint

Printing with AirPrint(P. 567)
Scanning with AirPrint(P. 570)
Faxing with AirPrint(P. 572)

Troubleshooting

If AirPrint Cannot Be Used(P. 574)

Configuring AirPrint Settings

You can register information, including the name of the machine and installation location, that is used for identifying the machine. The settings required for using AirPrint can be configured remotely using the Remote UI.

■ Configuring Settings Using the Remote UI

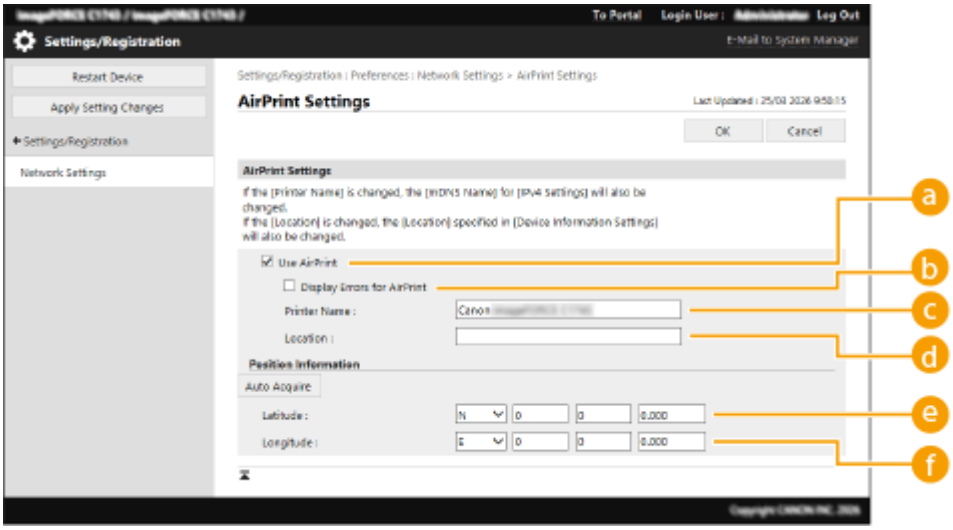
1 **Start the Remote UI and log on in System Manager Mode. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration].**

- If you are using a mobile device, such as an iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch, read "click" as "tap" in this section.

3 **Click [Network Settings] ▶ [AirPrint Settings].**

4 **Specify the required settings, and click [OK].**



[Use AirPrint]

Select the check box to enable AirPrint. To disable AirPrint, clear the check box.

[Display Errors for AirPrint]

If you are printing with AirPrint and there is an issue with the print file and the file does not print correctly, you can use this setting to choose whether error screens appear on the control panel.

[Printer Name]

Enter the name of the machine. If an mDNS name has already been registered in [mDNS Settings] ([Network Settings] in [Preferences] (Settings/Registration)), the registered name is displayed.

[Location]

Enter the location of the machine. If a location has already been registered in [Device Information Settings] ([Device Management] in [Management Settings] (Settings/Registration)), the registered name is displayed.

[Latitude]

Enter the latitude of the location where the machine is installed.

[Longitude]

Enter the longitude of the location where the machine is installed.

5 Restart the machine.

- Turn OFF the machine, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it ON.

■Configuring Settings from the Touch Panel Display

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Log In>.

- Enter the System Manager ID and System PIN.

3 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Use AirPrint>.

4 Press <On> ▶ <OK>.

IMPORTANT

If you select [Use AirPrint], the following settings in <TCP/IP Settings> are set to <On>.

- Use HTTP
- IPP Print Settings
- Use IPv4 mDNS
- Use IPv6 mDNS
- Use Network Link Scan

NOTE

- If you change [Printer Name] that you have once specified, you may be unable to print any more from the Mac that has been able to be used for printing so far. This phenomenon occurs because <mDNS Name> (**Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**) of IPv4 is also changed automatically. In this case, add the machine to the Mac again.
- When AirPrint is in-use, <Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4> is fixed to <On> for the mDNS name of IPv6.
- Entering the printer name makes it easier to identify multiple printers that support AirPrint.

Displaying the Screen for AirPrint

You can display the screen for AirPrint, on which you can not only access the AirPrint Settings but also view information about consumables, such as paper and toner cartridge. Further, you can configure security function settings.

■ Displaying from a Mac

1 Click [System Preferences] in the Dock on the desktop ▶ [Printers & Scanners].

2 Select the machine, and click [Options & Supplies].

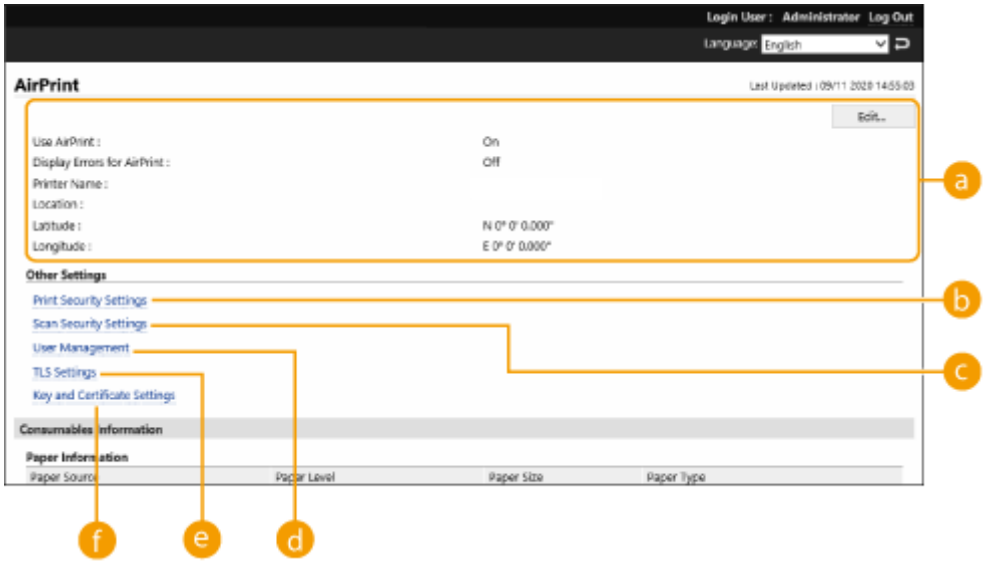
3 Click [Show Printer Webpage].

4 Logging in to the Remote UI

- To change the AirPrint settings, it is necessary to log in as an administrator.

■ Configuring the Screen for AirPrint

If you log in with administrator privileges, you can also change the AirPrint settings from the page for AirPrint.



a [AirPrint]

Enables you to check the values entered in the AirPrint settings, such as the name and location of the machine. You can click [Edit...] to change the settings.

b [Print Security Settings]

Specify the settings required to print using TLS and authentication.

If <IPP Print Settings> is already set, the existing settings are displayed. The values registered in [Print Security Settings] change according to the values in <IPP Print Settings>.

c [Scan Security Settings]

Specify the settings required to scan using TLS.

If <Use TLS> in <Use Network Link Scan> is already set, the existing settings are displayed. The values registered in [Scan Security Settings] change according to the value in <Use TLS> in <Use Network Link Scan>.

d [User Management]

You can add/edit users to authenticate. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

e [TLS Settings]

Enables you to change the key and certificate used for TLS. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

f [Key and Certificate Settings]

Enables you to generate and install a key and certificate, or request a certificate to be issued. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

■ Checking Consumables and the Device Version

You can check information regarding the paper sources of the machine, the remaining amount of toner, and the device version.

Trademarks

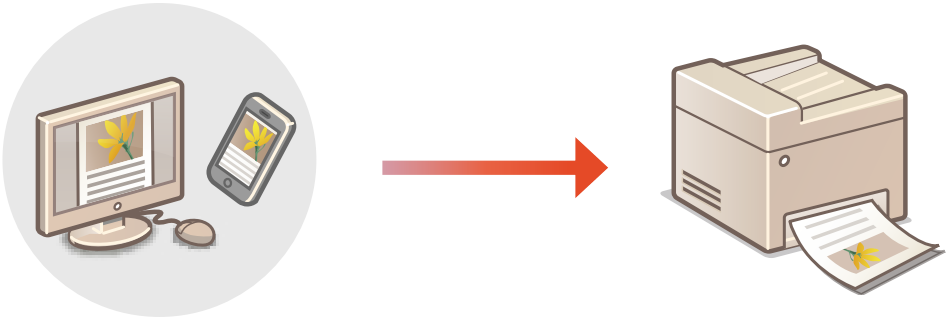
Apple, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, macOS, OS X, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc. AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.

iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.

Printing with AirPrint

ERJ8-09Y

You can print from an iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, or Mac without using a printer driver.



Printing from an iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch(P. 567)
Printing from a Mac(P. 568)

System Requirements

One of the following Apple devices is required to print with AirPrint.

- iPad (all models)
- iPhone (3GS or later)
- iPod touch (3rd generation or later)
- Mac (OS X 10.7 or later)*1

*1 OS X 10.9 or later when using a USB connection

Network Environment

One of the following environments is required.

- An environment where an Apple device and the machine are connected to the same LAN
- An environment where an Apple device and the machine are connected directly
- An environment where a Mac is connected to the machine via USB

Printing from an iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch

1 Make sure that the machine is turned ON and connected to the Apple device.

- For how to make sure of this, see **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)** .
- For information on the Direct Connection, see **Connecting Directly(P. 556)** .

2 From the application on your Apple device, tap to display the menu options.

3 Tap [Print].

4 Select this machine from [Printer].

➡ The printers connected to the network are displayed here. Select this machine in this step.

IMPORTANT

- The screen for selecting the machine in [Printer] is not displayed for applications that do not support AirPrint. In this case, printing cannot be performed.

5 Specify the print settings as necessary.

NOTE

- The available settings and paper sizes differ depending on the application you are using.

6 Tap [Print].

➡ Printing starts.

NOTE

Checking the print status

- During printing, press the Home button of the Apple device twice ▶ tap [Print].

NOTE

- You can specify whether to display an error screen on the control panel if printing cannot be performed as expected due to a problem with the print data. For details, see **<Display Errors for AirPrint>(P. 831)**
- When the machine is configured not to print data sent from a computer straight away, the AirPrint data is also put on hold on the machine. In this case, you need to operate the machine to perform printing. **Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)**

Printing from a Mac

1 Make sure that the machine is turned ON and connected to the Mac.

- For how to make sure of this, see **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)** .

2 From your Mac, add the machine in [System Preferences] ▶ [Printers & Scanners].

- If the machine has already been added for scanning or sending faxes, this operation is not required.

3 Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

- How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

4 Select the machine in the print dialog box.

➠ The printers added to the Mac are displayed. Select the machine in this step.

5 **Specify the print settings as necessary.**

NOTE

- The available settings and paper sizes differ depending on the application you are using.

6 **Click [Print].**

➠ Printing starts.

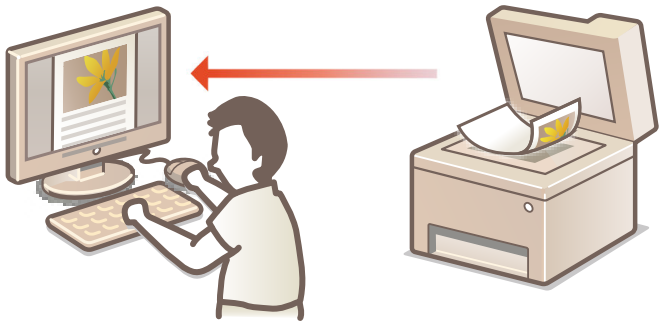
NOTE

- You can specify whether to display an error screen on the control panel if printing cannot be performed as expected due to a problem with the print data. For details, see **<Display Errors for AirPrint>(P. 831)** .

Scanning with AirPrint

ERJ8-0A0

You can use AirPrint to transfer the data scanned by the machine directly to a Mac.



System Requirements

To scan with AirPrint, you need a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later installed. To scan using TLS, you need a Mac with OS X 10.11 or later installed.

Network Environment

One of the following environments is required.

- An environment where an Apple device and the machine are connected to the same LAN
- An environment where a Mac is connected to the machine via USB

IMPORTANT

- For scanning, it is required to set <Use Network Link Scan> to <On>. **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**
- A firmware update may also be required. **Updating the Firmware(P. 744)**
- You cannot scan while settings for operations are being made, or while the machine is performing any operation whatsoever.

Scanning from a Mac

1 Make sure that the machine is turned ON and connected to the Mac.

- For how to make sure of this, see **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)** .

2 From your Mac, add the machine in [System Preferences] ▶ [Printers & Scanners].

- If the machine has already been added for printing or sending faxes, this operation is not required.

3 Select this machine from the list of printers in [Printers & Scanners].

4 Click [Scan].

5 **Click [Open Scanner].**

➠ The [Scanner] screen is displayed.

6 **Configure the scan settings as necessary.**

7 **Click [Scan].**

➠ The document is scanned, and the image is displayed.

Faxing with AirPrint

ERJ8-0A1

You can send faxes from a Mac in almost the same way as when you print from a Mac.



System Requirements

To send faxes with AirPrint, you need a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later installed.

Network Environment

One of the following environments is required.

- An environment where an Apple device and the machine are connected to the same LAN
- An environment where a Mac is connected to the machine via USB

IMPORTANT

- A firmware update may be required to send faxes. **Updating the Firmware(P. 744)**

Faxing from a Mac

1 Make sure that the machine is turned ON and connected to the Mac.

- For how to make sure of this, see **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)** .

2 From your Mac, add the machine in [System Preferences] ▶ [Printers & Scanners].

- If the machine has already been added for printing or sending faxes, this operation is not required.

3 Open a document in an application and display the print dialog box.

- How to display the print dialog box differs for each application. For more information, see the instruction manual for the application you are using.

4 Select this machine in the print dialog box.

➠ The printers added to the Mac are displayed. Select the fax driver of the machine in this step.

5 **Specify the destination.**

6 **Click [Fax].**

➠ Fax sending starts.

If AirPrint Cannot Be Used

ERJ8-0A2

If AirPrint cannot be used, try taking the following solutions.

- Make sure that the machine is turned ON. If the machine is turned ON, first turn it OFF, then wait for at least 10 seconds and then turn it back ON to check if the problem is solved.
- Make sure that no error messages are displayed on the machine.
- Make sure that Apple devices and the machine are connected to the same LAN. If the machine is turned ON, it may take several minutes before the machine is ready for communication.
- Make sure that Bonjour on your Apple device is enabled.
- Make sure that the machine is configured to enable operations from a computer even when no department ID and password are entered.
- For printing, make sure that the paper is loaded in the machine and the machine has sufficient toner levels remaining. **Displaying the Screen for AirPrint(P. 564)**
- For scanning, make sure that the machine's setting for Network Link Scan is <On>. **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**

Printing with Default Print Service (Android)

ERJ8-0A3

If your Android terminal supports Default Print Service, you can print from the Default Print Service of your Android terminal.
To print with the machine using Default Print Service, it is necessary to enable Mopria®.

Confirming Mopria®settings



Log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges (**Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**) ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [Mopria Settings] ▶ select the [Use Mopria] check box ▶ [OK]

IMPORTANT

- If you enable the Mopria® setting, <Use Network Link Scan> also changes to <On>.
- To use the Mopria® scan service, <Use Network Link Scan> must be set to <On>. **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**

NOTE

- In order to use the Canon machine/printer from the Default Print Service of your Android terminal, you must first configure the following settings on your Android terminal.
  - Enable Default Print Service.
  - Disable or uninstall Mopria®.
  - Disable or uninstall Canon Print Service.

Managing the Machine

Managing the Machine 578
Applying a Security Policy to the Machine 580
Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings 581
Configuring the Security Policy Settings 583
Security Policy Setting Items 585
Managing Users 591
Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings 594
Registering User Information in the Local Device 597
Configuring the IPP Print User Settings 602
Importing/Exporting User Data 604
Adding and Editing User Information in a CSV File 608
Registering Server Information 613
Configuring the Authentication Functions 621
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer 628
Using Other Convenient Personal Authentication Management Functions 629
Setting the Department ID Management 630
Changing the System Manager ID and PIN 631
Configuring the Department ID Management Settings 633
Using Department IDs to Manage Printing or Remote Scanning via Computer 636
Configuring Personal Folders 637
Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM 640
Deleting User Setting Information 641
Configuring the Network Security Settings 643
Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls 645
Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings 646
Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings 649
Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line 650
Setting a Proxy 654
Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS 656
Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication 659
Configuring the IPSec Settings 662
Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings 667
Restricting the Machine's Functions 670
Restricting Access to Address Book and Sending Functions 671
Restricting Use of the Address Book 672
Limiting Available Destinations 675

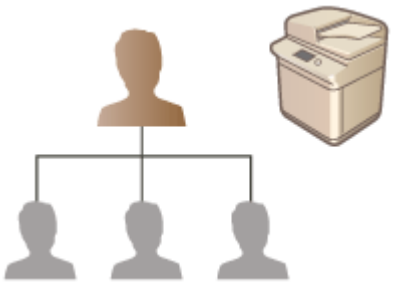
Restricting the Fax Sending Functions ... 677
Restricting Printing from a Computer ... 679
Restricting the Use of Memory Media ... 682
Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files ... 683
Generating a Device Signature Certificate ... 684
Managing the Machine from a Computer (Remote UI) ... 685
Starting the Remote UI ... 687
Checking the Status and Logs ... 692
Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine ... 696
Registering Destinations via the Remote UI ... 697
Sharing an Address List with Specific Users ... 701
Registering User Groups ... 703
Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication ... 705
Configuring the Expiration Check Method for Received Certificates ... 709
Generating a Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) ... 711
Retrieving/Updating a Certificate from an SCEP Server ... 714
Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server ... 720
Managing Stored Files ... 721
Managing the Logs ... 724
Importing/Exporting the Setting Data ... 729
Importing/Exporting All Settings ... 732
Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually ... 736
Address Book Items ... 739
Updating the Firmware ... 744
Updating the Firmware (Distribution) ... 746
Setting Scheduled Updates ... 749
Displaying Messages from the Administrator ... 751
Configuring the Visual Message Function ... 753
Setting the Website for Purchasing Consumables ... 758
Sending E-Mail Notification When an Error Occurs ... 760
Remote Operation of the Control Panel ... 762
Installing System Options ... 765
Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers ... 767
Starting Setting Synchronization ... 770
Switching the Machines to Synchronize ... 773
Managing Data in the Storage ... 774
Initializing All Data/Settings ... 775
Using TPM ... 777
Checking the Number of Pages for Copy/Print/Fax/Scan ... 781
Printing Reports and Lists ... 782
Checking the Options and Functions Installed in the Machine ... 793
Paper Type Management Settings ... 794

Managing the Machine

ERJ8-0A4

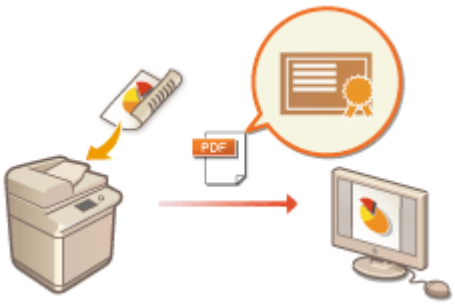
To reduce the various risks associated with using this machine, such as the leakage of personal information or unauthorized use by third parties, constant and effective security measures are required. Designate an administrator to handle important machine settings, such as the user management and security settings, to ensure that the machine is used safely.

■Configuring the Basic Management System



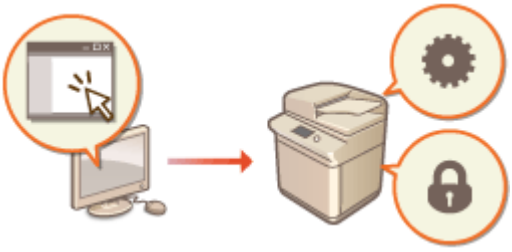
- **Applying a Security Policy to the Machine(P. 580)**
- **Managing Users(P. 591)**
- **Configuring the Network Security Settings(P. 643)**

■Limiting Risks from Negligence, Operation Errors, and Misuse



- **Restricting the Machine's Functions(P. 670)**
- **Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files(P. 683)**

■Ensuring Effective Management



- **Managing the Machine from a Computer (Remote UI) (P. 685)**
- **Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)**

■ Managing the System Configuration and Settings



- **Installing System Options(P. 765)**
- **Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)**

■ Others



- **Checking the Number of Pages for Copy/Print/Fax/Scan(P. 781)**
- **Printing Reports and Lists(P. 782)**
- **Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)**

Applying a Security Policy to the Machine

ERJ8-0A5

It is a common practice for organizations to adopt a security policy that defines basic information security objectives and standards, which requires information devices such as computers and multifunctional printers to be operated accordingly. On this machine, multiple settings related to security policy can be managed in batch via the Remote UI, and a dedicated password can be set up so that only the information security administrator is able to modify the settings. Before configuring these settings, make sure that the Remote UI is set up to use TLS. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**



Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings(P. 581)
Configuring the Security Policy Settings(P. 583)
Security Policy Setting Items(P. 585)

IMPORTANT

- The purpose of the security policy settings is to manage all functions and settings related to information security, and not to actually prevent information leakage itself.

Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings

ERJ8-0A6

It is recommended that you use a password to protect the machine settings related to security policy. By setting a password, the privilege for modifying the security policy settings can be restricted only to the information security administrators who know the password.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

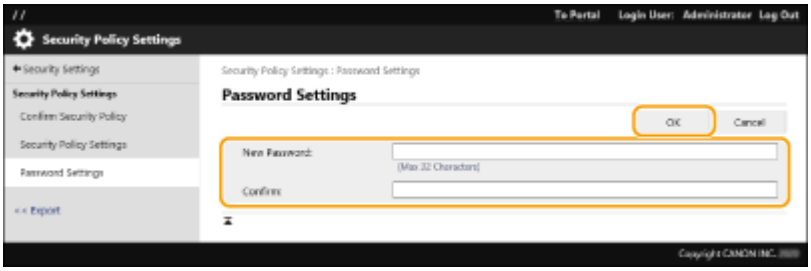
2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Security Settings] ▶ [Security Policy Settings].**

➡ The [Confirm Security Policy] page is displayed.

4 **Click [Password Settings].**

5 **Enter a password and click [OK].**



- Use alphanumeric characters or symbols for the password.
- Make sure that the password is entered correctly, and enter the new password again in [Confirm:].

NOTE:

To change the password

- Enter the current password in [Old Password:] and the new password in [New Password:], then enter the new password again in [Confirm:] and click [OK].

To remove the password

- Enter the current password in [Old Password:], and click [OK] without entering any value for [New Password:] or [Confirm:] (leave them blank). If an input character limit has been configured in [Password Settings Policy], a value must be entered for this setting. Cancel the limit before removing the password. **Security Policy Setting Items(P. 585)**

IMPORTANT

- Make sure that you do not forget your password. If you forget your password, contact your dealer or service representative.

NOTE

- To set/change the password, it is necessary to log in to the Remote UI with one of the following privileges.
  - Administrator
  - DeviceAdmin
  - NetworkAdmin
- If a password is set, it will be required for authentication in order to initialize the machine. After authentication is performed and the machine is initialized, the password will be deleted. **Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)**

Configuring the Security Policy Settings

ERJ8-0A7

Machine settings related to information security can be applied and managed in batch. It is recommended that the information security administrator in charge of managing your security policy apply the security policy to the machine in accordance with the policy of your organization. To configure the security policy, log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Security Settings] ▶ [Security Policy Settings].**

4 **Click [Security Policy Settings].**

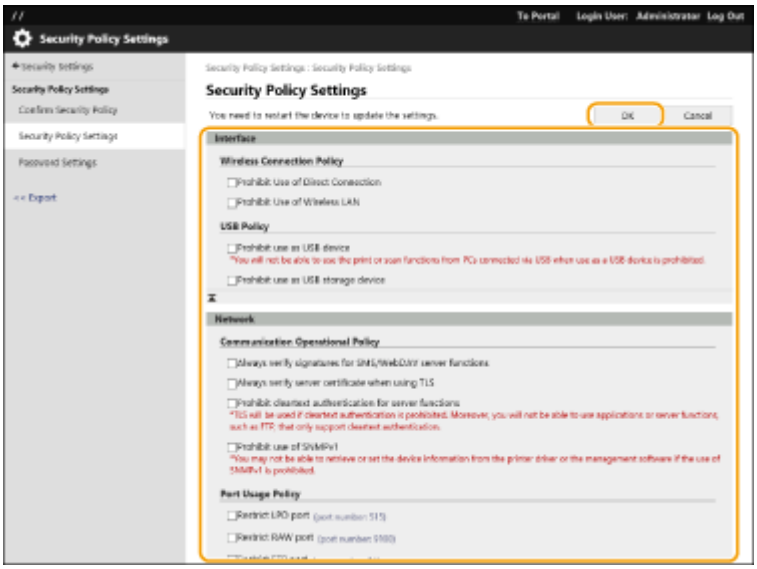
➠ The setting precautions are displayed. Make sure to read and understand the contents.

NOTE:

- If no password has been configured (**Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings(P. 581)**), read the contents and click [OK] to proceed to step 6.

5 **Enter the password and click [Log In].**

6 **Configure the necessary items and click [OK].**



- For information on the settings, see **Security Policy Setting Items(P. 585)** .

IMPORTANT:

- The settings related to items indicated with a check mark here cannot be changed using (Settings/Register) or the Remote UI.

- For any machine settings that were changed when the security policy settings were applied, you cannot simply clear the check box to restore the previously set value. To change the settings, use (Settings/Register) or the Remote UI.

7 Click [OK].

NOTE:

- If a security policy has been configured, a message indicating that functions and operations are restricted is displayed when the <Settings/Registration> screen is displayed on the control panel or the Remote UI.

■Applying the Security Policy Settings to Another Device

You can import and export the machine's security policy settings. By applying the same policy to multiple devices*, you can manage all of the devices in your organization using identical settings. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

* Only Canon devices that are compatible with security policy settings

NOTE

- The security policy settings can only be imported if the security policy setting password on the exporting machine matches that of the importing machine, or if no password has been set for the importing machine. If no password has been set for the importing machine, the password configured for the exporting machine is set to the importing machine.

Security Policy Setting Items

ERJ8-0A8

The setting items related to the security policy of the machine are described below. Select the check boxes for the items that you want to apply on the setting screen.

■ [Interface]

[Wireless Connection Policy]
Prevent unauthorized access by prohibiting wireless connections.

[Prohibit Use of Direct Connection]	<Use Direct Connection> and <Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified> are set to <Off>. It is not possible to access the machine from mobile devices.	**Connecting Directly(P. 556)** **<Network>(P. 825)**
[Prohibit Use of Wireless LAN]	When this setting is enabled, the main line setting in <Select Interface> is changed to <Wired LAN> even if it is set to <Wireless LAN>. If the sub line is set to <Wireless LAN>, it is changed to <Off>. Wireless connections can no longer be made via a wireless LAN router or access point.	**<Select Interface>(P. 833)**

[USB Policy]
Prevent unauthorized access and data breaches by prohibiting USB connection.

[Prohibit use as USB device]	<Use as USB Device> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to connect to a computer via USB.	**<Use as USB Device>(P. 877)**
[Prohibit use as USB storage device]	<Use USB Storage Device> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to use USB storage devices.	**<Use USB Storage Device>(P. 878)**

■ [Network]

[Communication Operational Policy]
Increase the security of communications by requiring the verification of signatures and certificates.

[Always verify signatures for SMB/ WebDAV server functions]	There are no setting items that the security policy is applied to for the machine.	-
[Always verify server certificate when using TLS]	The following settings are set to <On>, and a check mark is added to <CN>. • <Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX> • <Confirm TLS Certificate for FTPS TX> • <Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX> • <Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX> • <Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access> • <Confirm TLS Certificate Using MEAP Application> • <Confirm TLS Certificate for LDAP Server Access> The following settings are set to <On>. • [License/Other] ▶ [Visual Message Settings] ▶ [Confirm Certificate for TLS Communication] • [License/Other] ▶ [Visual Message Settings] ▶ [Add CN to Verification Items]	**<Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate for FTPS TX>(P. 950)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX>(P. 959)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX>(P. 959)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access>(P. 1000)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate Using MEAP Application>(P. 1046)** **<Confirm TLS Certificate for LDAP Server Access>(P. 1011)** **Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)**

	During TLS communication, verification will be performed for digital certificates with common names.	
[Prohibit cleartext authentication for server functions]	<Use FTP Printing> in <FTP Print Settings> is set to <Off>, <Allow TLS (SMTP RX)> in <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ <Communication Settings> is set to <Always TLS>, <Dedicated Port Authentication Method> in <Network> is set to <Mode 2>. When using the machine as a server, plain text authentication and functions that use plain text authentication are not available.	**<FTP Print Settings>(P. 839)** **<Communication Settings>(P. 956)** **<Dedicated Port Authentication Method>(P. 828)**
[Prohibit use of SNMPv1]	In <SNMP Settings>, <Use SNMPv1> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to use SNMPv1 when obtaining device information from the computer.	**<SNMP Settings>(P. 826)**

NOTE

- This setting does not apply to communication with IEEE 802.1X networks, even if the check box is selected for [Always verify server certificate when using TLS].
- If [Prohibit cleartext authentication for server functions] is selected and your device management software or driver version is old, it may not be possible to connect to the machine. Ensure that you are using the latest versions.

[Port Usage Policy]
Prevent external breaches by closing unused ports.

[Restrict LPD port (port number: 515)]	<LPD Print Settings> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to perform LPD printing.	**<LPD Print Settings>(P. 837)**
[Restrict RAW port (port number: 9100)]	<RAW Print Settings> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to perform RAW printing.	**<RAW Print Settings>(P. 838)**
[Restrict FTP port (port number: 21)]	In <FTP Print Settings>, <Use FTP Printing> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to perform FTP printing.	**<FTP Print Settings>(P. 839)**
[Restrict WSD port (port number: 3702, 60000)]	In <WSD Settings>, <Use WSD Printing>, <Use WSD Browsing>, and <Use WSD Scan> are all set to <Off>. It is not possible to use WSD functions.	**<WSD Settings>(P. 839)**
[Restrict BMLinkS port (port number: 1900)]	There are no setting items that the security policy is applied to for the machine.	-
[Restrict IPP port (port number: 631)]	The <IPP Print Settings> and <Use Mopria> options are all set to <Off>. It is not possible to print using IPP or Mopria®.	**<IPP Print Settings>(P. 840)** **<Use Mopria>(P. 831)**
[Restrict SMB port (port number: 139, 445)]	There are no setting items that the security policy is applied to for the machine.	-
[Restrict SMTP port (port number: 25)]	In <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ <Communication Settings>, <SMTP RX> is set to <Off>. SMTP reception is not possible.	**<Communication Settings>(P. 956)**
[Restrict dedicated port (port number: 9002, 9006, 9007, 9011-9015, 9017-9019, 9022, 9023, 9025, 20317, 47545-47547)]	<Dedicated Port Settings> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to use dedicated ports.	**<Dedicated Port Settings>(P. 827)**
[Restrict Remote Operator's Software port (port number: 5900)]	<Remote Operation Settings> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to use remote operation functions.	**<Remote Operation Settings>(P. 1042)**

[Restrict SIP (IP Fax) port (port number: 5004, 5005, 5060, 5061, 49152)]	There are no setting items that the security policy is applied to for the machine.	-
[Restrict mDNS port (port number: 5353)]	In <mDNS Settings>, the <Use IPv4 mDNS> and <Use IPv6 mDNS> options are set to <Off>, <Use Mopria> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to search the network or perform automatic settings using mDNS. It is also not possible to print using Mopria®.	**<mDNS Settings>(P. 855)** **<Use Mopria>(P. 831)**
[Restrict SLP port (port number: 427)]	In <Multicast Discovery Settings>, <Response> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to search the network or perform automatic settings using SLP.	**<Multicast Discovery Settings>(P. 841)**
[Restrict SNMP port (port number: 161)]	In <SNMP Settings>, the <Use SNMPv1> and <Use SNMPv3> options are set to <Off>, and <Display Scan for Mobile> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to obtain device information from the computer or configure settings using SNMP.	**<SNMP Settings>(P. 826)** **<Display Scan for Mobile>(P. 815)**

■[Authentication]

[Authentication Operational Policy]
Prevent unregistered users from performing unauthorized operations by implementing secure user authentication.

[Prohibit guest users to use device]	The following settings are set to <On>. • <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Use User Authentication> • <Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.> • [Login for Unregistered Users:] ▶ [Allow unregistered users to log in as Guest User] <Login Screen Display Settings> is set to <Displ When Dev Operation Start>. It becomes [Standard Authentication Mode] if [Guest Authentication Mode] is set for [Authentication Mode:] in [Remote UI Authentication]. In addition, [Guest Authentication Mode] can no longer be selected for [Authentication Mode:] in [Remote UI Authentication]. Unregistered users cannot log in to the machine, and print jobs from computers are canceled.	**<Use User Authentication>(P. 1023)** **<Login Screen Display Settings>(P. 1023)** **<Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.>(P. 1024)** ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM Administrator Guide
[Force setting of auto logout]	<Auto Reset Time> is enabled. The user is automatically logged out if no operations are performed for a specified period of time. Select [Time Until Logout:] on the Remote UI setting screen.	**<Auto Reset Time>(P. 820)**

[Password Operational Policy]
Impose strict limits for password operations.

[Prohibit caching of password for external servers]	<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password> is set to <On>, and <Save authentication information for login users> is set to <Off>. Users will always be required to enter a password when accessing an external server.	**<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)** **Registering Server Information(P. 613)**

[Display warning when default password is in use]	<Display Warning When Default Password Is in Use> is set to <On>. A warning message will be displayed whenever the machine's factory default password is used.	**<Display Warning When Default Password Is in Use>(P. 1058)**
[Prohibit use of default password for remote access]	<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to use the factory default password when accessing the machine from a computer.	**<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access>(P. 1059)**

[Password Settings Policy]
Prevent third parties from easily guessing passwords by setting a minimum level of complexity and a period of validity for user authentication passwords.

[Set minimum number of characters for password]	<Minimum Length Settings> is set to <On>. It is not possible to set a password with fewer characters than the number specified for [Minimum Number of Characters] on the Remote UI setting screen.	**<Minimum Length Settings>(P. 1059)**
[Set password validity period]	<Validity Period Settings> is set to <On>. A period of validity is set for the password. Specify the period in [Validity Period:] on the Remote UI setting screen.	**<Validity Period Settings>(P. 1060)**
[Prohibit use of 3 or more identical consecutive characters]	<Prohibit Use of 3 or More Identical Consec. Characters> is set to <On>. It is not possible to set a password that includes the same character repeated three or more times consecutively.	**<Prohibit Use of 3 or More Identical Consec. Characters>(P. 1060)**
[Force use of at least 1 uppercase character]	<Use at Least 1 Uppercase Character> is set to <On>. Passwords are required to include at least one uppercase alphabetic character.	**<Use at Least 1 Uppercase Character>(P. 1060)**
[Force use of at least 1 lowercase character]	<Use at Least 1 Lowercase Character> is set to <On>. Passwords are required to include at least one lowercase alphabetic character.	**<Use at Least 1 Lowercase Character>(P. 1061)**
[Force use of at least 1 digit]	<Use at Least 1 Digit> is set to <On>. Passwords are required to include at least one numeric character.	**<Use at Least 1 Digit>(P. 1061)**
[Force use of at least 1 symbol]	<Use at Least 1 Symbol> is set to <On>. Passwords are required to include at least one symbol.	**<Use at Least 1 Symbol>(P. 1062)**

[Lockout Policy]
Block users from logging in for a specified period of time after a certain number of consecutive invalid login attempts.

[Enable lockout]	In <Lockout Settings>, <Enable Lockout> is set to <On>. Specify the values for [Lockout Threshold] and [Lockout Period] on the Remote UI setting screen.	**<Lockout Settings>(P. 1056)**

■[Key/Certificate]

Protect important data by preventing the use of weak encryption, or by saving encrypted user passwords and keys in a designated hardware component.

[Prohibit use of weak encryption]	<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption> is set to <On>. It is not possible to use weak encryption. When the check box is selected, [Prohibit use of key/certificate with weak encryption] can be selected.	**<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>(P. 1063)**

[Prohibit use of key/certificate with weak encryption]	In <Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>, <Prohibit Use of Key/Certificate with Weak Encryption> is set to <On>. It is not possible to use a key or certificate with weak encryption.	**<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>(P. 1063)**
[Use TPM to store password and key]	<TPM Settings> is set to <On>. Passwords and keys are encrypted and saved in a designated hardware component.	**<TPM Settings>(P. 1048)**

IMPORTANT

When TPM settings are enabled

- Make sure to change the "Administrator" password from the default value, to prevent a third party other than the administrator from being able to back up the TPM key. If a third party takes the TPM backup key, you will not be able to restore the TPM key.
- For the purpose of enhanced security, the TPM key can only be backed up once. If the TPM settings are enabled, make sure to back up the TPM key on to a USB memory device, and store it in a secure place to prevent loss or theft.
- The security functions provided by TPM do not guarantee complete protection of the data and hardware.

■[Log]

You can periodically survey how the machine is used, by requiring logs to be recorded.

[Force recording of audit log]	<Display Job Log> is set to <On>, <Retrieve Job Log with Management Software> in <Display Job Log> is set to <Allow>, <Save Audit Log> is set to <On>, <Retrieve Network Authentication Log> is set to <On>, and <Use Login Name as User Name for Print Jobs> is set to <On>. Audit logs are always recorded.	**<Display Job Log>(P. 1033)** **<Save Audit Log>(P. 1033)** **<Retrieve Network Authentication Log>(P. 1034)** **<Use Login Name as User Name for Print Jobs>(P. 868)**
[Force SNTP settings]	In <SNTP Settings>, <Use SNTP> is set to <On>. Time synchronization via SNTP is required. Enter a value for [NTP Server Address] on the Remote UI setting screen.	**<SNTP Settings>(P. 838)**

■[Job]

[Printing Policy]
Prevent information leakage from occurring when printing.

[Prohibit immediate printing of received jobs]	The following settings are set to <On>. • <Fax Memory Lock> in the Fax/I-Fax Inbox • <I-Fax Memory Lock> in the Fax/I-Fax Inbox • <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox> ▶ <Use Fax Memory Lock> • <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox> ▶ <Use I-Fax Memory Lock> • <Forced Hold> <Handle Files with Forwarding Errors> is set to <Store/Print>. <Memory Lock End Time> is set to <Off>. Only <Hold as Shared Job> can be set for the operation conditions of <Forced Hold>. Printing does not occur immediately, even when printing operations are performed.	**<Handle Files with Forwarding Errors>(P. 982)** **<Use Fax Memory Lock>(P. 985)** **<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>(P. 986)** **<Memory Lock End Time>(P. 987)** **<Forced Hold>(P. 1003)** **Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)**

[Sending/Receiving Policy]
Limit the sending operations for destinations, and limit how received data is processed.

[Allow sending only to registered addresses]	In <Restrict New Destinations>, the <Fax>, <E-Mail>, <I-Fax>, and <File> options are set to <On>. It is only possible to send to destinations that are registered in the Address Book.	**<Restrict New Destinations>(P. 951)**
[Force confirmation of fax number]	<Confirm Entered Fax Number> is set to <On>. Users are required to enter a fax number again for confirmation when sending a fax.	**<Confirm Entered Fax Number>(P. 973)**
[Prohibit auto forwarding]	<Use Forwarding Settings> is set to <Off>. It is not possible to automatically forward faxes.	**<Use Forwarding Settings>(P. 981)**

■[Storage]

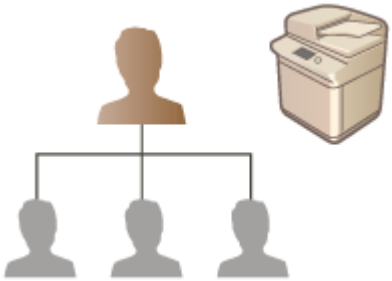
Prevent information leakage by deleting unnecessary data on the storage device.

[Force Complete Deletion of Data]	There are no setting items that the security policy is applied to for the machine.	-

Managing Users

ERJ8-0A9

You can ensure a higher level of security and efficiency by utilizing a user authentication application (login service) to manage the users of the machine (**Login Service(P. 591)**). It is recommended that the administrator manage all users in accordance with your operating environment and required security measures. **User Management Functions(P. 591)**



Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)
Using Other Convenient Personal Authentication Management Functions(P. 629)
Deleting User Setting Information(P. 641)

Login Service

A user authentication application (login service) called "User Authentication" is used as the primary method of managing the users of the machine. With the User Authentication login service, personal authentication can be performed for users based on the user name and password registered for each user. The user information is checked either on the database inside the machine or on an external authentication server. With the ability to precisely define which functions are available to each user, you can personalize machine operations and improve security by limiting access to certain functions. It may also be possible to use Department ID Management to manage groups, depending on the device used for authentication.

NOTE

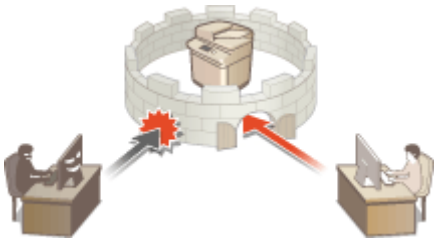
- If you are not using the Personalization function, set <Enable Use of Personal Settings> (**<Enable Use of Personal Settings>(P. 1037)**) to <Off>.

User Management Functions

User management can provide the advantages described below. To protect important data and reduce costs, you can limit access to the machine and define the range of operations that are available to users.

Preventing Unauthorized Use by Third Parties

Because machine usage is limited to approved users, information leakage due to unauthorized use by third parties is prevented, even if the machine is located in a busy area that is open to outside parties.



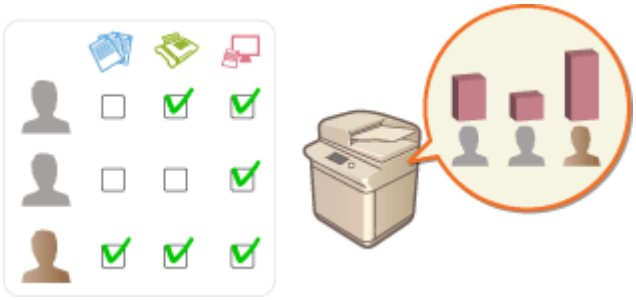
Setting the Privilege Levels

With personal authentication management, you can define the range of available operations by specifying the role (privilege level) for each user. For example, you can select the Administrator role to allow full access privileges, the NetworkAdmin role to allow configuration of network-related settings, or the DeviceAdmin role to allow the configuration of device information settings and the settings for keys and certificates that are required when using particular functions. By selecting and assigning various privilege levels to administrators, you can operate more effectively as a team in handling a wide range of machine management tasks.



Setting Usage Restrictions

Personal authentication management enables a user with Administrator privileges to manage the range of operations that are available to users. The ability to set function restrictions for each user provides you with more precise control in user management.



Managing Groups of Users

Users can be assigned to groups based on Department ID (Department ID Management), enabling you to check the total number of printed or scanned pages for each Department ID. You can also set specific limits for each Department ID, such as a maximum of 500 printed pages or a maximum of 200 copied pages. This function can help boost cost awareness and provide hints on how to improve your operations.



Optimizing the Settings for Each User

Various settings can be saved for each user and applied at login. Users can create Personal buttons, and they can specify a Personal folder on the network. It is also possible for the machine to remember passwords once they have been entered, enabling users to log in again without entering the password.

NOTE

Associating User Accounts with Keychains for Smooth Operations

- When authentication information different from the authentication information used when logging in is required, the authentication information has to be entered once, but does not need to be entered again once authentication is successful. This authentication information is called a keychain. Since keychains are

associated with user accounts, authentication information does not need to be entered again, even if the power of the machine is turned OFF.

Associating User Accounts with Department IDs to Restrict the Number of Copies and Prints

- User Authentication user accounts can be associated with Department IDs. By specifying copy and print restrictions for Department IDs in advance, you can apply restrictions on the number of copies or prints for each department that a user belongs to. For information on associating user accounts with Department IDs, see **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)** . For information on specifying restrictions according to department, see **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)** .

Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings

ERJ8-0AA

The User Authentication login service performs personal authentication based on the information registered for each user, enabling you to limit the users who can access the machine. User information registration (authentication) can be performed on this machine and on an external server. You can configure the authentication system to use only this machine as the authentication device, or you can additionally specify an Active Directory/LDAP Server/Microsoft Entra ID on the network as an authentication device to utilize the existing user information registered on the server (**Authentication Device(P. 594)**). Administrators can also specify which functions are available to each individual user, such as "user A is prohibited from making copies" or "user B is allowed to use all machine functions." For the user login method, you can enter authentication information or select a user (**Login Method(P. 594)**). Before configuring the user authentication settings, decide the authentication device and login method. **Configuring Personal Authentication Management with User Authentication(P. 595)**



Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Importing/Exporting User Data(P. 604)
Registering Server Information(P. 613)
Configuring the Authentication Functions(P. 621)
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)

Authentication Device

The authentication devices described below can be used for personal authentication management. Each type of authentication device requires a different environment and settings. Confirm your system environment before configuring. **System Specifications(P. 1254)**

Local Device (This Machine)

User information is managed on the database inside the machine. User information is registered and edited via the control panel or the Remote UI. When the local device is configured as a standalone authentication device, Department ID Management can also be performed at the same time. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

Active Directory/Microsoft Entra ID/LDAP Server

In addition to the local devices, you can use a Windows Server with Active Directory installed, a cloud server using Microsoft Entra ID, or an LDAP server as an external authentication server. One advantage of using this type of device is that the users registered on the server can be added as general users without any changes. To provide administrator privileges to a user, the user must be assigned to a specific administrator group on the Active Directory/LDAP Server/Microsoft Entra ID. To specify the additional authentication device, you must register the information of the server used for authentication. **Registering Server Information(P. 613)**

Login Method

The user login methods described below are available for personal authentication management. For more information on login operations, see **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)** .

Keyboard Authentication



With this method, users log in by entering their user name and password using the keyboard displayed on the control panel. This method is available regardless of the authentication device that is used.

Configuring Personal Authentication Management with User Authentication

Configure the personal authentication management settings in the order described below.

1 

Check the basic configuration.

- Is the machine properly connected to the computer? **Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)**
- If you are using an authentication server, have the DNS settings been configured for the machine?
- If you are using an authentication server, have the date and time been properly set? **Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)**

2 

Check the login service.

- Log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges, click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management] ▶ [Authentication Service Information], and check that the login service is indicated as User Authentication.

3 

Configure the authentication server settings.

- Register user information on the local device and specify the authentication server.

Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Registering Server Information(P. 613)

4 

Select the user authentication system.

Configuring the Authentication Functions(P. 621)
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)

IMPORTANT

- Make sure to log out after you finish using the Remote UI. If you close the Remote UI without logging out, it may take a long time to log in next time.
- If you want to limit authentication method to User Authentication (restrict use of System Manager ID for authentication) when the machine is accessed from a device management software or driver, make sure to set <Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN> to <On>. **<Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN>(P. 1056)**

Registering User Information in the Local Device

ERJ8-0AC



To perform personal authentication management, you must first register user information in the database of the machine.

Registering User Information(P. 597)
Enabling Two-Factor Authentication(P. 600)

Registering User Information

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

NOTE:

Disabling "Administrator"

- A user with "Administrator" as the user name is registered by default as the user with administrator privileges. This "Administrator" user cannot be deleted but it can be disabled after adding another user with "Administrator" privileges. If the "Administrator" user is disabled, you cannot change settings that only the "Administrator" user can configure, on the control panel of the machine.

4 **Click [Add User].**

NOTE:

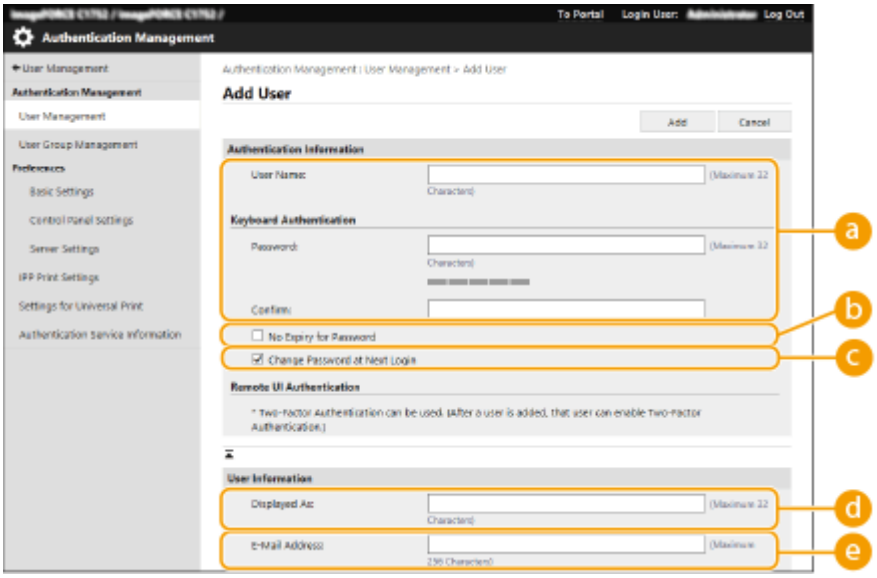
To edit user information

- Click [Edit] for the user information that you want to edit, make the necessary changes, and click [Update].

To delete user information

- Select the check box for the user information that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

5 **Enter the necessary information.**



a [User Name:] / [Password:] / [Confirm:]

Enter the user name and password. For confirmation, enter the password again in [Confirm:]. Single-byte or double-byte characters can be used for the user name.
You can display a password strength indicator for checking the strength of the entered password. **<Use Password Strength Indicator>(P. 1027)**

b [No Expiry for Password]

Select the check box to set the password of the user to register to have no expiration date. This setting can be specified when [Password Validity Period] is set to [Off] in [Password Settings Policy] in [Authentication] in [Security Policy Settings].

c [Change Password at Next Login]

Select this check box to force registered users to change their passwords the first time they log in. Once a user has changed their password, the check box is cleared automatically.

d [Displayed As:]

Enter the name of the user. The display name is displayed as the user name for forced hold printing and used as the sender name when sending e-mail.

e [E-Mail Address:]

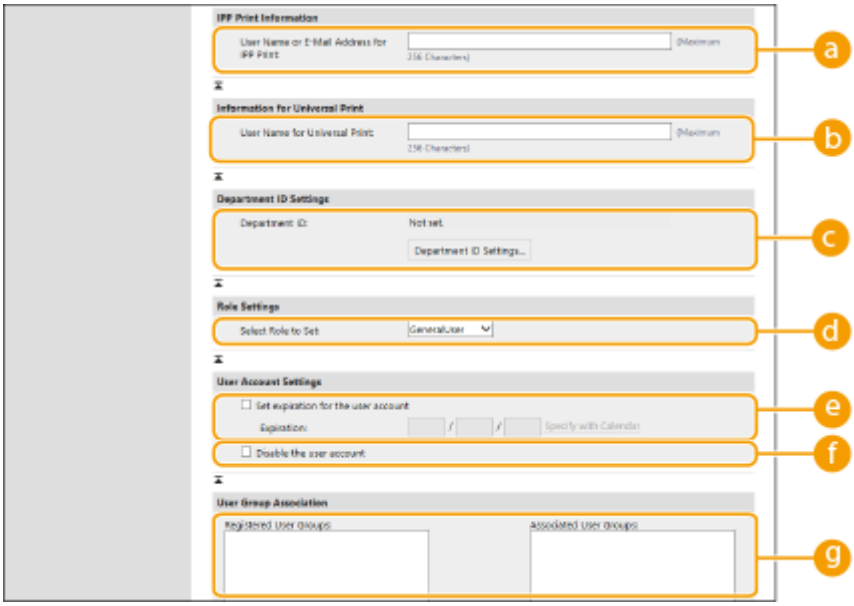
Enter the e-mail address that the user is using on devices such as computers. When sending scanned documents, this address will be displayed along with the sender's name. This address is also used when sending documents by using <Send to Myself>.

When an I-fax is sent, the e-mail address registered here is displayed in the Sender line on the recipient device.

NOTE:

- It is also possible for general users to change their own password.
- Selecting the [Allow e-mail address settings] check box enables general users to specify e-mail addresses.
  Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)

6 Specify other required settings.



a [IPP Print Information]

If [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [IPP Print Settings] is enabled, associate IPP Printing with the user, specify the e-mail address used for IPP printing.
Users registered in the local device can configure the settings themselves, or an administrator can configure batch settings by using a CSV file. **Configuring the IPP Print User Settings(P. 602)**

b [User Name for Universal Print:]

If [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [Settings for Universal Print] is enabled, you can enter the email address or phone number used in the Microsoft 365 account of the user with which Universal Print jobs are associated.

c [Department ID:]

When using Department ID Management, you must click [Department ID Settings...] and select the Department ID from the list to assign to the user. First, register the necessary Department IDs in [Register New Department...] on the list screen. If the Department ID that you specify here is later deleted, make sure to change this setting. **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)**

d [Select Role to Set:]

The user privileges (roles) listed below can be selected. Also specify the settings here when adding an administrator. The available setting items vary depending on the privileges (**Settings/ Registration(P. 801)**). In addition, you can create your own roles. **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**

[Administrator]	Allows all operations as an administrator of the machine.
[GeneralUser]	Allows general user privileges.
[DeviceAdmin]	Allows operations that are available to general users, along with the ability to change settings related to basic functions such as copying, printing, sending, and receiving.
[NetworkAdmin]	Allows operations that are available to general users, along with the ability to change network-related settings.

e [Set expiration for the user account]

When setting a period of validity for the account, select the check box and enter a value for [Expiration].

f [Disable the user account]

Select the check box to temporarily disable the account.

g [User Group Association]

When you want to assign the user to a group, select a registered user group from the list and click [Add]. This setting is not displayed when using Department IDs as user groups. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

7 Click [Add].

NOTE

Configuring settings via the control panel

- You can also register user information by pressing (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Register/Edit Authentication User>. **<Register/Edit Authentication User>(P. 1022)**

Creating user groups

- Address Lists in the Address Book can be shared between users who are registered in a user group. **Registering User Groups(P. 703)**

TIPS

Check for unregistered Department IDs

- If you click [Check Unregistered Department ID...] on the screen displayed in step 4, you can find out Department IDs that are not registered in the machine by checking Department IDs assigned to the users against Department IDs registered in the machine.

Batch settings for Department IDs

- If you click [Batch Settings for Department ID...] on the screen displayed in step 4, you can create new Department IDs and apply settings for all users.
- If the user name is comprised of numbers and is seven digits or fewer, the same number is assigned to the same user as the Department ID. If the password of the same user is registered as a number that is seven digits or fewer, it is also set as the PIN for that Department ID.
- If the user name and password do not meet the above conditions, a Department ID is automatically assigned starting from 0000001, and 0 (none) is set for the PIN.

Registering the Department ID as the User Name

- If you click [Add User Using Department ID...] on the screen in step 4, a new user with the same name as the Department ID is registered. When keyboard authentication is used, authentication can be performed using numeric key entry only.

Enabling Two-Factor Authentication

You can use two-factor authentication to increase the security of logging into the Remote UI by requiring a one-time password in addition to the password set in " **Registering User Information(P. 597)** ."

NOTE

- To obtain a one-time password, a mobile app (Microsoft Authenticator or Google Authenticator) must be installed to a mobile device such as a smartphone or tablet. The time of the mobile device must also match that of the machine.
- Two-factor authentication can only be enabled for the user account that is logged in.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

- For a user with Administrator privileges, click [Edit...] on the [User Management] screen.

4 **Select [Use Two-Factor Authentication], and click [Update].**

5 **Start the mobile app and use it to scan the QR code displayed on the [Enable Two-Factor Authentication] screen of the Remote UI.**

NOTE:

- If you cannot scan the QR code, enter the key displayed in [Manual Entry Key:].

6 **On the [One-Time Password:] screen, enter the one-time password displayed in the mobile app ▶ click [Verify].**

IMPORTANT

When account information has been lost or deleted

- A QR code or key can be used to register or restore the account information from any mobile device. It is recommended that you take a photo or screenshot of the QR code or key displayed on the computer screen, in case the mobile device is lost or the account information registered in the mobile app is accidentally deleted.
- Store the photo or screenshot of the QR code or key carefully so that others cannot see it.

NOTE

- If the mobile device is lost or the account information registered to the mobile app is deleted and you do not have a photo or screenshot of the QR code or key, you will be unable to obtain a one-time password and therefore unable to log in to the Remote UI. In this case, ask a user with Administrator privileges to deselect [Use Two-Factor Authentication] so that you can log into the Remote UI.

LINKS

Registering Server Information(P. 613)
Configuring the Authentication Functions(P. 621)
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)

Configuring the IPP Print User Settings

ERJ8-0AE

Configure these settings if you want to manage users authenticated through User Authentication and their associated IPP Print jobs. IPP Print can still be run without configuring these settings.

Set by the User(P. 602)
Set by the Administrator(P. 602)
Set by the Administrator Using a CSV File(P. 603)

Set by the User

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

4 Enter [User Name or E-Mail Address for IPP Print] in [IPP Print Information].

- In [User Name or E-Mail Address for IPP Print], enter the user name or email address used in IPP Print.

Set by the Administrator

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

4 Click [Edit...] for the user to be set.

NOTE:

If the IPP Print user is not registered

- Click [Add User] and register the user information. When registering the user information, enter the [User Name or E-Mail Address for IPP Print] in [IPP Print Information].

5 Enter [User Name or E-Mail Address for IPP Print] in [IPP Print Information].

- In [User Name or E-Mail Address for IPP Print], enter the user name or email address used in IPP Print.

6 **Click [Update].**

Set by the Administrator Using a CSV File

You can associate User Authentication users with a Microsoft 365 account by editing a CSV file.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management] ▶ [IPP Print Settings].**

4 **Click [Start Exporting].**

- If there is no user information that is associated with IPP Print, you cannot configure the settings using a CSV file. Click [Add Association...], add the associated user and then click [Start Exporting].

5 **Editing the exported CSV file.**

- Enter a registered user name in "uid".
- In "ipp_user_name", enter the user name or email address used in IPP Print.

6 **Click [Import...] and specify the file edited in step 5.**

7 **Click [Start Importing].**

Importing/Exporting User Data

ERJ8-0AF

You can save user information stored in the machine to a computer (export), as well as load user information from other machines into the machine you are using (import). This is useful when you want to register multiple users at once.

Exporting User Data(P. 604)
Automatically Importing User Data(P. 604)
Manually Importing User Data(P. 606)

NOTE

- For information on editing a CSV file for importing, see **Adding and Editing User Information in a CSV File(P. 608)** .
- If duplicates of data exist in a CSV file for importing, the version of the data that was read first will be prioritized and registered.
- If you want to export the registered/edited user data to make a backup copy, see **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)** and export the data by selecting [Authentication User Management].

Exporting User Data

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

4 **Click [Export].**

5 **Select the file format, and click [Start Export].**

- User information created in the file format that can be used with User Authentication is exported. The file extension is "csv."

6 **Follow the instructions on the screen to specify the location to store the file.**

➠ The csv file is stored.

Automatically Importing User Data

You can automatically update user data by periodically importing import files stored in a specified location.

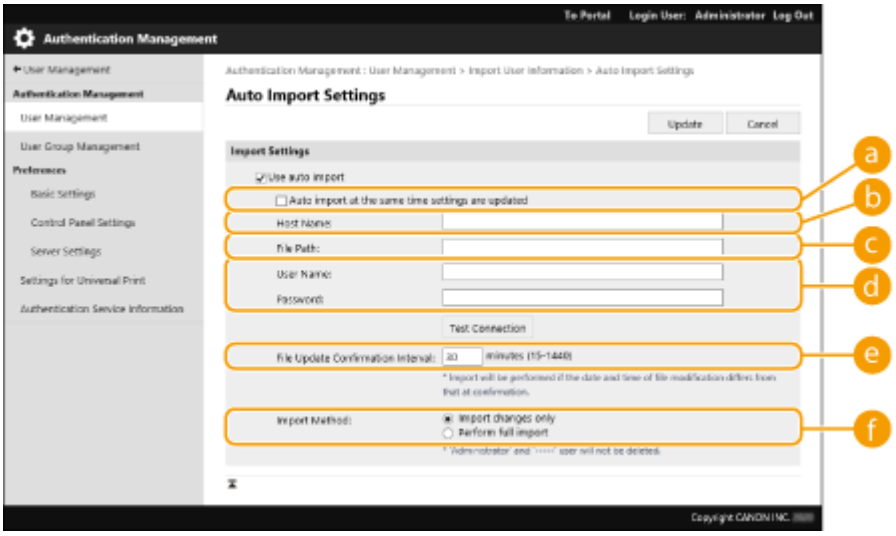
1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

4 **Click [Import] ▶ [Auto Import Settings...].**

5 **Select the check box for [Use auto import] and specify the required settings.**



a [Auto import at the same time settings are updated]

Click the [Update] button to start importing.

b [Host Name:]

Enter the host name of the server to access, along with the path that require authentication.

Example:

- \\Host Name
- \\IP Address\Shared Folder Name

c [File Path:]

Enter the path of the file for importing.

d [User Name:]/[Password:]

Enter the user name and password required to log in to the computer in which the file for importing is stored.

e [File Update Confirmation Interval:]

You can specify the interval in minutes for checking for files to import.

NOTE:

- If the operation cannot be performed at the specified time because the machine is turned OFF or is completely in the Sleep mode, the operation is performed and information is reflected when the machine recovers.

f [Import Method:]

Select whether to import only updated or added user data, or all user data.

NOTE:

- If you select [Perform full import] and a user with the same user name is already registered, the user information is overwritten.
- When importing information of a user who accesses the Advanced Space with SMB, specify the appropriate value in the "password" column. If you export the data from the machine and import it to the other machine without performing the above operation, authentication may fail. (The value is "********" when exported.)
- When performing a complete import, any users not listed in the imported files are deleted from the machine. However, "-----" and "Administrator", which are registered by default, will remain even if they are not listed in the imported files.
- "User Authentication Format" is the only file format that is supported. Also, the "uid" column is required.
- Note that if you are using a server that does not support SMB 3.0/3.1 encrypted communication, user data travels unencrypted across communication paths while it is being obtained.

6 Click [Test Connection], confirm that you can connect, and then click [Update].

Manually Importing User Data

You can manually specify data for importing and update user information.

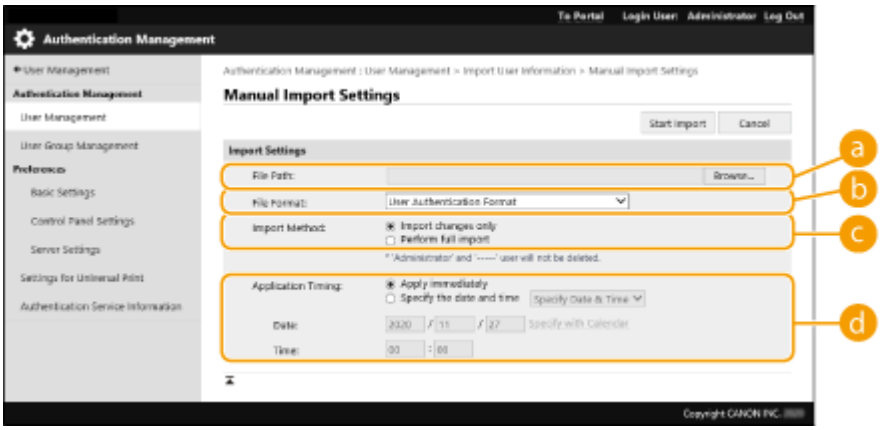
1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

4 Click [Import] ▶ [Manual Import Settings...]

5 Specify the required settings.



[File Path:]

Specify the path of the file for importing.

[File Format:]

Select the file format for importing.

- <Simple Device Login Format>:

  Imports user information exported from a Canon machine using the Local Device Authentication of SSO-H. The file extension is "ldif."

- <User Access Control for Advanced Space Format>:

  Imports user information exported from a Canon machine with Advanced Space user access control. The file extension is "csv."

- <User Authentication Format>:

  Imports user information created in the file format that can be used with User Authentication. The file extension is "csv."

[Import Method:]

Select whether to import only updated or added user data, or all user data.

NOTE:

- If you select [Perform full import] and a user with the same user name is already registered, the user information is overwritten.
- When importing information of a user who accesses the Advanced Space with SMB, specify the appropriate value in the "password" column. If you export the data from the machine and import it to the other machine without performing the above operation, authentication may fail. (The value is "********" when exported.)
- When performing a complete import, any users not listed in the imported files are deleted from the machine. However, "-----" and "Administrator", which are registered by default, will remain even if they are not listed in the imported files.

[Application Timing:]

Select [Apply immediately] or [Specify the date and time]. If you select [Specify the date and time], enter the desired date and time or the time only.

NOTE:

- If the user information cannot be reflected at the specified time because the machine is turned OFF or is completely in the Sleep mode, the information is reflected when the machine recovers.

6 Click [Start Import]

NOTE:

- If the Department ID (dept_id) and PIN (dept_pin) are written in the imported CSV file, [Check Unregistered Department ID] will be displayed after importing is complete. Perform Department ID registration.

Adding and Editing User Information in a CSV File

ERJ8-0AH

This section describes the content of each column in a CSV file used for importing or exporting. Refer to this section when editing CSV files.
However, if "No" is written in the "Change Required" section for a particular column, do not change the content of that column.

Column Name	Change Required	Valid Characters	Invalid Characters	Compatibility With Remote UI Screen	Notes
uid	Yes	1 to 32 characters	Control characters, single-byte spaces, and the following characters: \ / : * ? | < > [ ] ; , = + @ "	a	• Must be input when importing. • "@" may be available depending on a setting. **<Allow Use of @ in User Name>(P. 1025)**
password	Yes	0 to 32 characters within the ISO885915 character set	Control characters	b	• Output as "********" (* x 8) when exporting. • When updating the password, "********" will be deleted and overwritten by the new password. However, when importing changes, even if you leave the field unspecified (blank), it will not be overwritten as empty (blank), but will instead retain the existing value. • If this item is omitted when importing changes, the existing user will carry over the original password.
cn	Yes	0 to 32 characters	Control characters	c	N/A
cn;lang-ja;phonetic	Yes	0 to 32 characters	Control characters	See "Notes."	Displayed as "phonetic" if the display language is set to "Japanese."
mail	Yes	Combination of 0 to 256 alphanumeric characters and symbols	Control characters	d	N/A
avatorImgPath	No	-	-	e	Cannot be changed. Automatically assigned when specifying icon images.
dept_id	Yes	A number up to seven digits	Non-single-byte numeric characters	f	N/A

Column Name	Change Required	Valid Characters	Invalid Characters	Compatibility With Remote UI Screen	Notes
dept_pin	Yes	A number up to seven digits	Non-single-byte numeric characters	g	N/A
roleName	Yes	0 to 32 characters	Control characters, single-byte spaces, and the following characters: \ / : * ? | <>[];,=+@"&	h	If this item is omitted, or if a name is specified that is not registered in role management, it will be changed to the initial role setting.
cardId1	Yes	Combination of 0 to 128 alphanumeric characters and symbols	Control characters	-	• Not case sensitive. • Cannot conflict with another user or "cardId2". If it conflicts with another user, it will be left blank.
issueNumber1	Yes	0 to 2147483647	Non-single-byte numeric characters	-	N/A
cardId2	Yes	Combination of 0 to 128 alphanumeric characters and symbols	Control characters	-	• Not case sensitive. • Cannot conflict with another user or "cardId1". If it conflicts with another user or "cardId1", it will be left blank.
issueNumber2	Yes	0 to 2147483647	Non-single-byte numeric characters	-	N/A
accountExpires	Yes	See "Notes."	See "Notes."	i	YYYYMMDD format. "235959" is automatically added as the time after importing.
accountDisabled	Yes	1 or 0	Any character besides "1" (disable) or "0" (enable)	j	N/A
group	Yes	0 to 64 characters. You can specify up to 10 items.	Control characters, single-byte spaces, and special symbols.	k	The "Group name" registered in the user group management is written here. If the user belongs to multiple groups, group names are connected with a "|".
createDate	Yes	See "Notes."	See "Notes."	- (N/A)	• Output in the "TYYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm" format when exporting. (The "T" is added in order to prevent corruption of the text.)

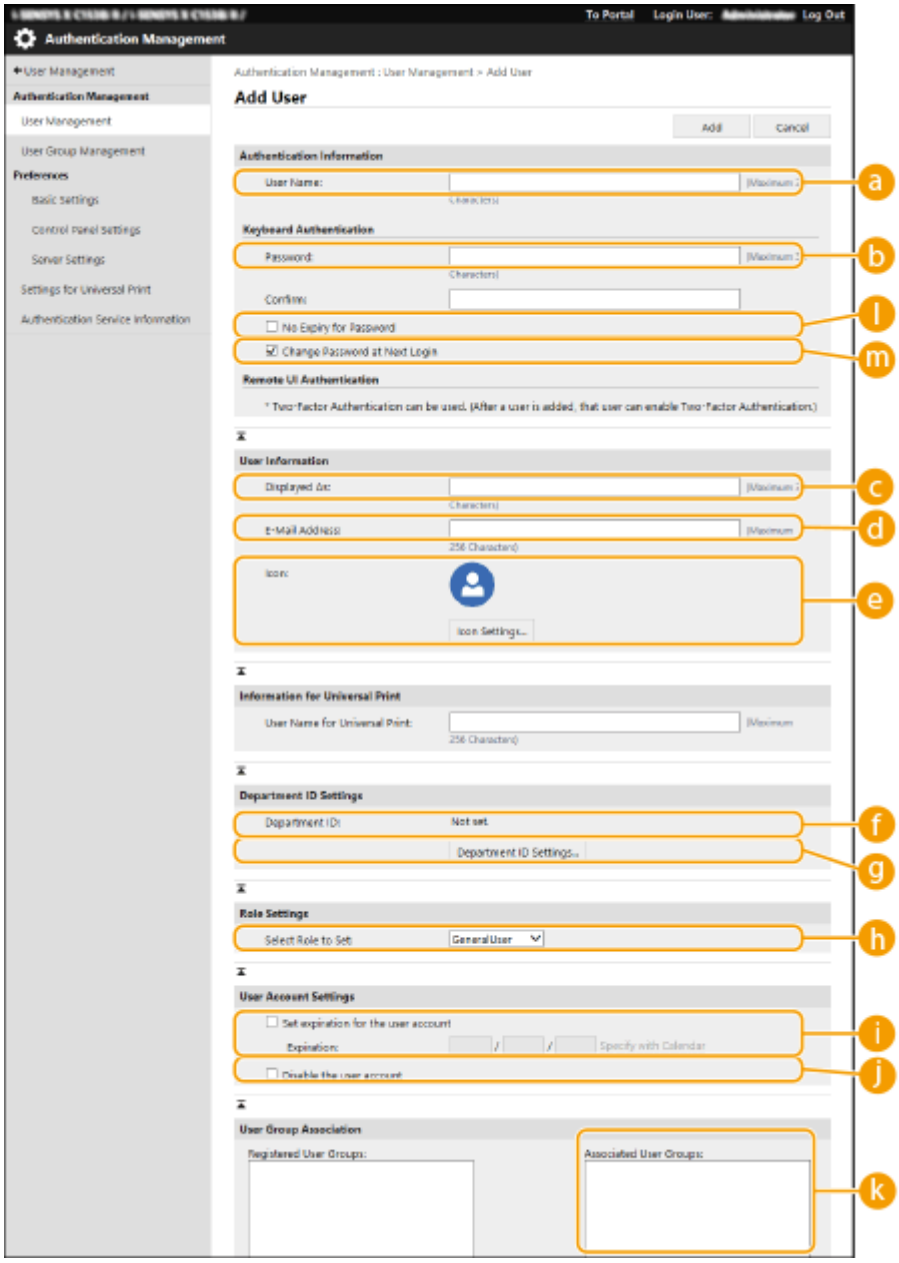
Column Name	Change Required	Valid Characters	Invalid Characters	Compatibility With Remote UI Screen	Notes

					• When importing, input the information in one of the following formats.
					  • YYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm
					  • TYYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm
					  • YYYYMMDD
					  • TYYYYMMDD
					• If you omit this item, the date and time of importing is used for the date and time of registration for new users. For existing users, the original registration date and time are carried over.

lastLoginDate	Yes	See "Notes."	See "Notes."	-
				(N/A)
					• The date and time that the user last logged in are stored.
					• Output in the "TYYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm" format when exporting. (The "T" is added in order to prevent corruption of the text.)
					• When importing, input the information in one of the following formats.
					  • YYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm
					  • TYYYYMMDDhhmmssmmm
					  • YYYYMMDD
					  • TYYYYMMDD
					• Used for determining whether a user has logged in and whether to perform automatic user deletion.
					• If you omit this item, the date and time that the user last logged in are blank for new users. For existing users, date and time that the user last logged in are carried over.

dc	No	0 to 32 characters	Control characters	- (N/A)	Cannot be changed. It will be automatically assigned for the following users. • Users registered following server authentication
uuid	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. Automatically assigned during user registration.
sdl_digest	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. Automatically generated when registering/ changing password.

Column Name	Change Required	Valid Characters	Invalid Characters	Compatibility With Remote UI Screen	Notes
uac_advbox_digest1	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. Automatically generated when registering/ changing password.
uac_advbox_digest2	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. Automatically generated when registering/ changing password.
pin_digest	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. Automatically generated when registering/ changing PIN.
server_user_flg	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. This is the group to which the user who is registered after completing server authentication belongs.
server_user_gp_key	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. This is the group to which the user who is registered after completing server authentication belongs.
server_user_gp_value	No	-	-	-	Cannot be changed. This is the group to which the user who is registered after completing server authentication belongs.
non_expire_password	Yes	1 or 0	Any character besides "1" (enable) or "0" (disable)		If this item is not entered, "0" (disabled) is reflected.
next_password_change_required	Yes	1 or 0	Any character besides "1" (enable) or "0" (disable)		If this item is not entered, "0" (disabled) is reflected.
second_factor	Yes	1 or 2	Other than "1" (PIN) or "2" (pattern)	-	
CharSet	-	-	-	-	For UTF8, "CharSet:UTF8" will be written in the column line.



NOTE

- The line at the beginning of the file is the column line.
- Items names may not appear in sequence.
- The encodings supported by CSV files are UTF-8, SJIS, BIG5, GB2312, and Korean.
- Text strings in exported CSV files are surrounded by "[" and "]" if any of the following conditions apply. When editing a CSV file and adding new text strings that meet the following conditions, surround any such text strings with "[" and "]".
  - Numbers starting with "0"
  - Numbers greater than 12 digits
  - Text strings surrounded by "[" and "]"

Registering Server Information

ERJ8-0AJ



To specify an Active Directory, Microsoft Entra ID or LDAP server as an additional authentication device, you must register the information ofthe server used for authentication. Conduct a connection test as necessary.

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

4 **Click [Server Settings] ▶ [Edit...].**

5 **Set the authentication server and domain information.**



a [Use Active Directory]

Select the check box when using Active Directory.

b [Set Domain List:]

Select whether the Active Directory information of the login destination is retrieved automatically or entered manually. To enter it manually, select [Set Manually] and add the domain of the login destination in [Active Directory Management...].

[Use access mode within sites]

Select the check box if there are multiple Active Directory servers and you want to assign access priority to the Active Directory located in the same site as the machine. Change the settings for [Timing of Site Information Retrieval:] and [Site Access Range:] as necessary.

IMPORTANT:

- Even when [Only site to which device belongs] in [Site Access Range:] is set, the machine may access sites outside the site it belongs to when performing domain controller access during the startup process. However, access to domain controllers in the same site as the machine is prioritized. As an exception, if domain controllers in the same site cannot be accessed but domain controllers outside the site can be accessed, priority is given to accessing domain controllers outside the site.

[Number of Caches for Service Ticket:]

Specify the number of service tickets that the machine can hold. A service ticket is an Active Directory function that acts as a record of a previous login, which reduces the amount of time it takes for the same user to log in next time.

[Use LDAP server]

Select the check box when using an LDAP server.

[Use Microsoft Entra ID]

Select the check box when using Microsoft Entra ID.

[Period Until Timeout]

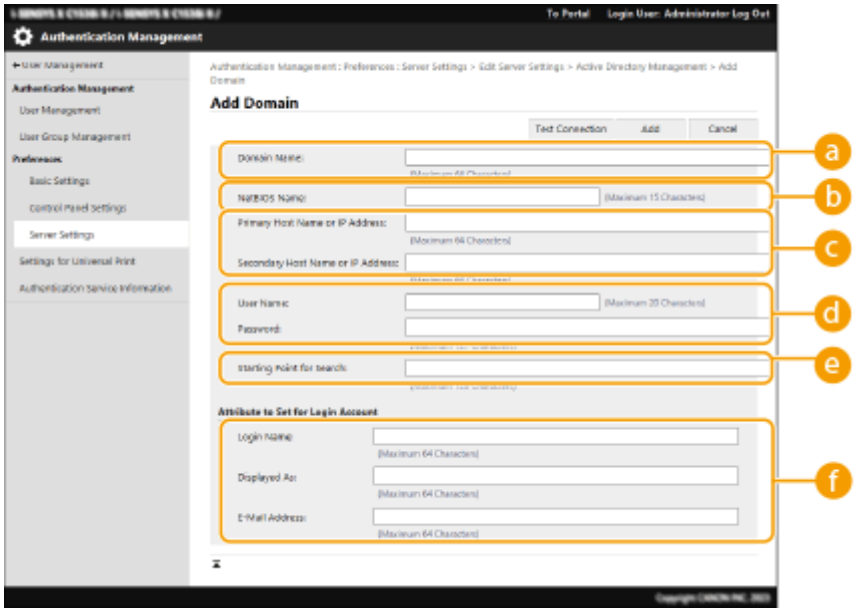
Specify the time limit for attempting to connect to the authentication server and the time limit for waiting for a response. When [Save authentication information for login users] is enabled, if you cannot log in within the time limit specified here, login is attempted using the authentication information saved in the cache.

[Default Domain of Login Destination:]

Specify the domain that has connection priority.

■Manually specifying the Active Directory domain

1. Select the check box for [Use Active Directory] and select [Set Manually] for [Set Domain List:].
2. Click [Active Directory Management...] ▶ [OK].
3. Click [Add Domain...].
4. Enter the necessary information.



a [Domain Name:]

Enter the domain name of the Active Directory that is the login destination (**Example:** company.domain.com).

b [NetBIOS Name]

Enter the NetBIOS domain name (**Example:** company).

c [Primary Host Name:] / [Secondary Host Name]

Enter the host name of the Active Directory server or the IPv4 address. When using a secondary server, specify the name in [Secondary Host Name].

- **Example:**

  Using a host name: ad-server1

  Using an IPv4 address: 192.168.18.138

d [User Name:] / [Password:]

Enter the user name and password to use for accessing and searching the Active Directory server.

e [Starting Point for Search:]

Specify the location to access and search in the Active Directory Server.

f [Login Name:] / [Displayed As] / [E-Mail Address]

Specify the data fields (attribute names) for the login name, display name, and e-mail address of each user account on the Active Directory server (**Example:** sAMAccountName, cn, mail).

5 Click [Test Connection] to confirm that connection is possible, and then click [Add].

NOTE:

To edit server information

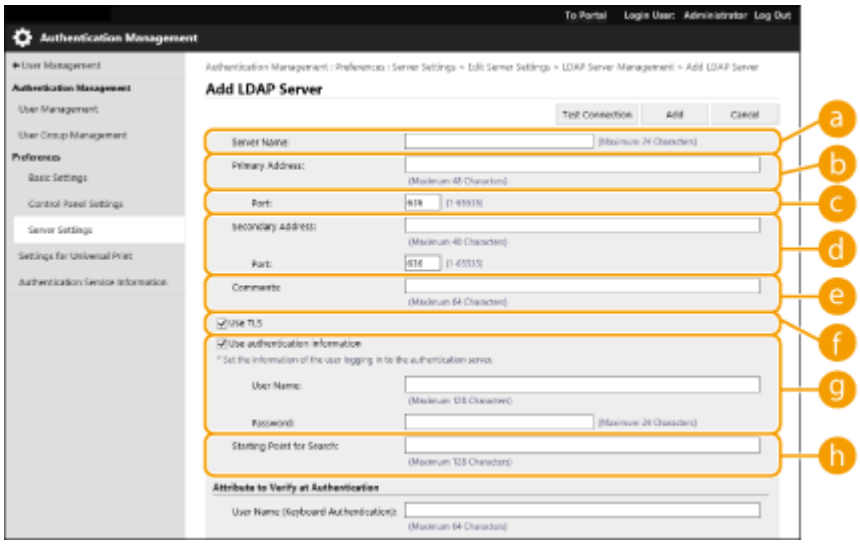
- Click [Edit] for the server information that you want to edit, make the necessary changes, and click [Update].

■Registering LDAP server information

1 Select the check box for [Use LDAP server] and click [LDAP Server Management...] ▶ [OK].

2 Click [Add Server...].

3 Enter the LDAP server information.



a [Server Name]

Enter the name for the LDAP server. The name "localhost" cannot be used. The server name may not include spaces.

b [Primary Address]

Enter the IP address or host name of the LDAP server (**Example:** ldap.example.com). The loopback address (127.0.0.1) cannot be used.

c [Port:]

Enter the port number used for communicating with the LDAP server. Use the same setting that is configured on the server. If you do not enter a number, it is automatically set to "636" when the check box is selected for [Use TLS], or it is set to "389" when the check box is cleared.

d [Secondary Address:] / [Port:]

When using a secondary server in your environment, enter the IP address and the port number.

e [Comments]

Enter a description or note as necessary.

f [Use TLS]

Select the check box when using TLS encryption for communications with the LDAP server.

g [Use authentication information]

Clear the check box to allow anonymous access to the LDAP server, only if the LDAP server is set to allow anonymous access. When using the user name and password for authentication, select the check box and enter values for [User Name:] and [Password:].

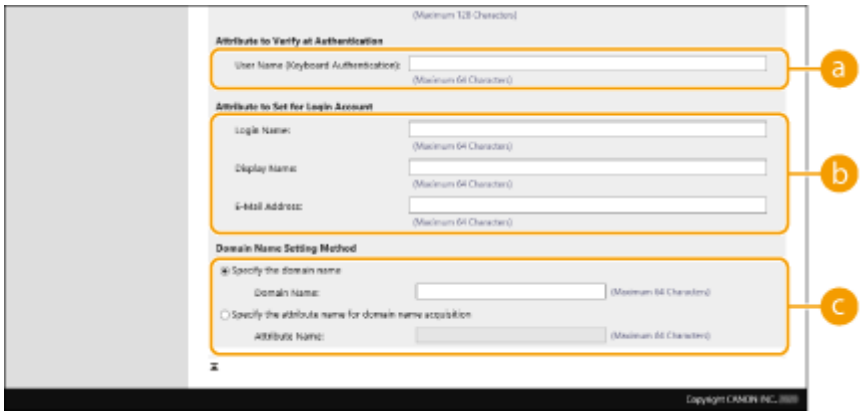
NOTE:

- If this check box is selected, when you want to change the settings in [Primary Address] or [Secondary Address:] of an LDAP server, entering the password specified in [Password:] in [Use authentication information] is required.

h [Starting Point for Search:]

Specify the location (level) to search for user information when LDAP server authentication is performed.

4 Specify how to set the attribute names and domain name.



a [User Name (Keyboard Authentication):]

Specify the LDAP data field (attribute name) for the user name on the LDAP server (**Example:** uid).

b [Login Name:] / [Display Name] / [E-Mail Address]

Specify the LDAP data fields (attribute names) for the login name, display name, and e-mail address of each user account on the LDAP server (**Example:** uid, cn, mail).

c [Specify the domain name] / [Specify the attribute name for domain name acquisition]

Select how to set the domain name of the login destination. To specify the domain name directly, select [Specify the domain name] and enter the domain name. To specify an LDAP data field (attribute name) from which to acquire the domain name on the LDAP server, select [Specify the attribute name for domain name acquisition] and enter the attribute name (**Example:** dc).

5 Click [Test Connection] to confirm that connection is possible, and then click [Add].

NOTE:

To edit server information

- Click [Edit] for the server information that you want to edit, make the necessary changes, and click [Update].

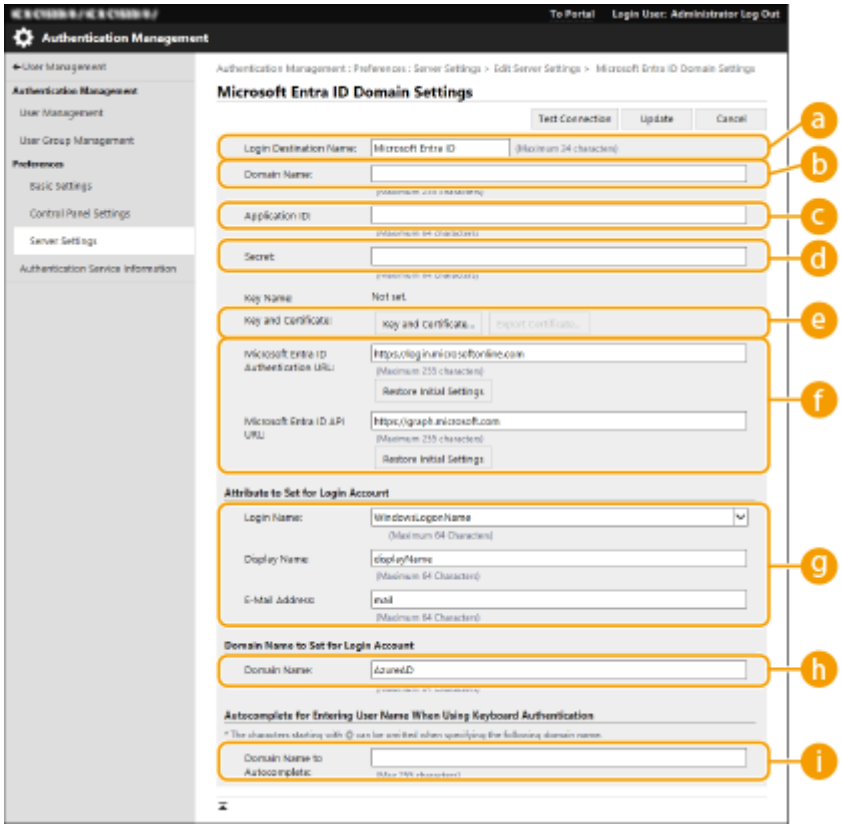
■ Specifying the domain of Microsoft Entra ID

NOTE:

- If you want to specify Microsoft Entra ID as an authentication server, you need to register a user on the Microsoft 365 Service and use the Microsoft Entra ID Service. **Registering Application on Microsoft Entra ID(P. 1251)**

1 Select the check box for [Use Microsoft Entra ID] and click [Domain Settings] ▶ [OK].

2 Enter the necessary information.



a [Login Destination Name:]

Enter the display name for the login destination.

- **Default value:**Microsoft Entra ID

b [Domain Name:]

Enter the domain name of Microsoft Entra ID that is the login destination.

c [Application ID:]

Enter the application ID (client).

d [Secret:]

Enter the secret issued on Microsoft Entra ID. When you use [Key and Certificate], it is not necessary to enter here.

e [Key and Certificate]

Click [Key and Certificate] when you use a key and a certificate. By clicking [Export Certificate], you can export the certificate that is registered to Microsoft Entra ID.

f [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL] / [Microsoft Entra ID API URL]

Enter the URL. Depending on your cloud environment, it may be necessary to modify the URL.

Click [Restore Initial Settings] to restore the URL of [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL] / [Microsoft Entra ID API URL] to the default value.

- **Default value:**
  [Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL]: https://login.microsoftonline.com
  [Microsoft Entra ID API URL]: https://graph.microsoft.com

g [Login Name:] / [Display Name:] / [E-Mail Address:]

Enter the data field (attribute) names to which a login name, display name, and e-mail address of each user account are registered on an Microsoft Entra ID server.

- **Default value:** WindowsLogonName, displayName, mail

- **Example:** userPrincipalName, displayName, mail

h [Domain Name:]

Under most circumstances, you do not need to change the setting.

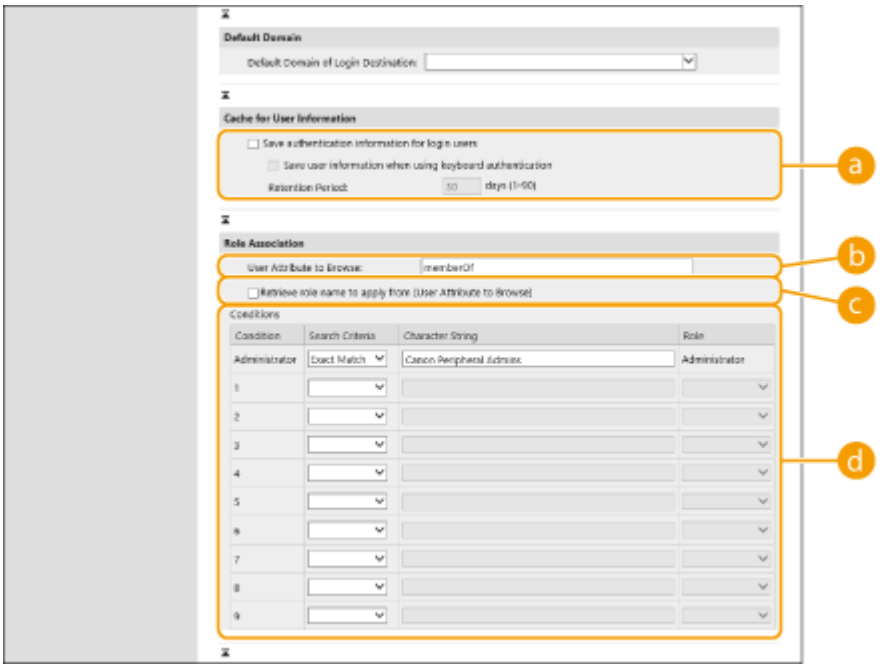
- **Default value:** AzureAD

i [Domain Name to Autocomplete:]

Enter the domain name that is entered automatically. You do not have to enter the domain name after @ by yourself.

3 Click [Test Connection], confirm that the connection is established, and click [Update].

6 Enter the user information and set the privileges.



a [Save authentication information for login users]

Select the check box to save the authentication information of users who log in via the control panel. Select the [Save user information when using keyboard authentication] check box to save the information of users who log in using keyboard authentication to the cache. After the settings are configured, the saved authentication information can be used for login, even if the machine is unable to connect to the server. Change the [Retention Period:] setting as necessary.

b [User Attribute to Browse:]

Enter the data field (attribute name) on the referenced server that is used to determine user privileges (roles). Normally, you can use the preset value of "memberOf", which indicates the group that the user belongs to.

c [Retrieve role name to apply from [User Attribute to Browse]]

Select the check box to use the character string registered in the data field on the server specified in [User Attribute to Browse:] for the role name. Before configuring, check the role names that can be selected on the machine, and register them on the server.

d [Conditions]

You can set the conditions that determine user privileges. The conditions below are applied in the order that they are listed.

[Search Criteria]	Select the search criteria for [Character String].

[Character String]	Enter the character string that is registered to the attribute specified in [User Attribute to Browse:]. To set the privileges based on the group that user belongs to, enter the group name.
[Role]	Select the privileges that apply to users who match the criteria.

NOTE:

The [Conditions] settings when using Active Directory servers

- "Canon Peripheral Admins" is set in advance as the Administrator user group. Assign different privileges to the other groups created on the server.

7 **Click [Update].**

8 **Restart the machine.** **Restarting the Machine(P. 696)**

NOTE

DNS Settings

The following settings are required if the port number used for Kerberos on the Active Directory side is changed.

- Information for the Kerberos service of Active Directory must be registered as an SRV record as follows:
  - Service: "_kerberos"
  - Protocol: "_udp"
  - Port number: The port number used by the Kerberos service of the Active Directory domain (zone)
  - Host offering this service: Host name of the domain controller that is actually providing the Kerberos service of the Active Directory domain (zone)

LINKS

Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Configuring the Authentication Functions(P. 621)
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)

Configuring the Authentication Functions

ERJ8-0AK

You can configure the user login methods, authentication devices, and other authentication functions based on your system environment and needs. You can also specify how the login screen is displayed.

Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)
Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)

Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices

Specify the user login methods (**Login Method(P. 594)**) and authentication devices (**Authentication Device(P. 594)**). Note that the authentication devices need to be set up before configuring the settings below.

Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Registering Server Information(P. 613)

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].

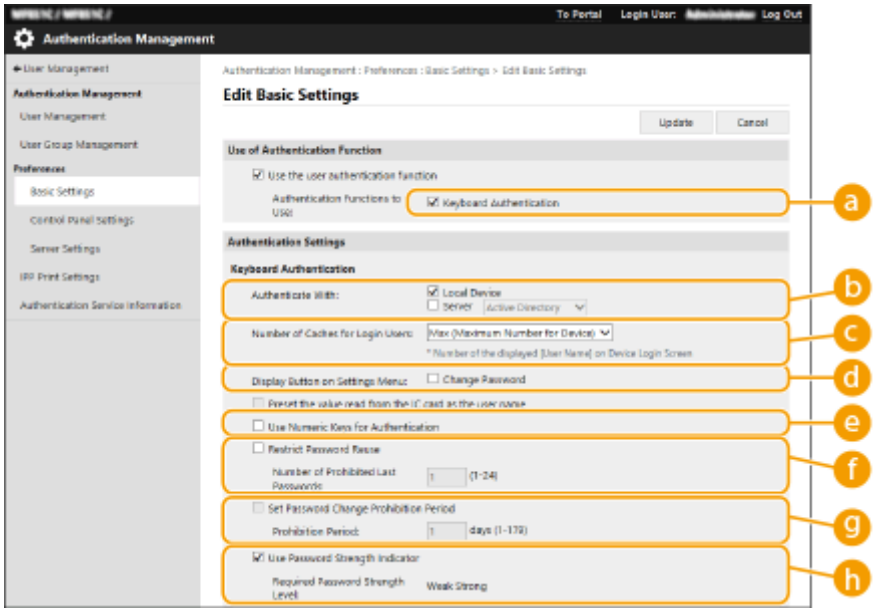
4 Click [Basic Settings] ▶ [Edit...].

5 Select the check box for [Use the user authentication function] and specify the required settings.

- Select the login methods that you want to use, and specify detailed settings such as authentication device settings.

■Using keyboard authentication

Configure the settings below when using keyboard authentication.



a [Authentication Functions to Use:]

Select the check box for [Keyboard Authentication].

b [Authenticate With:]

Select the user authentication device.

- Select the check box for [Local Device] if you are using the database inside this machine to manage user information.
- When using an external authentication server, select [Server] and specify the type of server.

NOTE:

- If you selected [Microsoft Entra ID] for the server type, you can check the connection to the server by pressing [Menu] at the top right of the login screen [Check Server Connection].

c [Number of Caches for Login Users:]

The names of users who previously logged in can be displayed in a drop-down list on the login screen on the machine. Select [0] to hide the login history, and select [1] to display only the name of the user who logged in most recently.

d [Display Button on Settings Menu:]

Select the check box to add the <Change Password> button to the menu that is displayed when pressing ☰ on the top right corner of the login screen.

e [Use Numeric Keys for Authentication]

If this function is enabled and the user name and password are comprised of numbers only, authentication can be performed with numeric key entry only.

f [Restrict Password Reuse]

Select this check box to prohibit the re-use of a password that has already been used. The password history count should also be configured to match this setting.

g [Set Password Change Prohibition Period]

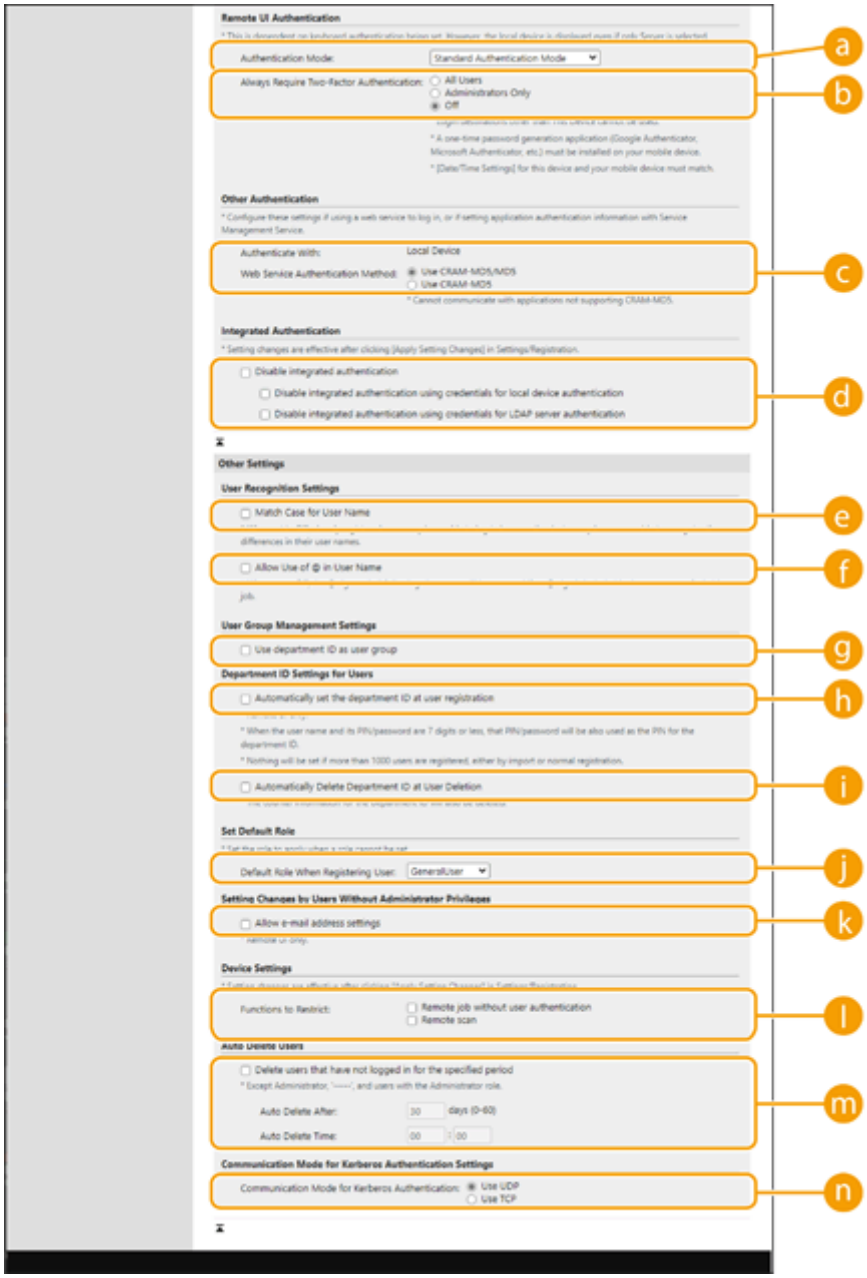
Select this check box to specify the period for which password changes are prohibited. Specify the expiry period also.

h [Use Password Strength Indicator]

Select this check box to display the password strength indicator. Set the password strength level from the control panel.

■Configuring detailed settings for authentication functions

You can configure detailed settings for the personal authentication functions.



a [Authentication Mode:]

Select the authentication mode to use for Remote UI login. When [Guest Authentication Mode] is selected, unregistered users can also log in by clicking [Log In (Guest)]. Select [Administrator Authentication Mode] to only allow users with Administrator privileges to log in.

b [Always Require Two-Factor Authentication:]

You can compel users logging in to the Remote UI to use two-factor authentication. Select [All Users] or [Administrators Only] as the users to which this applies.

c [Web Service Authentication Method:]

Select the local device authentication method to use for communications with Web service applications.

d [Disable integrated authentication]

Integrated authentication is a function that enables the authentication information used when logging in to be used when logging in at other times. Select the check box to disable the integrated authentication function.

- To disable the integrated authentication function only for logged-in users who are registered in the local device, select the check box for [Disable integrated authentication using credentials for local device authentication].
- To disable the integrated authentication function only for logged-in users who are registered in the LDAP server, select the check box for [Disable integrated authentication using credentials for LDAP server authentication].

NOTE:

- When integrated authentication is disabled, a separate user name and password must be registered in order to access the folders and boxes listed below.
  - Personal folder
  - LDAP server
  - Shared folder/FTP server/WebDAV server
  - Advanced Space
- Integrated authentication is valid while the session is valid.

e [Match Case for User Name]

If this function is set, you can set whether user names are case-sensitive.

NOTE:

- It is recommended that this is set together with <Function Settings> ▶ <Print> ▶ <Match Case for User Name>.

f [Allow Use of @ in User Name]

Select whether to allow "@" to be used in user names.

g [Use department ID as user group]

Select the check box to use Department IDs as the user groups (**Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**) to which users are registered.

h [Automatically set the department ID at user registration]

Select the check box to automatically allocate a Department ID when you register/edit a user via the Remote UI. A new Department ID will not be allocated if one has already been allocated. This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

NOTE:

- If the user name is comprised of numbers and is seven digits or fewer, the same number is assigned to the same user as the Department ID. If the password of the same user is registered as a number that is seven digits or fewer, it is also set as the PIN for that Department ID.
- If the user name and password do not meet the above conditions, a Department ID is automatically assigned starting from 0000001, and 0 (none) is set for the PIN.
- In the following cases, the Department ID is not registered automatically.
  - If a user is registered from the control panel of the machine
  - If 1,000 Department IDs are already registered
  - If 1,001 or more users are already registered

i [Automatically Delete Department ID at User Deletion]

If this check box is selected, when a user is deleted, the department ID assigned to the user is automatically deleted. Counter information assigned to the corresponding department ID is also deleted. If multiple users are registered to the department ID, it is not automatically deleted.

j [Default Role When Registering User:]

Select the role to apply to users in situations such as when no privileges are set.

k [Allow e-mail address settings]

Select the check box to enable users without Administrator privileges to specify their own e-mail addresses in their user accounts.

l [Functions to Restrict:]

Select the check boxes for functions that cannot be used when personal authentication management is enabled.

m [Delete users that have not logged in for the specified period]

Select the check box to delete users registered in the local device who have not logged in to the machine for a specified period of time. Make sure to also specify the number of days before automatic deletion and the time it is executed.

NOTE:

- If you set [Auto Delete After:] to [0], all accounts other than the administrator are deleted at the time set in [Auto Delete Time:].
- If the accounts cannot be deleted at the specified time because the machine is turned OFF or is completely in sleep mode, the accounts are deleted the next time that the machine starts.
- If a user has never logged in before, the date and time that the user was registered is displayed as the time that the user last logged in.

n [Communication Mode for Kerberos Authentication:]

Select the communication method used for Kerberos authentication.

6 Click [Update].

7 **Restart the machine.** **Restarting the Machine(P. 696)**

Specifying When to Display the Login Screen

You can specify when to display the login screen by selecting either "when you start using the machine" or "after a function button is pressed." If "after a function button is pressed" is selected, you can specify the functions that require user login. Functions that are not specified are available to unregistered users.

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management].**

4 **Click [Control Panel Settings] ▶ [Edit...].**

5 **Configure the settings as necessary.**



a [Login Settings]

In [Display Login Screen:], select when the login screen is displayed.
If you selected [Display login screen when functions requiring authentication are selected], also select the functions to display the login screen for.

NOTE:

- If you change this setting, <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> may be set to <On>. The relationship between the settings is indicated below. **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**
  - When the [Display login screen when operation is started on the device] check box is selected: <Copy/Print>, <Send>, and <Store> in <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> are set to <On>

- When the [Display login screen when functions requiring authentication are selected] check box is selected and the [Copy], [Access Stored Files], or [Print] check box is selected in [Select Function That Will Require Authentication]:
  <Copy/Print> in <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> is set to <On>
- When the [Display login screen when functions requiring authentication are selected] check box is selected and the [Fax] or [Scan and Send] check box is selected in [Select Function That Will Require Authentication]:
  <Send> in <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> is set to <On>
- When the [Display login screen when functions requiring authentication are selected] check box is selected and the [Scan and Store] check box is selected in [Select Function That Will Require Authentication]:
  <Store> in <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> is set to <On>

- If you want to set <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> to <Off>, set it to <Off> after this setting is complete.

[Login Screen Background Settings]

You can specify a background image for the login screen.

6 Click [Update].

LINKS

Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Registering Server Information(P. 613)
Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)

Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/ Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer

ERJ8-0AL

You can apply personal authentication management to printing, faxing, and remote scanning (**Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) (Windows)(P. 515)**) via a computer. This can provide greater security, as the machine does not accept these operations unless the user is identified.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

LINKS

Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)
Registering Server Information(P. 613)
Configuring the Authentication Functions(P. 621)

Using Other Convenient Personal Authentication Management Functions

ERJ8-0AR

Personal authentication management provides a variety of advantages in addition to user authentication. This section describes some of the other convenient functions that use personal authentication to expand the capabilities of multifunctional printers, such as managing user groups or creating Personal folders for individual users.

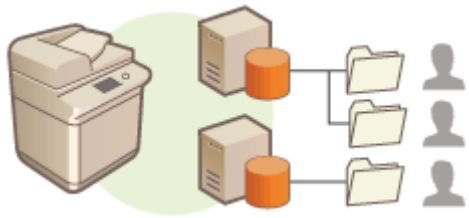
Department ID Management

Users registered in the machine can be organized into groups such as the departments that they belong to, and managed based on their Department ID. This function lets you check the total number of pages used for each Department ID, or set maximum limits on the number of pages that each group can use for copying or printing, which can help reduce costs. **Setting the Department ID Management(P. 630)**



Personal Folder

Users who log in with personal authentication management can create a Personal folder for individual use. A Personal folder can be specified as the send destination for scanned documents, and it can be created in a shared folder or on a file server. Registering a Personal folder makes it easy for users to send documents to themselves, which can effectively prevent information leakage due to sending to wrong destinations. **Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)**



ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

An environment that uses ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM can provide more precise control in user management, by allowing you to create new privilege levels and define which functions are available to each privilege level. **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**

Setting the Department ID Management

ERJ8-0AS

Users can be organized into groups such as the departments that they belong to, and managed based on their Department ID. First, create all of the Department IDs that are to be managed, and assign users to each one (**Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**). After assigning users to Department IDs, enable Department ID Management. To perform the same type of management for printing or scanning documents from a computer, configure the additional required settings. Administrator privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)

Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)

Using Department IDs to Manage Printing or Remote Scanning via Computer(P. 636)

Changing the System Manager ID and PIN

ERJ8-0AU

When Department ID Management is enabled, Department IDs must be set for users before they can log in. The System Manager ID and System Manager PIN are both set to "7654321" by default, but it is recommended to change them for security reasons. Follow the procedure below to change them.

IMPORTANT

- Make sure that you do not forget the System Manager PIN. If you forget the System Manager PIN, contact your dealer or service representative.

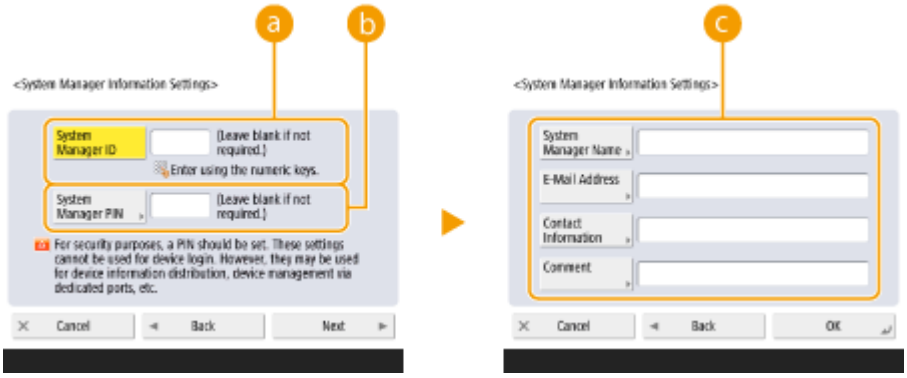
NOTE

- This setting is not a default User Authentication administrator setting. To specify this setting for a user with administrator privileges in User Authentication, set [Select Role to Set:] to "Administrator". **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <System Manager Information Settings>.**

3 **Make the necessary changes to the System Manager settings, and press <OK>.**



a <System Manager ID>

Enter a number of 7 digits or less for the new System Manager ID.

b <System Manager PIN>

Enter a number of 7 digits or less for the new System Manager PIN, and press <Confirm>. For confirmation, enter the PIN again and press <OK>.

c <System Manager Name> / <E-Mail Address> / <Contact Information> / <Comment>

Enter information about the administrator as necessary.

NOTE:

- You cannot register a System Manager ID or PIN consisting only of 0s, such as "00" or "0000000".

- Even if you enter fewer than seven digits, zeros are added to the start of the number, and a seven digit number is set.
- You can also make entering seven digits a requirement for the System Manager ID and System Manager PIN. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.

LINKS

Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)
Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)

Configuring the Department ID Management Settings

ERJ8-0AW

You can organize and manage users in groups based on Department ID. Follow the procedure below to configure Department ID Management and enable the machine to count the number of pages used for printing and scanning.

IMPORTANT

- Make sure that Department IDs have been set for the users registered in the machine. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**
- Department ID Management is only valid for users who are registered to the local device.
- If you login as a user with Administrator privileges, a System Manager ID and PIN are automatically assigned, and managed as Department ID.

NOTE

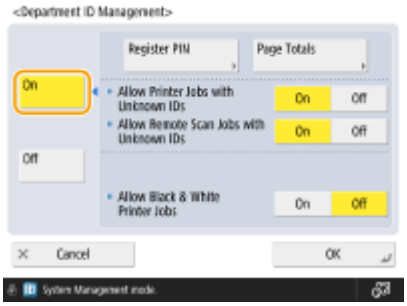
- For information on the number of Department IDs that you can register, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** .

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management>.

3 Press <On>.

➠ Department ID Management is enabled.



- To disable Department ID Management, press <Off>.

■Registering Department IDs and PINs

1 Press <Register PIN>.

2 Press <Register>.

NOTE:

To edit Department ID settings

- Select the Department ID that you want to edit, and press <Edit> to display the Edit screen.

To delete Department ID settings

- Select the Department ID that you want to delete, and press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

3 Enter the Department ID and PIN, and press <OK>.



a <Department ID>

Enter a number of 7 digits or less for the Department ID.

b <PIN>

Enter a number of 7 digits or less for the PIN, and press <Confirm>. For confirmation, enter the PIN again and press <OK>. If you do not want to set a PIN, leave this item blank.

NOTE:

- You cannot register a Department ID or PIN consisting only of 0s, such as "00" or "0000000".
- Even if you enter fewer than seven digits, zeros are added to the start of the number, and a seven digit number is set.
- You can press <Turn Limit On/Off and Set Page Limit> to set the total number of pages that the department is allowed to use for copying, scanning, and printing.
- You can also make entering seven digits a requirement for Department IDs and PINs. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.
- The machine stops printing if any one of the color or black-and-white page limits is reached while printing a document that contains both color and black-and-white areas.
- The machine stops copying if any one of the total color or black-and-white print or copy limits is reached while copying a document that contains both color and black-and-white areas.

4 Press <OK>.

4 Press <OK>.

NOTE

To check the page counts

- If you want to check the total number of pages used by each Department ID for copies, prints, and scans, press <Page Totals> on the screen displayed in step 3. The page counts do not include blank pages or sample prints used for checking items such as gradation adjustment.
- For models with a fax function, you can also check the total number of fax pages sent.

Logging In Using a Department ID and PIN

- By registering a user with the same name as a department ID, login operations can be performed using a registered department ID and PIN. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**
  The login screen can either be displayed when starting an operation or after a function is selected. **Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)**

Changing the Login Service

- The machine uses "User Authentication" (personal authentication management) as the login service. However, you can change the login service to "DepartmentID Authentication" using SMS. **Changing Login Services(P. 1245)**

LINKS

Using Department IDs to Manage Printing or Remote Scanning via Computer(P. 636)

Using Department IDs to Manage Printing or Remote Scanning via Computer

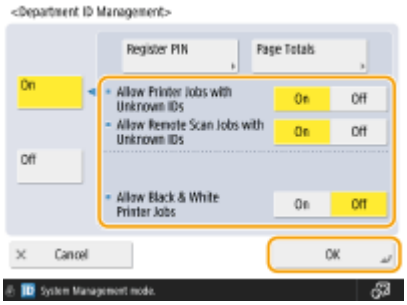
ERJ8-0AX

You can use Department ID Management to manage printing and remote scanning operations performed via a computer (**Using Your Computer to Scan (Remote Scan) (Windows)(P. 515)**). Use this function when you would like to improve security or monitor the number of pages that are printed.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management>.

3 Select <Off> for the functions that you want to manage, then press <OK>.



If <Off> is selected, a Department ID must be entered when executing a corresponding job.

Configuring Personal Folders

ERJ8-0AY

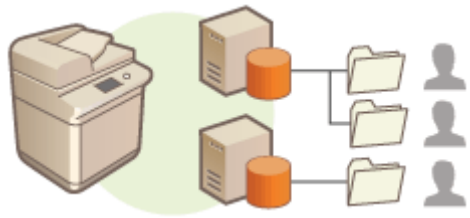
A Personal folder is an individual folder that can be used by the user logged in with personal authentication management. Shared folders and file servers can be specified and used as a Personal folder.
An administrator with Administrator privileges selects the method for specifying Personal folders. The login users specify Personal folders based on the setting specified by the administrator.

NOTE

- A Personal folder is a folder shared by the following screens.
  - <Scan and Send>
  - <Network> in <Scan and Store>
  - <Network> in <Access Stored Files>

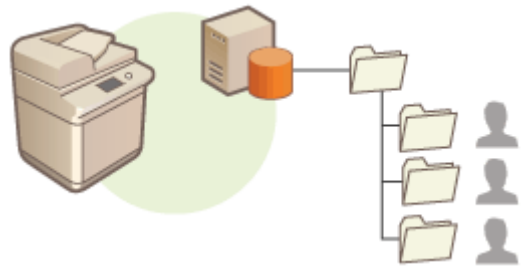
Creating Folders in Any Location Specified by Users

Users create a Personal folder in any location they desire. This enables each user to send documents to a folder in a familiar location.



Creating Folders in a Home Folder Specified by the Administrator

A folder for each user name is created inside a parent folder (home folder) specified by the administrator. Personal folders are easier to manage because they are all kept together in one location. A Windows (SMB) shared folder or WebDAV server can be specified.

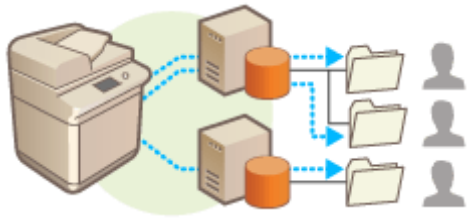


NOTE

- If you set up the home folder on the WebDAV server, folders for all users must be prepared beforehand.

Creating Folders in a Location Specified by the Server

Personal folders are specified based on the folder information registered in an authentication server, such as the homeDirectory attribute of Active Directory in Windows. Only a Windows (SMB) shared folder can be specified.



Setting How to Specify the Location of Personal Folders

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Personal Folder Specification Method>.**

- This setting is the same as the following setting. The settings are in different locations, but they perform the same function.
  (Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings> ▶ <Personal Folder Specification Method>

3 **Select how to specify the location of Personal folders.**

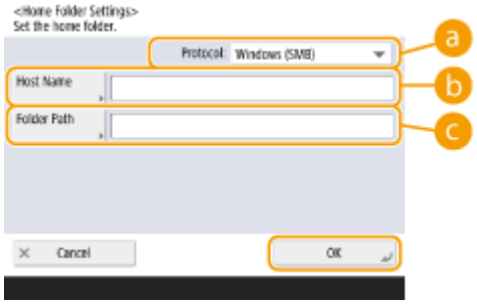
■Creating folders in any location specified by users

Press <Register for Each User> ▶ <OK>. Each user can specify the location of the Personal folder.

■Creating folders in a home folder specified by the administrator

1 Press <Home Folder> ▶ <Set>.

2 Specify the home folder and press <OK>.



ⓐ <Protocol>

Select the protocol to use when accessing Personal folders.

ⓑ <Host Name>

Enter the host name or IP address of the computer where you want to create the home folder.

ⓒ <Folder Path>

Enter the folder path for the home folder. For example, enter "users\public\share" for a home folder created inside a subfolder named "share" in the "Public" folder on the C: drive (path: "C:\users\public\share").

NOTE:

- You may not be able to specify the path if there are too many folder levels.

3 Select the authentication information to use, and press <OK>.

- To use a separate user name and password for the Personal folder, press <Use Authentication Info. of Each User> to add a check mark. Remove the check mark to use the same user name and password entered at login. If a check mark is added to this item, a user name and password must be registered for each user.
- A folder is created inside a home folder, with the following names.
  - If a check mark is added to <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: the user name specified by a user
  - If no check mark is added to <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: the user name used for logging in

■Creating folders in a location specified by the server

1 Press <Use Login Server>.

2 Select the authentication information to use, and press <OK>.

- To use a separate user name and password for the Personal folder, press <Use Authentication Info. of Each User> to add a check mark. Remove the check mark to use the same user name and password entered at login. If a check mark is added to this item, a user name and password must be registered for each user.

IMPORTANT:

- The authentication information required for accessing a personal folder (user name and password) cannot be retrieved from Active Directory. If <Use Authentication Info. of Each User> is selected, the user name and password for logging in to the machine with keyboard authentication are registered as authentication information for accessing a personal folder.

NOTE:

- It is necessary to use the login service that supports this function. For more information, consult your dealer or service representative.
- If you are using User Authentication, configure a folder in "homeDir" which is a user attribute in the Active Directory, using the "\\host name\folder path" format.

NOTE

Registering a Personal folder and authentication information for each user

- If <Personal Folder Specification Method> is set to <Register for Each User>, register one of the following as the Personal folder for each user. The registered settings are the same and the same Personal folder is registered, no matter where the setting is configured.
  - <Scan and Send> ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ <Personal Folder>
  - <Scan and Store> ▶ <Network> ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ <Personal Folder>
  - <Access Stored Files> ▶ <Network> ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ <Personal Folder>

Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

ERJ8-0C0

In an environment that uses ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM, it is possible to define which functions are available to each privilege level (role), as well as create new roles. This provides more precise control in user management by enabling you to specify which functions are available to each individual user. For example, you can prohibit user A from copying, while allowing user B to use all functions. Follow the procedure below to enable ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM functions.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- If this setting is set to <On>, <Use User Authentication> in Settings/Registration is also set to <On>. To set <Use User Authentication> to <Off>, first set this setting to <Off>.
- If you set this function to <On>, the following settings in Settings/Registration are disabled.
  - Setting a PIN for Address Book
  - Restricting New Destinations
- Even if you change this setting from <Off> to <On>, the following settings in Settings/Registration do not automatically return to their previous values. Change the settings manually.
  - Setting a PIN for Address Book
  - Restricting New Destinations
- Similar restrictions can be set for roles using the ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. For information on the system requirements and the method for creating/editing roles, see ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM Administrator Guide.

Deleting User Setting Information

ERJ8-0C1

You can delete unnecessary user setting information. User setting information is a type of table that includes data about where and what settings have been configured for users. Setting information is registered automatically, and some setting information must be manually deleted because it remains even after a user has been deleted. To delete user setting information, log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges.

NOTE

- You can also set to automatically delete user setting information when the maximum amount of information that can be registered has been reached. **<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)**
- For information on the maximum amount of user setting information that can be registered, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .
- The User Setting Information that the User Setting Information Management can link with User Authentication is as follows:
  - Information of Personal buttons/Shared buttons (**Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen(P. 247)**)
  - Keychain information (**Managing Users(P. 591)**)

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [User Setting Information Management Service] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Delete the user setting information.**

■Deleting the setting information for all users

Click [Delete All User Setting Information] ▶ [Yes].

■Deleting the setting information for individual users

1. Click [Select User and Delete Setting Information].
2. Select the check box for the user with the setting information that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

■Deleting the shared setting information of all users

Click [Delete Shared Setting Information of All Users] ▶ [Yes].

■Deleting the setting information for all user groups

Click [Delete All User Group Setting Information] ▶ [Yes].

■Deleting the setting information for individual user groups

1. Click [Select User Group and Delete Setting Information].

2 Select the check box for the user group with the setting information that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

NOTE

- The changed user setting information is enabled when the machine is restarted. It may take some time until the old user setting information is deleted. Wait for a while and restart the machine.

LINKS

Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)

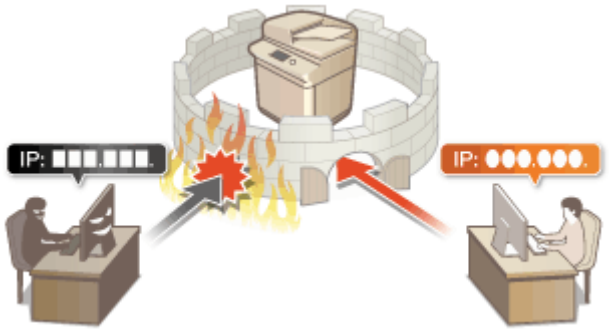
Configuring the Network Security Settings

ERJ8-0C2

Authorized users may incur unanticipated losses from attacks by malicious third parties, such as sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data as it flows over a network. To protect your important and valuable information from these attacks, the machine supports the following features to enhance security and secrecy.

Firewall Settings

Unauthorized access by third parties, as well as network attacks and breaches, can be blocked by only allowing communication with devices that have a specific IP address. **Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 645)**



Proxy Settings

When the client devices are connected to an external network, communication is established through the proxy server. When the proxy server is used, websites can be browsed more safely, therefore, security can be expected to be enhanced. **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)**



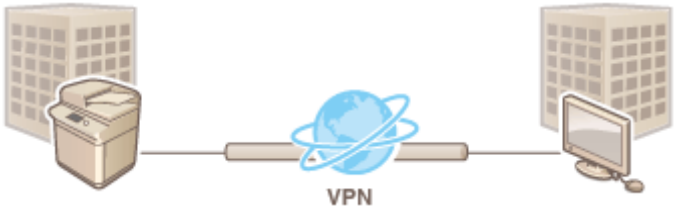
TLS Encrypted Communication

TLS is a protocol for encryption for data sent over a network and is often used for communication via a Web browser or an e-mail application. TLS enables secure network communication when accessing the machine in a variety of situations, such as when using the Remote UI or address book management software. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**



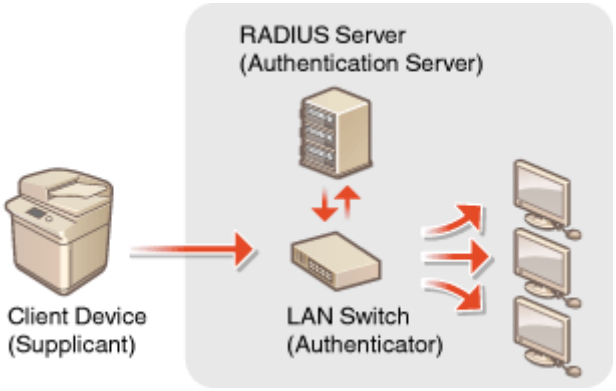
IPSec Communication

While TLS only encrypts data used on a specific application, such as a Web browser or an e-mail application, IPSec encrypts the whole (or payloads of) IP packets. This enables IPSec to offer a more versatile security system than TLS. **Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)**



IEEE 802.1X Authentication

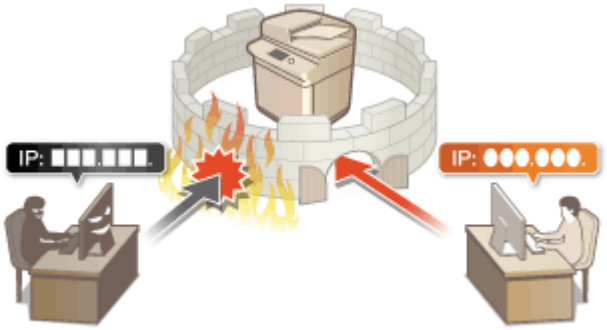
If a device tries to connect and start communicating on an 802.1X network, the device must go through user authentication in order to prove that the connection is made by an authorized user. Authentication information is sent to and checked by a RADIUS server, which permits or rejects communication to the network depending on the authentication result. If authentication fails, a LAN switch (or an access point) blocks access from the outside of the network. The machine can connect to an 802.1X network as a client device. **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**



Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls

ERJ8-0C3

By configuring packet filtering to only allow communication with devices that have a specific IP address or MAC address, you can reduce the risk of unauthorized access by outside third parties. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)
Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 649)
Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)

Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings

ERJ8-0C4

You can set whether to allow or reject communication with a device that has a specific IP address. After configuring the IP addresses in the firewall settings, you can check the results in the log of blocked communication requests. You can also set whether to allow or reject ICMP communications such as PING commands, etc., after specifying firewall settings.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings>.

3 Press <IPv4 Address Filter> or <IPv6 Address Filter>.

- Select the filter setting that corresponds to the IP address set on the machine.

4 Select <Outbound Filter> or <Inbound Filter>.

- To restrict data sent from the machine to a computer, select <Outbound Filter>.
- To restrict data received from a computer, select <Inbound Filter>.
- To restrict data communication but allow only ICMP communications such as PING commands, etc., set <Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMP> to <On>.

5 Set <Use Filter> to <On>, select <Default Policy>, then press <Register>.

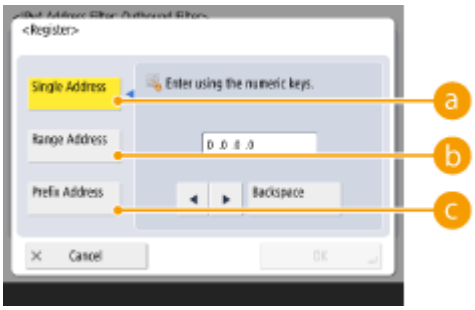
- For <Default Policy>, select <Reject> to only allow communication with devices that have an IP address specified in <Exception Addresses> in the next step, or select <Allow> to reject communication with them.

NOTE:

- If <Reject> is selected for <Default Policy>, the restrictions do not apply to sending to multicast or broadcast addresses.

6 Set the exception addresses.

When using IPv4



When using IPv6



- Specify the IP addresses to designate as exceptions of the <Default Policy> option selected in the previous step. Select one of the input methods described below.

a <Single Address>

Enter an individual IP address to designate as an exception. In the case of IPv6, press <Address> to display the input screen.

b <Range Address>

Specify a range of IP addresses. Enter a separate address for <First Address> and <Last Address>. It is not possible to enter IPv6 addresses.

c <Prefix Address>

Specify a range of IP addresses using a prefix (network address). Enter a network address for <Address>, and specify the network address length in <Prefix Length>.

■Setting exception addresses for the transmission filter/reception filter

1. Select the IP address input method, and enter the exception addresses.
2. Press <Next>.
3. Set the port number if necessary, and press <OK>.
   - Select whether to specify a port number. You can configure detailed communication restrictions by specifying a port number for the exception address.



a <Do Not Specify>

The exception address setting applies to all communication received from the specified IP address.

b <Specify>

The exception address setting only applies to communication received from the specified IP address using the designated port number. Press <Add>, enter the port number, and press <OK>. You can register up to 50 ports per one exception address for both IPv4/IPv6.

NOTE:

To edit an exception address

- On the screen displayed in step 5, select the exception address that you want to edit, and press <Edit> to display the edit screen.

7 Press <OK>.

8 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

Checking the blocked communication requests in the log

- The latest 100 communications blocked by the firewall can be displayed from (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IP Address Block Log>. The history of blocked communications can be exported from the Remote UI in the CSV format. **Exporting a Log as a File(P. 726)**
- If <Default Policy> is set to <Reject>, the history of communication blocked by the firewall is not displayed in <IP Address Block Log>.

LINKS

Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 649)

Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings

ERJ8-0C5

You can set whether to allow or reject communication with a device that has a specific MAC address.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <MAC Address Filter>.

3 Select <Outbound Filter> or <Inbound Filter>.

- To restrict data sent from the machine to a computer, select <Outbound Filter>.
- To restrict data received from a computer, select <Inbound Filter>.

4 Set <Use Filter> to <On>, select <Default Policy>, then press <Register>.

- For <Default Policy>, select <Reject> to only allow communication with devices that have a MAC address specified in <Exception Addresses> in the next step, or select <Allow> to reject communication with them.

NOTE:

- If <Reject> is selected for <Default Policy>, the restrictions do not apply to sending to multicast or broadcast addresses.

5 Enter the exception addresses, and press <OK>.

- Specify the MAC addresses to designate as exceptions of the <Default Policy> option selected in the previous step.
- You can register 100 exception addresses for <Outbound Filter> and <Inbound Filter>.

NOTE:

To edit an exception address

- On the screen displayed in step 4, select the exception address that you want to edit, and press <Edit> to display the edit screen.

6 Press <OK>.

7 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

LINKS

Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)

Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line

ERJ8-0C6

When the machine is connected to a dual network configuration, IP address-based and MAC address-based firewalls can be used on the sub line in the same way as the main line.

NOTE

- For information on the exception addresses and exception port numbers that can be used for communication and are registered by default, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** .

Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings of the Sub Line(P. 650)
Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings of the Sub Line(P. 652)

Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings of the Sub Line

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings>.**

3 **Press <IPv4 Address Filter>.**

4 **Select <Outbound Filter> or <Inbound Filter>.**

- To restrict data sent from the machine to a computer, select <Outbound Filter>.
- To restrict data received from a computer, select <Inbound Filter>.

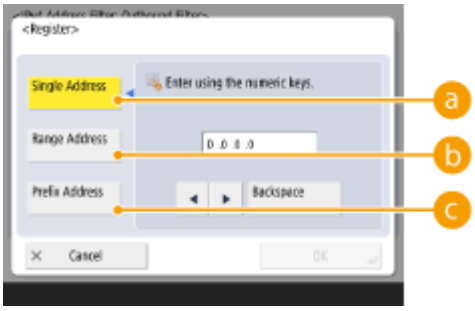
5 **Set <Use Filter> to <On>, select <Default Policy>, then press <Register>.**

- For <Default Policy>, select <Reject> to only allow communication with devices that have an IP address specified in <Exception Addresses> in the next step, or select <Allow> to reject communication with them.

NOTE:

- If <Reject> is selected for <Default Policy>, the restrictions do not apply to sending to multicast or broadcast addresses.

6 **Set the exception addresses.**



- Specify the IP addresses to designate as exceptions of the <Default Policy> option selected in the previous step. Select one of the input methods described below.

a <Single Address>

Enter an individual IP address to designate as an exception.

b <Range Address>

Specify a range of IP addresses. Enter a separate address for <First Address> and <Last Address>.

c <Prefix Address>

Specify a range of IP addresses using a prefix (network address). Enter a network address for <Address>, and specify the network address length in <Prefix Length>.

■Setting exception addresses for the transmission filter/reception filter

1. Select the IP address input method, and enter the exception addresses.
2. Press <Next>.
3. Set the port number if necessary, and press <OK>.
   - Select whether to specify a port number. You can configure detailed communication restrictions by specifying a port number for the exception address.



a <Do Not Specify>

The exception address setting applies to all communication received from the specified IP address.

b <Specify>

The exception address setting only applies to communication received from the specified IP address using the designated port number. Press <Add>, enter the port number, and press <OK>. You can register up to 50 ports per one exception address.

NOTE:

To edit an exception address

- On the screen displayed in step 5, select the exception address that you want to edit, and press <Edit> to display the edit screen.

7 **Press <OK>.**

8 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.**

NOTE

Checking the blocked communication requests in the log

- The latest 100 communications blocked by the firewall can be displayed from (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IP Address Block Log>. The history of blocked communications can be exported from the Remote UI in the CSV format. **Exporting a Log as a File(P. 726)**
- If <Default Policy> is set to <Reject>, the history of communication blocked by the firewall is not displayed in <IP Address Block Log>.

Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings of the Sub Line

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network>▶ <Sub Line Settings>▶ <Firewall Settingss>▶ <MAC Address Filter>.**

3 **Select <Outbound Filter> or <Inbound Filter>.**

- To restrict data sent from the machine to a computer, select <Outbound Filter>.
- To restrict data received from a computer, select <Inbound Filter>.

4 **Set <Use Filter> to <On>, select <Default Policy>, then press <Register>.**

- For <Default Policy>, select <Reject> to only allow communication with devices that have a MAC address specified in <Exception Addresses> in the next step, or select <Allow> to reject communication with them.

NOTE:

- If <Reject> is selected for <Default Policy>, the restrictions do not apply to sending to multicast or broadcast addresses.

5 **Enter the exception addresses, and press <OK>.**

- Specify the MAC addresses to designate as exceptions of the <Default Policy> option selected in the previous step.
- You can register 100 exception addresses for <Outbound Filter> and<Inbound Filter>.

NOTE:

To edit an exception address

- On the screen displayed in step 4, select the exception address that you want to edit, and press <Edit> to display the edit screen.

6 Press <OK>.

Setting a Proxy

ERJ8-0C7

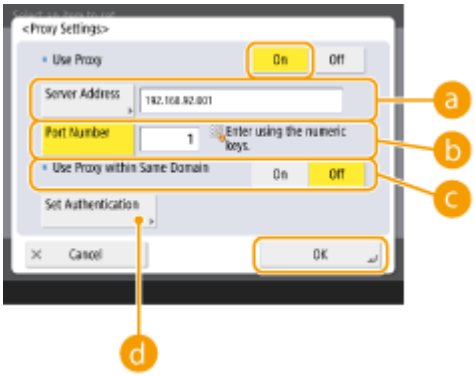
A proxy (or HTTP proxy server) refers to a computer or software that carries out HTTP communication for other devices, especially when communicating with resources outside the network, such as when browsing Web sites. The client devices connect to the outside network through the proxy server, and do not communicate directly to the resources outside. Setting a proxy not only facilitates management of traffic between in-house and outside networks but also blocks unauthorized access and consolidates anti-virus protection for enhanced security. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <Proxy Settings>.

3 Set <Use Proxy> to <On>, configure the necessary settings, and press <OK>.



a <Server Address>

Enter the address of the proxy server to use. Specify the IP address or host name depending on your environment.

b <Port Number>

Enter the port number of the proxy server to use.

c <Use Proxy within Same Domain>

Select <On> if you want to use the proxy server even when communicating with devices in the same domain.

NOTE:

- This setting is only displayed for the proxy settings screen of the main line.

d <Set Authentication>

To use the proxy server authentication function, press this and configure the authentication information. On the screen that is displayed, press <On>, enter the user name and password to use for proxy authentication, and press <OK>.



4 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.**

Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS

ERJ8-0C8

You can use TLS encrypted communication to prevent sniffing, spoofing, and tampering of data that is exchanged between the machine and other devices such as computers. When configuring the settings for TLS encrypted communication, you must specify a key and certificate (server certificate) to use for encryption. You can use the key and certificate that are preinstalled in the machine, or you can generate your own or acquire them from a certification authority. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)

NOTE

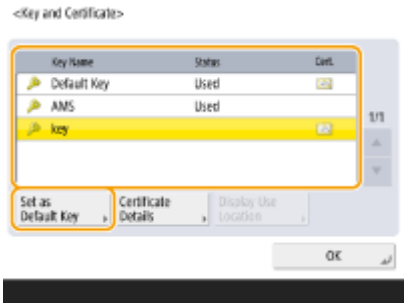
- If you want to use a key and certificate that you generate yourself, generate the key and certificate before performing the procedure below. **Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)**
- If you want to use a key and certificate that you acquire from a certification authority (CA), register the key and certificate before performing the procedure below. **Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)**
- If you set <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2> to <On>,you can make the TLS communication encryption method comply with the United States government-approved FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standards) 140-2. **<Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140>(P. 1063)**
- If <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2> is set to <On>, an error will occur when you try to specify a certificate for TLS that uses an algorithm not recognized by FIPS (lower than RSA2048bit).
- A communication error will occur if you set <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2> to <On>, and send to a remote party that does not support FIPS-recognized encryption algorithms.
- If <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2> is set to <On>, <CHACHA20- POLY1305> and <X25519> switch to <Off>.
- If <CHACHA20- POLY1305> or <X25519> is set to <On>, <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2> switches to <Off>.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <TLS Settings>.

3 Press <Key and Certificate>.

4 Select the key and certificate to use for TLS encrypted communication, and press <Set as Default Key> ▶ <Yes>.



- If you want to use the preinstalled key and certificate, select <Default Key>.

NOTE:

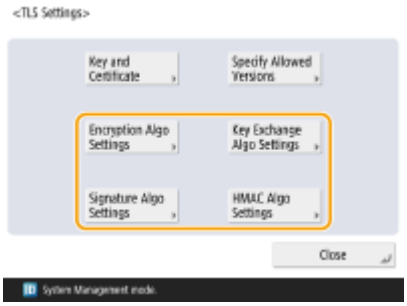
- TLS encrypted communication cannot use <Device Signature Key>, which is used for the device signature, or <AMS>, which is used for access restrictions.

5 Press <OK>.

6 Press <Specify Allowed Versions>.

7 Specify <Maximum Version> and <Minimum Version> ▶ press <OK>.

8 Select the settings for each algorithm.



9 Select the algorithm to use ▶ press <OK>.

Example: When <Encryption Algo Settings> is selected



NOTE:

- The displayed items may differ, depending on the algorithm.

The following combinations of TLS version and algorithm are available.

✓: Available
-: Unavailable

Algorithm	TLS Version			
	<TLS 1.3>	<TLS 1.2>	<TLS 1.1>	<TLS 1.0>
<Encryption Algo Settings>				
<AES-CBC (256-bit)>	-	✓	✓	✓
<AES-GCM (256-bit)>	✓	✓	-	-
<3DES-CBC>	-	✓	✓	✓
<AES-CBC (128-bit)>	-	✓	✓	✓
<AES-GCM (128-bit)>	✓	✓	-	-
<CHACHA20- POLY1305>	✓	-	-	-
<Key Exchange Algo Settings>				
<RSA>	-	✓	✓	✓
<ECDHE>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<X25519>	✓	-	-	-
<Signature Algo Settings>				
<RSA>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<ECDSA>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<HMAC Algo Settings>				
<SHA1>	-	✓	✓	✓
<SHA256>	✓	✓	-	-
<SHA384>	✓	✓	-	-

10 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

➡ The machine restarts, and the settings are applied.

LINKS

Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication

ERJ8-0C9



The machine can generate the key and certificate (server certificate) used for TLS encrypted communication. If you want to start using TLS encrypted communication immediately, it is convenient to use the key and certificate that are preinstalled in the machine. If necessary, have an administrator generate a key and certificate. Note, however, that TLS encrypted communication is not enabled simply by generating a key and certificate. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

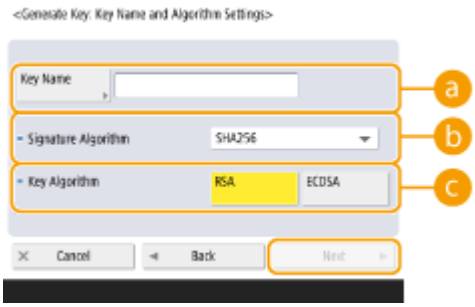
NOTE

- If you want to use a server certificate with a CA signature, you can generate the key along with a CSR, instead of the certificate. **Generating a Key and CSR(P. 711)**

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Certificate Settings> ▶ <Generate Key> ▶ <Generate Network Communication Key>.**

3 **Configure the necessary items for the key, and press <Next>.**



a <Key Name>

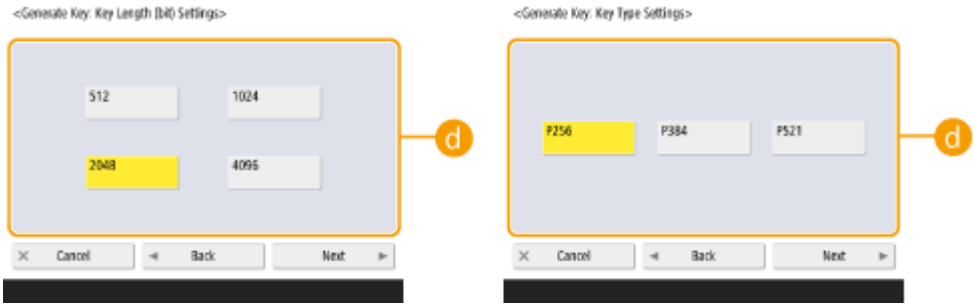
Enter a name for the key. Use a name that will be easy to find when displayed in a list.

b <Signature Algorithm>

Select the hash algorithm to use for the signature. The available hash algorithms vary depending on the key length (**System Specifications(P. 1254)**). A key length of 1024 bits or more can support SHA384 and SHA512 hash algorithms. If <RSA> is selected for c, and <Key Length (bit)> is set to <1024> or more for d, the SHA384 and SHA512 hash algorithms can be selected.

c <Key Algorithm>

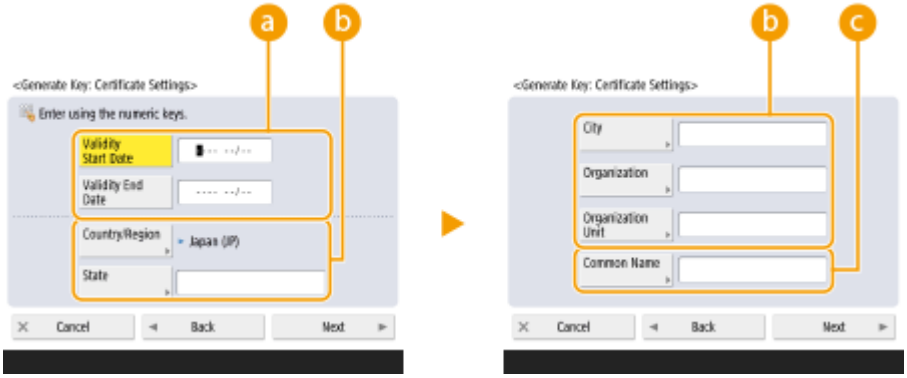
Select the key algorithm. If <RSA> is selected, <Key Length (bit)> is displayed as a setting item for d. If <ECDSA> is selected, <Key Type> is displayed instead.



d <Key Length (bit)> / <Key Type>

Specify the key length if <RSA> is selected for c, or specify the key type if <ECDSA> is selected. In both cases, a higher value provides greater security but reduces the communication processing speed.

4 Configure the necessary items for the certificate, and press <Next>.



a <Validity Start Date> / <Validity End Date>

Enter the validity start and end date.

b <Country/Region>/ <State> / <City> / <Organization> / <Organization Unit>

Select the country code from the list, and enter the location and the organization name.

c <Common Name>

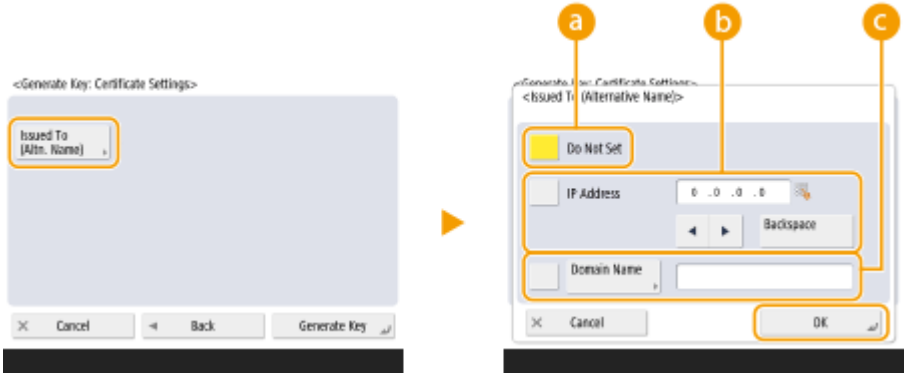
Enter the IP address or FQDN.

- When performing IPPS printing in a Windows environment, make sure to enter the machine's IP address.
- A DNS server is required in order to enter the FQDN of the machine. Enter the IP address if a DNS server is not used.

5 Specify an alternative name if necessary.

- If you do not want to specify an alternative name, go to step 6.

Press <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, specify an IP address or a domain name, and press <OK>.



a <Do Not Set>

An alternative name is not specified.

b <IP Address>

Specify an IP address as an alternative name. Only IPv4 addresses can be set in <IP Address>.

c <Domain Name>

Specify a domain name as an alternative name.

6 Press <Generate Key>.

NOTE

Managing keys and certificates

You can check the detailed settings or delete keys and certificates on the screen that is displayed when you press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Certificate Settings> ▶ <Key and Certificate List>. If the list of keys and certificates is not displayed, press <Key and Certificate List for This Device> to display it.

- If is displayed, the key is corrupted or invalid.
- If is not displayed, the certificate for the key does not exist.
- If you select a key and certificate and press <Certificate Details>, detailed information about the certificate is displayed. You can also press <Verify Certificate> on this screen to check whether the certificate is valid.
- To delete keys and certificates, select the ones that you want to delete, and press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

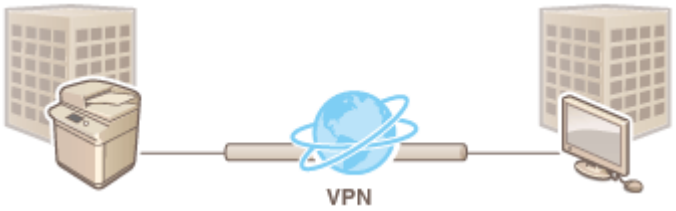
LINKS

Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)
Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)

Configuring the IPSec Settings

ERJ8-0CA

By using IPSec, you can prevent third parties from intercepting or tampering with IP packets transported over the IP network. Because IPSec adds security functions to IP, a basic protocol suite used for the Internet, it can provide security that is independent of applications or network configuration. To perform IPSec communication with this machine, you must configure settings such as the application parameters and the algorithm for authentication and encryption. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



IMPORTANT

Communication mode

- This machine only supports transport mode for IPSec communication. As a result, authentication and encryption is only applied to the data portions of IP packets.

Key exchange protocol

This machine supports Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) for exchanging keys based on the Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP). For the authentication method, set either the pre-shared key method or the digital signature method.

- When setting the pre-shared key method, you need to decide on a passphrase (pre-shared key) in advance, which is used between the machine and the IPSec communication peer.
- When setting the digital signature method, use a CA certificate and a PKCS#12 format key and certificate to perform mutual authentication between the machine and the IPSec communication peer. For more information on registering new CA certificates or keys/certificates, see **Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)** . Note that SNTP must be configured for the machine before it uses this method. **Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)**

NOTE

- Regardless of the setting of <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140> for IPSec communication, an encryption module which has already obtained FIPS 140 certification will be used.
- In order to make IPSec communication comply with FIPS 140, you must set the key length of both DH and RSA for IPSec communication to 2048-bit or longer in the network environment that the machine belongs to.
- Only the key length for DH can be specified from the machine.
- Take note when configuring your environment, as there are no settings for RSA in the machine.
- You can register up to 10 security policies.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPSec Settings>.**

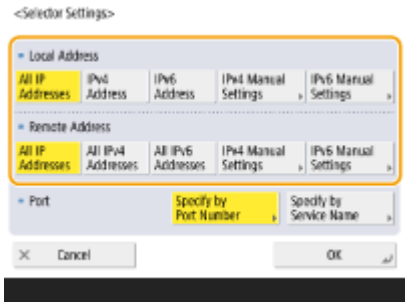
3 Set <Use IPSec> to <On>, and press <Register>.

4 Specify a name for the policy.

- Press <Policy Name>, enter the name, and press <OK>.
- Canon multifunction printers support two key lengths for the AES encryption method: 128 bit and 256 bit. To restrict the key length to 256 bit and meet CC authentication standards, set <Only Allow 256-bit for AES Key Length> to <On>.

5 Configure the IPSec application parameters.

1. Press <Selector Settings>.
2. Specify the IP address to apply the IPSec policy to.
   - Specify the IP address of this machine in <Local Address>, and specify the IP address of the communication peer in <Remote Address>.

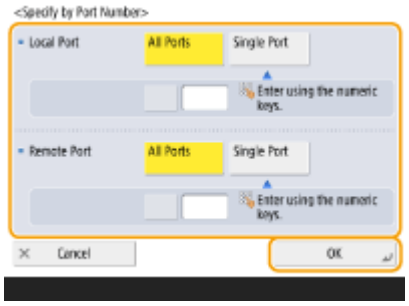


<All IP Addresses>	IPSec is applied to all sent and received IP packets.
<IPv4 Address>	IPSec is applied to IP packets sent to and received from the IPv4 address of this machine.
<IPv6 Address>	IPSec is applied to IP packets sent to and received from the IPv6 address of this machine.
<All IPv4 Addresses>	IPSec is applied to IP packets sent to and received from the IPv4 address of the communication peer.
<All IPv6 Addresses>	IPSec is applied to IP packets sent to and received from the IPv6 address of the communication peer.
<IPv4 Manual Settings>	Specify the IPv4 address to apply IPSec to. • Select <Single Address> to enter an individual IPv4 address. • Select <Address Range> to specify a range of IPv4 addresses. Enter a separate address for <First Address> and <Last Address>. • Select <Subnet Settings> to specify a range of IPv4 addresses using a subnet mask. Enter separate values for <Address> and <Subnet Mask>.
<IPv6 Manual Settings>	Specify the IPv6 address to apply IPSec to. • Select <Single Address> to enter an individual IPv6 address. • Select <Address Range> to specify a range of IPv6 addresses. Enter a separate address for <First Address> and <Last Address>.

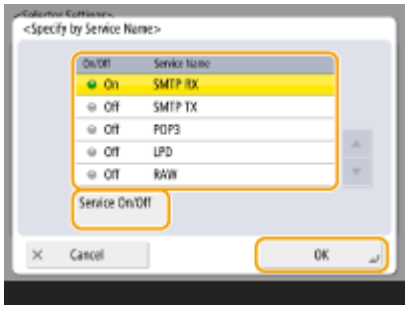
	• Select <Specify Prefix> to specify a range of IPv6 addresses using a prefix. Enter separate values for <Address> and <Prefix Length>.

3 Specify the port to apply IPSec to.

- Press <Specify by Port Number> to use port numbers when specifying the ports that IPSec applies to. Select <All Ports> to apply IPSec to all port numbers. To apply IPSec to a specific port number, press <Single Port> and enter the port number. After specifying the ports, press <OK>. Specify the port of this machine in <Local Port>, and specify the port of the communication peer in <Remote Port>.



- Press <Specify by Service Name> to use service names when specifying the ports that IPSec applies to. Select the service in the list, press <Service On/Off> to set it to <On>, and press <OK>.

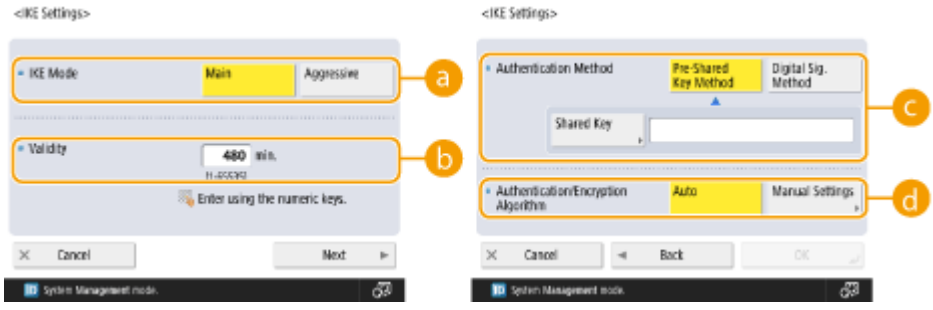


4 Press <OK>.

6 Configure the authentication and encryption settings.

1 Press <IKE Settings>.

2 Configure the necessary settings.



a <IKE Mode>

Select the operation mode for the key exchange protocol. When the operation mode is set to <Main>, security is enhanced because the IKE session itself is encrypted, but a higher burden is placed on the communication compared to <Aggressive>, which does not perform encryption.

b <Validity>

Set the expiration period of the generated IKE SA.

c <Authentication Method>

Select one of the authentication methods described below.

<Pre-Shared Key Method>	Set the same passphrase (pre-shared key) that is set for the communication peer. Press <Shared Key>, enter the character string to use as the shared key, and press <OK>.
<Digital Sig. Method>	Set the key and certificate to use for mutual authentication with the communication peer. Press <Key and Certificate>, select the key and certificate to use, and press <Set as Default Key> ▶ <Yes> ▶ <OK>.

d <Authentication/Encryption Algorithm>

Select either <Auto> or <Manual Settings> to set how to specify the authentication and encryption algorithm for IKE phase 1. If you select <Auto>, an algorithm that can be used by both this machine and the communication peer is set automatically. If you want to specify a particular algorithm, select <Manual Settings> and configure the settings below.

<Authentication>	Select the hash algorithm.
<Encryption>	Select the encryption algorithm.
<DH Group>	Select the group for the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method to set the key strength.

3 Press <OK>.

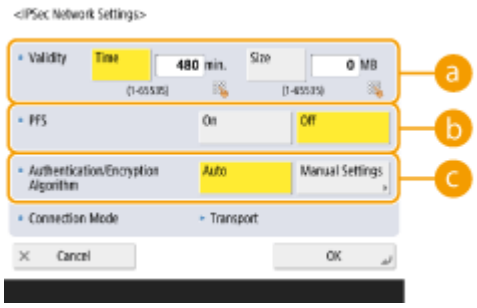
NOTE

- When <IKE Mode> is set to <Main> on the <IKE Settings> screen and <Authentication Method> is set to <Pre-Shared Key Method>, the following restrictions apply when registering multiple security policies.
  - **Pre-shared key method key**: when specifying multiple remote IP addresses to which a security policy is to be applied, all shared keys for that security policy are identical (this does not apply when a single address is specified).
  - **Priority**: when specifying multiple remote IP addresses to which a security policy is to be applied, the priority of that security policy is below security policies for which a single address is specified.

7 Configure the IPSec communication settings.

1 Press <IPSec Network Settings>.

2 Configure the necessary settings.



a <Validity>

Set the expiration period of the generated IPSec SA. Make sure to set either <Time> or <Size>. If you set both, the setting with the value that is reached first is applied.

b <PFS>

If you set the Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) function to <On>, the secrecy of the encryption key is increased, but the communication speed is slower. In addition, the PFS function must be enabled on the communication peer device.

c <Authentication/Encryption Algorithm>

Select either <Auto> or <Manual Settings> to set how to specify the authentication and encryption algorithm for IKE phase 2. If you select <Auto>, the ESP authentication and encryption algorithm is set automatically. If you want to specify a particular authentication method, press <Manual Settings> and select one of the authentication methods below.

<ESP>	Authentication and encryption are both performed. Select the algorithm for <ESP Authentication> and <ESP Encryption>. Select <NULL> if you do not want to set the authentication or encryption algorithm.
<ESP (AES-GCM)>	AES-GCM is used as the ESP algorithm, and authentication and encryption are both performed.
<AH (SHA1)>	Authentication is performed, but data is not encrypted. SHA1 is used as the algorithm.

3 Press <OK> ▶ <OK>.

8 Enable the registered policies and check the order of priority.

- Select the registered policies from the list, and press <Policy On/Off> to turn them <On>.
- Policies are applied in the order that they are listed, starting at the top. If you want to change the order of priority, select a policy in the list and press <Raise Priority> or <Lower Priority>.
- If you do not want to send or receive packets that do not correspond to the policies, select <Reject> for <Receive Non-Policy Packets>.

9 Press <OK>.

10 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

Managing IPSec policies

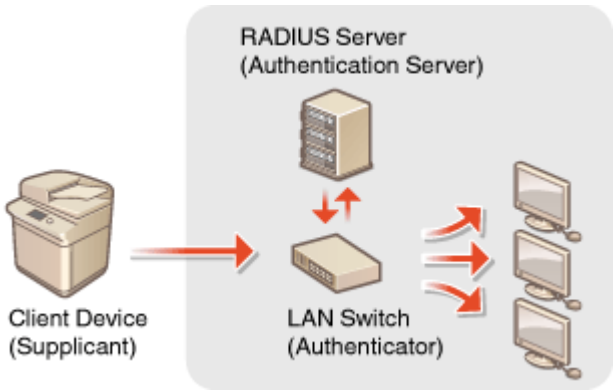
You can edit policies on the screen displayed in step 3.

- To edit the details of a policy, select the policy in the list and press <Edit>.
- To disable a policy, select the policy in the list and press <Policy On/Off>.
- To delete a policy, select the policy in the list and press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings

ERJ8-0CC

In a network environment that uses IEEE 802.1X authentication, unauthorized network access is blocked by a LAN switch (authenticator) that only grants access privileges to client devices (supplicants) that are authorized by the authentication server (RADIUS server). To connect this machine to an IEEE 802.1X network, settings such as the authentication method used by the authentication server must be configured on the machine. Administrator or NetworkAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



IEEE 802.1X Authentication Method

The machine supports the authentication methods described below. You must register a CA certificate before using any of these authentication methods. **Registering a CA Certificate(P. 706)**

■EAP-TLS (Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Level Security)

The machine and the authentication server authenticate each other by mutually sending certificates. A CA certificate must be registered on the machine to verify the certificate (server certificate) sent from the authentication server. In addition, a PKCS#12 format key and certificate (client certificate) must be specified in this setting, so that the authentication server can authenticate the machine. Register these items before configuring the settings (**Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)**). This authentication method cannot be used in combination with the other methods.

■EAP-TTLS (EAP-Tunneled TLS)

Only the authentication server sends a certificate. A CA certificate must be registered on the machine to verify the certificate (server certificate) sent from the authentication server. In addition, a user name and password need to be specified in these settings, so that the authentication server can authenticate the machine. Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol Version 2 (MS-CHAPv2) or Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) can be selected as the internal authentication protocol to support EAP-TTLS.

■PEAP (Protected EAP)

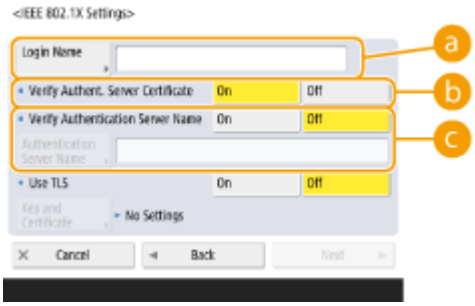
Only the authentication server sends a certificate. A CA certificate must be registered on the machine to verify the certificate (server certificate) sent from the authentication server. In addition, a user name and password need to be specified in these settings, so that the authentication server can authenticate the machine. Only MS-CHAPv2 can be selected as the internal authentication protocol to support PEAP.

Setting the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Method

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <IEEE 802.1X Settings>.**

3 Set <Use IEEE 802.1X> to <On> ▶ <Next>, configure the necessary settings, and press <Next>.



a <Login Name>

Enter the name (EAP Identity) of the login user to receive IEEE 802.1X authentication.

b <Verify Authent. Server Certificate>

Set this setting to <On> when verifying server certificates sent from an authentication server.

c <Verify Authentication Server Name>

To verify a common name in the server certificate, select <On> in <Verify Authentication Server Name>, and enter the name of the authentication server registered by the login user in <Authentication Server Name>.

4 Select the authentication method and configure the necessary settings.

■Selecting EAP-TLS

1. Press <On> for <Use TLS>, and press <Key and Certificate>.
2. In the list, select the key and certificate to use, and press <Set as Default Key> ▶ <Yes>.
3. Press <OK>.

■Selecting EAP-TTLS

1. Press <Off> for <Use TLS>, and press <Next>.
2. Press <On> for <Use TTLS>.
3. Select <MSCHAPv2> or <PAP>, and press <OK>.
4. Enter the user name and password.
   - Press <User Name> or <Password>, and enter the information. If you enter a name for <User Name>, disable <Use Login Name as User Name>.
   - If you want to set <User Name> to the same login name that was entered in step 3, press <Use Login Name as User Name>.
   - <Confirm> is displayed when you enter a password and press <OK>. For confirmation, enter the password again and press <OK>.

■Selecting PEAP

1. Press <Off> for <Use TLS>, and press <Next>.
2. Press <On> for <Use PEAP>.

3 Enter the user name and password.

- Press <User Name> or <Password>, and enter the information. If you enter a name for <User Name>, disable <Use Login Name as User Name>.
- If you want to set <User Name> to the same login name that was entered in step 3, press <Use Login Name as User Name>.
- <Confirm> is displayed when you enter a password and press <OK>. For confirmation, enter the password again and press <OK>.

5 Press <OK>.

6 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

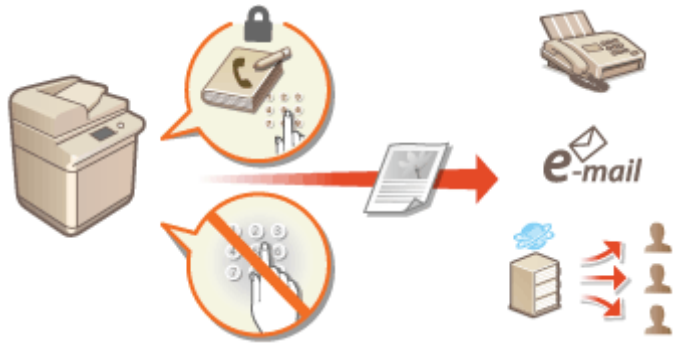
Restricting the Machine's Functions

ERJ8-0CE

You can restrict the use of certain functions that may lead to information leaks or that are subject to misuse. It is also possible to completely disable the use of individual functions.

Restricting Access to Address Book and Sending Functions

You can set a PIN for the Address Book so that general users cannot make any changes, and you can limit the destinations that can be specified when sending faxes and scans. You can also set individual access numbers for specific contacts whose information you do not want to make available to everyone, so that only the users who know the number can access the destination. **Restricting Access to Address Book and Sending Functions(P. 671)**



Restricting Printing from a Computer

You can prohibit all users from printing documents from a computer, or only allow printing if the user is authorized on the machine. You can also configure the machine so that only Encrypted Secure Print documents can be printed. **Restricting Printing from a Computer(P. 679)**



Restricting the Use of Memory Media

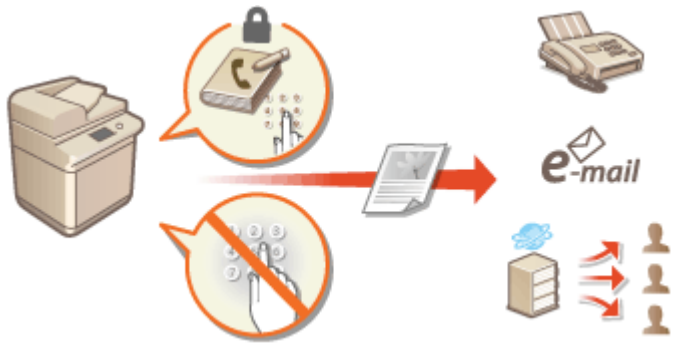
Although memory media such as USB memory devices provide convenience, they also increase the potential for security risks such as information leakage. You can set access restrictions for memory media based on your security policy. **Restricting the Use of Memory Media(P. 682)**



Restricting Access to Address Book and Sending Functions

ERJ8-0CF

You can set a PIN for the Address Book to prevent users from editing destination information, or you can restrict the available sending destinations to reduce the risk of information leakage. On models with a fax function, you can also reduce the chance of mistakenly sent faxes by specifying that faxes are only sent if the fax number is entered twice.



Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)
Limiting Available Destinations(P. 675)
Restricting the Fax Sending Functions(P. 677)

Restricting Use of the Address Book

ERJ8-0CH



You can prevent the leakage of sensitive or personal information from the Address Book by setting a PIN or preventing certain destinations from being displayed in the Address Book. You can also hide the Address Book itself. Administrator privileges are required in order to configure these settings.

Setting a PIN for Address Book(P. 672)
Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)
Hiding the Address Book(P. 673)

Setting a PIN for Address Book

The Address Book can be set to require users to enter a PIN in order to add new entries to the Address Book or edit existing entries. This can reduce the risk of unauthorized editing of the Address Book. Note, however, that even if a PIN is set for the Address Book, a user who logs in with Administrator privileges can add and edit entries without entering the required PIN.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Set Destination> ▶ <Address Book PIN> ▶ <Set>.

3 Set the PIN for editing the Address Book.

- Enter the PIN and press <Confirm>. For confirmation, enter the PIN again and press <OK>.



NOTE:

- You cannot set a PIN that consists only of zeros, such as "00" or "0000000".
- To disable the PIN, press C (Clear) to erase the PIN (leave the text box blank), and press <OK>.

4 Press <OK>.

NOTE

In addition to setting the Address Book PIN, you can further enhance security by performing the following operations:

- Restricting the addition of new destinations **Limiting Available Destinations(P. 675)**
- Disabling the PC fax function **Restricting Fax Sending from a Computer(P. 677)**

Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book

You can set an access number for important business contacts and other destinations in the Address Book that you do not want to display to all users. Destinations with a registered access number are only displayed to users who enter the correct access number. Follow the procedure below to enable the access number registration function.

IMPORTANT

- If the access number registration function is enabled, users cannot specify a destination using <Previous Settings>.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Manage Address Book Access Numbers> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

- After configuring this setting, register the access numbers in the Address Book.

NOTE

- You can enter up to seven digits for the access number. If you enter fewer than seven digits, the machine stores the access number with leading zeros.
  Example: If <321> is entered, <0000321> is stored.
- You cannot store an access number with only zeros as the number, such as <0000000>.
- If you enter a number that begins in zeros, such as <02> or <002>, the zeros are ignored and the number is registered as <0000002>, the same as if you had simply entered <2>.

Hiding the Address Book

Set whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons. You can specify separate settings for Fax as well as Scan and Send.

Hiding the Fax Address Book and One-Touch Buttons

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Restrict Address Book Use> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

Hiding the Scan and Send Address Book and One-Touch Buttons



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Restrict Address Book Use> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

LINKS

Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)
Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)

Limiting Available Destinations

ERJ8-0CJ



You can set restrictions on the destinations that can be specified. For example, you can limit the destinations to those that are registered in the Address book or LDAP server. With personal authentication management, you can restrict the send destination to the user's own e-mail address or to a folder that is specified in advance. You can also restrict the domains that can be specified as destinations. By restricting the send destinations, you can prevent information leakage that may occur due to operation errors or misuse. Administrator or DeviceAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.

IMPORTANT

- Some of the restrictions on the destinations that are described below may not be available when ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM is enabled. **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**

Restricting New Destinations(P. 675)
Restricting E-Mail Destination to <Send to Myself>(P. 676)
Restricting File Send Destination to Personal Folder(P. 676)
Restricting the Domain of Send Destination(P. 676)

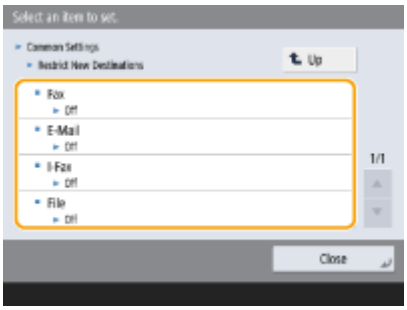
Restricting New Destinations

The destinations that can be specified when sending faxes or scanned documents can be restricted to those registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons, those registered in <Favorite Settings> or <Send to Myself>, or those that can be searched on the LDAP server. When this function is enabled, users cannot specify destinations using alphanumeric character input.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Restrict New Destinations>.**

3 **Select the functions that you want to restrict new destinations for.**



4 Press <On> ▶ <OK>.

Restricting E-Mail Destination to <Send to Myself>

You can set restrictions so that users who log in with personal authentication can only send scanned documents to their own e-mail address. To use this function, an e-mail address must be registered in the user information. Configure the user information before performing the procedure below.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Limit E-Mail to Send to Myself> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

Restricting File Send Destination to Personal Folder

You can set restrictions so that users who log in with personal authentication can only send scanned documents to their Personal folder (**Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)** .)



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Restrict File TX to Personal Folder> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

Restricting the Domain of Send Destination

You can restrict e-mail and I-fax destinations so that only addresses in a specific domain are available. When a domain is specified, you can also set whether to allow sending to subdomains.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ <Restrict Destination Domain> ▶ Select <On> for <Restrict Sending to Domains> ▶ <Register> ▶ Specify the destination domain ▶ <OK> ▶ Select <Allow> or <Reject> for <Send to Subdomain> ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK>

NOTE

- You can register up to three domains.

LINKS

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

Restricting the Fax Sending Functions

ERJ8-0CK

You can set various restrictions for sending faxes, which can prevent sending errors and information leakage to third parties. Administrator privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



Confirming Fax Numbers before Sending(P. 677)
Restricting Fax Sending from a Computer(P. 677)
Displaying a Confirmation Screen for Fax Destinations(P. 677)
Restricting Sequential Broadcasting(P. 678)
Restricting Sending from Log(P. 678)

Confirming Fax Numbers before Sending

You can require users to enter a fax number twice for confirmation before sending faxes, to prevent misdialing. This setting can also be configured with DeviceAdmin privileges.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Confirm Entered Fax Number> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

Restricting Fax Sending from a Computer

You can prohibit users from sending faxes from a computer (**Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax) (P. 397)**). This setting can also be configured with DeviceAdmin privileges.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Allow Fax Driver TX> ▶ <Off> ▶ <OK>

Displaying a Confirmation Screen for Fax Destinations

You can set the machine to display a confirmation screen when sending to a fax destination. This can help prevent fax sending errors.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Confirm Before Sending When Fax Dest. Included> ▶ <On> ▶ Select <Only for Seq. Broadcast> or <All> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- <Only for Seq. Broadcast> and <All> cannot be selected if sequential broadcasting is restricted (**Restricting Sequential Broadcasting(P. 678)**).
- When the function for confirming the fax number before sending (**Confirming Fax Numbers before Sending(P. 677)**) is enabled, the confirmation screen is not displayed if there is only one destination.

Restricting Sequential Broadcasting

You can restrict the sequential broadcasting function, which enables users to send a fax to multiple recipients in succession.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Restrict Sequential Broadcast When Fax Dest. Included> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

Restricting Sending from Log

You can prohibit users from being able to specify a previously used destination from the log. After configuring this setting, previously used destinations cannot be selected from the log when sending faxes.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Restrict Resending from Log> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK>

LINKS

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)

Restricting Printing from a Computer

ERJ8-0CL

You can restrict printing from a computer (**Printing From a Computer(P. 416)**) so that only specific types of documents can be printed. You can also configure the machine so that documents are not printed until the user is authorized on the machine (**Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)**). You can also restrict the machine to only print Encrypted Secure Print documents, which can prevent information leakage due to unattended printouts or unprotected print data. Administrator or DeviceAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.

Prohibiting Printing from a Computer(P. 679)
Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings(P. 679)
Allowing Only Encrypted Secure Print(P. 681)

Prohibiting Printing from a Computer

You can prohibit users from printing documents from a computer.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer> ▶ <Restrict Printer Jobs> ▶ <On> ▶ Select the restriction exceptions ▶ <OK>

Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings



When printing documents from a computer, you can hold print data in the machine and prevent documents from being printed immediately (**Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)**). You can configure settings so that printing cannot be performed until the user is authorized on the machine, which ensures greater security and reduces the risk of other people viewing or inadvertently picking up sensitive documents. Administrator privileges are required in order to configure these settings.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Print> ▶ <Forced Hold>.

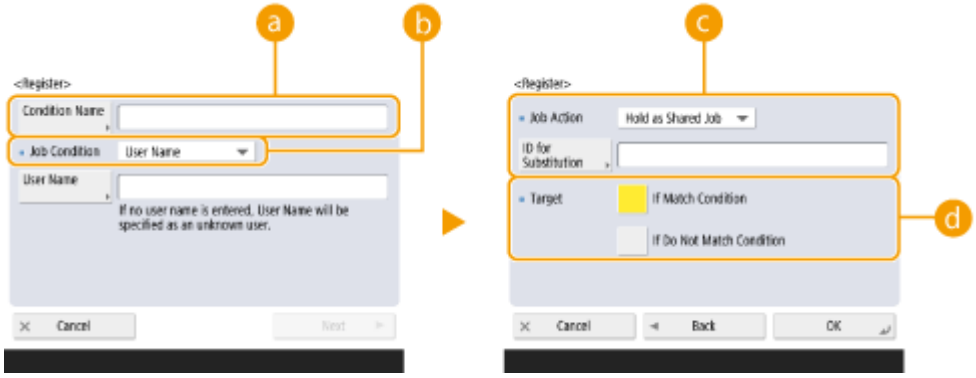
3 Press <On>, set the necessary conditions, and then press <OK>.

- You can set detailed conditions for holding printer jobs, such as the user or IP address. If no conditions are set, all print jobs are held except for jobs from unidentified users. If no conditions are set and a print job from an unidentified user is received, it is canceled without being held.

■Setting the conditions for holding documents

1 Press <Register>.

2 Set the conditions for holding documents, and press <OK>.



a <Condition Name>

Enter a name for the condition. Use a name that will be easy to identify when displayed in a list.

b <Job Condition>

The types of conditions listed below can be selected.

<User Name>	Specify a particular user name as the condition. If this is left blank, print documents for which the user cannot be identified will be targeted.
<IP Address>	Specify a particular IP address as the condition. You can also specify a range of IP addresses.
<Input Method>	Specify a particular printing protocol as the condition.

c <Job Action>

Select how to handle documents that match the conditions. When <Hold as Shared Job> is selected, you can set <ID for Substitution> to specify the user name output to the log when printing. Select <Cancel> to discard the document.

d <Target>

You can set either a value specified by the operation target, or one not specified.

3 Set the order in which to apply the conditions, and press <OK>.

- The conditions are applied in the order that they are listed, starting at the top. If you want to change the order, select a condition in the list and press <Raise Priority> or <Lower Priority>.
- To edit the details of a condition, select it in the list and press <Details/Edit>.
- To disable a condition, select it in the list and press <Validate/Invalidate>.
- To delete a condition, select it in the list and press <Delete> ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

Configuring the detailed settings for forced hold printing

- You can configure detailed settings for documents that are held for printing, such as how long to save them and how to display them. **<Print>(P. 1003)**

Allowing Only Encrypted Secure Print

You can configure the machine to only allow printing of Encrypted Secure Print documents from a computer, which can prevent information leakage due to unprotected print data. With this setting, documents cannot be printed using normal printing operations. Users are required to enter a password on the machine when printing Encrypted Secure Print documents.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print> ▶ <Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs> ▶ <On> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

Restricting the Use of Memory Media

ERJ8-0CR

Although memory media such as USB memory devices provide convenience, they can also be a source of information leakage if they are not properly managed. This section describes the procedures for prohibiting the use of memory media, as well as for restricting the ability to save scanned documents on memory media, or print data saved on memory media. Administrator or DeviceAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Memory Media Settings> ▶ <Use Scan/Print Function> ▶ Select <Off> for <Use Scan Function> or <Use Print Function> ▶ <OK> ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>

LINKS

Working with Data in Memory Media(P. 535)
Printing From Memory Media (Media Print)(P. 440)

Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files

ERJ8-0CS

By adding a digital signature to a scanned document that is sent in a particular file format, you can certify that the document has not been altered and is guaranteed by the creator. The machine can add a device signature to documents.

Device Signature



The device signature uses a key and certificate mechanism, enabling the recipient of a scanned document to verify that it was created on this machine. The recipient can check what machine was used to create the document, as well as whether the document has been altered. Before you can add a device signature, the key and certificate (device certificate) used for the device signature needs to be created on the machine. **Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)**

NOTE

- For information on validating certificates, registering certificates in the trusted certificates list, and verifying signatures on the reader side, see the documentation for the software that supports the PDF format (such as Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat).

TIPS

Displaying a digital signature (visible signature)

Digital signature information can be displayed on the first page of the document, making it easy for the reader to see that a digital signature has been added. Only PDF documents support visible signatures. **Adding a Digital Signature(P. 504)**

Generating a Device Signature Certificate

ERJ8-0CU



The key and certificate (device certificate) required when adding a device signature can be generated on the machine. Designate an administrator to generate these items. Once they are generated, you can add a digital signature to scanned documents that are sent in a particular file format. **Adding a Digital Signature(P. 504)**

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Certificate Settings> ▶ <Generate Key> ▶ <Generate/Update Device Signature Key> ▶ <Yes> ▶ <OK>

NOTE

Key and certificate for device signature

- The generated key and certificate are registered with the name "Device Signature Key". You can register only one key and certificate for the device signature.

Managing the key and certificate for device signature

You can check the detailed settings of the key and certificate on the screen that is displayed when you press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Certificate Settings> ▶ <Key and Certificate List> ▶ <Key and Certificate List for This Device>.

- If is displayed, the key is corrupted or invalid. You can update the key and certificate by configuring the settings again.
- If you select <Device Signature Key> and press <Certificate Details>, detailed information about the device signature certificate is displayed. You can also press <Verify Certificate> on this screen to check whether the certificate is valid.
- The PDF/XPS file contains sender information that the reader of the file can use to validate the reliability of the device signature by matching it with the SHA-1 message digest number. You can verify this information in <Certificate Thumbprint> on this machine.

TIPS

Ensuring that a device signature is always added when sending

- You can configure the machine so that a device signature is always added to scanned documents that are sent in a particular file format, regardless of the user settings. You can also restrict the file formats used when sending documents, which ensures that no documents can be sent without a device signature. Administrator or DeviceAdmin privileges are required in order to configure these settings. **<Always Add Device Signature to Send>(P. 951)**

LINKS

Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)
Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

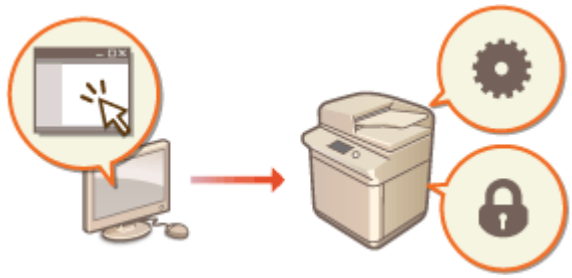
Managing the Machine from a Computer (Remote UI)

ERJ8-0CW

You can remotely operate the machine from your computer's Web browser to perform operations such as checking the printing status, changing the machine settings, or editing the Address Book. This convenient feature enables you to remain at your desk while operating the machine. To perform remote operation, enter the IP address of the machine in your Web browser and open the Remote UI portal page. For more information on the system requirements for the Remote UI, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

How to Use the Remote UI

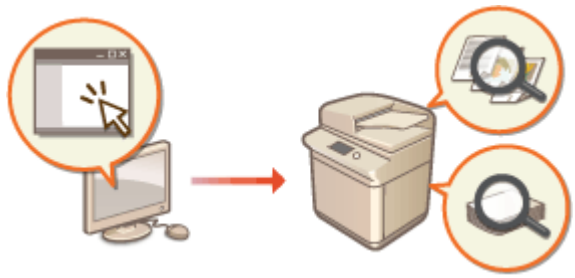
This section describes the Remote UI login procedure and the features of the Remote UI main screen.



Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

Checking the Status of Waiting Documents and the Machine

This section describes how to check the status of copied, printed, sent, and received documents, as well as error information and the remaining amount of paper.



Checking the Status and Logs(P. 692)

Other Functions Available Using the Remote UI

This section describes various other convenient functions that can be performed via computer using the Remote UI, such as editing the Address Book, checking files that have been saved on the machine, and backing up the machine settings in case they are needed.



Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine(P. 696)
Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)
Sharing an Address List with Specific Users(P. 701)
Registering User Groups(P. 703)
Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)
Configuring the Expiration Check Method for Received Certificates(P. 709)
Generating a Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)(P. 711)
Retrieving/Updating a Certificate from an SCEP Server(P. 714)
Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server(P. 720)

Managing Stored Files(P. 721)
Managing the Logs(P. 724)
Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)
Updating the Firmware(P. 744)
Updating the Firmware (Distribution)(P. 746)
Setting Scheduled Updates(P. 749)
Displaying Messages from the Administrator(P. 751)
Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)
Setting the Website for Purchasing Consumables(P. 758)
Sending E-Mail Notification When an Error Occurs(P. 760)
Remote Operation of the Control Panel(P. 762)

IMPORTANT

- Do not access other websites when the browser is accessing the Remote UI of your printer. Do not forget to close the web browser if you step away from the computer or after you finish changing settings.

When using a proxy server

- You cannot access the machine via a proxy server. If a proxy server is used in your environment, configure your Web browser to bypass the proxy server and access the machine directly.

Starting the Remote UI

ERJ8-0CX

To start the Remote UI, enter the IP address of the machine in your Web browser. Check the IP address configured for the machine before performing this operation. **Setting an IP Address(P. 160)**

For security reasons, you cannot log in to the Remote UI using the default password (7654321) for the Administrator user. Log in to the Remote UI after changing the password of the Administrator user from the control panel.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Register/Edit Authentication User> ▶ change the password for "Administrator"

IMPORTANT

- Make sure that you do not forget your password. If you forget your password, contact your dealer or service representative.
- When both the machine and the Active Directory server are set as user authentication devices (**Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**), the time setting of the Active Directory server needs to match that of the machine.

NOTE

Using TLS encryption for communication

- When you want to encrypt the Remote UI communication, configure the TLS key and certificate (**Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**), go to the <Remote UI Settings> setting (**<Remote UI Settings>(P. 1040)**) and set <Use TLS> to <On>, then turn the machine OFF and back ON.

Logging in to the Remote UI using the default password of the Administrator user

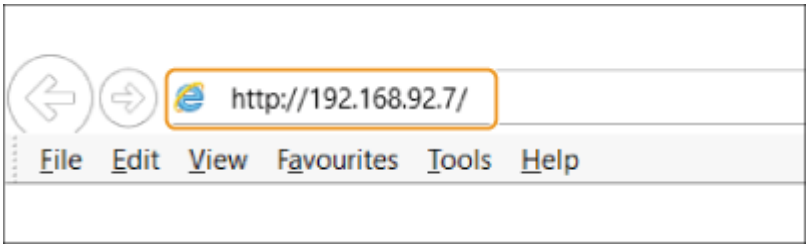
- You can also set to allow logging in to the Remote UI using the default password of the Administrator user. ((Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings> ▶ <Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access> ▶ <On>)

Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
Setting the Timeout Time after Logging In to the Remote UI(P. 689)
Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

Starting the Remote UI

1 Start the Web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the machine, and press the [ENTER] key on the computer keyboard.



- Enter "http://<IP address of the machine>/" in the address input field.
- When using an IPv6 address, enclose the IP address portion in brackets ([ ]) (**Example:** http://[fe80:2e9e:fcff:fe4e:dbce]/).

NOTE:

If the Remote UI does not start

- If the login screen is not displayed in step 3 of this procedure, clear the Web browser's cache and enter the IP address again.

If a message related to security is displayed

- A warning message may be displayed if the Remote UI communication is encrypted. If there are no problems with the certificate or TLS settings, you can continue using the Web browser.

3 Log in to the Remote UI.

- Enter a registered user name and password in [User Name] and [Password], select the login destination in [Login Destination], and click [Log In].
- If [Log In (Guest)] is displayed, unregistered users can click this button and log in as general users.

NOTE:

- With some user authentication settings, the Remote UI may skip the login screen and display the main screen (portal page) directly. **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

■If two-factor authentication is enabled

You must enter a one-time password to log in, in addition to the password set in " **Registering User Information(P. 597)** ."

NOTE

- To obtain a one-time password, a mobile app (Microsoft Authenticator or Google Authenticator) must be installed to a mobile device such as a smartphone or tablet. The time of the mobile device must also match that of the machine.

1 Enter a registered user name and password in [User Name] and [Password], select the login destination in [Login Destination], and click [Log In].

NOTE:

- If you have already registered an account to the mobile app, proceed to step 4.
- If two-factor authentication is disabled for a user account but the account is set to require the use of two-factor authentication in [Always Require Two-Factor Authentication:], two-factor authentication must be enabled with the mobile app.

2 Check the displayed message and press [OK].

3 Start the mobile app and use it to scan the QR code displayed on the screen of the Remote UI.

NOTE:

- If you cannot scan the QR code, enter the key displayed in [Manual Entry Key:].

4 **On the [One-Time Password:] screen, enter the one-time password displayed in the mobile app.**

- For subsequent logins, you can log in simply by entering the one-time password for the account registered in the mobile app.

NOTE

- If you cannot log in to the Remote UI because the mobile device was lost or the account information registered to the mobile app was accidentally deleted, see "**Enabling Two-Factor Authentication(P. 600)** ."

4 **Check that the Remote UI portal page is displayed.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

IMPORTANT

- When using the Remote UI to operate the machine, do not use the Web browser's [Back] button. The page may not change properly if you use the [Back] button.

Setting the Timeout Time after Logging In to the Remote UI

The user is automatically logged out if no operations are performed for a certain period of time after logging in to the Remote UI. You can set the time until the user is logged out.



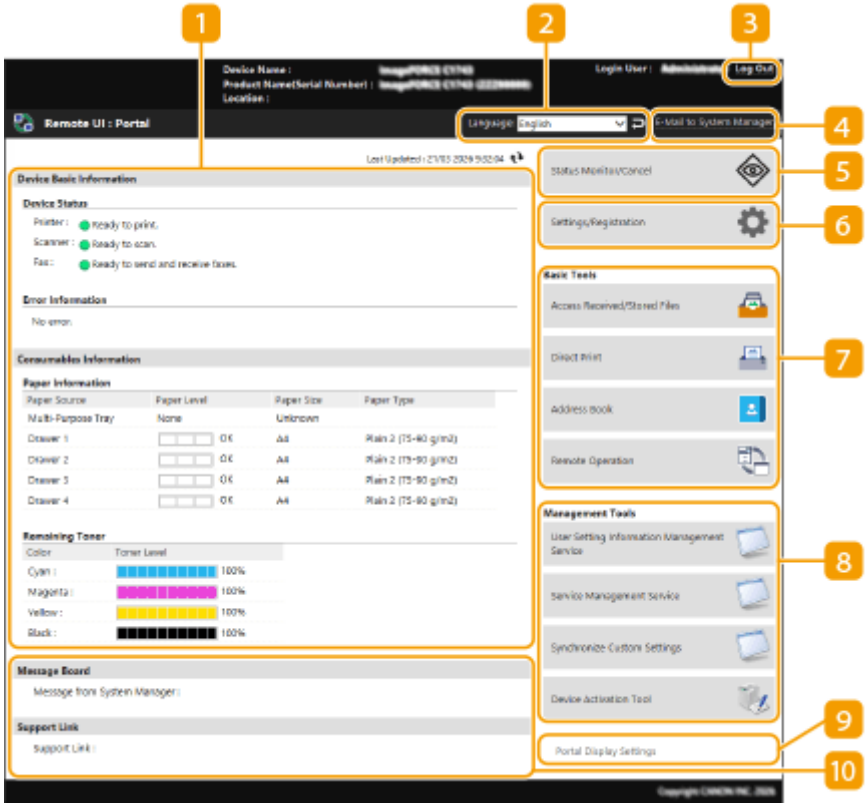
Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Network Settings] ▶ [Session Settings] ▶ [Timeout After Logging in to Remote UI] ▶ set the timeout time after login ▶ [OK]

Remote UI Screen

The portal page shown below is displayed when you log in to the Remote UI. This section describes the items displayed on the portal page and the basic operations.

IMPORTANT

- Some display items and functions are only available if you log in with Administrator privileges.
- If multiple users are operating the Remote UI at the same time or the control panel of the machine is being operated at the same time as the Remote UI, the last operation that is performed is effective.



1 Device information

The current machine status is displayed, along with information about errors, consumables, etc.

2 Display language

You can switch the language that is displayed on the Remote UI screen.

3 [Log Out]

Log out from the Remote UI and return to the login page.

4 [E-Mail to System Manager]

Create an e-mail message to send to the administrator. The administrator's e-mail address can be set in [Settings/Registration] ▶ [User Management] ▶ [System Manager/Contact Person Information Settings].

5 [Status Monitor/Cancel]

You can check the status of jobs or cancel processing. You can also check detailed information about the amount of remaining toner and paper, etc. **Checking the Status and Logs(P. 692)**

6 [Settings/Registration]

You can change the machine settings. You can save the setting details to a computer, or import them from a computer to the machine. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

NOTE:

- You can use either the control panel or the Remote UI to change most machine settings, but some settings can only be changed using one or the other.

7 [Basic Tools]

You can perform operations such as printing documents or registering/editing destinations.

Managing Stored Files(P. 721)

Directly Printing Files without Opening Them(P. 435)

Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)

Remote Operation of the Control Panel(P. 762)

8 [Management Tools]

You can perform management for items such as MEAP applications or user setting information (**Deleting User Setting Information(P. 641)**).

9 [Portal Display Settings]

You can change the order in which the [Basic Tools] and [Management Tools] buttons are displayed on the portal page.

10 Messages/support

Messages from the administrator are displayed, along with links to machine support information. **Displaying Messages from the Administrator(P. 751)**

NOTE

- To update the current page with the latest information, click .

LINKS

Settings/Registration(P. 801)

Checking the Status and Logs

ERJ8-0CY

You can use the Remote UI to check the status of documents that are waiting to be processed, as well as the logs for documents that have been processed. You can also check the status of the machine, such as error information and the remaining amount of consumables.



Checking the Status of Copies/Prints(P. 692)
Checking the Status of Sent/Received Documents(P. 693)
Checking the Status of Stored Documents(P. 694)
Checking the Job Log(P. 694)
Checking the Machine Status(P. 695)

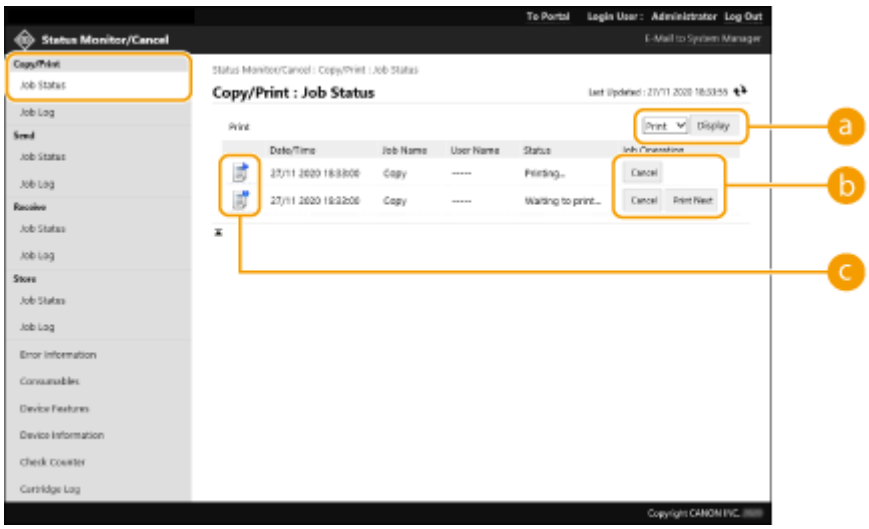
NOTE

- When personal authentication management is used, you can restrict users from performing operations on the jobs of other users on the <Status Monitor> screen. **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**

Checking the Status of Copies/Prints

You can check the status of documents that are waiting to be copied or printed. You can also output a document before the others, or cancel a document.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Status Monitor/Cancel] ▶ [Job Status] under [Copy/Print]



a Function selection

Select the function that you want to check, and click [Display].

b Operation buttons

- [Cancel]: Copying or printing is canceled. The canceled document is deleted and cannot be recovered.
- [Print Next]: The document is output immediately after the current document is complete.
- [Pause]: Documents that are being printed from a computer are paused. You cannot pause documents that are being copied. Press [Resume] to resume printing a document that was paused.

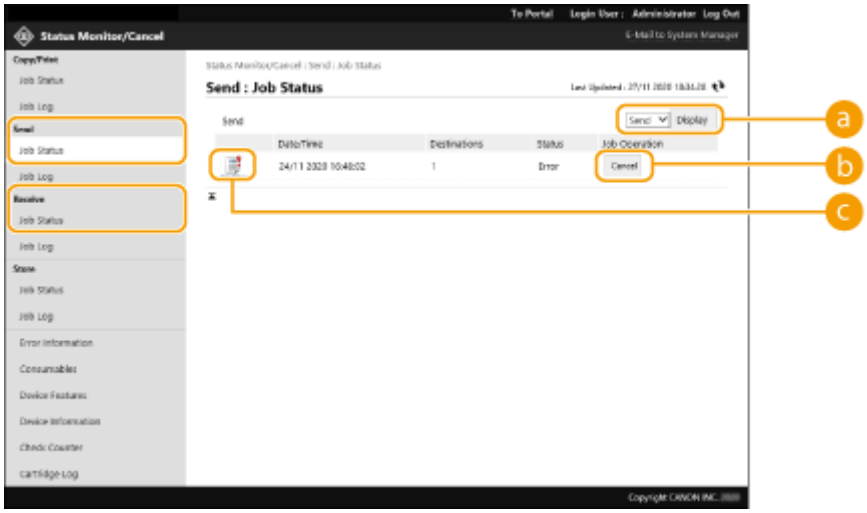
c Document icon

Click the icon to display detailed information about the document.

Checking the Status of Sent/Received Documents

You can check the status of faxes and e-mails that are waiting to be sent, faxes that have been received, and faxes that are waiting to be forwarded. You can also cancel the process for sending and receiving documents.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Status Monitor/Cancel] ▶ [Job Status] under [Send] or [Receive]



a Function selection

Select the function that you want to check, and click [Display].

b [Cancel]

Document sending or receiving is canceled. The canceled document is deleted and cannot be recovered.

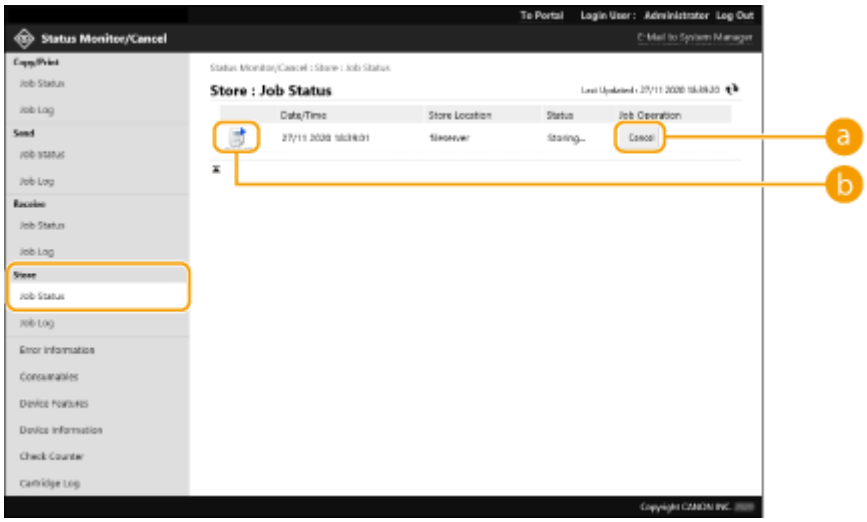
c Document icon

Click the icon to display detailed information about the document.

Checking the Status of Stored Documents

You can check the status of documents that are waiting to be stored. You can also cancel the process for storing documents.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Status Monitor/Cancel] ▶ [Job Status] under [Store]



a [Cancel]

Document storing is canceled. The canceled document is deleted and cannot be recovered.

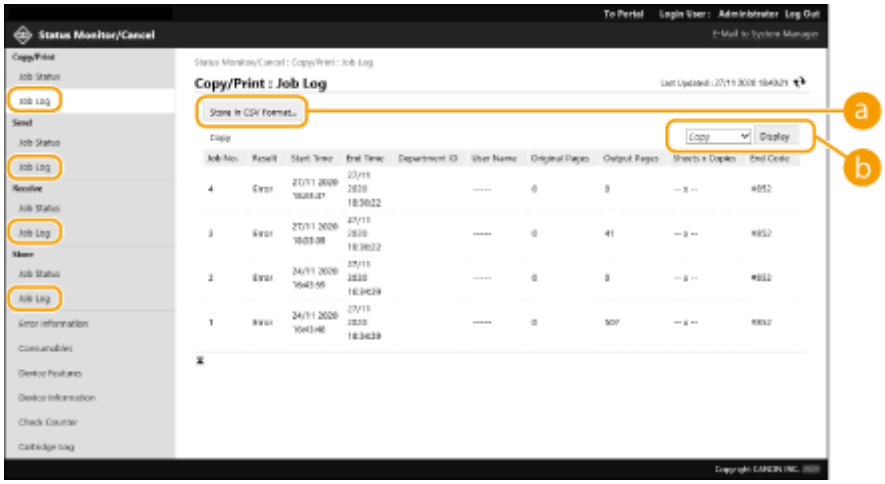
b Document icon

Click the icon to display detailed information about the document.

Checking the Job Log

You can display a log for documents that were copied, printed, sent, received, or stored.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Status Monitor/Cancel] ▶ [Job Log]



a [Store in CSV Format...]

The log data can be exported and saved as a CSV file (*.csv) on the computer.

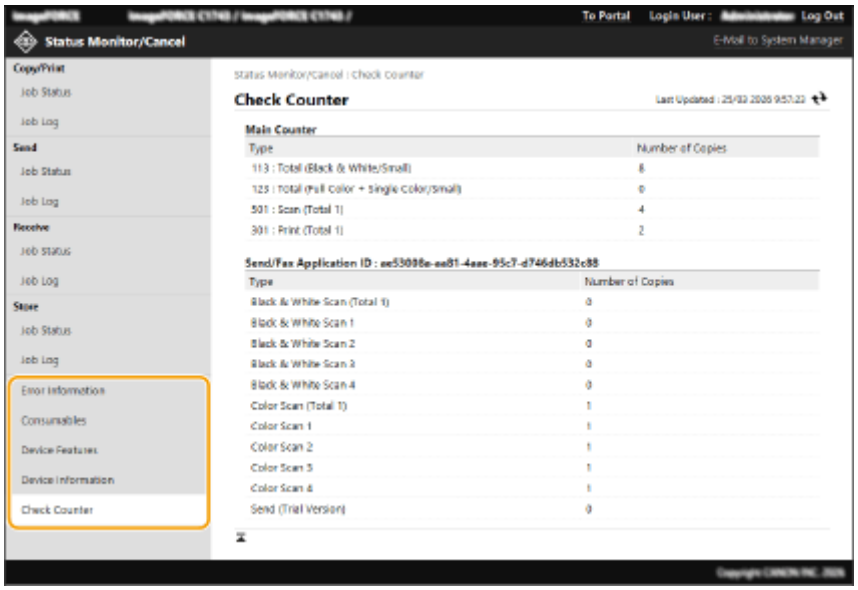
b Function selection

Select the function that you want to check, and click [Display]. The displayed functions may vary depending on your machine model and optional equipment.

Checking the Machine Status

You can check a variety of information about the machine, such as error information, the amount of remaining paper and toner, information about attached optional equipment, the total number of pages that have been printed up to now, information of the consumables, and their replacement log.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Status Monitor/Cancel] ▶ Select the item that you want to check



LINKS

Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine

ERJ8-0E0

You can use the Remote UI to shut down or restart the machine.

IMPORTANT

- When the machine is turned OFF or restarted, any documents that are being printed or sent are canceled.

Turning OFF the Machine(P. 696)
Restarting the Machine(P. 696)

Turning OFF the Machine



Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Device Management] ▶ [Remote Shutdown] ▶ [Start]

Restarting the Machine



Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Restart Device] ▶ [Perform Restart] ▶ [OK]

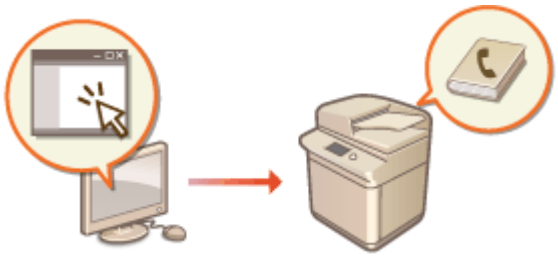
LINKS

Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)
Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)

Registering Destinations via the Remote UI

ERJ8-0E1

You can use the Remote UI to register destinations in the Address Book. You can also check the registered details and edit the Address Book.



NOTE

- For instructions on sharing an address list, see **Sharing an Address List with Specific Users(P. 701)** .

1 Start the Remote UI. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 Click [Address Book] on the portal page. **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

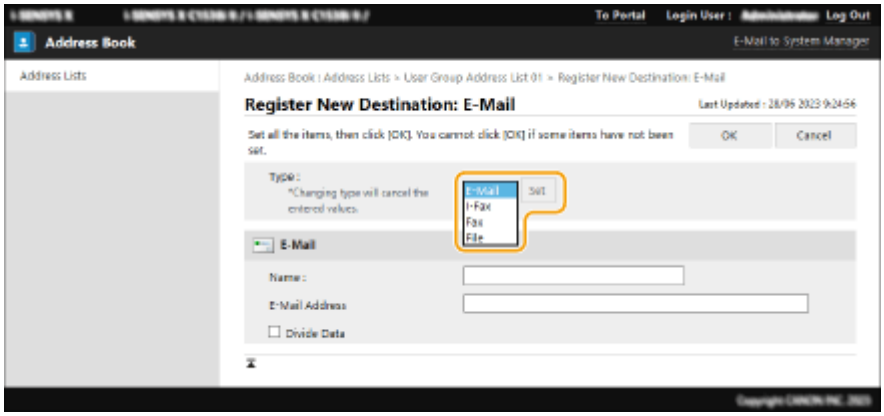
3 Register the destination.

- For more information on address lists, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

1. Click the address list in which to register the destination ([Personal Address List], User Group Address Lists, [Address List 01] to [Address List 10], or [Address List for Administrators]).
   - [Personal Address List] is for the exclusive use of the logged-in user, and is only available when personal authentication management is enabled.
   - [Address List for Administrators] is only available to administrators who log in with Administrator or DeviceAdmin privileges.
   - If the page for entering a PIN is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].
   - If you want to share the destination with a registered user group, select a registered User Group Address List.

   NOTE:

   - You can also manage User Group Address Lists by enabling only users with Administrator privileges to register/edit destinations from the Remote UI. **<Use User Group Address List>(P. 1014)**
2. Click [Register New Destination...].
3. Select the destination type and click [Set].



4 Register the necessary information and click [OK].

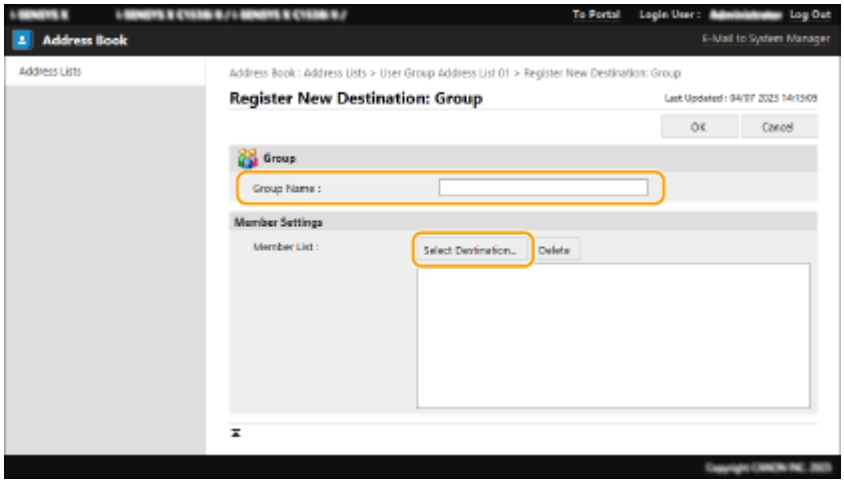
- The displayed items vary depending on the destination type. For more information on the information to register, see **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** .

■Registering a group destination

For more information on group destinations, see **Registering Multiple Destinations as a Group(P. 280)** .

1 Click [Register New Group...].

2 Enter a name for the group in [Group Name], and click [Select Destination...] for [Member List].



3 Select the check box for the destinations that you want to register to the group, and click [OK].

4 Click [OK].

■Registering a name for the address list

Click [Register Address List Name...] or [Register/Change Address List Name...], enter the name, and click [OK].

You can set to also change the name of the user group address book when a user group name is changed. Log in to the Remote UI as a user with Administrator privileges, press [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Set Destination] ▶ [Personal Address List/User Group Address List Settings], and select the [Apply User Group Name Change to User Group Address List Name] check box. [Apply User Group Name Change to User Group Address List Name] is only available when personal authentication management is enabled.

■Checking/editing destination details

You can click the [Type] icon or name of a destination to check the details of the destination. To edit the destination, click [Edit], change the registered details, and click [OK].

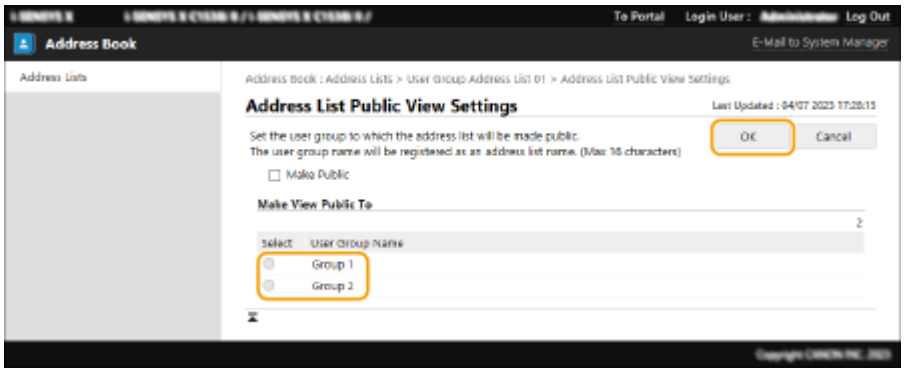
■Registering to a user group address list

When using personal authentication management, an address list can be shared between users in the same user group. First, set up the user group that will share the address list, then register the destinations that you want to share.

NOTE:

- Users can be registered to a user group to share the address lists in an address book between registered users. **Registering User Groups(P. 703)**

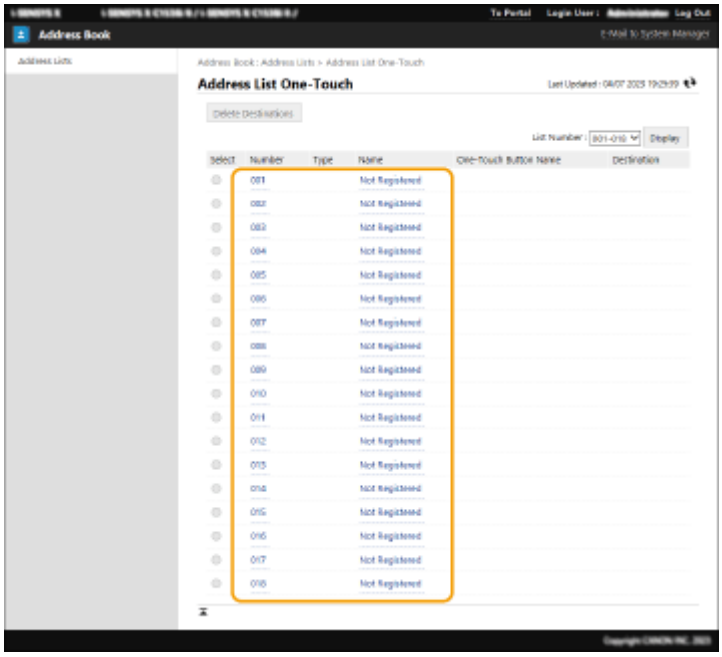
1. Click the address list in which to register the destination ([User Group Address List 01] to [User Group Address List 50]).
2. Click [Public View Settings...].
3. Select the check box for [Make Public].
4. Select the group in which to share the address list, and click [OK].



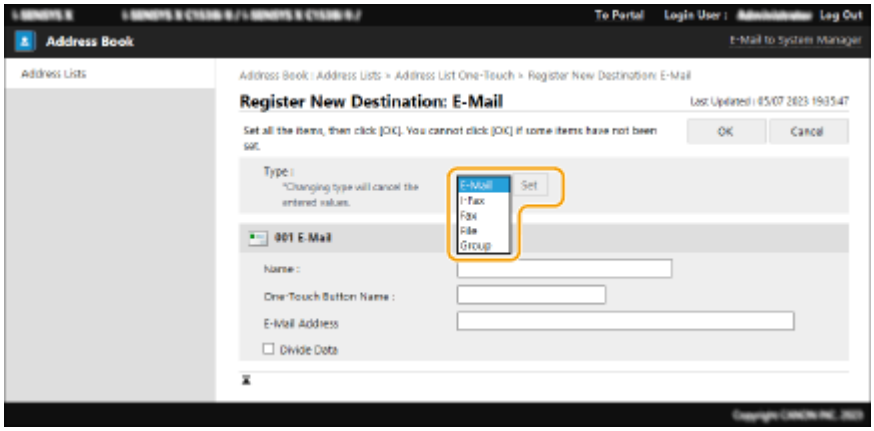
5. Click [Register New Destination...] or [Register New Group...].
6. Register the necessary information and click [OK].

■Registering to a one-touch button

1. Click [Address List One-Touch].
2. Click [Not Registered] or an unregistered one-touch number.
   - [Not Registered] is displayed in [Name] for unregistered one-touch buttons.
   - To display one-touch buttons that are not shown in the list, select the range of numbers in [List Number], then click [Display].



3 Select the destination type and click [Set].



4 Register the necessary information and click [OK].

- For more information on the information to register, see **Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button(P. 285)** .

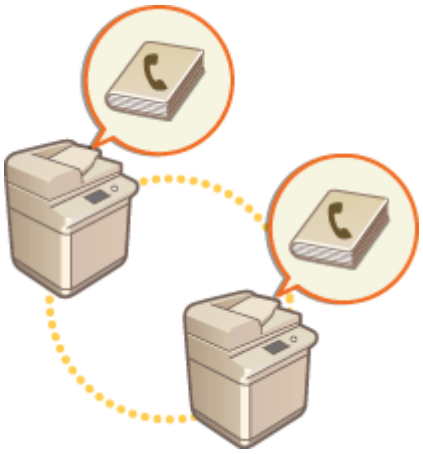
LINKS

Registering Destinations(P. 265)
Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)

Sharing an Address List with Specific Users

ERJ8-0E2

You can use a user group address list to share an address list between specific users. This is useful when using a shared address list within the same department.



Procedure for Sharing Addresses

Follow the procedure below.

1 

Registering Users.

- Register the users to share with. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

  If you are using Server Authentication, proceed to step 2.

2 

Registering a Group to Share

- Register a user group. **Registering User Groups(P. 703)**

3 

Setting the Group Share Destination

- Specify the group created in step 2 in [Public View Settings...] from the address list in which to register the destination. **Registering Destinations via the Remote UI(P. 697)**

NOTE

- To add new users to an existing group, set the destination group when registering the users in step 1.

Registering User Groups

ERJ8-0E3

Register user groups. User group address lists can be shared between registered user groups.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [User Management] ▶ [Authentication Management] ▶ [User Group Management].

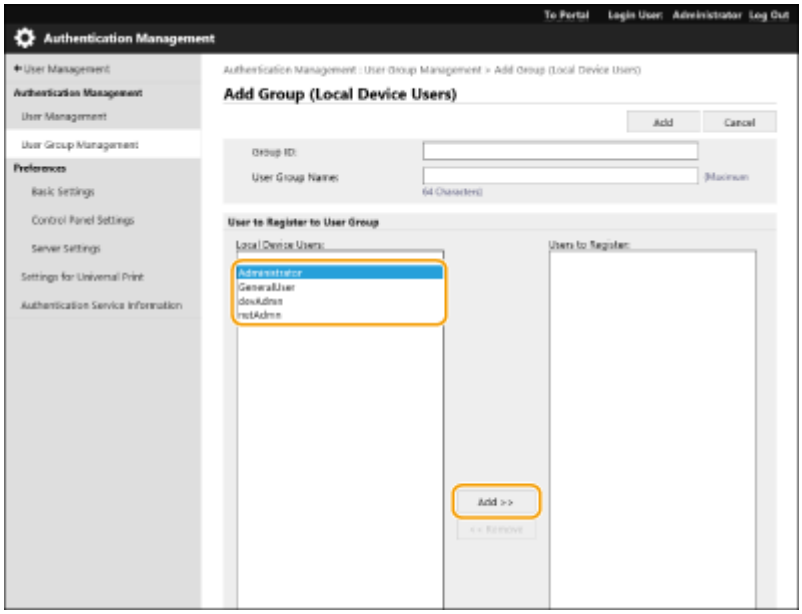
4 Click [Add Group (Local Device Users)...] or [Add Group (Other Users)...].

- Select [Add Group (Other Users)...] if Server Authentication is set.

■Adding Groups to a Local Device

1 Enter the group ID and user group name.

2 Select the users to include in the user group, and click [Add >>].



3 Click [Add].

■Adding Groups to an Authentication Server

1 Enter the group ID, user group name, attribute name, and attribute value.

2 Click [Add].

NOTE:

- For [Attribute Name:], enter the "Attribute Name" (such as company name, department or position) managed by the server authentication destination (ActiveDirectory, Microsoft Entra ID, LDAP server, etc.). For example, enter "company" or "department".
- For [Attributes:], input the values you wish to extract as a group from the values listed for "Attribute Name" in the server. For example, you may enter "Company A" for the company name, and "Sales 1" for the department name.

Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication

ERJ8-0E4

You can use the Remote UI to register keys/certificates, CA certificates, and S/MIME certificates to the machine from your computer. Designate an administrator to register these items.



Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)
Registering a CA Certificate(P. 706)
Registering an S/MIME Certificate(P. 707)

NOTE

The communication methods listed below use a key/certificate or CA certificate. If you want to use a registered key and certificate in actual communication, you need to specify the key and certificate in the settings for each communication method. However, an X.509 DER format CA certificate does not need to be specified in the settings for each communication method. You can use it simply by registering it to the machine.

- TLS encrypted communication **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**
- IPSec **Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)**
- IEEE 802.1X **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**

Registering a Key and Certificate

Keys and certificates (server certificates) can be registered via the Remote UI. For information on the keys and certificates that can be registered on the machine, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Management] ▸ [Key and Certificate Settings].**

4 **Click [Register Key and Certificate...].**

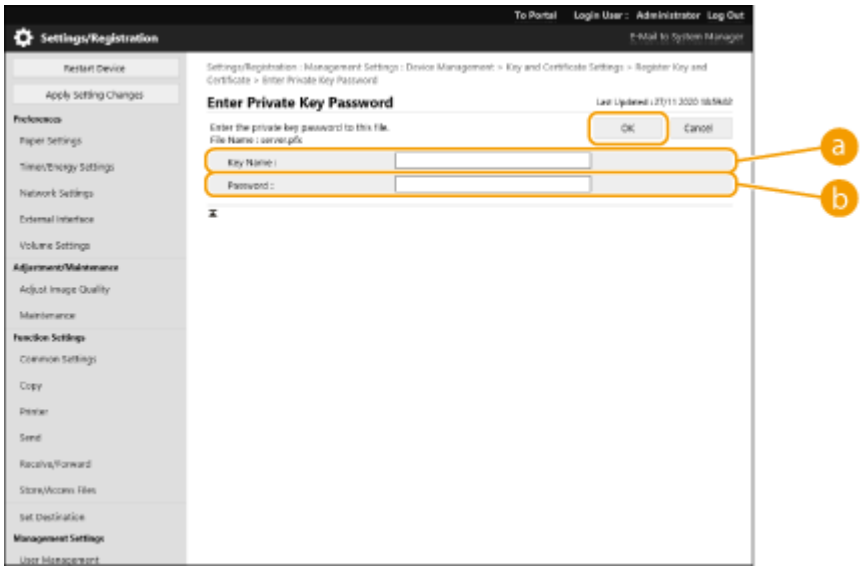
5 **Click [Install...].**

6 **Install the key and certificate.**

- Click [Choose File], specify the files (key and certificate) to install, and click [Start Installation].

7 Register the key and certificate.

1. Select the key and certificate that you want to register, and click [Register].
2. Enter the key name and password, and click [OK].



a [Key Name]

Use alphanumeric characters to enter the name of the key that was registered to the machine.

b [Password]

Use alphanumeric characters to enter the password of the private key that is set for the file to register.

NOTE

Managing keys and certificates

You can check the detailed settings or delete keys and certificates on the screen displayed in step 4.

- If is displayed, the key is corrupted or invalid.
- If is displayed, the certificate for the key does not exist.
- Click a key name to display detailed information about the certificate. You can also click [Verify Certificate] on this screen to check whether the certificate is valid.
- To delete a key and certificate, select the one that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

Registering a CA Certificate

X.509 DER format CA certificates are preinstalled in the machine. You can register a new CA certificate if it is required by a particular function. For information on the CA certificates that can be registered on the machine, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

1 Start the Remote UI. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [CA Certificate Settings].**

4 **Click [Register CA Certificate...].**

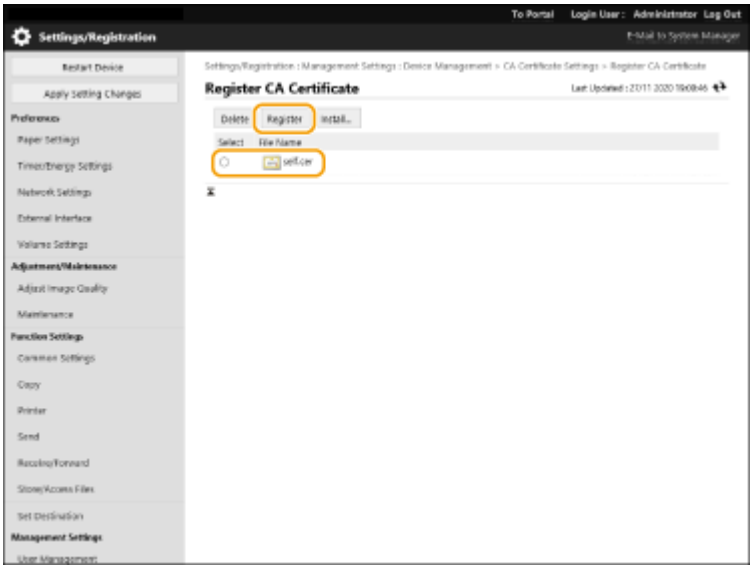
5 **Click [Install...].**

6 **Install the CA certificate.**

- Click [Choose File], specify the file (CA certificate) to install, and click [Start Installation].

7 **Register the CA certificate.**

- Select the CA certificate that you want to register, and click [Register...].



NOTE

Managing CA certificates

You can check the detailed settings or delete CA certificates on the screen displayed in step 4.

- Click  to display detailed information about the CA certificate. You can also click [Verify Certificate] on this screen to check whether the CA certificate is valid.
- To delete a CA certificate, select the one that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

Registering an S/MIME Certificate

You can register a public key certificate (S/MIME certificate) to use for encrypting e-mail/I-fax with S/MIME. For information on the S/MIME certificates that can be registered on the machine, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** . For information on how to configure the S/MIME settings, see **<S/MIME Settings>(P. 958)** .

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [S/MIME Certificate Settings].**

4 **Click [Register S/MIME Certificate...].**

5 **Register the S/MIME certificate.**

- Click [Choose File], specify the file (S/MIME certificate) to register, and click [Register].

NOTE

Managing S/MIME certificates

You can check the detailed settings or delete S/MIME certificates on the screen displayed in step 4.

- Click  to display detailed information about the S/MIME certificate. You can also click [Verify Certificate] on this screen to check whether the S/MIME certificate is valid.
- To delete an S/MIME certificate, select the one that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

Configuring the Expiration Check Method for Received Certificates

ERJ8-0E5

There are two methods for verifying whether certificates received from the other party in communication are valid: Comparing with the certificate revocation list (CRL) registered in the machine and querying an OCSP (online certificate status protocol) responder (a server that supports OCSP). Set the method for checking the expiration of certificates according to your environment. This registration can only be performed by the administrator.

Registering a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)(P. 709)
Configuring the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)(P. 709)

Registering a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

You can use the Remote UI to register a certificate revocation list (CRL). For information on the CRLs that can be registered on the machine, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings].

4 Click [Register CRL...].

5 Register the CRL.

- Click [Choose File], specify the file (CRL) to register, and click [Register].

NOTE

Managing CRLs

You can check the detailed settings or delete CRLs on the screen displayed in step 4.

- Click to display detailed information about it. You can also click [Verify CRL] on this screen to check whether the CRL is valid.
- To delete a CRL, select the one that you want to delete, and click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

Configuring the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)

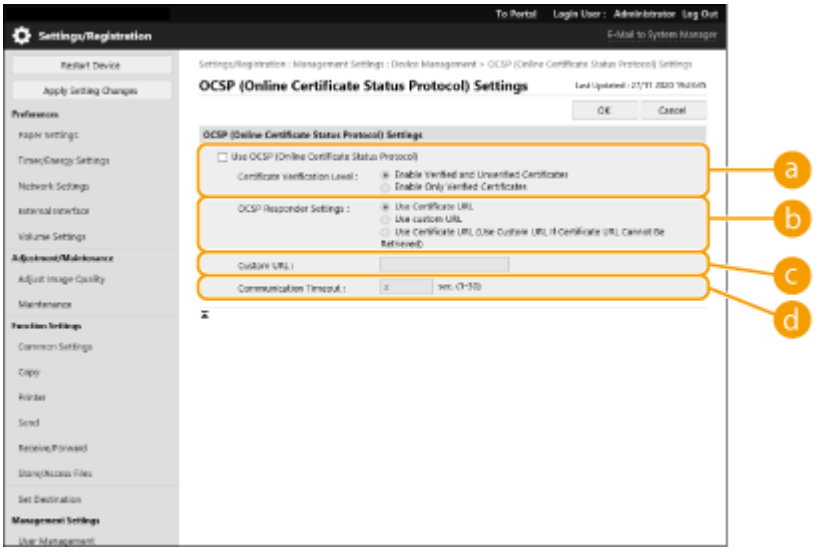
You can configure the certificate verification level and the OCSP responder to connect to.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) Settings].**

4 **Select the check box for [Use OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol)], and configure the online certificate status protocol (OCSP).**



ⓐ [Certificate Verification Level]

Set whether to disable certificates in situations such as the following:

- When the machine cannot connect to the OCSP responder
- When a timeout occurs
- When expiration cannot be checked, such as when the result of checking the expiration of a certificate via the OCSP responder is unknown

ⓑ [OCSP Responder Settings]

Specify the URL for connecting to the OCSP responder.

ⓒ [Custom URL]

When [Use custom URL] or [Use Certificate URL (Use Custom URL If Certificate URL Cannot Be Retrieved)] is selected, enter the URL of the OCSP responder (ASCII code only, maximum 255 characters).

ⓓ [Communication Timeout]

Set the time until communication with the OCSP responder times out. The connection is canceled if there is no response from the OCSP responder within the set time.

5 **Click [OK].**

Generating a Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

ERJ8-0E6

Certificates generated on this machine do not have a CA signature, which may cause communication errors with some communication peers. To request a certificate with a CA signature, certificate signing request (CSR) data is required. A user who logs in with administrator privileges can generate a CSR.

Generating a Key and CSR(P. 711)
Registering a Certificate to a Key(P. 712)

Generating a Key and CSR

You can generate a key and CSR on the machine. You can also display the CSR data on the screen and export it as a file.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

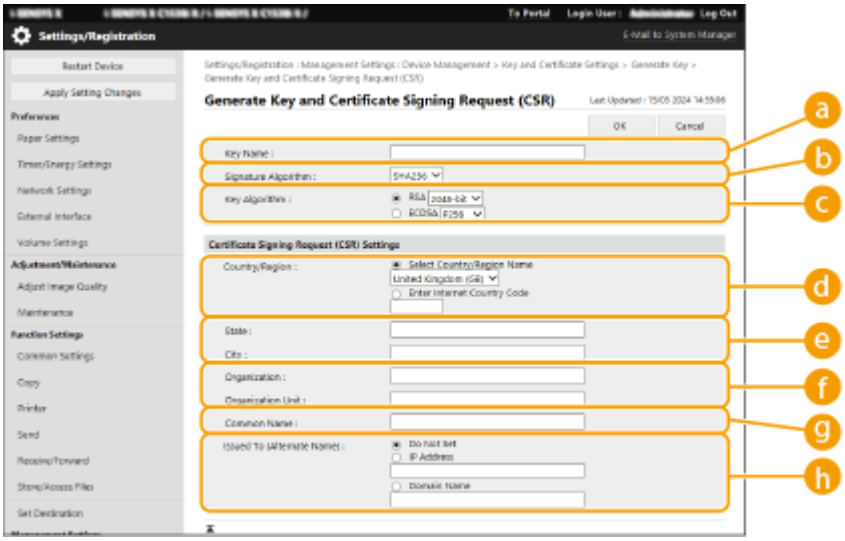
2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [Key and Certificate Settings].

4 Click [Generate Key...].

5 Click [Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)].

6 Configure the necessary items for the key and certificate.



a [Key Name]

Enter a name for the key. Use a name that will be easy to find when displayed in a list.

b [Signature Algorithm]

Select the hash algorithm to use for the signature.

[Key Algorithm]

Select the key algorithm, and specify the key length if [RSA] is selected, or specify the key type if [ECDSA] is selected.

[Country/Region]

Select the country code from the list, or enter it directly.

[State]/[City]

Enter the location.

[Organization]/[Organization Unit]

Enter the organization name.

[Common Name]

Enter the IP address or FQDN.

- When performing IPPS printing in a Windows environment, make sure to enter the machine's IP address.
- A DNS server is required in order to enter the FQDN of the machine. Enter the IP address if a DNS server is not used.

[Issued To (Alternate Name)]

Enter the IP address or domain to be set for the Subject Alternative Name (SAN), as needed.

- If you are not configuring the [Issued To (Alternate Name)] setting, select the [Do Not Set] checkbox.
- Only IPv4 addresses can be set in [IP Address].

7 Click [OK].

➡ The CSR data is displayed.

- If you want to save the CSR data to a file, click [Store in File] and specify the save location.

NOTE

- The key that generated the CSR is displayed on the key and certificate list screen, but you cannot use it by itself. To use this key, you need to register the certificate that is later issued based on the CSR. **Registering a Certificate to a Key(P. 712)**

Registering a Certificate to a Key

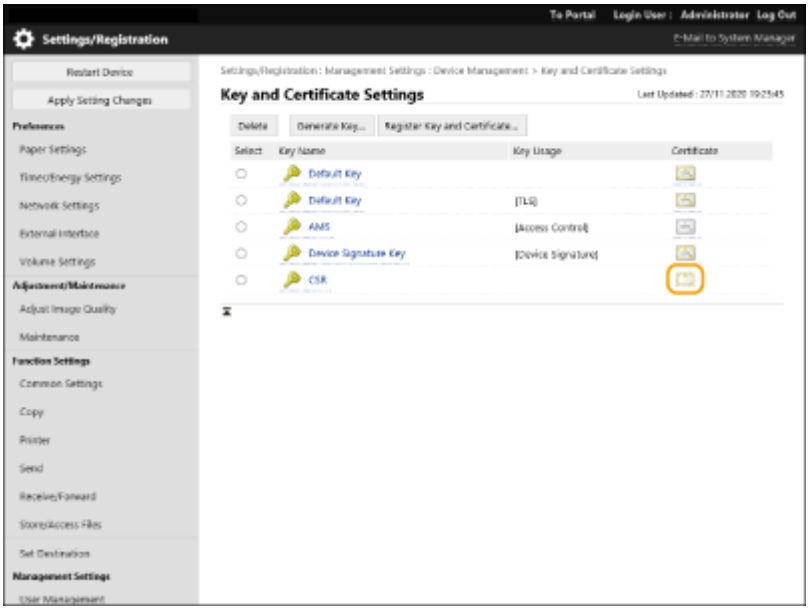
You can register the certificate that was applied for and issued based on the CSR.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▸ [Key and Certificate Settings].

4 In the [Certificate] list, click for the certificate that you want to register.



5 Click [Register Certificate...].

6 Register the certificate.

- Click [Choose File], specify the file (certificate) to register, and click [Register].

Retrieving/Updating a Certificate from an SCEP Server

ERJ8-0E7

A request for issuing the certificate required for keys generated with the machine can be sent to an SCEP (Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol) server that manages certificates. Certificates issued from the SCEP server are automatically registered to the machine. Administrator privileges are required to send a request for issuing a certificate.

Specifying the Communication Settings of the SCEP Server(P. 714)
Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued(P. 715)
Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued at the Specified Time(P. 716)
Checking the Status of Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued(P. 718)

Specifying the Communication Settings of the SCEP Server

You can specify the settings for communicating with the SCEP server.

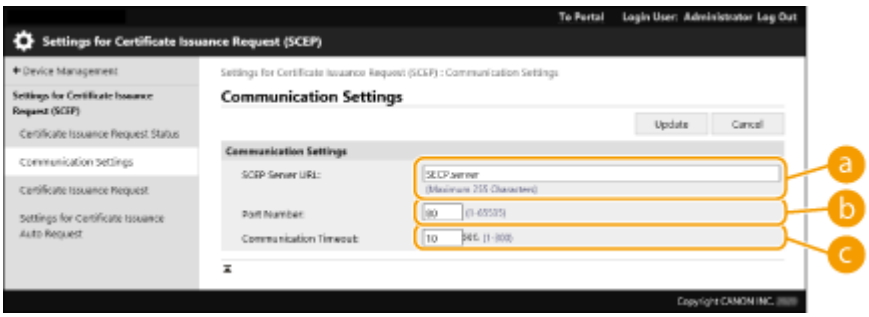
1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [Settings for Certificate Issuance Request (SCEP)].**

4 **Click [Communication Settings].**

5 **Set the required communication settings.**



a [SCEP Server URL:]

Specify the URL of the SCEP server to connect to.

b [Port Number:]

Enter the port number to use for communicating with the SCEP server.

c [Communication Timeout:]

Enter the timeout time for communication with the SCEP server. The connection is canceled if there is no response from the SCEP server within the set time.

6 **Click [Update].**

NOTE

- The settings cannot be updated when [Enable Timer for Certificate Issuance Auto Request] is selected. **Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued at the Specified Time(P. 716)**
- For information on the supported versions of SCEP, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** .
- Communication using HTTPS is not supported.

Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued

You can manually request a certificate to be issued.

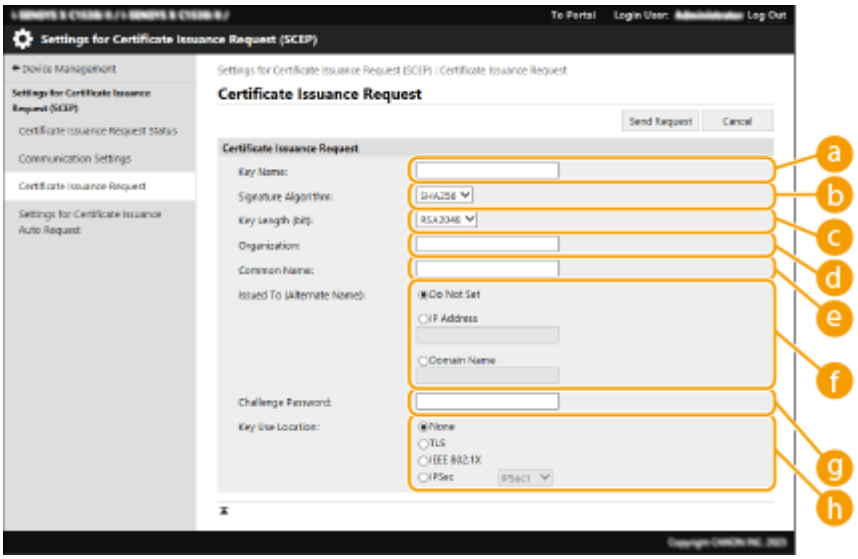
1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [Settings for Certificate Issuance Request (SCEP)].**

4 **Click [Certificate Issuance Request].**

5 **Set the items required for requesting a certificate to be issued.**



a [Key Name:]

Enter the name for the key. Enter a name that will be easy to find when displayed in a list.

b [Signature Algorithm:]

Select the hash function to use for the signature.

c [Key Length (bit):]

Select the key length.

d [Organization:]

Enter the organization name.

[Common Name:]

Enter the IP address or FQDN.

- When performing IPPS printing in a Windows environment, make sure to enter the IP address of the machine.
- A DNS server is required to enter the FQDN of the machine. Enter the IP address of the machine if a DNS server is not used.

[Issued To (Alternate Name)]

Enter the IP address or domain to be set for the Subject Alternative Name (SAN), as needed.

- If you are not configuring the [Issued To (Alternate Name)] setting, select the [Do Not Set] checkbox.
- Only IPv4 addresses can be set in [IP Address].

[Challenge Password:]

When a password is set on the SCEP server side, enter the challenge password included in the request data (PKCS#9) for requesting a certificate to be issued.

[Key Use Location:]

Select the destination where the key will be used. When [IPSec] is selected, select the IPSec of the destination from the drop-down list.

NOTE:

- When selecting something other than [None], enable the various functions in advance. If a certificate is successfully obtained with the various functions disabled, the certificate is assigned as the destination, but the various functions are not automatically enabled.

6 Click [Send Request].

7 Click [Restart].

NOTE

- A manual request for issuing a certificate cannot be sent when [Enable Timer for Certificate Issuance Auto Request] is selected. **Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued at the Specified Time(P. 716)**
- The information set here is not saved to the storage of the machine.

Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued at the Specified Time

You can set to automatically request a certificate to be issued at a specified time.

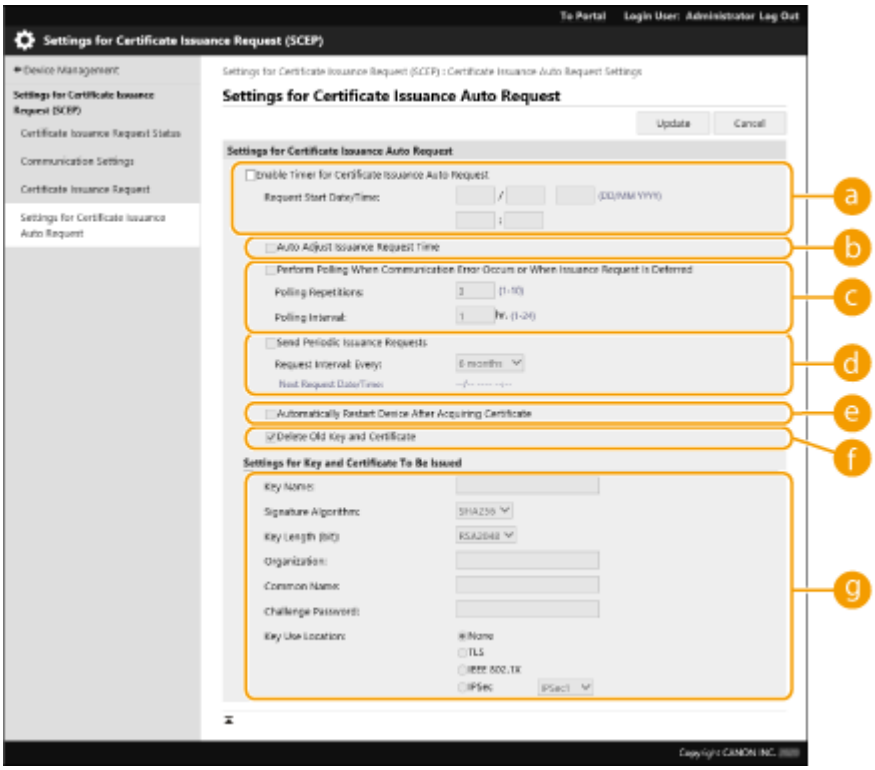
1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [Settings for Certificate Issuance Request (SCEP)].

4 Click [Settings for Certificate Issuance Auto Request].

5 Set the items required for requesting a certificate to be issued.



a [Enable Timer for Certificate Issuance Auto Request]

Select this to automatically request a certificate to be issued at a specified time, and specify the start date/time in [Request Start Date/Time:].

b [Auto Adjust Issuance Request Time]

Select this to adjust the time to send the request. This reduces load on the SCEP server when multiple multifunction printers send a request at the same time. The time is randomly adjusted 1 to 600 seconds from the time specified in [Request Start Date/Time:].

c [Perform Polling When Communication Error Occurs or When Issuance Request Is Deferred]

Select this to check the status of the SCEP server when a communication error has occurred or when a certificate issue request is pending. Specify the number of polling times and polling interval.

NOTE:

- In the following cases, polling is not performed and an error occurs.
  - When the machine has exceeded the limit of keys and certificates it can hold
  - When an error is included in the retrieved response data
  - When an error occurs on the SCEP server side

d [Send Periodic Issuance Requests]

Select this to periodically send an automatic request for a certificate to be issued, and specify the interval in [Request Interval: Every:].

When an automatic request for a certificate to be issued is performed successfully, the next date/time to issue a request is displayed in [Next Request Date/Time:].

e [Automatically Restart Device After Acquiring Certificate]

Select this to restart the machine after the certificate is retrieved.

IMPORTANT:

- The machine is restarted even during batch importing/exporting.

[Delete Old Key and Certificate]

Select this to overwrite the old key and certificate.

NOTE:

- The key and certificate with the same destination for use are overwritten.
- The default key is not overwritten.

[Settings for Key and Certificate To Be Issued]

Enter the information for the key to generate. For information on the settings, see step 5 of **Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued(P. 715)** .

6 Click [Update].

Checking the Status of Requesting a Certificate to Be Issued

The certificate requested and issued based on the CSR is registered in the key.



Start the Remote UI ▶ click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Device Management] ▶ [Settings for Certificate Issuance Request (SCEP)] ▶ [Certificate Issuance Request Status].

- The following statuses are displayed in [Status].
  - [To Be Processed]: The next date/time to issue a request is displayed in [Request Date/Time].
  - [Processing...]: Polling is being performed.
  - [Error]: An error such as a communication error or key upper limit exceeded error has occurred.
  - [Successful]: The date/time that the certificate was successfully issued is displayed in [Request Date/Time].
- The information displayed in [Details] in [Error] is indicated below.

[Details]	Cause
Deferred	The pending status was returned from the SCEP server.
Key and Certificate Registration Limit Error	The limit to the number of keys and certificates that can be registered in the machine was reached.
Communication Error (TCP ERROR)	Connection to the SCEP server failed/a communication timeout occurred.
Communication Error (HTTP ERROR <CODE>)	An HTTP error occurred.
Communication Error (SCEP ERROR - Fail Info 0: Unrecognized or Unsupported Algorithm)	Unrecognized or unsupported algorithm.
Communication Error (SCEP ERROR - Fail Info 1: CMS Message Integrity Verification Failure)	Integrity check (meaning signature verification of the CMS message) failed.
Communication Error (SCEP ERROR - Fail Info 2: Forbidden or Unsupported Transaction)	Transaction not permitted or supported.

[Details]	Cause
Communication Error (SCEP ERROR - Fail Info 3: Excessive Time Difference Between CMS signingTime and System Time)	The signingTime attribute from the CMS authenticatedAttributes was not sufficiently close to the system time.
Communication Error (SCEP ERROR - Fail Info 4: No Certificate Identified That Matches Provided Criteria)	No certificate could be identified matching the provided criteria.

NOTE

- History for the last 20 certificates is displayed. When the number of certificates exceeds 20, the oldest information is overwritten.
- This setting can be imported/exported with models that support batch importing of this setting. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- When performing batch exporting, this setting is included in [Settings/Registration Basic Information]. **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**

LINKS

Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)
Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)
Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)

Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server

ERJ8-0E8

When a scanned document is sent to an SFTP server, transmission error can be prevented by authenticating the server. The settings can be specified using Remote UI from a computer. On the control panel, you can specify only whether to authenticate a server. Administrator privileges are required to configure. **<Host Authentication for SFTP TX>(P. 951)**

1 **Log in to Remote UI as an administrator.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Send] ▶ [Common Settings].**

➠ The [Common Settings] screen is displayed.

4 **Select the [Use Host Authentication for SFTP TX] checkbox.**

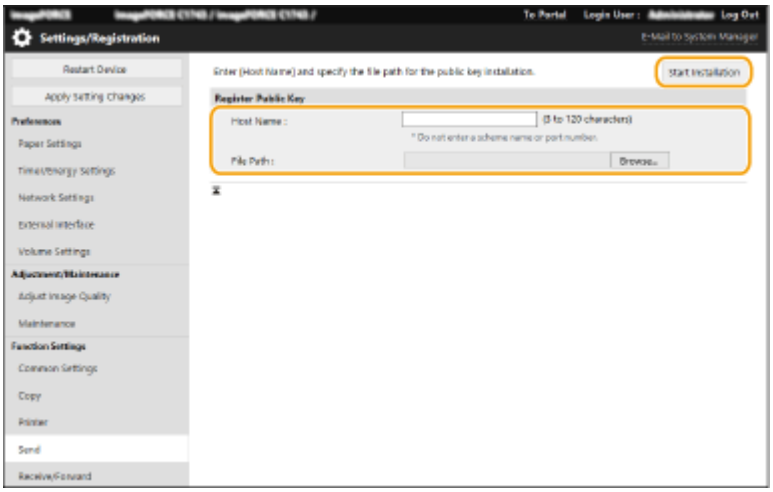
5 **Click [Public Key Settings] for [Public Key to Use at Authentication].**

➠ The [Public Key Settings] screen is displayed.

6 **Click [Register].**

➠ The [Register Public Key] screen is displayed.

7 **Register a public key.**



1. Enter the host name in [Host Name].
2. Click [Browse...], then specify the file to install.
3. Click [Start Installation].

Managing Stored Files

ERJ8-0E9



You can use the Remote UI to print, send, or delete faxes and I-faxes that are temporarily stored in the Fax/I-Fax Inbox.

Managing Documents Temporarily Stored in Memory RX Inbox(P. 721)
Managing Documents Temporarily Stored in Confidential Fax Inbox(P. 722)

Managing Documents Temporarily Stored in Memory RX Inbox

You can print or forward faxes and I-faxes that are temporarily stored in the Memory RX Inbox using Memory Lock.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

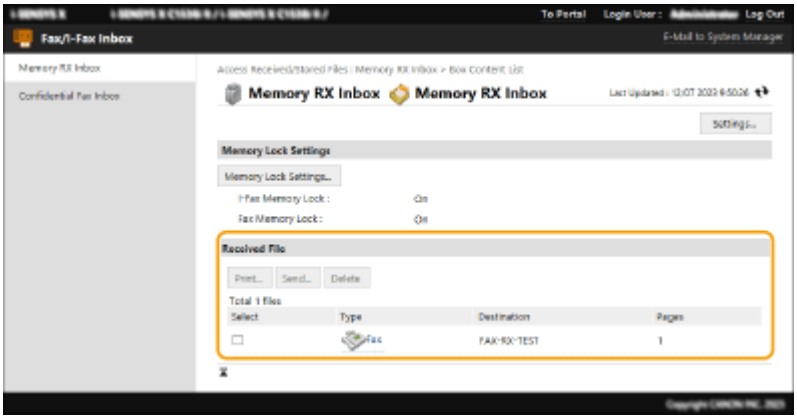
2 Click [Access Received/Stored Files] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Select [Memory RX Inbox] and click [Memory RX Inbox].

- If the page for entering a PIN is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].

4 Select the document and perform the desired operation.

- Click the [Type] icon to display detailed information about the document.



■Printing a document

1. Select the check box for a document that you want to print, and click [Print...].
   - You can select multiple documents.
2. Click [Start Printing].

- Documents are automatically deleted after they are printed.

■Forwarding a document

1. Select the check box for a document that you want to forward, and click [Send...].
   - You can select multiple documents.
2. Click [Select Destination], select the destination, and click [OK].
   - You can click [Move to Top], [Move Up], [Move Down], or [Move to Bottom] to change the order in which the files are forwarded.
   - You can click [Settings...] in [Set Details] to change the send settings. You can also change detailed settings of the file in [File Settings].
     (For detailed information on the settings, see **Scanning(P. 451)** . However, note that some of the settings included cannot be set in this procedure.)
   - If you select the check box for [Delete File After Sending], documents are automatically deleted after they are forwarded.
3. Click [OK].

■Deleting a file

1. Select the check box for the file that you want to delete.
2. Click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

NOTE

To check I-faxes that were divided when received

- Click [Divided Data RX Inbox] on the screen displayed in step 3 to display a list of I-faxes that were divided when received. **Receiving I-Faxes(P. 411)**

To set a PIN for Memory RX Inbox

- You can change the PIN for the Memory RX Inbox by clicking [Settings...] on the screen displayed in step 4 and adding a check mark to [Set PIN].

To configure Memory Lock settings

- You can set whether to receive faxes and I-faxes in the Memory RX Inbox by clicking [Memory Lock Settings...] on the screen displayed in step 4.

Managing Documents Temporarily Stored in Confidential Fax Inbox

You can print or delete faxes and I-faxes that are temporarily stored in the Confidential Fax Inbox.

1. **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

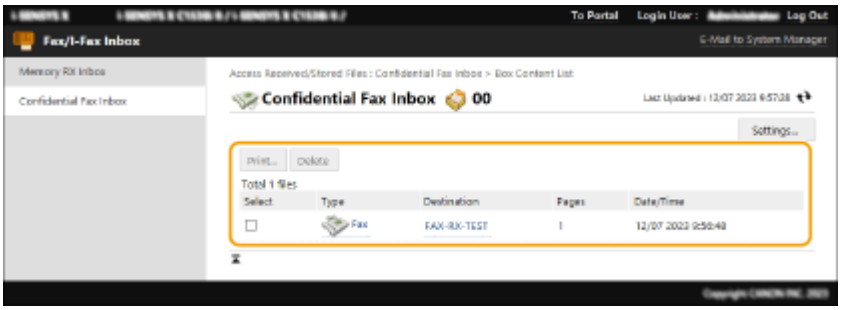
2. **Click [Access Received/Stored Files] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 Select [Confidential Fax Inbox] and click the number of the desired Confidential Fax Inbox.

- If the page for entering a PIN is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].
- You can also specify a Confidential Fax Inbox by entering its number in [Box Number (00-49)] and clicking [Open...].

4 Select the document and perform the desired operation.

- Click the [Type] icon to display detailed information about the document.



■Printing a document

1. Select the check box for a document that you want to print, and click [Print...].
   - You can select multiple documents.
2. Click [Start Printing].
   - If you select the check box for [Delete File After Printing], documents are automatically deleted after they are printed.

■Deleting a file

1. Select the check box for the file that you want to delete.
2. Click [Delete] ▶ [OK].

NOTE

To change the settings of a Confidential Fax Inbox

- You can change the name and PIN for the selected Confidential Fax Inbox by clicking [Settings...] on the screen displayed in step 4.

LINKS

Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)
Keeping Received Documents Private(P. 389)
<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>(P. 984)

Managing the Logs

ERJ8-0EA

You can use the logs to check or analyze how the machine is being used. A variety of information about each operation is recorded in the logs, such as the operation date/time, user name, operation type, function type, and operation result. For more information on the types of logs, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** . Administrator privileges are required in order to manage the logs.



Starting Log Recording(P. 724)
Exporting Logs Automatically(P. 725)
Exporting a Log as a File(P. 726)
Deleting the Logs(P. 727)
Sending Logs via the Syslog Protocol(P. 727)

IMPORTANT

- If Audit Log Collection is enabled and an error occurs in the memory area managed by this function, initialization is automatically performed and then an error screen appears.
  - If you can obtain the audit log from before the error occurred, click [Download Audit Log] to obtain the log, and then click [OK].
  - If you cannot obtain the audit log from before the error occurred, click [OK].
- When initialization is completed, Audit Log Collection is resumed, and the automatic initialization process is recorded in the log.

NOTE

- You can enable <Do Not Store Personal Information in Job Log> to prevent the machine from writing personal information to the audit log. **<Display Job Log>(P. 1033)**

Starting Log Recording

Follow the procedure below to start recording logs.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Device Management] ▶ [Export/Clear Audit Log] ▶ [Audit Log Information] ▶ Click [Start] for [Audit Log Collection]

NOTE

- If Sleep Mode Energy Use is set to [Low], logs are not collected when the machine enters the Sleep mode.
- When generating a network connection log, mail box authentication log, mail box document operation log, or machine management log, click [Device Management] ▶ [Save Audit Log] ▶ select the check box for [Save Audit Log] ▶ click [OK] ▶ [Apply Setting Changes].
- If the power of the machine is turned OFF while collecting logs due to a power outage, etc., collection starts again when the machine restarts, from the log that was being collected before the power turned OFF.
- If you stop log collection while logs are being collected, the logs for the period that log collection was stopped are not collected when log collection is next started.

Exporting Logs Automatically

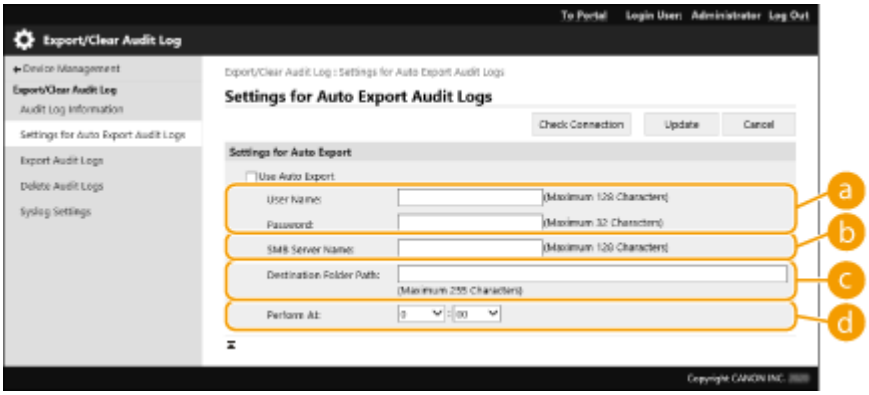
You can set the machine to automatically export audit logs to a specified folder at a predetermined time each day, or when the number of audit logs reaches 95% of the maximum number (approximately 38,000).

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [Export/Clear Audit Log] ▶ [Settings for Auto Export Audit Logs].

4 Select the check box for [Use Auto Export] and specify the required settings.



a [User Name:] / [Password:]

Enter the user name and password necessary for logging into a server to which logs are exported.

b [SMB Server Name:]

Enter the host name of the SMB server to export log files to, along with the path that requires authentication.

- \\Host Name
- \\IP Address\Shared Folder Name

c [Destination Folder Path:]

Enter the path for the folder in which to store the log files.

d [Perform At:]

You can specify the time at which to perform exporting.

5 Click [Check Connection], confirm that you can connect, and then click [Update].

- Audit logs will now be automatically exported. The file extension is "csv."

NOTE

- After automatic exporting of the audit logs has succeeded, the collected audit logs are automatically deleted. Audit logs cannot be deleted manually.
- After automatic exporting and deleting of the audit logs have succeeded, each log is generated. If other log collections do not occur by the next automatic export time, the audit log will not be automatically exported.
- You can also manually export audit logs from the Remote UI. **Exporting a Log as a File(P. 726)**
- If automatic exporting fails, the machine will retry multiple times. An error message is displayed on the control panel of the machine if automatic exporting fails even once.
- Specify an SMB server for Windows Server 2012 or later, or Windows 10 or later.
- If the machine is turned OFF, exporting will not be performed, even at the specified time. Also, it will not be performed when the machine recovers.
- If the machine is in the Sleep mode, it will automatically recover and perform exporting at the specified time.
- Note that if you are using a server that does not support SMB 3.0/3.1 encrypted communication, audit log data travels unencrypted across communication paths while it is being automatically exported.
- Depending on your environment, automatic exporting of logs may be performed later than the specified time.

6 Follow the instructions on the screen to specify the location to store the files.

➡ The csv files are stored.

Exporting a Log as a File

The various logs can be exported and saved to a computer as CSV files, which can be opened using a CSV file editor or a text editor.

IMPORTANT

- When exporting logs as files, use TLS or IPSec. **Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)**

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Device Management] ▶ [Export/Clear Audit Log] ▶ [Export Audit Logs] ▶ [Export] ▶ Follow the on-screen instructions to save the file

- If you want to automatically delete all logs after they are exported, select the check box for [Delete logs from device after export] before clicking [Export]. If you then click [Cancel], exporting is canceled and the logs are deleted, even if they were not finished being exported as files.
- Log collection is stopped while the export process is being performed.

Deleting the Logs

You can delete all of the collected logs.

Start the Remote UI ▶ [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Device Management] ▶ [Export/Clear Audit Log] ▶ [Delete Audit Logs] ▶ [Delete] ▶ [Yes]

NOTE

- If [Settings for Auto Export Audit Logs] is enabled, you cannot manually delete audit logs.

Sending Logs via the Syslog Protocol

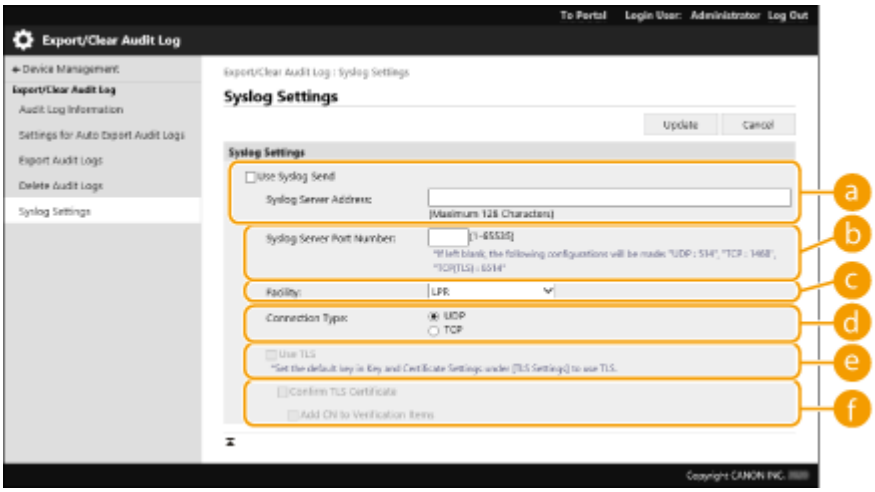
Syslog Information can be sent to an SIEM (security information/event management) system. Linking with an SIEM system enables various information analyzed from realtime alert information to be centrally managed.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [Export/Clear Audit Log] ▶ [Syslog Settings].

4 Select [Use Syslog Send], and specify the required settings.



a [Syslog Server Address:]

Specify the address of the Syslog server to connect to. Enter the necessary information, such as IP address and host name, according to your environment.

b [Syslog Server Port Number:]

Enter the port number used by the Syslog server for Syslog communication. If left blank, the port number defined in RFC (UDP: 514, TCP: 1468, TCP (TLS): 6514) is used.

[Facility:]

Specify the type of log messages to send. Select one of the following: [Local0] to [Local7], [Log Alert], [Log Audit], [Security Messages], or [LPR] defined in RFC.

[Connection Type:]

Specify the communication type ([UDP]/[TCP]).

[Use TLS]

Select this to use TLS to encrypt information communicated with the Syslog server.

NOTE:

- When [TCP] is selected in [Connection Type:], you can set to use TLS.

[Confirm TLS Certificate]/[Add CN to Verification Items]

Set whether to verify the TLS server certificate sent when connecting and its CN (Common Name).

5 Click [Update].

NOTE

- A slight time lag occurs after the error for some audit logs, because Syslog transmission is performed after polling every 30 seconds.
- The supported RFCs are 5424 (Syslog format), 5425 (TLS), and 5426 (UDP).

LINKS

Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

Importing/Exporting the Setting Data

ERJ8-0EC

Machine data such as Address Book destinations, user setting information, and various setting values can be exported and saved to a computer. Exported data can also be imported into the machine from a computer. Data exported from the machine can be imported into other Canon multifunction printers, making it easier to configure the settings on a new machine, such as when you purchase a replacement. For more information on the setting items that can be imported, see **Settings/Registration(P. 801)** . When importing or exporting, you can specify whether to import or export all of the machine data, or only particular data.



Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)
Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually(P. 736)

IMPORTANT

Designate an administrator to manage operations

- Designate an administrator with Administrator privileges to perform data import/export operations. When data is imported, Address Book information, user settings, network settings, and other data are overwritten, which may prevent some functions from working properly or cause problems with machine operation. Exercise caution when importing data.

Do not turn OFF the machine until importing or exporting is complete

- It may take several minutes for the process to complete. Do not turn OFF the machine before the process is complete. Doing so may result in data loss or cause the machine to malfunction.
- The following functions/processes cannot be carried out while importing/exporting data:
  - Send jobs
  - Forwarding jobs
  - Fax/I-fax jobs
  - Report print jobs
  - Scan and Store in Network/Memory Media (during scanning or storing)
  - Individual Importing/Individual Exporting
  - Importing/Exporting from Address Book Management Software
  - Batch Importing/Batch Exporting
  - Importing/Exporting Personal button/Shared button
  - Update process for the Register/Update Software function
  - Synchronizing Custom Settings*
  - Operating from the touch panel display of the machine
  - Operating from the Remote UI
  - Using the Remote Address Book
  - Putting the machine to the sleep mode

  * If the settings are being synchronized (including when currently being paused/entering a paused state), the synchronization process of data related to personalized setting values, and group management data is paused.

- Importing/exporting data cannot be performed while the following functions/processes are being carried out:
  - Send jobs
  - Forwarding jobs
  - Fax/I-fax jobs
  - Report print jobs
  - Scan and Store in Network/Memory Media (during scanning or storing)
  - Individual Importing/Individual Exporting
  - Importing/Exporting from Address Book Management Software
  - Batch Importing/Batch Exporting
  - Importing/Exporting Personal button/Shared button
  - Update process for the Register/Update Software function
  - Synchronizing Custom Settings*
  - Using the Remote Address Book
  - Processing the shutdown of the machine
  - Displaying error code

  * If the settings are being synchronized (including when currently being paused/entering a paused state), you cannot import/export data related to personalized setting values, and group management data.

Do not import or export in different display languages

- If the display language differs between the exporting machine and the importing machine, the setting values may corrupt, causing malfunction of the machine.

Do not edit exported files.

- Do not open and edit exported XML files, as this may cause the machine to malfunction.

NOTE

When importing to a Canon multifunction printer other than this machine

- Some settings may not be imported. **Settings/Registration(P. 801)**

When using a password to protect the security policy settings

- The security policy settings can only be imported if the security policy setting password on the exporting machine matches that of the importing machine, or if no password has been set for the importing machine. If no password has been set for the importing machine, the password configured for the exporting machine is set to the importing machine.

When synchronizing custom settings

- If synchronization of custom settings (client) is started, the importing and exporting of data subject to synchronization (including the Address Book) become restricted. For information on synchronization of custom settings, see **Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)** . For information on the data subject to synchronization of custom settings, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** . For information on conditions and restrictions when importing and exporting during synchronization of custom settings, see **Conditions for Removing Restrictions on the Importing/Exporting of Settings and Other Items(P. 731)** .

Importing Data after Starting Synchronization of Custom Settings (Client)

Follow the procedure below to import the data, and then synchronize the data.

1 Stop synchronization of custom settings on a client machine. Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)

2 To import data for existing users/groups, back up the data, and delete the data for the users/groups that will be imported from the server machine.

- For information on the procedure, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function.

3 Import the data to add to the client machine that has synchronization stopped.

4 Synchronize the client machine with the server machine.

Conditions for Removing Restrictions on the Importing/Exporting of Settings and Other Items

Importing/exporting becomes possible if the corresponding conditions are met for the items described below.

Batch Importing/Batch Exporting

	Export	Import
Personal Setting Information	Only possible if both conditions ⓐ and ⓑ are met	Unavailable
User Group Address List	Only possible if both conditions ⓐ and ⓑ are met	Unavailable

Individual Importing/Individual Exporting

	Export	Import
Personal Setting Information (all)	Only possible if both conditions ⓐ and ⓑ are met	Only possible if condition ⓑ is met
User Group Address List (all)	Only possible if both conditions ⓐ and ⓑ are met	Only possible if condition ⓑ is met
User Group Address List 01 to User Group Address List 20	Not possible (there is no function for exporting individual Address Books)	Only possible if condition ⓑ is met

ⓐ: Execution is only possible for 15 minutes following successful preparation for exporting user data during synchronization of custom settings (server).

ⓑ: Execution is only possible if the connection destination of the server/client machine is "localhost:8443".

NOTE

- For information on the procedure for preparing to export user data, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function. For instructions on importing Address Lists, see **Importing Settings Individually(P. 737)** .

Importing/Exporting All Settings

ERJ8-0EE

You can export all of the setting data from the machine and save it to a computer, and then import it when configuring the settings on a new machine, such as when you purchase a replacement. If you want to configure the same settings on two or more Canon multifunction printers*, you can simply export all settings from one machine and import them all to the others, eliminating the need to configure each machine separately. To perform these operations, log in to the Remote UI with Administrator privileges.

* Only models that support the import/export of all settings

Exporting All Settings(P. 732)
Importing All Settings(P. 733)

Exporting All Settings

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Data Management] ▶ [Export].

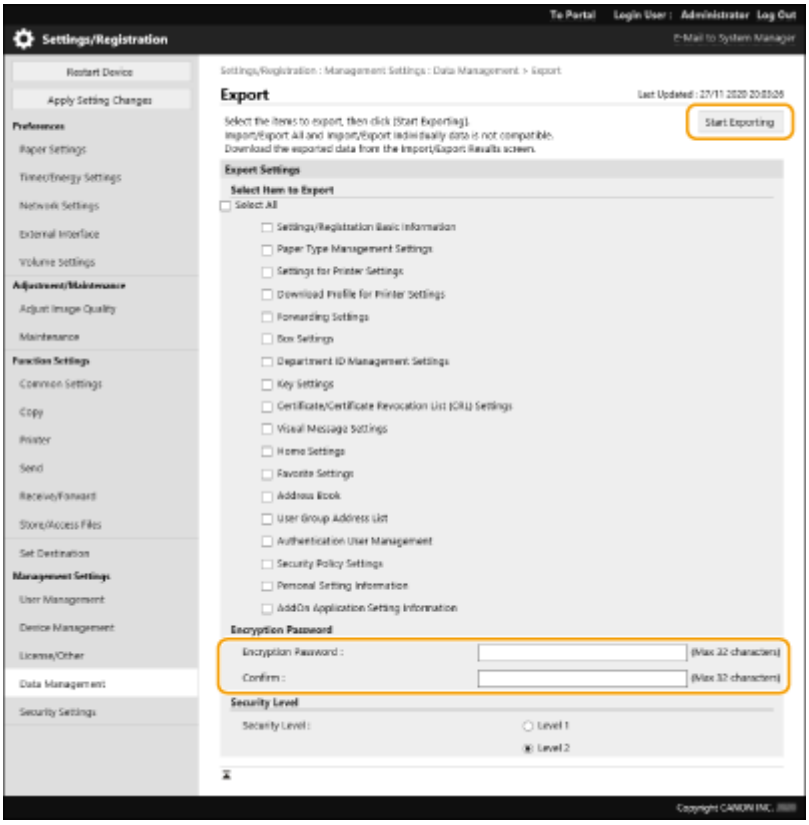
4 Select the check box for [Select All].

NOTE:

- Specific items can also be exported. For information on which Settings/Registration items correspond with which items of the batch export function of the Remote UI, see **Settings/Registration(P. 801)** .

5 Enter the password in [Encryption Password] ▶ select the security level from [Security Level] ▶ click [Start Exporting] ▶ [OK].

- The password in [Encryption Password] will be required when importing the exported setting data. Use alphanumeric characters.
- For confirmation, enter the password again in [Confirm].
- To encrypt all the settings data, select [Level 2] in [Security Level].



IMPORTANT:

- It may take some time for the screen to change. Do not click [Start Exporting] more than once.
- When importing settings data to another model that does not support the setting in [Security Level], select [Level 1].

6 Click [Check Status].

- If the [Cannot be used when exporting.] message is displayed, do not use the Remote UI to perform the operations.

7 Click [Start Downloading].

8 Follow the on-screen instructions to specify where to save the data.

NOTE

To export all setting data without using a computer

- You can export all setting data to memory media such as a USB memory device. **<Export to USB Memory>(P. 1050)**

Importing All Settings

You can import all setting data that was exported to a computer. When importing, the previously configured setting values are overwritten. Note, however, that some machine models may not be able to import all setting items. **Settings/Registration(P. 801)**

IMPORTANT

Check the System Manager information

- When importing the Department ID Management settings to a different multifunctional printer with Department ID Management enabled, the System Manager information is overwritten, which may prevent you from logging in with the previous System Manager ID and PIN. Before performing this operation, make sure to check the System Manager information that is saved on the exporting machine.

NOTE

When applying security policy settings

- The security policy settings can only be imported if the security policy setting password of the exporting machine matches that of the importing machine, or if no password has been set for the importing machine. If no password has been set for the importing machine, the password configured for the exporting machine is automatically set to the importing machine.

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

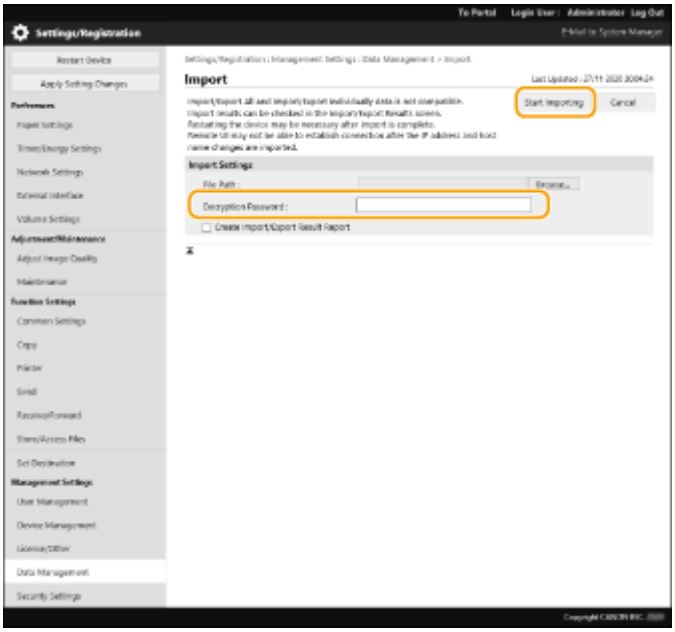
3 **Click [Data Management] ▶ [Import].**

4 **Click [Choose File], and specify the file to import.**

5 **Enter the password in [Decryption Password], and click [Start Importing] ▶ [OK].**

- In [Decryption Password], enter the same password that was entered when the setting data was exported.
- Select the check box for [Create Import/Export Result Report] if you want to output the import results as a CSV file.

➡ The data of the selected file is imported into the machine.



6 Click [OK] ▶ [Check Status].

- The machine may need to be restarted, depending on the imported data. Click [Perform Restart].
- If you select the check box for [Create Import/Export Result Report] in the previous step, click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Data Management] ▶ [Import/Export Results] ▶ [Create Report] to export the import results.

NOTE

To import all setting data without using a computer

- You can import all setting data from memory media such as a USB memory device. **<Import from USB Memory>(P. 1050)**
- Only one report file is saved. The next time a batch import is executed, the existing report file is deleted.
- Reports are created in the following language.
  - If the display language of the machine is set to Japanese immediately after the import process: Japanese
  - If the display language of the machine is set to something other than Japanese immediately after the import process: English

Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually

ERJ8-0EF

You can import/export only the address lists in the Address Book. Administrator privileges are required in order to perform these operations.

Exporting Settings Individually(P. 736)
Importing Settings Individually(P. 737)

NOTE

- For information on editing an Address Book CSV file for importing, see **Address Book Items(P. 739)** .

Exporting Settings Individually

1 Start the Remote UI. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 Click [Data Management], and select the settings to export.

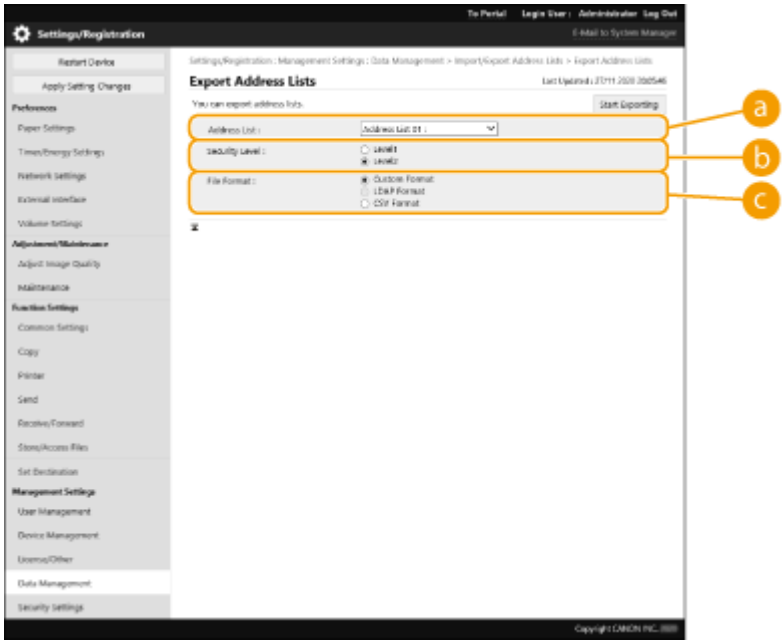
■When exporting address lists

1 Click [Address Lists] in [Import/Export Individually].

2 Click [Export...].

- If the page for entering a PIN is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].

3 Configure the necessary settings.



[Address Lists]

Select the address lists to export. Note that after the address lists are saved, the names of the address lists revert back to the factory defaults.

[Security Level]

You can set the security level if [Custom Format] is selected in [File Format]. When [Level 1] is selected, you can import to all Canon multifunction printers. When [Level 2] is selected, the password for the address list data is encrypted using a more secure method than [Level 1]. However, the data can only be imported to the machine models that support the [Level 2] setting (models on which the [Security Level] setting is displayed).

[File Format]

Select the file format of the data to be exported. Select [Custom Format] when you intend to import all information registered in address lists to another Canon multifunction printer, or select [LDAP Format] or [CSV Format] if the file is to be used by a computer application. Note, however, that if [LDAP Format] is selected, only the e-mail addresses and fax numbers are saved.

NOTE:

To set a password for exported data

- Set <Include Password When Exporting Address Book> to <On> (**<Include Password When Exporting Address Book>(P. 1010)**). When this setting is configured, the items for entering the password are displayed on the [Export Address Lists] screen. If a password has been set, the data can only be imported if the correct password is entered.

To edit data exported in the CSV format

- For information on each column in the Address Book, see **Address Book Items(P. 739)** .
- Data may not be able to be imported correctly when importing to an old version of the machine.

4 **Click [Start Exporting].**

5 **Follow the on-screen instructions to specify where to save the data.**

Importing Settings Individually

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

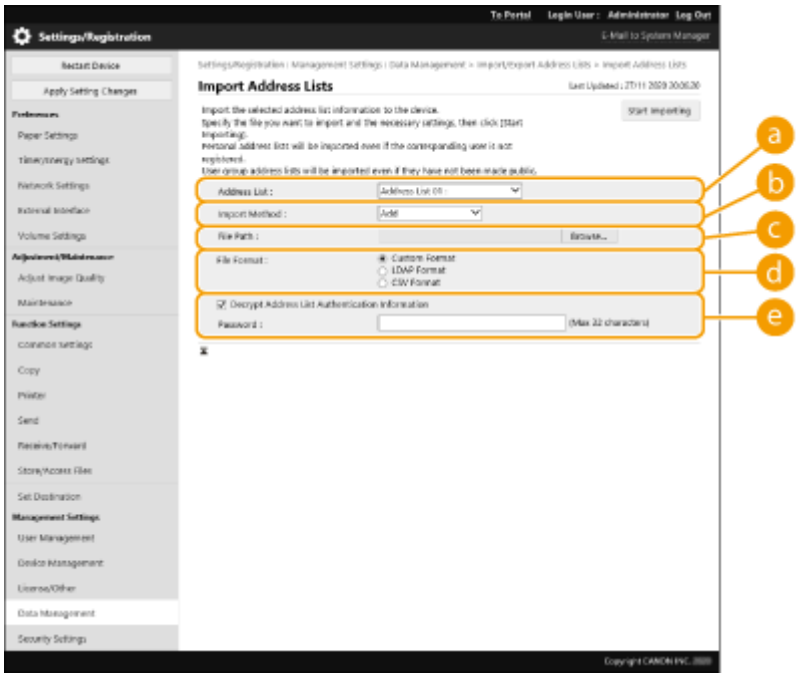
2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Data Management], and select the settings to import.**

■When importing address lists

1. Click [Address Lists] in [Import/Export Individually].
2. Click [Import...].
   - If the page for entering a PIN is displayed, enter the PIN and click [OK].

3 Configure the necessary settings.



a [Address Lists]

Select the address list that is the import destination.

b [Import Method]

Select [Add] if you want to add the imported destinations without deleting the current address list, or select [Delete and Overwrite] if you want to delete the current address list and overwrite the data with the imported destinations.

c [File Path]

Click [Choose File], and specify the file to import.

d [File Format]

Select the file format of the data to be imported. Select [Custom Format] for files in the dedicated format for Canon multifunction printers (*.abk), select [LDAP Format] for LDAP format files (*.ldif), or select [CSV Format] for CSV format files (*.csv).

e [Decrypt Address List Authentication Information]

When importing encrypted files, select the check box and enter the same password that was entered when the setting data was exported.

4 Click [Start Importing] ▶ [OK].

- The machine may need to be restarted depending on the settings to import. **Restarting the Machine(P. 696)**

LINKS

Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)
Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)

Address Book Items

ERJ8-0EH

This section describes each column of the Address Book. Refer to this section when editing CSV files.

Header

Header Name	Required	Notes
# Canon AddressBook CSV version: 0x0002	Yes	Fixed value
# CharSet: UTF-8	Yes	Fixed value
# dn: fixed	Yes (Required for One-touch button Address Book)	Indicates that the destination name is handled as a one-touch button. Entry is only required when the import destination is a one-touch button Address Book. Added when exporting from a one-touch button Address Book, so there is no need to add this item again when importing.
# SubAddressBookName: Address Book name	Yes	Enter the Address Book name after the colon (:), with a space in between. If the Address Book is unnamed, leave the space after the colon (:) blank.
# DB Version: 0x010a	Yes	Fixed value
# Crypto Version: 2	No	Leave this section blank if you are creating a new Address Book CSV file.
# Crypto Attribute: pwd	No	Leave this section blank if you are creating a new Address Book CSV file.

NOTE

- The presence a header relating to "Crypt" in a header indicates that the password attribute is encrypted. However, when entering this information into a newly-created CSV file, or when editing the pwd attribute of an exported CSV file, encryption cannot be performed in a manner that allows the machine to correctly decode. In such cases, delete the corresponding portion from the header.

Body

Attribute Name	Description	Required	Notes
objectclass	Object class (destination type)	Yes	Indicates the type of destination. The required attribute varies according to this value. Enter one of the following. • For e-mail: email • For G3 fax: g3fax • For IP fax: ipfax • For fax: ifax • For file server (SMB, FTP, WebDAV): remotefilesystem • For group: groupfids

cn	Destination name	No	Enter in UTF-8 character code. Otherwise, the destination name will be left blank.
cnread	Phonetic alphabet	No	Displayed as "phonetic" if the display language is set to "Japanese".
cnshort	One-touch button name	No	Enter in UTF-8 character code. Otherwise, the one-touch button name will be left blank.
subdbid	Address Book number	No	Specify which Address Book to import to in the Remote UI. Not required when writing to a CSV file.
mailaddress	E-mail address	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for e-mail and I-fax destinations.
dialdata	Fax number	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for fax destinations. However, it is not required if the destination is an IP fax using a URI.
uri	The URI used with an IP fax	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	Only usable for IP fax destinations. This attribute is required if you do not specify a fax number for an IP fax. For an IP fax destination using a URI, you must also specify the "URI flag" (see below).
url	File server destination host name	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for file server destinations. You can only use letters and symbols.
path	File path for file server destination	No	You can only use letters and symbols.
protocol	Protocol	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for file server destinations. Enter one of the following. • For SMB: smb • For FTP: ftp • For WebDAV: addonprotocol0225
username	User name used when logging in to a file server destination	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for FTP file server destinations. The user ID is required to log in to a file sending destination, and therefore is also required for file sending destinations using authentication, such as SMB and WebDAV.
pwd	Password used when logging in to a file server destination	No	This attribute is required for file sending destinations using authentication.
member	A member of a group destination	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required for group destinations.

indxid	A serial number allocated to a destination	Yes	This attribute is required if the import destination is a one-touch button Address Book. This number becomes the one-touch button number. In other cases, enter a number from 201 to 1,800.
enablepartial	Setting for dividing data when sending an e-mail	No	Enter either "on" or "off".
sub	Subaddress of a file server destination	No	
faxprotocol	Fax protocol	No	Enter one of the following. • g3 • ecm
ecm	Indicates the use of ECM.	No	Enter either "on" or "off".
txstartspeed	Starting transmission speed for faxing	No	Enter one of the following. • 2400 • 4800 • 7200 • 9600 • 14400 • 33600
commode	Fax communication mode Setting regarding international sending	No	Enter one of the following. • For PSTN domestic line: domestic • For PSTN international line 1: international1 • For PSTN international line 2: international2 • For PSTN international line 3: international3
lineselect	Selected fax line	No	Enter one of the following. Otherwise, "auto" is used. • For lines 1 to 4: line1, line2, line3, or line4 • For automatic line specification: auto
uricommode	IP fax communication mode	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This is the chosen communication mode for IP faxes. This attribute is required if you use IP faxing, and are sending to a fax destination. Enter one of the following. • For G3: ip_g3 • For intranet: ip_lsv • For a VoIP gateway: ip_gw
uriflag	The flag for a URI used with an IP fax	Yes (Required for certain destination types)	This attribute is required if the destination is an IP fax, and you use a URI instead of a fax number. Enter either "TRUE" or "FALSE". If you use a URI, enter "TRUE".
pwdinputflag	Setting for requesting password input per transmission	No	Enter either "on" or "off".

ifaxmode	I-Fax mode (simple/full)	No	Enter either "simple" or "full".
transsvcstr1	I-fax relay service text string 1	No	Enter total of up to 40 alphanumeric characters and symbols.
transsvcstr2	I-fax relay service text string 2	No	Enter total of up to 16 alphanumeric characters and symbols.
ifaxdirectmode	I-fax direct sending	No	Enter either "on" or "off".
documenttype	I-fax document type	No	Enter one of the following. • To send in color: cl • To send in black and white: bw
bwpapersize	Paper size allowable when sending an I-fax	No	
bwcompressiontype	Compression format used when sending an I-fax	No	
bwpixeltype	Color space allowable when sending an I-fax	No	
bwbitsperpixel	Bit count allowable when sending an I-fax	No	
bwresolution	Resolution allowable when sending an I-fax	No	
clpapersize	Paper size allowable when sending a color I-fax	No	
clcompressiontype	Compression format used when sending a color I-fax	No	Fixed as "jpeg".
clpixeltype	Color space allowable when sending a color I-fax	No	Fixed as "rgb".
clbitsperpixel	Bit count allowable when sending a color I-fax	No	Fixed as "8".
clresolution	Resolution allowable when sending a color I-fax	No	
accesscode	Access code	No	Enter up to seven numbers.
uuid	A UUID for identifying a destination	No	This item is not necessary when creating a new CSV file.
cnreadlang	Phonetic alphabet character code	No	Displayed as "phonetic" if the display language is set to "Japanese". Enter the language code to use. For Japanese (SJIS), enter "ja".
enablesfp	Unused	No	This item is unused, and therefore does not need to be entered.
memberobjectuuid	Used for Personal Address List/User Group Address List	No	
loginusername	Used for Personal Address List/User Group Address List	No	

logindomainname	Used for Personal Address List/User Group Address List	No	
usergroupname	Used for Personal Address List/User Group Address List	No	
personalid	Used for Personal Address List/User Group Address List	No	

Updating the Firmware

ERJ8-0EJ



New firmware is periodically released to add new functions or resolve issues with existing functions. If new firmware is available, follow the procedure below to update it on the machine. Administrator privileges are required in order to update the firmware.

Checking the Firmware Version(P. 744)
Running the Firmware Update(P. 745)

IMPORTANT

- Do not perform the following operations while updating the firmware. Doing so may cause a critical error.
  - Turn OFF the main power
  - Remove the LAN cable
  - Perform communication (such as printing) with the machine from another computer or application*1
  - Configure the sleep settings of your computer*2

*1 When updating the firmware in a network environment, ensure that other users do not perform operations such as printing.

*2 The firmware may not be updated correctly if the computer enters the sleep mode.

NOTE

Preparing to update the firmware

- Download the latest firmware from the Canon website (https://global.canon/).
- Back up the machine data and settings in case the firmware update is not performed properly.

Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)

Note regarding the update process

- The machine restarts several times.
- The update process is interrupted if jobs remain.
- The screen switches several times during the update process. It may take some time for the screen to switch, but do not close the browser until the update process is complete.

Checking the Firmware Version

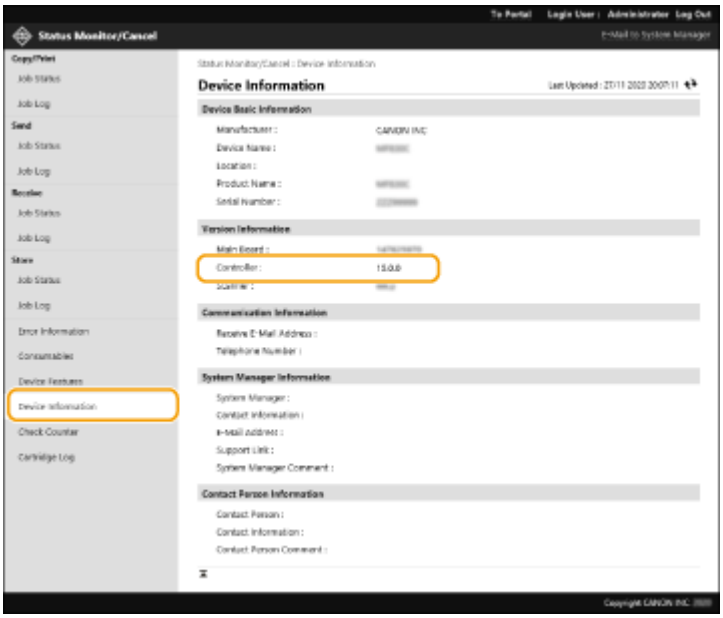
Check the firmware version of the machine before updating the firmware and after updating the firmware.

1 Start the Remote UI. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 Click [Status Monitor/Cancel] on the portal page. **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [Device Information].**

4 **Check the version shown in [Controller] in [Version Information].**



Running the Firmware Update

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Register/Update Software].**

4 **Click [Manual Update].**

5 **Click [Choose File], select the firmware update to use, and click [Next].**

6 **Click [Yes].**

➠ When the [The firmware is updated. Restart the device.] message appears, turn the machine OFF and back ON. **Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine(P. 696)**

Updating the Firmware (Distribution)

ERJ8-0EK



If the machine has access to the Internet, you can download the latest firmware for the machine from Canon's distribution server. This might be more flexible and convenient than the other update method (**Updating the Firmware(P. 744)**) because both manual and automatic update options are available, enabling you to download the firmware at a specified time or as soon as the latest version is available. Administrator privileges are required in order to perform these operations.

NOTE

Preparing to update the firmware

- Back up the machine data and settings in case the firmware update is not performed properly.
  Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Register/Update Software].**

4 **Perform a communication test.**

- Test whether you can access the distribution server over the network.

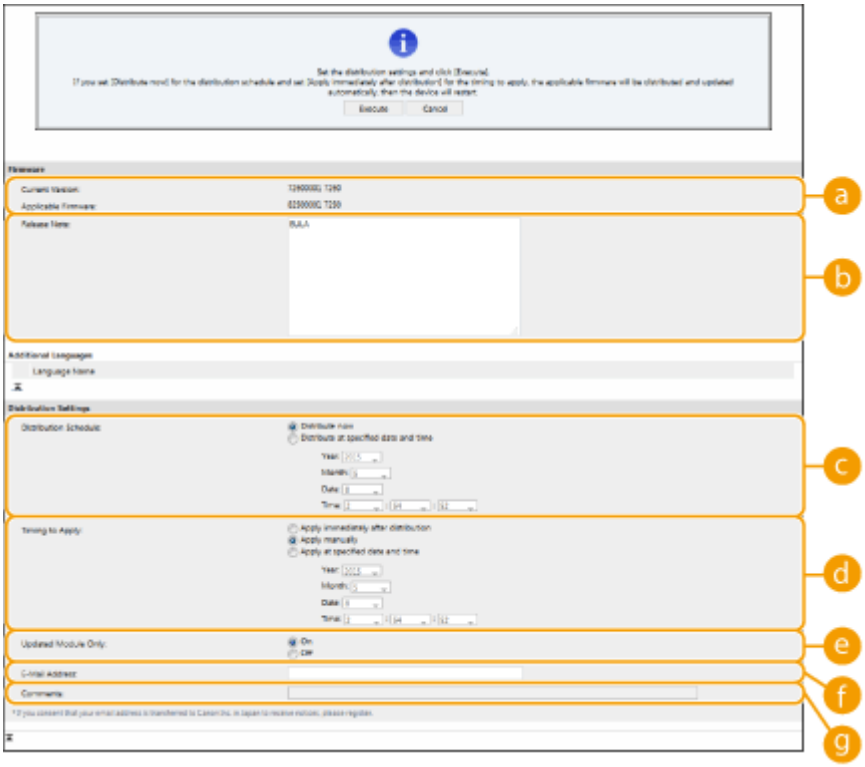
1. Click [Display Logs/Communication Test].
2. Click [Communication Test] ▶ [Yes].

   ➡ The results of the communication test are displayed.

   - If [Could not connect to distribution server. Check the distribution server and network.] is displayed, check that the LAN cable is connected and the network settings are configured properly. **Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)**

5 **Click [Distributed Update] ▶ [Confirm New Firmware].**

6 **Configure the necessary settings.**



a [Current Version]/[Applicable Firmware]

You can check the current firmware version and new one respectively.

b [Release Note]

Important information is displayed. Make sure to read and understand the contents.

c [Distribution Schedule]

To download the firmware immediately, select [Distribute now]. To automatically download the firmware at a specified date and time, select [Distribute at specified date and time] and specify the date and time in [Year]/[Month]/[Date]/[Time]. You can schedule a time within a week in advance.

d [Timing to Apply]

To automatically apply the firmware immediately after downloading is complete, select [Apply immediately after distribution]. To automatically apply the firmware at a specified date and time, select [Apply at specified date and time] and specify the date and time in [Year]/[Month]/[Date]/[Time]. You can also select [Apply manually] to manually apply the firmware.

e [Updated Module Only]

Select [On] to perform an incremental update (download only the difference between the current and new firmware versions). If you want to download the entire firmware, select [Off]. Note that some firmware versions do not support incremental update.

f [E-Mail Address]

Enter your e-mail address. The distribution server sends the update status to the e-mail address entered here.

g [Comments]

Enter a description or note to add to the e-mail. If you manage multiple machines, enter the device name so that you can easily identify the received update status.

7 Click [Execute] ▶ [OK].

- If the license agreement screen is displayed, check the information and click [I Agree].
- If [Apply immediately after distribution] or [Apply at specified date and time] is selected in the previous step, the machine automatically restarts immediately after the firmware is applied. If [Apply manually] is selected, you need to apply the downloaded firmware manually. **Applying the Downloaded Firmware(P. 748)**

IMPORTANT

- Changing the distributed update settings again may delete the downloaded firmware or cancel the scheduled settings.

NOTE

Canceling the distribution schedule

- On the screen displayed in step 5, click [Delete Scheduled Distribution] ▶ [Yes].

TIPS

Automatically check for new firmware (scheduled update)

- If you click [Scheduled Update Settings] ▶ [Edit] in step 5, you can set the machine to periodically access the distribution server for new firmware. If new firmware is available, it is downloaded to update the firmware on the machine. **Setting Scheduled Updates(P. 749)**

■Applying the Downloaded Firmware

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Register/Update Software].**

4 **Click [Distributed Update] ▶ [Apply Firmware] ▶ [OK].**

- The machine automatically restarts immediately after the firmware is applied.

NOTE:

To delete the firmware

- Click [Delete Firmware] ▶ [OK].

NOTE

Configuring settings via the control panel

- Firmware updates may also be able to be performed from <Update Firmware> on the <Home> screen, depending on the region.

Setting Scheduled Updates

ERJ8-0EL



You can set the machine to regularly check for new applicable firmware and automatically update the firmware of the machine.

NOTE

- This operation can only be performed by a user with the required privileges.
- If the downloading of the firmware is not complete, or the downloaded firmware has not been applied, you cannot perform a scheduled update.

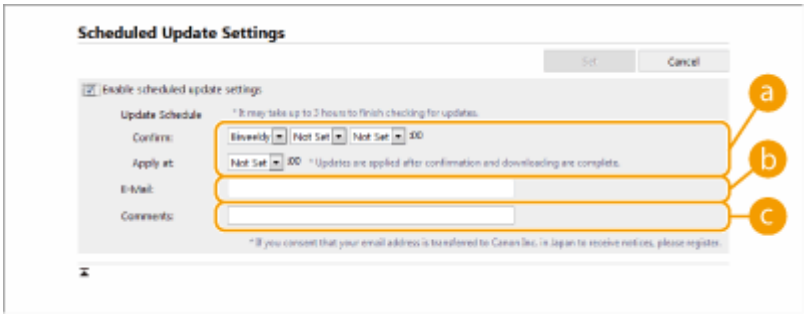
1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Register/Update Software].**

4 **Click [Scheduled Update Settings] ▶ [Edit...].**

5 **Select the check box for [Enable scheduled update settings], and configure the necessary settings.**



a [Update Schedule]

[Confirm]
Select the cycle ([Biweekly] or [Weekly], a day ([Sun] to [Sat]), and the time). The time is displayed in 24-hour notation. The firmware check may take up to 3 hours to complete from the specified time.

[Apply at]
Select the time to apply downloaded firmware.

b [E-Mail]

Enter the e-mail address of the administrator. You can receive e-mails regarding the update status that is sent from the distribution server.

[Comments]

Enter the comment that will automatically be added to the e-mail. If the model name is entered, you can identify which device status the e-mail is about.

NOTE

- If previously downloaded firmware has not been applied by scheduled update, the next scheduled update is not performed.
- If Scheduled Update is set, a firmware update is applied at the specified time after the new firmware is downloaded from the distribution server. After application is complete, the machine automatically restarts.

6 Click [Set].

Displaying Messages from the Administrator

ERJ8-0ER



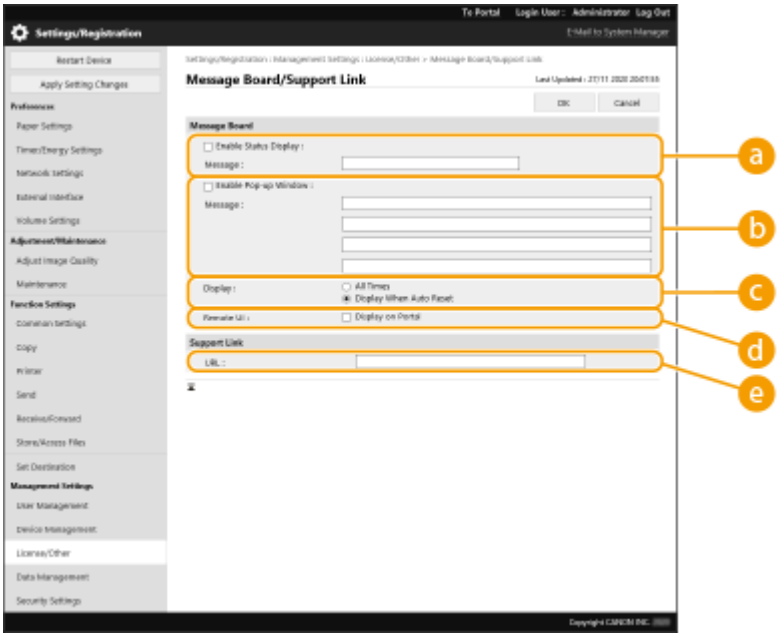
You can display messages to users on the touch panel display. Messages can be displayed at the bottom of the touch panel display or in a separate pop-up window, and you can select which display method to use based on the type of message or user. When a message is displayed in a pop-up window, you can also display the same message on the Remote UI portal page. Administrator privileges are required in order to configure these settings.

1 **Start the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** **Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Message Board/Support Link].**

4 **Enter the message, and click [OK].**



a [Enable Status Display]

To display the message at the bottom of the touch panel display, select the check box and enter the message in [Message]. Use this setting for displaying operational tips and other low-priority messages.

b [Enable Pop-up Window]

To display the message in a pop-up window on the touch panel display, select the check box and enter the message in [Message]. Use this setting for displaying high-priority messages.

c [Display]

Select the display method for the pop-up window.

[All Times]	The pop-up window is displayed continuously, and the machine cannot be operated. Use this setting for messages such as an out-of-service notice.
[Display When Auto Reset]	The pop-up window is displayed when no operations are performed for a specified period of time, or when the machine is restarted. Use this setting for messages such as a maintenance schedule notice.

[Remote UI]

If you select the check box, the message shown in the pop-up window is also displayed on the Remote UI portal page.

[Support Link]

Enter the link to support information for the machine to display on the portal page of the Remote UI.

NOTE

Canceling the message display

- Clear the check boxes for [Enable Status Display], [Enable Pop-up Window], and [Remote UI]. If you also want to delete the message contents, remove the text that was entered in the [Message] text boxes.

LINKS

<Timer/Energy Settings>(P. 818)

Configuring the Visual Message Function

ERJ8-0ES

The Visual Message function enables you to display simple content and messages on the touch panel display. Displaying messages from the administrator or event notifications, etc. on the touch panel display enables the machine to be used as an information sharing tool in the office.

NOTE

- When the Visual Message function is set, content can be checked from <Visual Message> on the <Home>, regardless of the timing. The last content displayed is displayed.
- Set a file saved on a file server or in an Advanced Space of another Canon multifunctional printer on the same network as the content to display. **Working with Other Devices(P. 528)**
- You can also set a website on the internet as the content via a proxy server. The proxy settings used for this function are the same as the settings in **<Proxy Settings>(P. 843)** .
  - If a proxy is set, the specified content may not appear. When this occurs, set an exception address so that the proxy server is not used. **Setting Exception Addresses Where a Proxy Server Is Not Used(P. 756)**
- The content is displayed when printing starts if the forced hold print function is enabled and the [Display When Print Job Starts] check box is selected.

Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)
Setting Exception Addresses Where a Proxy Server Is Not Used(P. 756)
Using the Visual Message Function for Greater Convenience(P. 756)

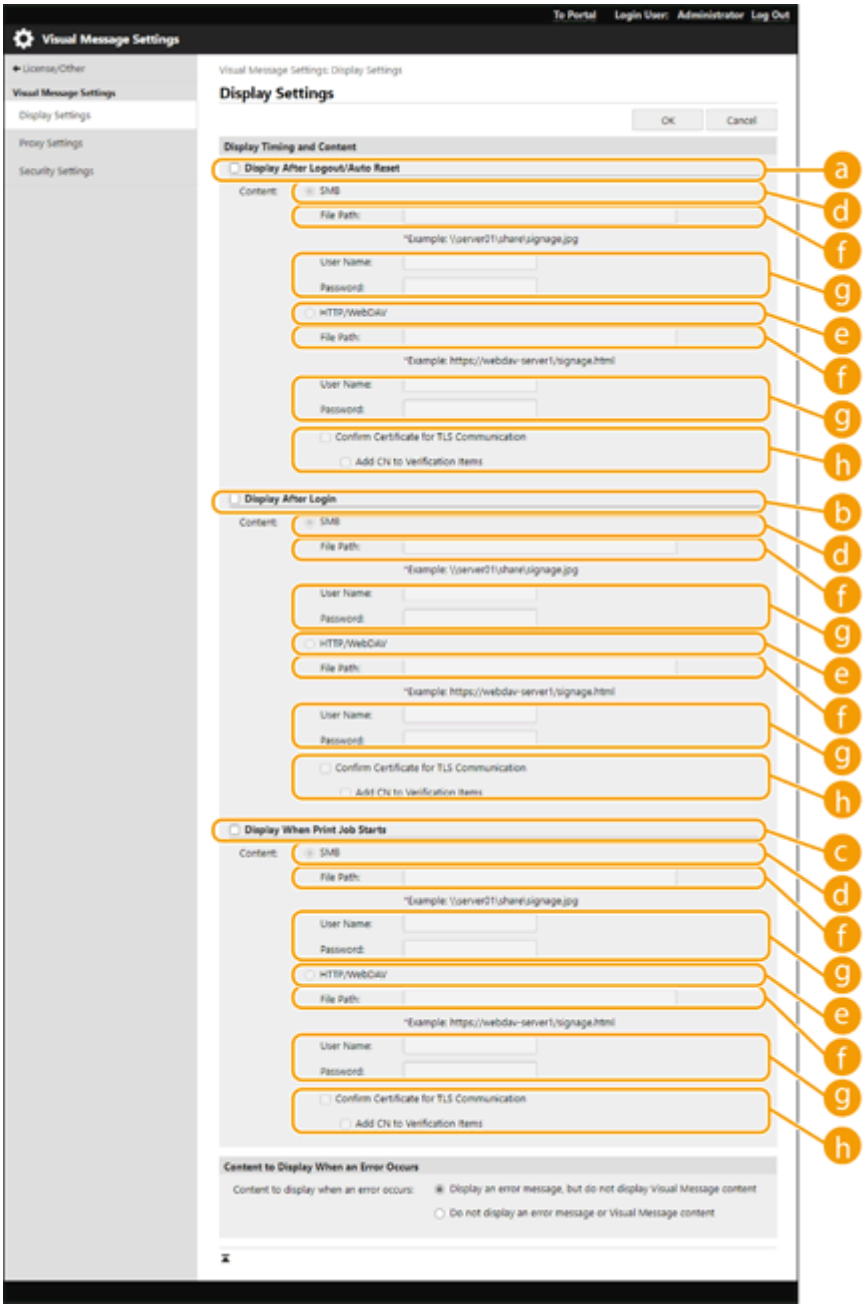
Configuring the Visual Message Function

1 **Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)**

3 **Click [License/Other] ▶ [Visual Message Settings] ▶ [Display Settings].**

4 **Set the display timing and content.**



■Setting the Display Timing

ⓐ[Display After Logout/Auto Reset]

Select this check box to display the content after logging out or after the auto reset mode activates.
The setting to display the content after logging out is enabled when <Login Screen Display Settings> is set to <Display When Device Operation Starts>. To display the content after the auto reset mode activates, set <Auto Reset Time> to 1 minute or longer.

ⓑ[Display After Login]

Select this check box.to display the content after logging in. This is enabled when <Login Screen Display Settings> is set to <Display When Device Operation Starts>.

ⓒ[Display When Print Job Starts]

Select this check box to display the content when printing starts. This is enabled when forced hold printing is set.

■Setting the Content for Each Display Timing

ⓓ[SMB]

Select the check box to access the content to display via [SMB].

[HTTP/WebDAV]

Select the check box to access the content to display via [HTTP/WebDAV].

[File Path:]

Enter the path to the content to display.

Example:

- **[SMB] :** \\server01\share\signage.jpg
- **[HTTP/WebDAV] :** https://webdav-server1/signage.html

[User Name:]/[Password:]

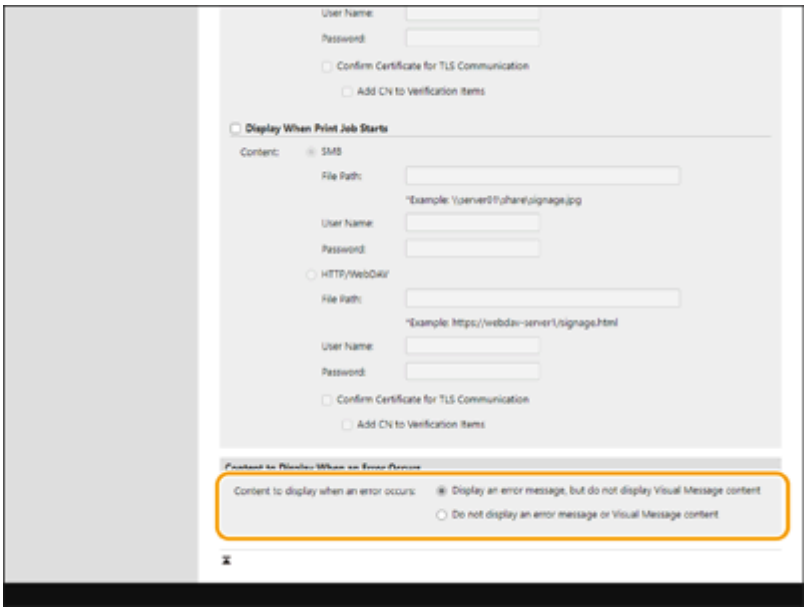
Enter the user name and password necessary for logging into the Advanced Space or file server.

[Confirm Certificate for TLS Communication]/[Add CN to Verification Items]

Set whether to verify the TLS server certificate sent when connecting and its CN (Common Name).

5 Set the screen display for errors.

- If content does not appear for some reason, select whether to display an error message screen.



6 Click [OK].

NOTE

- To display the content after the Auto Reset mode initiates, set <Auto Reset Time> to one minute or longer.
- For information on the file formats and data sizes that can be displayed, see **Management Functions(P. 1261)** .
- This setting can only be specified by a user with Administrator privileges.
- This setting can be imported/exported. The same setting can be imported to multiple devices (only Canon devices that support the Visual Message function) to display the same notice or information on multiple devices. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- [File Path:] is imported/exported with this setting. If a file in the Advanced Space is specified and displayed on the exporting machine, perform one of the following operations:
  - Manually copy the file in the Advanced Space of the exporting machine to the Advanced Space of the importing machine.

- Change [File Path:] to the path where the file exists.

- If you are going to perform login operations, perform them after closing the Visual Message screen. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**

Setting Exception Addresses Where a Proxy Server Is Not Used

Specify the proxy settings in the Visual Message function to match the settings in <Proxy Settings>. If a proxy is set, the specified content may not appear. When this occurs, set an exception address so that the proxy server is not used.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [License/Other] ▶ [Visual Message Settings] ▶ [Proxy Settings].

4 In [Address Without Using Proxy:], enter the addresses for which a proxy server will not be used.

- You can specify multiple addresses separated by a comma (,).
- You can specify up to 255 characters (ASCII code only).

5 Click [OK].

Using the Visual Message Function for Greater Convenience

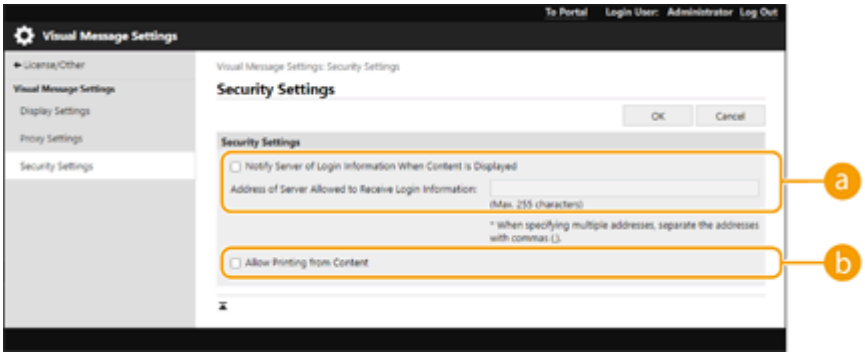
You can post login information (user name and domain name) to the server for users who display content. You can also collect that information and print out linked PDF files in the content for checking.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [License/Other] ▶ [Visual Message Settings] ▶ [Security Settings].

4 You can print the Visual Message displayed on the touch panel display or provide notifications of login information.



a [Notify Server of Login Information When Content Is Displayed]

Select this check box to post the user information (user name and domain name) to the Web server when the user displays the Visual Message, and enter the Web server password.

b [Allow Printing from Content]

Select this check box to specify the function that prints PDF content included in the HTML displayed in the Visual Message.

5 Click [OK].

LINKS

<Login Screen Display Settings>(P. 1023)
<Use User Authentication>(P. 1023)
<Auto Reset Time>(P. 820)

Setting the Website for Purchasing Consumables

ERJ8-0EU

You can set a link to the website for purchasing consumables, which is displayed when checking consumables information from the Remote UI. Setting a link to the website makes it easier for users to purchase consumables.

1 **Start the Remote UI.** Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 **Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page.** Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 **Click [Device Management] ▶ [Information for Purchasing Consumables].**

4 **Specify settings as necessary.**



a [Supplier]

Set the name of the place for purchasing consumables.

b [E-Mail Address]

Set the e-mail address of the place for purchasing consumables.

c [URL]

Set the URL of the website for purchasing consumables.

d [Display Consumables Purchase Button]

Select this to display a button for accessing the website for purchasing toner cartridges on the Remote UI.

e [Use Toner Status]

Select this when using the toner cartridge level notification tool.

f [Display Consumables Purchase Button When Using Toner Status]

Select this to display a button for accessing the website for purchasing toner cartridges on the toner cartridge level notification tool.

5 Click [OK].

NOTE

- This setting can only be specified by a user with Administrator privileges.
- This setting can only be imported from/exported to the same series machines. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- This setting is included in [Settings/Registration Basic Information] when batch exporting. **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**

Sending E-Mail Notification When an Error Occurs

ERJ8-0EW

You can notify an e-mail address specified in advance when toner needs replacing or a paper jam needs to be cleared, etc.

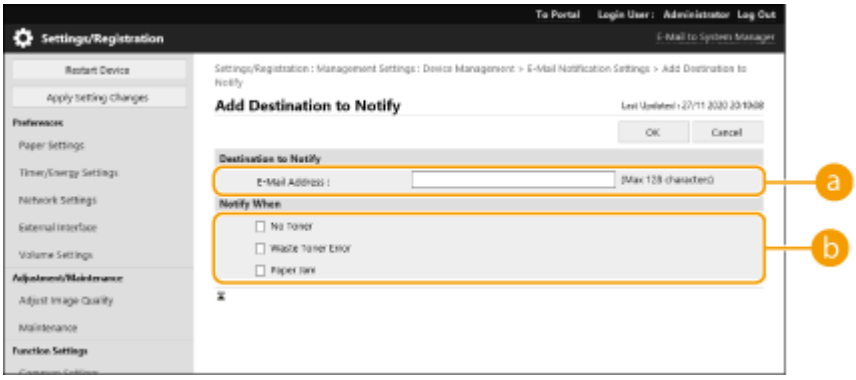
Specifying the Destination and the Information to Send

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Device Management] ▶ [E-Mail Notification Settings] ▶ [Add Destination to Notify...].

4 Specify settings as necessary.



a [Destination to Notify]

Enter the e-mail address.

b [Notify When]

Select the information to send.

NOTE:

- You can register up to five destinations.

5 Click [OK].

NOTE

- The result of sending the e-mail can be checked in [Status Monitor/Cancel] in [Job Log].
- This setting can only be specified by a user with Administrator privileges.
- This setting can only be imported from/exported to the same series machines. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

- This setting is included in [Settings/Registration Basic Information] when batch exporting. **Importing/ Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**

Remote Operation of the Control Panel

ERJ8-0EX

You can display the control panel on a computer screen via the Remote UI and operate it remotely. You can operate not only the touch panel display but also hard keys on the control panel. You can manage the machine or run jobs from a remote location.

Preparing Remote Operation(P. 762)
Operating Remotely(P. 763)

Preparing Remote Operation

Use Remote Operation to operate the control panel remotely from a computer. You can set the password for remote operation and specify which users are allowed to operate remotely.

NOTE

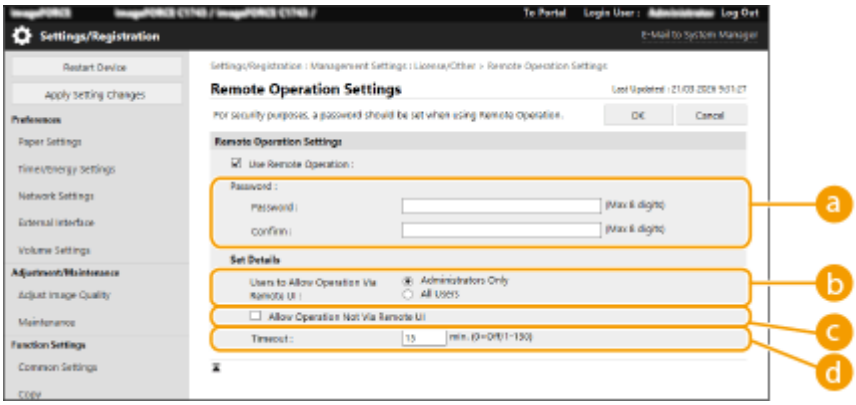
- When remote operation is enabled, the following settings are also enabled. When any of these settings are disabled, remote operation is also disabled.
  - <Remote UI Settings>
  - <Remote UI Settings> ▶ <Use TLS>
  - <Use HTTP>

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Settings/Registration] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [License/Other] ▶ [Remote Operation Settings].

4 Select the check box for [Use Remote Operation], and configure the necessary settings.



a [Password]

Set the password to access the remote operation screen.

b [Users to Allow Operation Via Remote UI]

Specify the users for whom [Remote Operation] is displayed on the Remote UI portal page.

[Allow Operation Not Via Remote UI]

Select the check box if the conventional remote operation tool is used. Deselect this if you perform remote operation from the Remote UI.

[Timeout]

Specify the duration of time before communication with the machine is disconnected when no remote operation is performed.

NOTE:

- You can register up to five destinations.

5 Click [OK].

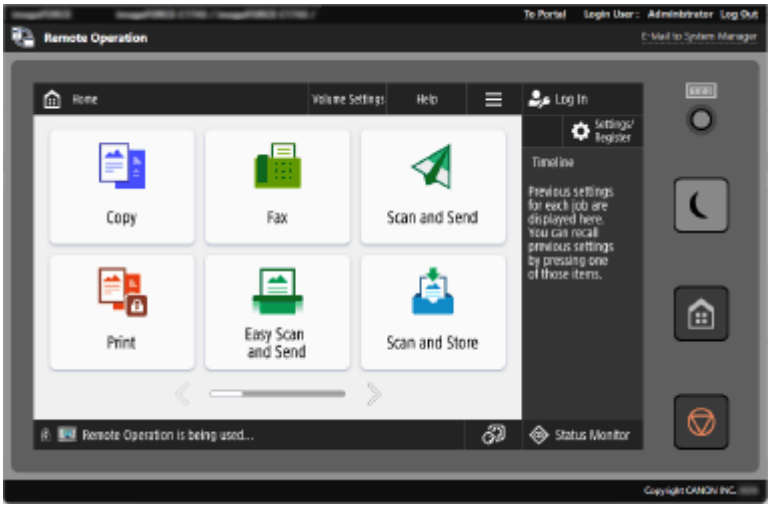
Operating Remotely

Operate the control panel remotely from the Remote UI portal page.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Remote Operation] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Perform necessary operations.



- You can operate the control panel remotely in the same way as the actual control panel.
- The display shown on the remote operation screen is synchronized with the control panel.
- "Remote Operation is being used..." is displayed on the status display.

4 When remote operation is complete, close the browser window.

- If the timeout period elapses without any remote operation, communication with the machine is disconnected.

TIPS

Remote Screen Access

- If a problem occurs with the machine, call center staff can resolve the issue through remote operation. Press <Remote Screen Access> on the <Home> screen. On the displayed screen or on the screen displayed after pressing [Counter/Device Information] key ▶ <Device Info./Other>, press <Display Access Code>, and provide the displayed six-digit code to the call center staff.

Installing System Options

ERJ8-0EY



When using system options, you may need to log in with Administrator privileges to register licenses. To register a license, you will need the number that is printed on the license access number certificate. Make sure you have it with you before you start. You can perform license registration even if the machine is not connected to the network.

1 Perform a communication test.

- Test whether you can register the license over the network.

1. Press (Settings/Register).
2. Press <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <Register/Update Software> ▶ <Software Management Settings>.
3. Press <Test Communication>.
   - The <Do you want to test communication?> message is displayed.
4. Press <Yes>.
   - The results of the communication test are displayed.
   - If <NG> is displayed, check that the LAN cable is connected and the network settings are configured properly. **Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)**
   - If you cannot connect to the network, register the license offline. **When Registration Cannot Be Performed over the Network(P. 766)**

2 Press (Settings/Register).

3 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <Register/Update Software> ▶ <Install Applications/Options>.

4 Press <License Access Number>, and enter the license access number.

5 Confirm the number, and press <Start>.

6 Select the function to install, and press <Install>.

- If the license agreement screen is displayed, check the information and press <I Agree>.

7 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

■When Registration Cannot Be Performed over the Network

If for some reason the machine is unable to connect to the network, register the license offline. First obtain a license key using a computer connected to the network, then register it by entering it into the machine. To obtain a license key, you will need the number that is printed on the license access number certificate, along with the serial number of the machine.

1 Access the license issuing website (http://www.canon.com/lms/license/) and obtain the license key.

- Follow the on-screen instructions and enter the license access number and serial number to obtain the license key.

2 Press (Settings/Register).

3 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <Register License>.

4 Enter the license key.

5 Press <Start> ▶ <OK>.

6 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.> ▶ <Yes>.

NOTE

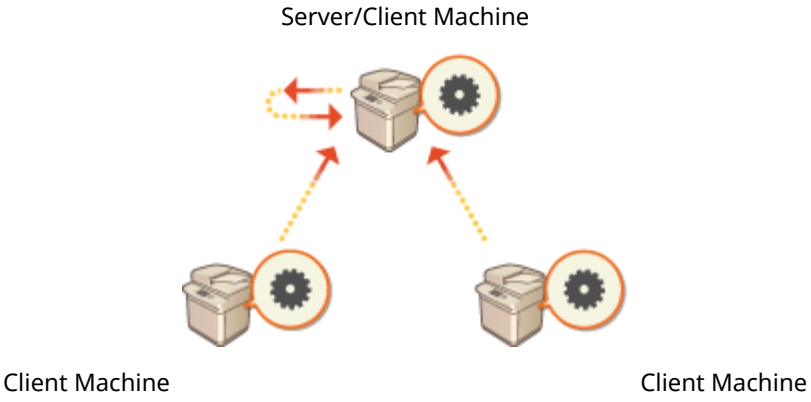
Confirming the serial number

- The serial number is displayed in the bottom left of the screen when you press the [Counter/Device Information] key. It can also be confirmed from the Remote UI portal page.

Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers

ERJ8-0F0

You can synchronize the personalized data of multiple Canon multifunction printers on a network. This enables the address book and Personal button/Shared button, etc. specified and registered on a single machine to be used on other machines that are synchronized. For information on the items subject to synchronization, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**



Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)
Switching the Machines to Synchronize(P. 773)

NOTE

- This machine does not have a server function. It operates as a client machine.
- Enable the server function on the machine with the server function, and connect this machine as a client machine.
- Up to 10 machines including the server machine can be synchronized.
- Synchronized values may not be reflected, depending on the optional products and the machine configuration.
- A server machine can either be used as a server machine that does not synchronize its own data, or as both a server and client machine (server/client machine).
- If you do not start client functions on the server machine, data specified on the server machine will not be reflected in client machines.

Procedure for Synchronizing

Specify synchronization as indicated below.

1 

Initial Check

- Are the machines to synchronize correctly connected to the network?

2 

Exporting the User Data

- It is recommended that you export the user data for backup purposes. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

3 

Specifying the Server Machine Settings

- Start synchronization on the server machine. For information on the procedure, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function.

4 

Specifying the Detailed Synchronization Settings

- Specify the detailed synchronization settings on the server machine. For information on the procedure, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function.

5 

Starting Synchronization

- Specify the connection destination on the client machines and start synchronization. **Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)**

6 

Checking Synchronization

- Check the detailed synchronization settings, registered users, and connected machines on the server machine. For information on the procedure, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function.

NOTE

- To change the scope of sharing, etc. after starting synchronization, shut down all the client machines, change the settings on the server machine, and start all the client machines again.
- Synchronization starts after the client machines are restarted.
- When a client machine starts and connects to the server machine, the user data registered in both the server machine and client machine is overwritten with the user data in the server machine, and the user data set in the client machine is deleted. To use the user data in a client machine to be connected to, delete the corresponding data from the server machine via <Delete User Data> in <Synchronize Custom Settings (Server)> before starting the client machine.
- If different data exists for the same user in multiple client machines that are started in succession, the user data in the client machine that first connected to the server is used for synchronization.

 : Data of user 1

 : Other data of user 1

 : Data of user 2

 : Data of user 3

		
User data of client machine A • The first client machine that connected to the server. • Has the data of user 1 and user 2 registered.	**User data of client machine B** • Has the other data of user 1 and the data of user 3 registered.	**User data registered in the server machine** • The data of user 1 registered in the server machine is synchronized using the data of client machine A.

- If a problem occurs in the server machine or a client machine after starting synchronization, the data with [Device-Specific (Not Shared)] set for its scope of sharing in the machine with the problem returns to its default settings and is not restored.
- To synchronize custom settings between machines, the machine authentication settings and group management settings must be the same. For information on specifying the same authentication settings, see the instructions for the login application. For group management settings, it is recommended that the settings in one machine are exported and imported into the other machines. When Department IDs are used for group management, set the same Department IDs for each machine.
- To synchronize the information regarding the network places for keychains, the order that the network places are registered must be the same in all machines.
- If a machine you are using is an older version, registered shortcuts and keychains may not be synchronized.
- While custom settings are synchronized, **<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)** for both client machines and server machines is set to <Delete Oldest User Settings> and cannot be changed.
- If synchronization of custom settings (client) is started, the data subject to synchronization (including the Address Book) becomes unable to be imported or exported. For information on importing/exporting settings data, see **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)** . For information on the data subject to synchronization of custom settings, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** .

Starting Setting Synchronization

ERJ8-0F1

Use the Remote UI to specify the settings for starting synchronization and start synchronization. Administrator privileges are required for registration.

Synchronizing Custom Settings

Specify the settings for the client machine.

NOTE

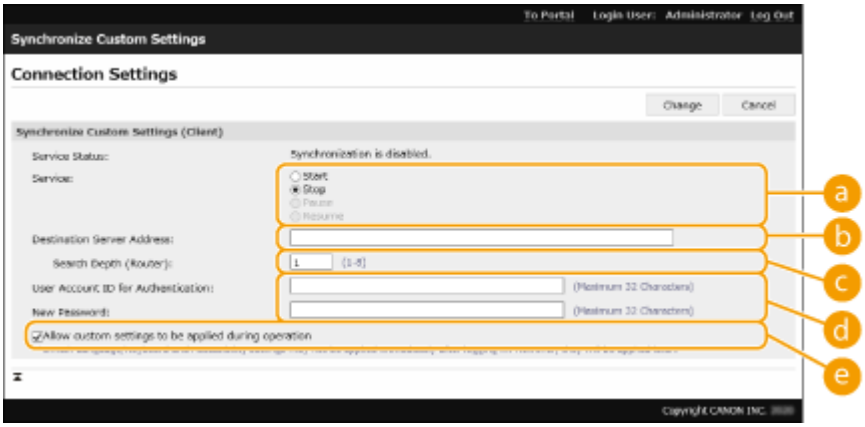
- Other settings for the server machine are required on the machine with the server function.

1 Start the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Synchronize Custom Settings] on the portal page. Remote UI Screen(P. 689)

3 Click [Change Connection Destination...].

4 Specify the required settings.



a [Service]

Select [Start].

b [Destination Server Address:]

Enter the IP address or host name of the server machine. When specifying the port number, "8443" must be specified. The port number can be omitted. If this is left blank, the server machine is automatically discovered.

- Example settings (IPv4):
  Using an IP address: 192.168.18.138
  Using a host name: v4.server.canon.com
- Example settings (IPv6):
  Using an IP address: fe80::65f0:82cb:b3d6:e6bc
  Using a host name: v6.server.canon.com
  When specifying the port number: [fe80::65f0:82cb:b3d6:e6bc]:8443

[Search Depth (Router):]

Enter the number of routers to hop (the number of routers to communicate through). If this value is too small, the server machine may not be discovered with network discovery. If you do not want to communicate through routers, specify "1".

[User Account ID for Authentication:]/[New Password:]

Enter the ID and password of a user account with Administrator privileges for the machine to use as the server machine.

[Allow custom settings to be applied during operation]

Select the check box to reflect the <Switch Language/Keyboard>, <Accessibility>, and <Personal SSID and Network Key Settings> settings when it becomes possible if they could not be reflected immediately after logging in.

NOTE

- In the following cases, synchronization can be set without performing step 4.
  - When the machines to synchronize are within the same router.
  - When <Use User Authentication> is set to <On> on the server machine (see **<Use User Authentication>(P. 1023)**) and User Authentication is set as the login service (see **Changing Login Services(P. 1245)**)
  - When nothing is entered in [User Account ID for Authentication:] on the client machines (the item is null)
  - When the service for synchronizing custom settings is started on the server machine (if the machine is a server/client machine, the setting can be changed by starting the server service and the client service at the same time)
  - When there is only one server machine for synchronizing custom settings on the same network
- The client machine cannot connect via search in the following cases. Enter the IPv4 address for the destination server address.
  - If the network settings of the server machine include both IPv4 and IPv6, IPv6 is prioritized, and IPv6 is disabled on the client device
  - If the main line is used for the network settings of the server machine and the sub line is used for the network settings of the client machine
- If the sub line is used for the network settings of the server machine, specify the following settings.
  - Server and client machine: Enter the IP address of the main line or localhost as the address of the destination server.
  - Client machine: Enter the IP address of the sub line of the server machine as the address of the destination server.

5 Click [Change].

6 Restart the machine. Turning OFF/Restarting the Machine(P. 696)

- Continue to configure the synchronization settings on the machine with the server function.

NOTE

Checking the Communication Log for Synchronization

- You can check the communication log from the screen for synchronizing custom settings. The log can also be downloaded as a file.

- "Warning" is recorded as the level when the server machine cannot communicate temporarily.
- "Error" is recorded as the level when the maximum amount of data that can be registered has been exceeded or authentication with the server machine fails.

Simple Synchronization Settings

- Synchronization of custom settings can be started from the control panel for Canon multifunction printers within the same router.
  - For a client machine:
    Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ set <Synchronize Custom Settings (Client)> to <Enable>.
- User Authentication must be enabled as the authentication method.

Note When Canceling Synchronization

- When a client machine cancels synchronization of custom settings, the client machine will become unable to retrieve the settings for each user registered in the server machine. Therefore note that the personalized data of a machine that was a client machine may not have the latest data after synchronization of custom settings has been canceled.

Switching the Machines to Synchronize

ERJ8-0F2

This section describes the procedure for switching the machines to synchronize after starting synchronization of custom settings.

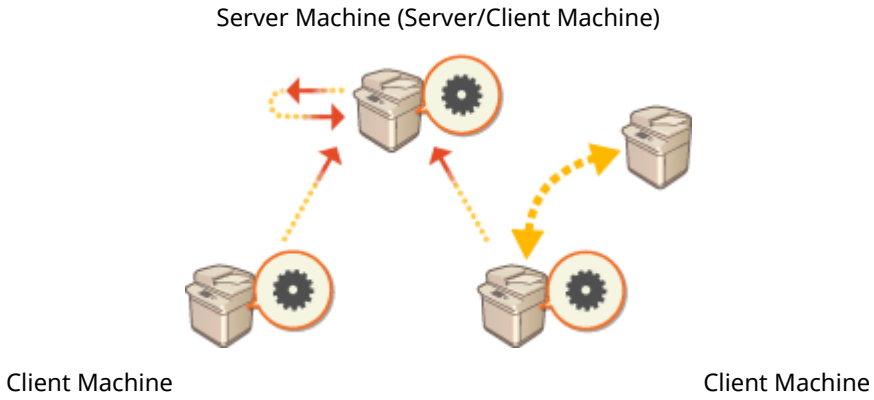
NOTE

- For information on changing the server machine, see the instruction manuals of the machine with the server function.

Changing a Client Machine(P. 773)

Changing a Client Machine

Follow this procedure to change a client machine to a new machine.



1 Stop synchronization from [Synchronize Custom Settings] in the Remote UI of the target client machine. Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)

NOTE:

- If the client machine cannot be operated, delete the target client machine in [Synchronize Custom Settings (Server)] ▶ [Confirm Device Information] in the Remote UI of the server machine (server/client machine).

2 Configuring Synchronization on a New Client Machine. Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)

NOTE:

- If synchronization was not correctly stopped on a client machine or if the client machine was not deleted in [Synchronize Custom Settings (Server)] ▶ [Confirm Device Information] in the Remote UI of the server machine (server/client machine), that client machine will be counted as still in use.

Managing Data in the Storage

ERJ8-0F3



The Storage of the machine contains data such as Address Book information, undeleted job data, and password information. By encrypting this data, you can prevent the information from being accessed without authorization.
The TPM setting can also be used to encrypt the password information and certificate information managed in the memory.

Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)
Using TPM(P. 777)

IMPORTANT

- Encrypting the data in the Storage does not guarantee that the data is protected from all unauthorized acts. Take sufficient care when managing data.

NOTE

- The machine generates 128-bit encryption keys and uses the AES-XTS algorithm for encryption.

Initializing All Data/Settings

ERJ8-0F4



You can restore all of the machine settings to the factory default setting. All of the data that remains in the storage is overwritten with 0 (null) data, which prevents the leakage of sensitive data when replacing or disposing of the memory or storage and when disposing of or reusing the machine. Administrator privileges are required in order to perform initialization.

IMPORTANT

- Before initializing, make sure that there are no documents being processed or waiting to be processed. These documents will be deleted when initialization is performed.
- Do not turn OFF the machine during initialization. Doing so may lead to defects in the memory of the machine.
- Initialization may take 30 minutes or more to complete. The machine cannot be used during the initialization process.

NOTE

Before performing initialization

Back up your important data or export it as a file.

- Machine setting information **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**
- User authentication information registered in the local device for personal authentication management **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

When using a password to protect the security policy settings

- You need to enter the password to initialize the machine settings. **Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings(P. 581)**

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <Initialize All Data/Settings>.

3 Press <Yes>.

➥ Initialization is performed. After the process is complete, the machine restarts and the Initialize All Data/Settings Report is printed.

- When the <A security policy is applied to this device. To perform the operation, enter the security administrator password.> message is displayed, a password must be entered by the security administrator. For more information, contact your security administrator. **Applying a Security Policy to the Machine(P. 580)**

NOTE

- Although the job log information can be deleted by initializing all data/settings, the result of printing the Initialize All Data/Settings Report is recorded in the print log. **Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)**

TIPS

- It is also possible to individually select some machine settings and restore their factory default values. **Settings/Registration(P. 801)**

Using TPM

ERJ8-0SF

If the TPM setting is activated and backed up on to the USB memory, you can safely store in the TPM chip the encryption key (TPM key) that encrypts confidential information such as the password, public key pair for SSL communication, and user certificate that are stored in the machine. Doing so, you can prevent important information for the machine from leaking. Also, you can recover the system if the TPM chip fails by restoring the TPM key.

Setting TPM(P. 777)
Backing Up the TPM Key(P. 778)
Restoring the TPM Key(P. 779)

IMPORTANT

- Before activating the TPM setting, an administrator must confirm that the Administrator password has been changed from its default setting. If the password has not been changed from its default setting, third parties other than an administrator can make backups, which may result in the TPM backup key from being taken away. Since the TPM key can only be backed up once, this will make the TPM key unable to be restored.
- Backup the TPM key immediately on to the USB memory after the TPM setting is activated.
- For security reasons, you can only backup the TPM key once. Manage the password set during the backup so that it is not forgotten.
- The security provided by TPM does not guarantee complete protection of the data and hardware. Note that Canon will not be liable for any failure or damages resulting from the use of this mode.
- You cannot access the machine while backing up or restoring data in the USB memory.
- Do not remove the USB memory while backing up or restoring data. Doing so may cause damage to the USB memory, USB port, or the data inside of the USB memory. Also if the USB memory is removed when restoring, the machine may be damaged.
- To use USB memory, press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings> ▶ set <Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device> to <Off>.

Setting TPM

This section explains how to activate the TPM setting.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <TPM Settings>.

3 Press <Yes>.

- Setting changes are reflected after the machine restarts.

NOTE

- If the TPM setting is activated, it may take longer to start the machine.

Backing Up the TPM Key

If the TPM setting is activated and the TPM chip fails, you cannot recover the confidential information since each type of confidential information is uniquely encrypted with the TPM key. Thus, immediately backup when the TPM setting is activated.
For backing up, use the commercially available USB memory.

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <TPM Settings>.**

3 **Press <Back Up TPM Key>.**

4 **Press <Password>.**

5 **Enter the password ▶ press <OK>.**

6 **Enter the password again on the confirmation screen ▶ press <OK> ▶ <OK>.**

7 **Connect the USB memory to the machine ▶ press <OK>.**

- If the error screen appears, follow the instructions on the screen and backup again.

IMPORTANT

- Before backing up, make sure that writing is allowed for the memory media connected to the machine.
- You cannot back up the TPM key for the following cases:
  - The password is incorrect
  - USB memory is not connected
  - Multiple USB storage devices are connected
  - Not enough free space in the connected USB memory
  - TPM key does not exist on the machine
- Use USB memory that meets the following conditions:
  - Not set to read-only
  - Not partitioned
  - Less than 60 GB capacity
  - Not encrypted
- For the backup of the TPM key, it is recommended that you use a USB memory with free space of 10 MB or more.
- Do not connect any other memory media.

- The data on the machine is backed up on the USB memory after it has been encrypted. You cannot manage or browse the backed up data on the computer.
- For information on the USB memory that can be used with the machine and how to use it, see **Connecting a USB Memory Device(P. 22)** .

Restoring the TPM Key

If the TPM chip fails, you can use the previously backed up data of the TPM key to restore the TPM key on to the new TPM chip. For information on TPM chip failure, contact your dealer or service representative.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <TPM Settings>.

3 Press <Restore TPM Key>.

4 Press <Password>.

5 Enter the password you specified when backing up ▶ press <OK> ▶ <OK>.

6 Connect the USB memory to the machine ▶ press <OK>.

- If an error screen is displayed, follow the instructions on the screen to perform the restoration process again.

IMPORTANT

- Before restoring, make sure that the memory media you used for backing up is connected to the machine.
- Do not connect any other memory media.

7 Press <OK> to restart the system.

IMPORTANT

- Restoring of the TPM key recovers access to the storage device/SRAM that became inaccessible due to TPM chip failure, and does not recover the content of the memory itself.
- If initialization is performed following the steps for " **Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)** ," all of the data encrypted by the TPM key is completely erased and the TPM setting becomes inactive.
- You cannot restore the TPM key for the following cases:
  - USB memory is not connected
  - Multiple USB storage devices are connected
  - A TPM key does not exist on the USB memory
  - The TPM key on the USB memory is not correct

- The password set during the backup was not entered

Checking the Number of Pages for Copy/Print/Fax/Scan

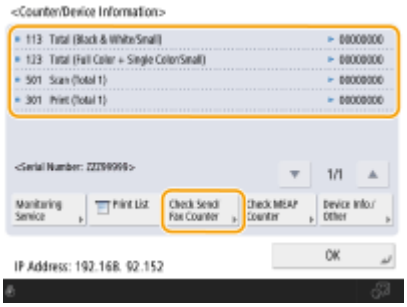
ERJ8-0F5

On the touch panel display, you can check the total number of pages for copying, faxing, scanning, and printing.

1 Press the [Counter/Device Information] key.

Control Panel(P. 30)

2 Check the total number of copied, scanned, and printed pages.



- If you want to check the total number of pages that were scanned and sent, press <Check Send/Fax Counter>.

NOTE

- You can print a list that shows the number of pages used for copying, printing, scanning, and faxing.
  Printing a Report on the Number of Copied and Printed Pages(P. 782)
- You can also check the counter information for each MEAP. Press <Check MEAP Counter> on the screen in step 2. If you press <Device Info./Other> ▶ <Check Device Configuration> on the same screen, you can check the options installed in the machine.
- For information on the count conditions, contact your dealer or service representative.
- For information on <Monitoring Service>, contact your dealer or service representative.

Printing Reports and Lists

ERJ8-0F6

You can print reports and lists to check information such as the total number of copied pages, communication results, and machine settings.

Printing a Report on the Number of Copied and Printed Pages(P. 782)
Printing a List of Usage History(P. 783)
Outputting a Communication Result Report(P. 785)
Printing a List of Settings(P. 789)
Printing Reports on the Usage Status of the Consumables(P. 792)

Printing a Report on the Number of Copied and Printed Pages

Counter Report

You can print a report to check the total number of all copied and printed pages, as well as the total number of scanned pages and faxed pages.

[Counter/Device Information] key ▶ <Print List> ▶ <Yes>

Page Count List

You can print a list to check the total number of pages* that were copied, printed, and scanned for each Department ID. To print this list, you need to log in with administrator privileges. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ <On> ▶ <Page Totals> ▶ <Print List> ▶ Select the items to print ▶ <Start Printing>

NOTE

- Department ID Management must be set in order to calculate the Page Count List for each Department ID. **Setting the Department ID Management(P. 630)**
- With the Remote UI Page Count List, you can check how many pages have been printed or scanned by individual user names linked to a Department ID. To display the list, **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)** ▶ click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [User Management] ▶ [Department ID Management]. However, note that user names will not be displayed if multiple users are allocated to the same Department ID, or if you are using DepartmentID Authentication as the login service.
- The Page Count List can also be saved as a CSV file using the Remote UI. **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)** ▶ click [Settings/Registration] ▶ [User Management] ▶ [Department ID Management] ▶ [Store in CSV Format...].

* In this report, the numbers are based on copied or printed sides of the page. For example, the count is 1 if you print on one side of a page, and the count is 2 if you print on both sides of the page.

Printing a List of Usage History

When you press (Status Monitor), the Status Monitor screen is displayed, allowing you to check the usage history for each function, such as copying, printing, sending e-mail, sending/receiving faxes/I-faxes, etc. From this screen, you can also print the usage history for each function.

NOTE

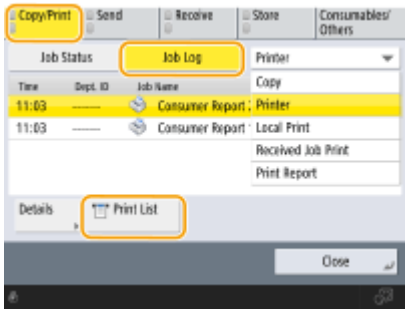
- If "NG" appears in the "RESULT" column in the printed list, check the three-digit number preceded by "#" to find the reason and solutions.
  Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)
- If (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> is set to <On>, jobs other than those of the logged-in user are displayed as "***" and cannot be operated. If you log in with administrator privileges, the jobs of all users are displayed.

1 Press (Status Monitor).

2 Display the usage history of each function and print a list.

■ Copy/print log

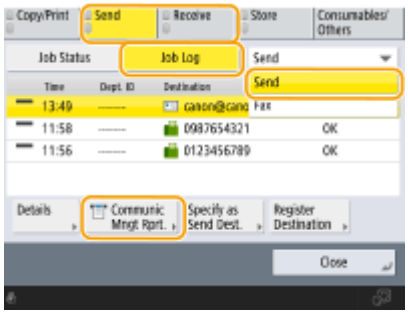
1. Press <Copy/Print> ▶ <Job Log>.
2. Select the items you want to print, and press <Print List>.



3. Press <Yes>.

■ Sending/receiving log

1. Press <Send> or <Receive> ▶ <Job Log>.
2. Select <Send> or <Receive> from the list, and press <Communic Mngt Rprt.>.



3 Press <Start Printing>.

NOTE

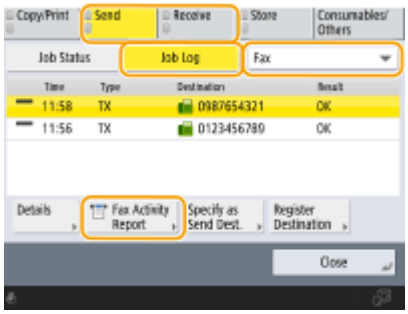
- For documents sent by e-mail, the list indicates the sending results between the machine and the mail server, not between the machine and the destination.
- If you select <Output Specif'd No. of Transm.> in step 3, you can specify the number of log results that appear in the list.
- You can specify whether or not to print the list automatically.

Communication Management Report(P. 785)

■ Fax sending/receiving log

1 Press <Send> or <Receive> ▶ <Job Log>.

2 Select <Fax> from the list, and press <Fax Activity Report>.



3 Press <Start Printing>.

NOTE

- If you select <Output Specif'd No. of Transm.> in step 3, you can specify the number of log results that appear in the list.
- You can specify whether or not to print the list automatically.

Fax Activity Report(P. 787)

■Storage log

1 Press <Store> ▶ <Job Log> ▶ <Print List>.

2 Press <Yes>.

NOTE

- There are two types of store locations printed as the protocol. If one of the following conditions is met, the corresponding store location is printed.
  - Memory Media: If the data is stored in a removable media such as USB memory from <Scan and Store>
  - Network: If the data is stored in the Windows server from <Scan and Store>

Outputting a Communication Result Report

You can print a list of results for sending/receiving fax, e-mail, or I-fax, and results for storing items in the file server. A report is set to be printed automatically or printed only when an error occurs. However, you can change the setting to print only at a specified time or not to print at all. In addition, you can send the report to a specified destination as a CSV file.

NOTE

- If "NG" appears in the "RESULT" column in the printed list, check the three-digit number preceded by "#"to find the reason and solutions.

  Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)
- If (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs> is set to <On>, jobs other than those of the logged-in user are displayed as "***" and cannot be operated. If you log in with administrator privileges, the jobs of all users are displayed.

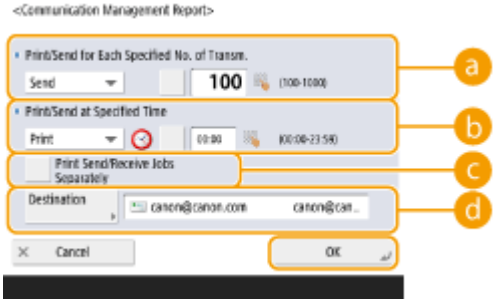
Communication Management Report

You can configure the machine to automatically print the report or send it as a CSV file to destinations registered in the Address Book when the specified number of communication results, including sent or received faxes, e-mails, and I-faxes, as well as items saved in the file server, is reached. You can also configure the machine to print the report or send it as a CSV file at a specified time.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Communication Management Report>.

3 Configure the necessary settings, and press <OK>.



a <Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.>

Select this to print/send a report when the specified number of communication results is reached. Set the number of communication results using the numeric keys.

<Print/Send at Specified Time>

Select this to print/send a report at the specified time. Set the time using the numeric keys.

<Print Send/Receive Jobs Separately>

Select this to output separate reports for send jobs and receive jobs.

<Destination>

Specify the destination.

NOTE:

- Press <Destination> ▶ <To Remote Address Book> to specify the destination to the destinations registered in a remote address book.

  Local Address Book and Remote Address Book(P. 267)

IMPORTANT

- You cannot configure the settings for the Communication Management Report while <Display Job Log> in <Management Settings> is set to <Off>. In addition, if you change <Display Job Log> in <Management Settings> from <Off> to <On>, <Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.> and <Print/Send at Specified Time> in the Communication Management Report automatically changes to <Off>. **<Display Job Log>(P. 1033)**

NOTE

- For documents sent by e-mail, the report indicates the sending results between the machine and the mail server, not between the machine and the destination.
- You can manually print a Communication Management Report from a list in the usage history.

  Sending/receiving log(P. 783)

When setting to print a report at a specified time

- If a report is set to print at a specified time, the 100 most recent results are printed, with the most recent results first. If the number of results exceeds 100, the older results are not printed.

When setting the machine to send the report as a CSV file at a specified time

- The 2,000 most recent results are exported to a CSV file, which is sent at the specified time. If the number of results exceeds 2,000 by the specified time for file sending, the older results are not exported.

TX Result Report

You can configure the machine to automatically print the report for sending results, including sent faxes, e-mails, and I-faxes, as well as items saved in the file server. You can also configure the setting to print the report only when an error occurs. You are required to log in with administrator privileges to print this report.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <TX Result Report> ▶ Set the report ▶ <OK>

NOTE

- Even if you set <Report with TX Image> to <On>, the sent document is not displayed in the report in the following situations.
  - When an encrypted PDF is sent
- If <Fax TX Result Report>is set to <For Error Only> or <On>, a Fax TX Report is printed with the TX Report.
- For documents sent by e-mail, the report indicates the sending results between the machine and the mail server, not between the machine and the destination.
- Send jobs originating from the fax driver are omitted from this report.
- If unnecessary streaks or shadows appear around the sent document, use <Erase Original Frame>. **Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame)(P. 481)**
- The TX Report includes the results of forwarding in addition to the results of sending.

Fax Activity Report

You can configure the machine to automatically print a report on fax sending and receiving or send it as a CSV file to destinations registered in the Address Book when the specified number of sent or received faxes is reached. You can also configure the machine to print the report or send it as a CSV file at a specified time.

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Fax Activity Report>.

3 Configure the necessary settings, and press <OK>.



a <Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.>

Select this to print/send a report when the specified number of communication results is reached. Set the number of communication results using the numeric keys.

b <Print/Send at Specified Time>

Select this to print/send a report at the specified time. Set the time using the numeric keys.

c <Print Send/Receive Jobs Separately>

Select this to output separate reports for send jobs and receive jobs.

d <Destination>

Specify the destination.

NOTE:

- Press <Destination> ▶ <To Remote Address Book> to specify the destination to the destinations registered in a remote address book.

  Local Address Book and Remote Address Book(P. 267)

IMPORTANT

- You cannot configure the settings for the Fax Activity Report while <Display Job Log> in <Management Settings> is set to <Off>. In addition, if you change <Display Job Log> in <Management Settings> from <Off> to <On>, <Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.> and <Print/Send at Specified Time> in the Fax Activity Report automatically changes to <Off>. **<Display Job Log>(P. 1033)**

NOTE

- You can manually print a Fax Activity Report from a list in the usage history. **Fax sending/receiving log(P. 784)**
- The name of the remote party registered in the Address Book is printed when sending to a destination selected from the Address Book. If sending by entering a number with the numeric keys, the Transmitting Subscriber Identification (TSI) is printed if it could be acquired from the recipient.

When setting to print a report at a specified time

- If a report is set to print at a specified time, the 40 most recent results are printed, with the most recent results first. If the number of results exceeds 40, the older results are not printed.

When setting the machine to send the report as a CSV file at a specified time

- The 2,000 most recent results are exported to a CSV file, which is sent at the specified time. If the number of results exceeds 2,000 by the specified time for file sending, the older results are not exported.

Fax TX Result Report

You can configure the machine to automatically print the report each time a fax is sent. You can also configure the setting to print the report only when an error occurs.

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Fax TX Result Report> ▶ Set the report ▶ <OK>

NOTE

- A Fax Multi TX Report is printed when <Fax TX Result Report> is set to <On> and broadcast transmission is performed.
- Even if you set <Report with TX Image> to <On> in the report settings, the image of the sent original does not appear in a report when a fax is directly sent to the destination using direct sending (**Checking the Connection to the Recipient Before Sending (Direct Send)(P. 368)**) or manual sending (**Sending Faxes Manually (Manual Sending)(P. 370)**).
- If unnecessary streaks or shadows appear around the sent document, use <Erase Original Frame>. **Erasing Dark Borders When Scanning (Erase Frame)(P. 481)**
- If <TX Result Report> is set to <For Error Only> or <On>, a TX Result Report is printed with the Fax TX Result Report.

Fax RX Result Report

You can set a Fax RX Result Report to print automatically every time a fax is received. It is also possible to set the report to print only when an error occurs.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Fax RX Result Report> ▶ Set the report ▶ <OK>

Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report

You can configure the machine to automatically print the report when a received fax is saved in the Confidential Fax Inbox. You can also configure the setting so that the report is not printed.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report> ▶ Set the report ▶ <OK>

NOTE

- Even though <Off> is set in this setting, if **Fax RX Result Report(P. 789)** is enabled, a report is printed when a fax is saved in the Confidential Fax Inbox.

Printer Report

You can print a report of printer functions, such as the font list and status.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer> ▶ <Output Report> ▶ Select the printer function ▶ Follow the on-screen instructions to select the item to be printed

Printing a List of Settings

Information and settings registered in the machine such as registered destinations, send/receive settings, fax settings, forwarding conditions, etc. can be printed as a list.

Address Lists

You can print a list of destinations registered in the Address Book or in one-touch buttons.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Address Lists> ▶ Select the address book or one-touch buttons to print ▶ <Print List> ▶ <Yes>

TX/RX User Data List

You can print a list of the settings configured for <Send> and <Receive/Forward> under Settings/Registration.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> or <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Output Report> ▶ <TX/RX User Data List> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- Items that have been changed from their default settings are printed with an asterisk (*) next to them.

Fax User Data List

You can print a list of the settings configured for fax function by using <Send> and <Receive/Forward> under Settings/Registration.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> or <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Output Report> ▶ <Fax User Data List> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- Items that have been changed from their default settings are printed with an asterisk (*) next to them.

Forwarding Settings

You can print a list of the settings configured for fax and I-fax forwarding by using <Receive/Forward> under Settings/Registration. You are required to log in with administrator privileges to print this list.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Forwarding Settings> ▶ <Other Operations> ▶ <Print List> ▶ <Yes>

Network Setting List

You can print a list of the settings configured for <Network> in <Preferences> under Settings/Registration.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Output Report> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- Items that have been changed from their default settings are printed with an asterisk (*) next to them.
- The following items are automatically generated from unique information of the machine by default and when the settings are initialized, and have an asterisk (*) next to them.
  - IPv4 Host Name
  - IPv6 Host Name
  - mDNS Name (mDNS Settings)
  - Current Transmission Speed (Ethernet Driver Settings)

System Information list

You can print a report containing information on the applications and some of the system applications installed in the machine. You are required to log in with administrator privileges to print this list.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings> ▶ <Print System Information> ▶ <Yes>

LDAP Server Registration List

You can print a list of LDAP server settings registered in the machine. You are required to log in with administrator privileges to print this list.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Register LDAP Server> ▶ <Print List> ▶ <Yes>

IPSec Policy List

You can print a list of IPSec policy settings registered in the machine. You are required to log in with administrator privileges to print this list.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPSec Settings> ▶ <Print List> ▶ <Yes>

NOTE

- Lists can be printed only if A4 or LTR (plain, recycled, thin, or color) is loaded in a paper source whose settings in <Other> in <Paper Source Auto Selection> in <Function Settings> (Settings/Register) are set to <On>.

  Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function (P. 68)

Printing Reports on the Usage Status of the Consumables

You can print reports on the status of the Consumables and the usage status of toner cartridges.

Consumables Status Report

You can check reports on the status of the consumables in the machine.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Output Consumables Report> ▶ <Consumables Status Report> ▶ <Yes>

Consumable Status and Log Report

You can check reports on the information of the consumables in use and their replacement log.



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Output Consumables Report> ▶ <Consumables Status and Log Report> ▶ <Yes>

Checking the Options and Functions Installed in the Machine

ERJ8-0F7

You can check the optional equipment and functions installed on this machine.

1 **Press the [Counter/Device Information] key.**

Control Panel(P. 30)

2 **Press <Device Info./Other> ▶ <Check Device Configuration>.**

3 **Check the optional equipment and functions.**



NOTE:

- Some of the functions shown are provided as standard.
- You can also check the TPM version.

4 **Press <OK>.**

Paper Type Management Settings

ERJ8-0F8

You can register and edit detailed information of frequently used paper types as the <Custom Type>.

To register a new paper type, first duplicate the paper type that resembles the new type in order to copy all of the internal operational parameters. This procedure copies the suitable settings to the new paper type from the registered custom paper easily.

You can also improve printing quality and paper feeding trouble by editing the custom paper, depending on the characteristics.

NOTE

- It is necessary to log in as an administrator to register custom paper types or change the settings of registered custom paper types. **Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**
- When you register the custom paper type, you cannot specify the paper source. For more information on registering the paper source, see **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)** .
- You can import/export the registered custom paper type information, and share it with another Canon machine. **Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually(P. 736)**

Registering frequently used paper types(P. 794)
Items that can be specified(P. 795)

Registering frequently used paper types

1 Press (Settings/Register).

2 Press <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings> ▶ <Paper Type Management Settings>.

3 Specify the settings.



a Paper type drop-down list

Enables you to select the paper type to display.

b Sort List By

Enables you to change the display order of the list.

<Details/Edit>

Displays details for the selected paper type on the <Details/Edit> screen. If you select a custom paper type, you can edit it.

<Duplicate>

Duplicates the selected paper type as a custom paper type.

<Delete>

Deletes the selected custom paper type.

<Change>

Appears on the <Details/Edit> screen for the custom paper type and enables you to change the settings for the selected item.

IMPORTANT:

- You can only edit/delete custom paper types.

4 Press <OK> .

Items that can be specified

The following items can be specified.

■ Name

You can change the name of the custom paper type.

NOTE

- When you register the settings for the custom paper type, make sure to change its name. You cannot change the settings of the default paper types registered in the machine.

■ Basis Weight

You can change the basis weight of the custom paper type.

IMPORTANT

- If you enter a value that is different from the actual weight of the set paper, paper jams may occur, and the quality of the image may be adversely affected.

■ Finish

You can change the Finish setting of Custom Type you have registered.

IMPORTANT

- If you select a finishing type which is different from that of the loaded paper, paper jams may occur, and the quality of the image may be adversely affected.

■ Type

You can change the Type setting of Custom Type you have registered.

IMPORTANT

- If you select a paper type which is different from that of the loaded paper, paper jams may occur, and the quality of the image may be adversely affected.

■ Color

You can change the color of the custom paper type.

IMPORTANT

- If you select a color which is different from that of the loaded paper, paper jams may occur, and the quality of the image may be adversely affected.

■ Use as Template Paper

You can set this mode to <On> to use preprinted paper (paper which has logos already printed on it), such as a letterhead.

IMPORTANT

- The custom paper type with <On> set for <Use as Template Paper> is not automatically selected in the following cases.
  - When the paper type for printing is set to <Auto>
  - If <Paper Source Auto Selection> is set to <On> when copying

NOTE

- Methods for loading paper if <Use as Template Paper> is set to <On>:
  - Paper drawer of the main unit: the side with a logo facing down
  - Paper source other than a paper drawer of the main unit: the side with a logo facing up

■ <Humid Environment Mode>

Print problems may occur due to humidity in the environment of the machine. This setting may improve this problem.

NOTE

- Set this in the following cases. The print results may be improved.
  - <High Humidity>: Set this if the print density is light or irregular when using the machine in a high humidity environment.
  - <Low Humidity 1>: Set this if images and text are blurred when using the machine in a low humidity environment.
  - <Low Humidity 2>: Set this if images show toner scattering or shaded parts of the image have white patches (areas left white) when using the machine in a low humidity environment.
- Set <Standard> to not use either setting.

■ <Adj. Paper Sep. in Fixing Area>

If thin paper is used in an environment with high temperature or high humidity, the paper may jam in the fixing assembly. This setting may improve this problem.

■ <Correct Fill Area Void>

If you print using the registered custom paper type and the shaded areas of images/texts has white patches, it may be corrected by turning this setting to <On>.

Settings/Registration

Settings/Registration 801
<Preferences> 804
<Paper Settings> 806
<Display Settings> 809
<Timer/Energy Settings> 818
<Network> 825
<TCP/IP Settings> 835
<IPv4 Settings> 849
<IPv6 Settings> 851
<DNS Settings> 854
<Firewall Settings> 857
<IPv4 Address Filter> 858
<IPv6 Address Filter> 860
<MAC Address Filter> 862
<Wireless LAN> 863
<Direct Connection Settings> 865
<Sub Line Settings> 869
<Firewall Settings> 872
<Settings for System Data Communication> 875
<External Interface> 877
<Accessibility> 879
<Adjustment/Maintenance> 881
<Adjust Image Quality> 882
<Special Processing> 886
<Adjust Action> 891
<Maintenance> 892
<Check Maintenance Method> 894
<Initialize After Replacing Parts> 897
<Output Consumables Report> 898
<Function Settings> 899
<Common> 901
<Paper Feed Settings> 903
<Paper Output Settings> 905
<Print Settings> 906
<Default Settings for Output Report> 910
<Scan Settings> 911

<Generate File> 915
<Set Authentication Method> 919
<Copy> 921
<Printer> 924
Output Report 928
Custom Settings 929
UFR II 932
PCL 933
PS 935
Imaging 937
PDF 938
XPS 940
Utility 941
<Send> 942
<Output Report> 943
<Common Settings> 944
<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> 956
<Fax Settings> 966
<Set Line> 975
<Remote Fax Settings> 977
<Receive/Forward> 978
<Output Report> 979
<Common Settings> 980
<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox> 984
<Fax Settings> 989
<Store/Access Files> 994
<Common Settings> 995
<Scan and Store Settings> 996
<Access Stored Files Settings> 998
<Network Settings> 1000
<Memory Media Settings> 1002
<Print> 1003
<Set Destination> 1008
<Acquire Remote Address Book> 1015
<Make Remote Address Book Open> 1017
<Management Settings> 1018
<User Management> 1019
<Authentication Management> 1022
<Keyboard Authentication> 1026
<Device Management> 1029
<Manage Personal Settings> 1037
<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status> 1039
<License/Other> 1040
<MEAP Settings> 1045
<Data Management> 1048
<Import/Export> 1050

<Security Settings> 1052
<Authentication/Password Settings> 1055
<Authentication Function Settings> 1056
<Password Settings> 1058
<Encryption Settings> 1063
Volume Settings (Volume Settings) 1065

Settings/Registration

ERJ8-0F9

You can customize the machine based on your environment and needs by configuring settings described in this chapter. To start configuration, press (Settings/Register).

This section describes what each item in the Settings/Registration menu can configure. Note that the items available differ depending on the user privileges at login and the devices being used.

<Preferences>(P. 804)
<Adjustment/Maintenance>(P. 881)
<Function Settings>(P. 899)
<Set Destination>(P. 1008)
<Management Settings>(P. 1018)
Volume Settings (Volume Settings)(P. 1065)

NOTE

- The sound settings (Adjust Volume) appear when you press <Volume Settings>.
- Some of the settings may not be displayed depending on the configuration of optional equipment installed on the machine.
- Some changes may not be reflected immediately, depending on the settings. In this case, it is necessary to perform one of the following.
  - Press <Yes> on the screen confirming whether you want to make changes.
  - Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Apply Set. Chng.>.
  - Restart the machine.
- The items that administrators can set differ from those available to general users. The items that can be set also differ depending on the function limitations applied by users with administrator privileges.

■ Lists of Settings

Setting items and values are written under Setting Description. The factory defaults are written in **bold red characters**.

"DeviceAdmin" and "NetworkAdmin"

The "DeviceAdmin" and "NetworkAdmin" items are written for each item in the Settings/Registration table. If the administrator role is specified for the machine, users with Administrator privileges can change all of the settings, while general users are restricted and can change only some of the settings. Meanwhile, users with DeviceAdmin or NetworkAdmin privileges can change certain settings even while those settings are restricted. For those settings, "Yes" or "No" indicates whether the settings can be changed with DeviceAdmin and NetworkAdmin privileges.

"Can be set in Remote UI"

The "Can be set in Remote UI" item is written for each item in the Settings/Registration table. "Yes" or "No" indicates if the settings can/cannot be set in the Remote UI.

Import All Function

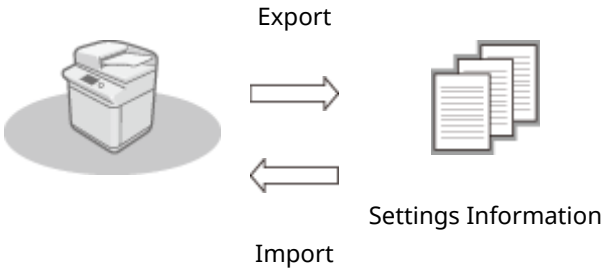
The "Import All Function" item is written in the Settings/Registration table. Depending on whether a setting item can be batch imported, "A", "B", "C", or "No" is written.

- **Meanings of A, B, and C**

Case A

Importing all to your machine

Restoring the settings information to your machine for backups.



Case B

Importing all to the same model machine

Applies to machines of the same series as this machine.



Case C

Importing all to the different model machine

Applies to models that support batch importing.



Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI

This section indicates which Settings/Registration items correspond with which items of the batch export function of the Remote UI. "-" is indicated for items that are not imported/exported. **Importing/Exporting All Settings(P. 732)**

- **Items Available for Batch Export from Remote UI**
  - Settings/Registration Basic Information
  - Paper Type Management Settings
  - Settings for Printer Settings

- Download Profile for Printer Settings
- Forwarding Settings
- Box Settings
- Department ID Management Settings
- Key Settings
- Certificate/Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings
- Visual Message Settings
- Home Settings
- Favorite Settings
- Address Book
- User Group Address List
- Authentication User Management
- Security Policy Settings
- Personal Setting Information*
- MEAP Application Setting Information

* For information on the settings that are included in [Personal Setting Information], see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** . Select an item in "Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI" listed on the Settings/Registration table when exporting the value (which you set from <Device Settings>) from the Remote UI. **<Personal Settings> and <Device Settings>(P. 803)**

■ <Personal Settings> and <Device Settings>

When User Authentication (**Managing Users(P. 591)**) is enabled, <Personal Settings> and <Device Settings> are displayed on the screen after you log in with Administrator privileges by pressing (Settings/Register). If you select <Personal Settings> and change the items that can be personalized, settings are registered as the personal settings for the user who is logged into the machine (**List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)**). If you select <Device Settings>, settings are registered as the settings of the machine. If you log in as a user without Administrator privileges, just like when selecting <Personal Settings>, if you change settings that can be personalized, settings are registered as personal settings without being registered as device settings.



<Preferences>

ERJ8-0FA

Specify the settings for the machine's operating environment.

<Paper Settings>(P. 804)
<Display Settings>(P. 804)
<Timer/Energy Settings>(P. 804)
<Network>(P. 804)
<External Interface>(P. 804)
<Accessibility>(P. 805)

<Paper Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the settings for the paper used.

<Paper Settings>(P. 806)

<Display Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the settings for the touch panel display.

<Display Settings>(P. 809)

<Timer/Energy Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the settings for the time, power consumption, etc.

<Timer/Energy Settings>(P. 818)

<Network>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the network settings.

<Network>(P. 825)

<External Interface>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the settings for external interfaces.

<External Interface>(P. 877)

<Accessibility>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences>

Specify the settings for the accessibility functions for people who have difficulty seeing the display or entering data.

<Accessibility>(P. 879)

<Paper Settings>

ERJ8-0FC

Specify the settings for the paper used.

<Paper Settings>(P. 806)
<Paper Type Management Settings>(P. 807)
<Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>(P. 807)
<Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>(P. 807)
<Register Custom Size>(P. 808)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Paper Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>

You can register the paper size and type for each paper source. This setting enables you to achieve the appropriate print results. **Specifying Paper Size and Type in the Paper Drawer(P. 56)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Settings>	Paper Source <Set>: • <<Paper Settings: Paper Size>> <A4>, <A5>, <A5!>, <A6>, <B5>, <B6>, <16K> <Custom Size>, <Inch Size> • <<Paper Settings: Paper Type>> <Thin (60 g/m2)>, <Plain 1 (61-74 g/m2)>, <Plain 2 (75-90 g/m2)>, <Plain 3 (91-105 g/m2)>, <Heavy 1 (106-119 g/m2)>, <Heavy 2 (120-128 g/m2)>, <Heavy 3 (129-163 g/m2)>, <Color (61-74 g/m2)>, <Recycled 1 (61-74 g/m2)>, <Recycled 2 (75-90 g/m2)>, <Labels>, <Letterhead 3 (91-105 g/m2)>, <Detailed Settings>	Yes	Yes	Yes*1	B*2	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

*1 <Custom Size> cannot be set from the Remote UI.

*2 <Custom Size> cannot be imported with the Import All function.

NOTE

- If you have changed the size or type of paper loaded in the paper source, make sure to change this setting as well.

<Paper Type Management Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>

You can register/edit various custom paper types (user defined paper types), besides the default paper types registered in the machine. **Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Type Management Settings>	<Details/Edit> • <Name>, <Category>, <Basis Weight>, <Finish>, <Type>, <Color>, <Use as Template Paper>, <Humid Environment Mode>, <Adj. Paper Sep. in Fixing Area>, <Correct Fill Area Void> <Duplicate>, <Delete>	Yes	No	Yes	C*1	Paper Type Management Settings

*1 <Use as Template Paper> is categorized as "A".

<Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>

You can easily specify paper settings by registering paper frequently used in the multi-purpose tray in a button. "Favorite Paper" can be easily recalled from the screen displayed when paper is loaded. **Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)>	<P1> to <P30>: <Register/Edit>, <Rename>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>

- You can set the method for selecting the paper to use in the multi-purpose tray. If you always use the same paper size/type in the multi-purpose tray, it is convenient to register the paper in <Use Preset>. **Fixing the Paper Size and Type to Use with the Multi-Purpose Tray(P. 65)**
- If you use various types of paper in the multi-purpose tray, select <Always Specify>. If you frequently use multiple types of paper, you can eliminate the procedure for selecting the paper type by registering the paper types in advance. **Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>	• <Use Preset> (<Register>) • <Always Specify> (<Standard>, <Favorite Paper>)	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When the following conditions are met, you can press <Temp. Change Ppr. in MP Tray> on the paper selection screen of <Copy> and <Access Stored Files> to change the paper size/type to load from the multi-purpose tray:
  - If paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray
  - If this setting is set to <Use Preset>
  - If **<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>(P. 925)** is set to <On>

<Register Custom Size>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>

You can register frequently used free sizes of paper. The paper sizes registered here are displayed on the paper size selection screen for the paper drawer and multi-purpose tray. **Registering Free Size Paper (Custom Size Paper)(P. 67)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Custom Size>	<S1> to <S4>: <Register/Edit>, <Delete>, <Rename>	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Settings>

ERJ8-0FE

Specify the settings for the touch panel display.

- <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>(P. 809)
- <Default Screen (Status Monitor)>(P. 810)
- <Display Fax Function>(P. 810)
- <Store Location Display Settings>(P. 811)
- <Switch Language/Keyboard>(P. 811)
- <Display Switch Language/Keyboard Button>(P. 811)
- <Use Keyboard Shift Lock Feature>(P. 812)
- <Registered Characters for Keyboard>(P. 812)
- <Display Remaining Paper Message>(P. 812)
- <No. of Copies/Job Duration Status>(P. 812)
- <Notify to Clean Original Scanning Area>(P. 813)
- <Paper Type Selection Screen Priority>(P. 813)
- <Change Default Display for Paper Type List>(P. 813)
- <Switch Millimeter/Inch Entry>(P. 814)
- <Display Logged-in User Name>(P. 814)
- <Display Remaining Toner Error Message>(P. 814)
- <IP Address Display Settings>(P. 815)
- <Display Scan for Mobile>(P. 815)
- <Display Mobile Portal>(P. 815)
- <Display QR Code on Mobile Portal>(P. 816)
- <Timing of Toner Cartridge Replacement Notification>(P. 816)
- <Waste Toner Container Replacement Notification>(P. 816)
- <Fixing Assembly Replacement Notification>(P. 817)
- <ITB Unit Replacement Notification>(P. 817)
- <Sec. Transfer Outer Roller Replacement Notification>(P. 817)
- <Roller Kit Replacement Notification>(P. 817)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set the default screen displayed at startup/restoration.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Screen After Startup/ Restoration>	<**Home**>, <Copy>, <Fax>, <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>, <Scan and Send>, <Scan and Store>, <Access Stored Files>, <Fax/I-Fax Inbox>, <Remote Scanner>, <Dest./Fwd. Settings>, <Print>, <Scan for Mobile>, <Mobile Portal>, <Remote Scanner> The order of the settings may differ from that displayed on the actual machine.	No	No	No	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Open Status Monitor Screen>: On, **Off**					

IMPORTANT

- Depending on the authentication method specified in personal authentication management, the login screen may be displayed before the screen set in <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration> is displayed.

NOTE

- When the login service is changed to Department ID Authentication and <Limit Functions> for <Department ID Management> is used, the <Home> screen or the login screen for entering the Department ID/PIN may be displayed before the screen set in <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>, depending on the settings.

<Default Screen (Status Monitor)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can change the screen that is displayed when you press (Status Monitor).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Screen (Status Monitor)>	<Default Status Type>: <**Copy/Print**>, <Send>, <Receive>, <Store>, <Consumables/Others>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Status/Log>: <**Job Status**>, <Job Log>					
	<Details> (<Copy/Print>, <Job Status>): <Print>, <Copy>					
	<Details> (<Send>, <Job Status>): <Send>, <Fax>					
	<Details> (<Receive>, <Job Status>): <Fax>, <Forward>					
	<Details> (<Copy/Print>, <Job Log>): <Copy>, <Printer>, <Local Print>, <Received Job Print>, <Print Report>					
	<Details> (<Send>, <Job Log>): <Send>, <Fax>					
	<Details> (<Receive>, <Job Log>): <Receive>, <Fax>					

<Display Fax Function>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set the machine to display the Fax function on the <Home> screen. If you choose to display the Fax function, you can also select whether to display <Fax> in <Scan and Send>. Doing so enables you to send to fax, e-mail, and I-fax destinations at the same time.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Fax Function>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Enable Fax in Scan and Send Function>: <On>, <Off>					

<Store Location Display Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can change the destinations that are displayed when you press <Scan and Store> or <Access Stored Files>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Store Location Display Settings>	<Network>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Memory Media>: <On>, <Off>					

<Switch Language/Keyboard>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can select the language/keyboard displayed on the touch panel display.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Switch Language/Keyboard>	<Language>, <Keyboard Layout>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Some messages may not be displayed properly in the selected language. In this case, restart the machine. Some messages may not change even after the machine is restarted.
- If Server Authentication + Local Device Authentication are set using personal authentication management, and there is a difference between the language set on the machine and the one set in Active Directory, the sender's full name will not appear in e-mail messages sent to the recipient.

<Display Switch Language/Keyboard Button>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can display the button that enables you to switch the language and keyboard layout. The button is displayed on the bottom line of the touch panel display.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Switch Language/Keyboard Button>*1	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items with default setting that may differ depending on the region.

<Use Keyboard Shift Lock Feature>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

If you press <Shift> on the keyboard screen, you can enter an uppercase letter. You can specify the shift lock settings for entering uppercase letters continuously or for entering text which begins with an uppercase letter.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Keyboard Shift Lock Feature>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Registered Characters for Keyboard>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can register strings often used when entering E-Mail/I-Fax destinations using the keyboard.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Registered Characters for Keyboard>	<Register/Edit>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Remaining Paper Message>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set to display a message indicating that the remaining paper loaded in a paper source is low.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Remaining Paper Message>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<No. of Copies/Job Duration Status>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

The number of copies specified and the approximate time before the current job completes are displayed on the bottom line of the touch panel display.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<No. of Copies/Job Duration Status>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The accuracy of the approximate times that appear on the bottom line of the touch panel display may vary, depending on the status of the machine.
- The approximate time does not appear when the wait time is less than one minute.

<Notify to Clean Original Scanning Area>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set the machine to display the message that prompts you to clean the scanning area when the machine detects stains in the document feed scanning area.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Notify to Clean Original Scanning Area>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Paper Type Selection Screen Priority>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to prioritize the simple (<Simple>) or detailed (<Detailed>) setting screen when you display the screen to select the paper type.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Type Selection Screen Priority>	<**Simple**>, <Detailed>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Change Default Display for Paper Type List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

Specify the type of list displayed for selecting the paper type and the order in which the list items are shown.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Display for Paper Type List>	<Category>: <**All**>, <Standard Type>, <Custom Type>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Sort>: <Registered (Asc.)>, <**Registered (Desc.)**>, <Name (Asc.)>, <Name (Desc.)>, <Weight (Asc.)>, <Weight (Desc.)>					

<Switch Millimeter/Inch Entry>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to enter numeric values in millimeters or inches on the various numeric entry screens.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Switch Millimeter/Inch Entry>	<**Millimeter**>, <Inch>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Logged-in User Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can select whether to display the user name/display name on the touch panel display.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Logged-in User Name>	<**At Screen Top**> (<**User Name**>, <Display Name>), <At Screen Bottom>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If DepartmentID Authentication is set as the login service and <Department ID Management> is set to <On>, the Department ID is displayed when <At Screen Bottom> is selected. It is not displayed on the top of the screen.
- If User Authentication is set as the login service, <User Name> is displayed when <At Screen Bottom> is selected.

<Display Remaining Toner Error Message>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

Displays a warning screen that enables you to identify which color is running low when remaining toner is low. This message is useful, as it enables you to prepare a new toner cartridge in advance, etc.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Remaining Toner Error Message>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The warning screen prompting you to prepare a new toner cartridge is displayed.
- If you press <Close> on the warning screen to close the screen, you can perform normal operations. However, the warning screen will appear every time the machine returns from sleep mode or when the main power is turned ON.
- If you have already prepared a new toner cartridge, etc., and the notification becomes unnecessary, perform the <Delete Remaining Toner Error> operation.
- The message indicating the status remains on the bottom of the screen, regardless of this setting.

<IP Address Display Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display the IP address on the counter information screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IP Address Display Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is only valid when <Use IPv4> is set to <On>.

<Display Scan for Mobile>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to enable the <Scan for Mobile> setting, which sends scanned data to mobile devices such as smartphones and tablets.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Scan for Mobile>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Mobile Portal>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display <Mobile Portal> on the <Home> screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Mobile Portal>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display QR Code on Mobile Portal>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a QR code on the <Mobile Portal> screen. Using a QR code saves you the effort of entering the IPv4 address of the machine.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display QR Code on Mobile Portal>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Timing of Toner Cartridge Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set the amount of toner remaining in the toner cartridge for displaying the restock toner message.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Timing of Toner Cartridge Replacement Notification>	<**Default**>, <Custom>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <Custom> is selected: • <<Specify Remaining Toner Level>>: 2 to 99%					

<Waste Toner Container Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a message prompting the user to replace the waste toner container.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Waste Toner Container Replacement Notification>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Fixing Assembly Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a message notifying the user that replacing the fixing assembly is necessary soon.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fixing Assembly Replacement Notification>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<ITB Unit Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a message notifying the user that replacing the ITB unit is necessary soon.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<ITB Unit Replacement Notification>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Sec. Transfer Outer Roller Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a message notifying the user that replacing the secondary transfer outer roller is necessary soon.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Sec. Transfer Outer Roller Replacement Notification>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Roller Kit Replacement Notification>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Display Settings>

You can set whether to display a message notifying the user that replacing the paper roller is necessary soon.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Roller Kit Replacement Notification>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Timer/Energy Settings>

ERJ8-0FF

Specify the settings for the time, power consumption, etc.

- <Adjust Time>(P. 818)
- Date/Time Settings(P. 818)
- <Time Format>(P. 819)
- <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>(P. 819)
- <Auto Reset Time>(P. 820)
- <Restrict Auto Reset Time>(P. 821)
- <Function After Auto Reset>(P. 821)
- <Auto Shutdown Time>(P. 821)
- <Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer>(P. 822)
- <Auto Sleep Time>(P. 822)
- <Sleep Mode Energy Use>(P. 823)
- <Auto Sleep Weekly Timer>(P. 823)
- <Time Settings for Auto Adjust Gradation>(P. 823)
- <Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings>(P. 824)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Adjust Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can adjust the time in minutes.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Time>	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

NOTE

- Even if you change the time from 23:59 to 00:00, the date will not be changed.

Date/Time Settings

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

Setting the current date and time is very important. For instructions on how to configure the setting, see **Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Date/Time Settings>	Date and Time Setting (12 digit number)	No	No	Yes	No	-
	<Time Zone>: UTC-12:00 to UTC+00:00 to UTC+14:00	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Daylight Saving Time>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Start Date> (<Month>/<Day>/<Time> (0 to 23)), <End Date> (<Month>/<Day>/<Time> (0 to 23))	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Time Format>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set whether to display the time in 24-hour notation or 12-hour notation.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Time Format>	<**24 Hour**>, <12 Hour>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You can also specify to automatically synchronize the date and time with a server on the network using SNTP. **Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)**

<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

If you set this function to <On>, you can reduce the time it takes until you can perform operations on the screen and scan originals after the power is turned ON.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When this function is enabled
  - Standby power is consumed even when the power is turned OFF.
  - A tone sounds when the machine is turned ON, or when the machine is turned OFF if you set <Sleep Mode Tone> in <Other Volume Settings> to <On>. (However, the machine may not be able to start up quickly and the tone may not sound, depending on the status of the machine.)
- Even if this function is set to <On>, the machine does not startup quickly in the following situations:
  - When any of the network settings below are set to <On>

- Wi-Fi
- When turning ON the main power of the machine after turning OFF the main power in any of the conditions below
- More than 110 hours have elapsed after quick startup
- Operating jobs
- Jobs are reserved
- Just after using telephone lines
- Backing up data
- Accessing to the machine via network
- After specifying settings which require restarting the machine
- Error is occurred
- Using the Limited Functions mode
- The power cord is disconnected after turning OFF the main power
- MEAP applications which do not support quick startup are installed on the machine
- When turning ON the main power of the machine in 20 seconds after turning OFF the main power
- When turning ON the main power of the machine after eight hours have passed since the machine was turned OFF
- When turning ON the main power of the machine after turning OFF the main power from the Remote UI

<Auto Reset Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can specify the time period in which you are logged out and the touch panel display returns to the default setting automatically.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Reset Time>	0 min=Off, 10 to 50 seconds in 10 second increments, 1 to 2 to 9 minutes in one minute increments	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If the login service is being used, the machine automatically logs out the user when the Auto Reset Time elapses.
- The screen displayed after the Auto Reset initiates differs depending on the following settings.
  - Setting 1: The settings in [Visual Message Settings] (when [Display Timing and Content] is set to [After Logout/Auto Reset])
  - When Visual Message is not set or after the displayed Visual Message screen is closed, the screen that is specified in Setting 2 is displayed.
  - Setting 2: The settings in <Function After Auto Reset>
  - When <Default Function> is set, the screen specified in <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration> (Setting 3) is displayed.
  - When <Selected Function> is set, the function before the Auto Reset initiates is displayed. (The specified settings and entered values for each function will be cleared.) However, the <Selected Function> settings may not be correctly reflected, and the screen specified in <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration> may be displayed.
  - Setting 3: The settings in <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>

<Restrict Auto Reset Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

If you set this function to <On>, general users become unable to set <Auto Reset Time> and <Function After Auto Reset>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Auto Reset Time>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Function After Auto Reset>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set whether the default screen set for <Default Screen After Startup/Restoration> in <Preferences> or the immediately previous screen is displayed at startup after the Auto Reset initiates.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Function After Auto Reset>	<**Default Function**>, <Selected Function>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If Visual Message is set to be displayed after the Auto Reset mode initiates, the Visual Message screen is displayed first, regardless of this setting. **Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)**

<Auto Shutdown Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

With the Auto Shutdown, if the touch panel display of the machine is idle for a certain period of time after it has entered the Sleep mode, the machine automatically shuts down.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Shutdown Time>	0 hr=Off, 1 to **4** to 8 hours in one hour increments	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This function is not displayed if the fax board is installed. If it is displayed, set <Auto Shutdown Time> to <0>, and contact your dealer or service representative.

- Even when operating the machine from the Remote UI, the machine automatically shuts down if the touch panel display of the machine is idle for a certain period of time. A malfunction may occur particularly if the machine automatically shuts down while importing. Set <Auto Shutdown Time> to <0> when importing data.

NOTE

- The Auto Shutdown may not be performed, depending on the usage conditions of the machine.
- When Off or set to a longer time, energy consumption will increase.

<Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set the time that the machine automatically shuts down each day of the week. If you use this function, you do not have to shut down the machine manually every day.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer>	<Sunday> to <Saturday>, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If both <Auto Shutdown Time> and <Auto Shutdown Weekly Timer> are set, priority is given to <Auto Shutdown Time>.

<Auto Sleep Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set the time until the machine automatically enters the Sleep mode if no operations are performed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Sleep Time>	10 secs, **1 min**, 2 min, 5 mins, 10 mins, 15 mins, 20 mins, 30 mins, 40 mins, 50 mins, 1 hr, 90 mins, 2 hrs	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- It is recommended that the default value is used for this setting.
- When set to a longer time, energy consumption will increase.

<Sleep Mode Energy Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set the amount of energy that the machine consumes when it is in the Sleep mode.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Sleep Mode Energy Use>	<Low>, <High>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If the machine is connected to a computer using a USB cable, depending on the timing for entering the sleep mode, the machine may be unable to receive data correctly. Reactivate the machine from the sleep mode, then execute the job again.
- The energy consumption level may be the same as when <High> is set even when <Low> is set, depending on the status of the machine.

NOTE

- If the energy consumption level is set to <Low>, communication failure may occur, depending on the network utility software you are using. To avoid this, press the Energy Saver key to cancel the Sleep mode before using the machine.

<Auto Sleep Weekly Timer>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set the time that the machine automatically enters the Sleep mode each day of the week.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Sleep Weekly Timer>	<Sunday> to <Saturday>, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set both the <Auto Sleep Time> and <Auto Sleep Weekly Timer>, the <Auto Sleep Time> setting is given priority.

<Time Settings for Auto Adjust Gradation>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can automatically perform the automatic gradation adjustment at a set time every day.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Time Settings for Auto Adjust Gradation>	<Sunday> to <Saturday>, 00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Timer/Energy Settings>

You can set the time at which the machine recovers from the Sleep mode.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings>	00:00 to 23:59, in one minute increments	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Network>

ERJ8-0FH

Specify the network settings.

- **<Output Report>(P. 825)**
- **<Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>(P. 825)**
- **<TCP/IP Settings>(P. 826)**
- **<SNMP Settings>(P. 826)**
- **<Format Host Resources MIB to RFC2790>(P. 827)**
- **<Dedicated Port Settings>(P. 827)**
- **<Dedicated Port Authentication Method>(P. 828)**
- **<Use Spool Function>(P. 828)**
- **<Waiting Time for Connection at Startup>(P. 828)**
- **<Ethernet Driver Settings>(P. 829)**
- **<Sleep Mode Priority Settings>(P. 829)**
- **<IEEE 802.1X Settings>(P. 829)**
- **<Firewall Settings>(P. 831)**
- **<Use Mopria>(P. 831)**
- **<Use AirPrint>(P. 831)**
- **<Display Errors for AirPrint>(P. 831)**
- **<Use IPP Everywhere>(P. 832)**
- **<Settings for Universal Print>(P. 832)**
- **<Device Position Information Settings>(P. 833)**
- **<Select Interface>(P. 833)**
- **<Wireless LAN>(P. 833)**
- **<Direct Connection Settings>(P. 834)**
- **<Sub Line Settings>(P. 834)**
- **<Static Routing Settings>(P. 834)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Output Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

You can print the settings in <Network>. **Printing a List of Settings(P. 789)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Output Report>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

If this setting is set to <On>, you can change network settings. If errors related to network connections occur, an error message appears on the touch panel display of the machine. **Canceling the Network Setting Lock(P. 149)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<TCP/IP Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the settings that enable the machine to be used on a TCP/IP network.

<TCP/IP Settings>(P. 835)

<SNMP Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the SNMP settings. **Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP(P. 183)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use SNMPv1>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Set Dedicated Community>	<Dedicated Community>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<MIB Access Permission>: <Read/Write>, <**Read Only**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Set Community Name 1>	<Community Name 1>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<MIB Access Permission>: <Read/Write>, <**Read Only**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Community Name>: **public**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Set Community Name 2>	<Community Name 2>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<MIB Access Permission>: <Read/Write>, <**Read Only**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Community Name>: **public2**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use SNMPv3>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Administrator Settings>	<Use Administrator>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Encryption Password>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Same Password as for Authentication>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<User Settings>	<User On/Off>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Register> (<User Name>, <MIB Access Permission> (<**Read/Write**>, <Read Only>), <Security Settings> (<**Auth. Yes/Encrypt. Yes**>, <Auth. Yes/Encrypt. No>, <Auth. No/Encrypt. No>), <Authentication Algorithm> (<MD5>, <SHA1>, <SHA2-224>, <SHA2-256>, <SHA2-384>, <**SHA2-512**>), <Authentication Password>, <Encryption Algorithm> (<DES>, <**AES**>), <Encryption Password>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Details/Edit> (<User Name>, <MIB Access Permission> (<Read/Write>, <Read Only>), <Security Settings> (<Auth. Yes/Encrypt. Yes>, <Auth. Yes/Encrypt. No>, <Auth. No/Encrypt. No>), <Authentication Algorithm> (<MD5>, <SHA1>, <SHA2-224>, <SHA2-256>, <SHA2-384>, <SHA2-512>), <Authentication Password>, <Encryption Algorithm> (<DES>, <AES>), <Encryption Password>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Retrieve Printer Mngt. Information from Host>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Format Host Resources MIB to RFC2790>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether the host resources MIB is compliant with the specifications of RFC2790.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Format Host Resources MIB to RFC2790>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Dedicated Port Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to configure/refer to detailed information of the machine from the Canon drivers or utility software.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Dedicated Port Settings>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If the setting is set to <Off>, some application that uses dedicated port may not be used.

<Dedicated Port Authentication Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the authentication method for the dedicated port.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Dedicated Port Authentication Method>	<Mode 1>, <Mode 2>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If the setting is set to <Mode 2>, communication using a dedicated port uses a secure mode. Accordingly, you may not be able to connect from device management software or drivers, etc.

<Use Spool Function>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to spool print jobs that are sent to the machine in the storage device of the machine.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Spool Function>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Waiting Time for Connection at Startup>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the waiting time for connecting to a network from when the machine starts. **Setting the Wait Time When Connecting to a Network(P. 170)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Waiting Time for Connection at Startup>	**0** to 300 sec.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Ethernet Driver Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the Ethernet driver settings. **Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Ethernet Driver Settings>	<Auto Detect>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Communication Mode> (Off): <**Half Duplex**>, <Full Duplex>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Ethernet Type> (Off): <**10BASE-T**>, <100BASE-TX>, <1000BASE-T>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Current Transmission Speed>: Display Only	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<MAC Address>: Display only	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Use EEE>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Sleep Mode Priority Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Set whether to give priority to the exit speed or energy saving when the machine is in Sleep Mode.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Sleep Mode Priority Settings>	<Exit Speed>, <**Energy Saving**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IEEE 802.1X Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the settings for IEEE 802.1X. **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IEEE 802.1X>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Login Name>	Login Name	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Verify Authent. Server Certificate>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Verify Authentication Server Name>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Authentication Server Name>	Authentication Server Name	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use TLS>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Key and Certificate>	Set as Default Key	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Certificate Details> (<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Display Use Location> (Key and Certificate)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Use TTLS>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <TTLS Settings (TTLS Protocol)>: <**MSCHAPv2**>, <PAP>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use PEAP>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<User Name>	Name of the user to be authenticated with IEEE802.1X authentication	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Password>	Password of the user to be authenticated with IEEE802.1X authentication	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use Login Name as User Name>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you set <IEEE 802.1X Settings> to <On>, the machine will not completely enter the Sleep mode.

<Firewall Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the packet filtering settings that permit communication only with devices that have a specific IP address and MAC address.

<Firewall Settings>(P. 857)

<Use Mopria>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to print data directly from mobile devices that support Mopria®, such as smartphones and tablets. **Utilizing the Machine through Applications(P. 559)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Mopria>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use AirPrint>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to print directly from an iPhone, iPad, iPod Touch, or Mac that supports AirPrint. **Using AirPrint(P. 562)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use AirPrint>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Errors for AirPrint>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to display an error screen on the control panel if printing cannot be performed as expected due to a problem with the print data when printing with AirPrint.

- If this is set to <On>, an error screen is displayed on the control panel. Cancel the job after checking the error screen.
- If this is set to <Off>, an error screen is not displayed on the control panel but the job remains in the job history with <NG> indicated.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Errors for AirPrint>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use IPP Everywhere>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify whether to allow printing directly from Chromebook devices that support IPP Everywhere. **Utilizing the Machine through Applications(P. 559)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IPP Everywhere>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Settings for Universal Print>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the settings for Universal Print. **Printing Using the Microsoft Cloud Service (Universal Print)(P. 441)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Basic Settings>	<Use Universal Print>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Verify Server Certificate>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Add CN to Verification Items>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Printer Name>: **OIP_PRINTER**	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Application ID>: **f9fc375c-c7ba-4e5c-b213-23affd792cc1**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Microsoft Entra ID Authentication URL>: **https://login.microsoftonline.com/organizations/oauth2/v2.0**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Microsoft Entra ID Registration URL>: **https://register.print.microsoft.com/api/v1.0/register**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<Registration Status>	<Not Registered> <Registered> <Checking...>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

NOTE

- This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

<Device Position Information Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the device position information settings. **Using AirPrint(P. 562)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Device Position Information Settings>	<Latitude>: Specify the latitude.	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Longitude>: Specify the longitude.	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Select Interface>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Select whether to use a wired LAN or wireless LAN by itself, a wired LAN and wireless LAN simultaneously, or a wired LAN and another wired LAN simultaneously. **Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Select Interface>	Main Line: <**Wired LAN**>, <Wireless LAN>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	Sub Line: • <Main Line> (Wired LAN): <**Off**>, <Wired LAN>, <Wireless LAN> • <Main Line> (Wireless LAN): <**Off**>, <Wired LAN>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Wireless LAN>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the wireless LAN settings.

<Wireless LAN>(P. 863)

<Direct Connection Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the direct connection settings.

<Direct Connection Settings>(P. 865)

<Sub Line Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the sub-line settings (wireless LAN or a separate wired LAN) when a wired LAN and a wireless LAN, or a wired LAN and another wired LAN, are both used at the same time.

<Sub Line Settings>(P. 869)

<Static Routing Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network>

Specify the static routing settings for IPv4 addresses. **Setting Static Routing(P. 187)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Static Routing Settings>	<Use Static Routing>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	No	No	-
	• <Edit> <Address>(<**0.0.0.0**>), <Prefix Length>(1 to 32), <Gateway Address>(<**0.0.0.0**>)	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<TCP/IP Settings>

ERJ8-0FJ

Specify the settings that enable the machine to be used on a TCP/IP network.

- **<IPv4 Settings>(P. 835)**
- **<IPv6 Settings>(P. 835)**
- **<DNS Settings>(P. 835)**
- **<Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>(P. 836)**
- **<SMB Client Settings>(P. 836)**
- **<Specify SMB Client Version>(P. 837)**
- **<WINS Settings>(P. 837)**
- **<LPD Print Settings>(P. 837)**
- **<RAW Print Settings>(P. 838)**
- **<SNTP Settings>(P. 838)**
- **<FTP Print Settings>(P. 839)**
- **<Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job>(P. 839)**
- **<WSD Settings>(P. 839)**
- **<Use FTP PASV Mode>(P. 840)**
- **<IPP Print Settings>(P. 840)**
- **<Multicast Discovery Settings>(P. 841)**
- **<Sleep Mode Notification Settings>(P. 841)**
- **<Use HTTP>(P. 842)**
- **<TLS Settings>(P. 842)**
- **<Proxy Settings>(P. 843)**
- **<Confirm Auth. Info. When in Auth. Management Mode>(P. 844)**
- **<IPSec Settings>(P. 844)**
- **<TCP/IP Option Settings>(P. 848)**
- **<Use Network Link Scan>(P. 848)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<IPv4 Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the settings that enable you to use the machine in an IPv4 environment.

<IPv4 Settings>(P. 849)

<IPv6 Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the settings that enable you to use the machine in an IPv6 environment.

<IPv6 Settings>(P. 851)

<DNS Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the Domain Name System (DNS) settings for converting host names (domain names) to IP addresses.

<DNS Settings>(P. 854)

<Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the name of the machine on the network and the name of the workgroup it belongs to. If your environment does not have workgroups, create a workgroup in Windows and enter the name of that workgroup.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>	<Computer Name> (15 characters maximum): **Canon******** ("******" represents the last six digits of a MAC address.)	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Workgroup Name> (15 characters maximum): **WORKGROUP**	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Comment> (48 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use NetBIOS>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you set <Use NetBIOS> to <Off>, <WINS Settings> is disabled. Make sure to set <Use NetBIOS> to <On> when using WINS.

<SMB Client Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the settings to use when the machine connects to a network as an SMB client. **Making SMB Settings(P. 176)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<SMB Client Settings>	<Authentication Type>: <NTLMv1>, <**NTLMv2**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Require SMB Signature for Connection>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Require Encryption for Connection>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Timeout>: 3 to **30** to 300 sec.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Specify SMB Client Version>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the version of SMB to use with the SMB client. **Making SMB Settings(P. 176)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify SMB Client Version>	<1.0>: On, **Off**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<2.0>: **On**, Off	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<3.0>: **On**, Off	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<3.1>: **On**, Off	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Use the same version of SMB with the SMB server and SMB client. SMB cannot be used if the versions differ.

<WINS Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for Windows Internet Name Service (WINS). **Making WINS Settings(P. 178)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<WINS Settings>	<WINS Resolution>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<WINS Server Address> (IP Address)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you set <Use NetBIOS> to <Off> in <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>, this setting is disabled.

<LPD Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for LPD printing. To use LPD printing, press <On> and set the time until the job is automatically canceled when the print data cannot be received due to a communication error, etc.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<LPD Print Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<LPD Banner Page>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<RX Timeout>: 1 to **5** to 60 (min.)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Banner pages can only be output if the PCL Printer function or PS Printer function is installed. **System Options(P. 1271)**
- Banner pages are set to be output by print job. Even if <LPD Banner Page> is set to <On>, banner pages are not output for print jobs that are set to not output a banner page.

<RAW Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for RAW printing. To use RAW printing, press <On> and set whether to use bidirectional communication and the time until the job is automatically canceled when the print data cannot be received due to a communication error, etc.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<RAW Print Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Bidirectional Communication>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<RX Timeout>: 1 to **5** to 60 (min.)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<SNTP Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP). **Making SNTP Settings(P. 189)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<SNTP Settings>	<Use SNTP>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Polling Interval>: 10 to **1440** to 2880 min.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<NTP Server Address> (IP Address or Host Name)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Check NTP Server>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

<FTP Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for FTP printing. To use FTP printing, press <On>, and set <User Name> and <Password> as necessary.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<FTP Print Settings>	<Use FTP Printing>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<User Name>: **guest**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Password>: **7654321**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify whether to use UTF-8 for displaying file names when you perform FTP print.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use UTF-8 to Display Name of FTP Print Job>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<WSD Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the WSD settings.

- To use WSD (Web Service on Devices) for the print application, set <Use WSD Printing> to <On>.
- To use WSD to retrieve the information for the machine, set <Use WSD Browsing> to <On>.
- To use the WSD Scan function, set <Use WSD Scan> to <On>. **Using WSD(P. 520)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<WSD Settings>	<Use WSD Printing>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use WSD Browsing>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use WSD Scan>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set <Use WSD Printing> to <On>, <Use WSD Browsing> and <Use HTTP> are also set to <On>.
- If you set <Use WSD Scan> to <On>, <Use HTTP> is also set to <On>.

<Use FTP PASV Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify whether to use the FTP PASV mode. **Setting the PASV Mode of FTP(P. 189)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use FTP PASV Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IPP Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for IPP printing. To use IPP printing, press <On> and set whether to only allow communication data encrypted with TLS (IPP printing) and whether to use IPP authentication.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IPP Print Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Allow When Using TLS>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Authentication>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set this to <On>, <Use HTTP> is also set to <On>.

- To perform IPPS printing, a key pair to use is required. You can use a preinstalled key pair or an original key pair generated by the machine as the key to use. For information on the key to use and the method for generating an original key pair, see **Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)** or **Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)** . If you select <RSA> for <Key Algorithm> when generating the key to use for network communication, set a key length of <1024-bit> or longer. IPPS printing may not be able to be performed correctly if a key length of <512-bit> is set, depending on the operating system you are using.
- To use the IPP authentication function by setting <Use Authentication> to <On>, the user information of the machine is used as the user and password for IPP authentication. Make sure to register the user information in advance when using the IPP authentication function. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

<Multicast Discovery Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the multicast discovery settings. **Monitoring the Machine From Device Management Systems(P. 190)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Multicast Discovery Settings>	<Response>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Scope Name>: **default**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Sleep Mode Notification Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for multicast sending of the Sleep mode notifications on the network.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Sleep Mode Notification Settings>	<Notify>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Port Number>: 1 to **11427** to 65535	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Number of Routers to Traverse>: 0 to **3** to 254	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Notification Interval>: 60 to **600** to 65535 sec.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

<Use HTTP>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Enable or disable HTTP setting.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use HTTP>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- By specifying this setting as <On>, you can open a necessary port. However, it is recommended that you specify it as <Off>, if a port is not used. If you leave the port open, an unauthorized user may access the machine.

NOTE

If you set this to <Off>, the following settings are also set to <Off>.

- <Remote UI Settings>
- <IPP Print Settings>
- <Use WSD Scan> and <Use WSD Printing> in <WSD Settings>

<TLS Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

You can set a key pair, TLS version, and encryption algorithm to use after confirming that a machine uses TLS encrypted communication.
Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Key and Certificate>	<Set as Default Key>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Certificate Details> (<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Display Use Location> (Displays what the key pair is being used for)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Specify Allowed Versions>	<Maximum Version>: <TLS 1.0>, <TLS 1.1>, <TLS 1.2>, <TLS 1.3>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Minimum Version>: <TLS 1.0>, <TLS 1.1>, <**TLS 1.2**>, <TLS 1.3>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Encryption Algo Settings>	<AES-CBC (256-bit)>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<AES-GCM (256-bit)>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<3DES-CBC>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<AES-CBC (128-bit)>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<AES-GCM (128-bit)>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<CHACHA20- POLY1305>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Key Exchange Algo Settings>	<RSA>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<ECDHE>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<X25519>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Signature Algo Settings>	<RSA>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<ECDSA>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<HMAC Algo Settings>	<SHA1>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SHA256>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SHA384>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Proxy Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify settings for the proxy. **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Proxy Settings>	<Use Proxy>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Server Address> (IP Address or FQDN)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Port Number>: 1 to **80** to 65535	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Proxy within Same Domain>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Set Authentication>	<Use Proxy Authentication>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<User Name> (128 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Password> (128 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Confirm Auth. Info. When in Auth. Management Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify whether the machine checks authentication information when you print using the V4 printer driver.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm Auth. Info. When in Auth. Management Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If there is no key to use for TLS communication or it is corrupted, this setting is disabled. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

<IPSec Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the IPSec settings. **Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IPSec>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Receive Non-Policy Packets>	<**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<Policy On/Off>	On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<Register>	<Policy Name> (24 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<Selector Settings>	<Local Address> (<**All IP Addresses**>, <IPv4 Address>, <IPv6 Address>, <IPv4 Manual Settings>, <IPv6 Manual Settings>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <IPv4 Manual Settings> (<**Single Address**>, <Address Range>(<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Subnet Settings>(<Address>, <Subnet Mask>))	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <IPv6 Manual Settings> (<**Single Address**>(<Address>), <Address Range> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Specify Prefix> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>))	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (1 to **64** to 128)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Remote Address>(<**All IP Addresses**>, <All IPv4 Addresses>, <All IPv6 Addresses>, <IPv4 Manual Settings>, <IPv6 Manual Settings>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <IPv4 Manual Settings>(<**Single Address**>, <Address Range>(<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Subnet Settings>(<Address>, <Subnet Mask>))	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <IPv6 Manual Settings> (<**Single Address**>(<Address>), <Address Range> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Specify Prefix> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>))	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (1 to **64** to 128)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Port> (<**Specify by Port Number**>, <Specify by Service Name>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	• <Specify by Port Number>(<Local Port>(<**All Ports**>, <Single Port>), <Remote Port>(<**All Ports**>, <Single Port>))	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Single Port> (1 to 65535)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Specify by Service Name> <Service On/Off>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<IKE Settings>	<IKE Mode>: <**Main**>, <Aggressive>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Validity>: 1 to **480** to 65535 min.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Authentication Method>: <**Pre-Shared Key Method**> (<Shared Key>), <Digital Sig. Method> (<Key and Certificate>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Key and Certificate>: <Set as Default Key>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Key and Certificate>: <Certificate Details>(<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Key and Certificate>: <Display Use Location>(Displays what the key pair is being used for)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Authentication/Encryption Algorithm> (<**Auto**>, <Manual Settings>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Authentication/Encryption Algorithm>: <Manual Settings> • <Authentication> <SHA1>: **On**, Off <SHA2>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Encryption> <3DES-CBC>: **On**, Off <AES-CBC>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	• <DH Group> <Group 14 (2048)>: **On**, Off <ECDH-P256>: On, **Off** <ECDH-P384>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
<IPSec Network Settings>	<Validity> <Time>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• When <Time> is selected: 1 to **480** to 65535 min.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Validity> <Size>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• When <Size> is selected: **0** to 1 to 65535 MB	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<PFS>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Authentication/Encryption Algorithm>: <**Auto**>, <Manual Settings>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Authentication/Encryption Algorithm>: <Manual Settings> (<**ESP**>, <ESP (AES-GCM)>, <AH (SHA1)>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<ESP> Settings: • <ESP Authentication> <SHA1>: **On**, Off <NULL>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <ESP Encryption> <3DES-CBC>: **On**, Off <AES-CBC>: On, **Off** <NULL>: On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<ESP (AES-GCM)> Settings: None	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<AH (SHA1)> Settings: None	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Connection Mode>: Transport (display only)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Only Allow 256-bit for AES Key Length>	On, **Off**	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Edit>	-	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Delete>	-	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Print List>	<Yes>, <No>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

<TCP/IP Option Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify the TCP option window scale and MTU size.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TCP/IP Option Settings>	<Use Window Scale Option>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<MTU Size>: 600 to **1500** bytes (600-1500)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Minimum Value of MSS>: **48** to 560 bytes (48-560)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

<Use Network Link Scan>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings>

Specify whether to use Network Link Scan.
When using Network Link Scan, you can also specify whether to encrypt communication using TLS.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Network Link Scan>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Use TLS>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IPv4 Settings>

ERJ8-0FK

Specify the settings that enable you to use the machine in an IPv4 environment.

<Use IPv4>(P. 849)
<IP Address Settings>(P. 849)
<DHCP Option Settings>(P. 850)
<PING Command>(P. 850)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Use IPv4>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings>

Set whether to use IPv4. **Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IPv4>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IP Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings>

Specify the IPv4 address. **Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IP Address Settings>	<IP Address>: <0.0.0.0>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Subnet Mask>: <0.0.0.0>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Gateway Address>: <0.0.0.0>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<DHCP>: On, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Auto IP>: On, Off	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DHCP Option Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings>

Specify the optional settings for DHCP. **Using a DHCP Server(P. 174)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<DHCP Option Settings>	<Acquire Host Name>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<DNS Dynamic Update>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire DNS Server Address>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire Domain Name>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire WINS Server Address>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire SMTP Server Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire POP Server Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Release Address Last Acquired from DHCP Server When Address Cannot Be Acquired>*1: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

<PING Command>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Settings>

Tests whether the IPv4 address is set correctly. **Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv4 Address(P. 162)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PING Command>	<IPv4 Address>: <**0.0.0.0**>	No	Yes	No	No	-

<IPv6 Settings>

ERJ8-0FL

Specify the settings that enable you to use the machine in an IPv6 environment.

<Use IPv6>(P. 851)
<Stateless Address Settings>(P. 851)
<Manual Address Settings>(P. 851)
<Use DHCPv6>(P. 852)
<PING Command>(P. 852)
<Only Retrieve Stateful Address Prefix>(P. 852)
<DHCP Option Settings>(P. 853)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Use IPv6>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify whether to use IPv6. **Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IPv6>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Stateless Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify the IPv6 stateless address. **Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Stateless Address Settings>	<Use Stateless Address>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Manual Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify the IPv6 address manually. **Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Manual Address Settings>	<Use Manual Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Manual Address> (IPv6 Address (39 characters maximum))	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Prefix Length>: 1 to **64** to 128	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Router Address> (39 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use DHCPv6>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify whether to obtain the IPv6 address from the DHCP server. **Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use DHCPv6>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<PING Command>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Check whether the IPv6 address is correctly specified. **Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv6 Address(P. 164)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PING Command>	<IPv6 Address> (39 characters maximum)	No	Yes	No	No	-
	<Host Name>	No	Yes	No	No	-

<Only Retrieve Stateful Address Prefix>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify whether to obtain only the former half of the stateful address from the DHCP server by using DHCPv6.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Only Retrieve Stateful Address Prefix>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DHCP Option Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Settings>

Specify the optional settings for DHCP. **Using a DHCP Server(P. 174)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<DHCP Option Settings>	<Acquire DNS Server Address>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Acquire Domain Name>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DNS Settings>

ERJ8-0FR

Specify the Domain Name System (DNS) settings for converting host names (domain names) to IP addresses.

<DNS Server Address Settings>(P. 854)
<DNS Host Name/Domain Name Settings>(P. 854)
<DNS Dynamic Update Settings>(P. 855)
<mDNS Settings>(P. 855)
<DNS Encryption Settings>(P. 856)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<DNS Server Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>

Specify the DNS server address settings. **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IPv4>	<Primary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Secondary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<IPv6>	<Primary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Secondary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DNS Host Name/Domain Name Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>

Specify the host name and domain name of the machine. **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IPv4>	<Host Name>: Canon****** ("******" represents the last six digits of a MAC address.)	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Domain Name>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IPv6>	<Use Same Host Name/Domain Name as IPv4>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Host Name>: **Canon******** ("******" represents the last six digits of a MAC address.)	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Domain Name>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DNS Dynamic Update Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>

Specify whether to perform the automatic update when the mapping between the host name and IP address is changed on an environment such as DHCP. **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IPv4>	<DNS Dynamic Update>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<IPv6>	<DNS Dynamic Update>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register Stateless Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register Manual Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register Stateful Address>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<mDNS Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>

Specify settings for using the DNS function on a system that does not have a DNS server. **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<mDNS Settings>	<Use IPv4 mDNS>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<mDNS Name> (63 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use IPv6 mDNS>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Use Same mDNS Name as IPv4>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<mDNS Name> (63 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<DNS Encryption Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <TCP/IP Settings> ▶ <DNS Settings>

Specify whether to encrypt communication with a DNS server using TLS. **Making DNS Settings(P. 171)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<DNS Encryption Settings>	<Use DNS over TLS>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Port Number to Use>: 1 to **853** to 65535	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Host Name to Verify>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Firewall Settings>

ERJ8-0FS

Specify the packet filtering settings that permit communication only with devices that have a specific IP address and MAC address.

<IPv4 Address Filter>(P. 857)
<IPv6 Address Filter>(P. 857)
<MAC Address Filter>(P. 857)
<IP Address Block Log>(P. 857)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<IPv4 Address Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Specify the settings for IPv4 address filtering.

<IPv4 Address Filter>(P. 858)

<IPv6 Address Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Specify the settings for IPv6 address filtering.

<IPv6 Address Filter>(P. 860)

<MAC Address Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Specify the settings for MAC address filtering.

<MAC Address Filter>(P. 862)

<IP Address Block Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Displays the log for blocking with an IP address filter. **Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IP Address Block Log>	<Date>, <Type>, <IP Address>, <Port Number>, <Result>, <Details>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

<IPv4 Address Filter>

ERJ8-0FU

Specify the settings for IPv4 address filtering.

<Outbound Filter>(P. 858)
<Inbound Filter>(P. 859)
<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMP>(P. 859)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Outbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Address Filter>

Specify the outbound filter. **Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Outbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv4 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <**Single Address**>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<**Do Not Specify**>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (**1** to 32)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Inbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Address Filter>

Specify the inbound filter. **Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Inbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv4 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <**Single Address**>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number> (<**Do Not Specify**>, <Specify>) • <Specify> (<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number> (<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify> (<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (**1** to 32)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMP>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Address Filter>

Specify whether to always allow ICMP communication.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMP>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IPv6 Address Filter>

ERJ8-0FW

Specify the settings for IPv6 address filtering.

<Outbound Filter>(P. 860)
<Inbound Filter>(P. 861)
<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMPv6>(P. 861)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Outbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Address Filter>

Specify the outbound filter. **Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Outbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <Allow>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv6 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <Single Address> (<Address>), <Prefix Address> (<IPv6 Prefix>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address> (<Address>), <Prefix Address> (<IPv6 Prefix>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (0 to 1 to 128)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Inbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Address Filter>

Specify the inbound filter. **Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Inbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv6 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <**Single Address**> (<Address>), <Prefix Address> (<IPv6 Prefix>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number> (<**Do Not Specify**>, <Specify>) • <Specify> (<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address> (<Address>), <Prefix Address> (<IPv6 Prefix>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number> (<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify> (<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (0 to **1** to 128)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMPv6>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv6 Address Filter>

Specify whether to always allow ICMPv6 communication.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Allow Sending/Receiving Using ICMPv6>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<MAC Address Filter>

ERJ8-0FX

Specify the settings for MAC address filtering.

<Outbound Filter>(P. 862)
<Inbound Filter>(P. 862)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Outbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <MAC Address Filter>

Specify the outbound filter. **Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 649)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Outbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <Allow>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 100 Mac addresses), <Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Inbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <MAC Address Filter>

Specify the inbound filter. **Specifying MAC Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 649)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Inbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <Allow>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 100 Mac addresses), <Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Wireless LAN>

ERJ8-0FY

Specify the wireless LAN settings.

<Wireless LAN Settings>(P. 863)
<Wireless LAN Information>(P. 863)
<Power Save Mode>(P. 864)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Wireless LAN Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN>

Specify the wireless LAN settings. **Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<WPS Push Button Mode>						
<WPS PIN Code Mode>						
<Other (Set Manually)>						
<Select Access Point>	Select the access point and security type from the list	No	Yes	No	No	-
	<Enter Network Key (PSK)> (<PSK>: Enter the WPA/WPA2-PSK Passphrase)	No	Yes	No	No	-
<Enter Manually>	<SSID>: Enter SSID	No	Yes	No	No	-
	<Security Settings>: <None>, <WPA/WPA2- PSK>, <WPA/WPA2- EAP>, <WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE>, <WPA3-SAE>	No	Yes	No	No	-
	• <IEEE 802.11 Authent.> (<**Open System**>, <Shared Key>) • <Security Settings> <Encryption Method> (<Encryption Key>)	No	Yes	No	No	-

<Wireless LAN Information>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN>

Displays the setting information of wireless LAN. **Check the settings and information of the wireless LAN(P. 154)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Wireless LAN Information>	<Display All>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Details>	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Power Save Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Wireless LAN>

Specify whether to set the machine to the power save mode periodically, according to the signals sent by a wireless LAN router. **Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Power Save Mode>	<On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Direct Connection Settings>

ERJ8-0H0

Specify the direct connection settings.

<Use Direct Connection>(P. 865)
<Time Until Direct Connection Session Is Terminated>(P. 865)
<SSID/Network Key Settings>(P. 866)
<Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified>(P. 866)
<IP Address Settings for Direct Connection>(P. 867)
<Frequency Settings for Access Point Mode>(P. 867)
<Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>(P. 867)
<Use Login Name as User Name for Print Jobs>(P. 868)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Use Direct Connection>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify whether to use direct connection. **Connecting Directly(P. 556)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Direct Connection>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Time Until Direct Connection Session Is Terminated>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify the time before communication is automatically terminated when there is a prolonged period of no data transmission/reception while communicating using direct connection.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Time Until Direct Connection Session Is Terminated>	0 = Off, 1 to **30** to 60 min.	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is disabled if <Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified> is set to <On>.

<SSID/Network Key Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify the settings for SSID and network key.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Access Point Mode Settings>	<Use Personal SSID and Network Key>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Custom SSID>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SSID>: Enter SSID	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Custom Network Key>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Network Key>: Enter the network key	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

When <Use Personal SSID and Network Key> is set to <On>

- Information on the user and SSID/network key when logging in is associated and stored in the machine. Only one mobile device can be connected.

When <Use Personal SSID and Network Key> is set to <Off>

- If both <Use Custom SSID> and <Use Custom Network Key> are set to <On>, multiple mobile devices can be connected at the same time. A maximum of five devices can be connected at the same time.
- If either or both <Use Custom SSID> and <Use Custom Network Key> are set to <Off>, a random SSID or network key is used to connect each time. Only one mobile device can be connected.

<Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

If <Use Custom SSID> and <Specify Network Key to Use> are enabled in <Access Point Mode Settings>, direct connections can be made without pressing <Enable> in <Direct Connection> in <Mobile Portal>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Keep Enabled If SSID/Network Key Specified>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The machine can connect with multiple mobile devices at the same time. A maximum of five devices can be connected at the same time.
- If this is set to <On>, the <Time Until Direct Connection Session Is Terminated> setting is disabled.
- If this is set to <On>, the machine will not enter the Sleep mode completely.

<IP Address Settings for Direct Connection>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify the IP address to distribute to mobile devices connecting using direct connection.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IP Address Settings for Direct Connection>	192.168.22.1	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The IP address distributed to mobile devices may be up to nine numbers greater than the value of the specified IP address.

<Frequency Settings for Access Point Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Select the frequency used for direct communication.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Frequency Settings for Access Point Mode>	<2.4 GHz>, <5 GHz>*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Only appears if you have the option installed.

<Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify an SSID and network key for each user when logging in and connecting using a direct connection.

- To set an SSID, set <Use Custom SSID> to <On>, and enter the SSID.
- To set a network key, set <Use Custom Network Key> to <On>, and enter the network key.
- If <Automatically Enable/Disable Direct Connection at Login/Logout> is set to <On>, direct connections are possible when logging in without pressing <Mobile Portal> ▶ <Direct Connection> ▶ <Enable>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Personal SSID and Network Key Settings>	<Use Custom SSID>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information
	<SSID>: Enter personal SSID.	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information
	<Use Custom Network Key>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information
	<Network Key>: Enter personal network key.	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information
	<Automatically Enable/Disable Direct Connection at Login/Logout>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information

NOTE

- When specifying this setting as an administrator, select <Personal Settings> on the Settings/Registration screen.

<Use Login Name as User Name for Print Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Direct Connection Settings>

Specify whether to display the login name as the user name of print jobs that are printed using direct connection.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Login Name as User Name for Print Jobs>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Sub Line Settings>

ERJ8-0H1

Specify the sub-line settings (wireless LAN or a separate wired LAN) when a wired LAN and a wireless LAN, or a wired LAN and another wired LAN, are both used at the same time.

<IP Address Settings>(P. 869)
<Priority Line for Communication with Mobile Devices>(P. 869)
<Ethernet Driver Settings>(P. 870)
<IEEE 802.1X Settings>(P. 870)
<Firewall Settings>(P. 871)
<Settings for System Data Communication>(P. 871)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<IP Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Specify the IPV4 address for the sub line. **Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<IP Address Settings>	<DHCP>: **On**, Off	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<IP Address>: <**0.0.0.0**>	No	Yes	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Subnet Mask>: <**0.0.0.0**>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Gateway Address>: <**0.0.0.0**>	No	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Priority Line for Communication with Mobile Devices>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Select the line to connect mobile devices to when using both a main line and sub line at the same time.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Priority Line for Communication with Mobile Devices>	<**Main Line**>, <Sub Line>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Ethernet Driver Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Specify the Ethernet driver settings for the sub line. **Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Ethernet Driver Settings>	<Auto Detect>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Communication Mode> (Off): <**Half Duplex**>, <Full Duplex>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Ethernet Type> (Off): <**10BASE-T**>, <100BASE-TX>, <1000BASE-T>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Current Transmission Speed>: Display Only	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<MAC Address>: Display only	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Use EEE>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<IEEE 802.1X Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Specify the settings for IEEE 802.1X. **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use IEEE 802.1X>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Login Name>	Login Name	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Verify Authent. Server Certificate>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Verify Authentication Server Name>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Authentication Server Name>	Authentication Server Name	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use TLS>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Key and Certificate>	Set as Default Key	No	Yes	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Certificate Details> (<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Display Use Location> (Key and Certificate)	No	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Use TTLS>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <TTLS Settings (TTLS Protocol)>: <**MSCHAPv2**>, <PAP>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use PEAP>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<User Name>	Name of the user to be authenticated with IEEE802.1X authentication	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Password>	Password of the user to be authenticated with IEEE802.1X authentication	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Use Login Name as User Name>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you set <IEEE 802.1X Settings> to <On>, the machine will not completely enter the Sleep mode.

<Firewall Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Specify the settings for packet filtering to a sub-line (to permit communication only with devices that have a specific IP address).

<Firewall Settings>(P. 872)

<Settings for System Data Communication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings>

Specify the settings for a DNS and proxy used for specific system data communication over a sub-line.

<Settings for System Data Communication>(P. 875)

<Firewall Settings>

ERJ8-0H2

Specify the settings for packet filtering to a sub-line (to permit communication only with devices that have a specific IP address).

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<IPv4 Address Filter>(P. 872)
<MAC Address Filter>(P. 873)

<IPv4 Address Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Specify the settings for IPv4 address filtering in sub-line communication.

<Outbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Address Filter>

Specify the transmission filter for IPv4 address in the sub line settings. **Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Outbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <Allow>, <**Reject**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv4 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <**Single Address**>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<**Do Not Specify**>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

	• <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>					
	• <Prefix Length> (1 to 32)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

<Inbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <IPv4 Address Filter>

Specify the reception filter for IPv4 address in the sub line settings. **Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Inbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <Off>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <Allow>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 16 IPv4 addresses), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Register> <Single Address>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Details/Edit> <Single Address>, <Range Address> (<First Address>, <Last Address>), <Prefix Address> (<Address>, <Prefix Length>), <Port Number>(<Do Not Specify>, <Specify>) • <Specify>(<Port Number>): <Add>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	• <Prefix Length> (1 to 32)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

<MAC Address Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings>

Configure the MAC address filter settings for the sub line.

<Outbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <MAC Address Filter>

Specify the transmission filter for MAC address in the sub line settings. **Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Outbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 100 MAC Addresses), <Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Inbound Filter>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Firewall Settings> ▶ <MAC Address Filter>

Specify the reception filter for MAC address in the sub line settings. **Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Inbound Filter>	<Use Filter>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Default Policy>: <**Allow**>, <Reject>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Register> (Up to 100 MAC Addresses), <Edit>, <Delete>	No	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Settings for System Data Communication>

ERJ8-0H3

Specify the settings for a DNS and proxy used for specific system data communication over a sub-line.

<DNS Server Address Settings>(P. 875)
<Proxy Settings>(P. 875)
<Select Line to Use>(P. 876)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<DNS Server Address Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication>

Specify the DNS server address settings for the sub line. **Setting the DNS of the Sub Line(P. 191)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<DNS Server Address Settings>	<Primary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Secondary DNS Server>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Proxy Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication>

Specify the proxy settings for the sub line. **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Proxy Settings>	<Use Proxy>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Server Address> (IP Address or FQDN)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Port Number>: 1 to **80** to 65535	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Set Authentication>	<Use Proxy Authentication>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<User Name> (24 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Password> (24 characters maximum)	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Select Line to Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Network> ▶ <Sub Line Settings> ▶ <Settings for System Data Communication>

Select the line to use for the sub line. **Selecting the line to use(P. 192)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Select Line to Use>	<Main Line>, <Sub Line>	No	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<External Interface>

ERJ8-0H4

Specify the settings for external interfaces.

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<USB Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface>

Specify the USB connection settings.

<Use as USB Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings>

You can set whether to use the machine as a USB device.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use as USB Device>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If this is set to <Off>, print and scan jobs from a computer connected via USB cable cannot be performed.

<Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings>

You can set whether to use the MEAP driver for USB input device connections.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Depending on the type of MEAP application that uses device such as a keyboard or card reader, you may need to set this to <On>. To check whether you need to set this to <On>, see the manual for the MEAP application you are using, or contact your dealer or service representative.

<Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings>

You can set whether to use the MEAP driver for USB external storage.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use MEAP Driver for USB Storage Device>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Depending on the type of MEAP application that uses USB external memory device, you may need to set this to <On>. To check whether you need to set this to <On>, see the manual for the MEAP application you are using, or contact your dealer or service representative.

<Use USB Storage Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings>

You can set whether to allow the use of USB external storage devices.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use USB Storage Device>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Auto Installation of Printer Driver>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <External Interface> ▶ <USB Settings>

This enables you to prevent a new printer driver from being installed when switching machines with multiple machines connected via USB.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Auto Installation of Printer Driver>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Set this to <Off> when connecting multiple machines.

<Accessibility>

ERJ8-0H5

Specify the settings for the accessibility functions for people who have difficulty seeing the display or entering data.

<Key Repetition Settings>(P. 879)
<Acceptance Delay for Repeated Presses>(P. 879)
<Invert Screen Colors>(P. 879)
<Use Flick Function>(P. 880)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Key Repetition Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Accessibility>

You can set the amount of time before characters start repeating when you hold down a key on the touch panel display, as well as the interval between repetitions.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Key Repetition Settings>	<**Standard**>, <Slightly Slow>, <Slow>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Acceptance Delay for Repeated Presses>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Accessibility>

You can specify the amount of time during which the machine does not accept the second and subsequent key inputs when a key on the on-screen keyboard is unintentionally pressed repeatedly.
Configure this setting in cases such as when you intend to enter a single character, but the same character is entered repeatedly.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Acceptance Delay for Repeated Presses>	<On>, <**Off**> • When <On> is selected: 0.1 to 1.0 (sec.)	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Invert Screen Colors>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Accessibility>

You can invert the screen colors of the touch panel display. If you find it hard to view the display even after adjusting the brightness, try specifying this setting.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Invert Screen Colors>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Flick operations and drag-and-drop operations cannot be used when <Invert Screen Colors> is set to <On>. **Operate in the same manner as with a smartphone (flick/drag-and-drop)(P. 227)**
- <Invert Screen Colors> is enabled for the following screens.
  - Copy
  - Scan and Send
  - Fax
  - Print
  - Scan and Store
  - Access Stored Files
  - Fax/I-Fax Inbox
  - Dest./Fwd. Settings
  - Status Monitor
  - Error screen (no paper)

<Use Flick Function>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Accessibility>

You can set whether to use flick operations.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Flick Function>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The following functions are not affected by this setting.
  - Flick operations on the <Display Image> screen
  - MEAP applications

<Adjustment/Maintenance>

ERJ8-0H6

Specify the settings for adjustments such as the image quality and for the machine's auto cleaning function.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 881)
<Adjust Action>(P. 881)
<Maintenance>(P. 881)
<Output Consumables Report>(P. 881)

<Adjust Image Quality>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance>

Specify the image quality adjustment for copying and printing.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

<Adjust Action>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance>

Specify the settings for adjusting the machine's actions.

<Adjust Action>(P. 891)

<Maintenance>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance>

Specify the settings for the machine's auto cleaning function.

<Maintenance>(P. 892)

<Output Consumables Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance>

This section describes reports regarding consumables.

<Output Consumables Report>(P. 898)

<Adjust Image Quality>

ERJ8-0H7

Specify the image quality adjustment for copying and printing.

- **<Auto Adjust Gradation>(P. 882)**
- **<Correct Density>(P. 882)**
- **<Auto Correct Color Shift>(P. 883)**
- **<Adjust Image Position for Each Paper Drawer>(P. 883)**
- **<Auto POP Calibration>(P. 883)**
- **<Settings for Auto Full Calibration>(P. 884)**
- **<Full Color Printing Vividness Settings>(P. 884)**
- **<Fine Adjust Zoom>(P. 884)**
- **<Adjust Toner Volume Used for Color Printing>(P. 885)**
- **<Special Processing>(P. 885)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Auto Adjust Gradation>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

If the gradation of the printing is significantly different from the original document, this correction adjusts the printing so that it more closely matches the original document. **Adjusting Gradation(P. 1069)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Adjust Gradation>	<Thin, Plain 1/2 Recycled>: <Full Adjust>, <Quick Adjust> <Plain 3, Heavy>: <Adjust> <For POP Printing>: <Full Adjust>, <Quick Adjust>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

IMPORTANT

- It is recommended that you select <Full Adjust> when performing an automatic gradation adjustment. Select <Quick Adjust> for a quick, but less complete adjustment between regular full adjustment recalibrations.

NOTE

- Test pages are not counted as part of the copy or print total page counts.

<Correct Density>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

If the density of the printing is significantly different from the original document, this adjusts the scan density to be closer to the original. **Adjusting Density(P. 1071)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Correct Density>	<Copy>: <Light>, <Dark> (9 levels) <B&W Send/Scan and Store (Other Than Mail Box)>: <Light>, <Dark> (9 levels) <Color Scan for Send/Scan and Store>: <Light>, <Dark> (9 levels)	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Auto Correct Color Shift>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

If the colors of printing run or blur, color mismatch (color misregistration) may have occurred. This correction adjusts the printing so that color mismatch does not occur. **Correcting Color Mismatch(P. 1072)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Correct Color Shift>	<Start>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Adjust Image Position for Each Paper Drawer>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

Adjust the print position for each paper source to improve the shifted letters or images. **Adjusting the Print Position(P. 1076)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Image Position for Each Paper Drawer>	Paper source selection: <Start Printing>	Yes	Yes	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Auto POP Calibration>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

You can change the type of calibration that will be performed automatically. In addition to ordinary calibration, a calibration to correct hue mismatch that has occurred in POP printing. When [POP Printing Optimization] is configured on the printer driver, always specifying <On> is recommended. For more information on [POP Printing Optimization], see the manuals for the relevant drivers on the online manual website. **Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity(P. 1073)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto POP Calibration>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Settings for Auto Full Calibration>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

The machine performs automatic adjustment (calibration) in order to prevent color misregistration and ensure that the original color intensity is correctly reproduced. You can set the timing and frequency for performing calibration. **Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity(P. 1073)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Settings for Auto Full Calibration>	<Timing for Auto Full Calibration at Startup> : <After Printing First Job>, <After Main Power ON>	Yes	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Full Color Printing Vividness Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

This setting enables you to make colors more saturated when performing color printing. **Making Colors More Vivid(P. 1075)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Full Color Printing Vividness Settings>	<Standard>, <Level 1>, <Level 2>	Yes	Yes	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is only effective for copy jobs and print jobs of documents (scanned data) stored in mail boxes.

<Fine Adjust Zoom>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

If the size of the image copied is significantly different from the original document, fine adjustment is performed so that the printing more closely matches the size of the original document. **Adjusting Image Size(P. 1078)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fine Adjust Zoom>	<X>: -1.0 % to 0 % to +1.0 % (in 0.1 % increments) <Y>: -1.0 % to 0 % to +1.0 % (in 0.1 % increments)	Yes	Yes	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Adjust Toner Volume Used for Color Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

By adjusting the amount of toner used when color printing, you may be able to reduce problems such as streaks and irregularities. **Reducing Toner Used When Color Printing(P. 1079)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Toner Volume Used for Color Printing>	<**Off**>, <Level 1>, <Level 2>	Yes	No	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Special Processing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality>

Use a range of processes to resolve problems that arise due to factors such as the paper type, the material used, or its condition. **<Special Processing>(P. 886)**

<Special Processing>

ERJ8-0H8

Use a range of processes to resolve problems that arise due to factors such as the paper type, the material used, or its condition.

- **<Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>(P. 886)**
- **<Reduce Waterdrop Pattern>(P. 886)**
- **<POP Print Settings>(P. 887)**
- **<Adjust Toner Volume Used for POP Printing>(P. 887)**
- **<Adjust Fixing Temperature>(P. 887)**
- **<Curl Prevention Mode>(P. 888)**
- **<Adjust Paper Separation in Transfer Area>(P. 888)**
- **<Adjust Paper Feed Interval for 2-Sided Printing>(P. 889)**
- **<Heavy Paper Fill Area Image Adjustment Mode>(P. 889)**
- **<Envelope Sealing Prevention Mode>(P. 889)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

You can set <Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode> for when a splattered image, white patches, streaks, etc. appear on the halftone images of twosided print jobs. Immediately after you turn ON the machine in a low temperature environment, if the halftone reproduction of the printout becomes significantly different from the original document, set this mode to <On>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set <Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>, the printing speed for the first sheet becomes slower.

<Reduce Waterdrop Pattern>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

Set this to <On> if the printed image shows uneven density in a pattern like a water drop.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Reduce Waterdrop Pattern>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Setting to <On> may change the print quality.

<POP Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

If the quality of the printout is not acceptable when printing with [POP Printing Optimization] configured on the printer driver, specifying <On> is recommended. It will result in POP prints with a more vivid color tone. For more information on [POP Printing Optimization], see the manuals for the relevant drivers on the online manual website.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<POP Print Settings>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you select <Off>, normal printing will be performed even if [POP Printing Optimization] is set in the printer driver.
- If you select <On>, the print speed will be slower.
- When [POP Printing Optimization] is configured, it is recommended that you also configure the following items.
  - <Auto POP Calibration>
- Paper sizes/paper types supporting POP printing
  - Paper size: Standard size paper is recommended. For information on the paper sizes supported by the machine, see **Available Paper(P. 118)** .
  - Paper Type: Thin*1, Plain 1*1, Plain 2, Plain 3, Color, Recycled 1, Recycled 2, Letterhead 1*1, Letterhead 2, Letterhead 3, Letterhead 4, Letterhead 5, Heavy 1, Heavy 2, Coated 1, Coated 2, Coated 3
    *1: There will be a margin of 8 mm on the lead edge.

<Adjust Toner Volume Used for POP Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

Set this if text smudging or toner scattering occurs when performing POP printing with [POP Printing Optimization] set. Set <Level 1> to improve text smudging. Set <Level 2> to improve toner scattering.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Toner Volume Used for POP Printing>	<**Off**>, <Level 1>, <Level 2>	Yes	No	No	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Adjust Fixing Temperature>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

You can reduce image quality problems that occur due to an inappropriate fixing unit temperature by adjusting the fixing temperature.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Fixing Temperature>	<Low>, <**Standard**>, <High 1>, <High 2>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Set this in the following cases. The print results may be improved.
  - <Low>: Set this when the same unintended image is repeated, as indicated below.



  - <High 1>: Set this when the toner of the printed images peels off.
  - <High 2>: Set this when the improvements of <High 1> are insufficient.
- Set <Standard> to not use either setting.
- The printing speed is slower when <High 2> is set.
- Toner peeling may be able to be improved without changing this setting, by changing the paper type and usage environment.

<Curl Prevention Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

You can set <Curl Prevention Mode> to reduce curling on the end of paper due to the heat and pressure of the fixing unit during printing.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Curl Prevention Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If this setting is set to <On>, the printing speed decreases. In addition, printouts may be faded.

<Adjust Paper Separation in Transfer Area>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

Set this to <On> if paper jams occur due the paper getting caught in the ITB unit.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Paper Separation in Transfer Area>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Adjust Paper Feed Interval for 2-Sided Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

Configure this setting if the following symptoms occur when performing 2-sided printing:

- Images are not printed in the intended size.
- Printed images are shifted.
- A paper jam or printing error occurs.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Adjust Paper Feed Interval for 2-Sided Printing>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Heavy Paper Fill Area Image Adjustment Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

The finish quality may be able to be improved by enabling this setting when using heavy paper without a smooth surface.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Heavy Paper Fill Area Image Adjustment Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set this setting to <On> when using paper with a smooth surface, fixing problems may occur.

<Envelope Sealing Prevention Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Special Processing>

You can set <Envelope Sealing Prevention Mode> to prevent the glue on envelope flaps from melting and sealing due to the heat and pressure of the fixing unit during envelope printing.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Envelope Sealing Prevention Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is only enabled during envelope printing.
- If this setting is set to <On>, the quality of the image may be adversely affected.

<Adjust Action>

ERJ8-0H9

Specify the settings for adjusting the machine's actions.

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Start Key Touch Recognition Delay>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Action>

Adjust the touch time required to begin startup processing.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Start Key Touch Recognition Delay>	-1 to **0** to +7	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Maintenance>

ERJ8-0HA

Specify the settings for the machine's auto cleaning function.

<Clean Feeder>(P. 892)
<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>(P. 892)
<Check Maintenance Method>(P. 892)
<Initialize After Replacing Parts>(P. 893)
<Control Detected Condensation>(P. 893)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Clean Feeder>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance>

If streaks appear on originals scanned with the feeder or paper that is printed, execute <Clean Feeder>. **Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Clean Feeder>	<Start>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance>

If printed paper is dirty, execute <Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>	Paper Select, <Start>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Check Maintenance Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance>

For information on how to replace consumables and consumable parts, or remove jammed paper, see the sample video.

<Check Maintenance Method>(P. 894)

<Initialize After Replacing Parts>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance>

You must initialize the printer after replacing parts. Initialize the printer for each replaced part.

<Initialize After Replacing Parts>(P. 897)

<Control Detected Condensation>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance>

Set whether to start the process to remove condensation when condensation is detected inside the machine. If you set this mode to <On>, the process to remove condensation is automatically performed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Control Detected Condensation>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	No	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Jobs to Restrict When Condensation is Detected>: <**Only Received Jobs**>, <All Jobs>					

IMPORTANT

- During the process to remove condensation, printing may not be performed correctly resulting in the paper being blank.
- To maintain the effect of the process to remove condensation going when this mode is set to <On>, it is necessary to keep the machine's power ON.

NOTE

- Print jobs that are carried out during the process to remove condensation are restricted by the <Jobs to Restrict When Condensation is Detected> settings.
  - <Only Received Jobs>: Regardless of the <<Use Fax Memory Lock>>/<<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>> settings, the received fax/I-fax data is stored in Memory RX Inbox and cannot be printed during the process to remove condensation. Reports that are automatically output at the specified time cannot be printed.
  - <All Jobs>: All print data cannot be printed during the process to remove condensation.
- If you select <On> and press <OK>, a screen asking whether to immediately perform the process to remove condensation is displayed. If you want to immediately start the process to remove condensation, press <Yes>.

<Check Maintenance Method>

ERJ8-0HC

For information on how to replace consumables and remove jammed paper, see the sample video.

<Replace Toner Cartridge>(P. 894)
<Replace Waste Toner Container>(P. 894)
<Replace Fixing Assembly>(P. 894)
<Replace ITB Unit>(P. 895)
<Replace Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>(P. 895)
<Replace Roller Kit>(P. 895)
<Remove Jammed Paper (Example)>(P. 896)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Replace Toner Cartridge>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing toner cartridges. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace Toner Cartridge>	Displays the toner cartridge replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Replace Waste Toner Container>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing the waste toner container. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace Waste Toner Container>	Displays the waste toner container replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Replace Fixing Assembly>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing the fixing assembly. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace Fixing Assembly>	Displays the fixing assembly replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Replace ITB Unit>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing the ITB unit. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace ITB Unit>	Displays the ITB unit replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Replace Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing the secondary transfer outer roller. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>	Displays the secondary transfer outer roller replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Replace Roller Kit>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for replacing the roller kit. You can play this sample video even when replacement is not necessary, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Replace Roller Kit>	Displays the roller kit replacement method	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Remove Jammed Paper (Example)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Check Maintenance Method>

Plays the sample video explaining the method for removing jammed paper. You can play this sample video even when paper is not jammed, so that you may understand the process in advance.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remove Jammed Paper (Example)>	Displays the method for clearing paper jams	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Initialize After Replacing Parts>

ERJ8-0HE

You must initialize the printer after replacing parts. Initialize the printer for each replaced part.

<Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>(P. 897)

<Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Maintenance> ▶ <Initialize After Replacing Parts>

After replacing the secondary transfer outer roller, execute <Secondary Transfer Outer Roller> to perform initialization.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Secondary Transfer Outer Roller>	Yes, No	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Output Consumables Report>

ERJ8-0HF

This section describes reports regarding consumables.

<Consumables Status Report>(P. 898)
<Consumables Status and Log Report>(P. 898)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Consumables Status Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Output Consumables Report>

You can check reports on the status of the consumables in the machine.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Consumables Status Report>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Consumables Status and Log Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Output Consumables Report>

You can check reports on the information of the consumables in use and their replacement log.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Toner Cartridge Log Report>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Function Settings>

ERJ8-0HH

Specify the function settings for copying, printing, faxing, and other operations.

<Common>(P. 899)
<Copy>(P. 899)
<Printer>(P. 899)
<Send>(P. 899)
<Receive/Forward>(P. 899)
<Store/Access Files>(P. 900)
<Print>(P. 900)

<Common>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify settings that are common to all the functions, such as Paper Feed Settings, Paper Output Settings, Print Settings, Scan Settings, and Generate File.

<Common>(P. 901)

<Copy>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings for the copy function.

<Copy>(P. 921)

<Printer>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings for the printer functions.

<Printer>(P. 924)

<Send>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings for the send function.

<Send>(P. 942)

<Receive/Forward>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings for the receive and forwarding functions.

<Receive/Forward>(P. 978)

<Store/Access Files>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Store/Access Files>(P. 994)

<Print>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings>

Specify the settings for the print function.

<Print>(P. 1003)

<Common>

ERJ8-0HJ

Specify settings that are common to all the functions, such as Paper Feed Settings, Paper Output Settings, Print Settings, Scan Settings, and Generate File.

<Paper Feed Settings>(P. 901)
<Paper Output Settings>(P. 901)
<Print Settings>(P. 901)
<Scan Settings>(P. 901)
<Generate File>(P. 901)
<Set Authentication Method>(P. 902)

<Paper Feed Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the Paper Feed Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Paper Feed Settings>(P. 903)

<Paper Output Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the Paper Output Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Paper Output Settings>(P. 905)

<Print Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the Print Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Print Settings>(P. 906)

<Scan Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the Scan Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Scan Settings>(P. 911)

<Generate File>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the Generate File settings that are common to all the functions.

<Generate File>(P. 915)

<Set Authentication Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common>

Specify the settings for the authentication methods that are common to all the functions.

<Set Authentication Method>(P. 919)

<Paper Feed Settings>

ERJ8-0HK

Specify the Paper Feed Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Paper Source Auto Selection>(P. 903)
<Switch Paper Feed Method>(P. 903)
<Suspended Job Timeout>(P. 904)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Paper Source Auto Selection>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Feed Settings>

By setting <On> for some paper source under this setting, paper is automatically fed from this paper source. When printing from a computer, a paper source is automatically selected.
When copying or printing by using <<Access Stored Files>>, a paper source is automatically selected depending on the paper specified in <Select Paper>. **Automatically Selecting the Appropriate Paper Source for a Specific Function (P. 68)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Source Auto Selection>	<Copy>, <Printer>, <Access Stored Files>, <Receive/Fax>, <Other>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <MP Tray>: <On>, **<Off>**	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• Other paper sources: **<On>**, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Printer>: <Use Group>: On, **Off**	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Switch Paper Feed Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Feed Settings>

When regularly using paper with logos such as letterheads, while printing in both one-sided and two-sided, you can set this setting to <Print Side Priority> to print the first page on the front side for both one-sided and two-sided, without having to change the paper orientation. **Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Switch Paper Feed Method>	<MP Tray> and other paper sources: **<Speed Priority>**, <Print Side Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- The settings for Automatic Paper Selection (<Auto> in <Select Paper>) and <Paper Source Auto Selection> are disabled for paper sources with <Print Side Priority> set. The print speed is also slower when performing one-sided printing.

NOTE

- <Print Side Priority> is only enabled when paper that can be printed on both sides is set (**Paper Available for Two-Sided Copying/ Two-Sided Printing(P. 123)**). For other paper, the message <Load paper.> appears and the paper is not fed, or the <Print Side Priority> setting is disabled.
- For instructions on loading paper, see **Loading Preprinted Paper(P. 52)** .

<Suspended Job Timeout>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Feed Settings>

If this setting is set to <On> and a job is suspended due to a lack of paper, etc., the machine automatically prints the next job after the specified time period.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Suspended Job Timeout>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	0 to **5** to 999min.	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If a job is suspended because paper has run out during the job, the next job is not processed even after the designated suspension time elapses.
- To automatically delete suspended jobs, see **<Auto Delete Suspended Jobs>(P. 908)** .

<Paper Output Settings>

ERJ8-0HL

Specify the Paper Output Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Job Separator Between Jobs>(P. 905)
<Job Separator Between Copies>(P. 905)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Job Separator Between Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Output Settings>

This enables you to insert the specified paper at the start of each job when multiple jobs are printed consecutively.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job Separator Between Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Change> (select a paper source)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Job Separator Between Copies>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Paper Output Settings>

This enables you to insert the specified paper each number of copy sets to divide the sets. If you set this, paper is inserted when printing with <Collate (Page Order)>, <Offset>, or <Staple>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job Separator Between Copies>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Copies> (1 to **10** to 9999)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Change> (select a paper source)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you are using the Group (Same Pages) mode, you cannot insert job separation sheets between copy sets.

<Print Settings>

ERJ8-0HR

Specify the Print Settings that are common to all the functions.

<Print Priority>(P. 906)
<Text/Photo Priority When Recognized as B&W by ACS>(P. 906)
<Chromatic Color Conversion for Two Colors Printing>(P. 907)
<Default Settings for Output Report>(P. 908)
<Auto Delete Suspended Jobs>(P. 908)
<Action When Remaining Toner Is Low>(P. 908)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Print Priority>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

A job that has a higher set priority can be set to print after the job currently being processed is complete.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Print Priority>	<Copy>: **1**, 2, 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Printer>: 1, **2**, 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Access Strd. Files>, <Receive/Fax>, <Other>: 1, 2, **3**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If the same printing priority has been specified for multiple functions, printing starts with the first processed print job.
- Priority printing does not take place until the current job is complete. However, if the current job is paused, the printing of another job may start, depending on its settings.

<Text/Photo Priority When Recognized as B&W by ACS>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

You can set the quality to use when an original is detected to be black-and-white with auto color selection.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Text/Photo Priority When Recognized as B&W by ACS>	<Text Priority>, <Photo Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set <Text Priority> in this setting and your original is determined as black-and-white by the <Auto (Color/B&W)> mode in <Select Color>, the original is processed as if you selected <Text> as the original type setting, even if you select a mode other than <Text> for <Original Type> in <Copy>.

<Chromatic Color Conversion for Two Colors Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

You can select the specified color to use when printing using the two-color mode, which prints in black and a specified color. The two-color mode can be set for copying or printing. This setting is reflected in both the two-color mode for printing and the two-color mode for copying.

- <All Chromatic Colors>: When specifying the color to use for all chromatic colors other than black in the original (or image data).
- <Similar Chromatic Clr.>: When using the color for only the specified color (or similar color) and using black for all other chromatic colors in the original (or image data).

Example Replaced Colors and Settings

When the two-color mode is specified for an original (or image data) including the following colors, the colors are replaced as indicated below.

- Colors included in the original (or image data): Red, orange, blue, black
- Red specified for the two-color mode

Original (or image data)	<All Chromatic Colors>	<Similar Chromatic Clr.>
		
Red	Red	Red
Orange	Red	Red
Blue	Red	Black
Black	Black	Black

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Chromatic Color Conversion for Two Colors Printing>	<All Chromatic Colors>, <Similar Chromatic Clr.>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Default Settings for Output Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

Specify the default settings used when reports such as the TX Report and Communication Management Report are printed.

<Default Settings for Output Report>(P. 910)

<Auto Delete Suspended Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

If this setting is set to <On> and a job is suspended due to a paper jam, etc., the machine automatically deletes the job after the specified time period.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Delete Suspended Jobs>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Time Until Auto Delete> (0 to 5 to 999 min.)	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- To retain a suspended job without automatically deleting it, see **<Suspended Job Timeout>(P. 904)** .

<Action When Remaining Toner Is Low>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

You can set the print operation when the remaining toner in the toner cartridge is low. You can also set whether to display the restock toner message on the bottom of the screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Action When Remaining Toner Is Low>	<Continue Printing>, <Display Warning Screen>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	When <Continue Printing> is selected: <Display Toner Cart. Warning Msg. At Screen Bottom>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Default Settings for Output Report>

ERJ8-0HS

Specify the default settings used when reports such as the TX Report and Communication Management Report are printed.

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<2-Sided Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings> ▶ <Default Settings for Output Report>

Specify whether to print the report on both sides of the paper.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<2-Sided Printing>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Scan Settings>

ERJ8-0HU

Specify the Scan Settings that are common to all the functions.

- **<Feeder Jam Recovery Method>(P. 911)**
- **<Streak Prevention>(P. 912)**
- **<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan>(P. 912)**
- **<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Scan from Feeder>(P. 912)**
- **<Remote Scan Gamma Value>(P. 913)**
- **<Auto Online>(P. 913)**
- **<Auto Offline>(P. 913)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Feeder Jam Recovery Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

You can select whether scanning will start again from the first page of the original or the page of the original in which scanning was interrupted if a paper jam occurs in the feeder.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Feeder Jam Recovery Method>	<From 1st Page>, <From Suspnd. Original>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Direct sending of faxes does not support this setting. If a paper jam occurs while performing direct sending, the job will be canceled. In this case, set the job again.
- Depending on the location of a paper jam, it can be difficult to determine whether document scanning has been completed. If you have set <From Suspnd. Original> for <Feeder Jam Recovery Method> and you do not find until which page the document has been scanned, it is recommended that you cancel the job, and then execute it again.

NOTE

- Select one of the following.
  - <From 1st Page>: Place the originals in the feeder again, and then restart scanning from the first page of the document. The originals will be fed automatically until the page of the document in which scanning is interrupted.
  - <From Suspnd. Original>: Place the originals that were not scanned because of a paper jam in the feeder, and then start scanning all the remaining originals again.

<Streak Prevention>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

You can set whether to detect and prevent streaks when scanning originals.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Streak Prevention>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When <On> is selected, extremely thin lines may be detected as streaks.

<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

You can set whether priority is given to scanning speed or to image quality when performing black and white scanning.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Black & White Scan>	<Fax/I-Fax Send Jobs>: <Speed Priority>, <Quality Priority> <All Send Jobs Except Fax/I-Fax Jobs>: <Speed Priority>, <Quality Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Even if <Quality Priority> is set, the setting is not enabled when sending a fax with <Direct Send>.

<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Scan from Feeder>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

You can set whether priority is given to scanning speed or to image quality when scanning originals from the feeder.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Speed/Image Quality Priority for Scan from Feeder>	<Speed Priority>, <Quality Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to the Copy function and MEAP applications using the Copy function.

<Remote Scan Gamma Value>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

You can set the gamma value to use when scanning color documents into your computer. Select the gamma value most suited to your computer settings so that you can print the document with the optimal density.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remote Scan Gamma Value>	<Gamma 1.0>, <Gamma 1.4>, <**Gamma 1.8**>, <Gamma 2.2>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Auto Online>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

Set this to <On> to automatically enable the remote scanner function when you press <Remote Scanner> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Online>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- When the remote scanner function is enabled, you cannot use <Copy> and <Scan and Store>.

NOTE

- You can specify the time period in which you are logged out and the touch panel display returns to the default setting automatically.

<Auto Offline>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Scan Settings>

When the remote scanner function is enabled (when the machine is online), scanning is not possible with <Copy> or <Scan and Store>. If you set <Auto Offline> to <On>, the machine automatically goes offline when the time set in <Auto Reset Time> in <Preferences> (Settings/Register) has elapsed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Offline>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If <Auto Reset Time> is set to <0>, the machine automatically goes offline after approximately two minutes.
- You can specify the time period in which you are logged out and the touch panel display returns to the default setting automatically.

<Generate File>

ERJ8-0HW

Specify the Generate File settings that are common to all the functions.

- **<Image Quality Level for Compact>(P. 915)**
- **<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>(P. 915)**
- **<OOXML Settings>(P. 916)**
- **<Include Background Images in Word File>(P. 916)**
- **<Specify Minimum PDF Version>(P. 917)**
- **<Format PDF to PDF/A>(P. 917)**
- **<256-bit AES Settings for Encrypted PDF>(P. 918)**
- **<Rotate Scanned Image When Generating PDF>(P. 918)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Image Quality Level for Compact>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

When using <Scan and Send> or <Scan and Store>, you can set the image quality level in the file format when PDF(Compact) or XPS(Compact) is selected.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Image Quality Level for Compact>	<Image Level in Text/Photo Mode or Photo Mode>: <Data Size Priority>, <**Normal**>, <Quality Priority> <Image Level in Text Mode>: <Data Size Priority>, <**Normal**>, <Quality Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This setting is disabled when sending a fax or I-fax.

NOTE

- If you scan an original with many colors when <Text> is selected for the original type, the data size and image quality will vary following compression, according to the selected image level. However, if the original is in monochrome or has few colors, it does not matter which image level you select.

<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

If you select <OCR (Text Searchable)> for <PDF>, <XPS>, or <OOXML> as the file format, you can set the Smart Scan setting, and set the number of characters used for the Auto (OCR) in File Name. Smart Scan is a mode that determines the text direction and rotates the data, so that the document will be in the correct orientation when viewing the document on a computer. Auto (OCR) in File Name is a mode that automatically uses the first text

scanned by OCR in the document as its file name. Auto (OCR) in File Name is specified in <File Name> in <Options> on the Scan and Send screen. **Setting a File Name(P. 509)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<OCR (Text Searchable) Settings>	<Smart Scan>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Max Number of Char. for File Name>: 1 to **24**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You cannot use the Auto (OCR) in File Name mode and the Encrypted PDF mode at the same time when sending a file.

<OOXML Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

You can specify the background image level, color image recognition level, and color image line width recognition when creating files with Office Open XML file format.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<OOXML Settings>	<Background Image Level>: <Quality Priority>, <**Standard**>, <Data Size Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Color Image Recognition Level>: <High>, <**Standard**>, <Do Not Recognize>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Color Image Line Width Recognition>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is disabled when sending a fax or I-fax.
- Color image settings are only valid with PowerPoint.

<Include Background Images in Word File>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

When generating Word files from scanned originals, you can delete the image detected as the background in the Word files. It becomes easier to edit Word files because unnecessary images are deleted.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Include Background Images in Word File>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Specify Minimum PDF Version>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

You can specify the minimum version to assign when generating PDF files.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify Minimum PDF Version>	<Do Not Specify>, <1.5>, <1.6>, <1.7>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Depending on the functions set for the PDF files, the version assigned may be higher than that specified with this setting.

<Format PDF to PDF/A>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

You can create PDF files compliant with PDF/A. This is suited for long-term storage because it guarantees that the visual quality of the PDF does not change with the machine or viewing software.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Format PDF to PDF/A>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <PDF/A-1a>, <PDF/A-1b>, <PDF/A-2a>, <PDF/A-2b>, <PDF/A-2u>, <PDF/A-3a>, <PDF/A-3b>, <PDF/A-3u>					

NOTE

- This setting is linked with the following default settings:
  - <File Format> in <Scan and Send>
  - <File Format> in <Scan and Store> (The compliant version is fixed to <PDF/A-1b>.)
  - <File Format> in <Forwarding Settings>
- This setting is disabled when sending a fax or I-fax.
- The following PDF functions cannot be set if <Format PDF to PDF/A> is set to <On>.
  - Encryption
  - Visible Signature

<256-bit AES Settings for Encrypted PDF>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

When generating an encrypted PDF file, you can select <Acrobat 3.0 or Later/40-bit RC4>, <Acrobat 6.0 or Later/128-bit RC4>, <Acrobat 7.0 or Later/128-bit AES>, or <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES> as the PDF encryption level. If you want to use <Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES> rather than <Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent/256-bit AES> as the encryption level, use this setting to change the selections you can make.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<256-bit AES Settings for Encrypted PDF>	<Acrobat 9.0 or Equivalent>, <**Acrobat 10.0 or Equivalent**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is disabled when sending a fax or I-fax.

<Rotate Scanned Image When Generating PDF>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Generate File>

The following operations are performed when scanning and generating a PDF file.

- <On>: The data to generate is rotated.
- <Off>: The data to generate is not rotated, but information for rotating the image is added to the PDF header to enable it to be rotated in a viewer.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Rotate Scanned Image When Generating PDF>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Set the vertical orientation of the original in <Orig. Content Orientation>.
- If <On> is set, file generation takes slightly longer compared to <Off>.
- PDF files generated with <Off> set may be displayed without the correct rotation, depending on the viewer.
- Even if <On> is set, the generated PDF files may be the same as when <Off> is set, depending on the type of PDF file and the conditions when scanning.

<Set Authentication Method>

ERJ8-0HX

Specify the settings for the authentication methods that are common to all the functions.

<Information Used for LDAP Server Authentication>(P. 919)
<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>(P. 919)
<Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>(P. 920)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Information Used for LDAP Server Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Set Authentication Method>

You can specify the authentication method for accessing an LDAP server.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Information Used for LDAP Server Authentication>	<Device Settings>, <Device Login Auth. Info.>, <Registered Info. for Each User>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When <Device Settings> is set
  - The information set in **Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)** is used.
- When <Device Login Auth. Info.> is set
  - The authentication information used when logging into the machine is used.
- When <Registered Info. for Each User> is set
  - The authentication information of the LDAP server is registered for each user.
- <Device Login Auth. Info.> is available only when using the same authentication information for logging in to the machine and accessing the LDAP server, and when using a login service which supports Integrated Authentication. For information whether the login service you are using supports Integrated Authentication, contact your dealer or service representative.
- When <Registered Info. for Each User> is selected, each user sets the user name and password used for LDAP authentication on the Send Basic Features screen ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ <LDAP Server Authentication Information>.

<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Set Authentication Method>

You can specify the authentication method for accessing an SMTP server.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Information Used for SMTP Server Authentication>	<Device Settings>, <Registered Info. for Each User>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you select <Device Settings>
  - Uses the information that was set in <<Communication Settings: Authentication Settings>> (**Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**).
- If you select <Registered Info. for Each User>
  - Registers and uses SMTP server authentication information for each user.
- If <Registered Info. for Each User> is selected, each user has to press <Scan and Send> ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ set the user name and password used for SMTP authentication in <SMTP Server Authentication Information>.

<Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Set Authentication Method>

You can specify the authentication method for accessing a file server.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Information Used for File TX/Browsing Authentication>	<Standard>, <Device Login Auth. Info.>, <Registered Info. for Each User>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- <Device Login Auth. Info.> is only valid for SMB and WebDAV.
- When <Standard> is set
  - The information set in **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)** is used.
- When <Device Login Auth. Info.> is set
  - The authentication information used when logging into the machine is used.
- When <Registered Info. for Each User> is set
  - The authentication information of the file server is registered for each user.
- When <Registered Info. for Each User> is selected, each user sets the user name and password used for file server authentication on the Send Basic Features screen ▶ ☰ ▶ <Register/Edit Information for Each User> ▶ <Authentication Information for File TX/Browsing>.

<Copy>

ERJ8-0HY

Specify the settings for the copy function.

- **<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>(P. 921)**
- **<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>(P. 921)**
- **<Change Default Settings>(P. 921)**
- **<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 922)**
- **<Auto Collate>(P. 922)**
- **<Select Color Settings for Copy>(P. 922)**
- **<Job Separator Between Groups>(P. 923)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

You can register a combination of settings frequently used when copying to a single button. You can also assign a name to the button. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>	<M1> to <M9>:<Register>, <Rename>, <Delete>, <Check Content>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

You can select whether to display a confirmation screen when recalling "Favorite Settings."

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Change Default Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

You can change the settings registered as default for the <Copy> function. **Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Settings>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Register Options Shortcuts>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

You can register/change modes in the shortcut keys displayed on the Copy Basic Features screen. This feature is useful when you want to register functions frequently used from <Options> and <Favorite Settings>. **Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Options Shortcuts>	Shortcut 1: Each mode, <**Orig. Content Orientation**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Shortcut 2: Each mode, <**2-Sided**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Shortcut 3: Each mode, <**Density**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Shortcut 4: Each mode, <Original Type>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Shortcut 5: Each mode, <Favorite Settings>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Auto Collate>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

If this setting is set to <On>, the machine can automatically switch to <Collate (Page Order)> for the finishing mode when originals are placed in the feeder. This is useful when making multiple sets of copies, because you do not need to remember to select the Finishing mode.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Collate>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Select Color Settings for Copy>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

You can restrict the use of the color mode in <Select Color> when copying.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Select Color Settings for Copy>	<Use Auto (Color/Black & White)>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Full Color>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Single Color>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Two Colors>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Job Separator Between Groups>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Copy>

When copying two copies or more with <Group (Same Pages)> in <Finishing>, you can insert sheets between each page group. If you select <On>, select a paper source.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job Separator Between Groups>	<On>, <**Off**> <Change> (Select Paper Source)	Yes	Yes	No	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Printer>

ERJ8-0J0

Specify the settings for the printer functions.

- **<Output Report>(P. 825)**
- **<Printer Settings>(P. 924)**
- **<Restrict Printer Jobs>(P. 925)**
- **<PDL Selection (Plug and Play)>(P. 925)**
- **<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>(P. 925)**
- **<PS Password Settings>(P. 926)**
- **<Paper Feed Mode When Using PCL Emulation>(P. 926)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Output Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

You can print reports for the machine settings.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Output Report>	**Output Report(P. 928)**	-	-	-	-	-

<Printer Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

Specify the printer settings.

- For more information, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Custom Settings>	**Custom Settings(P. 929)**	-	-	-	-	-
<UFR II>	**UFR II(P. 932)**	-	-	-	-	-
<PCL>	**PCL(P. 933)**	-	-	-	-	-
<PS>	**PS(P. 935)**	-	-	-	-	-
<Imaging>	**Imaging(P. 937)**	-	-	-	-	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PDF>	**PDF(P. 938)**	-	-	-	-	-
<XPS>	**XPS(P. 940)**	-	-	-	-	-
<Utility>	**Utility(P. 941)**	-	-	-	-	-

<Restrict Printer Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

If this setting is set to <On>, you can restrict jobs from the printer driver.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Printer Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
	When <On> is selected: • <Select Jobs to Allow>: <**Reserved Jobs**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

<PDL Selection (Plug and Play)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

Select default Page Description Language (PDL).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PDL Selection (Plug and Play)>	<**UFR II**>, <PCL6>, <PS3>, <Fax>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

You can prioritize printer driver settings over the paper settings in the machine when printing a job with the multi-purpose tray specified as the paper source.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prioritize Printer Driver Settings for Jobs with MP Tray>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	When <On> is selected: • <Prioritize Paper Type Only>: <On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When the following conditions are met, you can press <Temp. Change Ppr. in MP Tray> on the paper selection screen of <Copy> and <Access Stored Files> to change the paper size/type to load from the multi-purpose tray:
  - If paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray
  - If this setting is set to <On>
  - If **<Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>(P. 807)** is set to <Use Preset>
- If the paper size specified in the printer driver greatly differs from the paper size set in the multi-purpose tray, an error message is displayed.

<PS Password Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

You can specify the password that restricts the use of the control command prepared by the PS printer.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PS Password Settings>	<SystemParams Password>, <StartJob Password>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

NOTE

- <SystemParams Password> is a password that allows changes to the system parameter, and <StartJob Password> is a password that allows startjob, exitserver operator to perform. For more information, check PostScript language specifications.

<Paper Feed Mode When Using PCL Emulation>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Printer>

You can set the paper source used for the PCL5 PaperSource command.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Feed Mode When Using PCL Emulation>	<Mode 0>, <Mode 1>, <Mode 2>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- For details on each setting, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer).

Output Report

ERJ8-0J1

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PCL>						
<Configuration Page>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Font List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<PS>						
<Configuration Page>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Font List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Custom Settings

ERJ8-0J2

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Number of Copies>	**1** to 9999	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<2-Sided Printing>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Paper Feed>						
<Default Paper Feed Source>	<**Auto**>, <MP Tray>, <Drawer 1> to <Drawer n>*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Default Paper Size>	<**A4**>, <A5>, <A6>, <B5>, <B6>, <16K>, <Letter>, <Legal>, <Statement>, <Executive>, <Env. NAGAGATA 3>, <Env. NAGAGATA 4>, <Env. NAGAGATA 40>, <Env. YOGATANAGA3>, <Env. No. 10>, <Envelope ISO-C5>, <Envelope DL>, <Envelope Monarch>, <3x5 inch>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Default Paper Type>	<Thin>, <Plain 1>, <**Plain 2**>, <Plain 3>, <Heavy 1>, <Heavy 2>, <Heavy 3>, <Heavy 4>, <Heavy 5>, <Color>, <Recycled 1>, <Recycled 2>, <Labels>, <Bond 1>, <Bond 2>, <Letterhead 1>, <Letterhead 2>, <Letterhead 3>, <Letterhead 4>, <Letterhead 5>, <Letterhead 6>, <Letterhead 7>, <Envelope>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Paper Size Override>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Paper Output>						
<Finishing>	<Finishing>: <Off>, <Collate>, <**Group**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Print Quality>						
<Density>*2	<Cyan>: -8 to +8; **0** <Magenta>: -8 to +8; **0** <Yellow>: -8 to +8; **0** <Black>: -8 to +8; **0**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Density (Fine Adjust)>*2	<Cyan>: <High>: -8 to +8; **0** <Medium>: -8 to +8; **0** <Low>: -8 to +8; **0**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Magenta>: <High>: -8 to +8; **0** <Medium>: -8 to +8; **0** <Low>: -8 to +8; **0** <Yellow>: <High>: -8 to +8; **0** <Medium>: -8 to +8; **0** <Low>: -8 to +8; **0** <Black>: <High>: -8 to +8; **0** <Medium>: -8 to +8; **0** <Low>: -8 to +8; **0**					
<Toner Save>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gradation>	<Standard>, <**High 1**>, <High 2>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Resolution>	<1200 dpi>, <**600 dpi**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Sharpness (Photo)>	-1 to +3; **0**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Special Smoothing Mode>	<**Mode 1**>, <Mode 2> , <Mode 3>, <Mode 4>, <Mode 5>, <Mode 6>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Toner Volume Correction>	<**Normal**>, <Grad. Priority>, <Text Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Line Control>	<**Res. Priority**>, <Grad. Priority>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Width Adjustment>	<Width Adjustment>: <On>, <**Off**> <Target for Width Adjust.> : <Text>, <Line>, <**Text and Line**>, <All>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Advanced Smoothing>	<Advanced Smoothing>: <Off>, <**Level 1**>, <Level 2> <Apply to Graphics>: <On>, <**Off**> <Apply to Text>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gradation Smoothing>	<Gradation Smoothing>: <**Off**>, <Level 1>, <Level 2> <Apply to Graphics>: <**On**>, <Off> <Apply to Images>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Enhance Text for B&W Print>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Barcode Adjustment Mode>	<**Off**>, <Mode 1>, <Mode 2>, <Mode 3>, <Mode 4>, <Mode 5>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Layout>						
<Binding Location>	<**Long Edge**>, <Short Edge>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Gutter>	-50.0 mm to +50.0 mm; **0.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Offset Short Edge (Front)>	-50.0 mm to +50.0 mm; **0.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Offset Long Edge (Front)>	-50.0 mm to +50.0 mm; **0.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Offset Short Edge (Back)>	-50.0 mm to +50.0 mm; **0.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Offset Long Edge (Back)>	-50.0 mm to +50.0 mm; **0.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Auto Error Skip>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Timeout>	<Timeout>: <**On**>, <Off> <Timeout>: 5 seconds to 300 seconds; **15** seconds	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Personality>*2	<**Auto**>, <PS>, <PCL>, <XPS>,<Imaging>, <PDF>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Mode Priority>*2	<**None**>, <PS>, <PCL>, <XPS>, <PDF>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Auto Select>*2	<PS>: <**On**>, <Off> <PCL>: <**On**>, <Off> <XPS>: <**On**>, <Off> <Imaging>: <**On**>, <Off> <PDF>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Color Mode>	<**Auto (Color/B&W)**>, <Black & White>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Compressed Image Output>	<**Output**>, <Display Error>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Initialize>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

*1 Note that the number of drawers displayed differs depending on your model and the installed options.

*2 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

UFR II

ERJ8-0J3

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Halftones>	<Error Diffusion (600dpi Only)>: <On>, <**Off**> <Text>: <**Resolution**>, <Gradation> <Graphics>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**> <Image>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Matching Method>	<**General**>, <Perceptual>, <Colorimetric>, <Vivid Photo>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gray Compensation>	<Text>: <**On**>, <Off> <Graphics>: <**On**>, <Off> <Image>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Paper Save>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

PCL

ERJ8-0J4

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Save>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Orientation>	<**Portrait**>, <Landscape>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Font Source>	<**Internal**>, <Soft/External>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Font Number>	0 to 104; **0** (If the Font Source setting is Internal.) 1 to 999; **1** (If the Font Source setting is Soft/External.)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Point Size>*1	4.00 to 999.75 <point>; **12.00** <point>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Pitch>*1	0.44 to 99.99 <cpi>; **10.00** <cpi>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Form Lines>	5 to 128 <lines>; **64** <lines>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Character Code>	<ARABIC8>, <DESKTOP>, <GREEK8>, <HEBREW7>, <HEBREW8>, <ISO4>, <ISO6>, <ISO11>, <ISO15>, <ISO17>, <ISO21>, <ISO60>, <ISO69>, <ISOCYR>, <ISOGRK>, <ISOHEB>, <ISOL1>, <ISOL2>, <ISOL5>, <ISOL6>, <ISOL9>, <LEGAL>, <MATH8>, <MCTEXT>, <MSPUBL>, <**PC8**>, <PC8DN>, <PC8GRK>, <PC8TK>, <PC775>, <PC850>, <PC851>, <PC852>, <PC858>, <PC862>, <PC864>, <PC866>, <PC1004>, <PIFONT>, <PSMATH>, <PSTEXT>, <ROMAN8>, <ROMAN9>, <VNINTL>, <VNMATH>, <VNUS>, <WIN30>, <WINARB>, <WINBALT>, <WINCYR>, <WINGRK>, <WINL1>, <WINL2>, <WINL5>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Custom Paper>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Unit of Measure>*1	<**Millimeters**>, <Inches>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<X dimension>*1	127.0 mm to 355.6 mm; **355.6** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Y dimension>*1	76.2 mm to 216.0 mm; **216.0** mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Append CR to LF>	<Yes>, <**No**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Enlarge A4 Print Width>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Halftones>	<Error Diffusion (600dpi Only)>: <On>, <**Off**> <Text>: <**Resolution**>, <Gradation> <Graphics>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**> <Image>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Matching Method>	<**General**>, <Perceptual>, <Colorimetric>, <Vivid Photo>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gray Compensation>	<Text>: <**On**>, <Off> <Graphics>: <**On**>, <Off> <Image>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<BarDIMM>*1	<**Enable**>, <Disable>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<FreeScape>*1	<Off>, <~>, <">, <#>, <$>, </>, <\>, <?>, <{>, <}>, <|>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

PS

ERJ8-0J5

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Save>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Job Timeout>	0 to 3600 seconds; **0** second	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Print PS Errors>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Line Refinement>	<**On**>, <On (Slim)>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Pure Black Text>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Pure Black Graphics>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Black Overprint>*1	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<RGB Source Profile>	<**sRGB**>, <Gamma 1.5>, <Gamma 1.8>, <Gamma 2.4>, <None>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<CMYK Simulation Profile>	<JapanColor(Canon>, <US Web Ctd(Canon>, <Euro Standard>, <**None**>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Use Grayscale Profile>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Output Profile>	<Text>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile> <Graphics>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile> <Image>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Matching Method>	<**Perceptual**>, <Saturation>, <Colorimetric>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Halftones>	<Error Diffusion (600dpi Only)>: <On>, <**Off**> <Text>: <**Resolution**>, <Gradation> <Graphics>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Image>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>					
<Brightness>*1	85% to 115%; **100**%	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Composite Overprint>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Grayscale Conversion>*1	<sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

Imaging

ERJ8-0J6

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Image Orientation>	<**Auto**>, <Vertical>, <Horizontal>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Zoom>	<**Off**>, <Auto>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Print Position>	<**Auto**>, <Center>, <Top Left>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Show Warnings>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Enlarge Print Area>	<**Off**>, <On>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Matching Method>	<**General**>, <Perceptual>, <Colorimetric>, <Vivid Photo>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Photo Correct. (Color Only)>						
<Photo Optimizer PRO>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Red-Eye Correction>	<Red-Eye Correction>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
	<Red-Eye Correction Level>: <Weak>, <**Standard**>, <Strong>					
<Face Brightener>	<Face Brightener>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
	<Face Brightener Level>: <Weak>, <**Standard**>, <Strong>					
<Halftones>	<Resolution>, <**Gradation**>, <Error Diffusion>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gray Compensation>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Grayscale Conversion>*1	<sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

PDF

ERJ8-0J7

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Save>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Size>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Enlarge Print Area>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<N on 1>	<**Off**>, <2 on 1>, <4 on 1>, <6 on 1>, <8 on 1>, <9 on 1>, <16 on 1>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Comment Print>	<Off>, <**Auto**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Line Refinement>	<**On**>, <On (Slim)>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Pure Black Text>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Pure Black Graphics>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Black Overprint>*1	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<RGB Source Profile>	<**sRGB**>, <Gamma 1.5>, <Gamma 1.8>, <Gamma 2.4>, <None>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<CMYK Simulation Profile>	<JapanColor(Canon>, <US Web Ctd(Canon>, <Euro Standard>, <**None**>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Use Grayscale Profile>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Output Profile>	<Text>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile> <Graphics>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile> <Image>: <Normal>, <Photo>, <TR Normal>, <**TR Photo**>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Matching Method>	<**Perceptual**>, <Saturation>, <Colorimetric>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Halftones>	<Error Diffusion (600dpi Only)>: <On>, <**Off**> <Text>: <**Resolution**>, <Gradation> <Graphics>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**> <Image>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Brightness>*1	85% to 115%; **100**%	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Composite Overprint>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Grayscale Conversion>*1	<sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

XPS

ERJ8-0J8

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Paper Save>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Matching Method>	<**General**>, < Perceptual>, <Colorimetric>, <Vivid Photo>, <Download Profile>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Photo Correct. (Color Only)>						
<Photo Optimizer PRO>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
<Red-Eye Correction>	<Red-Eye Correction>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
	<Red-Eye Correction Level>*1: <Weak>, <**Standard**>, <Strong>					
<Face Brightener>	<Face Brightener>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings
	<Face Brightener Level>*1: <Weak>, <**Standard**>, <Strong>					
<Halftones>	<Error Diffusion (600dpi Only)>: <On>, <**Off**> <Text>: <**Resolution**>, <Gradation> <Graphics>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**> <Image>: <Resolution>, <**Gradation**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Gray Compensation>	<Text>: <**On**>, <Off> <Graphics>: <**On**>, <Off> <Image>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings for Printer Settings
<Grayscale Conversion>*1	<Text>: <sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB> <Graphics>: <sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB> <Image>: <sRGB>, <**NTSC**>, <Uniform RGB>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings for Printer Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional product is available for use or the appropriate setting is specified.

Utility

ERJ8-0J9

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Initialize PCL Storage>	<Yes>, < No>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-
<Initialize PS Storage>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-
<Reset Printer>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Send>

ERJ8-0JA

Specify the settings for the send function.

<Output Report>(P. 942)
<Common Settings>(P. 942)
<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>(P. 942)
<Fax Settings>(P. 942)

<Output Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send>

This prints a list of the registration details for the send/receive settings and fax settings.

<Output Report>(P. 943)

<Common Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send>

Specify the settings common to the send function.

<Common Settings>(P. 944)

<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send>

Specify the settings for sending E-mail and I-Faxes.

<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>(P. 956)

<Fax Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send>

Specify the fax send settings.

<Fax Settings>(P. 966)

<Output Report>

ERJ8-0JC

This prints a list of the registration details for the send/receive settings and fax settings.

<TX/RX User Data List>(P. 943)
<Fax User Data List>(P. 943)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<TX/RX User Data List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Output Report>

You can print a list of the send/receive settings registered in the machine. **Printing Reports and Lists(P. 782)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TX/RX User Data List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Fax User Data List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Output Report>

You can print a list of the fax settings registered in the machine. **Printing Reports and Lists(P. 782)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax User Data List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Common Settings>

ERJ8-0JE

Specify the settings common to the send function.

- **<Register Favorite Settings>/<Edit Favorite Settings>(P. 944)**
- **<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>(P. 945)**
- **<Default Screen>(P. 945)**
- **<Restrict Address Book Use>(P. 945)**
- **<Change Default Settings>(P. 945)**
- **<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 946)**
- **<TX Result Report>(P. 946)**
- **<Communication Management Report>(P. 947)**
- **<TX Terminal ID>(P. 947)**
- **<Delete Failed TX Jobs>(P. 948)**
- **<Retry Times>(P. 948)**
- **<Data Compression Ratio>(P. 949)**
- **<YCbCr TX Gamma Value>(P. 949)**
- **<Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)**
- **<Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)**
- **<Confirm TLS Certificate for FTPS TX>(P. 950)**
- **<Host Authentication for SFTP TX>(P. 951)**
- **<Restrict New Destinations>(P. 951)**
- **<Always Add Device Signature to Send>(P. 951)**
- **<Limit E-Mail to Send to Myself>(P. 952)**
- **<Restrict File TX to Personal Folder>(P. 952)**
- **<Personal Folder Specification Method>(P. 953)**
- **<Restrict Resending from Log>(P. 953)**
- **<Archive TX Document>(P. 953)**
- **<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>(P. 954)**
- **<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>(P. 954)**
- **<Display Warning for Dest. Set. Recalled from Timeline>(P. 954)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register Favorite Settings>/<Edit Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can register frequently used settings in a button of the machine for later use when scanning. You can also assign a name to a button and enter a comment. You can also delete or rename registered settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Favorite Settings>	Confirm Settings	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Select Location: <M1> to <M18>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	<Show Comments>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Name>, <Comment>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
<Edit Favorite Settings>	Select the Button: <M1> to <M18>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Show Comments>: <On>, <**Off**>					
	<Delete>, <Check Content>, <Rename>					

<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to display a confirmation screen when recalling "Favorite Settings."

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Default Screen>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can specify the screen to display when <Scan and Send> or (Reset) is pressed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Screen>	<**Standard**>, <One-Touch>, <Favorite Settings>, <Address Book>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Address Book Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons on the Scan Basic Features screen, etc., as well as whether to restrict use of the Address Book.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Address Book Use>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Change Default Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can change the settings registered as default for the <Scan and Send> function.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Settings>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Register Options Shortcuts>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can register modes in the shortcut keys displayed on the <Scan and Send> screen. This feature is useful when you want to register frequently used functions. **Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Options Shortcuts>	<Shortcut 1>: <2-Sided Original>, Each mode, <Unassigned>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	<Shortcut 2>: <Orig. Content Orientation>, Each mode, <Unassigned>					

<TX Result Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

A TX Report is a report that enables you to check whether documents were sent correctly to their intended destinations. The machine can be set to print this report automatically after documents are sent or only when a transmission error occurs. You can also specify the setting to print the first part of the document as part of the report to remind you of the document's contents. **TX Result Report(P. 786)**

- <Allow Printing from Options> can be set if <For Error Only> or <Off> is selected. If you set <Allow Printing from Options> to <On>, you can set whether to print a TX report from <Options> for each job.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TX Result Report>	<For Error Only>, <On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <For Error Only> is selected: <Allow Printing from Options>: <On>, <Off> <Report with TX Image>: <On>, <Off>					
	When <On> is selected: <Report with TX Image>: <On>, <Off>					
	When <Off> is selected: <Allow Printing from Options>: <On>, <Off>					

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Report with TX Image>: <**On**>, <Off>					

NOTE

- When sending a color document, <Report with TX Image> cannot be used to attach an image converted to black-and-white.
- This setting links with the <TX Result Report> setting in <Options> for each function.

<Communication Management Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can print or send document sending/receiving logs as a report. The machine can be set to print or send this report when a specified number of communications (100 to 1,000) is reached or at a specified time. The send/receive reports can also be printed or sent separately. **Communication Management Report(P. 785)**

- When the report is sent as data, it is sent in the CSV file format.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Communication Management Report>	<Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.>: <**Print**>, <Send>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	Number of transmissions: **100** to 1000					
	<Print/Send at Specified Time>: <Print>, <Send>, <**Off**>					
	Specify Print Time: **00:00** to 23:59					
	<Print Send/Receive Jobs Separately>: On, **Off** <Destination>					

<TX Terminal ID>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to add the sender information to the top of a sent document when sending a fax/I-fax. Information such as the fax number, name, and I-fax address of the machine is printed, enabling the recipient to check who sent the document.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TX Terminal ID>	<**Print**>, <Do Not Print>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Print Position>: <Inside Image Area>, <Outside Image Area> <Display Destination Unit Name>: <On>, <Off> <Mark Number As>: <Fax>, <TEL>					

NOTE

- The information registered in <Register Unit Telephone Number> and <Register Unit Name> is printed as the sender information. **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)**
- When printing the sender's name instead of the unit name, register the name in **<Register Sender Name (TTI)>(P. 968)** and specify it from <Sender Name (TTI)>. **Faxing(P. 343)**

Models with an optional fax function

- The settings of the server machine are used when sending remote faxes.

<Delete Failed TX Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to automatically delete a document from memory when the sending/saving error occurs. Selecting <Off> enables you to resend/resave the documents that failed to send/save.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Delete Failed TX Jobs>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If this mode is set to <Off>, the status of any job with a forwarding error will be saved in <Job Status> on the <Status Monitor> screen.

<Retry Times>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can set the number of times that the machine tries to automatically resend data when the data cannot be sent because the recipient is busy sending or receiving, or when an error occurs.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Retry Times>	0 to 3 to 5 times	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is disabled when sending faxes.

<Data Compression Ratio>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can set the compression ratio for color/grayscale scanned data.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Data Compression Ratio>	Level 1 to **Level 2** to Level 5	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is enabled for files in the JPEG, PDF, or XPS format. However, if you select the compact or trace & smooth mode for the PDF file format or select the compact mode for the XPS file format, the setting will be disabled.
- This setting is disabled when sending faxes.

<YCbCr TX Gamma Value>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

If you are sending a document in color or grayscale, you can specify the gamma value to use when converting scanned RGB image data to YCbCr. You can reproduce the image with the optimal image quality at the recipient by setting an appropriate gamma value.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<YCbCr TX Gamma Value>	<Gamma 1.0>, <Gamma 1.4>, **<Gamma 1.8>**, <Gamma 2.2>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This setting is disabled for the following file formats:
  - PDF; Compact
  - XPS; Compact

NOTE

- This setting is disabled when sending faxes.

<Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can divide data into chunks when sending with WebDAV. Chunked encoding is a function for sending a file with an unknown size by dividing it into chunks of a known length. It enables the sending time to be reduced because it is not necessary to calculate the size of the file before sending it.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- You may not be able to send files with chunked encoding, depending on certain conditions for the WebDAV server and proxy server.

<Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can check whether the TLS server certificate is valid when sending with WebDAV. You can verify the validity of the certificate and reliability of the certificate chain, as well as confirm the CN (Common Name).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, Off					

IMPORTANT

- If you do not verify the certificate, TLS communication is performed, even with an invalid certificate.

NOTE

- If there is a problem with the certificate, WebDAV sending will fail.

<Confirm TLS Certificate for FTPS TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can check whether the TLS server certificate is valid when sending with FTPS. You can verify the validity of the certificate and reliability of the certificate chain, as well as confirm the CN (Common Name).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for FTPS TX>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, **Off**					

<Host Authentication for SFTP TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

Specify whether to authenticate the destination SFTP server when sending data. **Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server(P. 720)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Host Authentication for SFTP TX>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict New Destinations>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

When sending faxes and scanned data, the available destinations can be limited to the following three ways, to ensure that users cannot specify the destination by entering text.

- Destinations registered in the address book and one-touch buttons
- Destinations set in <Favorite Settings> and <Send to Myself>
- Destinations that can be searched for with an LDAP server

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict New Destinations>	<Fax>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<E-Mail>: <On>, <**Off**>					
	<I-Fax>: <On>, <**Off**>					
	<File>: <On>, <**Off**>					

<Always Add Device Signature to Send>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to always add a device signature to sent PDF/XPS files.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Add Device Signature to Send>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <Restrict File Formats>: <**On**>, <Off>					

NOTE

- If you set <Restrict File Formats> to <On>, files other than PDF/XPS files cannot be sent.

<Limit E-Mail to Send to Myself>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can limit the destination that can be specified when sending e-mail to the e-mail address of the user that is logged in. This setting enables you to prevent information leaks due to transmission to a wrong destination.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Limit E-Mail to Send to Myself>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This setting applies to users with the GeneralUser role.

<Restrict File TX to Personal Folder>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can limit the destination that can be specified when saving to a file server to the dedicated folder of the user that is logged in. This setting enables you to prevent information leaks due to transmission to a wrong destination.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict File TX to Personal Folder>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This setting applies to users with the GeneralUser role.

<Personal Folder Specification Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

A Personal folder is an individual folder that can be used by the user logged in with personal authentication management. Shared folders and file servers can be specified and used as a Personal folder. **Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Personal Folder Specification Method>	<Home Folder>, <**Register for Each User**>, <Use Login Server>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	When <Home Folder> is selected: <Set>: <Protocol>(<**Windows (SMB)**>, <WebDAV>), <Host Name>, <Folder Path> <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: On,**Off**					
	When <Use Login Server> is selected: <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: On,**Off**					

NOTE

- A Personal folder is a folder shared by the following screens.
  - <Scan and Send>
  - <Network> in <Scan and Store>
  - <Network> in <Access Stored Files>

<Restrict Resending from Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to prevent users from recalling the logs for the destinations and scan settings specified in the past. Selecting <On> hides the <Previous Settings> buttons from both the Fax Basic Features screen and the Scan Basic Features screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Resending from Log>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Archive TX Document>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can save a copy of a sent fax in a pre-specified destination (e-mail or file server, etc.). **Saving a Copy of a Sent Document(P. 382)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Archive TX Document>	<Use TX Document Archiving>: <On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: <Backup Location>: Select Addresses, Address Details, Register Addresses <Folder Name>: <**Sender Information**>, <Date>, <Off (Do Not Create)> <File Format>: <TIFF>, <**PDF**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to display a screen prompting you to check the communication status after sending/saving documents using <Fax> or <Scan and Send> (**<Home> Screen(P. 212)**).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Notification When Job Is Accepted>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

Select the send job to cancel when the Stop key is pressed while a send job of the Fax function or the Scan and Send function is being processed. You can select either <Latest Received Job> or <Job Being Sent>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job to Cancel When Stop Is Pressed>	<**Latest Received Job**>, <Job Being Sent>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you selected <Job Being Sent> and the machine has multiple fax lines that are currently being used for sending, the last of those jobs is canceled.

<Display Warning for Dest. Set. Recalled from Timeline>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Common Settings>

Select whether to display a warning when adding a destination to a send job recalled from the timeline.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Warning for Dest. Set. Recalled from Timeline>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

ERJ8-0JF

Specify the settings for sending E-mail and I-Faxes.

- **<Register Unit Name>(P. 956)**
- **<Communication Settings>(P. 956)**
- **<Specify Port Number for SMTP TX/POP RX>(P. 958)**
- **<S/MIME Settings>(P. 958)**
- **<Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX>(P. 959)**
- **<Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX>(P. 959)**
- **<Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)**
- **<Default Subject>(P. 960)**
- **<Use Destination Name for Subject>(P. 960)**
- **<Specify Authentication User for Reply-To>(P. 961)**
- **<Specify Authentication User as Sender for E-Mail>(P. 961)**
- **<Specify Authentication User as Sender for I-Fax>(P. 961)**
- **<Allow Unregistered Users to Send E-Mail>(P. 962)**
- **<Full Mode TX Timeout>(P. 962)**
- **<Print MDN/DSN upon Receipt>(P. 962)**
- **<Use Send via Server>(P. 963)**
- **<Allow MDN Not via Server>(P. 963)**
- **<Restrict Destination Domain>(P. 963)**
- **<Auto Complete for Entering E-Mail Addresses>(P. 964)**
- **<Auto Add Specified Domain to Dest. Without Domain>(P. 964)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register Unit Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can register the name of your company or department as the unit name. The registered name is displayed/printed at the recipient as the sender information when you send an e-mail/I-fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Unit Name>	Register Unit Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- The registered unit name is used as the e-mail address display name, in the format "unit name <e-mail address>".
- You can enter up to 24 characters for the unit name.
- The e-mail address used in the login service appears in the From field on the recipient's machine for e-mail messages and I-fax documents. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**
- If you press <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ set <Specify Authentication User as Sender> to <On>, the e-mail address registered for the login user is displayed as the sender's name in the From field for the recipient, regardless of the login service being used.

<Communication Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can specify the settings for a mail server and an authentication method that you are using for e-mails/I-faxes. **Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Communication Settings>	<E-Mail Address>: Enter the E-Mail Address	Yes	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SMTP Server>: Enter the SMTP Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use POP RX>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use SMTP RX>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Server>: Enter the POP Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Login Name>: Enter the POP Login Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Password>: Enter the POP Password	Yes	Yes	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Interval>: **0** to 99 minutes	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SMTP TX>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SMTP RX>: <Always TLS>, <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Authentication Method>: <**Standard**>, <APOP>, <POP AUTH>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)>: <On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • <User Name>, <Password>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<POP Authentication Before Sending>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Display Authent. Screen When Sending>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you set shorter than 10 minutes (excluding '0 min') for <POP Interval>, the machine will not completely enter the Sleep mode.

NOTE

- The machine can only receive I-faxes and communication error notices.

<Specify Port Number for SMTP TX/POP RX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can change the port number of the SMTP and POP.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify Port Number for SMTP TX/POP RX>	<SMTP TX>: 1 to **25** to 65535 <POP RX>: 1 to **110** to 65535	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<S/MIME Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set S/MIME. If you set S/MIME, you can add a digital signature or encrypt the e-mail when using the e-mail/I-fax function.

Setting E-Mail Encryption

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> ▶ <S/MIME Settings>.**
3. **Set encryption and the digital signature.**
4. **Press <OK>.**

NOTE

- It is necessary to register the public key certificate of the recipient in advance. **Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<S/MIME Settings>	<Encryption Settings>: <Always Encrypt>, <Only Encrypt If Certificate>, <**Do Not Encrypt**> <Add Digital Signatures>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Set Details>: <Encryption Algorithm>: <**3DES**>, <AES128>, <AES256> <Signature Algorithm>: <**SHA1**>, <SHA256>, <SHA384>, <SHA512> <Verify Sig. upon Receipt>: <On>, <**Off**> <Print Sig. upon Receipt>: <On>, <**Off**>					

<Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can check whether the TLS server certificate is valid when sending with SMTP. You can verify the validity of the certificate and reliability of the certificate chain, as well as confirm the CN (Common Name).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, **Off**					

IMPORTANT

- If you do not verify the certificate, TLS communication is performed, even with an invalid certificate.

NOTE

- If there is a problem with the certificate, SMTP sending will fail.

<Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can check whether the TLS server certificate is valid when receiving with POP. You can verify the validity of the certificate and reliability of the certificate chain, as well as confirm the CN (Common Name).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, **Off**					

IMPORTANT

- If you do not verify the certificate, TLS communication is performed, even with an invalid certificate.

NOTE

- If there is a problem with the certificate, POP receiving will fail.

<Maximum Data Size for Sending>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set the maximum data size for outgoing e-mail messages and I-fax documents. If an e-mail message exceeds this data size limit, it is split up into several e-mail messages before being sent. However, if an I-fax transmission exceeds the data size limit, it is handled as an error, and not sent.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Maximum Data Size for Sending>	0 to **3** to 99 MB	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you enter '0' MB as the data size, there is no size limit on the data that is sent.
- Set the maximum data size for sending lower than the data limit for the mail server.

<Default Subject>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set the subject to specify automatically if you do not enter a subject when sending an e-mail/I-fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Subject>	Enter the Subject: **Attached Image**	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use Destination Name for Subject>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

Set whether to specify the <Name> of a destination registered in the Address Book of the machine as the subject when you send an e-mail.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Destination Name for Subject>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- For sequential broadcast, even if this setting is set to <On>, the <Default Subject> setting is used.
- If a group is specified as the destination, the <Default Subject> setting is used for the personal address list, user group address list, Remote Address Book, or LDAP server destination.

<Specify Authentication User for Reply-To>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can select whether to set the e-mail address of a user who logs in to the machine with personal authentication management as the reply-to address when sending an e-mail/I-fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify Authentication User for Reply-To>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If logging in using User Authentication, the login name appears in <100> of the Sender Name (TTI) list. If <On> is selected, the login name in <100> is automatically set as the <Sender Name (TTI)> in <Options>.
- If you enter an e-mail address as the reply-to destination in <Options> when sending an e-mail message or I-fax document, that e-mail address is given priority, even if <Specify Authentication User for Reply-To> is set to <On>.

<Specify Authentication User as Sender for E-Mail>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

Displays the e-mail address of the user logged in with User Authentication in the From field on the machine that receives the e-mail.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify Authentication User as Sender for E-Mail>	<From Header>: <**On**>, <Off> <Return-Path Header>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Depending on the destination environment, it may not be possible to send E-mail unless the From Header and Return-Path Header match.

<Specify Authentication User as Sender for I-Fax>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

Displays the e-mail address of the user logged in with User Authentication in the From field on the machine that receives the I-fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Specify Authentication User as Sender for I-Fax>	<From Header>: <On>, <**Off**> <Return-Path Header>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Depending on the destination environment, it may not be possible to send E-mail unless the From Header and Return-Path Header match.

<Allow Unregistered Users to Send E-Mail>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

When the machine is in use with personal authentication management, you can select whether to allow the sending of an e-mail from a user whose e-mail address is not registered in the machine. If <Off> is selected, users with their e-mail addresses registered can only send e-mails.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Unregistered Users to Send E-Mail>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set <Specify Authentication User as Sender> to <Off>, the address registered in the Device Information settings is displayed at the receiving end.

<Full Mode TX Timeout>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set the time before sending operations automatically terminate if an MDN (notification e-mail confirming the transmission result) is not received from the recipient when sending an I-fax in the <Full> mode.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Full Mode TX Timeout>	1 to **24** to 99 hr.	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Print MDN/DSN upon Receipt>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

In I-fax Full Mode, e-mail messages are sent to the machine from the recipient and the mail server, notifying you whether I-faxes are sent to destinations successfully or not. You can select whether to print these notification e-mails when the machine receives them.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Print MDN/DSN upon Receipt>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- I-fax delivery can also be confirmed in the TX Report. **TX Result Report(P. 786)**

<Use Send via Server>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can select whether to allow users to change the setting of <Send via Server> when sending I-faxes.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Send via Server>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- For I-fax, if <Send via Server> is set to <Off>, there is no size limit on the data that is sent, even if you enter the maximum data size for sending.

<Allow MDN Not via Server>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

The machine receiving the I-fax can send an MDN (a notification e-mail for checking the sending result) to the IP address of the sending machine without going through a mail server.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow MDN Not via Server>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Destination Domain>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set to only allow sending to addresses in a specified domain when sending an e-mail or I-fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Destination Domain>	<Restrict Sending to Domains>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <Register>(<Domain Name>, <Send to Subdomain> (<Allow>, <**Reject**>)), <Details/Edit>, <Delete>					

<Auto Complete for Entering E-Mail Addresses>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can set to automatically display e-mail addresses registered in the Address Book or an LDAP server based on the initial characters of an e-mail address entry.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Complete for Entering E-Mail Addresses>	<Off>, <**Address Book (Local)**>, <LDAP Server>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <LDAP Server> is selected: • Select LDAP server to search.					

NOTE

- E-mail addresses that are stored with an access number do not appear.

<Auto Add Specified Domain to Dest. Without Domain>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <E-Mail/I-Fax Settings>

You can register frequently used domain names in advance to eliminate the need to enter a domain when specifying an address because a domain name with @ is automatically appended. If you want to send to "123@example.com", register the domain name "example.com". If you specify an address that already includes a domain with this setting on, the domains in this setting are invalid.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Add Specified Domain to Dest. Without Domain>	<Domain Name> <When Sending E-Mail>: <On>, <**Off**> <When Sending I-Fax>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Note the following when importing the Address Book to another device.
  - Since this setting follows the settings of the device you are using, the domain may differ from that assigned by the device. Check this setting before using it with another device.
  - If you import addresses without domain information to a device that does not have this setting, you may not be able to send because the addresses are invalid.

<Fax Settings>

ERJ8-0JH

Specify the fax send settings.

- **<Register Favorite Settings>/<Edit Favorite Settings>(P. 966)**
- **<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>(P. 967)**
- **<Default Screen>(P. 967)**
- **<Restrict Address Book Use>(P. 967)**
- **<Change Default Settings>(P. 967)**
- **<Register Options Shortcuts>(P. 968)**
- **<Register Sender Name (TTI)>(P. 968)**
- **<Use Authentication User Name as Sender Name>(P. 968)**
- **<Off-Hook Alarm>(P. 969)**
- **<ECM TX>(P. 969)**
- **<Set Pause Time>(P. 970)**
- **<Auto Redial>(P. 970)**
- **<Check Dial Tone Before Sending>(P. 970)**
- **<Fax TX Result Report>(P. 971)**
- **<Fax Activity Report>(P. 971)**
- **<Set Line>(P. 972)**
- **<TX Start Speed>(P. 972)**
- **<R-Key Setting>(P. 972)**
- **<Confirm Entered Fax Number>(P. 973)**
- **<Allow Fax Driver TX>(P. 973)**
- **<Confirm Before Sending When Fax Dest. Included>(P. 973)**
- **<Restrict Sequential Broadcast When Fax Dest. Included>(P. 973)**
- **<Remote Fax Settings>(P. 974)**
- **<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>(P. 974)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register Favorite Settings>/<Edit Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can register frequently used settings in a button of the machine for later use when sending a fax. You can also assign a name to a button and enter a comment. You can also delete or rename registered settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Favorite Settings>	Confirm Settings	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	Select Location: <M1> to <M18>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	<Show Comments>: <On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Name>, <Comment>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
<Edit Favorite Settings>	Select the Button: <M1> to <M18>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Show Comments>: <On>, <Off>					
	<Delete>, <Check Content>, <Rename>					

<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can select whether to display a confirmation screen when recalling "Favorite Settings."

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Confirmation for Favorite Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Default Screen>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can specify the screen to display when <Fax> or (Reset) is pressed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Screen>	<**Standard**>, <One-Touch>, <Favorite Settings>, <Address Book>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items that appear only when the appropriate optional products are available for use.

<Restrict Address Book Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can select whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons on the Fax Basic Features screen, etc., as well as whether to restrict use of the Address Book.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Address Book Use>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Change Default Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can change the settings registered as default for the <Fax> function.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Settings>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Register Options Shortcuts>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can register modes in the shortcut keys displayed on the <Fax> screen. **Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Options Shortcuts>	<Shortcut 1>: <Density>, Each mode, <Unassigned>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings
	<Shortcut 2>: <Original Type>, Each mode, <Unassigned>					
	<Shortcut 3>: <2-Sided Original Settings>, Each mode, <Unassigned>					
	<Shortcut 4>: <Preview>, Each mode, <Unassigned>					

<Register Sender Name (TTI)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can register any name as the sender name, such as the section or department's name, or an individual's name, and edit/delete registered names. The registered name is printed on paper at the recipient as the sender information when you send a fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Sender Name (TTI)>	<Register/Edit>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You can store up to 99 sender names (01 to 99).

<Use Authentication User Name as Sender Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

If logging in with personal authentication management, the login name appears in <100> on the <Sender Name (TTI)> screen. If <On> is selected, the login name in <100> is used as the default setting for the sender name.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Authentication User Name as Sender Name>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If this setting is set to <Off>, the user name in <0> is used as the default setting for the sender name. For instructions on registering a user name, see **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)** .

<Off-Hook Alarm>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

If the telephone handset is not returned to the machine correctly after sending or receiving a fax, the user is notified with an alarm.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Off-Hook Alarm> *1	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items that can be selected only when a telephone handset is connected to the machine.

<ECM TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can set whether to use ECM in the fax transmission protocol. ECM checks for fax data errors and corrects them.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<ECM TX>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If the communication speed appears to be extremely slow, you may be able to improve the speed by setting to <Off>.
- Even when you set ECM, errors can sometimes occur due to a poor telephone line connection.

NOTE

- The conditions for successful ECM transmission are indicated below.
  - ECM transmission is enabled with this setting
  - The destination supports ECM

- <ECM TX> was set to <On> when registering the destination address to the Address Book **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**

<Set Pause Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can set the number of seconds to pause when sending faxes. Some overseas dialing may not be successful when dialing the international access code, country code, and the destination's telephone number all at once. In such cases, inserting a pause after the international access code can make it easier to connect.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Set Pause Time>	1 to **4** to 15 sec.	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Pauses entered at the end of dialed fax numbers are always 10 seconds long.

<Auto Redial>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

Auto Redial enables the machine to automatically redial the recipient's fax number if the recipient cannot be reached due to a busy line, or if a sending error occurs. If you activate this setting, you can set how many times the machine redials, the redial interval, and whether the document should be resent when there is an error.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Redial>*1	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Set Details>: <Number of Redials>: 1 to **2** to 10 times <Redial Interval>: **2** to 99 minutes <Redial When TX Error>: <**Error and 1st Page**>, <All Pages>, <Off>					

*1 Indicates items that may not be displayed on the Settings/Registration screen or that may have different default setting, depending on the region.

<Check Dial Tone Before Sending>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

If you are sending a fax from your machine at the same time another fax machine (made by a company other than Canon) is trying to send you a fax, your fax may end up being redirected to that fax machine, instead of the original destination you had intended. Activating this setting enables you to avoid such sending problems.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Check Dial Tone Before Sending>*1	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items that may not be displayed on the Settings/Registration screen or that may have different default setting, depending on the region.

<Fax TX Result Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

A Fax TX Report is a report that enables you to check whether faxes were sent correctly to their intended destinations. The machine can be set to print this report automatically after documents are sent or only when a transmission error occurs. You can also specify the setting to print the first part of the document as part of the report to remind you of the document's content. **Fax TX Result Report(P. 788)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax TX Result Report>	<For Error Only>, <On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <For Error Only> is selected: <Report with TX Image>: <On>, <Off>					
	When <On> is selected: <Report with TX Image>: <On>, <Off>					

<Fax Activity Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can print or send fax document sending/receiving logs as a report. The machine can be set to print or send this report when a specified number of communications (40 to 1,000) is reached or at a specified time. The send/receive reports can also be printed or sent separately. **Fax Activity Report(P. 787)**

- When the report is sent as data, it is sent in the CSV file format.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax Activity Report>	<Print/Send for Each Specified No. of Transm.>: <Print>, <Send>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	Number of transmissions: 40 to 1000					
	<Print/Send at Specified Time>: <Print>, <Send>, <Off>					
	Specify Print Time: 00:00 to 23:59					

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Print Send/Receive Jobs Separately>: On, **Off** <Destination>					

<Set Line>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

Specify the fax line settings.

<Set Line>(P. 975)

<TX Start Speed>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can change the send start speed. This setting is useful when there is difficulty initiating the sending of a document due to a poor line condition.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TX Start Speed>	<**33600 bps**>, <14400 bps>, <9600 bps>, <7200 bps>, <4800 bps>, <2400 bps>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If your document transmission is slow in starting, this may mean that the telephone lines in your area are in poor condition. Select a slower speed. You can select <33600 bps>, <14400 bps>, <9600 bps>, <7200 bps>, <4800 bps>, or <2400 bps>.
- Set **<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>(P. 974)** to <On> to send and receive faxes more accurately when the line or other party is prone to errors. The communication speed is limited to <14400 bps> or slower, which reduces errors. If <Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP> is set to <Off>, the speed returns to the value displayed in <TX Start Speed>.

<R-Key Setting>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

If your machine is connected through a PBX (Private Branch Exchange), it is necessary to set the access method. You can set the PBX type to <Prefix> or <Hooking>. If you register the outside line access number in the R-key, you can easily access the outside line.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<R-Key Setting>	<**PSTN**>, <PBX> When <PBX> is selected: <Prefix> (20 digits maximum), <**Hooking**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Confirm Entered Fax Number>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

To prevent sending a fax to an incorrect destination, you can select whether to display an entry confirmation screen when entering a fax number.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm Entered Fax Number>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Allow Fax Driver TX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can select whether to allow sending a fax from a computer.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Fax Driver TX>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Confirm Before Sending When Fax Dest. Included>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can select whether to display a destination confirmation screen when sending to destinations containing faxes. This helps prevent you from sending a fax to an incorrect destination.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm Before Sending When Fax Dest. Included>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <**Only for Seq. Broadcast**>, <All>					

<Restrict Sequential Broadcast When Fax Dest. Included>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can select whether to restrict sending to multiple destinations containing faxes at the same time.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Sequential Broadcast When Fax Dest. Included>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Remote Fax Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

Specify the settings on the server machine for the Remote Fax function.

<Remote Fax Settings>(P. 977)

<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can send and receive faxes more accurately when the line or other party is prone to errors.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you set this to <On>, the communication speed is limited to <14400 bps> or slower in the following settings, which reduces errors. If you set this to <Off>, the speeds return to their original values.
  - <Sending Speed> for destinations registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**
  - The transmission speed set in <TX Start Speed> **<TX Start Speed>(P. 972)**
  - The reception speed set in <RX Start Speed> **<RX Start Speed>(P. 992)**

<Set Line>

ERJ8-0JJ

Specify the fax line settings.

<Line 1>(P. 975)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Line 1>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Set Line>

Specify settings such as the fax number and unit name for each line.

<Register Unit Telephone Number>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Set Line> ▶ <Line 1>

You can register the fax number to use when the fax is used on the machine. The registered fax number is printed on paper at the recipient as the sender information when you send a fax. **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Unit Telephone Number>	Enter the User Telephone No.	Yes	No	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Register Unit Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Set Line> ▶ <Line 1>

You can register the name of your company or department as the unit name. The registered name is printed on paper at the recipient as the sender information when you send a fax. **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Unit Name>	Enter the Unit Name	Yes	No	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Select Line Type>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Set Line> ▶ <Line 1>

You can set the type of telephone line connected to the machine. If this setting is incorrect, you will be unable to communicate with other machines. Be sure to check the type of telephone line that you are using, and make the correct setting. **Fax Line Settings(P. 195)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI

<Select Line Type>	<Pulse>, <Tone>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Remote Fax Settings>

ERJ8-0JK

Specify the settings on the server machine for the Remote Fax function.

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Use Remote Fax>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Send> ▶ <Fax Settings> ▶ <Remote Fax Settings>

You can specify whether to use the machine as a server machine for the Remote Fax function.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Remote Fax>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If you want to use the machine as a Remote Fax server machine, press <Network> ▶ set <Dedicated Port Settings> to <On>.

<Receive/Forward>

ERJ8-0JL

Specify the settings for the receive and forwarding functions.

<Output Report>(P. 978)
<Common Settings>(P. 978)
<Fax Settings>(P. 978)

<Output Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward>

This prints a list of the registration details for the send/receive settings and fax settings.

<Output Report>(P. 979)

<Common Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward>

Specify the settings common to the receive and forwarding functions.

<Common Settings>(P. 980)

<Fax Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward>

Specify the settings for receiving and forwarding faxes.

<Fax Settings>(P. 989)

<Output Report>

ERJ8-0JR

This prints a list of the registration details for the send/receive settings and fax settings.

<TX/RX User Data List>(P. 943)
<Fax User Data List>(P. 943)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<TX/RX User Data List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Output Report>

You can print a list of the send/receive settings registered in the machine. **TX/RX User Data List(P. 790)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TX/RX User Data List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Fax User Data List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Output Report>

You can print a list of the fax settings registered in the machine. **Fax User Data List(P. 790)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax User Data List>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Common Settings>

ERJ8-0JS

Specify the settings common to the receive and forwarding functions.

- **<Print on Both Sides>(P. 980)**
- **<Reduce Fax RX Size>(P. 980)**
- **<Print RX Page Footer>(P. 981)**
- **<Interrupt and Print RX Jobs>(P. 981)**
- **<Use Forwarding Settings>(P. 981)**
- **<Handle Files with Forwarding Errors>(P. 982)**
- **<Forwarding Settings>(P. 982)**
- **<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>(P. 982)**
- **<Always Send Notice for RX Errors>(P. 983)**
- **<Memory Lock for Toner Cartridge Reaching End of Life>(P. 983)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Print on Both Sides>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to print received documents on both sides of paper.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Print on Both Sides>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Reduce Fax RX Size>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to reduce received documents so that the whole document is printed within the printable area of the paper.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Reduce Fax RX Size>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Reduction Mode>: <**Auto**>, <Fixed>					
	• <Reduction Ratio>: 75 to **90%** to 97%					
	• <Reduction Direction>: <Vertical & Horizontal>, <**Vertical Only**>					

NOTE

- If this setting is set to <Off>, the image size of the received file is not reduced to fit the size of the paper. If the size of the image exceeds the printable area, the image is divided into equal sections and printed onto separate sheets of paper.
- If you select <Auto> in <Reduction Mode>, the image size is automatically reduced by a suitable reduction ratio. This ratio can range from the value set for <Reduction Ratio>, up to 100% of the received document size.

<Print RX Page Footer>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to print information, such as reception time and page number, at the bottom of received documents.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Print RX Page Footer>	<Print>, <**Do Not Print**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When an e-mail without a body is received, the From information and Subject information (up to 24 characters for each) is printed at the top of the first page of the attachment file.

<Interrupt and Print RX Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can set to suspend other jobs to print faxes/I-faxes when the machine receives them.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Interrupt and Print RX Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use Forwarding Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to forward received documents to other destinations such as the Confidential Fax Inbox of the machine and an external file server. If you select <On>, specify the forwarding conditions in <Forwarding Settings>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Forwarding Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Handle Files with Forwarding Errors>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can set how the machine handles documents that fail to be forwarded.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Handle Files with Forwarding Errors>	<**Always Print**>, <Store/Print>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you press <Common Settings> ▶ set <Delete Failed TX Jobs> to <Off>, the documents with forwarding errors will be saved on the <Status Monitor> screen, and the documents will not be processed according to the settings you specified here.
- If you select <Store/Print> when Memory Lock is set, the documents with forwarding errors will be saved.
- If you select <Store/Print> when Memory Lock is not set, the documents with forwarding errors will be printed.

<Forwarding Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can specify the conditions for forwarding received documents. You can also set to forward all incoming documents to a specified destination without specifying any conditions. **Forwarding Received Documents Automatically(P. 391)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Forwarding Settings>	<Receive Method:>, <Validate/Invalidate>, <Delete>, <Register>, <Other Operations> (<Forward without Conditions>, <Details/Edit>, <Print List>, <E-Mail Priority>,), <Search>	Yes	No	Yes	No*1	Forwarding Settings

*1 <Register>, <Forward without Conditions>, <Details/Edit>: C

<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

Specify the Fax/I-Fax Inbox settings.

<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>(P. 984)

<Always Send Notice for RX Errors>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>

You can select whether to notify the sender that an I-fax was not received successfully.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Send Notice for RX Errors>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Memory Lock for Toner Cartridge Reaching End of Life>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Common> ▶ <Print Settings>

If you set this to <On>, received documents are saved to the Memory RX Inbox without printing when the toner cartridge has reached its life expectancy.
If you set this to <Off>, received documents are printed when the toner cartridge has reached its life expectancy, but the output may be faint.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Memory Lock for Toner Cartridge Reaching End of Life>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Even if you change this setting, the settings of <Use Fax Memory Lock> and <Use I-Fax Memory Lock> do not change.

<Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

ERJ8-0JU

Specify the Fax/I-Fax Inbox settings.

- **<Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>(P. 984)**
- **<Memory RX Inbox PIN>(P. 985)**
- **<Use Fax Memory Lock>(P. 985)**
- **<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>(P. 986)**
- **<Memory Lock Start Time>(P. 986)**
- **<Memory Lock End Time>(P. 987)**
- **<Divided Data RX Timeout>(P. 988)**
- **<Forward Temporarily Stored File to Memory RX Inbox>(P. 988)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

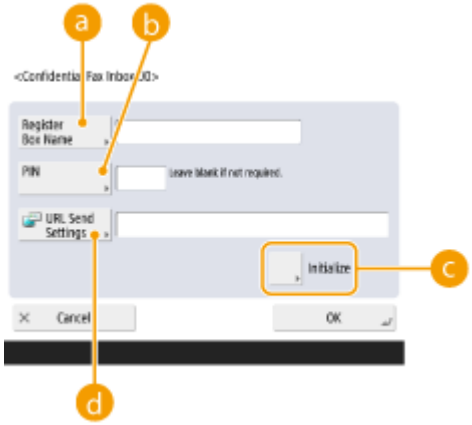
<Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can assign a name for each Confidential Fax Inbox as well as set a PIN.

Setting/Registering Confidential Fax Inboxes

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>.**
3. **Press <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>.**
4. **Press <Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>.**
5. **Select the box number ▶ specify each setting, and press <OK>.**



a <Register Box Name>
Register a name for the box.

b <PIN>
Enter the PIN for the box.

c <Initialize>

Initializes the box.

<URL Send Settings>

Enables the URL for a box with documents saved can be sent via e-mail or checked on the Remote UI screen.

IMPORTANT

- Since there is no way to check a registered PIN, make sure that you write down the PIN that you enter, and keep it in a safe place.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes>	<Box No.>: 00 to 49	Yes	Yes	No	C	Box Settings
	<Register Box Name>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Box Settings
	<PIN>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Box Settings
	<URL Send Settings>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Box Settings
	<Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Memory RX Inbox PIN>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can set a PIN for the Memory RX Inbox.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Memory RX Inbox PIN>	<Set>: <PIN>, <Confirm>	Yes	No	No	C	Box Settings

IMPORTANT

- Since there is no way to check a registered PIN, make sure that you write down the PIN that you enter, and keep it in a safe place.

<Use Fax Memory Lock>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can select whether to save received fax documents in the Memory RX Inbox. **Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Fax Memory Lock>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can select whether to save received I-fax documents in the Memory RX Inbox. **Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use I-Fax Memory Lock>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

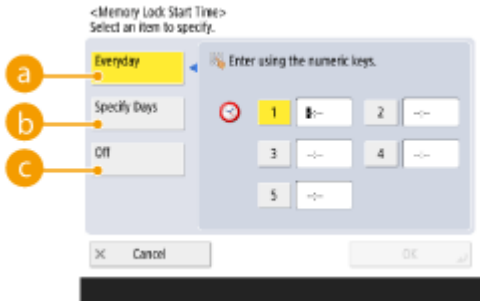
<Memory Lock Start Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can specify the time to activate the Memory Reception function. The machine will automatically switch to the Memory Reception mode at the specified time.

Setting the Start Time for Memory Reception

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>.**
3. **Press <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>.**
4. **Press <Memory Lock Start Time>, and specify the required settings.**



a <Everyday>
Set the time that memory reception starts.

b <Specify Days>
Set the day of the week and time that memory reception starts.

c <Off>
Select this when you do not want to set a memory reception start time.

NOTE

- You can set <Everyday> for the memory reception start time and <Specify Days> for the memory reception end time (or vice-versa).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Memory Lock Start Time>	<Everyday> (1 to 5), <Specify Days> (<Sun> to <Sat>, 1 to 5), <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

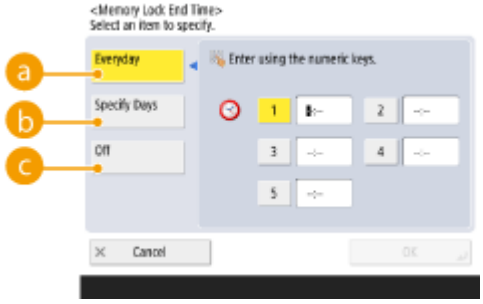
<Memory Lock End Time>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can specify the time to deactivate the Memory Reception function. The machine will automatically cancel the Memory Reception mode at the specified time.

Setting the End Time for Memory Reception

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings>.**
3. **Press <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>.**
4. **Press <Memory Lock End Time>, and specify the required settings.**



a <Everyday>
Set the time that memory reception ends.

b <Specify Days>
Set the day of the week and time that memory reception ends.

c <Off>
Select this when you do not want to set a memory reception end time.

NOTE

- You can set <Everyday> for the memory reception start time and <Specify Days> for the memory reception end time (or vice-versa).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Memory Lock End Time>	<Everyday> (1 to 5), <Specify Days> (<Sun> to <Sat>, 1 to 5), <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Divided Data RX Timeout>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can specify the time before reception is canceled when receiving a divided I-fax and the subsequent data cannot be received. Data received by the specified time is printed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Divided Data RX Timeout>	0 to **24** to 99 hr.	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you delete divided data, it cannot be combined to form a complete document, even if the remaining divided data is received later.
- Divided data cannot be printed as a regular image unless it has been combined.

<Forward Temporarily Stored File to Memory RX Inbox>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox>

You can specify whether to automatically forward received documents to the Memory RX Inbox if they cannot be printed due to an error, etc.
Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Forward Temporarily Stored File to Memory RX Inbox>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

<Fax Settings>

ERJ8-0JW

Specify the settings for receiving and forwarding faxes.

<ECM RX>(P. 989)
<RX Mode>(P. 989)
<Remote RX>(P. 990)
<Switch to Auto RX>(P. 991)
<Fax RX Result Report>(P. 991)
<Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report>(P. 992)
<RX Start Speed>(P. 992)
<RX Password>(P. 992)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<ECM RX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can receive faxes using the Error Correction Mode (ECM).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<ECM RX>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- To perform a communication using ECM, ECM needs to be set in both the sending machine and this machine.
- Even when you set ECM, errors can sometimes occur due to a poor telephone line connection.

<RX Mode>

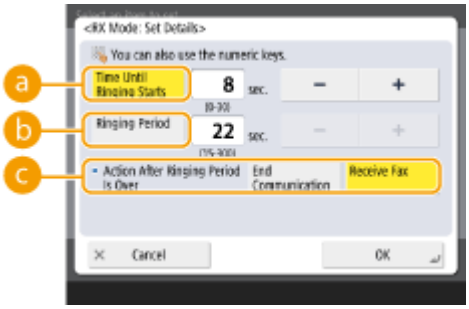
(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can set the fax reception method.

■Setting the Fax Reception Method

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>.**
3. **Press <RX Mode>.**
4. **Select the reception method.**

- If you selected something other than <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)>, press <OK>.
- If you selected <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)>, specify the required settings.



a <Time Until Ringing Starts>

Set the time until the incoming fax tone is emitted after receiving a call.

b <Ringing Period>

Set the time to continue emitting the incoming fax tone.

c <Action After Ringing Period Is Over>

Set the operation for the machine when the phone is not answered with the incoming fax tone emitted.

IMPORTANT

- The machine may not emit a tone even when a call is received, depending on the settings.

You can receive faxes using the Error Correction Mode (ECM).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<RX Mode>	<**Auto RX**>, <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)>, <Answering Machine>, <Manual RX>, <Net Switch>*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	When <Fax/Tel(Auto Switch)> is selected: <<RX Mode: Set Details>> • <Time Until Ringing Starts>: 0 to **8** *2 to 30 sec. • <Ringing Period>: 15 to **22** *2 to 300 sec. • <Action After Ringing Period Is Over>: <End Communication>, <**Receive Fax**>					

*1 Indicates items that may not be displayed on the Settings/Registration screen, depending on the region.

*2 Indicates items with default setting that may differ, depending on the region.

<Remote RX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can receive faxes using the dial operation of a telephone connected to the machine. If you pick up the handset and the other party is a fax machine, you can enter the ID number specified here from the telephone to receive the fax.

You can receive faxes using the Error Correction Mode (ECM).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remote RX>	<On>, <**Off**> Remote RX ID: 00 to **25** to 99	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If a one digit number is set, make sure to enter a zero before the number when entering the ID number from the telephone. For example, if "09" is set, enter "0" then "9" as the ID number from the telephone.

NOTE

- Since the ID number is sent with a push tone, an ID number cannot be entered from a telephone incompatible with push tones (such as a rotary dial telephone).

<Switch to Auto RX>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can set the machine to automatically switch to automatic reception after the specified time elapses when manual reception is set.

You can receive faxes using the Error Correction Mode (ECM).

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Switch to Auto RX>	<On>, <**Off**> <Ring Time Until Auto RX>: 1 to **15** to 99 sec.	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Fax RX Result Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

A Fax RX Report is a report that enables you to check whether faxes were received correctly. The machine can be set to print this report automatically after documents are received or only when a reception error occurs. **Fax RX Result Report(P. 789)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax RX Result Report>	<For Error Only>, <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

A Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report is a report that enables you to check whether documents were received in the Confidential Fax Inbox correctly. The machine can be set to print this report automatically after documents are received. **Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report(P. 789)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confidential Fax Inbox RX Report>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<RX Start Speed>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can change the receive start speed. This setting is useful when there is difficulty initiating the receiving of a document due to a poor line condition.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<RX Start Speed>	<33600 bps>, <14400 bps>, <9600 bps>, <7200 bps>, <4800 bps>, <2400 bps>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Set **<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>(P. 974)** to <On> to send and receive faxes more accurately when the line or other party is prone to errors. The communication speed is limited to <14400 bps> or slower, which reduces errors. If <Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP> is set to <Off>, the speed returns to the value displayed in <RX Start Speed>.

<RX Password>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Receive/Forward> ▶ <Fax Settings>

You can set an ITU-T standard password. If a subaddress is not set in a document that was received from another party using the ITU-T standard, a reception password check takes place. If the password found does not match the password set with this setting, or if a password is not attached to the document, the document is not received.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<RX Password>	<Set>: <Password>, <Confirm>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Priority is given to the subaddress password if the received document is set with a subaddress, even if an RX password is set.

NOTE

- ITU-T stands for International Telecommunication Union-Telecommunication Standardization Sector, which is the group that makes recommendations toward the standardization of worldwide telecommunications.

<Store/Access Files>

ERJ8-0JX

Specify the settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Common Settings>(P. 994)
<Network Settings>(P. 994)
<Memory Media Settings>(P. 994)

<Common Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files>

Specify the common settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Common Settings>(P. 995)

<Network Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files>

Specify the network settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Network Settings>(P. 1000)

<Memory Media Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files>

Specify the memory devise settings.

<Memory Media Settings>(P. 1002)

<Common Settings>

ERJ8-0JY

Specify the common settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Scan and Store Settings>(P. 995)
<Access Stored Files Settings>(P. 995)
<Limit Box PIN to 7 Digits/Restrict Access>(P. 995)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Scan and Store Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings>

Specify the common settings used when you store scanned originals.

<Scan and Store Settings>(P. 996)

<Access Stored Files Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings>

Specify the common settings used when you use stored files.

<Access Stored Files Settings>(P. 998)

<Limit Box PIN to 7 Digits/Restrict Access>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings>

If you set this setting to <On>, users are forced to set a seven-digit PIN, thus enhancing security. The PIN for User Inboxes can set using at least one digit.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Limit Box PIN to 7 Digits/Restrict Access>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Scan and Store Settings>

ERJ8-0K0

Specify the common settings used when you store scanned originals.

<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>(P. 921)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 921)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Scan and Store Settings>

You can register frequently used settings in a button of the machine for later use when saving. You can also assign your favorite name to a button and check registered settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

When Registering Settings

Begin by specifying the settings you want to register. Use the procedure below to register the settings for a preset state by pressing (Settings/Register).

1. **Press <Scan and Store>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**
2. **Select the location to save the file.**
3. **Press <Scan>.**
4. **Specify the scan settings to register.**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>	<Register>, <Rename>, <Delete>, <Check Content> (<M1> to <M9>)	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Change Default Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Scan and Store Settings>

You can change the settings registered as default for the <Scan and Store> function.

When Registering Settings

Begin by specifying the settings you want to register. Use the procedure below to register the settings for a preset state by pressing (Settings/Register).

1. **Press <Scan and Store>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**
2. **Select the location to save the file.**
3. **Press <Scan>.**
4. **Specify the scan settings to register.**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Settings>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Access Stored Files Settings>

ERJ8-0K1

Specify the common settings used when you use stored files.

<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>(P. 998)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 998)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Access Stored Files Settings>

You can register frequently used settings in a button of the machine for later use when printing. You can also assign your favorite name to a button and check registered settings. **Registering a Combination of Frequently Used Functions(P. 242)**

When Registering Settings

Begin by specifying the settings you want to register. Use the procedure below to register the settings for a preset state by pressing (Settings/Register).

1. **Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**
2. **Select the location where the file to use is saved.**
3. **Select a file and press <Print>.**
4. **Specify the print settings to register.**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Edit Favorite Settings>	<Register>, <Rename>, <Delete>, <Check Content> (<M1> to <M9>)	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Change Default Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Common Settings> ▶ <Access Stored Files Settings>

You can change the settings registered as default for the <Access Stored Files> function.

When Registering Settings

Begin by specifying the settings you want to register. Use the procedure below to register the settings for a preset state by pressing (Settings/Register).

1. **Press <Access Stored Files>. <Home> Screen(P. 212)**
2. **Select the location where the file to use is saved.**
3. **Select a file and press <Print>.**
4. **Specify the print settings to register.**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Settings>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Favorite Settings

<Network Settings>

ERJ8-0K2

Specify the network settings used when you store scanned originals or use the stored files.

<Network Place Settings>(P. 1000)
<Protocol for External Reference>(P. 1000)
<Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access>(P. 1000)
<Personal Folder Specification Method>(P. 1001)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Network Place Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings>

You can register the Advanced Space of another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine or a Windows server as an external reference. **Connecting to the Other Devices(P. 206)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Network Place Settings>	<Register> (<Name>, <Protocol>, <Location>), <Edit> (<Name>, <Protocol>, <Location>), <Details>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Protocol for External Reference>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings>

You can select the protocol to use when accessing the Advanced Space of another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine or a Windows server which is opened externally. **Connecting to the Other Devices(P. 206)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Protocol for External Reference>	<SMB>: <On>, <Off> <WebDAV>: <On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings>

You can confirm whether the TLS server certificate is valid when accessing the Advanced Space of another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine or a Windows server. You can verify the validity of the certificate and reliability of the certificate chain, as well as confirm the CN (Common Name).
Connecting to the Other Devices(P. 206)

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, **Off**	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Personal Folder Specification Method>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Network Settings>

A Personal folder is an individual folder that can be used by the user logged in with personal authentication management. Shared folders and file servers can be specified and used as a Personal folder. **Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Personal Folder Specification Method>	<Home Folder>, <**Register for Each User**>, <Use Login Server>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	When <Home Folder> is selected: <Set>: <Protocol>(<**Windows (SMB)**>, <WebDAV>), <Host Name>, <Folder Path> <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: On,**Off**					
	When <Use Login Server> is selected: <Use Authentication Info. of Each User>: On,**Off**					

NOTE

- A Personal folder is a folder shared by the following screens.
  - <Scan and Send>
  - <Network> in <Scan and Store>
  - <Network> in <Access Stored Files>

<Memory Media Settings>

ERJ8-0K3

Specify the memory devise settings.

<Use Scan/Print Function>(P. 1002)
<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>(P. 1002)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Use Scan/Print Function>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Memory Media Settings>

Specifying this setting enables you to save documents stored in memory media, as well as print files in memory media. **Restricting the Use of Memory Media(P. 682)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Scan/Print Function>	<Use Scan Function>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Use Print Function>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Store/Access Files> ▶ <Memory Media Settings>

You can set whether to display shortcuts to available functions when memory media is connected. **Inserting a memory media(P. 535)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Select Option When Connecting Memory Media>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Print>

ERJ8-0K4

Specify the settings for the print function.

- **<Forced Hold>(P. 1003)**
- **<Job Storage Period>(P. 1003)**
- **<Delete Job After Printing>(P. 1003)**
- **<Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs>(P. 1004)**
- **<Include Domain as User Recognition Condition>(P. 1004)**
- **<Display Other User Jobs>(P. 1004)**
- **<Restrict Deletion of Other User Jobs>(P. 1004)**
- **<Match Case for User Name>(P. 1005)**
- **<Job List Display Settings>(P. 1005)**
- **<Held Jobs Warning Settings>(P. 1005)**
- **<PIN Settings for Secure Print Jobs>(P. 1006)**
- **<Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In>(P. 1006)**
- **<Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In>(P. 1007)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Forced Hold>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify the settings for the forced hold printing. **Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings(P. 679)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Forced Hold>	<On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • <Validate/Invalidate>, <Register>, <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Job Storage Period>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify the time period for storing jobs.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job Storage Period>	10, 20, 30 min., **1**, 2, 3, 6, 12 hr., 1, 2, 3, days	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Delete Job After Printing>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify whether to delete jobs after they are printed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Delete Job After Printing>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

You can set the machine to only receive encrypted secure print jobs from computers.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Include Domain as User Recognition Condition>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify whether to determine print jobs of a login user by "user name + domain name" or only "user name". Depending on your environment, if print jobs are not correctly determined as My Jobs, they can be correctly determined as jobs of the login user by selecting <Off> and excluding "domain name".

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Include Domain as User Recognition Condition>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Other User Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify whether to display the jobs from users other than the authorized user.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Other User Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Deletion of Other User Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify whether to allow jobs of users other than the authorized user to be deleted when the jobs of users other than the authorized user are displayed.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Deletion of Other User Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Match Case for User Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify whether to set the machine to distinguish uppercase and lowercase characters for user names.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Match Case for User Name>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is applied to the whole user names including domain names.
- It is recommended that this is set together with <User Management> in <Authentication Management> ▶ <Match Case for User Name> ▶ <Management Settings>.

<Job List Display Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify the job types to be included in the job list, and the job type to be selected by default.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Job List Display Settings>	<Personal>: <**On**>, <Off> <Shared>: <**On**>, <Off> <Group>: <On>, <**Off**> When two or more of personal/ shared/group are set to <On>: • <**Personal**>, <Shared>, <Group>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You cannot specify <On> for <Group> only in <Job List Display Settings>. Either <Personal> or <Shared> must also be set to <On>.

<Held Jobs Warning Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

Specify the method for sending Job Hold alerts.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Held Jobs Warning Settings>	<Display Warning on Job List Screen>: <On>, <**Off**> <Display Warning When Starting to Print>: <On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • <If Print Jobs with Specified Number of Pages or More Are Included>: On, **Off** (1 to **100** to 9999) • <If 1-Sided Print Jobs Are Included>: On, **Off** • <If Color Print Jobs Are Included>: On, **Off**	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

<PIN Settings for Secure Print Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

You can set whether to require a PIN to be entered when printing, displaying images, or deleting with the Secured Print function.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<PIN Settings for Secure Print Jobs>	<Require PIN for Printing/ Displaying User Jobs>: <**On**>, <Off> <Require PIN for Job Deletion>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- For the Encrypted Secure Print function, you can set whether to require a PIN to be entered when deleting. In addition, it is necessary to enter a PIN to print a document/display the preview regardless of the values specified in <Require PIN for Printing/Displaying User Jobs>.

<Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

You can set whether to allow forced hold print jobs to be automatically printed when each user logs in.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- This setting is disabled if any of the following settings is specified.
  - <Use User Authentication> is <Off>
  - <Enable Use of Personal Settings> is <Off>
  - <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> is <On>
  - <Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs> is <On>
  - <Personal> for <Job List Display Settings> is <Off>
  - <Display Warning When Starting to Print> for <Held Jobs Warning Settings> is <On>

NOTE

- Changing this setting from <Off> to <On> automatically sets <Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In> to <On> for all users. This means that users' own jobs will automatically be printed when they log in, without them having to change any settings.

<Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Function Settings> ▶ <Print>

You can set whether to automatically print forced hold print jobs after logging in. **Printing Held Documents Automatically When Logging In(P. 428)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Print User Jobs When Logging In>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	No	No	-

IMPORTANT

- This setting is disabled if any of the following settings is specified.
  - <Use User Authentication> is <Off>
  - <Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In> is <Off>
  - <Enable Use of Personal Settings> is <Off>
  - <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> is <On>
  - <Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs> is <On>
  - <Personal> for <Job List Display Settings> is <Off>
  - <Display Warning When Starting to Print> for <Held Jobs Warning Settings> is <On>

NOTE

- When you change <Enable Auto Print Function When Logging In> from <Off> to <On>, this setting is automatically set to <On>.

<Set Destination>

ERJ8-0K5

Specify the settings for registering destinations and the address book.

- **<Address Lists>(P. 1008)**
- **<Register Destinations>(P. 1008)**
- **<Rename Address List>(P. 1009)**
- **<Change Default Display of Address List>(P. 1009)**
- **<Register One-Touch>(P. 1009)**
- **<Change Default Display of Address Book>(P. 1010)**
- **<Address Book PIN>(P. 1010)**
- **<Manage Address Book Access Numbers>(P. 1010)**
- **<Include Password When Exporting Address Book>(P. 1010)**
- **<Register LDAP Server>(P. 1011)**
- **<Auto Search When Using LDAP Server>(P. 1011)**
- **<Confirm TLS Certificate for LDAP Server Access>(P. 1011)**
- **<Change Default LDAP Search Conditions>(P. 1012)**
- **<Register/Edit LDAP Search Attribute>(P. 1012)**
- **<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>(P. 1013)**
- **<Acquire Remote Address Book>(P. 1014)**
- **<Make Remote Address Book Open>(P. 1014)**
- **<Use Personal Address List>(P. 1014)**
- **<Use User Group Address List>(P. 1014)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Address Lists>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can print a list of destinations registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons. **Printing a List of Settings(P. 789)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Address Lists>	<Address List 1> to <Address List 10>, <One-Touch>, <Address List for Admin.>, <Print List>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

IMPORTANT

- Even if you set **<Manage Address Book Access Numbers>(P. 1010)** to <On>, all destinations including those stored with access numbers are printed.

<Register Destinations>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can register destinations to the address book of the machine. **Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register Destinations>	<Register New Destination>, <Details/Edit>, <Delete>, <Search by Name>	Yes	Yes	Yes*1	C	Address Book

*1 <Server to Search:>: No

<Rename Address List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can rename each address list.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Rename Address List>	<Address List 1> to <Address List 10>, <Rename>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Address Book

<Change Default Display of Address List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can specify the address list that is displayed when pressing <Address Book> on the Basic Features screens of <Fax> or <Scan and Send>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Display of Address List>	<All Address Lists>, <Personal Addr. List>, Name of a user group address list, <Address List 1> to <Address List 10>, <One-Touch>, <Address List for Admin.>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Register One-Touch>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can register destinations to the one-touch buttons of the machine. **Registering a Destination in a One-Touch Button(P. 285)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register One-Touch>	<001> to <200>, <Register/Edit>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Address Book

<Change Default Display of Address Book>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can specify the type of the Address Book to display when you press <Address Book> on the Fax Basic Features screen or the Scan and Send Basic Features screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default Display of Address Book>	<**Local**>, <LDAP Server>, <Remote>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Address Book PIN>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can set a PIN for the Address Book. **Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Address Book PIN>	<Set>: <PIN>: Enter the PIN (7 digits maximum) <Confirm>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Manage Address Book Access Numbers>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can select whether to allow users to set an access number for a destination when registering in the Address Book. **Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Manage Address Book Access Numbers>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Include Password When Exporting Address Book>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

If you set this setting to <On>, you can select whether to include the passwords registered for destinations when exporting the Address Book using the Remote UI.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Include Password When Exporting Address Book>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You can set whether to export the following passwords:
  - The password for subaddress transmission set in fax destinations
  - The authentication password set for file server destinations

<Register LDAP Server>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can specify the settings of an LDAP server, such as a server name and server address, you are using when searching for or registering destinations. **Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register LDAP Server>	<Register>, <Details/Edit>, <Delete>, <Print List>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B*1	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 <Delete>, <Print List>: No

<Auto Search When Using LDAP Server>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

If you set this setting to <On>, you can immediately start searches when accessing an LDAP server from the control panel of the machine.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Auto Search When Using LDAP Server>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Automatic searches are only performed for the first LDAP server registered, which is displayed on the top of the LDAP server drop-down list.

<Confirm TLS Certificate for LDAP Server Access>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can select whether to verify TLS certificates when connected to an LDAP server.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate for LDAP Server Access>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <CN>: On, **Off**					

<Change Default LDAP Search Conditions>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can register frequently used search conditions as the default settings for searching an LDAP server.

Registering the Default Search Conditions for Each LDAP Server

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**
2. **Press <Set Destination> ▶ <Change Default LDAP Search Conditions> ▶ <Register>.**
   - To restore the default search conditions, press <Initialize>.
3. **Configure the search conditions.**
4. **Press <OK>.**

NOTE

- You may have to set up the LDAP servers beforehand, depending on the network environment.
- Searching by organization/organizational unit may not be possible, depending on the information registered in an LDAP server.
- You can add other search attributes. **<Register/Edit LDAP Search Attribute>(P. 1012)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Default LDAP Search Conditions>	<Register>, <Initialize>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Personal Setting Information

<Register/Edit LDAP Search Attribute>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can add search items to use when searching an LDAP server.

LDAP Search Attributes

1. **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Set Destination> ▶ <Register/Edit LDAP Search Attribute>.**

3 **Select <Not Registered 1> or <Not Registered 2>, and press <Register/Edit>.**

- To edit a search attribute, select a registered attribute, and press <Register/Edit>.
- To delete a search attribute, press <Delete>.

4 **Specify <Display Name> and <Attribute Name>, and press <OK> ▶ <Close>.**

NOTE

- You cannot edit or delete names, <E-Mail>, <Fax>, <Organization> or <Organization Unit>.
- <Register/Edit> and <Delete> can only be performed for <Not Registered 1> and <Not Registered 2>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Edit LDAP Search Attribute>	<Not Registered 1>, <Not Registered 2>: <Register/Edit>, <Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	B	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can specify the attribute used when searching an LDAP server for destinations by name using "Search by Name."

Configuring to "Search by Name" for LDAP Searches

1 **Press (Settings/Register).**

2 **Press <Set Destination> ▶ <Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>.**

3 **Set <Name Type for Search Attribute> and <Filter>, and press <OK>.**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Settings for Search by Name When Using LDAP Server>	<Name Type for Search Attribute>: **cn**, commonname, fullName, displayName, sn, givenName, *Custom	Yes	No	No	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	<Filter>: Contains, Does Not Contain, Equals, Differs from, **Begins with**, Ends with					

<Acquire Remote Address Book>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

Specify the settings for acquiring a remote address book.

<Acquire Remote Address Book>(P. 1015)

<Make Remote Address Book Open>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

Specify the settings for making a remote address book public.

<Make Remote Address Book Open>(P. 1017)

<Use Personal Address List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can select whether to use a personal Address Book of a user who logs in to the machine with personal authentication management.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Personal Address List>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use User Group Address List>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination>

You can restrict the use of <User Group Address List>. However, when an administrator accesses the machine from the Remote UI, they can register/edit <User Group Address List> regardless of this setting.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use User Group Address List>	<On>, <On (Browse Only)>, <Off>	Yes	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You can set to also change the name of the user group address book when a user group name is changed. Log in to the Remote UI as a user with Administrator privileges, press [Settings/Registration] ▶ [Set Destination] ▶ [Personal Address List/User Group Address List Settings] ▶ select the [Apply User Group Name Change to User Group Address List Name] check box.

<Acquire Remote Address Book>

ERJ8-0K6

Specify the settings for acquiring a remote address book.

<Acquire Address Book>(P. 1015)
<Remote Address Book Server Address>(P. 1015)
<Communication Timeout>(P. 1015)
<Fax TX Line Auto Select Adjustment>(P. 1016)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item marked with an asterisk (*)

- Only appears if your machine has a fax function.

<Acquire Address Book>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Acquire Remote Address Book>

You can specify whether to use the address book of another machine on the network as the Remote Address Book.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Acquire Address Book>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Remote Address Book Server Address>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Acquire Remote Address Book>

You can specify the IP address or the host name of a device that opens the Remote Address Book externally. The IP address can be specified using IPv4 or IPv6.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remote Address Book Server Address>	Enter the IP Address or Host Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Communication Timeout>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Acquire Remote Address Book>

You can set the communication timeout. When a device opening a Remote Address Book does not respond within the specified time, the machine stops trying to obtain destinations from the device.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Communication Timeout>	15 to **30** to 120 sec.	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Fax TX Line Auto Select Adjustment> *

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Acquire Remote Address Book>

You can set whether to automatically select the fax line instead of using the line registered to the destination, when sending a fax to a destination obtained from a Remote Address Book.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Fax TX Line Auto Select Adjustment>	<**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Make Remote Address Book Open>

ERJ8-0K7

Specify the settings for making a remote address book public.

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Make Address Book Open>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Set Destination> ▶ <Make Remote Address Book Open>

You can specify whether to open the address book of this machine to other machines on the network.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Make Address Book Open>	<On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Management Settings>

ERJ8-0K8

Specify the settings for operating and managing the machine, including user and hardware management and the security settings.

<User Management>(P. 1018)
<Device Management>(P. 1018)
<License/Other>(P. 1018)
<Data Management>(P. 1018)
<Security Settings>(P. 1018)

<User Management>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings>

Specify the settings for managing the users of the machine.

<User Management>(P. 1019)

<Device Management>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings>

Specify the settings for managing the hardware and optional equipment.

<Device Management>(P. 1029)

<License/Other>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings>

Specify the settings for registering licenses and for the software that can be used on the machine.

<License/Other>(P. 1040)

<Data Management>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings>

Specify the data management settings, including how to import, export, and initialize settings data.

<Data Management>(P. 1048)

<Security Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings>

Specify the settings for enhancing the machine's security.

<Security Settings>(P. 1052)

<User Management>

ERJ8-0K9

Specify the settings for managing the users of the machine.

<Authentication Management>(P. 1019)
<System Manager Information Settings>(P. 1019)
<Department ID Management>(P. 1019)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Authentication Management>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management>

Specify the settings for managing the users of the machine using the authentication application.

<Authentication Management>(P. 1022)

<System Manager Information Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management>

Set the System Manager information for the machine. **Changing the System Manager ID and PIN(P. 631)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<System Manager Information Settings>	<System Manager ID>: **7654321** (Seven digits maximum) <System Manager PIN>: **7654321** (Seven digits maximum) <System Manager Name> <E-Mail Address> <Contact Information> <Comment>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings

<Department ID Management>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management>

Select whether to manage users in groups by assigning users to Department IDs. **Configuring the Department ID Management Settings(P. 633)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Department ID Management>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
<Register Department ID>	<Register>, <Edit>, <Delete>, <Limit Functions>*1	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
	When <Register>/<Edit> is selected: <Department ID>, <PIN>, <Turn Limit On/Off and Set Page Limit>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
	When <Turn Limit On/Off and Set Page Limit> is selected: • <Total Print Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) • <Total Color Print Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) • <Total Black & White Print Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) When <Set Copy Limit> is selected: • <Color Copy Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) • <Black & White Copy Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) When <Set Scan Limit> is selected: • <Color Scan Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) • <Black & White Scan Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) When <Set Print Limit Details> is selected: • <Color Print Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999) • <Black & White Print Limit>: <On>, <**Off**> Page Limit (**0** to 999999)	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
<Page Totals>	<Clear>, <Print List>, <Clear All Totals>	No	No	Yes	No	-
<Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
<Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Black & White Copy/Print Jobs>*1	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings
<Allow Black & White Printer Jobs>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Department ID Management Settings

*1 Indicates items that appear only if DepartmentID Authentication is set as the login service.

<Authentication Management>

ERJ8-0KA

Specify the settings for managing the users of the machine using the authentication application.

- **<Change Password>(P. 1022)**
- **<Register/Edit Authentication User>(P. 1022)**
- **<Use User Authentication>(P. 1023)**
- **<Keyboard Authentication>(P. 1023)**
- **<Login Screen Display Settings>(P. 1023)**
- **<Functions to Restrict>(P. 1024)**
- **<Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.>(P. 1024)**
- **<Default Role When Registering User>(P. 1024)**
- **<Match Case for User Name>(P. 1025)**
- **<Allow Use of @ in User Name>(P. 1025)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Change Password>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

The users registered in the machine can change their own login password.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Change Password>	(32 characters maximum)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Authentication User Management

NOTE

- This item only appears when User Authentication is used and a user has logged in with privileges other than Administrator.
- If the user logged in with Administrator privileges, this item changes the password in **<Register/Edit Authentication User>(P. 1022)** .
- You can display a password strength indicator for checking the strength of the new password. **<Use Password Strength Indicator>(P. 1027)**

<Register/Edit Authentication User>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select to register users in the machine and specify the user information, such as the password and privilege level. **Registering User Information in the Local Device(P. 597)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Edit Authentication User>	<Register>, <Details/Edit>, <Delete>	No	No	Yes	C	Authentication User Management

NOTE

- You can display a password strength indicator for checking the strength of the new password. **<Use Password Strength Indicator>(P. 1027)**

<Use User Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select whether to enable the personal authentication management function. You can also select which login methods to use for user authentication. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use User Authentication>	<On>, <Off> When <On> is selected: • <Keyboard Authentication>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Keyboard Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Specify the keyboard authentication settings.

<Keyboard Authentication>(P. 1026)

<Login Screen Display Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Specify when to display the login screen by selecting either "when you start using the machine" or "after a function button is pressed." If "after a function button is pressed" is selected, you can specify the functions that require user login. **Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Login Screen Display Settings>	<Displ When Dev Operation Start>, <Display When Func. Selected>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <Display When Func. Selected> is selected: • <Require Authentication For>: <Functions>, <Color Copy/Print> (<None (No Authentication Required)>, <Full Color>, <Full Color/Two Colors>, <Full Color/Two Colors/Single Color>)	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	• <Require Authentication in Settings/Registration For>*1: <All Items>, <Administrator Items Only>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items that appear only if ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM is enabled.

NOTE

- If you change this setting, **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)** may be set to <On>. For more information, see **Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)** .

<Functions to Restrict>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select whether to restrict use of particular functions when personal authentication management is enabled. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Functions to Restrict>	<Print from Drivers without AMS Printer Driver Add-in>: <Restrict>, <Do Not Restrict>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Remote Scan>: <Restrict>, <Do Not Restrict>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select whether to apply personal authentication management to printing, faxing, and remote scanning via a computer. **Using Personal Authentication to Manage Printing/Faxing/Remote Scanning via a Computer(P. 628)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Default Role When Registering User>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select the role to apply to users in situations such as when no privileges are set. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Default Role When Registering User>	<Administrator>, <**GeneralUser**>, <DeviceAdmin>, <NetworkAdmin>, <PowerUser>*1, <LimitedUser>*1	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

*1 Indicates items that appear only if ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM is enabled.

<Match Case for User Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select whether user names are case-sensitive.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Match Case for User Name>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- It is recommended that this is set together with <Function Settings> ▶ <Print> ▶ <Match Case for User Name>.

<Allow Use of @ in User Name>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management>

Select whether to allow "@" to be used in user names.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Use of @ in User Name>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Keyboard Authentication>

ERJ8-0KC

Specify the keyboard authentication settings.

<Number of Caches for Login Users>(P. 1026)
<Display Button to Change Password on Settings Menu>(P. 1026)
<Use Numeric Keys for Authentication>(P. 1026)
<Restrict Password Reuse>(P. 1027)
<Settings for Password Change Prohibition Period>(P. 1027)
<Use Password Strength Indicator>(P. 1027)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Number of Caches for Login Users>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

Select whether to display the names of users who previously logged in in a drop-down list on the login screen. Select <0> to hide the login history, and select <1> to display only the name of the user who logged in most recently. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Number of Caches for Login Users>	<0>, <1>, <Max (Maximum No. for Device)>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Display Button to Change Password on Settings Menu>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

Select whether to allow users to change passwords by using ☰ on the top right corner of the login screen. **Configuring the User Login Methods and Authentication Devices(P. 621)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Button to Change Password on Settings Menu>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use Numeric Keys for Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

If the user name and password are comprised of numbers only, authentication can be performed with numeric key entry only.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Numeric Keys for Authentication>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Password Reuse>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

Specify whether to prohibit the re-use of a password that has already been used. If you set a password history, a different password must be used for the set number of times.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Password Reuse>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • Number of Prohibited Last Passwords :1 to 24	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Settings for Password Change Prohibition Period>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

You can specify the period for which password changes are prohibited. If you set a password change prohibition period, the password cannot be changed for the set number of days.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Settings for Password Change Prohibition Period>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • Prohibition Period : **1** to 179 days	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is available only if <Restrict Password Reuse> is set to <On>.

<Use Password Strength Indicator>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Authentication Management> ▶ <Keyboard Authentication>

Specify whether to display a password strength indicator on the password setting screen when registering or editing user information.

When <On> is selected, the password strength is displayed in five levels.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Password Strength Indicator>	<On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • 1 to 5	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When the password strength is set to level 1, there is no restriction on password settings.
- When the password strength is set to level 2 or higher, a password weaker than the specified strength cannot be set.
- If the password is shorter than the minimum number of characters specified in <Minimum Length Settings>, a message indicating that the password is too short is displayed next to the meter. **<Minimum Length Settings>(P. 1059)**

<Device Management>

ERJ8-0KE

Specify the settings for managing the hardware and optional equipment.

- **<Device Information Settings>(P. 1029)**
- **<Import/Export from Addr. Book Management Software>(P. 1029)**
- **<Confirm Device Signature Certificate>(P. 1030)**
- **<Certificate Settings>(P. 1030)**
- **<Display Job Status Before Authentication>(P. 1032)**
- **<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>(P. 1032)**
- **<Display Job Log>(P. 1033)**
- **<Save Audit Log>(P. 1033)**
- **<Retrieve Network Authentication Log>(P. 1034)**
- **<Store Key Operation Log>(P. 1034)**
- **<Restrict Service Representative Access>(P. 1034)**
- **<Synchronize Custom Settings (Client)>(P. 1035)**
- **<Manage Personal Settings>(P. 1035)**
- **<Prohibit Initialization of Administrator Password>(P. 1035)**
- **<Restrict Special Mode Operations>(P. 1035)**
- **<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>(P. 1036)**
- **<Canon Genuine Mode>(P. 1036)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Device Information Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Enter the name and the installation location to identify the machine.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Device Information Settings>	<Device Name>	No	No	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Location>	No	No	Yes	A	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Import/Export from Addr. Book Management Software>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Set whether to import or access the address books of address book management software.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Import/Export from Addr. Book Management Software>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: <Use User Authentication When Importing>: <On>, <**Off**>					

NOTE

- When user authentication is performed, setting <Use User Authentication When Importing> to <On> enables only address books for which user authentication has been performed to be imported.

<Confirm Device Signature Certificate>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Check the detailed settings of a device signature certificate. You can also check whether the certificate is valid.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm Device Signature Certificate>	<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

<Certificate Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

You can manage the keys/certificates, CA certificates, or certification revocation list (CRL) used in the machine. You can also set the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP).

Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)
Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)
Generating a Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR)(P. 711)
Configuring the Expiration Check Method for Received Certificates(P. 709)

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Generate Key>						
<Generate Network Communication Key>	<Key Name>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Signature Algorithm>: <**SHA256**>, <SHA384>, <SHA512>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Key Algorithm>: <**RSA**>, <ECDSA>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	• When <RSA> is selected: <Key Length (bit)>: <512>, <1024>, <**2048**>, <4096>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	• When <ECDSA> is selected <Key Type>: <**P256**>, <P384>, <P521>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Validity Start Date>: Date, Month, Year (01/01/2000 - 31/12/2037)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Validity End Date>: Date, Month, Year (01/01/2000 - 31/12/2037)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Country/Region>: Country/Region name and code	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<State>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<City>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Organization>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Organization Unit>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Common Name> (IP address of the machine or FQDN (41 characters maximum))	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Generate/Update Device Signature Key>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Key Settings
<Generate/Update Key for Access Control>	<Yes>, <No>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Key and Certificate List>	<Certificate Details>: (<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C*1*2	Certificate/ Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings
	<Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Display Use Location> (Key and Certificate)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Certificate/ Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings
<CA Certificate List>	<Certificate Details>: (<Version>, <Serial Number>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Issued To>, <Validity Start Date>, <Validity End Date>, <Issuer>, <Public Key>, <Certificate Thumbprint>, <Issued To (Altn. Name)>, <Verify Certificate>)	Yes	Yes	Yes	C*1	Certificate/ Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings
	<Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Certificate Revocation List (CRL)>	<CRL Details>: <Version>, <Signature Algorithm>, <Valid From>, <Next Update>, <Issuer>, <Serial No. List>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C*1	Certificate/ Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Settings
	<Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Register Key and Certificate>	<Register>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<Register CA Certificate>	<Register>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
	<Delete>	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	-
<OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) Settings>	<Use OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol)>: <On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • <Certificate Verification Level>: <Enable Unverified Certificates>: <**On**>, <Off> • <OCSP Responder Settings>: • <URL>: <**Retrieve from Certificate**>, <Custom>, <Retrieve from Cert./Custom> • <Custom URL> • <Communication Timeout>: 1 to **3** to 30 sec.	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

*1 Supports only algorithms that can be imported from the Remote UI.

*2 Keys and certificates are exported in the PKCS#12 format.

<Display Job Status Before Authentication>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to restrict access to the <Status Monitor> screen when using a login service.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Job Status Before Authentication>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to restrict users from performing operations on the jobs of other users on the <Status Monitor> screen when User Authentication is used.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>	<Copy/Print>: <On>, <**Off**> <Send>: <On>, <**Off**> <Receive>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Store>: <On>, <Off>					

NOTE

- If you change **<Login Screen Display Settings>(P. 1023)** , this setting may be set to <On>. For more information, see **Specifying When to Display the Login Screen(P. 626)** .

<Display Job Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to display job logs on the <Status Monitor> screen. You can also select whether to allow device management software to retrieve job logs from the machine. **Basic Screens on the Touch Panel Display(P. 212)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Job Log>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <Off> is selected: • <Retrieve Job Log with Management Software>: <Allow>, <Do Not Allow>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If you log in to Remote UI with Administrator privileges, you can configure the [Do Not Store Personal Information in Job Log] setting. When this setting is enabled, the machine does not write personal information to the job log and audit log.

<Save Audit Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to start log recording. **Starting Log Recording(P. 724)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Save Audit Log>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- If this is set to <On>, the **<Adjust Time>(P. 818)** setting cannot be used.

NOTE

- For information on the types of logs, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

<Retrieve Network Authentication Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to start log recording for authentication performed when the machine is accessed via the network, such as when printing from a computer or accessing the Advanced Space.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Retrieve Network Authentication Log>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Store Key Operation Log>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to save a log of the key operations performed by users. By analyzing the stored logs, you can survey how the machine is being used.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Store Key Operation Log>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- When the log is output, PINs, passwords, and information obfuscated by the settings for <Restrict Access to Other User Jobs>, etc., are output as masked characters. Therefore, confidential information cannot be leaked externally.
- For information on interpreting and outputting saved logs, contact your dealer or service representative.

<Restrict Service Representative Access>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

You can set the machine to restrict changes in user information or security-related settings when the machine is inspected or repaired by your dealer or service representative.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Service Representative Access>	<On>, <Off (Auth. Needed)>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Even when this is not set to <On>, you can check the audit log for past operations if the service representative has changed user information or security-related settings.

<Synchronize Custom Settings (Client)>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

You can synchronize the personalized data of multiple Canon multifunction printers on a network. Even for the server machine, it is necessary to enable this setting if you wish to operate the machine as the client machine. **Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Synchronize Custom Settings (Client)>	Before synchronizing: <Enable>, <Pause> After synchronizing: <Disable>, <Resume>	No	No	Yes	No	-

<Manage Personal Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Specify the preferences (Personal Settings) for each user.

<Manage Personal Settings>(P. 1037)

<Prohibit Initialization of Administrator Password>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Specify whether to restrict operations of <Initialize Admin. Password>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prohibit Initialization of Administrator Password>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	No	No	-

NOTE

- For information on using <Initialize Admin. Password>, see **Logging in as an Administrator(P. 142)** .

<Restrict Special Mode Operations>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Select whether to restrict use of Special Mode, which is provided for the purpose of maintenance by service representatives.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Special Mode Operations>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	No	No	-

<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

Set whether to display a button in the Remote UI or Toner Status for accessing the Web site for purchasing toner cartridges, etc. Also set whether to use Toner Status.

<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>(P. 1039)

<Canon Genuine Mode>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management>

This mode is for genuine cartridges.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Canon Genuine Mode>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	-	-

NOTE

- A service technician may change the settings. If the menu is not displayed, contact the administrator of the machine.

<Manage Personal Settings>

ERJ8-0KF

Specify the preferences (Personal Settings) for each user.

<Enable Use of Personal Settings>(P. 1037)
<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)
<Use Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>(P. 1038)
<Home Management Settings for Personal Use>(P. 1038)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Enable Use of Personal Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Manage Personal Settings>

Select whether to enable users that are logged into the machine to use the Personalization function, such as the display language, accessibility settings, and the screen to display after startup/restoration.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Enable Use of Personal Settings>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Manage Personal Settings>

Select how the machine processes personal settings for users or groups (user setting information) when the number for which the machine can save various settings exceeds the limit.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>	<Delete Oldest User Settings>, <Discard New User Settings>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- For information on the data deleted when <Delete Oldest User Settings> is specified, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** .
- To completely erase data manually instead of deleting it automatically, follow the procedure described in **Deleting User Setting Information(P. 641)** .
- For information on the limit of user or group personal settings (user setting information) that the machine can save, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

<Use Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Manage Personal Settings>

Select whether to enable each user to set the screen displayed on startup/restoration.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Default Screen After Startup/ Restoration>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Home Management Settings for Personal Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Manage Personal Settings>

Specify whether Personal buttons can be registered and edited in the <Home> screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Home Management Settings for Personal Use>	<Allow Registration/Editing of Personal Buttons>: <**On**>, <Off> <Allow Use of Move Buttons When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>, <Off> <Allow Use of Home Screen Layout Set. When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>, <Off> <Allow Use of Wallpaper Settings When Customizing for Personal Use>: <**On**>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

<Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>

ERJ8-0KH

Set whether to display a button in the Remote UI or Toner Status for accessing the Web site for purchasing toner cartridges, etc. Also set whether to use Toner Status.

<Display Consumables Purchase Button in Remote UI>(P. 1039)
<Use Toner Status>(P. 1039)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Display Consumables Purchase Button in Remote UI>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>

Select whether to display a button for accessing the website for purchasing toner cartridges on the Remote UI.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Consumables Purchase Button in Remote UI>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use Toner Status>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Device Management> ▶ <Consumables Info Settings for Remote UI/Toner Status>

Select whether to use the toner cartridge level notification tool. You can also set whether to display a button for accessing the website for purchasing toner cartridges on the toner cartridge level notification tool.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Toner Status>	<On>, <Off> • When <On> is selected: <Display Consumables Purchase Button>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<License/Other>

ERJ8-0KJ

Specify the settings for registering licenses and for the software that can be used on the machine.

<Register License>(P. 1040)
<MEAP Settings>(P. 1040)
<Remote UI Settings>(P. 1040)
<Delete Message Board Contents>(P. 1041)
<Visual Message Settings>(P. 1041)
<Remote Operation Settings>(P. 1042)
<Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM>(P. 1043)
<Register/Update Software>(P. 1043)
<Start Setup Guide>(P. 1043)
<Allow Jobs to Be Performed from Mobile Device>(P. 1044)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Register License>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Enter the license key for a system option that can be used on the machine. **Installing System Options(P. 765)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register License>	24 characters maximum	No	No	No	No	-

<MEAP Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Specify the MEAP settings.

<MEAP Settings>(P. 1045)

NOTE

- Depending on the platform version of the machine which you are using, <AddOn Settings> is displayed. Read "MEAP" as "AddOn" in the following setting items or descriptions.

<Remote UI Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Select whether to use the Remote UI to operate the machine and change settings.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remote UI Settings>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Use TLS>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Delete Message Board Contents>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Select to delete messages from the administrator that are displayed on the control panel.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Delete Message Board Contents>	<Yes>, <No>	No	No	No	No	-

IMPORTANT

- When <OK> is displayed on a message board, press <OK> to operate the machine. To clear a message board without <OK> displayed, you need to use the Remote UI.

<Visual Message Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Specify the Visual Message settings. **Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Settings>	<Display Timing and Content> • Display timing: <Display After Logout/Auto Reset>, <Display After Login>, <Display When Print Job Starts> • Content: <**SMB**>, <HTTP/WebDAV> When <SMB> is selected: <File Path:> <User Name:> <Password:> When <HTTP/WebDAV> is selected: <File Path:>	No	No	Yes	C	Visual Message Settings

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<User Name:> <Password:> <Confirm Certificate for TLS Communication>: On, **Off** <Add CN to Verification Items>: On, **Off**					
	<Content to Display When an Error Occurs>: <**Display an error message, but do not display Visual Message content**>, <Do not display an error message or Visual Message content>	No	No	Yes	C	Visual Message Settings
<Proxy Settings>	<Address Without Using Proxy:>: (255 characters maximum)	No	No	Yes	C	Visual Message Settings
<Security Settings>	<Notify Server of Login Information When Content Is Displayed>: On, **Off** When 'On' is selected: <Address of Server Allowed to Receive Login Information:>: (255 characters maximum)	No	No	Yes	C	Visual Message Settings
	<Allow Printing from Content>: On, **Off**	No	No	Yes	C	Visual Message Settings

NOTE

- This setting can only be specified from the Remote UI.

<Remote Operation Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Select whether to enable the Remote Operation function. This function enables you to specify settings and process jobs from a computer by displaying the screen of the touch panel display on the computer screen.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Remote Operation Settings>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Password>: 8 characters maximum (Only alphanumeric characters) • <Set Details>: <Users to Allow Operation Via Remote UI>: <**Administrators Only**>, <All Users> <Allow Operation Not Via Remote UI>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/ Registration Basic Information

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Timeout>: 0 min. =off, 1 to **15** to 150 min.					

NOTE

- When remote operation is performed, the following settings cannot be changed or executed.
  - **<Job Storage Period>(P. 1003)**

<Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

Select whether to use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM. **Using ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM(P. 640)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Register/Update Software>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

You can install system options/MEAP applications in the machine. **Installing System Options(P. 765)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Register/Update Software>	<Install Applications/ Options>, <Update Firmware>, <Software Management Settings>, <Scheduled Update>	No	No	Yes	No	-

<Start Setup Guide>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

You can follow the wizard instructions to configure the machine's initial settings. **Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Start Setup Guide>	<Start>	No	No	No	No	-

<Allow Jobs to Be Performed from Mobile Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other>

If you set this to <On>, you can scan documents from a mobile device and send the scanned data by e-mail, copy or fax.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Jobs to Be Performed from Mobile Device>	<On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: <Authenticate with PIN Code for Scan Jobs>: <**On**>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	No	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<MEAP Settings>

ERJ8-0KK

Specify the MEAP settings.

<Print System Information>(P. 1045)
<Use TLS>(P. 1045)
<Confirm TLS Certificate Using MEAP Application>(P. 1046)
<Use DNS Caching>(P. 1046)
<Use Proxy Settings of This Device>(P. 1046)
<Add X-FRAME-OPTIONS to HTTP Header>(P. 1046)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .
- Depending on the platform version of the machine which you are using, <AddOn Settings> is displayed. Read "MEAP" as "AddOn" in the following setting items or descriptions.

<Print System Information>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

You can print information for MEAP applications and certain system applications as a report. **Printing a List of Settings(P. 789)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Print System Information>	<Yes>, <No>	No	No	No	No	-

<Use TLS>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

Select whether to use TLS communication when a MEAP application is used by accessing the machine via a Web browser.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use TLS>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- You need to configure the key and certificate before setting this setting to <On>. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**
- Changes made for this setting are also applied to <Use TLS> in **<Remote UI Settings>(P. 1040)** .

<Confirm TLS Certificate Using MEAP Application>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

Select whether to verify TLS server certificates and their common names (CN) when TLS communication is used for a MEAP application.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Confirm TLS Certificate Using MEAP Application>	<On>, <**Off**> When <On> is selected: • <Add Items to Verify>: <CN>: On, **Off**	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use DNS Caching>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

Select whether to save DNS information from successful searches via a MEAP application to memory. You can also set an expiration date if you choose to save information temporarily.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use DNS Caching>	<On (Unlimited Use)>, <On (Specify Period)>, <**Off**> When <On (Specify Period)> is selected: • <Period of Validity>: 1 to **60** to 120 sec.	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Use Proxy Settings of This Device>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

Select whether to use the proxy settings of the machine with MEAP applications. **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use Proxy Settings of This Device>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Add X-FRAME-OPTIONS to HTTP Header>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <License/Other> ▶ <MEAP Settings>

When the HTTP server returns a response, it appends X-FRAME-OPTIONS to the header to prevent contents created by other servers from overlapping.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Add X-FRAME-OPTIONS to HTTP Header>	<**On**>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Data Management>

ERJ8-0KL

Specify the data management settings, including how to import, export, and initialize settings data.

<Import/Export>(P. 1048)
<Initialize All Data/Settings>(P. 1048)
<TPM Settings>(P. 1048)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Import/Export>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management>

Specify the settings for importing/exporting settings data.

<Import/Export>(P. 1050)

<Initialize All Data/Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management>

Select to restore all of the machine settings to the factory default values and completely erase the data stored in the machine. It is not normally necessary to use this setting, but it is useful to erase personal or confidential information when disposing of the machine. **Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Initialize All Data/Settings>	<Yes>, <No>	No	No	No	No	-

<TPM Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management>

If the TPM setting is activated, you can safely store in the TPM chip encryption key (TPM key) that encrypts confidential information such as the password, public key pair for TLS communication, and user certificate stored in the machine. Doing so, you can prevent important information for the machine from leaking. Also, you can recover the system if the TPM chip fails by restoring the TPM key. **Using TPM(P. 777)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<TPM Settings>	<Use TPM>: <On>, <**Off**>	No	No	No	C[*1]	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Back Up TPM Key> • <Password>: (12 characters maximum)	No	No	No	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	<Restore TPM Key>					

*1 If <TPM Settings> is set to <On>, make sure to back up the TPM key in the import destination machine.

<Import/Export>

ERJ8-0KR

Specify the settings for importing/exporting settings data.

<Import from USB Memory>(P. 1050)
<Export to USB Memory>(P. 1050)
<Import Result Report>(P. 1051)
<Restrict Import/Export from Web Service>(P. 1051)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Import from USB Memory>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <Import/Export>

You can import all the settings information from a USB memory device.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Import from USB Memory>	<Store Import Result in Device>: **On**, Off <Store Import Result in USB>: On, **Off** <Decryption Password>	No	No	No	No	-

NOTE

- If USB memory is already connected to the machine, that USB memory will be recognized as the media to use for importing, even if you connect new USB memory. Press ⏏ ▶ remove the connected USB memory ▶ insert the desired USB memory.

<Export to USB Memory>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <Import/Export>

You can export all the settings information into a USB memory device.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Export to USB Memory>	<Encryption Password>	No	No	No	No	-

NOTE

- You cannot select which settings to export when exporting to USB memory. All settings are batch exported.
- If USB memory is already connected to the machine, that USB memory will be recognized as the media to use for exporting, even if you connect new USB memory. Press ⏏ ▶ remove the connected USB memory ▶ insert the desired USB memory.

<Import Result Report>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <Import/Export>

Select to print a report of import results.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Import Result Report>	<Yes>, <No>	No	No	No	No	-

NOTE

- Reports are printed in the following language.
  - If the display language of the machine is set to Japanese immediately after the import process: Japanese
  - If the display language of the machine is set to something other than Japanese immediately after the import process: English

<Restrict Import/Export from Web Service>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Data Management> ▶ <Import/Export>

Select whether to restrict import and export operations with Web applications other than the Remote UI.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Restrict Import/Export from Web Service>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Security Settings>

ERJ8-0KS

Specify the settings for enhancing the machine's security.

<Authentication/Password Settings>(P. 1052)
<Encryption Settings>(P. 1052)
<System Verification Settings>(P. 1052)
<Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment>(P. 1053)

<Authentication/Password Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings>

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the password and the authentication function.

<Authentication/Password Settings>(P. 1055)

<Encryption Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings>

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective encryption security.

<Encryption Settings>(P. 1063)

<System Verification Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings>

Specify whether to use the system verification and protection functions.

- <Verify System at Startup>: Verifies the integrity of the firmware and MEAP applications when the machine starts up.
- <Trellix Embedded Control>: Improves system reliability while the machine is running by using the Trellix Embedded Control to prevent unauthorized program modification or execution. This is only available when <Verify System at Startup> is <On>.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<System Verification Settings>	<Verify System at Startup>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	<Trellix Embedded Control>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- With <Verify System at Startup>, the machine is restarted when you change the setting from <Off> ▶ <On> or when you press <OK> without changing the setting from <On>. To maintain the <On> setting without restarting the machine, press <No> in the confirmation screen, and then press <Cancel> in the <System Verification Settings> screen.

NOTE

When <Verify System at Startup> is set to <On>

- Startup takes longer than when it is set to <Off> because system verification is performed.
- The following events and results are recorded to the device management log. **Managing the Logs(P. 724)**

Event	Firmware verification, MEAP application verification
Result	Success, Failure

- If an error code appears on the screen when you switch the machine on, contact your dealer or service representative.

When <Trellix Embedded Control> is set to <On>

- The machine takes several minutes to restart after you specify this setting for the first time.
- <System Verif. Mntr.> appears in the <Home> screen and you can check the monitor log if there has been an unauthorized operation.

<Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings>

You can now specify all the recommended security settings for your usage environment simply by selecting the machine's environment type. See "Security Settings Navigator" for the available environment types. **Security Settings Navigator**

IMPORTANT

- If any of the machine's security policy settings have been specified, <Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment> cannot be used.
- The recommended settings do not guarantee accuracy or completeness. Use them for reference only.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment>	<Usage Environment Settings>: • <1. Intranet And Internet Connection> • <2. Direct Internet Connection> • <3. Internet Connection Prohibited> • <4. Private (Home) Network> • <5. Public Network> • <6. Highly Confidential Info. Environment> • <Check Recommendation> • <Clear> • <Print Set.Changes> <Security-Related Notification Settings>:	No	No	Yes	No	-

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
	• <When Recommended Usage Environment Is Updated>: <**On**>, <Off> • <When Internet Security Issue Is Detected>: <**On**>, <Off> • <When Encryption Method Vuln. Is Found for Selected Wireless LAN>: <**On**>, <Off>					

NOTE

- If you change the machine to the recommended security settings for each type, functions you want to use may become unavailable or other problems may occur. In this case, you can undo the changes and restore the previous security settings.
  If you manually changed settings that were changed with <Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment>, the changes are not retained. The machine returns to the state before executing <Recommended Security Set. for Usage Environment>.
- You can press <Print Set.Changes> to check the values of the changed settings.

<Authentication/Password Settings>

ERJ8-0KU

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the password and the authentication function.

<Authentication Function Settings>(P. 1055)
<Password Settings>(P. 1055)

<Authentication Function Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings>

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the authentication function.

<Authentication Function Settings>(P. 1056)

<Password Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings>

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the password.

<Password Settings>(P. 1058)

<Authentication Function Settings>

ERJ8-0KW

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the authentication function.

<Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN>(P. 1056)
<Lockout Settings>(P. 1056)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Authentication Function Settings>

Select whether to prohibit authentication with a Department ID and PIN when operating from the printer/scanner. If <On> is selected, authentication with System Manager ID and PIN is also prohibited when operating from a device management software.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN>	<On>, <Off>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

IMPORTANT

- Jobs that are restricted by this setting are forcibly canceled on the machine.

<Lockout Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Authentication Function Settings>

Select whether to block users from logging in for a specified period of time after a certain number of consecutive invalid login attempts. This setting does not apply to authentication with a Department ID or PIN, or authentication for the Mail Box.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Lockout Settings>	<Enable Lockout>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
	When <On> is selected: • <Lockout Threshold>: 1 to 5 to 10 times • <Lockout Period>: 1 to 3 to 60 min.	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Users may be blocked from logging in before a specified number of consecutive invalid login attempts if login operations are performed on Windows or other operating systems, or from applications that use FTP, IPP, SNMPv3, SMB, or WebDAV.

<Password Settings>

ERJ8-0KX

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective security of the password.

- **<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>(P. 1058)**
- **<Display Warning When Default Password Is in Use>(P. 1058)**
- **<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access>(P. 1059)**
- **<Always Change Invalid Password When Logging In>(P. 1059)**
- **<Minimum Length Settings>(P. 1059)**
- **<Validity Period Settings>(P. 1060)**
- **<Prohibit Use of 3 or More Identical Consec. Characters>(P. 1060)**
- **<Use at Least 1 Uppercase Character>(P. 1060)**
- **<Use at Least 1 Lowercase Character>(P. 1061)**
- **<Use at Least 1 Digit>(P. 1061)**
- **<Use at Least 1 Symbol>(P. 1062)**

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

Select whether to prohibit caching of a password that is entered at login.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prohibit Caching of Authentication Password>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- Passwords are not saved to the timeline of unauthenticated users or guest users, regardless of this setting.

<Display Warning When Default Password Is in Use>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

Select whether to display the screen for changing the password when the Administrator logs in to the machine using the default user name and password.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Display Warning When Default Password Is in Use>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- If the password has expired, the screen for changing the password appears, regardless of this setting.

<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

Select whether to allow the default password to be used when logging in from the Remote UI.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

<Always Change Invalid Password When Logging In>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

Specify whether to prevent logging in without changing the password when the administrator user "Administrator" logs in to the machine using the initial password.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Always Change Invalid Password When Logging In>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This item is set to <On> when any item in [Password Settings Policy] under [Security Policy Settings] is enabled. **Security Policy Setting Items(P. 585)**

<Minimum Length Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can set the minimum number of characters required when registering a password to prevent the simplification of passwords. When a password length is set, a user cannot be registered with a blank password.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Minimum Length Settings>	<On> (1 to 8 to 32 Characters), <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.

- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Validity Period Settings>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can set a password expiration period to force users to periodically change their password, in order to prevent the simplification of passwords.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Validity Period Settings>	<On> (1 to 180 days), <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Prohibit Use of 3 or More Identical Consec. Characters>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can restrict passwords so that the same character cannot be used consecutively three or more times.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prohibit Use of 3 or More Identical Consec. Characters>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Use at Least 1 Uppercase Character>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can restrict passwords so that only passwords which include at least one uppercase character can be registered.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use at Least 1 Uppercase Character>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Use at Least 1 Lowercase Character>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can restrict passwords so that only passwords which include at least one lowercase character can be registered.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use at Least 1 Lowercase Character>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Use at Least 1 Digit>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can restrict passwords so that only passwords which include at least one number can be registered.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use at Least 1 Digit>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Use at Least 1 Symbol>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings>

You can restrict passwords so that only passwords which include at least one symbol can be registered.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Use at Least 1 Symbol>	<On>, <**Off**>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to personal authentication management, not to Department ID and PIN.
- Password restriction settings are valid for passwords that are registered/edited after the restrictions are set. When a password that is already registered exceeds the restrictions for these settings, a screen prompting to change the password is displayed when user authentication is performed.

<Encryption Settings>

ERJ8-0KY

Specify the settings for enhancing the effective encryption security.

<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>(P. 1063)
<Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140>(P. 1063)

NOTE

- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Encryption Settings>

Select whether to restrict the use of weak encryption, or a key and certificate with weak encryption. **Management Functions(P. 1261)**

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption>	<On>, <Off> <On> is selected: • <Prohibit Use of Key/ Certificate with Weak Encryption>: <On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting applies to functions such as IPSec, TLS, Kerberos, S/MIME, wireless LAN, and SNMPv3.
- The machine may not be able to communicate with devices that only support weak encryption.
- Even if the use of weak encryption is restricted, it may be allowed depending on the certificate (root certificate).
- For information on the algorithms prohibited when this setting is set to <On>, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

<Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140>

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Encryption Settings>

Specify whether to make the function using encryption comply with FIPS 140.

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140>	<On>, <Off>	No	No	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

NOTE

- This setting is available for TLS and MEAP applications.
- This setting is only available for MEAP applications that use a FIPS provider.
- For information on the algorithms prohibited when this setting is set to <On>, see **System Specifications(P. 1254)** .

Volume Settings (Volume Settings)

ERJ8-0L0

Specify the settings for tones emitted by the machine, such as the tone for sending or receiving a fax and the confirmation tones notifying you of the machine's status.

- For detailed information on the settings, see **Setting Sounds(P. 259)** .

NOTE

- The item for sound settings (volume adjustment) appears when you press <Volume Settings>.
- For information on the items ("A", "B", "C", and "No") in the "Import All Function" column, see **Import All Function(P. 801)** .

Item	Setting Description	DeviceAdmin	NetworkAdmin	Can be set in Remote UI	Import All Function	Name of Item When Exporting with the Remote UI
<Alarm Volume>	0 to **1** to 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Monitor Volume>	0 to **1** to 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Incoming Ring Volume>	0 to **1** to 3	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Incoming Fax Ring>	<**On**>, <Off> When <On> is selected: Ring Count: 1 to **2** to 99	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	-Settings/Registration Basic Information
<Other Volume Settings>	<Entry Tone>: <**On**>, <Off> <Invalid Entry Tone>: <On>, <**Off**> <Restock Supplies Tone>: <On>, <**Off**> <Forgot Original Tone>: <On>, <**Off**> <Error Tone>: <**On**>, <Off> <Job Done Tone>: <**On**>, <Off> <Sleep Mode Tone>: <On>, <**Off**> <Login Tone>: <**On**>, <Off> <Memory RX/TX End Tone>: <On>,<**Off**> <Memory RX/TX Error Tone>: <On>,<**Off**> <Non-Empty Toner Rplcd. Tone>: <On>, <**Off**>	Yes	Yes	Yes	C	Settings/Registration Basic Information

Adjusting Print Quality

Adjusting Print Quality 1067
Adjusting Gradation 1069
Adjusting Density 1071
Correcting Color Mismatch 1072
Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity 1073
Making Colors More Vivid 1075
Adjusting the Print Position 1076
Adjusting Image Size 1078
Reducing Toner Used When Color Printing 1079

Adjusting Print Quality

ERJ8-0L1

Adjust the settings below if printing results are not satisfactory.

■ Gradation Adjustment

If color gradation reproducibility has become so poor that the printed gradation differs markedly from the print data, make adjustments to improve color gradation reproducibility.

Adjusting Gradation(P. 1069)

■ Density Correction

If the density of the printing is significantly different from the original document, this adjusts the scan density to be closer to the original.

Adjusting Density(P. 1071)

■ Color Mismatch Correction

If the colors of printing run or blur, color mismatch (color misregistration) may have occurred. The problem may be improved by performing color mismatch correction.

Correcting Color Mismatch(P. 1072)

■ Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity

Automatic adjustment (calibration) is performed in order to prevent color misregistration and ensure that the original color intensity is correctly reproduced.

Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity(P. 1073)

■ Vividness Setting

You can increase the saturation of colors for color printing.

Making Colors More Vivid(P. 1075)

■ Print Position Adjustment

You can adjust the print position when printing is lopsided or protruding from the print range.

Adjusting the Print Position(P. 1076)

■ Image Size Adjustment

If the size of the image copied is slightly different from the original, fine adjustment is performed so that the printed size more closely matches the size of the original.

Adjusting Image Size(P. 1078)

■Toner Amount Reduction

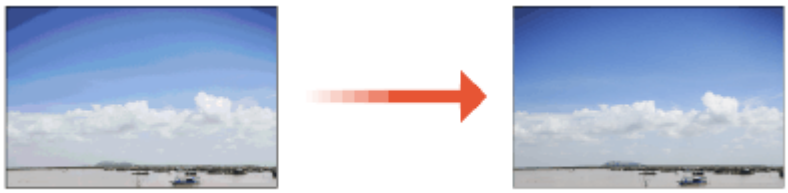
You can prevent excessive toner from being fixed onto paper to reduce print failure such as poor toner fixing or bleed-through.

Reducing Toner Used When Color Printing(P. 1079)

Adjusting Gradation

ERJ8-0L2

If color gradation reproducibility has become so poor that the gradation in the printed or copied image differs markedly from the print data or original document, gradation adjustment (calibration) may improve the problem. There are two types of adjustments: **Full Adjustment(P. 1069)** and **Quick Adjustment(P. 1070)** .



IMPORTANT

- Frequently performing calibration may affect the life of the toner cartridge.
- Performing calibration when the toner level is low may adversely affect the color balance. If this symptom occurs, it is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge that is low.
  Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)

NOTE

- Adjustments may not be performed effectively if there is not sufficient toner.
  Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)
- If the machine is running without having executed <Full Adjust> or <Quick Adjust> once, it may take time to print the first sheet after turning the power ON.
- Gradation adjustment (calibration) is performed on the machine automatically, depending on changes of the environment and conditions under which the machine is being used.

Full Adjustment

Correct the gradation of an image accurately and optimize reproducibility during printing. Optimized information will be retained until the next accurate correction.

IMPORTANT

- You can use the following paper sizes/types.
  - Size: A4, LTR
  - Type: Plain 1 to 2, Recycled 1 to 2

1 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Auto Adjust Gradation>.

2 Select the type of adjustment, and press <Full Adjust>.

3 **Select the paper source, and press <OK>.**

4 **Press <Start Printing>.**

➡ A test page is printed.

5 **Scan the test page.**

1. Place the test page on the platen glass.
   - Place the test page as indicated by the on-screen instructions.
2. Close the feeder and press <Start Scanning>.
   ➡ The machine starts scanning the test page.
3. Open the feeder, and remove the test page.
4. Repeat steps 4 (Press <Start Printing>) and 5 (Scan the test page) above for full adjustment.
   ➡ Full adjustment is complete after following the instructions on the screen to output and scan a test page multiple times.

Quick Adjustment

This adjustment maintains the optimized status that was acquired by <Full Adjust>. If the result of this adjustment is not satisfactory, perform <Full Adjust>.

1 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Auto Adjust Gradation>.**

2 **Select the paper to adjust, and press <Quick Adjust>.**

3 **Press <Start>.**

Adjusting Density

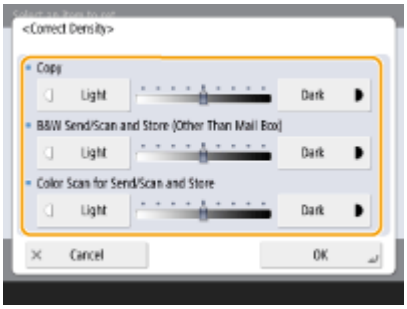
ERJ8-0L3

If the density of the printing is significantly different from the original document, follow the procedure below to adjust the scan density to be closer to the original.



1 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Correct Density>.**

2 **Adjust the density.**



- When set to the <Dark> side, areas printed with the maximum density are increased. When set to the <Light> side, filled areas, text, and lines may be printed like halftones with dots missing. This setting should mainly be used to adjust the intermediate densities.

3 **Press <OK>.**

LINKS

Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)
Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

Correcting Color Mismatch

ERJ8-0L4

If the print positions slightly shift for the respective colors, use the following procedure to perform color print mismatch correction.



IMPORTANT

- Frequently performing calibration may affect the life of the toner cartridge.
- Performing calibration when the toner level is low may adversely affect the color balance. If this symptom occurs, it is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge that is low.
Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)

NOTE

- Gradation adjustment (calibration) is performed on the machine automatically, depending on changes of the environment and conditions under which the machine is being used.

1. **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Auto Correct Color Shift>.**

2. **Press <Start>.**

Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity

ERJ8-0L5

The machine performs automatic adjustment (calibration) in order to prevent color misregistration and ensure that the original color intensity is correctly reproduced. You can set the timing and frequency for performing calibration.

Color misregistration is the phenomenon that occurs when the print position shifts slightly for each color and results in a blurry print result that is out of focus.

Image with color misregistration

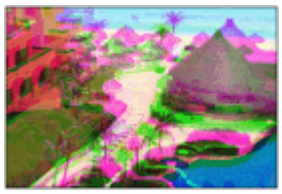


Image without color misregistration



Color intensity refers to the intensity of colors such as red, yellow, green, blue, and purple.

Color intensity not reproduced



Original



Color intensity reproduced



IMPORTANT

- Frequently performing calibration may affect the life of the toner cartridge.
- Performing calibration when the toner level is low may adversely affect the color balance. If this symptom occurs, it is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge that is low.
  Checking the Remaining Toner Level(P. 92)

NOTE

- Automatic calibration is performed according to changes in the status and environment of the machine.
- When <Auto POP Calibration> is set to <On>, an additional calibration is performed to correct color differences caused by POP printing, in addition to standard calibration. **<Auto POP Calibration>(P. 883)**

1 Press (Settings/Register) ▸ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▸ <Adjust Image Quality> ▸ <Settings for Auto Full Calibration>.

2 Set <Timing for Auto Full Calibration at Startup> and <Frequency for Auto Full Calibration>.

Timing for Auto Full Calibration at Startup

Select the timing for automatically performing calibration after the power is turned ON.

Frequency for Auto Full Calibration

Set the frequency for automatically performing calibration. Set this item to <High> if color misregistration often occurs.

Making Colors More Vivid

ERJ8-0L6

If you want to obtain color printouts with increased saturation of colors as compared to the print data, use the following procedure to configure the necessary settings.



1 Press (Settings/Register) ▸ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▸ <Adjust Image Quality> ▸ <Full Color Printing Vividness Settings>.

2 Select the level.

- <Standard> prints with the same color as the original.
- <Level 1> prints with more saturated colors than the original. <Level 2> prints with even more saturated colors.

3 Press <OK>.

Adjusting the Print Position

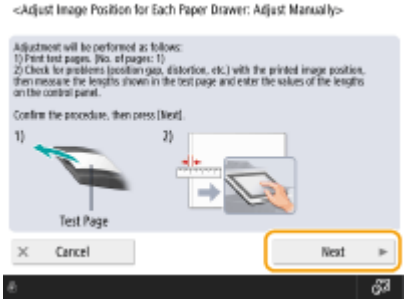
ERJ8-0L7

If a document is printed off-center or out of the printable range, adjust the print position. You can adjust the print position for each paper source.



1 **Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Adjust Image Position for Each Paper Drawer>.**

2 **Confirm what is displayed on the screen and press <Next>.**

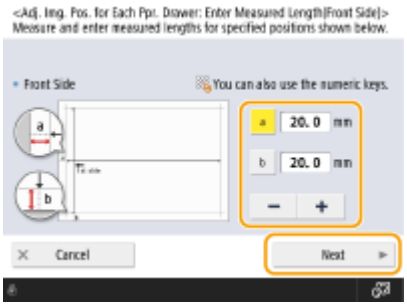


3 **Select the paper source that you want to adjust, and press <Start Printing>.**

➠ The test page is printed.

4 **Follow the on-screen instructions to measure the test page, and enter the measured values.**

- The front side has "1st side" printed on it, and the back side has "2nd side" printed on it.



1. Enter the lengths of <a> and <b> on the front side and press <Next>.
2. Enter the lengths of <c> and <d> on the back side and press <OK>.

5 **Press <Start Printing> to print the test page again and check the adjustment results.**

- To end the adjustment without printing the test page, press <Close>.

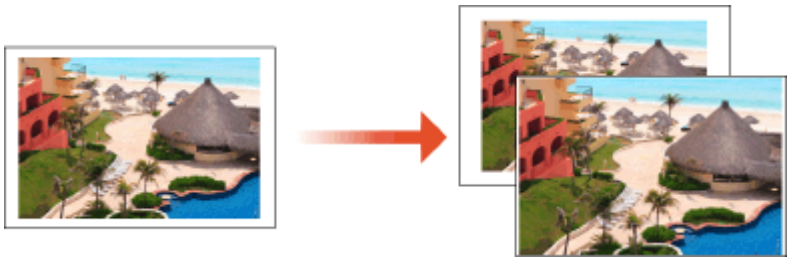
6 Press <Done>.

- If further adjustment is needed, press <Re-Adjust> and repeat Steps 4 to 7.

Adjusting Image Size

ERJ8-0L8

If the size of the copied image slightly differs from the original, use the following procedure to make fine adjustment of the image size. You can adjust the magnification of the horizontal width and vertical width, respectively.



1 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Fine Adjust Zoom>.

2 Adjust the image size.



- Set the magnification of <X> for horizontal width adjustment, and the magnification of <Y> for vertical width adjustment.

3 Press <OK>.

LINKS

Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)

Reducing Toner Used When Color Printing

ERJ8-0L9

Fixing of excessive toner onto paper may cause color print failures such as generation of afterimages of highly dense characters or lines. Reducing the amount of toner to be fixed may improve this failure.



NOTE

- This function may improve the following failures.
  - Toner scattering around deep color areas of printed images
  - Poor toner fixing in a low-temperature environment
  - Bleed-through appearing when copying originals from 2-sided printing
- This function is enabled when in the <Copy>, <Print>, or <Access Stored Files> menu, <Use Full Color> is selected under <Select Color> or <Use Auto (Color/Black & White)> is selected, that is, when the current print mode is recognized as full color.
- Use of this function may give an adverse effect on color printing quality.

1 Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Adjustment/Maintenance> ▶ <Adjust Image Quality> ▶ <Adjust Toner Volume Used for Color Printing>.

2 Select the toner volume setting and press <OK>.

- <Off> prints with the standard toner volume.
- <Level 1> prints deep color areas with a bit smaller toner volume than the standard volume.
- <Level 2> generally prints with a reduced toner volume.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting 1081
If the Machine Does Not Operate 1083
Cannot Print 1085
Problems with Printing Results 1086
Problems with Faxes 1099
Problems with Scanning 1101
Problems with the Network 1104
Problems with Security 1108
Other Problems 1109
A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed 1113
A Message Saying to Contact Your Dealer or Service Representative Is Displayed 1114
Countermeasures for Each Message 1116
Countermeasures for Each Error Code 1156
When a Problem Cannot Be Solved 1182

Troubleshooting

ERJ8-0LA

If a problem occurs while you are using the machine, check the following items first. If the problem cannot be solved or an inspection is required, contact your dealer or service representative.

■What kind of problem do you have?



If the Machine Does Not Operate(P. 1083)



Cannot Print(P. 1085)



Problems with Printing Results(P. 1086)



Problems with Faxes(P. 1099)



Problems with Scanning(P. 1101)



Problems with the Network(P. 1104)



A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed(P. 1113)



Problems with Security(P. 1108)



Other Problems(P. 1109)

■When a paper jam occurs

The procedures for clearing paper jams are described in **Introduction(P. 2)** .

If the Machine Does Not Operate

ERJ8-0LC

If a problem occurs while you are using the machine, check the following before contacting your dealer or service representative.

Check This First(P. 1083)
If the machine does not respond to computer operations(P. 1083)
When the authentication screen (login screen) is displayed(P. 1084)

Check This First

Is a message displayed on the touch panel display?

- A message is displayed on the touch panel display when an error or a problem occurs while operating the machine.
  A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed(P. 1113)

Is (Energy Saver) lit?

- If it is lit, press (Energy Saver) to cancel the Sleep mode.

Is the machine connected to a computer correctly?

- Check the network connection of the machine and the computer.
  Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)

If the machine does not respond to computer operations

Restart the machine.

- If the machine does not respond even though its power is turned ON, turn the power OFF (**Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)**). Confirm that the power cord is connected correctly, wait 10 or more seconds after the main power is turned OFF, and then turn the power back ON (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**).

Check whether the driver is installed correctly.

- For information on installing the driver, see **Installing Drivers(P. 194)** .

Check whether the IP address of the machine is correct.

- Check the IP address settings, and change them if they are incorrect. For information on the settings, see **Setting up Using the Setup Guide(P. 133)** .

When the authentication screen (login screen) is displayed

➔ Log in as a registered user.

- When the authentication screen (login screen) is displayed, you must log in as a registered user to continue operating the machine.
  Logging into the Machine(P. 230)

Cannot Print

ERJ8-0LE

Check This First

Is the Processing/Data indicator (on the control panel) flashing or lit?

- If it is flashing or lit, there is a document that is being processed or waiting to be processed. Wait for the processing to finish or select the document that you want to prioritize from the screen for checking the printing status.
  Checking the Printing Status and History(P. 421)
  Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)

Is a message displayed on the touch panel display?

- A message is displayed on the touch panel display when an error or a problem occurs while operating the machine.
  A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed(P. 1113)

Is <Auto Select> set to <No>?

- To switch to the appropriate operation mode, change all items or the items you are using to <Yes>. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual site.

Is forced hold printing enabled?

- If it is enabled, documents may not be printed, depending on their settings.
  Configuring the Forced Hold Printing Settings(P. 679)

Are you printing via a print server using the LPR command?

- When continuously printing PDF data using the LPR command, execute one job at a time at the interval set in <Timeout>. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual site.

Problems with Printing Results

ERJ8-0LF

- The printed image is displaced or skewed.(P. 1086)
- Streaks Appear/Printing is Uneven(P. 1086)
- Black streaks appear.(P. 1087)
- Bleedthrough occurs.(P. 1088)
- Images are not printed on the intended side of the paper.(P. 1088)
- Images are not printed in the intended size.(P. 1088)
- The orientation does not match on both sides of the paper when using two-sided printing.(P. 1089)
- Smudges Appear on Printouts(P. 1090)
- Toner Smudges and Splatters Appear(P. 1090)
- Afterimages Appear in Blank Areas(P. 1091)
- Printouts are faint or streaks appear(P. 1092)
- White Spots Appear(P. 1092)
- Black Spots Appear(P. 1093)
- Reverse Side of Paper is Smudged(P. 1094)
- Filled areas are not printed fine(P. 1094)
- Spots like Waterdrops or Streaks Appear(P. 1095)
- The Toner of the Printed Image Peels Off(P. 1095)
- Paper Creases(P. 1095)
- Paper Curls(P. 1096)
- Paper Is Not Fed/Two or More Sheets Are Fed Together(P. 1097)

The printed image is displaced or skewed.

Are the paper guides misaligned?

- Match the paper guides with the paper loaded in the paper source.

Streaks Appear/Printing is Uneven



Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)

Loading Paper(P. 40)

Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

- Clean the fixing unit.

<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>(P. 892)

Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

- Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

Are you using the machine in an environment with high humidity?

- Change the settings of <Humid Environment Mode>. Setting to <High Humidity> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- Setting to <High Humidity> may cause a printed image or text to be blurred when using in a low humidity environment.

Has color mismatch correction or hue correction been performed properly?

- If the effect of the color mismatches or color streaks (lines) is unacceptably strong, perform calibration.

Automatically Adjusting Color Registration and Color Intensity(P. 1073)

Is only the color of the tail end of the printed image dense?

- Change the settings of <Correct Tail End Fixing When Using Plain Paper>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> decreases the print speed.

Black streaks appear.

Is the document feed scanning area dirty?

- Clean the document feed scanning area.

Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)

Bleedthrough occurs.

Is the density of backgrounds set appropriately?

- If bleed-through is observed with the print result, adjusting the density of background can improve the problem, giving a fine print.
  - **Basic Copy Operations(P. 294)**
  - **Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)**
  - **Adjusting Density(P. 479)**

Images are not printed on the intended side of the paper.

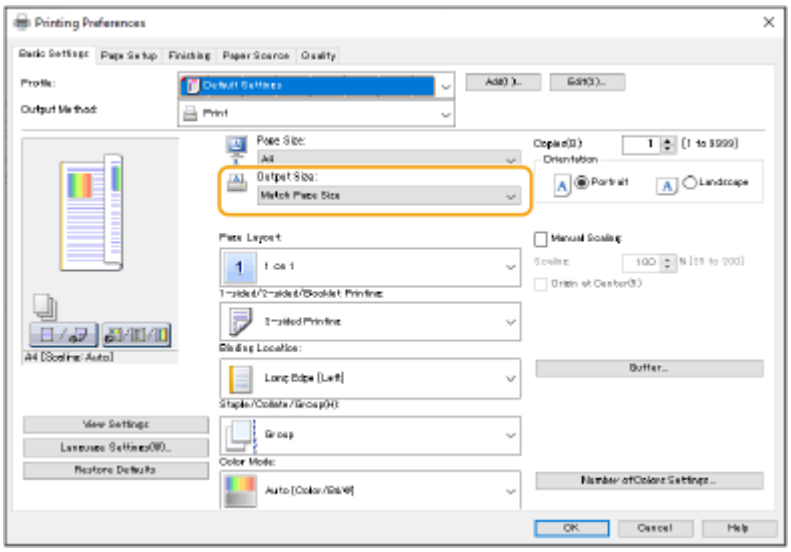
Is the orientation of the loaded paper correct?

- Check the orientation and side of the paper that is facing up. Load the paper again if it is incorrectly orientated.
  - **Loading Paper(P. 40)**

Images are not printed in the intended size.

Do the original size and size of the paper that is loaded match?

- Replace the paper that is loaded with paper of the size you want to print on.
- Match [Output Size] in the printer driver with the size of paper to print on.



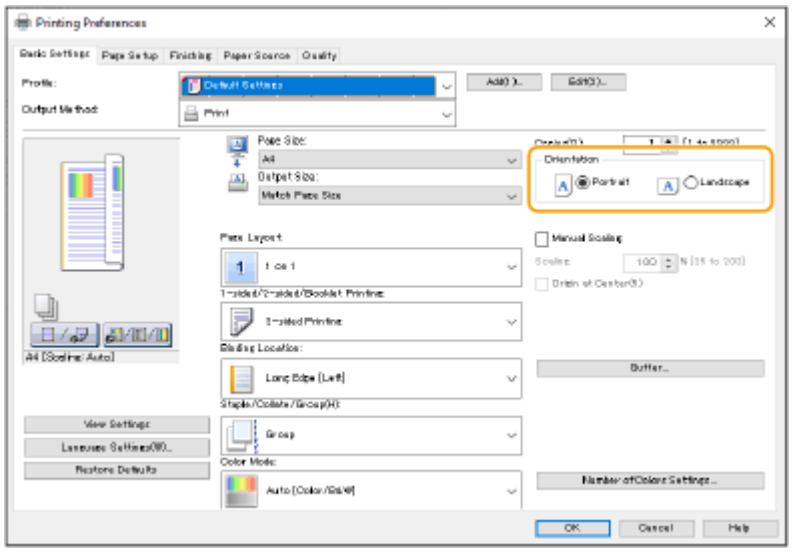
The orientation does not match on both sides of the paper when using two-sided printing.

Are the settings for two-sided printing correct?

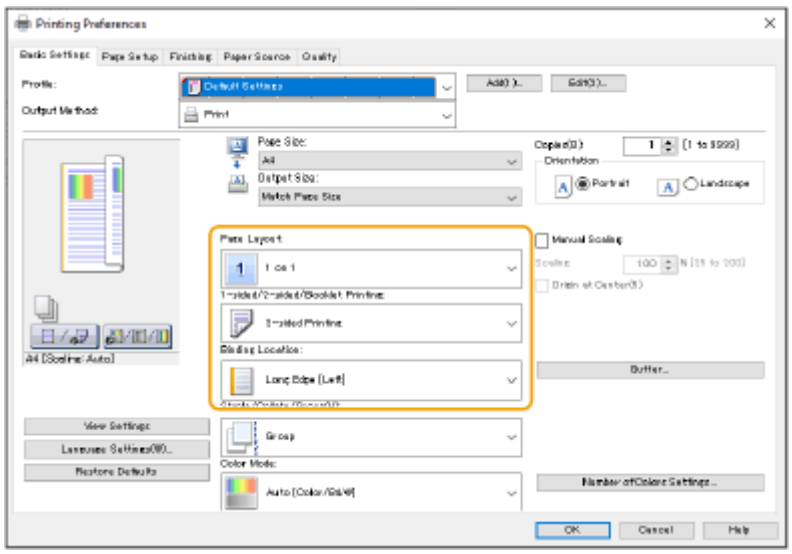
- Follow the procedure below to check the print settings.

1 **Select the orientation of the original on the print settings screen of the application.**

2 **On the [Basic Settings] screen of the driver, set [Orientation] to the same orientation you set in step 1.**



3 **While checking the print preview, set [Page Layout] ▶ [Page Order] ▶ [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing] ▶ [Binding Location].**



NOTE

- [Page Order] is displayed when [Page Layout] is set to [2 on 1] or higher.

Smudges Appear on Printouts



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

→ Do smudges appear on printouts when you use the machine in an environment with low humidity?

- Change the setting for <Humid Environment Mode>. Setting this item to <Low Humidity 1> may solve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- If you select <Low Humidity 1> and use the machine in an environment with high humidity, the print density may become lighter or uneven.

→ Do smudges appear on printouts depending on the paper type or the operating environment?

- Change the setting for <Correct Tail End Fixing When Using Plain Paper>. Setting this item to <On> may solve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- If you select <On>, the printing speed will be slower.

Toner Smudges and Splatters Appear



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

→ Are you using the machine in a low humidity environment?

- Change the settings of <Humid Environment Mode>. Setting to <Low Humidity 2> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

Afterimages Appear in Blank Areas



→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

→ Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

- Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

→ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

→ Is the fixing temperature appropriate?

- Change the settings of <Adjust Fixing Temperature>. Setting to <Low> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

Printouts are faint or streaks appear



→ Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

- Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

→ Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper. Also, specify the paper size and type settings properly.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)
Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)

→ Are you using paper with a large amount of paper dust?

- Change the setting of <Reduce Img Defect by Ppr Dust>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> may decrease the print speed.

White Spots Appear



→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.

Loading Paper(P. 40)

Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

Is the amount remaining in toner cartridge running low?

- Check how much toner is left, and replace the toner cartridge as necessary.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

Is it time to replace the toner cartridge?

- Materials inside the toner cartridge may have deteriorated. Replace the toner cartridge.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 78)

Are you using the machine in a low humidity environment?

- Change the settings of <Humid Environment Mode>. Setting to <Low Humidity 2> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

When performing 2-sided printing, do white spots appear?

- Change the settings of <Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> decreases the print speed.

Black Spots Appear



Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

- Clean the fixing unit.

<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>(P. 892)

Reverse Side of Paper is Smudged



Have you loaded paper that is smaller than the size of the print data?

- Check to make sure that the paper size matches the size of the print data.

Have you cleaned the fixing unit?

- Clean the fixing unit.

<Clean Pressure Roller for Fixing>(P. 892)

Have you cleaned the secondary transfer roller?

- Change the settings of <Auto Clean Secondary Transfer Roller>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> may decrease the print speed.

Filled areas are not printed fine

Filled areas are not printed fine

- Change the settings of <Plain Paper Fill Area Image Adjustment Mode>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Change to <On> only when you use paper of glossy surface. A printing problem may occur.

Are you using (heavy) paper of glossy surface?

- Change the settings of <Heavy Paper Fill Area Image Adjustment Mode>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Change to <On> only when you use heavy paper of glossy surface. A printing problem may occur.

Spots like Waterdrops or Streaks Appear

Does the paper get dirty when printing on both sides?

- Change the settings of <Waterdrop Pattern Prevention Mode>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> may decrease the print speed.

The Toner of the Printed Image Peels Off

Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

Is the fixing temperature appropriate?

- Change the settings of <Adjust Fixing Temperature>. Setting to <High 1> may improve the problem.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- If setting to <High 1> does not improve the problem satisfactorily, set to <High 2>. But, the print speed decreases.

Paper Creases



Is paper loaded correctly?

- If paper is not loaded below the load limit line or the load limit guide or is loaded obliquely, it may crease.

Loading Paper(P. 40)

Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.

Loading Paper(P. 40)

→ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper.

Available Paper(P. 118)
Loading Paper(P. 40)

→ Do creases form when you print on thin paper?

- Change the setting of <Reduce Thin Paper Waviness>. Selecting <On> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- If you select <On>, printouts may be faded.

→ Do wrinkles appear when printing on thin or plain paper in an environment of high humidity?

- Change the settings of <Reduce Thin/Plain Ppr Wrinkles>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> decreases the print speed.
- Depending on the environment, paper loaded in a paper drawer may absorb moisture and wrinkles may appear when printing. In that case, reducing the sheets of new paper that will be loaded at the next time may prevent wrinkles.

→ Does this occur when you print on envelopes?

- Change the settings of <Reduce Envelope Wrinkles>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> may cause a printed image to be faint.

Paper Curls



→ Are you using paper that has absorbed moisture?

- Replace with appropriate paper.

Loading Paper(P. 40)

- When the current setting of the paper type is <Plain 1>, change it to <Plain 2>.

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)

➔ Does this problem occur when printing on some types of paper such as plain paper or thin paper?

- Set <Mode 1> to <On> under <Curl Prevention Mode>.

<Adjust Image Quality>(P. 882)

NOTE:

- If you select <On>, the print quality may be reduced.
- If setting <Mode 1> to <On> does not reduce curling, set <Mode 2> to <On>. If setting both <Mode 1> and <Mode 2> to <On> does not reduce curling, set <Mode 1> and <Mode 2> to <Off>, and set **<Switch Paper Feed Method>(P. 903)** to <Print Side Priority>.

➔ Are you using appropriate paper?

- Check usable paper, and replace with appropriate paper. Also, specify the paper size and type settings properly.

Available Paper(P. 118)

Loading Paper(P. 40)

Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)

- Turn over the paper (front to back) so that the print side is changed, and then reload the paper.

IMPORTANT:

- Rarely, the symptoms may worsen depending on the type of paper you are using. In that case, get the print side back to original.

Paper Is Not Fed/Two or More Sheets Are Fed Together



➔ Is paper loaded correctly?

- Fan the paper stack thoroughly so that paper is not stuck together.
- Check whether paper is loaded correctly.

Loading Paper(P. 40)

- Check whether the number of sheets of paper loaded is appropriate and whether the appropriate paper is used.

Available Paper(P. 118)

Loading Paper(P. 40)

- Check whether mixed sizes and types of paper are loaded together.

Does this happen when feeding paper from the MP Tray?

- Change the settings of <Adj. Paper Convey. in MP Tray>. Setting to <On> may improve the problem.

Paper Type Management Settings(P. 794)

NOTE:

- Setting to <On> may decrease the print speed.

Problems with Faxes

ERJ8-0LH

Faxes cannot be sent or forwarded.(P. 1099)
Cannot receive faxes.(P. 1100)

■ Frequently Asked Questions about Operations

I Want to Send a Fax.

Specify a destination and send a fax.

Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)

I Want to Send a Fax from a Computer.

You can send a document as a fax from a computer using a fax driver.

Sending Faxes from Your Computer (PC Fax)(P. 397)

Faxes cannot be sent or forwarded.

➔ If no faxes can be sent

- Call the destination fax from the machine to check whether the phone line is connected in the wrong location.

If the dial tone of the phone line cannot be heard

The modular cable (phone line for faxing) is disconnected or inserted in the wrong location. Check the modular cable and insert it in the correct location.

Parts and Their Functions(P. 19)

If voice guidance is played or if the machine cannot connect to the destination fax machine (you cannot hear the fax tone)

There may be a problem with the other party or the service provider. Contact the other party.

➔ If faxes cannot be forwarded

- Check the forwarding destination registered in the address book or one-touch button, and change it if it is incorrect.

Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book(P. 283)
Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons(P. 288)

➔ If you are using an optical line or an IP phone line

- Communication errors may occur, depending on the line quality. For more information, contact your service provider. You may be able to reduce communication errors by lowering the transmission speed in (Settings/Register) ▶ <TX Start Speed>. You can also set the transmission speed for each destination from the preferences for the address book or one-touch buttons.

<TX Start Speed>(P. 972)
Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)

- You can also use <Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP> to limit the communication speed to reduce errors.

<Auto Adjust Communication Speed When Using VoIP>(P. 974)

Cannot receive faxes.

➔ Does the machine have sufficient free memory?

- Delete unnecessary documents in the memory of the machine.
  Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)

➔ Check the number preceded by "#", and refer to the appropriate countermeasure.

- If fax reception or transmission fails, a number (error code) preceded by "#" is displayed on the touch panel display or in a communication management report. You can refer to the necessary countermeasures according to the error code.
  Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)

Problems with Scanning

ERJ8-0LJ

Cannot send documents to a server using the scan and send function.(P. 1101)
Cannot send scanned documents via e-mail.(P. 1101)
Black streaks appear in scanned documents.(P. 1101)
Bleedthrough occurs in scanned documents.(P. 1102)
Scanning Cannot Be Performed as Expected with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 1102)

■ Frequently Asked Questions about Operations

I Want to Scan an Original.

Specify a destination and start scanning.

Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)

Cannot send documents to a server using the scan and send function.

→ Are the server settings such as the password correct?

- If the login password, etc. of the server (computer) has been changed, make sure to also change the settings registered in the address book or one-touch buttons.
  Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book(P. 283)
  Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons(P. 288)

Cannot send scanned documents via e-mail.

→ Is the information for the destination correct?

- Change the settings registered in the address book or one-touch buttons.
  Editing the Registered Destinations in the Address Book(P. 283)
  Editing the Registered Destinations in One-Touch Buttons(P. 288)

→ Are the settings for the SMTP server or DNS server correct?

- If no e-mail can be sent, set the SMTP server and DNS server correctly. Also, if the port number for SMTP Send or receiving with POP are different from the default, specify the correct port numbers in **<Specify Port Number for SMTP TX/POP RX>(P. 958)** .
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)

Black streaks appear in scanned documents.

→ Is the document feed scanning area dirty?

- Clean the document feed scanning area.
  Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)

Bleedthrough occurs in scanned documents.

Is the background density set appropriately?

- Set the background density to <Auto>.
  Adjusting Density(P. 479)

Scanning Cannot Be Performed as Expected with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>

Required Pages Are Not Scanned.

- Change the 2-sided scanning settings.

When You Want to Scan Blank Pages

If you also want to scan the back side of a 1-sided original or the blank pages of a 2-sided original, select <2-Sided Scan (Book Type)> or <2-Sided Scan (Calendar Type)> in the 2-sided scan settings for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.
Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)

When the Back Side of a 2-Sided Original Is Not Scanned

Select <2-Sided Scan (Book Type)> or <2-Sided Scan (Calendar Type)> in the 2-sided scan settings for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.
Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)

Unnecessary Pages Are Scanned.

- Clean the document scanning area or change the 2-sided scanning settings.

When Blank Pages Are Scanned

Clean the document scanning area.
Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)

If that does not work, perform the following operation:

- For 1-sided originals, select <1-Sided Scan> in the 2-sided scan settings for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.
  Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)
- For 2-sided originals, configure the Skip Blank Originals setting and use <Scan and Send> to perform scanning.
  Skipping Blank Pages When Scanning(P. 490)
  Sending with <Scan and Send>(P. 461)

When You Only Want to Scan One Side of a 2-Sided Original

Select <1-Sided Scan> in the 2-sided scan settings for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>.
Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)

Size Is Not as Expected.

Check the scan size of the scanned data and take action according to the status.

- When you place a custom size original, you can select <Free Size> in the scan size setting for <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan> to scan at the same size as the original.
  Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)

- When you specify a particular original size or long original, set the original size and use <Scan and Send> to perform scanning.
  Sending with <Scan and Send>(P. 461)

Results Are Not in Color or Black & White as Expected.

Check the color of the scanned data and take action according to the status.
Sending with <Easy Scan and Send>/<Easy Scan>(P. 456)

- Select [Color] to scan in color regardless of the color of the original.
- Select [Black & White] to scan in black and white regardless of the color of the original.

You Want to Configure More Detailed Settings for Scanning and Sending.

Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan is a function that enables you to scan more quickly and easily. If you want to configure more detailed settings such as specifying the file format or sending to a destination not registered in the Address Book, use <Scan and Send> to perform scanning.
Sending with <Scan and Send>(P. 461)

Problems with the Network

ERJ8-0LK

Problems with Connections(P. 1104)
Problems with Wireless Connections(P. 1105)

Problems with Connections

Cannot set up the network.

- Check whether <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes> is set to <On>.
  <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>(P. 825)

An unintended destination is dialed up.

- If a dial-up router is on the network to which the machine is connected, the machine connects to a destination other than the intended destination, depending on the settings of the machine or dial-up router. This may result in subscriber line charges and call charges. Check the following.
- If the dial-up router does not have to send packets via broadcast, change the router settings to ensure that it sends packets via a method other than broadcast. If it is necessary to allow broadcasting with the dial-up router, check whether an unnecessary destination is set.
- Check whether the host name and IP address of the file server and mail server, etc. set in the machine are correct.
- If the DNS server is on an external server, use the IP address instead of the host name for the destination, even when connecting to devices on the same network as the machine.
- If the DNS server is on the network that the machine is connected to, check whether the information for devices connected to an external network is registered on the DNS server, and whether it is correct.

Cannot recognize the machine from a computer.

- If the IP address of the computer where the Remote UI and utility software are executed is not allowed for sending and receiving in <Firewall Settings>, the information for the machine cannot be displayed on the computer. Check whether the settings are correct.
  Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)
- To use Canon device management software, set <Set Dedicated Community> to <On>, and select <Read/Write> for <MIB Access Permission>. Also set <Dedicated Port Settings> to <On>.
  Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP(P. 183)
- The machine cannot be recognized when utility software is used to access the machine with a community name other than the SNMP community name set in the machine. Check the SNMP community name.
  Monitoring and Controlling via SNMP(P. 183)
- If the message "An error has occurred." is displayed in the Web browser and the Remote UI cannot be started, invalid cache data may remain. Clear the cache of the Web browser.
- If the machine enters the Sleep mode, it may not be able to be recognized from a computer. Press (Energy Saver) to cancel the Sleep mode or change <Sleep Mode Energy Use> to <High>.
  Exiting Sleep Mode(P. 263)

Cannot connect with TLS encrypted communication.

- If you set a TLS version that is not supported by your operating system or software such as the browser, the machine cannot connect to the network using TLS encrypted communication
  Upgrade your operating system and software, or lower the TLS version until connections are possible. However, if you lower the TLS version, connections may not be sufficiently secure.
  Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

Problems with Wireless Connections

Cannot connect wireless LAN and wired LAN at the same time.

- To connect wireless LAN and wired LAN at the same time, set the sub line to <Wireless LAN>, when the main line is set to <Wired LAN> in <Select Interface>. When the main line is set to <Wireless LAN> in <Select Interface>, set the sub line to <Wired LAN>.
  <Select Interface>(P. 833)

The Remote UI is not displayed.

- Are <Use HTTP> and <Remote UI Settings> set to <On>?
  <Use HTTP>(P. 842)
  Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
- If you are connected with wireless LAN, restart the Remote UI after checking whether the IP address is set correctly.
  Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv4 Address(P. 162)
  Conducting a Connection Test for an IPv6 Address(P. 164)
- If you are connected with wired LAN, restart the Remote UI after checking whether the IP address is set correctly and the cable is connected correctly.
  Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)
  Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)
- Are you using a proxy server? If so, add the IP address of the machine in "Exceptions" (addresses to not use a proxy for) in the proxy server settings of the Web browser.
- Is communication with computers restricted in the firewall? If the Remote UI cannot be displayed because the settings are incorrect, set <IPv4 Address Filter>, <IPv6 Address Filter>, or <MAC Address Filter> to <Off> from the control panel of the machine.
  Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 645)
  <IPv4 Address Filter>(P. 858)
  <IPv6 Address Filter>(P. 860)
  <MAC Address Filter>(P. 862)

Cannot connect to the network.

- The IP address may have failed to be set. Set the IP address again.
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)
- If you are connected with wireless LAN, check whether the machine can connect to the network.
  If you cannot connect to a wireless LAN(P. 1106)

➔ If you do not know the IP address that was set.

- Press the [Counter/Device Information] key and check the IP address.
  Control Panel(P. 30)
- If you want to know the details of the settings or change the settings, press (Settings/Register) and check the IP address.
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

➔ Cannot change from wired LAN to wireless LAN or wireless LAN to wired LAN.

- Did you also switch the LAN setting from the control panel of the machine? You cannot change the connection method of the machine unless you do so.
  Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)

➔ If you do not know the SSID and network key of the wireless LAN router to connect to or the SSID is not displayed on the screen.

- Check whether the SSID is displayed on the wireless LAN router or its box.
  Checking the SSID and Network Key(P. 159)

➔ The SSID of the wireless LAN router to connect to is not displayed in the list of access points.

- Check whether the SSID of the wireless LAN router that you made a note of is correct.
  Checking the SSID and Network Key(P. 159)
- If the SSID of the wireless LAN router is not disclosed (if it is using the stealth function*), set the wireless LAN router to disclose the SSID.

  * This function prevents the SSID of a wireless LAN router from being automatically detected.
- Check whether the machine is connected to the network.
  If you cannot connect to a wireless LAN(P. 1106)

If you cannot connect to a wireless LAN



Check the status of the computer.

- Is setup of the computer and wireless LAN router complete?
- Are any of cables of the wireless LAN router (power cable, LAN cable, etc.) disconnected?
- Is the wireless LAN router turned ON?

If the problem is still not resolved:

- Turn all the devices off, and then on again.
- After waiting a while, check whether you can connect to the network.





Check whether the machine is turned ON.

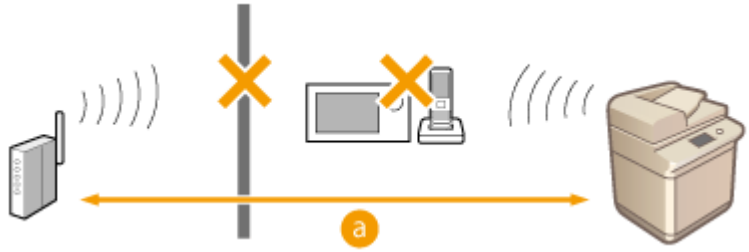
If the machine is turned ON, turn it OFF, and then ON again.



3

Check the installation location of the machine and wireless LAN router.

- Are the machine and wireless LAN router too far away from each other?
- Is there an obstacle such as a wall between the machine and wireless LAN router?
- Are there any devices that emit electromagnetic waves nearby, such as a microwave or digital cordless telephone?



a : Within 50 m

4

Specify the following settings again.

Setting Up the Connection Using WPS Push Button Mode(P. 155)
Setting Up the Connection Using WPS PIN Code Mode(P. 156)
Setting Up Connection by Selecting a Wireless Router(P. 157)
Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings(P. 158)

NOTE

If settings require manual entry

- If the wireless LAN router is set as follows, perform manual entry (**Setting Up a Connection by Specifying Detailed Settings(P. 158)**):
  - ANY rejection* is enabled.
  - The stealth function is enabled.

    * A wireless LAN router function for refusing connections if the device trying to connect has "ANY" or "blank" set for the SSID.

If it is necessary to change the settings on the wireless LAN router side

- If the wireless LAN router is set as follows, change the settings on the router side:
  - MAC address filtering is set.

Problems with Security

ERJ8-0LL

The settings in <Settings/Register> are not restored even though the check box is deselected in the security policy settings.(P. 1108)
Cannot import security policy settings.(P. 1108)
A security administrator password entry screen is displayed even though no password is set.(P. 1108)

The settings in <Settings/Register> are not restored even though the check box is deselected in the security policy settings.

- Items changed with security policy settings applied are not restored simply by deselecting the check box. Deselect the check box, and change the corresponding settings from the (Settings/Register) button, or from <Settings/Registration> in the Remote UI.
  Security Policy Setting Items(P. 585)

Cannot import security policy settings.

- Have you set a different security policy password from the source device? Remove the password in the destination device or set the same password as the source device.
  Using a Password to Protect the Security Policy Settings(P. 581)

A security administrator password entry screen is displayed even though no password is set.

- If you import security policy settings, the same password is set for the destination device if a security policy password is set in the source device. Check the password of the source device.

Other Problems

ERJ8-0LR

Cannot press a button, select an item, or an item is not displayed.(P. 1109)
Some settings imported from another device are not reflected.(P. 1109)
Log files are garbled.(P. 1109)
Log events are not recorded even though log collection was started.(P. 1109)
The setting for long-strip originals is not displayed.(P. 1110)
The setting for K-size paper is not displayed.(P. 1110)
Viewing the Network Connection Information of the Computer(P. 1110)

Cannot press a button, select an item, or an item is not displayed.

- Some settings can only be used by the administrator. They cannot be used by general users.
  Settings/Registration(P. 801)
- The system administrator limits the functions that general users can use to prevent unauthorized use, and restricts the use of functions.
- The functions that can be used with User Authentication are managed by the administrator. These functions can be used by logging in using an ID with access privileges.
  Logging into the Machine(P. 230)
- Functions cannot be used because the optional equipment or system options that they require are not installed.
- The buttons displayed on the screen have been changed. Press ◀ or ▶ at the bottom of the screen to switch the display, or press <Options> and search for the desired button. For a Basic Features screen, press <Options> and search for the desired button.
  Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)
  Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)
- The settings are managed with security policy settings. To change the settings, it is necessary to log in to the Remote UI with administrator privileges.
  Configuring the Security Policy Settings(P. 583)

Some settings imported from another device are not reflected.

- If a security policy is set, settings that violate the security policy cannot be imported.

Log files are garbled.

- When opening CSV files with Microsoft Excel, the content may not be recognized as text strings and may become garbled as a result. If this happens, open the files with a CSV file editor or text editor.

Log events are not recorded even though log collection was started.

- Results may not be reflected in a log file if it is retrieved immediately after log collection is started. Since it takes some time to collect logs, retrieve the log file again after waiting a while.

The setting for long-strip originals is not displayed.

- You can use long-strip originals by changing the machine settings. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.

The setting for K-size paper is not displayed.

- You can use K-size paper by changing the machine settings. For more information, contact your dealer or service representative.

Viewing the Network Connection Information of the Computer

When Using Windows(P. 1110)
When Using macOS(P. 1111)

■When Using Windows

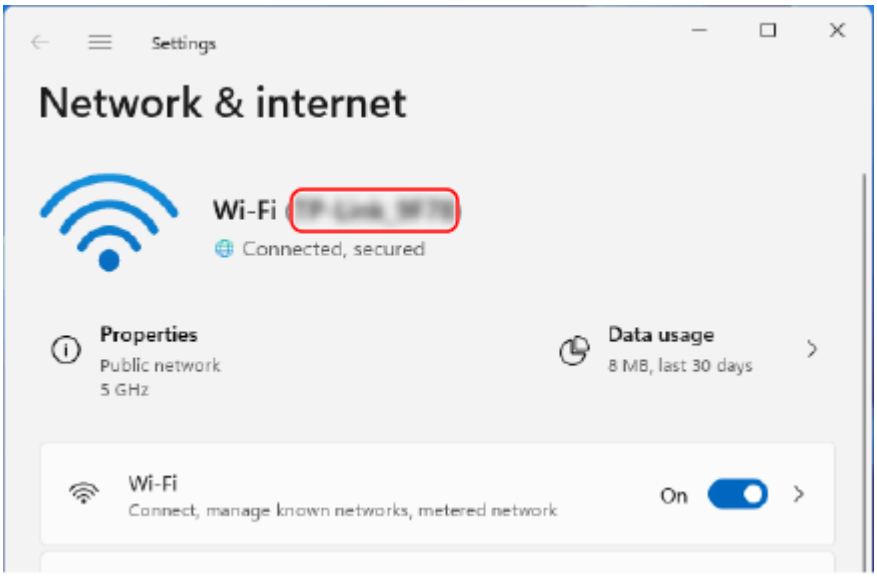
1 Right-click [ ] (Start), and click [Network Connections].

➠ The [Network & Internet] screen is displayed.

2 View the network connection information.

■Viewing the SSID of the Wireless LAN

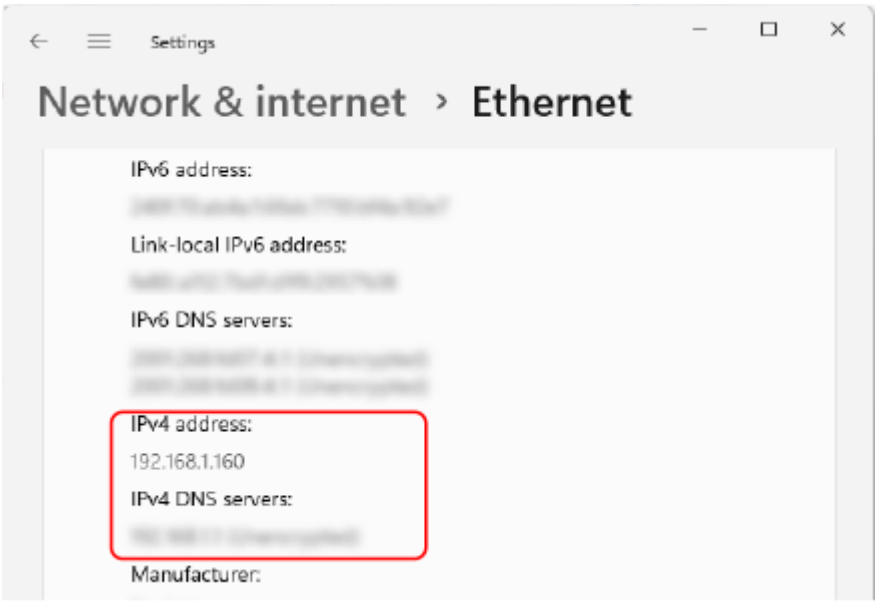
View the string in the parentheses ( ) of Wi-Fi.



■Viewing the IP Address and DNS Server

1 Click [Properties] for the connected network.

2 In [Properties], view the IP address and DNS server.



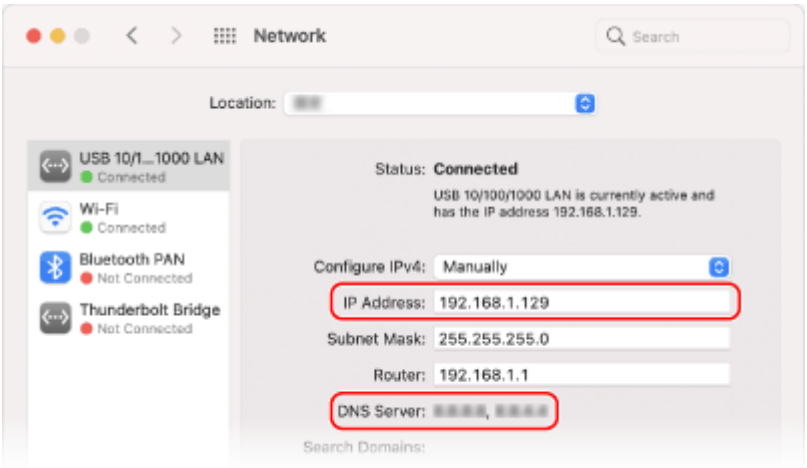
■When Using macOS

1 Click [ ] ▶ [System Preferences] ▶ [Network].

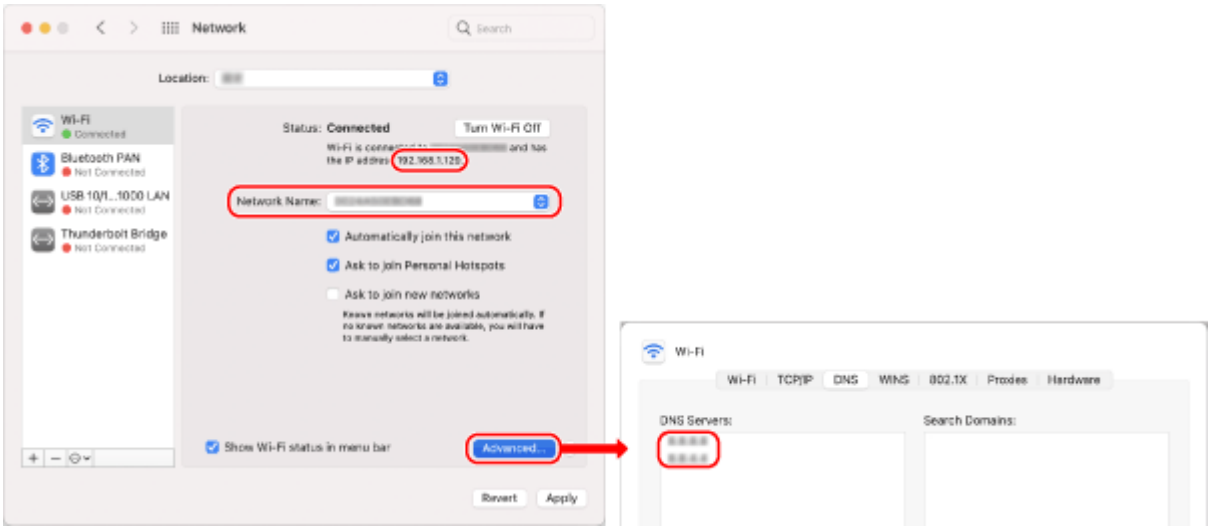
➠ The [Network] screen is displayed.

2 View the IP address, DNS server, and other information.

■For Wired LAN



■For Wireless LAN



- View the SSID in [Network Name].
- View the IP address in [Status].
- Click [Advanced], and view the DNS server on the [DNS] tab.

A Message or a Number Starting with "#" (an Error Code) Is Displayed

ERJ8-0LS

If a message is displayed on the screen of the machine or the Remote UI, or a number starting with "#" (an error code) is displayed on the details screen for job log or a communication management report, refer to the following to check the remedy.

A Message Saying to Contact Your Dealer or Service Representative Is Displayed(P. 1114)
Countermeasures for Each Message(P. 1116)
Countermeasures for Each Error Code(P. 1156)

A Message Saying to Contact Your Dealer or Service Representative Is Displayed

ERJ8-0LU

If the machine cannot operate normally due to a problem, a message is displayed on the touch panel display. Check the reference according to the displayed message.

When a message saying to contact a your dealer or service representative is displayed(P. 1114)
When the <This function is currently unavailable. You can use other functions from [Home].> message is displayed(P. 1115)
When the <Color printing is currently unavailable.> message is displayed(P. 1115)

When a message saying to contact a your dealer or service representative is displayed

1 Restart the machine.

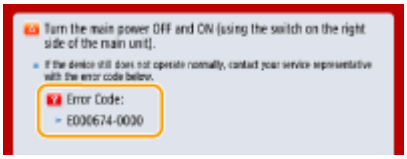
- Press the power switch to turn the power OFF (**Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)**), wait for longer than 10 seconds, and then turn the power ON again (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**).

IMPORTANT:

- Note that data waiting to be processed is erased when you turn the power OFF.

2 If the message is still displayed, prepare the following information.

- Product name
- The dealer or service representative where you purchased the machine
- The problem (the specific operation you performed and the result and symptom, etc.)
- Code displayed on the touch panel display
  Multiple codes may be displayed.



3 Turn the power of the machine OFF, pull out the power plug, and contact your dealer or service representative.

WARNING

- Do not connect or disconnect the power cord with wet hands, as this may result in electrical shock.

CAUTION

- Always grasp the power plug when disconnecting the power cord. Pulling on the power cord may expose or snap the core wire, or otherwise damage the power cord. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause current to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

When the <
This function is currently unavailable. You can use other functions from [Home].> message is displayed

This message is displayed when you select a restricted function. Select a different function.

When the <Color printing is currently unavailable.> message is displayed

You cannot use the color printing function because use of it is restricted. However, you can use the black and white printing function. Change the settings related to printing or copying as necessary.

Countermeasures for Each Message

ERJ8-0LW

If an error occurs during scanning or printing, or if a problem occurs with the network connection or settings, a message appears on the machine display or the Remote UI screen. For details about each message and solutions to the problems, refer to the messages below. Also, if a six-digit number is displayed when you are logging in, see **If a six-digit number is displayed when you are logging in(P. 1149)** .

23 MEMORY FULL

There is insufficient memory to register overlay forms and external characters, etc.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the print data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.
- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that could not be registered due to a lack of memory will not be printed.

27 JOB REJECT

The specified emulation does not exist.

- Specify emulation that the machine supports. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.
- Press <Skip Error> to skip the printing that an error occurred for. You can perform the following printing.

33 WORK FULL

Could not print because the dedicated work memory was insufficient.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.
- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data for which an error was displayed will not be printed correctly. Also note that registered data such as overlay forms and macros may be deleted.

52 IMAGEMODE REJECT

Data that cannot be processed was sent while printing an image.

- Press <Skip Error> to skip the printing that an error occurred for. However, the data for which an error was displayed will not be printed.
- Perform printing again using a printer driver that supports the data format of the image.

The Active Directory site information is invalid. Contact the system manager.

The site information of Active Directory is not set correctly.

- Check whether [Timing of Site Information Retrieval:] and [Site Access Range:] are set correctly in [Use of Access Mode within Sites:].

Could not verify CRL.

Could not confirm the CA certificate of the certificate authority that issued the certificate revocation list (CRL).

- Register the CA certificate of the certificate authority that issued the certificate revocation list (CRL).
Registering a CA Certificate(P. 706)

D1 Replot Buffer Full

Could not redraw because data could not be registered to the replot buffer.

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that caused the error will not be printed correctly. For information on the replot buffer, see Print.

D1 Div. Print. Bffr Full

Could not perform divided printing because data could not be registered to the buffer for divided printing.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), set <Divide Mode> to <No> and <Enlarge/Reduce> to <Auto> in the HP-GL setup menu, specify the output paper size, and perform printing again. However, the data will be enlarged/reduced when printed. For more details, see Print.
- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that could not be registered will not be printed correctly. For information on divided printing, see Print.

D1 Polygon Buffer Full

Could not draw because data could not be registered to the polygon buffer.

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that could not be registered will not be printed correctly. For information on the polygon buffer, see Print.

D0-nn error (nn is two alphanumeric characters)

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. Press the power switch to turn the power OFF (**Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)**), wait for longer than 10 seconds, and then turn the power ON again (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**). If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

Could not send the new PIN via e-mail. Check the settings.

Could not send an e-mail for resetting the PIN.

- Check whether an e-mail address is set.
- Check the e-mail settings and network settings.

FF FONT FULL

Could not register font information in the font table because there were too many fonts to register.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that could not be registered will not be printed correctly.

FM DL SIZE ERROR n (n is a single alphanumeric character)

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM DL SCALE ERROR n (n is a single alphanumeric character)

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM DL FONT MEMORY FULL

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM FILE ACCESS ERROR

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM SC WORK MEM. ERROR n (n is a single alphanumeric character)

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM ALIGNMENT ERROR

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM FONT PARSE ERROR

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM FONT MEMORY FULL

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

FM WORK MEMORY ERROR

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

IEEE 802.1X error. Set the correct authentication information.

The client authentication information is not set correctly.

- Check whether the authentication method and authentication information (key and certificate, user name and password, and CA certificate) are set correctly.

IEEE 802.1X error. No reply from the destination.

An error occurred while communicating with the authenticator.

- Check whether the authenticator (LAN switch) and RADIUS server are set correctly.

IEEE 802.1X error. Cannot analyze the certificate.

Failed to analyze the server certificate sent from the RADIUS server.

- Check the content of the server certificate of the RADIUS server.

IEEE 802.1X error. The certificate is incorrect.

An error occurred when using the server certificate sent from the RADIUS server as a CA certificate for validation.

- Check the content of the server certificate of the RADIUS server and the CA certificate registered in the machine.
  Registering a CA Certificate(P. 706)

IEEE 802.1X error. The certificate has expired.

The server certificate sent from the RADIUS server has expired.

- Check the expiration date of the server certificate of the RADIUS server.

IEEE 802.1X error. Change the authentication password.

The password has expired.

- Set a new password.

IEEE 802.1X error. Check the authentication settings.

The authentication method set in the machine and the authentication method set in the RADIUS server do not match.

- Check the authentication method set in the machine and the RADIUS server, and set the correct authentication method.

Set the IP address.

The IP address of the machine is not set.

- Set the IP address in <TCP/IP Settings>, and restart the machine.
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

Cannot register PDF with Format to PDF/A as default. All other settings have been registered.

You tried to register a default value for <Scan and Send>, <Scan and Store>, or <Access Strd. Files>, while the <Format PDF to PDF/A> settings for the <PDF> file format was changed.

- You cannot register default settings if you change the <Format PDF to PDF/A> setting for the <PDF> file format. Register default settings after changing settings other than the <Format PDF to PDF/A> setting.

Check the server name in the SMB server settings.

A computer or printer bearing the same name as that of the SMB server is registered on the WINS database.

- Do not register a computer or printer bearing the same name as that of the SMB server to <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings> under <TCP/IP Settings>.
  Making WINS Settings(P. 178)
  <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>(P. 836)

A computer or printer bearing the same name as that of the SMB server is registered on the WINS database.

- Do not register a computer or printer bearing the same name as that of the SMB server to <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings> under <TCP/IP Settings>.

TLS Error

The WebDAV server does not support TLS encrypted communication.

- Set TLS on the WebDAV server side, according to your environment.

The proxy server does not support TLS encrypted communication.

- If the WebDAV client connects to the internet via a proxy, set TLS on the proxy server side.

Cannot delete the default key because it is in use by TLS or other settings. Check the settings.

The key and certificate you are trying to delete is being used in TLS encrypted communications.

- Set all TLS settings to <Off> to stop TLS encrypted communication.

TCP/IP Error

Could not automatically retrieve the address with DHCP and Auto IP.

- If the address cannot be automatically retrieved with DHCP and Auto IP, <IP Address> in <IPv4 Settings> is set to 0.0.0.0. Set the correct IPv4 address. if <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off> in <Select Interface>, correctly configure the IPv4 address of the sub line.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
  <IP Address Settings>(P. 849) (<Sub Line Settings>)

0.0.0.0 is set as a fixed IPv4 address in <IP Address> in <IPv4 Settings>.

- Set the correct IPv4 address.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
  <IP Address Settings>(P. 849) (<Sub Line Settings>)

The IPv6 address is not set correctly.

- Check the following. It may take several minutes until the stateless address is decided.
- Check whether <Use IPv6> is set to <On> in <IPv6 Settings>.
- When using a stateless address or DHCPv6, check whether each address has been retrieved.
- If the address has not been retrieved, check the settings of the router and the DHCPv6 server.
  Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)

The address of the DNS server is not set correctly.

- Check whether the address of the DNS server is set correctly in <IPv4> or <IPv6>.
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)

Could not send to the TCP/IP protocol stack.

- Check whether the IPv4 address or IPv6 address is set correctly in <IPv4 Settings> or <IPv6 Settings>. In addition, if <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off> in <Select Interface>, correctly configure the IPv4 address of the sub line.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
  Setting an IPv6 Address(P. 163)

Out of resources. Wait a moment, then try again.

TCP/IP resources were insufficient while continuously sending or after continuously sending with FTP or Windows (SMB).

- Try again after waiting a while.

Check the TCP/IP.

The TCP/IP of the machine is not operating.

- Check the IP address, DHCP, and Auto IP settings in <TCP/IP Settings>.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)
- if <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off> in <Select Interface>, check the settings for the IP address and DHCP in <Sub Line Settings>.
  <IP Address Settings>(P. 849) (<Sub Line Settings>)

Check the TCP/IP. (Main Line)

The IP address of the main line is set to "0.0.0.0".

- Set a different IP address.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

Check the TCP/IP. (Sub Line)

The IP address of the sub line is set to "0.0.0.0".

- Set a different IP address.
  Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)

Universal Print: A server communication error occurred.

The machine is not connected to the network correctly.

- Check the machine and network settings, and try connecting again.

Could not communicate because a server error occurred.

- Check whether the server is operating normally.

Communication with the server is blocked due to firewall settings.

- Configure the firewall settings to allow communication.

Universal Print: Could not authenticate with server.

An error has occurred during server authentication.

- Restart the machine. If the message still appears after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

Universal Print: The certificate has expired.

The expiration date of the certificate has expired.

- Delete this machine from Microsoft Entra ID and the computer, re-register the machine, and then update the certificate.

Universal Print: An internal error occurred.

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message still appears after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

Universal Print: The printer is not registered.

This machine was deleted from Microsoft Entra ID and could not be communicated with.

- Re-register this machine in Microsoft Entra ID.

Check the wired LAN adapter connected to the USB port.

Multiple USB-LAN adapters are connected, or the USB-LAN adapter is not connected/recognized.

- Check the connection of the USB-LAN adapter.
  Connecting to a Sub-Line Wired LAN When Another Wired LAN is the Main Line(P. 152)
- If you reconnected the USB-LAN adapter, restart the machine.
  Front Side(P. 20)

XPS Print Range Error

There are no pages that can be processed in the specified range for printing.

- Specify a correct page range.

XPS Image Data Error

Failed to extend the image data.

- Replace the image data in the XPS file and try printing again.

XPS Spool Memory Full

There is insufficient memory to process the XPS data.

- Restart the machine and try printing again. If you still cannot print, divide the pages into multiple files and print them separately.

XPS Data Error

An invalid command is specified due to corrupt data, etc. and processing cannot continue.

- Perform printing again using XPS data in a format supported by the machine.

XPS Unsupport Image Err

An unsupported data format is included.

- Convert the data to the TIFF or JPEG format and try printing again.

XPS Font Error

Failed to analyze the font data.

- Replace the font data in the XPS file and try printing again.

XPS Page Data Error

Cannot generate pages because the descriptions are incorrect.

- Perform printing again using XPS data in a format supported by the machine.

XPS Memory Full

There is insufficient memory to process the XPS data.

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, pages that include the data that caused the error may not be printed correctly.

You do not have privileges to access the XXX page.

You tried to log in as a user without the required privileges.

- Log in as a user with the required privileges.

The account has expired. Contact the system manager.

The certificate may have expired.

- Confirm the expiration date of for the certificate registered in the machine. If the certificate has expired, register a certificate within the validity period.
Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

The expiration date of the account has expired.

- Confirm the expiration date of the corresponding account.

Access point connection error. Check Wireless LAN Information.

The access point could not be found.

- Check the wireless LAN settings.
  Check the settings and information of the wireless LAN(P. 154)

AP Mode: Ended due to an error.

No data was sent or received between the machine and the connected mobile device for over three minutes.

- Check the connection between the machine and the mobile device.

AP Mode: Ended because no other device could be found.

Cannot find a mobile device capable of connection.

- Check the network settings of the mobile device, and then connect by holding it near the machine. Depending on your mobile device, the machine may not operate correctly. If you cannot successfully connect, contact your dealer or service representative.

AP Mode: Max no. of devices that can connect has been reached.

Cannot connect because the number of mobile devices which can connect simultaneously has reached the upper limit.

- Disconnect any unnecessary mobile devices, or wait until other mobile devices have disconnected.

AP Mode: Connected to other devices.

Cannot connect because the machine is already connected to another device.

- Wait until the connection to the other device has terminated.

Prepare a new XXXXX toner cartridge.

Toner in the toner cartridge is running out.

- You can continue printing, but at this time you should prepare a new toner cartridge to have it available when needed.

NOTE

- This message may not be displayed depending on your contract.
- The "XXXX" in the message indicates the toner color.

Following toner cartridges have reached end of their lifetimes. Replacing the toner cartridges is recommended. Printing can be continued by pressing [Resume Printing], but problems due to using those cartridges are not covered by warranty.

A toner cartridge has reached the end of its lifetime.

- It is recommended to replace the toner cartridge. But you may be able to continue printing. In this case, the print quality is not guaranteed.
  Procedure for Replacing the Toner Cartridge(P. 80)

Remaining toner of the following toner cartridges is low. Press [Resume Printing] to continue printing.

A toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon. Make sure that you have a replacement toner cartridge ready.

- Replace the toner cartridge if you see this message before you start to print a large job. This message is displayed when <Action When Remaining Toner Is Low> is set to <Display Warning Screen>.
  <Action When Remaining Toner Is Low>(P. 908)

Could not delete authentication information because an error occurred.

The authentication information could not be deleted because an unknown error occurred.

- Contact your dealer or service representative.

Could not set authentication information because an error occurred.

The authentication information could not be set because an unspecified error occurred.

- Contact your dealer or service representative.

An error occurred. Contact the system manager.

The selected user has already been deleted.

- Log in as the Administrator and register the button again.

An unexpected system error occurred.

- Check the operations and log in again. If you still cannot log in, consult your system administrator.

No response.

Could not send because an error occurred in the server.

- Check whether the server is operating normally.

The machine is not connected to the network correctly.

- Check the machine and network settings, and try connecting again.
  Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)

Could not send e-mail or an I-fax because an error occurred in TCP/IP.

- Check the machine and network settings, and try connecting again.
  Setting up the Network Environment(P. 146)

Waste toner container is nearly full. Replacement not yet needed.

The waste toner container is almost full.

- You can continue printing for a while, but you should have a new one available so that you can make replacement as soon as it is needed. If you decide to replace the waste toner container at the time when this message is displayed, press the icon at the bottom right of the screen to display a motion video to give the instructions for waste toner container replacement. Follow these instructions to replace the waste toner container.

Replace the waste toner container.

The waste toner container is full, so printing is not possible any longer.

- Follow the instructions on the screen to replace the waste toner container. **Procedure for Replacing the Waste Toner Container(P. 83)**

Cannot recall the settings because the function for the button does not exist.

A personal button or shared button that includes a function not supported by the machine was used.

- If you have imported personal buttons/shared buttons registered in another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series device, buttons not supported by the machine may be included. Register the personal buttons/shared buttons again in the machine.

Cannot recall the settings because the function for the button is disabled. Enable the function, then try again.

The operation could not be executed by pressing the button because the function to use has been stopped.

- Press the button after enabling the function that was stopped to be used.

Synchronize Custom Settings: Log in again for synchronization.

There is an inconsistency between the synchronization data of the server machine and that of the client machine synchronizing custom settings.

- Log out, and then log in again.

Synchronize Custom Settings: Some settings are restricted.

The client machine was synchronizing custom settings, but the server machine is turned OFF or is not operating normally.

- Turn the server machine ON.
- If the server machine is operating normally, check that its network cable is connected before checking the network settings.

NOTE

- Data may not be able to be synchronized correctly while this message is displayed, but can be synchronized after the problem is resolved.

Synchronize Custom Settings: An error occurred.

An error occurred during synchronization startup.

- Confirm that the address of the destination server is correct for the synchronization of custom settings (client).
- If the synchronization of custom settings (client) is complete, restart synchronization.
- Restart the machine.
- If the problem is not resolved even after restarting the machine, check the followings.

1. You can ping the IP address set for the destination
2. The address of the destination server is correctly displayed

Synchronize Custom Settings: Enabling synchronization...

Processing to begin synchronization of custom settings is being performed.

- Wait until processing is complete.

Synchronize Custom Settings: Cannot find the server.

The server machine for synchronization of custom settings could not be found using Auto Search.

- Confirm that the server machine is turned ON.
- If the server machine is operating normally, check that its network cable is connected before checking the network settings.
- Confirm the usable conditions for Auto Search. **Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)**
- Without using Auto Search, manually specify the server address of the destination for the synchronization of custom settings (client), and the search depth (router).
- If the synchronization of custom settings (client) is complete, restart synchronization.
- Restart the machine.

Synchronize Custom Settings: Server authentication error.

Authentication with the server machine could not be achieved.

- Check that the authentication user ID and new password for the synchronization of custom settings (client) are the same as the authentication user ID and password with administrator privileges in the server machine.
- If the synchronization of custom settings (client) is complete, restart synchronization.
- Restart the machine.

Synchronize Custom Settings: Cannot identify the server.

Multiple server machines for the synchronization of custom settings were found using Auto Search.

- Manually specify the server machine or shut down all unnecessary server machines that are currently running so that only one remains.

When specifying the server machine manually

- Without using Auto Search, manually specify the server address of the destination for the synchronization of custom settings (client), and the search depth (router). **Starting Setting Synchronization(P. 770)**

When shutting down unnecessary servers that are currently running

- Even if the network settings of the server machine include both IPv4 and IPv6, if IPv6 is prioritized and the client machine disables IPv6, the client machine cannot connect via search. Enter the IPv4 address for the destination server address.
- If the synchronization of custom settings (client) is complete, restart synchronization and then restart the machine.

Check the covers.

The cover of optional equipment is open.

- Check whether the covers of optional equipment are closed.

An error occurred when auto exporting the audit log.

The data could not be exported because a server error occurred.

- Check that the server is functioning normally.

The machine is not connected to the network correctly.

- Check the settings of the machine and the network, and try connecting again.

The automatic export settings are incorrect.

- Check that the automatic export settings are correct (**Exporting Logs Automatically(P. 725)**).

Failed to generate Device Signature Key. Set the e-mail address in Communication Settings.

To use device signatures, you must first configure the e-mail address of the machine.

- Configure the e-mail address of the machine (**Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**), and then generate a key for device signatures (**Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)**).

The function may be stopped. Buttons could not be imported.

When importing data, buttons with functions not supported by the machine were included.

- Check whether all the buttons have been imported to the machine.

Check inside the paper drawer.

Too much paper is loaded in the paper source.

- Reduce the amount of paper in the paper source indicated on the touch panel display to the appropriate level.

Paper other than the paper currently in use may be loaded in the paper source.

- Remove any paper other than the paper currently in use from the paper source indicated on the touch panel display.

Routing registration failed. Check Static Routing Settings.

There is an entry that routing table registration failed for in the static routing settings.

- Check the registered destination address and gateway address, and specify the correct settings.
  Setting Static Routing(P. 187)

Remove the original from the platen glass.

An original remains on the platen glass.

- Remove the original from the platen glass, and place another original.

The original scanning area (feeder) is dirty.

The document feed scanning area (on the feeder side) is dirty.

- Clean the document feed scanning area.
  Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)

Original scanning area (thin glass strip) is dirty.

The document feed scanning area (the long and thin glass strip) is dirty.

- Clean the document feed scanning area.
  Cleaning the Feeder(P. 75)

Return the originals to their correct order, then press the [Start] key.

Scanning stopped because an unknown problem occurred in the feeder.

- Scan the original again from the first page.

Return the originals to their correct order, then press the [Start] key. (The data size of the scanned original exceeds the limit. Settings will be automatically corrected and the originals will be scanned again.)

Scanning was canceled because the data of the scanned document exceeded the maximum size that can be handled by the machine.

- Scan the original again from the first page. If you still cannot scan the original, you may be able to scan by lowering the setting in <Sharpness>, and setting <Original Type> to <Text>.

The device is currently being used by another user. Wait a while, and then try to perform the operation again.

You cannot use the machine when it is being used by another user.

- Try again after waiting a while.

The number of search results exceeds the limit. Change search conditions, then try again.

Destinations exceeding the maximum number of search results were found.

- Narrow the search conditions and try searching again.
- Increase the maximum number of search results in <Max Addresses to Search> in <Register LDAP Server>.
  Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)

The search condition includes characters that cannot be used with the selected server.

"\" is used in the search conditions.

- Remove the "\" from the search conditions and try searching again.

If an uneven number of "(" or ")" are included or an "*" is included inside parentheses, search conditions are not established.

- Set a correct combination of characters, and try searching again.

If <LDAP Server Version and Character Code> is set to <ver.2 (JIS)>, only ASCII code (0x20 to 0x7E) characters can be used.

- Remove the invalid characters and try searching again.

An error occurred when verifying.

The certificate is invalid.

- Register the correct certificate and specify the settings again.
  Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)
  Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

This CRL is invalid.

The certificate revocation list (CRL) may be corrupt, or a signing algorithm not supported by the machine may be used.

- Register the correct certificate revocation list (CRL).
  Registering a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)(P. 709)

This CRL has expired.

The start date for the certificate revocation list (CRL) may be set to a date in the future.

- Check the start date of the certificate registered in the machine. If the start date is set to a date in the future, use the certificate on a day after that date.
  Registering a Certificate Revocation List (CRL)(P. 709)

The date and time set on the machine may be incorrect.

- Check the date and time setting of the machine.
  Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)

Cannot register because the algorithm of this key is not supported.

You tried to register the key and certificate file of an unsupported encryption algorithm.

- Register the key and certificate file of a supported encryption algorithm.
  Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)
  System Specifications(P. 1254)

Cannot set as the default key because this key is corrupted or invalid.

The key specified for the machine cannot be set because it is corrupted.

- Register the key again.
  Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)
  Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)

This certificate has been revoked.

The certificate is included in the certificate revocation list (CRL).

- Register a new certificate.

Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

This certificate is invalid.

The certificate is invalid.

- Register the correct certificate and specify the settings again.
  Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)
  Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

This certificate has expired.

The certificate may have expired.

- Check the expiration date of the certificate registered in the machine. If the certificate has expired, register a valid certificate.
  Registering a Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 705)

The date and time set on the machine may be incorrect.

- Check the date and time setting of the machine.
  Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)

No response from the server. Check the settings.

The specified server may have a problem such as not being specified correctly, not being turned on, or having insufficient resources.

- Try specifying the server again after waiting a while. If there is still no response from the server, select another server.

Cannot start searching because the server version settings are incorrect. Check the settings.

A different server LDAP version is set in the LDAP server and the machine.

- Change the setting in <LDAP Server Version and Character Code> in <Register LDAP Server> to "ver.2" to match the LDAP server.
  Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)

Check the server.

You tried to access the server without using a proxy.

- Check whether the WebDAV server settings are correct.
- Check whether the proxy settings are correct.
  Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

Access to the destination is not allowed.

- Check whether the WebDAV server settings are correct.

You tried to access the server via a proxy without using TLS encrypted communication.

- Set <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX> to <Off>.
  <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)

The proxy server failed to communicate with an upstream server.

- Check whether the WebDAV server and proxy server settings are correct.

An HTTP protocol version not supported by the WebDAV server was used in a request from the WebDAV client.

- Check whether the WebDAV server settings are correct.

The disk space of the WebDAV server is insufficient for the request from the WebDAV client.

- Make sufficient disk space for the request available on the WebDAV server.

The appropriate paper size, A4, is not available.

Paper of the optimal size selected with Automatic Paper Selection has not been loaded.

- Load paper of the displayed size.

<Paper Source Auto Selection> is set to <Off>.

- Specify the paper drawer manually.
- Set a paper source loaded with the optimal paper size to <On> in <Paper Source Auto Selection>.
  <Paper Source Auto Selection>(P. 903)

Paper of a type that cannot be selected with Automatic Paper Selection is loaded.

- Specify the paper drawer manually.

Sub line was disconnected due to a subnet mask conflict.

The network addresses of the main line and sub line conflict.

- Check the IP address and subnet mask settings of the main line and sub line.
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

There are too many subdirectories.

The maximum number of characters was exceeded because the number of levels was too deep.

- The destination cannot be specified. Specify another destination.

Remove all the output paper.

Paper has accumulated in the output tray.

- Remove all paper from the output tray.

The contents of the specified file may be incorrect.

You tried to register a button by specifying a different file when importing.

- Register the correct file and try importing again.

The default key is not set. Check TLS Settings.

The key and certificate (TLS server certificate) are not registered.

- To use TLS encrypted communication, first register the key to be used.
  Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

The default key is not set. Check the Key and Certificate List settings in Certificate Settings.

The key and certificate (TLS server certificate) are not registered.

- Register a key and certificate for performing TLS encrypted communication.
  Generating the Key and Certificate for Network Communication(P. 659)
  Registering a Key and Certificate(P. 705)

The combination of the allowed version and selected algorithm is inappropriate. Enter settings again.

The selected settings cannot be used together.

- Set a valid combination.
  Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)

A wired LAN adapter that cannot be used has been connected.

A USB-LAN adapter that cannot be used with the machine is connected.

- For information on the USB-LAN adapters that can be used, contact your dealer or service representative.
  Connecting to a Sub-Line Wired LAN When Another Wired LAN is the Main Line(P. 152)

Could not verify the certificate.

The CA certificate of a certificate authority could not be confirmed.

- Register a CA certificate issued by a certificate authority.

Could not perform the job because the scanned originals were all blank pages.

The scanned document was determined to contain blank pages only.

- If the document does not contain blank pages only, check the setting for skipping blank pages.
  Skipping Blank Pages When Printing(P. 335)

Cannot connect.

Failed to perform proxy authentication.

- Check whether the proxy settings are correct.
  Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

Cannot edit/delete the paper because it is being used for other settings in Settings/Registration.

You tried to edit or delete paper that was registered in another setting via <Paper Type Management Settings>.

- The paper is registered as "Favorite Paper" in <Register Favorite Paper (Multi-Purpose Tray)> and <Multi-Purpose Tray Defaults>. Cancel the registration.
  Registering Frequently Used Paper Size and Type for the Multi-purpose Tray(P. 62)
- The paper is set as a target for automatic gradation adjustment. To edit or delete paper via <Paper Type Management Settings>, it is necessary to set another type of paper as a target for correction and perform gradation correction again.

Adjusting Gradation(P. 1069)

Check Computer Name in Settings/Registration.

A computer or printer with the same name is registered in the WINS database.

- When <WINS Resolution> in <WINS Settings> is set to <On>, do not register a computer or printer with a name already listed in <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings> in <TCP/IP Settings>.
  Making WINS Settings(P. 178)
  <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>(P. 836)

A printer or computer with the same name already exists in the same workgroup as this machine.

- Do not register a computer or printer with a name already listed in <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings> in <TCP/IP Settings>.
  <Computer Name/Workgroup Name Settings>(P. 836)

A toner cartridge of the wrong color may have been inserted. If this toner cartridge is used, a malfunction may occur. Check the inserted toner cartridge.

The color of one of the inserted toner cartridges may be incorrect.

- Make sure to check the status of the inserted toner cartridge.
- To continue using the toner cartridge, press <I Agree>. If you select this option, the operation of the machine is not guaranteed.
- To replace the toner cartridge, press <Cancel>.
- If you are not sure about the remedies, contact your dealer or service representative from which you purchased the toner cartridge.

Cannot change the settings because the selected key is being used.

The key and certificate you are trying to delete is being used in TLS encrypted communications.

- Set all TLS settings to <Off> to stop TLS encrypted communication.

Cannot find the selected server. Check the settings.

The host name cannot be identified when the authentication information of the LDAP server is set to <Use (Security Authentication)>.

- Check whether the settings in <DNS Settings> are correct.
  <DNS Settings>(P. 854)
- Check whether the settings on the DNS server side are correct.

The IP address could not be identified.

- Check whether the settings in <DNS Settings> are correct.
  <DNS Settings>(P. 854)
- Check whether the settings on the DNS server side are correct.

Cannot connect to the selected server. Check the settings.

Could not connect to the IP address/port.

- Check whether the server address and port number in <Register LDAP Server> are correct.
  Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)
- Check whether the LDAP server is operating normally.

- If <Authentication Information> is set to <Use (Security Authentication)> for the LDAP server, check whether UDP packets are blocked by the filter.
- Check whether the gateway address set in <TCP/IP Settings> is correct.
Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

The setting item specified from Settings Menu cannot currently be used. Contact the system manager.

The selected settings menu cannot be changed or is not available.

- Contact your system administrator.

The selected button may be unavailable. Contact the system manager.

The selected user does not exist.

- Log in as the Administrator and register the button again.

"Administrator" has been disabled.

- Select a user with administrator privileges.

Could not send.

The data to send is too large.

- Reduce the size of the data and try sending again.

Session timed out. Wait a moment, then try to access the database again.

The session timed out because the specified length of time elapsed.

- Try accessing again after waiting a while. If the session continues to time out, restart the machine.

Cannot complete searching due to timeout. Check the settings.

The search could not be completed within the specified time.

- Increase the length of the timeout time in <Search Timeout> in <Register LDAP Server>.
Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)

Could not execute because the file contains unsupported data.

The page cannot be generated due to incorrect content.

- Try printing again using data in a format compatible with the machine.

Direct Connection: Ended due to an error.

Failed to connect to the mobile device, or no data was sent or received between the machine and the connected mobile device for a certain period of time.

- Check the connection between the machine and the mobile device.

Direct Connection: Ended because no other dev. could be found.

Cannot find a mobile device capable of connection.

- Check the network settings of the mobile device, and then connect by holding it near the machine. Depending on your mobile device, the machine may not operate correctly. If you cannot successfully connect, contact your dealer or service representative.

A non-Canon toner cartridge may be inserted, so information about remaining toner cannot be detected properly.

A toner cartridge for which the print quality cannot be guaranteed may be installed.

- To continue using the toner cartridge, press <I Agree>. If you select this option, the operation of the machine is not guaranteed.

A non-Canon or counterfeit toner cartridge may be inserted, so information about remaining toner cannot be detected properly.

A toner cartridge for which the print quality cannot be guaranteed may be installed.

- It is recommended to replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- Printing cannot continue while this message is displayed.
<Canon Genuine Mode>(P. 1036)

Adjusting gradation... Wait a moment.

The machine is performing auto adjustment.

- Printing will automatically resume when the adjustment is complete. Wait a while.

Could not access the database. Restart the device.

Failed to access the user database because it is corrupt, etc.

- Restart the machine.

Digital Sig. Cert. Access Error

Could not access the device certificate when sending the device signature.

- Check the content of the device certificate registered in the machine.
Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)

Certificate Expiration Date Error

The certificate has expired.

- Check the expiration date of the certificate.

Cannot log in because multiple users are registered under the same user name. Contact the system manager.

The user name could not be distinguished because user names are set to be not case-sensitive.

- Change the settings to make user names case-sensitive, or register another user name.

Cannot register any new buttons because the number of registered buttons has reached the limit. Buttons already registered can be overwritten.

The button cannot be registered because the maximum number of buttons has been exceeded.

- Overwrite an existing button or delete unnecessary buttons.
Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)

Cannot import because the number of buttons for registration has exceeded the upper limit.

Buttons cannot be registered while importing because the maximum number of personal buttons/shared buttons has been exceeded.

- Delete unnecessary personal buttons/shared buttons, and import the data again.

Could not register because the number of registered users has reached the limit.

Cannot register the user because the number of users has exceeded the upper limit.

- Delete any unnecessary users.

Replace the toner cartridge. (XXXX)

The toner in the toner cartridge has run out.

- Pressing the icon displayed at the bottom right of the screen displays a motion video to give the instructions for toner cartridge replacement. Follow these instructions to replace the toner cartridge.

NOTE

- The "XXXX" in the message indicates the toner color.
- When black toner has run out completely, it is not necessary to press the icon on the lower-right corner of the screen. The toner cartridge replacement screen is automatically displayed, which allows you to perform the replacement procedure in accordance with the instructions given by motion video.

Cannot recognize the inserted toner cartridge. A non-Canon toner cartridge may be inserted, so information about remaining toner cannot be detected properly.

A toner cartridge for which the print quality cannot be guaranteed may be installed.

- To continue using the toner cartridge, press <I Agree>. If you select this option, the operation of the machine is not guaranteed.

Cannot recognize the inserted toner cartridge. A non-Canon or counterfeit toner cartridge may be inserted, so printing is currently unavailable.

A toner cartridge for which the print quality cannot be guaranteed may be installed.

- It is recommended to replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- Printing cannot continue while this message is displayed.
<Canon Genuine Mode>(P. 1036)

Cannot recognize the toner cartridge. Pull out the toner cartridge, then insert it again or information about remaining toner won't be detected properly.

The toner cartridge may not be correctly inserted, the toner cartridge may have been damaged, or a toner cartridge with the wrong model number may be inserted.

- Reinsert the toner cartridge. Make sure to check the status of the inserted container. For instructions on checking the model number of the toner cartridge, see **Consumables(P. 88)** .
- To continue using the toner cartridge, press <Close> or <I Agree>. If you select this option, the operation of the machine is not guaranteed.
- To replace the toner cartridge, press <Cancel>.
- If you are not sure about the remedies, contact your dealer or service representative from which you purchased the toner cartridge.

The entered PIN is incorrect.

An incorrect PIN was entered.

- Enter the PIN again.
- If you do not know the correct PIN, contact the administrator.

The authentication server is not running. Contact the system manager.

The LAN cable is disconnected.

- Connect the LAN cable.

The Active Directory server is not running.

- Start the Active Directory server.

The KDC service of Active Directory is stopped.

- Follow the procedure below to check the status of the service.

1. Start the "Service" management tool of Active Directory.
2. Check whether the Active Directory server is operating normally.

Communication with the Active Directory * server is blocked by the firewall.

- Stop blocking the default port 88.

* If Active Directory is set as the login destination, communication is normally performed with the UDP protocol using port 88, but the data may be processed with the TCP protocol if it exceeds a certain size.

Cannot find the authentication server. Contact the system manager.

The LAN cable is disconnected.

- Connect the LAN cable.

The primary/secondary DNS server settings of the machine are incorrect or not set.

- Check and adjust the DNS server settings of the machine.

The DNS server specified in the machine is not running or its service is stopped.

- Follow the procedure below to check the status and settings of the DNS server.

1. Check whether the DNS server specified in the machine is running.
2. Start the "Service" management tool of the DNS server.
3. Check the status in [DNS Server], and if [Enable] is not displayed, right-click and select [Enable].

Check whether the host record exists in the DNS server.

- Check whether a host record exists in the DNS server, and whether the forwarder settings are correct.

No password is set on the authentication server side. Contact the system manager.

An appropriate password was not set on the server side when configuring or upgrading Active Directory.

- Reset the password of the corresponding account, and specify the settings again.

Cannot log in because anonymous access to the authentication server is not allowed. Contact the system manager.

Anonymous access is not allowed on the LDAP server.

- On the information input screen of the LDAP server, select <Use authentication information>, and then specify the user name and password according to what is registered in the LDAP server.
  Registering Server Information(P. 613)

The account information necessary to log in to the authentication server is invalid. Contact the system manager.

The user name or password is not set correctly.

- Confirm the authentication user ID and password, and whether the user has administrator privileges.

The attributes specified in the server settings are not set correctly.

- Confirm that the attributes are correct. Also, make sure that the fields (attribute names) do not contain invalid values.
  Registering Server Information(P. 613)

The administrator account information specified in the server settings is not set correctly. Alternatively, the user could not log in as an administrator.

- Specify the correct administrator account information.

The information for the server settings is insufficient.

- Confirm that the attributes necessary for logging in are set correctly.
  Registering Server Information(P. 613)

A competing IP address was found on the network.

The IPv4 address set for the machine already exists in the same network as the machine.

- Change the IP address of the machine in <IP Address> in <IPv4 Settings> so that it does not conflict with the IP address of another device.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

An IP address conflict was detected on the network (Main Line).

The IPv4 address set for the main line of the machine already exists on the same network as the machine.

- Change the IP address of the main line of the machine so that it does not conflict with the IP address of another device.
  Setting an IPv4 Address(P. 161)

An IP address conflict was detected on the network (Sub Line).

The IPv4 address set for the sub line of the machine already exists on the same network as the machine.

- Change the IP address of the sub line of the machine so that it does not conflict with the IP address of another device.
  Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)

Could not perform the operation because a network error occurred.

Writing from an external source is not allowed.

- Set <Prohibit Writing from External> for the destination to <Off>.

The full path (the folder name indicating the filename and destination to save) is too long.

- Shorten the folder name or file name or change the destination to save so that the number of characters for the path is 256 characters or fewer, including "/share" or "users".

Check the network connection.

The cable is not connected to the machine correctly.

- Check whether the LAN cable is connected correctly. If you had to connect it again, restart the machine.
  Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)

The machine is not connected to the network.

- If you want to use the machine without connecting to a network, set <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes> to <Off>.
  <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>(P. 825)

Check the network connection. (Main Line)

The machine and the LAN cable of the main line are not connected correctly.

- Check whether the LAN cable is connected correctly. If you had to connect it again, restart the machine.
  Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)

The machine is not connected to the network.

- If you want to use the machine without connecting to a network, set <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes> to <Off>.
  <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>(P. 825)

Check the network connection. (Sub Line)

The machine and the LAN cable of the sub line are not connected correctly.

- Check whether the LAN cable is connected correctly. If you had to connect it again, restart the machine.
  Front Side(P. 20)

The machine is not connected to the network.

- If you want to use the machine without connecting to a network, set <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes> to <Off>.
  <Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes>(P. 825)

Scanning was canceled because the originals were not correctly fed.

A paper jam occurred in the feeder because multiple originals were fed together.

- Remove the originals from the feeder, and place them again.

A paper jam occurred in the feeder because an invalid type of original was fed.

- Remove the invalid original (**Placing Originals(P. 35)**), and place an appropriate type of original.

Remove the jammed originals from the feeder and any originals left in the feeder tray, then place them back in the feeder tray and press the [Start] key.

Scanning was canceled because the original is jammed in the feeder.

- You need to restart the scanning with the sheet jammed in the feeder. Put together the unscanned sheets of original neatly, reload them in the feeder, and then press (Start).

Remove the original from the feeder.

You are using a function that cannot be used when an original is placed in the feeder.

- Place the original on the platen glass.

Performing multiple jobs...

Multiple jobs such as print and send jobs are executing at the same time as the scan operation.

- Wait a while until the scan operation resumes.

Cannot log in because an authentication error occurred in Department ID Management. Contact the system manager.

When using User Authentication, Department ID Management is enabled but Department IDs have not been assigned to users.

- If you are a general user, ask your administrator to assign you a Department ID.
- If you are an administrator user, ask the Department ID Management administrator to assign you a Department ID. If no administrator users can log in, contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Invalid DLG Input

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL DLG Rendering Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL DLG Unknown Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL DLG Memory Full

The work memory was insufficient when the system was processing data (in particular, graphic processing and text processing).

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, pages that include the data that caused the error may not be printed correctly.

PDL DLG Mem. Alloc. Err

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL GL Orig. Pt Unknown

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL GL Coord.Result

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Invalid GL Input

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL GL Range Check

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL GL Memory Full

The work memory was insufficient when the system was processing data (in particular, graphic processing and text processing).

- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, pages that include the data that caused the error may not be printed correctly.

PDL GL Mem. Alloc. Err

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL IMG Refer. Data Err

The TIFF or JPEG data includes data that cannot be processed with the machine.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.

PDL IMG Initial. Err

The memory for printing the TIFF or JPEG data was insufficient.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.

PDL IMG Process. Error

An unknown problem occurred while processing the TIFF or JPEG data.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer, and try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.

PDL IMG Invalid Data

The TIFF or JPEG data includes data that cannot be processed with the machine.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), and check the TIFF or JPEG data.
- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that caused the error will not be printed.

Data that cannot be processed by the machine because the machine has the same IP address as another device, etc. was sent.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), check the IP address in <TCP/IP Settings>, and change the IP address if necessary.
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

PDL IMG Work Memory Full

The memory for processing the TIFF or JPEG data was insufficient.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), initialize the printer to increase the free memory, and then try printing again. However, note that initializing the printer will erase all the data in the memory of the machine. For more details, see Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer) via the online manual Web site.
- Press <Skip Error>, and continue printing. However, the data that caused the error will not be printed.

PDL nn Rendering Error (nn is the module name)

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL PDF Error

PDF data that cannot be processed with the machine was sent.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), optimize the PDF using Adobe Acrobat, and try printing again.
- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), open the PDF file in an application, and try printing again using the printer driver.
- If the above-mentioned remedies do not solve the problem, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL PDF Data Decode Err

The password for printing the PDF file is incorrect.

- Enter the correct password, and try printing again.

Printing is not allowed in the security settings of the PDF file.

- Change the PDF file to allow printing in an application for editing PDF files.

PDL PDF Memory Full

There is insufficient memory to process the PDF data.

- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), optimize the PDF by adjusting settings such as the image resolution using Adobe Acrobat (to reduce the size of the data to print at one time), and perform printing again.
- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), divide the pages of the PDF data in Adobe Acrobat into multiple files, and try printing again.
- Cancel printing (**Canceling Printing(P. 419)**), open the PDF file in an application, and try printing again using the printer driver.

PDL RIP Process. Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL XPS Error

An undefined error occurred.

- Restart the machine and try again. If the message is still displayed, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL XPS Initialize Error

An unknown error such as not being able to retrieve memory during initialization occurred.

- Restart the machine and try again. If the message is still displayed, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL XPS Rendering Error

An error occurred in the rendering system.

- Restart the machine and try again. If the message is still displayed, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Image Comp. Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Rendering Timeout

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Data Transfer Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

PDL Reg. Access Error

The printer stopped operating normally due to an unknown problem.

- Restart the machine. If the message is still displayed after restarting the machine, make a note of the message and contact your dealer or service representative.

Cannot recall the button settings because other operations are being performed.

The <Personal>/<Shared> cannot be called when another function is being executed.

- Call the <Personal>/<Shared> after the operations for the other function are complete.

Register to Home will be canceled and you will be returned to the function screen because you do not have permission to register buttons. Log in as an administrator, then try again.

Registering personal buttons/shared buttons is restricted in user authentication.

- Register the button after logging in as an administrator.
- Check the following settings.

<Allow Home Screen Customization for Common Use>

<Allow Registration/Editing of Personal Buttons>

Customizing the <Home> Screen(P. 237)

The password does not meet the policy requirements. Change the password.

The entered password violates the password policy.

- Enter a password that complies with the password policy. If you do not know the password policy, consult your system administrator.

A toner cartridge that cannot be used with this device has been inserted, so printing is currently unavailable. Make sure the specified toner cartridge for this device is inserted.

A toner cartridge that can be used with the machine has not been loaded.

- Load the toner cartridge that can be used with the machine. For instructions on checking the model number of the toner cartridge, see **Replacement Parts(P. 88)** .

  To continue using the toner cartridge, press <Close>. If you select this option, the operation of the machine is not guaranteed.

  If you are not sure about the remedies, contact your dealer or service representative from which you purchased the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

- Printing cannot continue while this message is displayed.

Timer settings for this device and the authentication server may not be synchronized. Contact the system manager.

The date and time settings of the machine and the authentication server are different.

- Synchronize the date and time settings of the machine and the authentication server.

Wireless LAN communication error. Turn main power OFF & ON.

An unknown error occurred when configuring the wireless LAN connection.

- Restart the machine. Press the power switch to turn the power OFF (**Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)**),wait for longer than 10 seconds, and then turn the power ON again (**Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)**).

Wireless LAN communic. error. Check Wireless LAN Information.

An unknown error occurred when configuring the wireless LAN connection.

- Check the wireless LAN settings.
  Check the settings and information of the wireless LAN(P. 154)

Cannot send because the memory is full. Wait a moment, then try again.

The fax could not be sent because there was insufficient memory.

- Lower the resolution and try sending again.
- Delete unnecessary documents in the memory of the machine to free up space.
  Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
  Working with Files and Folders in Other Devices(P. 530)
- If this message is displayed frequently, contact your dealer or service representative.

Could not perform the operation because the memory is full.

When using the Scan and Store function, scanning was canceled because the memory became full while scanning the original.

- Press <OK> to return to the Basic Features screen. Delete unnecessary data to increase the free space, and try scanning the original again.

Scanning will be canceled because the memory is full. Do you want to print the scanned pages?

When using the Copy function, scanning was canceled because the memory became full while scanning the original.

- Press <Yes> to copy the scanned pages. Scan the remaining originals after copying is complete.

Scanning will be canceled because the memory is full. Wait a moment, then try again.

When using the Copy function, scanning was canceled because the memory became full while scanning the original.

- Press <OK> to return to the Basic Features screen. Scan the remaining originals after the current copy operation is complete.

Scanning will be canceled because the memory is full. Do you want to send the scanned pages?

When using the Fax or Scan and Send function, scanning was canceled because the memory became full while scanning the original.

- Press <Yes> to send the scanned pages. Scan the remaining originals after sending is complete.

Scanning will be canceled because the memory is full. Do you want to store the scanned pages?

When using the Scan and Store function, scanning was canceled because the memory became full while scanning the original.

- Press <Yes> to save the scanned pages. Scan the remaining originals after saving is complete.

The amount of data stored for registered users has reached the limit. You can perform operations, but no data (job setting logs, personal settings content, etc.) can be stored this time. To be able to store data from the next time you log in, unnecessary data must be deleted from other users. Contact the system manager or refer to the manual for details.

The user setting information could not be saved because the maximum number of users who can be registered was exceeded.

- To save new user setting information, delete any unnecessary user setting information.
Deleting User Setting Information(P. 641)

NOTE:

- If you are not using the Personalization function, delete user setting information, and then set <Enable Use of Personal Settings> (**<Enable Use of Personal Settings>(P. 1037)**) to <Off>.

- You can specify settings to automatically delete old user setting information if the number of users who can be registered is exceeded.
  <Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)

Register to Home will be canceled because you are not logged in. Return to the function screen, log in, then try again.

Registering shared buttons is restricted in user authentication.

- Register the button after logging in as an administrator.

Check the user name, password, or settings.

An incorrect user name or password was set for the LDAP server authentication information.

- Check whether the user name and password in <Register LDAP Server> are correct.
  Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)

An incorrect domain name was set for the LDAP server authentication information.

- Check whether the domain name in <Register LDAP Server> is correct.
  Registering the LDAP Server(P. 179)

Load paper.

The paper in the paper source has run out.

- Load paper in the paper source displayed on the touch panel display.
  Loading Paper(P. 40)

The paper guides in the paper source are in the wrong position.

- Adjust the paper guides according to the edges of the paper. Depending on the cut edge of the paper, multiple sheets of paper may be fed together when printing, which can cause paper jams. This can be reduced by changing the orientation of the loaded paper.

The paper settings differ from the paper that is loaded.

- Check the paper settings in <Consumables/Others> in (Status Monitor). If the paper settings are incorrect, match them with the paper that is loaded. Paper settings can be specified for all the paper sizes and types set in the paper drawers and multi-purpose tray in (Settings/Register) ▶ <Preferences> ▶ <Paper Settings>. If you are using the multi-purpose tray, remove the loaded paper and specify the paper settings.
  Specifying Paper Size and Type(P. 55)

The paper settings of the driver or application differ from the paper that is loaded.

- Check the paper settings on the [Printing Preferences] screen of the printer driver, and if the paper settings are incorrect, match them with the paper that is loaded.

Scanning was canceled because the data size of the scanned original exceeds the limit. Scanning may be possible if sharpness is reduced, or Original Type is set to Text.

Scanning was canceled because the data of the scanned document exceeded the maximum size that can be handled by the machine.

- You may be able to scan by lowering the setting in <Sharpness>, and setting <Original Type> to <Text>.

Information set by the currently logged-in user will not be stored.

The user setting information cannot be saved because the maximum number of users who can be registered was exceeded.

- To save new user setting information, delete any unnecessary user setting information.
  Deleting User Setting Information(P. 641)
- You can specify settings to automatically delete old user setting information if the number of users who can be registered is exceeded.
  <Action When Maximum Number of Users Exceeded>(P. 1037)

Login failed. Anonymous access to the authentication server is not allowed. Contact the system manager.

Anonymous access is not allowed in the LDAP server.

- Select the check box in [Use authentication information] on the screen for entering information on the LDAP server, and set the user name and password according to the information registered in the LDAP server.
  Registering Server Information(P. 613)

Login failed. The account information necessary to log in to the authentication server is invalid. Contact the system manager.

The user name or password is not set correctly.

- On the screen for entering the information for the LDAP server, set the correct settings according to the settings registered in the LDAP server.
  Registering Server Information(P. 613)

Cannot log in. Check the login destination.

The login destination information entered on the mobile device side is incorrect.

- Confirm that you have specified the correct login destination, and then log in again.

Cannot store the password because the number of passwords stored for each user has reached the limit.

The login user password cannot be registered because the maximum number of passwords has been exceeded.

- Delete unnecessary password information.

If a six-digit number is displayed when you are logging in

If an error occurs when you are logging in, a six-digit number may be displayed below the message. Take the necessary measure depending on the six-digit number displayed.

310001

Communication with the authentication server failed.

- Check the network cables from the machine and the domain controller (Active Directory).
- Check whether the domain controller is down.

- Check whether name resolution is working correctly with the DNS server set for the machine on the domain controller.
- Try again after augmenting the current value of [Period Until Timeout:] in the Active Directory settings.

310002

When [Use access mode within sites] is enabled on the machine, the site information of Active Directory is not set correctly.

- Check whether the site setting on Active Directory is valid.

310003

The network environment is not yet ready.

- Check again after a while.
- Check whether name resolution to the specified domain name is working correctly (the address can be identified) with the DNS server set for the machine, and then make adjustments as necessary.
- The DNS server set for the machine cannot be found, or it is currently unable to communicate. Check the configuration and the communication environment.

322000

A server error has occurred during Kerberos authentication.

- In Active Directory, clear the check box for [Do not require Kerberos preauthentication], which is an account option for the logged-in user account. Alternatively, check whether Active Directory is used properly.

322006

The objective user does not exist on the authentication server.

- Check whether the authentication user or search user exists on the domain controller to authenticate.

322012

In Active Directory, the check box for [Smart card is required for interactive logon], which is an account option for the logged-in user account, is selected.

- In Active Directory, clear the check box for [Smart card is required for interactive logon], which is an account option for the logged-in user account. After clearing the check box, be sure to reset the password. When resetting the password, you can use the same password instead of a new one.

322018

The validity period of the account has expired.

- Check the validity period of the account in question.

322023

The validity period of the password has expired.

- Change the password.
- In Active Directory, check the setting of the account options for the logged-in user account.

322024

The user name or password is wrong when keyboard authentication is performed.

- Check the password of the authentication user or search user.

322029

The attempt to communicate with the writable domain controller failed.

- Check the network cable from the writable domain controller.
- Check whether the writable domain controller is down.
- Check whether name resolution is working correctly with the DNS server on the writable domain controller.
- Try again after augmenting the current value of [Period Until Timeout:] in the Active Directory settings.

322037

The date and time settings are not identical between the machine and the authentication server.

- Ensure that the date and time settings are identical between the machine and the authentication server.

322xxx

A Kerberos authentication error.

- A Kerberos error code is displayed in place of xxx.

323000

An error has occurred during LDAP server authentication.

- Check whether Active Directory or LDAP service is used properly.

323008

An LDAP server authentication error has occurred in relation to TLS/non-TLS communication.

- Check the communication settings (TLS/non-TLS) of the server.
- Check whether the communication settings on the device side are identical to those on the server side.

323048

You are attempting to log in as an anonymous user for LDAP server authentication.

- Check whether the LDAP service setting permits anonymous user authentication.

323049/323053

The user information for LDAP server authentication is not set correctly.

- Check the user name and password of the authentication user or search user.
- Check whether the authentication user or search user is invalid, whether their validity period has expired, and whether they are account-locked.

323xxx

An LDAP server authentication (LDAPBind) error.

- An LDAPBind error code is displayed in place of xxx.

324000

An error has occurred during LDAP server search.

- Check whether Active Directory or LDAP service is used properly.

324xxx

LDAP server search (LDAPSearch) error.

- An LDAPSearch error code is displayed in place of xxx.

325000

An error has occurred during LDAP server authentication.

- Check whether Active Directory or LDAP service is used properly.

325010

You have attempted to perform registration to a read-only domain controller.

- If the domain controller configured in Active Directory is of the read-only type, no user information editing functions (registering/deleting cards, changing PIN) are available. To use the user information registration function, configure a writable domain controller.

325050

The search user set in the Administrator settings page does not have update authority (write access).

- Check whether the search user is granted write access to the user attribute that you are going to modify.

325067

You are attempting to modify an attribute of a Relative Distinguished Name (RDN) such as cn attribute.

- You are attempting to modify an attribute of a Relative Distinguished Name (RDN) such as cn attribute. The information of such attribute cannot be modified, so specify another attribute.

325xxx

An LDAP server update error.

- An LDAPModify error code is displayed in place of xxx.

331000

User authentication failed.

- Check the user name and password. If the user name and password are correct, contact your system manager.

331001

The user name has not been entered.

- Enter the user name.

331002

Cannot find the user.

- Check the user name and password. If the user name and password are correct, contact your system manager. The user may not exist on the LDAP server, or the search user may not have read access to attribute information of the relevant account.

331003

You are using a card that is not registered on the authentication server.

- Check whether you are using a valid card.

331004

Card information is double registered on the authentication server.

- Contact your system manager.

331005

The validity period of the logged-in user has expired.

- Contact your system manager.

331006

The validity value of the card and that on the authentication server are different from each other.

- Check whether you are using a valid card. If you are using a valid card, contact your system manager.

331007

A validity value outside the range is set on the authentication server.

- Check whether the server is operated with the correct attribute of validity value.

331008

The account of the logged-in user is locked out.

- Contact your system manager.

331009

The user ID of the account you are using to log in to the machine is invalid. Or the Active Directory settings may not be correct.

- Check whether all of the required attributes are set correctly.

- In Active Directory, clear the check box for [Do not require Kerberos preauthentication], which is an account option for the logged-in user account.

331010

To perform authentication for a specific function, you have attempted to log in as a user who is not permitted to use that function.

- Contact your system manager.

331011

Login to perform authentication for a specific function failed.

- Check which functions the logged-in user is able to use.

331012

The PIN of the logged-in user is invalid.

- Enter the PIN again.

331013

The account of the logged-in user is invalid.

- Contact your system manager.

332000

User information updating failed.

- Updating the user information failed. Check whether the user information you used for updating is valid and whether invalid information is not specified for updating.

332001

Already registered card information.

- The card of the logged-in user is already registered. Check whether you are using a valid card. Or contact your system manager.

332002

An invalid attribute was specified for user information updating.

- When card information editing functions are used, it is not permitted to make registration with sAMAccountName or userPrincipalName attribute in the Active Directory settings. One solution is to use other attribute.

332003

An invalid login name was specified for user information updating.

- It is not permitted to register the name of the logged-in user (login name). Check the user name and contact your system manager.

332004

An invalid display name was specified for user information updating.

- It is not permitted to register the display name of the logged-in user. Check the display name attribute value on the server being referred to, and contact your system manager.

332005

An invalid domain name was specified for user information updating.

- It is not permitted to register the domain name for the logged-in user. Check the domain name you have selected and contact your system manager.

332006

An invalid email address was specified for user information updating.

- It is not permitted to register the email address of the logged-in user. Check the email address attribute value on the server being referred to, and contact your system manager.

332007

An invalid role was specified for user information updating.

- Check the attribute value for determining the privileges on the side of the server being referred to, and contact your system manager.

332008

The maximum registerable number of users was exceeded during user information updating.

- Contact your system manager.

Countermeasures for Each Error Code

ERJ8-0LX

When printing or scanning is not completed normally or fax transmission or reception fails, a number starting with "#" (an error code) is displayed on the details screen for job log or a communication management report (**Printing Reports and Lists(P. 782)**). Perform the countermeasure required for the error code.

NOTE

- Some error codes may not be displayed, depending on your machine.

#001 to #800

#001(P. 1157) **#003(P. 1157)** **#005(P. 1157)** **#009(P. 1157)** **#010(P. 1157)**
#011(P. 1157) **#012(P. 1158)** **#018(P. 1158)** **#019(P. 1158)** **#022(P. 1158)**
#025(P. 1159) **#033(P. 1159)** **#034(P. 1159)** **#035(P. 1159)** **#037(P. 1159)**
#040(P. 1160) **#054(P. 1160)** **#080(P. 1160)** **#081(P. 1160)** **#082(P. 1160)**
#083(P. 1160) **#084(P. 1161)** **#099(P. 1161)** **#102(P. 1161)** **#107(P. 1161)**
#401(P. 1161) **#402(P. 1161)** **#403(P. 1161)** **#404(P. 1162)** **#406(P. 1162)**
#407(P. 1162) **#409(P. 1162)** **#410(P. 1162)** **#411(P. 1162)** **#701(P. 1163)**
#702(P. 1163) **#703(P. 1163)** **#704(P. 1163)** **#705(P. 1163)** **#706(P. 1164)**
#711(P. 1164) **#712(P. 1164)** **#713(P. 1164)** **#715(P. 1164)** **#716(P. 1164)**
#749(P. 1164) **#751(P. 1165)** **#752(P. 1165)** **#753(P. 1165)** **#755(P. 1165)**
#759(P. 1166) **#761(P. 1166)** **#762(P. 1166)** **#766(P. 1166)** **#769(P. 1166)**
#770(P. 1167) **#771(P. 1167)** **#772(P. 1167)** **#773(P. 1167)**

#801 to #999

#801(P. 1168) **#802(P. 1168)** **#803(P. 1168)** **#804(P. 1169)** **#805(P. 1169)**
#806(P. 1169) **#807(P. 1169)** **#809(P. 1169)** **#810(P. 1169)** **#813(P. 1170)**
#815(P. 1170) **#816(P. 1170)** **#818(P. 1170)** **#819(P. 1170)** **#820(P. 1170)**
#821(P. 1170) **#822(P. 1171)** **#825(P. 1171)** **#827(P. 1171)** **#828(P. 1171)**
#829(P. 1171) **#830(P. 1171)** **#831(P. 1171)** **#832(P. 1172)** **#833(P. 1172)**
#834(P. 1172) **#835(P. 1172)** **#837(P. 1172)** **#838(P. 1173)** **#839(P. 1173)**
#841(P. 1173) **#842(P. 1173)** **#843(P. 1173)** **#844(P. 1173)** **#845(P. 1174)**
#846(P. 1174) **#847(P. 1174)** **#848(P. 1174)** **#851(P. 1175)** **#852(P. 1175)**
#853(P. 1175) **#856(P. 1175)** **#857(P. 1175)** **#858(P. 1175)** **#859(P. 1175)**
#860(P. 1175) **#861(P. 1175)** **#862(P. 1176)** **#863(P. 1176)** **#864(P. 1176)**
#865(P. 1176) **#866(P. 1176)** **#868(P. 1176)** **#869(P. 1177)** **#870(P. 1177)**
#871(P. 1177) **#872(P. 1177)** **#873(P. 1177)** **#874(P. 1177)** **#875(P. 1178)**
#876(P. 1178) **#877(P. 1178)** **#878(P. 1178)** **#879(P. 1178)** **#880(P. 1178)**

#881(P. 1178) #882(P. 1179) #883(P. 1179) #884(P. 1179) #885(P. 1179)
#886(P. 1179) #889(P. 1179) #899(P. 1179) #904(P. 1180) #905(P. 1180)
#919(P. 1180) #923(P. 1180) #925(P. 1180) #927(P. 1180) #928(P. 1180)
#929(P. 1181) #934(P. 1181) #939(P. 1181) #941(P. 1181) #995(P. 1181)

■#001

A paper jam occurred.

- After removing the paper jam, check the documents and the settings, and then scan again.

■#003

Communication that exceeds the specified time (64 minutes) causes an error.

- Lower the resolution and try sending again.
  Basic Operations for Sending Faxes(P. 347)
- When receiving a document, ask the other party to lower the resolution when scanning or divide the document into multiple parts.

■#005

There was no response from the other party for 35 seconds.

- Check that the other party can communicate, and try sending again.

The device of the other party is not a model that supports G3.

- Check the device of the other party.

■#009

Paper has run out.

- Load paper.
  Loading Paper(P. 40)

The paper drawer is not inserted correctly.

- Insert the paper drawer in all the way.
  Basic Paper Loading Method(P. 41)

■#010

Paper has run out.

- Load paper.
  Loading Paper(P. 40)

■#011

The document to send was not placed correctly.

- Place the original correctly and try sending again from the start of the procedure.

■#012

Could not send because the device of the other party does not have any paper.

- Tell the other party to load paper.

■#018

There was no response when redialing.

- Check that the other party can communicate, and redial again.

Could not send because the other party was making a call, etc.

- Check that the other party can communicate, and try sending again.

Could not send because the settings of the device of the other party do not match.

- Check the settings of the other party, and try sending again.

■#019

When sending a fax from a remote fax client machine, sending could not be performed because the memory of the remote fax server machine became full.

- Try sending again after the other sending to the remote fax server machine is complete.
- Delete unnecessary documents and error documents from the remote fax server machine to free up space.

The document could not be sent because the memory of the machine is full.

- Delete unnecessary documents and documents with errors to make more memory available.

When performing memory sending, the image could not be stored in the memory.

- Perform memory sending again.
- Send the document with direct sending.

There was a problem with the scanned image when performing direct sending.

- Perform direct sending again.

■#022

Forwarding could not be performed because the content of the group destination specified as the forwarding destination was deleted or only included a Mail Box.

- Specify another destination, and try sending again.

When sending to a destination registered in the address book, sending could not be performed because the destination was deleted from the address book while the machine was waiting to send.

- Specify another destination, and try sending again.

Sending from the fax driver is not allowed.

- Set <Allow Fax Driver TX> to <On>, and try sending again. **Restricting the Fax Sending Functions(P. 677)**

■#025

When sending a fax from a remote fax client machine, a line that does not exist in the remote fax server machine was specified.

- Check the number of lines in the server machine, and try sending again after matching the remote fax transmission settings of the client machine with the number of lines on the server machine.

■#033

The device of the other party does not support confidential communication or subaddresses.

- Send without using confidential communication or subaddresses.

■#034

The confidential storage location in the device of the other party specified for confidential communication was not found.

- Check the confidential storage location in the device of the other party, and try sending again.

The memory was insufficient in the device of the other party.

- Ask the other party to free up some space.

■#035

The device of the other party does not support the forwarding function or subaddresses.

- Directly send to the other party.

■#037

The document could not be copied or received because there was insufficient memory available.

- Organize documents in the Memory RX Inbox to make more memory available.
  Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
- If you are copying a document with more than 100 pages in one operation, divide the document into two or more parts and then copy.

Data containing more than 1,000 pages was received.

- The machine deletes any pages after the 999th page, and prints or stores the remaining 999 pages. Tell the other party to send the 1,000th and subsequent pages again.

When performing delayed sending or redial sending, the image data of the document to send was not found in memory.

- Scan the original again, and try sending again.
- Select direct sending when sending again.

Could not send to multiple destinations because the machine had insufficient free memory.

- Delete unnecessary documents and error documents to free up space.
- Divide the document into two or more parts, and then try sending the document again.
- Lower the resolution and try sending again.

■#040

When sending a fax from a remote fax client machine, sending could not be performed because the memory of the remote fax server machine was insufficient.

- Delete unnecessary documents and error documents from the remote fax server machine to free up space.
- Divide the document into two or more parts, and then try sending the document again.
- Lower the resolution and try sending again.

The document could not be sent because the memory of the machine is full.

- Delete unnecessary documents and documents with errors to make more memory available.
- Divide the sending operation into multiple batches instead of sending the document to all destinations at once.
- Lower the resolution, and then send the document again.

■#054

The sending process was canceled because the unit telephone number and unit name were not registered.

- Try sending again after registering the unit telephone number and unit name.
  <Register Unit Telephone Number>(P. 975)
  <Register Unit Name>(P. 956)

■#080

A subaddress is not set in the device of the other party.

- Check the subaddress of the other party, and try sending again.

■#081

A password is not set in the device of the other party.

- Check the password of the other party, and try sending again.

■#082

Polling transmission is not configured in the device of the other party.

- Tell the other party to configure polling transmission, and perform polling reception again.

■#083

The subaddress and password of the machine and the device of the other party did not match when performing polling reception.

- Check that the subaddress and password of the machine and the device of the other party match, and try sending again.

■#084

Cannot perform polling reception because the password is not supported by the device of the other party.

- Perform polling reception without using a password.

■#099

The operation was canceled before it was complete.

- Perform the operation again.

■#102

The subaddress and password do not match.

- Check the subaddress and password of the other party, and try sending again.

There was insufficient memory in the recipient's machine.

- Ask the recipient to make more memory available.

■#107

The document could not be sent because there was insufficient memory available.

- Lower the resolution or divide the document into two or more parts, and then try sending the document again.
- Delete unnecessary files to make more memory available.
  Saving Received Documents in the Machine (Memory Reception)(P. 386)
- If this problem occurs frequently, contact your dealer or service representative.

■#401

The memory media or file server is full, or the number of files that can be saved in the root directory (the top level folder inside the memory media) has been exceeded.

- Delete unnecessary files from the memory media or file server, or create a new folder and move existing files to that folder to create room in the root directory.

■#402

The image transfer failed when transferring to the memory media bacause an invalid character (such as \) was included in the specified filename.

- Change the filename to the correct filename.

■#403

The file could not be saved because a file with the same name already exists. Normally, automatic renaming is performed to append a number between 1 and 999 to the filename when a file with the same name exists, but the file could not be saved because files with the numbers 1 to 999 appended to them already exist.

- Change the filename and save the file again.

■#404

Writing failed because the write protect switch of the memory media was enabled.

- Disable the write protect switch of the memory media.

■#406

Writing failed due to one of the following possible causes:

- **Memory media was removed while the file was being written to it.**
- **The Advanced Space of another machine on the network was deleted while the file was being written to it.**

- Check that the memory media is inserted or that the Advanced Space of another machine on the network is available, and read the file again.

The image transfer failed when transferring to the memory media because an unspecified error occurred. (The connected memory media may be formatted with an unsupported file system.)

- Check the status of the memory media and confirm that it is formatted with a file system supported by the machine (FAT32/exFAT). Then, try performing the procedure again.

The size of the file exceeded the upper limit.

- Lower the resolution or reduce the number of pages, and perform the operation again.

■#407

The length of the full path to the specified file (or folder) exceeds the maximum supported length.

- Change the filename so that the length of the full path is within 256 characters, or change the destination folder.

■#409

The file could not be saved because the maximum number of files that can be saved in the destination has been reached.

- Change the destination to save the file.

■#410

Storing cannot be performed because there are too many jobs waiting to be stored.

- Perform the operation again when the other jobs are complete.

■#411

The file are already locked by the other operations.

- Wait a while, and perform the operation again.

■#701

The Department ID does not exist, or the PIN was changed.

- If you are using User Authentication, assign Department IDs to users. If you are using DepartmentID Authentication, enter the new Department ID and PIN to log in again.

The reception setting in <Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs> or <Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs> is set to <Off>.

- Set <Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs> and <Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs> in <Department ID Management> to <On>.
  Setting the Department ID Management(P. 630)

Sending could not be performed because the remote fax client machine failed authentication to the remote fax server machine.

- If Department ID Management is set in the remote fax server machine, log in to the remote fax client machine using the Department ID and PIN set in the remote fax server machine.

■#702

Sending could not be performed because the memory was full.

- Wait a while. Try sending again after the other sending is complete.

■#703

An error occurred while converting the image.

- Lower the resolution, and then send the document again.

Could not write because the image area of the memory is full.

- Try sending again after the other sending is complete.
- Delete unnecessary files in the Fax/I-Fax Inbox. If there is still a problem, restart the machine.
  Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

■#704

An unknown error occurred when retrieving destination information from the address book.

- Check the destination settings. If there is still a problem, restart the machine.
  Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

■#705

Sending was canceled because the image data size exceeded the maximum value set in Settings/ Registration.

- Adjust the maximum data size for sending. Select a lower resolution or reduce the number of images sent at once when using the I-fax function to ensure that the maximum data size for sending is not exceeded. Divide the data, depending on the conditions of the other party.
  <Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)

■#706

An address book was being imported/exported from the Remote UI or another sending component was in use.

- Try sending again after the other operation is complete.

■#711

The memory is full. You may be able to send if you delete unnecessary files in memory.

- Try sending again after deleting unnecessary files in memory.

■#712

The memory is full. Try executing again after deleting unnecessary files in memory.

- Try sending again after deleting unnecessary files in memory.

■#713

The document in Fax/I-Fax Inbox was deleted before sending the URL.

- Try sending again after saving the required document in the Fax/I-Fax Inbox.

■#715

The certificate to use was not found when sending an e-mail with a digital signature attached.

- When using a device signature, set the e-mail address of the machine (**Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)**), and then generate a certificate for device signatures (**Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)**). If a certificate for device signatures has already been generated, generate it again.
- Check whether an expired certificate or revoked certificate is being used. In addition, check whether the certificate chain is invalid.

■#716

The destination public key certificate could not be found.

- Register the destination public key certificate in the machine.
  Registering an S/MIME Certificate(P. 707)
- Check whether an expired certificate or revoked certificate is being used. In addition, check whether the certificate chain is invalid.

■#749

The operation could not be performed because a service call message is displayed.

- Turn the main power OFF, and turn the main power ON again. If the operation still cannot be performed correctly, turn the main power switch OFF, remove the power plug from the outlet, and contact your dealer or service representative.
  Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)
  Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

■#751

The server is not running or the network is disconnected (either you could not connect to the destination, or the connection was lost before the job could be completed).

- Check whether the server is operating normally.
- Check the status of the network.
- If the destination is using IIS 6.0 with Windows Server 2003 and digest authentication is used as the authentication method of the WebDAV server, set <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX> to <On> to send with WebDAV via a proxy using TLS communication.
  <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)

The IP address is not set.

- Check <TCP/IP Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <TCP/IP Settings>(P. 835)

Could not send to an SMB server (including the Advanced Space of another imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine disclosed with SMB) because a file server is being browsed using Windows (SMB).

- If an error occurs with delayed sending, close the <Browse> screen, and scan and send the document again.
- If an error occurs when forwarding a received fax/I-fax file to an SMB server, scan a printed copy of the received file, and send it to the forwarding destination.
  Basic Operations for Scanning Originals(P. 456)
- You can avoid errors by using FTP as the protocol for sending to servers.

■#752

The server is not running or the network is disconnected.

- Check whether the SMTP server is operating normally.
- Check the status of the network.

The SMTP server name setting for e-mail/I-fax is incorrect or the e-mail address or domain name is not set.

- Check the SMTP server name, e-mail address, and domain name settings in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

■#753

A TCP/IP error (Socket or Select error, etc.) occurred when sending e-mail or when sending a fax from a remote fax client machine.

- Check the status of the network cable and connector. If there is still a problem, restart the machine.
  Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)

■#755

Could not send a fax from a remote fax client machine because TCP/IP is not operating correctly.

- Check <TCP/IP Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <TCP/IP Settings>(P. 835)

The IP address is not set.

- Check <TCP/IP Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <TCP/IP Settings>(P. 835)

- if <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off> in <Select Interface>, also check <Sub Line Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <Sub Line Settings>(P. 869)

When the machine was turned ON, an IP address was not assigned to the machine by DHCP or Auto IP.

- Check <TCP/IP Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <TCP/IP Settings>(P. 835)
- if <Sub Line> is set to a setting other than <Off> in <Select Interface>, also check <Sub Line Settings> in <Preferences>.
  <Sub Line Settings>(P. 869)

■#759

An error occurred when sending the URL of the Mail Box in which a file was saved.

- Contact your administrator.

■#761

When sending a PDF/XPS file with a digital signature, the file could not be sent because the certificate or key pair set in the machine was corrupt or could not be accessed.

- When sending a PDF/XPS file with a device signature, check whether the device certificate is corrupt. If the device certificate is corrupt, generate it again.
  Generating a Device Signature Certificate(P. 684)

■#762

Could not send to a domain not registered as an allowed domain because <Restrict Destination Domain> is set to <On>.

- Set <Restrict Destination Domain> to <Off> or register the domain as an allowed domain, and try sending again.
  Restricting the Domain of Send Destination(P. 676)

■#766

The certificate to use when sending a PDF/XPS file with a digital signature has expired.

- Update the certificate or use a certificate that has not expired.
- If the certificate has not expired, set the time of the machine correctly.
  Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)

■#769

The number of trials allowed for the send function reached the upper limit.

- If you want to continue using this function, purchase the official optional product.

■#770

When sending with WebDAV, sending could not be performed because TLS communication was not supported on the WebDAV server side or proxy server side.

- Check the WebDAV server settings.
- Check the proxy server if you are sending via a proxy.

Sending could not be performed because a validation error occurred when validating the TLS server certificate when sending with WebDAV because <Confirm TLS Certificate for WebDAV TX> is set to <On>.

- Check whether the CA certificate used to sign the TLS server certificate on the WebDAV server side is registered in the machine.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate on the WebDAV server side is correct.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate is a self-signed certificate.

The operation could not be completed because a validation error occurred when validating the TLS server certificate when accessing another server because <Confirm TLS Certificate for Network Access> is set to <On>.

- Check whether the CA certificate used to sign the TLS server certificate of the Advanced Space of the other imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine disclosed as a WebDAV server is registered in the machine.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate of the Advanced Space of the other imageRUNNER ADVANCE series machine disclosed as a WebDAV server is correct.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate is a self-signed certificate.

■#771

The remote fax server address setting is incorrect.

- Check <Remote Fax TX Settings>.

The remote fax server is not running.

- Check whether the remote fax server is operating normally.

The network is disconnected.

- Check the status of the network.

Could not connect to the remote fax server because the DNS server could not be connected to.

- Check the DNS server name setting.
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
- Check whether the DNS server is operating normally.

■#772

The network is disconnected.

- Check the status of the network.

■#773

PDF functions that are not available when <Format PDF to PDF/A> is set to <On > are selected.

- Cancel the Encrypt, and Visible Signatures settings. Alternatively, set <Format PDF to PDF/A> to <Off>.
  <Format PDF to PDF/A>(P. 917)

■#801

A timeout error occurred due to a problem on the mail server side when communicating with the SMTP server to send an e-mail or send or receive an I-fax.

- Check whether the SMTP server is operating normally.
- Check the status of the network.

An error was returned from the SMTP server when connecting with SMTP. The address setting is incorrect. An error occurred due to a problem on the server side when sending to a file server.

- Check whether SMTP is operating normally, the status of the network, the destination settings, and the status and settings of the file server.

The user name and password required when sending e-mail have not been set.

- Check <SMTP Authentication (SMTP AUTH)> in <Authent./Encryption>.
  Setting SMTP authentication(P. 199)

You sent to a destination that does not have write privileges.

- Check the destination settings.

A file with the same name existed when sending to a file server that does not allow files to be overwritten.

- Change the settings of the file server to enable files to be overwritten. Alternatively, contact the server administrator.
- Change the filename.

The folder name or password specified when sending to a file server was incorrect.

- Check the folder name or password.

■#802

The SMTP server name specified in <Communication Settings> is incorrect.

- Check the SMTP server name set in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

The DNS server address specified in <DNS Settings> is incorrect.

- Check the DNS server address specified in the DNS settings.
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)

Connection to the DNS server failed.

- Check that the DNS server is functioning normally.

The settings for the FTP/SFTP server specified as the destination are incorrect.

- Check the FTP/SFTP server specified as the destination.

Connection to the FTP/SFTP server failed.

- Check that the FTP/SFTP server is functioning normally.

■#803

The connection was interrupted due to reasons on the recipient's side before all of the pages could be sent.

- Re-enter the group destination, and try sending again.

■#804

When sending to a file server, no folders matched the specified path.

- Check the destination.

You do not have access privileges for the folder or file. Alternatively, the folder or file may have been deleted by another operation.

- Allow access to the folder on the server side. Alternatively, contact the server administrator.

■#805

Could not send to the SMB server because there was insufficient free space on the server side.

- Delete unnecessary documents and error documents from the server to free up space. Alternatively, contact the server administrator.

■#806

The user name or password specified when sending to a file server was incorrect.

- Check the user name or password.

The destination specified when sending an e-mail/I-fax was incorrect.

- Check the e-mail/I-fax destination.

■#807

You do not have access privileges for the specified directory.

- Set access privileges for the server directory or send to a directory that you have access privileges for. Alternatively, contact your administrator.

■#809

When sending to an FTP/SFTP/SMB server, a file with the same name already exists and overwriting of files is not allowed.

- Change the filename and try sending again.
- Change the settings of the FTP/SFTP/SMB server to enable files to be overwritten. Alternatively, contact the server administrator.

When sending to an FTP/SFTP/SMB server, the response on the server side was slow, causing a wait time timeout on the machine side before the data could be sent or forwarding could be completed.

- Set a longer timeout time in <Timeout> on the SMB client.
  Making SMB Settings(P. 176)

■#810

A POP server connection error occurred when an I-fax was received.

- Check the POP server settings in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Check whether the POP server is operating correctly. Check the status of the network.

An error was returned from the POP server when connecting to the POP server. Alternatively, a timeout error occurred on the server side.

- Check the POP server settings in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Check whether the POP server is operating correctly. Check the status of the network.

■#813

A POP server authentication error (user account error or password error) occurred when an I-fax was received.

- Check the POP server settings in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

■#815

You cannot log on to the file server because the machine is printing a document sent to that server. Simultaneous connections are not possible.

- Wait for a few moments before trying to send the data again. Alternatively, stop the PServer.

■#816

Printing could not be performed because the maximum number of prints set in Department ID Management was exceeded.

- Contact your System Manager.

■#818

The received data was in a file format that cannot be printed.

- Tell the other party to change the file format and send again.

■#819

Data that cannot be handled was received. The MIME information is invalid.

- Tell the other party to check the settings and send again.

■#820

Data that cannot be handled was received. The BASE64 or uuencode is invalid.

- Tell the other party to check the settings and send again.

■#821

Data that cannot be handled was received. A TIFF analysis error occurred.

- Tell the other party to check the settings and send again.

■#822

Data that cannot be handled was received. The image cannot be decoded.

- Tell the other party to check the settings and send again.

■#825

The Department ID and PIN of a job being executed or a reserved job were deleted, or the PIN was changed.

- Execute the job again using the changed Department ID and PIN.

■#827

Data that cannot be handled was received. Unsupported MIME information was included.

- Tell the other party to check the settings and send again.

■#828

HTML data was received.

- Tell the other party to change to a format other than HTML and send again.

■#829

Data containing more than 1,000 pages was received.

- The machine deletes any pages after the 999th page, and prints or stores the remaining 999 pages. Tell the other party to send the 1,000th and subsequent pages again.

■#830

A DSN error notification was received because the I-fax address or destination conditions were incorrect.

- Check the specified I-fax address and the destination conditions.

A DSN error notification was received because the size of the file that was sent exceeded the size allowed by the mail server.

- Change the setting in <Maximum Data Size for Sending> so that the size of the file to send does not exceed the size allowed by the mail server.
  <Maximum Data Size for Sending>(P. 960)
- Check the status of the mail server, DNS server, and network.

■#831

An I-fax document could not be received using SMTP because of the Receive Filter setting in Firewall Settings.

- Reset the Receive Filter setting in Firewall Settings.
  Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)

■#832

Could not send DSN mail because e-mail settings and network settings were not specified in <Communication Settings>.

- Check <Communication Settings>, <DNS Settings>, and <IP Address Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

DSN mail could not be sent due to a problem with the mail server or DNS server.

- Check the status of the mail server and DNS server.

■#833

MDN (Message Disposition Notification) mail could not be sent because the TCP/IP settings were not specified.

- Check <Communication Settings>, <DNS Settings>, and <IP Address Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
  Setting an IP Address(P. 160)

MDN (Message Disposition Notification) mail could not be sent due to a problem with the mail server or DNS server.

- Check the status of the mail server and DNS server.

■#834

An MDN error notification was received because the I-fax address or destination conditions were incorrect.

- Check the specified I-fax address and the destination conditions.

An MDN error notification was received because a problem occurred in the mail server or network.

- Check the status of the mail server and network.

An MDN error notification was received because a problem such as a full memory occurred at the other party.

- Check the conditions and status of the other party.

■#835

The maximum number of text lines that can be received with I-fax was exceeded.

- Tell the other party to reduce the number of text lines in the message body and send again.

■#837

A connection request was received from a host whose connection is restricted by the Receive Filter settings in Firewall Settings.

- Check the Receive Filter settings in Firewall Settings. This may also represent a hacking attempt via unauthorized access.
  Specifying IP Addresses in Firewall Settings(P. 646)

■#838

The license required to use the send function has expired.

- Purchase a license for the send function.

■#839

The user name or password set in <Communication Settings> is incorrect.

- Check the user name and password settings for SMTP authentication (SMTP AUTH) in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

■#841

An encryption algorithm shared with the mail server does not exist for e-mail and I-fax transmission.

- Set <Allow TLS (POP)> or <Allow TLS (SMTP TX)> in <Communication Settings> to <Off>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Add a common encryption algorithm to the mail server settings.

■#842

The mail server requested authentication using a client certificate for e-mail and I-fax transmission.

- Set <Allow TLS (POP)> or <Allow TLS (SMTP TX)> in <Communication Settings> to <Off>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Change mail server settings so that a client certificate is not requested.

Sending could not be performed because a validation error occurred when validating the TLS server certificate when sending with SMTP because <Confirm TLS Certificate for SMTP TX> is set to <On>.

- Use the Remote UI to check whether the CA certificate used to sign the TLS server certificate on the SMTP server side is registered in the machine.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate on the SMTP server side is correct.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate is a self-signed certificate.

■#843

There is a great difference between the time of the KDC (Key Distribution Center) server and the time set in the machine.

- Adjust the current date and time in <Date/Time Settings>.
  Setting the Date/Time(P. 144)
- Adjust the current time set in the KDC (Key Distribution Center) server.

■#844

Failed to perform TLS encrypted communication with the POP server when sending with POP before SMTP.

- Check the TLS encrypted communication settings of the POP server.

- Set <Allow TLS (POP)> to <Off> in <Communication Settings>. If the problem is not resolved, set <POP Authentication Before Sending> to <Off> in <Communication Settings>, and switch to a setting other than POP before SMTP.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

Sending could not be performed because a validation error occurred when validating the TLS server certificate when communicating with the POP server because <Confirm TLS Certificate for POP RX> is set to <On>.

- Use the Remote UI to check whether the CA certificate used to sign the TLS server certificate on the POP server side is registered in the machine.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate on the POP server side is correct.
- Check whether the TLS server certificate is a self-signed certificate.

■#845

Failed to perform POP authentication (POP AUTH) when sending with POP before SMTP.

- Check the settings in <POP Server>, <POP Login Name>, and <POP Password> in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Check the POP authentication settings of the POP server.
- Select <Standard> or <APOP> in <POP Authentication Method> in <Communication Settings>. If the problem is not resolved, set <POP Authentication Before Sending> to <Off> in <Communication Settings>, and switch the communication settings to something other than POP before SMTP.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

■#846

Failed to perform POP authentication (APOP) when sending with POP before SMTP.

- Check the settings in <POP Server>, <POP Login Name>, and <POP Password> in <Communication Settings>.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)
- Check the APOP settings of the POP server.
- Select <Standard> or <POP AUTH> in <POP Authentication Method> in <Communication Settings>. If the problem is not resolved, set <POP Authentication Before Sending> to <Off> in <Communication Settings>, and switch the communication settings to something other than POP before SMTP.
  Setting E-mail/I-Fax Communication(P. 197)

■#847

Could not save the received file in a Confidential Fax Inbox because the memory of the Mail Box or Fax/I-Fax Inbox was full.

- Delete unnecessary files in the Confidential Fax Inbox or Memory RX Inbox.
  Printing Documents in the Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
  Keeping Received Documents Private(P. 389)

■#848

An error occurred when combining an e-mail that was divided and sent.

- The divided data may have been deleted. If you delete divided data, it cannot be combined to form a completed document, even if the remaining data is received later. Ask the sender to send the data again.

■#851

The printer job could not be stored because the memory is full.

- Check the amount of available memory, and execute the job again.

■#852

The power was turned OFF while the job was being executed.

- Check that the power cable and plug are securely connected, and execute the job again.

■#853

The memory is full.

- Reduce the number of pages or check that the number of jobs waiting to be processed has decreased, and execute the job again.

■#856

The executed operation was canceled because the storage area used for temporarily saving data is full.

- Contact your administrator.

■#857

Printing was canceled due to the job being canceled while being received, or due to timeout.

- If timeout has occurred, check the status of the network.

■#858

The data is invalid.

- Check that the print protocol is supported by the machine, as well as the print settings.

■#859

A compression error occurred with the image data.

- Check the original and the settings, and then try scanning again.

■#860

Recovery failed after a paper jam, or an incompatible page description language or settings which cannot be combined were included.

- Check the paper or job settings.

■#861

An error occurred while processing the print data or image data.

- Check the image size and paper size, as well as the color specification settings.

■#862

Settings are included which are not supported, cannot be combined, or otherwise exceed the limits of the machine.

- Check the job settings.

■#863

The job was canceled because initialization operations were performed while the print data was being processed.

- Execute the job again.

■#864

Could not correctly recognize the external controller, or an error occurred while forwarding print data.

- Check the controller and the print data.

■#865

The required functions for printing are currently restricted.

- Check the machine and the job settings.

■#866

The job was canceled by the security related settings.

- If you are executing a job from the printer driver, use the user information of the appropriate privileges.
- If you are executing a job from the control panel, login as a user with the appropriate privileges.

NOTE

The security related settings are as follows.

- <Restrict Job from Remote Device w/out User Authent.> is <On>
- <Prohibit Authentication Using Department ID and PIN> is <On>
- <Use ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM> is <On>
  - <Print from Drivers without AMS Printer Driver Add-in> is <Restrict>
  - The print function is restricted by the user role settings*

*For information on the user roll settings, see the ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM Administrator Guide.

■#868

When sending with WebDAV, communication with the destination failed, and access via a proxy was requested (received HTTP Error 305: Use Proxy).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

- Check the proxy settings.
  Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

■#869

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that authentication failed was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 401: Unauthorized).

- Check the user name or password.
- Check the WebDAV server security settings.

■#870

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the request was rejected was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 403: Forbidden).

- Try sending again after waiting a while.
- Check the destination settings.
- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#871

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the specified folder was not found was received from the destination (HTTP Error 404: Not Found/409: Conflict/410: Gone).

- Check the destination settings.

■#872

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that access is not allowed was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 405: Method Not Allowed).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#873

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that proxy authentication failed was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 407: Proxy Authentication Required).

- Check the proxy settings.
  Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

■#874

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that a timeout occurred was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 408: Request Timeout).

- Try sending again after waiting a while.
- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#875

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that chunk transmission was refused was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 411: Length Required).

- Set <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX> to <Off>.
  <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)
- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#876

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the size of the data was too large was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 413: Request Entity Too Large).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#877

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the URI (host name and path to folder) was too long was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 414: Request-URI Too Long).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#878

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that an unexpected situation preventing the request from being executed occurred on the server side was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 500: Internal Server Error).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#879

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the server does not support the necessary functions to execute the request was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 501: Not Implemented).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.
- When sending via a proxy with non-TLS communication, set <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX> to <Off>.
  <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)

■#880

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that communication with an upstream server failed was received from the proxy server (received HTTP Error 502: Bad Gateway).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.
- Check the proxy server settings.

■#881

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that requests currently cannot be handled was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 503: Service Unavailable).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#882

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that communication with an upstream server failed was received from the proxy server (received HTTP Error 504: Gateway Timeout).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.
- Check the proxy server settings.

■#883

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the server does not support the necessary functions to execute the request was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 505: HTTP Version Not Supported).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#884

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that disk space required for the request could not be secured on the server side was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 507: Insufficient Storage).

- Check the WebDAV server settings.

■#885

When sending with WebDAV, an unexpected error response was received from the server.

- Check the WebDAV server settings.
- Check the proxy server settings.

■#886

When sending with WebDAV, a response indicating that the request was invalid was received from the destination (received HTTP Error 400: Bad Request).

- When sending via a proxy with non-TLS communication, set <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX> to <Off>.
  <Use Divided Chunk Send for WebDAV TX>(P. 950)

■#889

The original could not be scanned or printed because it was embedded with job restriction information.

- Check the job restriction information or contact your administrator.

■#899

E-mail or I-fax transmission completed normally. However, the transmission may not have been received by the other party because it is relayed by multiple servers.

- Ask whether the other party received the transmission, as necessary.

The fax was sent normally from the remote fax client. However, reception may be incomplete because the transmission was relayed via a remote fax server.

- Check whether the fax was sent in the transmission results of the remote fax server.
- Check the status of the server and network.
- Ask the recipient to check that the document was received properly.

■#904

Destinations registered in <Favorite Settings> are not updated when the Address Book is retrieved using device information delivery from an iR/imagePRESS series machine connected to the network.

- Register <Favorite Settings> again from the touch panel display of the machine.

■#905

The job could not be executed because a network error occurred.

- Check the path length and access privileges of the server, and whether the file or folder is in use.

■#919

A syntax error or a PostScript error that exceeds device restrictions, etc. was detected.

- Set <Print PS Errors> (Settings/Register) to <On>, submit the job again, confirm the contents of the PostScript error, then execute the job after resolving the error. For more details, see "Setting the Machine (PS/PCL/UFR II Printer)" via the online manual site.

■#923

Could not print on the specified side of the cover, or body.

- Change to a paper type that is compatible with two-sided printing, and execute the job again.

■#925

A transmission error occurred from the fax driver.

- An image size that cannot be sent was specified. Check the size of the image.

■#927

A transmission error occurred from the fax driver.

- Font that cannot be processed is included in the data received by the machine from a computer. Check the received data.

■#928

A transmission error occurred from the fax driver.

- The memory is full, or the data size has exceeded the size that can be processed at one time. Delete unnecessary data or check the data size.

■#929

A transmission error occurred from the fax driver.

- A network error occurred when the machine was receiving data from a computer. Check the network connections and settings.

■#934

An error occurred for a print job, and the job was deleted because the specified time period elapsed.

- Resolve the error and execute the job again.
- You can also change the time period before deletion or disable automatic deletion from <Auto Delete Suspended Jobs> (Settings/Register).
<Auto Delete Suspended Jobs>(P. 908)

■#939

Printing was canceled due to an error that occurred while processing the image data.

- Execute the job again.

■#941

The job was canceled because the paper type was not specified.

- Specify the paper type or configure the type of paper loaded in the paper source, and execute the job again.

■#995

Reserved communication jobs were cleared.

- Perform the operation again, as necessary.

When a Problem Cannot Be Solved

ERJ8-0LY

If you cannot solve a problem by referring to the information in this chapter, contact your dealer or service representative or the Canon help line.

IMPORTANT

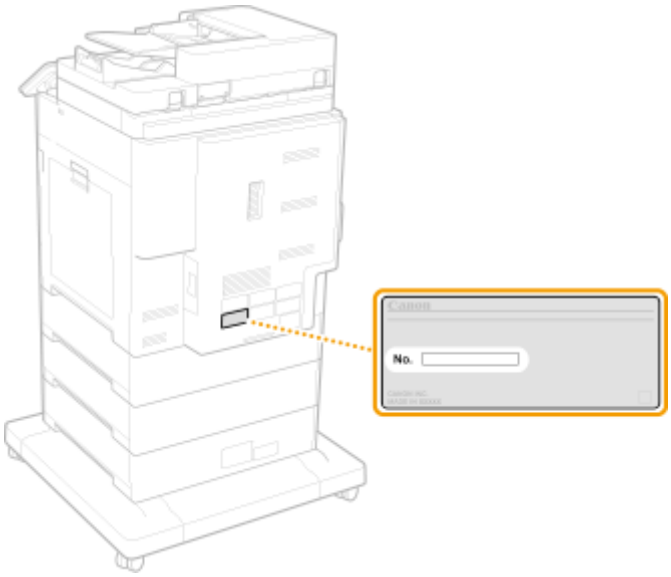
Do not disassemble or repair the machine yourself

- If you disassemble or repair the machine yourself, it may not be covered by warranty.

■When Contacting Canon

When contacting us, have the following information ready:

- Product name (MF851Cdw)
- Dealer where you purchased the machine
- Details about your problem (such as what you did, what happened as a result, and displayed messages)
- Serial number (found on the label on the back side of the machine)



NOTE

Checking the serial number from the control panel

- You can also check the serial number by pressing the [Counter/Device Information] key.

Implementing Security Measures

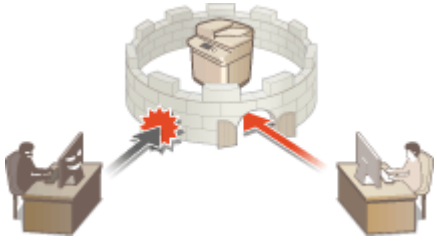
Implementing Security Measures 1184
Various Security Functions 1185

Implementing Security Measures

ERJ8-0R0

Saving important data to the machine and sharing information via the machine enable the machine to be used more effectively. It also raises the value the machine provides as an information asset.

The machine provides various functions for enhancing security, such as preventing information leaks, preventing unauthorized access, and protecting confidential information.
Using these security functions together enables you to use the machine securely.



Various Security Functions(P. 1185)

Various Security Functions

ERJ8-0R1

Do you feel uneasy about the following problems?

- Unattended output
- Unauthorized access
- Faxes sent to the wrong destination
- Forgetting to erase confidential data on the machine

The machine provides various security functions for minimize the risk of information leakage and unauthorized access. This section describes functions that are effective in certain situations.

Preventing Documents Leaks and Modification(P. 1185)
Preventing Unauthorized Access to the Network(P. 1186)
Preventing Trouble Caused by Erroneous Sending(P. 1186)
Preventing Leaks of Confidential Information during Operation of the Machine(P. 1188)

IMPORTANT

- Implementing security measures does not guarantee that all information will be protected.

NOTE

- Using the Import All function enables multiple devices to be managed with the same settings. **Importing/Exporting the Setting Data(P. 729)**

Preventing Documents Leaks and Modification



When managing confidential documents, it is necessary to handle problems such as leaks, loss, and modification. The machine is equipped with security functions designed to prevent paper and electronic documents from leakage and tampering, such as embedding invisible text in output, not starting printing until the user logs in at the device, and attaching a signature to PDF documents.
Use the following functions as security measures for preventing document leaks and modification, etc.

Forced Hold

To avoid leaving printed material, accidental information leakage, misprinting, etc., the administrator can set to store the document before printing. **Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)**

Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs

By using Encrypted Secure Printing, you can send encrypted printing data to a machine from your computer. This enables you to reduce the risk of information leaks when sending printed data, and to print more safely. **Allowing Only Encrypted Secure Print(P. 681)**

Digital Signature

You can increase the reliability of documents created on the machine by adding digital signatures to scanned documents. The digital signature is added using a key and certificate mechanism, which enables you to identify the device that created the document, while ensuring that the data has not been altered. **Adding a Digital Signature to Sent Files(P. 683)**

Encrypted PDF

Setting a password when scanning an original enables PDF files to be encrypted for sending/saving. This helps reduce the risk of the files being viewed or edited by others. **Performing Encryption(P. 502)**

Preventing Unauthorized Access to the Network



Although Cloud services have made it easier to exchange data via the Internet, communication can still be intercepted or modified by malicious third parties due to network vulnerabilities. The machine provides various measures for increasing network security, such as only allowing communication with specific IP addresses and encrypting data for communication.
Use the following functions as security measures for preventing unauthorized network access, etc.

Firewall Settings

Unauthorized access by third parties, as well as network attacks and breaches, can be blocked by only allowing communication with devices that have a specific IP address. **Restricting Communication by Using Firewalls(P. 645)**

Proxy Settings

You can provide greater security by using a proxy server for connections outside the network, such as when browsing websites. **Setting a Proxy(P. 654)**

TLS Settings

TLS is a protocol for encryption for data sent over a network and is often used for communication via a Web browser or an e-mail application. TLS enables secure network communication when accessing the machine in a variety of situations, such as when using the Remote UI or address book management software. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**

IPSec Settings

While TLS only encrypts data used on a specific application, such as a Web browser or an e-mail application, IPSec encrypts the whole (or payloads of) IP packets. This enables IPSec to offer a more versatile security system than TLS. **Configuring the IPSec Settings(P. 662)**

IEEE 802.1X Settings

If a device tries to connect and start communicating on an 802.1X network, the device must go through user authentication in order to prove that the connection is made by an authorized user. Authentication information is sent to and checked by a RADIUS server, which permits or rejects communication to the network depending on the authentication result. If authentication fails, a LAN switch (or an access point) blocks access from the outside of the network. The machine can connect to an 802.1X network as a client device. **Configuring the IEEE 802.1X Authentication Settings(P. 667)**

Preventing Trouble Caused by Erroneous Sending



Erroneous sending to the wrong destination or careless mistakes such as entering the wrong fax number can lead to leaks of confidential information. The machine provides various measures for increasing security when sending, such as limiting the destinations that can be sent to and forcing the fax number to be entered twice before sending.
Use the following functions as security measures for preventing trouble caused by erroneous sending.

Address Book PIN

You can set an access number for important business contacts and other destinations in the Address Book that you do not want to display to all users. **Restricting Access to Destinations Registered in the Address Book(P. 673)**

Manage Address Book Access Numbers

You can prevent the leakage of sensitive or personal information from the Address Book by setting a PIN or preventing certain destinations from being displayed in the Address Book. You can also hide the Address Book itself. **Hiding the Address Book(P. 673)**

Restrict Address Book Use

Set whether to hide the Address Book and one-touch buttons. You can specify separate settings for Fax as well as Scan and Send. **Restricting Use of the Address Book(P. 672)**

Restrict New Destinations

The destinations that can be specified when sending faxes or scanned documents can be restricted to those registered in the Address Book or one-touch buttons, those registered in <Favorite Settings> or <Send to Myself>, or those that can be searched on the LDAP server. **Restricting New Destinations(P. 675)**

Limit E-Mail to Send to Myself

You can set restrictions so that users who log in with personal authentication can only send scanned documents to their own e-mail address. **Restricting E-Mail Destination to <Send to Myself>(P. 676)**

Restrict File TX to Personal Folder

You can set restrictions so that users who log in with personal authentication can only send scanned documents to their Personal folder. **Restricting File Send Destination to Personal Folder(P. 676)**

Restrict Sending to Domains

You can restrict e-mail and I-fax destinations so that only addresses in a specific domain are available. When a domain is specified, you can also set whether to allow sending to subdomains. **Restricting the Domain of Send Destination(P. 676)**

Host Authentication for SFTP TX

By registering a public key, you can authenticate an SFTP server to which a scanned document is sent. **Specifying Authentication of an SFTP Server(P. 720)**

Confirm Entered Fax Number

You can require users to enter a fax number twice for confirmation before sending faxes, to prevent misdialing. **Confirming Fax Numbers before Sending(P. 677)**

Allow Fax Driver TX

You can prohibit users from sending faxes from a computer. **Restricting Fax Sending from a Computer(P. 677)**

Confirm Before Sending When Fax Dest. Included

You can set the machine to display a confirmation screen when sending to a fax destination. **Displaying a Confirmation Screen for Fax Destinations(P. 677)**

Previewing Documents before Sending

You can check scanned images on the preview screen before sending. **Checking Scanned Images Before Sending (Preview)(P. 366)**

Preventing Leaks of Confidential Information during Operation of the Machine



The machine generates value as an information asset by storing important data. Preventing confidential information from remaining on the machine after disposal is another important security measure. The machine provides various measures for increasing security of operation, such as preventing unregistered users from operating the machine, and completely erasing temporary job data when the machine is started.
Use the following functions as security measures for preventing leaks of confidential information during operation of the machine.

Verify System at Startup

The integrity of the firmware, system, and MEAP applications in the machine are verified during startup. **<System Verification Settings>(P. 1052)**

Trellix Embedded Control

When the machine is operating, the Trellix Embedded Control function is used to prevent unauthorized program modification and the execution of unauthorized programs, for improved system reliability. **<System Verification Settings>(P. 1052)**

Personal Authentication Management

A user name and password can be used to perform personal authentication of users. Preventing unauthorized access by third parties and setting usage restrictions can maintain a higher level of security and enable more efficient operation of the machine. **Managing Users(P. 591)**

Encrypting the Data in the Storage

You can automatically encrypt the data in the storage to prevent information leaks caused by the removal of the storage. **Managing Data in the Storage(P. 774)**

Initialize All Data/Settings

You can restore all of the machine settings to the factory default values. All of the data that remains on the storage is overwritten with 0 (null) data, which prevents the leakage of sensitive data when disposing of the machine. **Initializing All Data/Settings(P. 775)**

Security Policy Settings

A security policy describes company-wide rules regarding information security. With this machine, multiple settings related to a security policy can be set together. **Applying a Security Policy to the Machine(P. 580)**

Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access

You can set the machine to not allow users to log in to the Remote UI using the default password (7654321) of the "Administrator" user for security reasons. **<Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access>(P. 1059)**

Appendix

Appendix 1191
Feature Highlights 1192
Operability 1193
Utilizing Personalization 1194
Productivity 1201
Image Quality 1202
Manageability 1203
Building a Dual Network Environment 1205
Reliability 1208
Office Compatibility 1210
The List of System Functions and Items 1211
Home 1212
Copy 1214
Fax 1216
Scan and Send 1218
Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan 1220
Scan and Store 1221
Access Stored Files 1225
Fax/I-Fax Inbox 1229
Print 1231
MEAP 1232
Installing MEAP Applications 1234
Managing MEAP Applications 1237
Managing MEAP Application Licenses 1242
Changing Login Services 1245
Basic Windows Operations 1250
System Specifications 1254
Fax Function 1255
Send Functions 1256
Printer Functions 1258
Management Functions 1261
System Environment 1267
Network Environment 1269
System Options 1271

Appendix

ERJ8-0R2

This chapter provides useful information and items that customers should be aware of, such as the machine's system specifications and functions for more effective use of the machine. Read this chapter as necessary.

■ System Specifications

You can check the specifications of the network environment, copy, scan, etc.



System Specifications(P. 1254)

■ Enhancing Functions of the Machine

Refer to this section when you use the MEAP application, the dedicated application for enhancing functions.



MEAP(P. 1232)

■ Additional Information

Read this chapter to learn useful information on using the machine.



Feature Highlights(P. 1192)
The List of System Functions and Items(P. 1211)
Basic Windows Operations(P. 1250)

Feature Highlights

ERJ8-0R4

This section highlights six ways in which you can use the machine to its fullest potential.

Simple operations and customizable functions for greater ease-of-use

Operability(P. 1193)

Superior productivity to help your business' daily operations run more smoothly

Productivity(P. 1201)

Clearer images thanks to high-quality image printing and corrective functions

Image Quality(P. 1202)

Expanded capabilities and easier management

Manageability(P. 1203)

Convenience and peace of mind

Reliability(P. 1208)

An energy-saving design that's environmentally friendly

Office Compatibility(P. 1210)

Operability

ERJ8-0R5

This section describes how to use simple operations and customizable functions to operate the machine more easily.



User-Friendly Operation Screens

The touch panel display can be operated with smartphone-like operations such as flick operations.

Basic Operation of the Touch Panel Display(P. 223)



User Friendly Customization (Personalization)

The operation screens, settings, and functions of the machine can be customized according to user preferences. This is called "personalization."

The user must be logged in to personal authentication in order to use personalization.

Utilizing Personalization(P. 1194)

List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)

Utilizing Personalization

ERJ8-0R6

Have you ever experienced the following?

- Accidentally copying with the settings of the previous user
- Frequently configuring the same combination of settings

The machine has a personalization function that enables settings to be registered for each login user by using personal authentication management. For example, two-sided copying can be set as the default copy mode and the initial screen after logging in can be set to the Scan and Store Basic Features screen.
The customized settings can also be synchronized with other Canon machines on the same network and used on any machine.
The personalization function helps to improve operability and security, and reduce costs.

NOTE

- The user must be in a position to use the personal authentication function in order to use personalization. For information on personal authentication, contact your device administrator. **Managing Users(P. 591)**
- The settings that were personalized for each user can be synchronized with other Canon machines on the same network and used on all synchronized machines. **Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)**
- For details on the settings that can be personalized, see **List of Items That Can Be Personalized(P. 232)** .

■Screen Personalization



Changing the Display Language for Each User (Switch Language/ Keyboard)(P. 1196)



Displaying a Frequently Used Screen as the Initial Screen (Default Screen After Startup/ Restoration / Default Screen (Status Monitor))(P. 1196)



Preventing Repeated Entry of the Same Character (Key Repetition Settings)(P. 1197)



Improving the Screen Visibility (Invert Screen Colors)(P. 1197)

■Setting Personalization



Specifying Frequently Used Settings as the Default Settings (Change Default Settings)(P. 1197)



Creating Shortcuts to Setting Items at a Deep Level (Register Options Shortcuts)(P. 1198)



Recalling Past Settings for Copying (Previous Settings) (P. 1198)



Making the Job List Easy to See (Sorting the Job List)(P. 1198)



Managing Destinations in Personal Address Lists/User Group Address Lists (Personal Addr. List / User Group Address List)(P. 1199)



Enabling Multiple Settings to Be Set with a Single Button (<Personal>/<Shared>)(P. 1199)

■Function Personalization



Printing Important Documents at the Machine (Forced Hold)(P. 1199)



Directly Storing Scanned Data on a Server (Personal Folder)(P. 1200)



Sending the Scanned Document to Your Own E-Mail Address (Send to Myself)(P. 1200)

Screen Personalization

Changing the Display Language for Each User (Switch Language/Keyboard)



The language of the screen can be changed to the liking of each login user.
For example, the machine can display the screen in English for a certain user, and then switch the display language to French when another user logs in.
The keyboard layout of the touch panel display can also be changed.
Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions(P. 255)

Displaying a Frequently Used Screen as the Initial Screen (Default Screen After Startup/Restoration / Default Screen (Status Monitor))



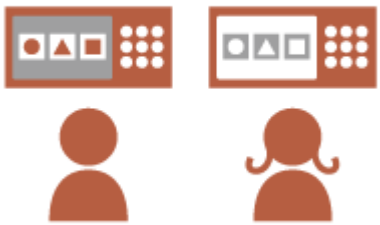
The screen displayed after logging in and after the machine returns from sleep mode can be set.
For example, the operation screen (Basic Features screen) for <Copy> and <Fax>, the destination selection screen for <Scan and Store>, and the <Status Monitor> screen for checking the job status can be set as the initial screen.
<Default Screen After Startup/Restoration>(P. 809)
A frequently used job status/log screen can be registered as the default screen displayed when <Status Monitor> is pressed.
<Default Screen (Status Monitor)>(P. 810)

Preventing Repeated Entry of the Same Character (Key Repetition Settings)



This setting enables you to adjust the time until entry of the same character is repeated.
For example, if you press and hold the <a> key for a certain period of time, the letter "a" begins to be entered repeatedly. This can be prevented for people who want to work slowly, by adjusting the response speed of the touch panel display.
Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions(P. 255)

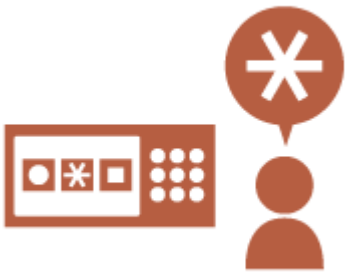
Improving the Screen Visibility (Invert Screen Colors)



The screen can be enlarged or displayed with reversed colors.
For example, the screen colors can be reversed to make it easier to read for users that have trouble with the default colors.
Customizing the Screen Display Appearance and the Operational Conditions(P. 255)

Setting Personalization

Specifying Frequently Used Settings as the Default Settings (Change Default Settings)



Frequently used settings can be registered as the default settings.
For example, if a user frequently uses the two-sided mode, it can be set by default to eliminate the need to specify it every time the user operates the machine.
<Change Default Settings>(P. 921) (Copy)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 967) (Fax)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 945) (Scan and Send)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 996) (Scan and Store)
<Change Default Settings>(P. 998) (Access Stored Files)

Creating Shortcuts to Setting Items at a Deep Level (Register Options Shortcuts)



Shortcuts for frequently used settings can be registered to the Copy Basic Features screen, the Fax Basic Features screen, and the Scan and Send Basic Features screen.
For example, if a user frequently uses the <N on 1> mode in <Options> of the Copy function, a shortcut to the <N on 1> mode can be displayed on the Copy Basic Features screen, so that you can recall the <N on 1> mode with one press of a button instead of going all the way down to the <Options> screen.
Customizing the Basic Features Screen(P. 245)

Recalling Past Settings for Copying (Previous Settings)



The previously used <Copy> settings, and the previously used <Fax> and <Scan and Send> settings and destinations are retained in the machine. When copying with the same settings used in the past, the user can recall the previously used settings to eliminate the need to specify the same settings.
Recalling Previously Used Copy Settings (Previous Settings)(P. 340)
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending (Previous Settings) (P. 377)
Recalling Previously Used Settings for Sending/Saving (Previous Settings)(P. 507)

Making the Job List Easy to See (Sorting the Job List)



The job list can be sorted using the order of names, dates, etc., to make it easier to find the desired job or document.
The sorting order is retained for the next time the user logs in.
Changing the Display Order in the List(P. 225)

Managing Destinations in Personal Address Lists/User Group Address Lists (Personal Addr. List / User Group Address List)



Destinations can be separated and managed using personal address lists and user group address lists.
For example, you can manage destinations used for your own personal customers in your personal address list and destinations shared within a group in a user group address list.
Registering Destinations in the Address Book(P. 270)

Enabling Multiple Settings to Be Set with a Single Button (<Personal>/<Shared>)



<Personal> buttons and <Shared> buttons can be used to eliminate the need to set the same combination of settings separately.
For example, a user can set the <2-Sided> and <N on 1> modes together. By registering these settings in a <Personal> button, this combination of settings can be recalled with a single button press.
By registering the settings in a <Shared> button, they can be conveniently used by other users.
Registering Frequently Used Settings and Destinations as Personal Buttons/Shared Buttons on the <Home> Screen(P. 247)

Function Personalization

Printing Important Documents at the Machine (Forced Hold)



Important documents can be prevented from being printed out until the user is present at the machine.
Forced hold printing enables you to check your print job at the machine before printing, so that you can cancel unnecessary jobs, or prevent other users from taking your documents away.
Printing Documents that are Forced to be Held in the Machine(P. 426)

Directly Storing Scanned Data on a Server (Personal Folder)



The data scanned with the machine can be stored on a server on the same network.
For example, a user can create a personal folder on an SMB server in the office and directly save data scanned with the machine. This prevents data from becoming mixed up with the data of other users.
Configuring Personal Folders(P. 637)

Sending the Scanned Document to Your Own E-Mail Address (Send to Myself)

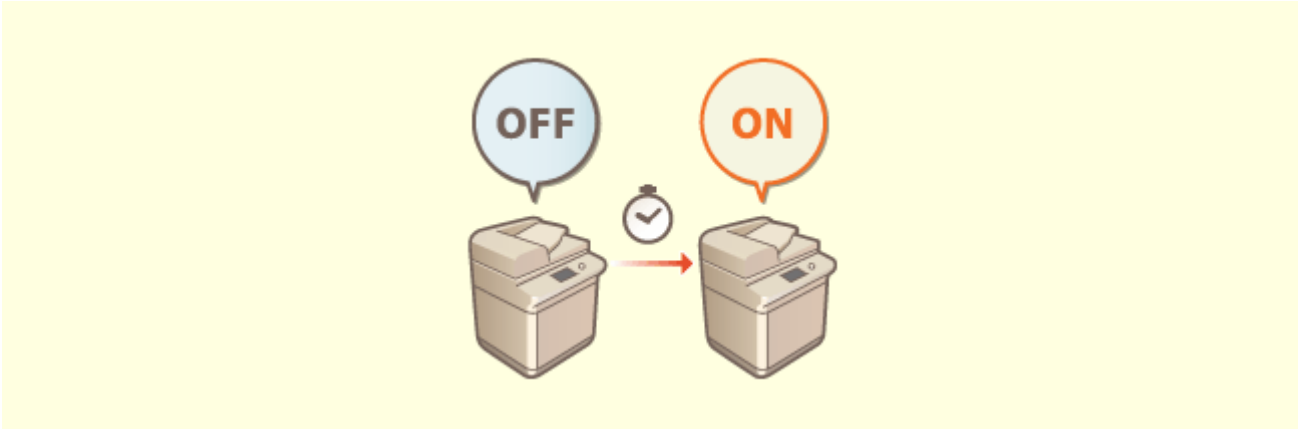


Users can easily send scanned documents to their own e-mail address.
For example, when sending a document to the e-mail address of a customer as a PDF file, a user can press <Send to Myself> displayed on the Scan and Send Basic Features screen, etc. to also send the PDF file to their own e-mail address.
Scan Basic Features Screen(P. 453)

Productivity

ERJ8-0R7

This section describes how to use the machine's superior productivity to help your daily business operations run more smoothly.



Using the Machine Immediately after Turning it ON (Quick Startup)

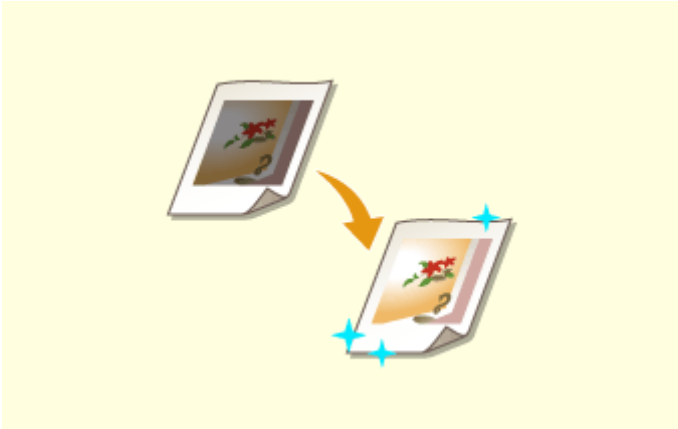
Specifying <Quick Startup Settings for Main Power> reduces the time required for the machine to start up after turning the main power ON, enabling smoother operations.

<Quick Startup Settings for Main Power>(P. 819)

Image Quality

ERJ8-0R8

This section describes functions that help to produce crisp and clear images, such as high-quality image printing and corrective functions.



Adjusting the Quality of Printing and Finishing

You can achieve more satisfying print results by using corrective functions such as gradation adjustment and density correction.

Adjusting Print Quality(P. 1067)



Sending Clearer Faxes

Reproduction can be enhanced on the receiving end by setting a corresponding gamma value when sending faxes.

<YCbCr TX Gamma Value>(P. 949)

Manageability

ERJ8-0R9

This section describes how to expand the capabilities of the machine and make management easier.



Dual Network Environment

A dual network environment using wired LAN and wireless LAN or wired LAN and another wired LAN can be used.

Building a Dual Network Environment(P. 1205)



Using the Control Panel as a Tool for Sharing Information (Visual Message Function)

Content and messages set by the administrator can be displayed on the touch panel display to inform users. This function is useful for sharing information in the office.

Configuring the Visual Message Function(P. 753)



Connecting to the Wireless LAN

A wireless LAN is built into the machine, enabling you to connect a computer or mobile device to the machine, as well as install it in a separate location.

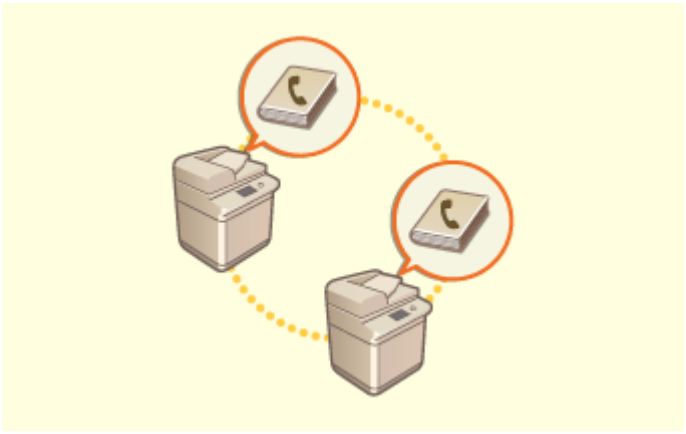
Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)



Linking with Mobile Devices

You can directly print data saved in a mobile device from the machine, or use the machine to scan data to a mobile device. You can also use your mobile device to specify settings for forced hold printing in the machine.

Linking with Mobile Devices(P. 554)



Easily Moving the Address Book

You can export the Address Book registered in the machine, and import it to another machine. You can also export the Address Book in the CSV file format and edit it on a computer

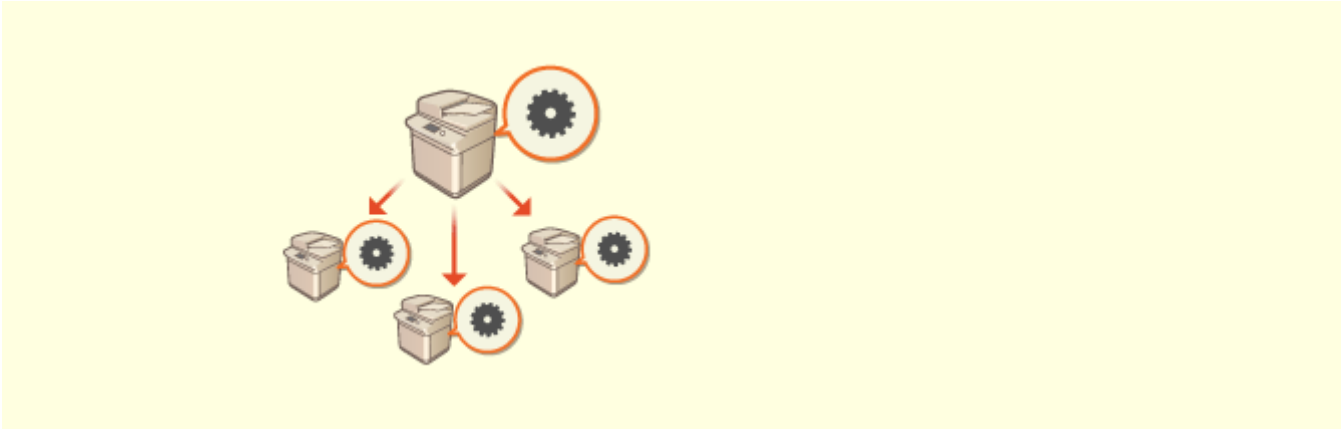
Importing/Exporting the Settings Individually(P. 736)



Operating an Office Security Policy

A security policy describes company-wide rules regarding information security. With this machine, multiple settings related to a security policy can be set together.

Applying a Security Policy to the Machine(P. 580)



Sharing Settings between Multiple Machines

Personalized settings and Address Books can be synchronized and shared between multiple machines. Settings specified on a single machine are reflected in all synchronized machines.

Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)

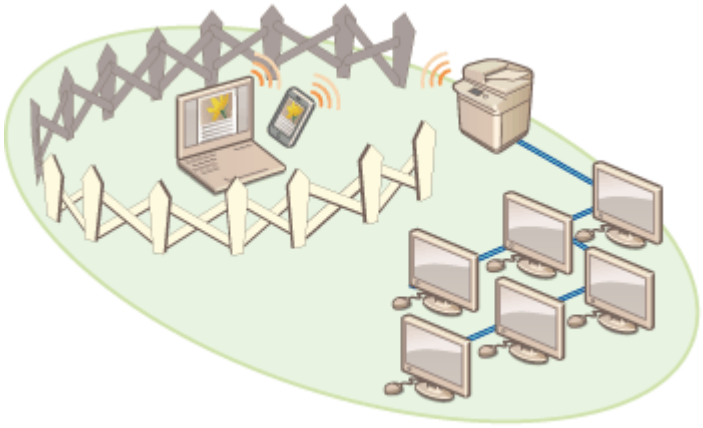
Building a Dual Network Environment

ERJ8-0RA

Do you have separate machines in each department or floor of the same office for security purposes?

In addition to single connections with a wired LAN or wireless LAN, this machine enables dual network environments with both a wired LAN and wireless LAN or a wired LAN and another wired LAN via a USB-LAN adapter*. This makes it easy to build network environments where employees use the main line and customers use a sub line with restricted functionality. It also contributes to reduced costs as it is not necessary to install a machine for each network environment.

* For information on the supported USB-LAN adapters, contact your dealer or service representative.



On the machine and in the User's Guide (this manual), the primary line used in a dual network is called the "main line," and the secondary line is called the "sub line."

Flow of Settings Required for a Dual Network(P. 1205)
Cautions When Using the Sub Line(P. 1206)

Flow of Settings Required for a Dual Network

In a dual network, the main line and sub line have separate settings. This section describes the settings required for the sub line network.

NOTE

- Specify the wired LAN/wireless LAN settings common to the main and sub lines, as required.
  Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)
  Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)

Connecting to a Wired LAN(P. 152)
Connecting to a Wireless LAN(P. 153)

Step 1	**Selecting the Network Connection Method(P. 150)**

- Select without <Off> in <Sub Line>.



Step 2	**Setting the IPv4 Address of the Sub Line(P. 166)**

- Specify the IPv4 address settings from <IP Address Settings> in <Sub Line Settings>. When using static routing, also set a gateway address.



Step 3 **Making Ethernet Settings(P. 168)** *

- Set this when using a wired LAN via a USB-LAN adapter for the sub line.
  * Specify the required settings according to your environment.



Step 4 **Configuring the Firewall of the Sub Line(P. 650)** *

- Register the port numbers of the functions to use/restrict in the firewall settings of the sub line.
  * Specify the required settings according to your environment.



Step 5 **Setting Static Routing(P. 187)** *

- Set static routing when connecting to another network via a router.
  * Specify the required settings according to your environment.



Step 6 **Configuring System Data Communication(P. 191)** *

- Set this when performing specific system data communication, such as accessing a firmware distribution server in environments where DNS name resolution or network connections via a proxy cannot be used.
  * Specify the required settings according to your environment.



Cautions When Using the Sub Line

The network functions set in the machine can all be used for the main line. However, the functions that can be used with the sub line are limited.

IMPORTANT

- The DNS server and WINS server settings cannot be used at the same time as the main line.
- <DNS Server Address Settings> and <Proxy Settings> in <Settings for System Data Communication> can only be used for specific system data communication, such as using the sub line to access a firmware distribution server. When using a DNS server or proxy server for the sub line for applications other than system data communication, register the addresses and port numbers to use with the sub line in the settings of the main line.
  Making DNS Settings(P. 171)
  Setting a Proxy(P. 654)

■ Functions Restricted for the Sub Line

The following network functions cannot be used with the sub line.

- IPv6 address settings
- IPSec
- NetBIOS
- FTP (ACTIVE mode)
- DHCP Option Settings
- DNS Dynamic Update Settings
- Multicast Discovery Settings
- Setting the IP address via AutoIP
- Browsing using the SMB protocol

The following functions and services cannot be used, due to the above limitations.

- Building a printing/accounting system that performs server connections via a MEAP application
- Building an authentication system for an Active Directory server
- File sending using DNS name resolution or NetBIOS name resolution from the SMB or WebDAV protocol*1
- Automatic discovery of other multifunction printers on the sub line side using multicast discovery*1
- Functions such as the following that use the IP address of the main line
  - [Security Policy Settings]
  - <Make Remote Address Book Open>
  - Batch importing/batch exporting
  - Visual Message
- Remote fax (client)
- Universal Print

*1 Specify the IP address directly.

Reliability

ERJ8-0RC

This section describes how to use the machine with greater convenience and peace of mind.



Preventing Information Leaks from the Storage

You can automatically encrypt the data in the storage to prevent information leaks caused by the removal of the storage.

Managing Data in the Storage(P. 774)



Managing Saved Copies of Faxes (Automatically Saving Images of Sent Faxes)

You can digitize and save sent faxes and automatically save them in a specified folder. Information related to sending is automatically added to the file name, enabling you to effectively manage faxes.

Saving a Copy of a Sent Document(P. 382)



Digitizing and Managing Communication Management Reports

In addition to printing logs for sending and receiving (communication management reports), you can also save them as CSV files and manage them on a computer.

Outputting a Communication Result Report(P. 785)



Preventing Forgotten Originals after Scanning

When an original is placed on the platen glass, an error tone and a message on the touch panel will notify you if you forget to retrieve it. In addition, an indicator will notify you during and after scanning via the feeder, thus helping prevent forgotten originals.

Setting Sounds(P. 259)



Confirming Maintenance Procedures on the Touch Panel Display (Videos)

You can confirm procedures for replenishing consumables and cleaning by viewing videos on the touch panel display.

<Maintenance>(P. 892)

Office Compatibility

ERJ8-0RE

This section describes how to use the machine in an environmentally-friendly manner.



Using the Sleep Mode to Save Power During Standby

The machine saves power by switching to the Sleep mode or Energy Saver mode when not in use. Users can also save power by only starting up the functions they require when the machine recovers from the Sleep mode.

Entering Sleep Mode(P. 263)
<Timer/Energy Settings>(P. 818)

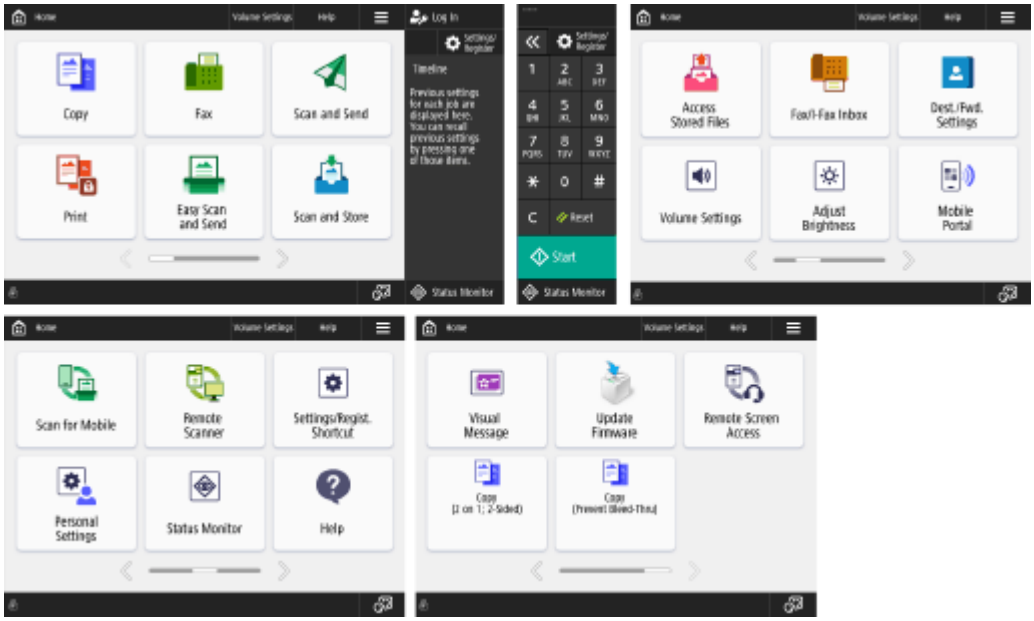
The List of System Functions and Items

ERJ8-0RF

Home(P. 1212)
Copy(P. 1214)
Fax(P. 1216)
Scan and Send(P. 1218)
Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan(P. 1220)
Scan and Store(P. 1221)
Access Stored Files(P. 1225)
Fax/I-Fax Inbox(P. 1229)
Print(P. 1231)

Home

ERJ8-0RH



■ Shortcut

- **Log In(P. 230)**
- **Timeline(P. 220)**
- **Status Monitor(P. 213)**

■ Operation button list

- **Numeric key enlargement/reduction(P. 216)**
- **Settings/Registration(P. 801)**
- **Numeric keys(P. 216)**
- **Clear(P. 216)**
- **Reset(P. 216)**
- **Start(P. 216)**

■ Function button list

- **Copy(P. 290)**
- **Fax(P. 343)**
- **Scan and Send(P. 451)**
- **Print(P. 426)**
- **Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan(P. 451)**
- **Scan and Store(P. 526)**
- **Access Stored Files(P. 526)**
- **Fax/I-Fax Inbox(P. 386)**
- **Dest./Fwd. Settings(P. 265)**
- **Volume Settings(P. 259)**
- **Adjust Brightness(P. 211)**
- **Mobile Portal(P. 555)**
- **Scan for Mobile(P. 560)**

Remote Scanner(P. 515)
Settings/Regist. Shortcut(P. 254)
Personal Settings(P. 255)
Status Monitor(P. 213)
Help(P. 225)
Visual Message(P. 753)
Update Firmware(P. 744)
Remote Screen Access(P. 764)
Personal/Shared(P. 247)

Copy

ERJ8-0RJ

- Copy Basic Features Screen(P. 1214)
- Options(P. 1214)

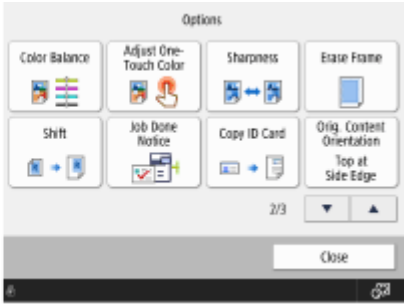
Copy Basic Features Screen



- Select Color(P. 294)
- Copy Ratio(P. 294)
- Select Paper(P. 294)
- Check Settings(P. 303)
- Options Shortcuts(P. 245) 1 to 5
- Interrupt(P. 323)
- Options(P. 292)

Options







- Favorite Settings(P. 242)
- Previous Settings(P. 340)
- 2-Sided Settings(P. 294)
- Finishing(P. 325)
- Job Build(P. 319)
- N on 1(P. 317)
- Density(P. 294)

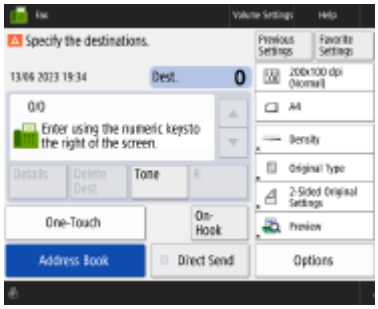
Original Type(P. 308)
Color Balance(P. 312)
Adjust One- Touch Color(P. 314)
Sharpness(P. 309)
Erase Frame(P. 310)
Shift(P. 328)
Job Done Notice(P. 331)
Copy ID Card(P. 333)
Original Content Orientation(P. 294)
Skip Blank Pages(P. 335)
Remove Specific Color(P. 337)

Fax

ERJ8-0RK

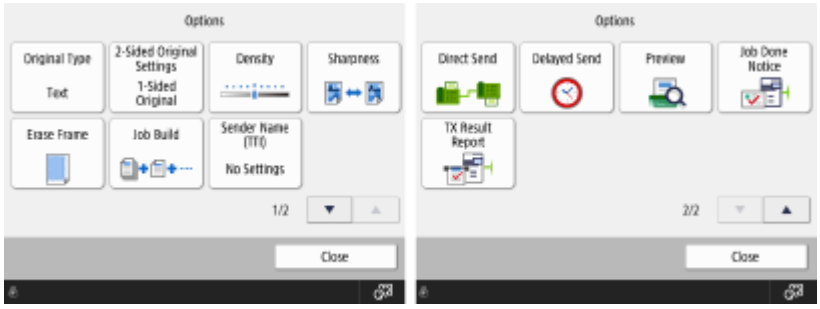
Fax Basic Features Screen(P. 1216)
Options(P. 1216)

Fax Basic Features Screen



Details(P. 347)
Delete Dest.(P. 347)
Tone(P. 345)
R(P. 346)
Previous Settings(P. 377)
Favorite Settings(P. 242)
Resolution(P. 351)
Scan Size(P. 351)
Options Shortcuts(P. 245) 1 to 4
Register One-Touch(P. 347)
Address Book(P. 347)
On-Hook(P. 370)
Direct Send(P. 368)
Options(P. 345)

Options



Original Type(P. 351)
2-Sided Original Settings(P. 351)
Density(P. 351)
Sharpness(P. 351)
Erase Frame(P. 351)
Job Build(P. 375)
Sender Name (TTI)(P. 359)
Direct Send(P. 368)
Delayed Send(P. 380)

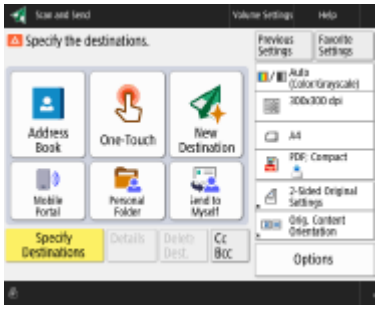
Preview(P. 366)
Job Done Notice(P. 372)
TX Result Report(P. 358)

Scan and Send

ERJ8-0RL

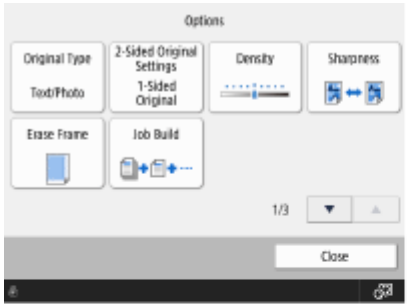
Scan and Send Basic Features Screen(P. 1218)
Options(P. 1219)

Scan and Send Basic Features Screen

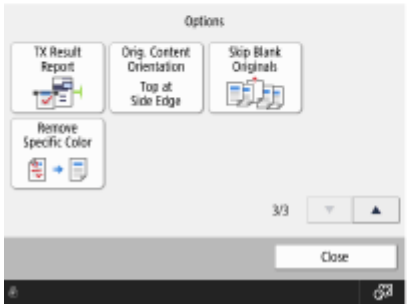


Address Book(P. 461)
One-Touch(P. 461)
New Destination(P. 461)
Mobile Portal(P. 461)
Personal Folder(P. 461)
Send to Myself(P. 461)
Specify Destinations(P. 461)
Details(P. 461)
Delete Dest.(P. 461)
Cc Bcc(P. 461)
Previous Settings(P. 507)
Favorite Settings(P. 242)
Select Color(P. 467)
Resolution(P. 466)
Scan Size(P. 467)
File Format(P. 466)
Options Shortcuts(P. 245) 1 to 2
Options(P. 454)

Options



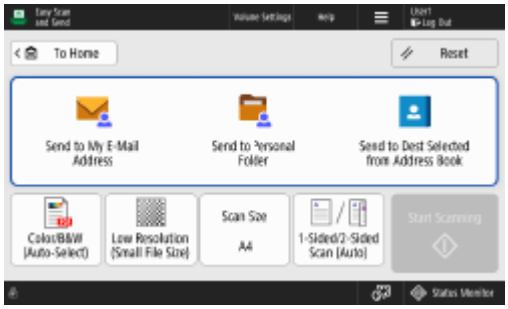




- Original Type(P. 478)
- 2-Sided Original Settings(P. 467)
- Density(P. 479)
- Sharpness(P. 480)
- Erase Frame(P. 481)
- Job Build(P. 484)
- Delayed Send(P. 494)
- Preview(P. 492)
- Job Done Notice(P. 496)
- File Name(P. 509)
- Subject/Message(P. 511)
- Reply-to(P. 512)
- E-Mail Priority(P. 512)
- TX Result Report(P. 473)
- Orig. Content Orientation(P. 473)
- Skip Blank Originals(P. 490)
- Remove Specific Color(P. 513)

Easy Scan and Send/Easy Scan

ERJ8-0RR



Send to My E-Mail Address(P. 456)
Send to Personal Folder(P. 456)
Send to Dest Selected from Address Book(P. 456)
Color Settings(P. 457)
Scan Size(P. 457)
2-Sided Settings(P. 457)

Scan and Store

ERJ8-0RS

Storage Selection Screen(P. 1221)
File Selection Screen(P. 1222)
Scan Screen(P. 1223)
Options(P. 1224)

NOTE

- Some of the modes described here are referring to the modes of the <Copy> or <Scan and Send> function.

Storage Selection Screen



Network(P. 529)
Memory Media(P. 537)

■ Network





Check Storage Information(P. 530)

■ Memory Media

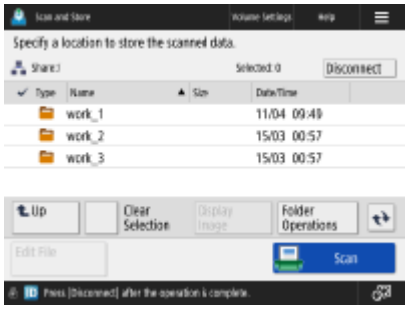




Check Media Information(P. 539)

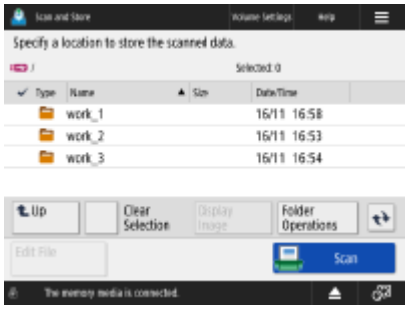
File Selection Screen

■ Network



- **Up(P. 531)**
- **Clear Selection(P. 531)**
- **Display Image(P. 531)**
- **Folder Operations(P. 531)**
- **Update(P. 531)**
- **Edit File(P. 531)**
- **Scan(P. 529)**

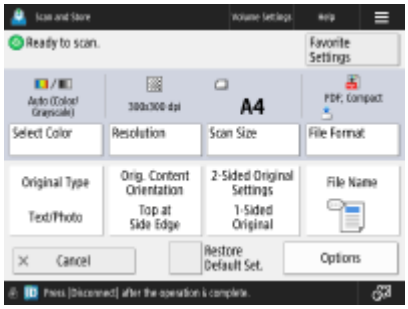
■ Memory Media



- **Up(P. 540)**
- **Clear Selection(P. 540)**
- **Display Image(P. 540)**
- **Folder Operations(P. 540)**
- **Update(P. 540)**
- **Edit File(P. 540)**
- **Scan(P. 537)**

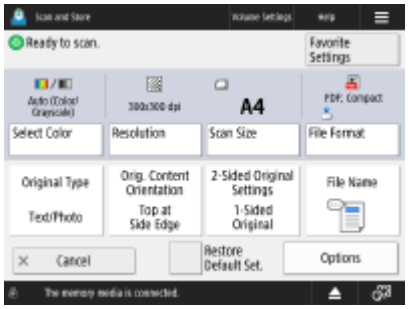
Scan Screen

■ Network



- **Select Color(P. 545)**
- **Resolution(P. 545)**
- **Scan Size(P. 545)**
- **File Format(P. 545)**
- **Original Type(P. 546)**
- **Orig. Content Orientation(P. 473)**
- **2-Sided Original Settings(P. 546)**
- **File Name(P. 546)**
- **Favorite Settings(P. 545)**
- **Restore Default Set.(P. 545)**
- **Options(P. 545)**

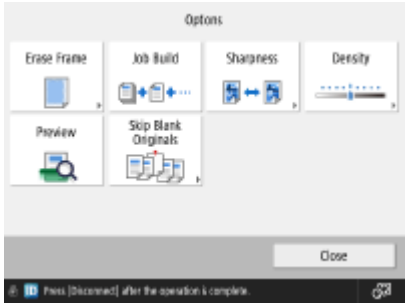
■ Memory Media



- **Select Color(P. 545)**
- **Resolution(P. 545)**
- **Scan Size(P. 545)**
- **File Format(P. 545)**
- **Original Type(P. 546)**
- **Orig. Content Orientation(P. 473)**
- **2-Sided Original Settings(P. 546)**
- **File Name(P. 546)**
- **Favorite Settings(P. 545)**
- **Restore Default Set.(P. 545)**
- **Options(P. 545)**

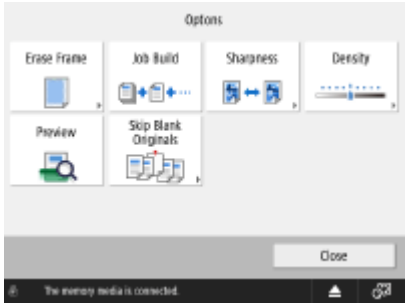
Options

■ Network



- **Erase Frame(P. 481)**
- **Job Build(P. 484)**
- **Sharpness(P. 480)**
- **Density(P. 479)**
- **Preview(P. 492)**
- **Skip Blank Originals(P. 490)**

■ Memory Media



- **Erase Frame(P. 481)**
- **Job Build(P. 484)**
- **Sharpness(P. 480)**
- **Density(P. 479)**
- **Preview(P. 492)**
- **Skip Blank Originals(P. 490)**

Access Stored Files

ERJ8-0RU

Storage Selection Screen(P. 1225)
File Selection Screen(P. 1226)
Print Settings Screen(P. 1227)
Print Settings Screen Options(P. 1228)

NOTE

- Some of the modes described here are referring to the mode of the <Copy> function.

Storage Selection Screen



Network(P. 530)
Memory Media(P. 539)

■ Network





Check Storage Information(P. 530)

■ Memory Media

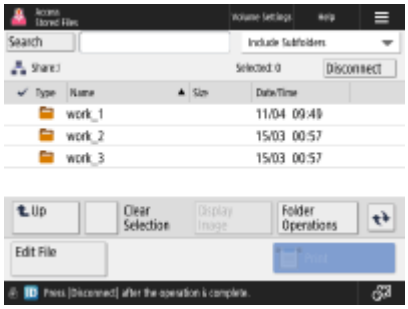




Check Media Information(P. 539)

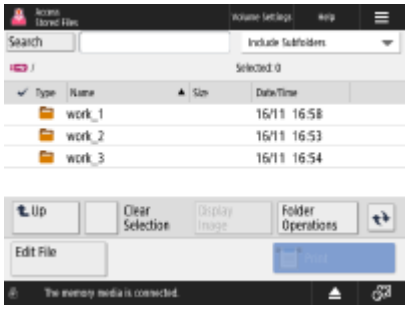
File Selection Screen

■ Network



- **Up(P. 531)**
- **Clear Selection(P. 531)**
- **Display Image(P. 531)**
- **Folder Operations(P. 531)**
- **Update(P. 531)**
- **Edit File(P. 531)**
- **Print(P. 533)**

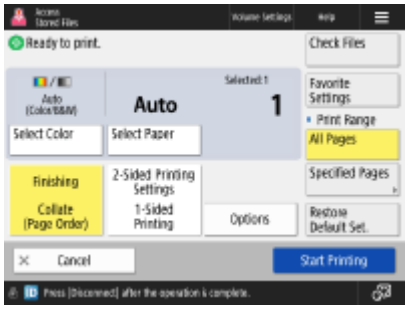
■ Memory Media



- **Up(P. 540)**
- **Clear Selection(P. 540)**
- **Display Image(P. 540)**
- **Folder Operations(P. 540)**
- **Update(P. 540)**
- **Edit File(P. 540)**
- **Print(P. 543)**

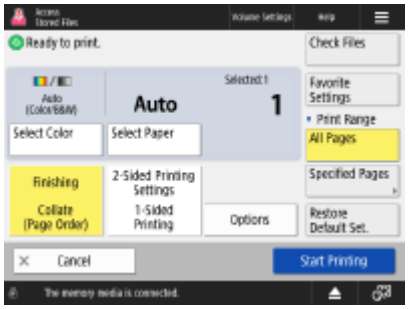
Print Settings Screen

■ Network



- **Select Color(P. 548)**
- **Select Paper(P. 548)**
- **Finishing(P. 549)**
- **2-Sided Printing Settings(P. 549)**
- **Options(P. 549)**
- **Favorite Settings(P. 548)**
- **Print Range(P. 549)**
- **Restore Default Set.(P. 549)**

■ Memory Media

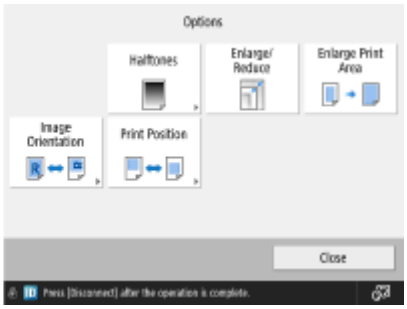


- **Select Color(P. 548)**
- **Select Paper(P. 548)**
- **Finishing(P. 549)**
- **2-Sided Printing Settings(P. 549)**
- **Options(P. 549)**
- **Favorite Settings(P. 548)**
- **Print Range(P. 549)**
- **Restore Default Set.(P. 549)**

Print Settings Screen Options

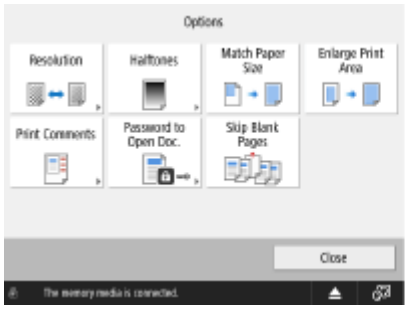
■ Network





- **Resolution(P. 550)**
- **Halftones(P. 550)**
- **Match Paper Size(P. 550)**
- **Enlarge Print Area(P. 550)**
- **Print Comments(P. 550)**
- **Password to Open Doc.(P. 550)**
- **Skip Blank Pages(P. 550)**
- **Enlarge/Reduce(P. 551)**
- **Image Orientation(P. 551)**
- **Print Position(P. 551)**

■ Memory Media





- **Resolution(P. 550)**
- **Halftones(P. 550)**
- **Match Paper Size(P. 550)**
- **Enlarge Print Area(P. 550)**
- **Print Comments(P. 550)**
- **Password to Open Doc.(P. 550)**
- **Skip Blank Pages(P. 550)**
- **Enlarge/Reduce(P. 551)**
- **Image Orientation(P. 551)**
- **Print Position(P. 551)**

Fax/I-Fax Inbox

ERJ8-0RW

Memory RX Inbox(P. 1229)
Confidential Fax Inbox(P. 1230)

Memory RX Inbox





Memory RX Inbox(P. 386)
Divided Data RX Inbox(P. 386)

■ Memory RX Inbox





Select All (Max 32 files)(P. 387) / Clear Selection(P. 387)
Details(P. 387)
Display Image(P. 387)
Delete(P. 387)
I-Fax Memory Lock(P. 386)
Fax Memory Lock(P. 386)
Send(P. 387)
Print(P. 386)

■ Divided Data RX Inbox





Divided Data List(P. 386)

Delete(P. 387)
Print When Deleted(P. 387)

Confidential Fax Inbox

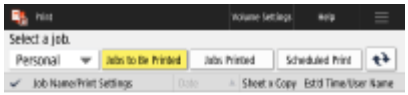


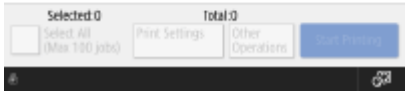


Details(P. 389)
Display Image(P. 389)
Delete(P. 389)
Print(P. 389)

Print

ERJ8-0RX





- **Personal/Shared/Group(P. 429)**
- **Jobs to Be Printed(P. 429)**
- **Jobs Printed(P. 429)**
- **Scheduled Print(P. 429)**
- **Select All (Max 100 jobs)(P. 430)** / **Clear Selection(P. 430)**
- **Print Settings(P. 430)**
- **Other Operations(P. 430)**
- **Start Printing(P. 430)**

MEAP

ERJ8-0RY

MEAP (Multifunctional Embedded Application Platform) is a framework for enhancing and optimizing various functions installed on the machine such as "Communication," "Authentication" and "Output." For instance, user management using IC cards and collaboration with software which streamlines file processing becomes possible through MEAP. To enhance functions as stated before, you are required to install a dedicated application called a "MEAP application" on the machine. You can install MEAP applications and check their usage status by displaying the SMS (Service Management Service) from the Remote UI. In order to install a MEAP application, you are required to log in as an administrator (**Logging into the Machine(P. 230)**).



NOTE

- SMS will always use encrypted TLS communications, regardless of the setting of <Use TLS> in <MEAP Settings>. Therefore, if the default key for SSL is not set in advance, you cannot log in to SMS. **Configuring the Key and Certificate for TLS(P. 656)**
- Multiple users cannot log in to SMS at the same time.

■Installing MEAP Applications

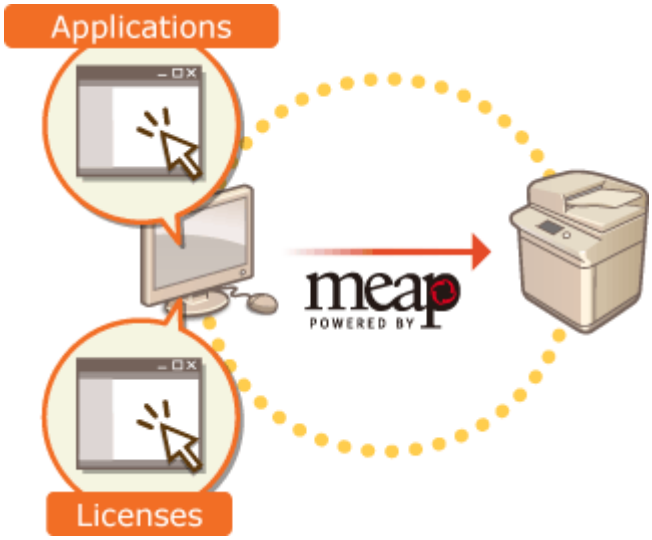
You can install MEAP applications and configure the necessary settings to use the MEAP applications.



Installing MEAP Applications(P. 1234)

■Managing MEAP Applications

This section describes how to check the MEAP applications you installed, how to uninstall the applications, and how to manage the licenses.

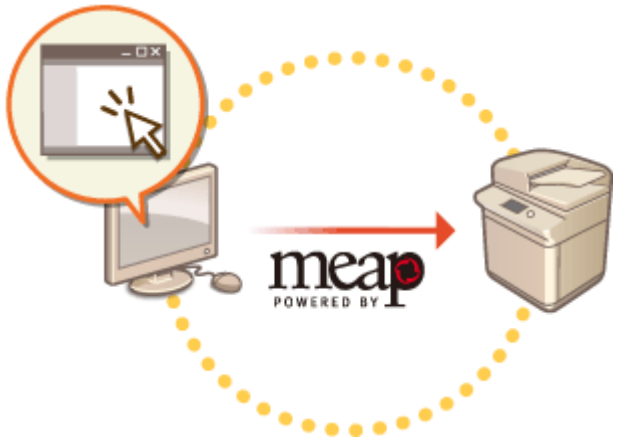


Managing MEAP Applications(P. 1237)
Managing MEAP Application Licenses(P. 1242)

Installing MEAP Applications

ERJ8-0S0

Before installing a MEAP application, you must acquire the "license file" using a computer. After acquiring the license file, display the SMS from the Remote UI to install the MEAP application.



Acquiring the License File(P. 1234)
Installing the Application(P. 1235)

NOTE

- You can check the number of applications installed and the storage device space being used. **Managing MEAP Applications(P. 1237)**
- If your MEAP application does not come with a License Access Number, your license file will be provided by your MEAP Application provider. The license key and license file described in this section are not required. For more information, see the manual provided with each MEAP application.
- Depending on the MEAP application, it may require a specific condition for installation. For more information, see the user's manual for the MEAP application to be used.
- The maximum number of MEAP applications that can be installed on this machine is 19.

Acquiring the License File

IMPORTANT

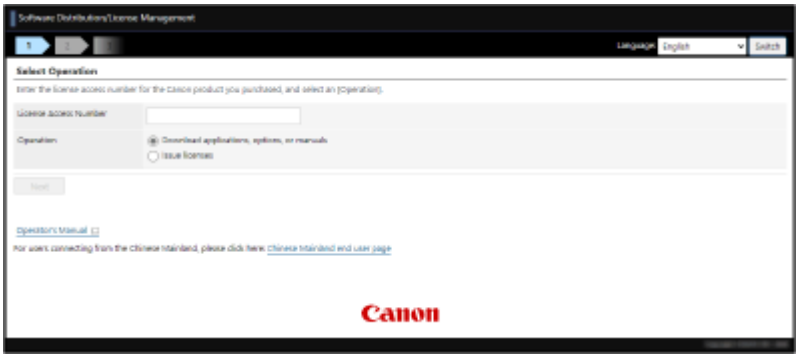
The following information is required for acquiring a license file.

- The license access number attached to the package of the MEAP application
- The "serial number" of the machine displayed in the lower left of the screen when pressing (Counter/Device Information) key.

* You can also check the serial number through the SMS screen. **Managing MEAP Applications(P. 1237)**

1 Open a Web browser to access http://www.canon.com/lms/license/

2 Follow the on-screen instructions to acquire the license file.



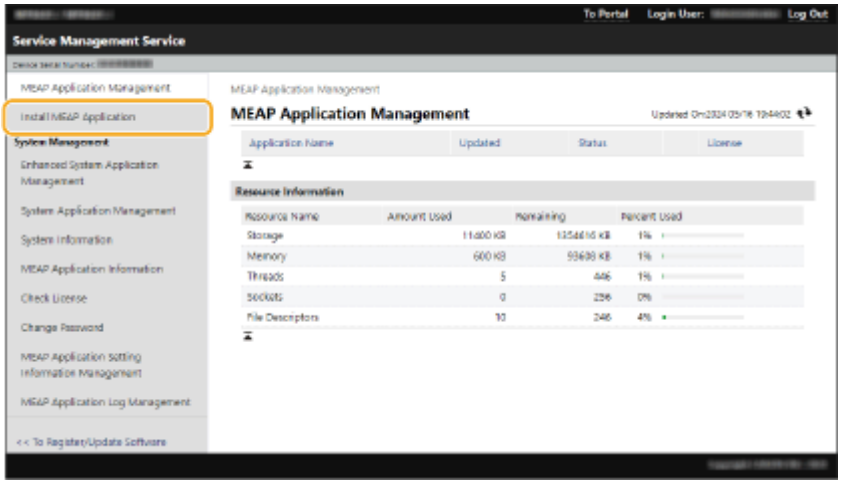
After acquiring the license file, display the SMS to install the MEAP application.

Installing the Application

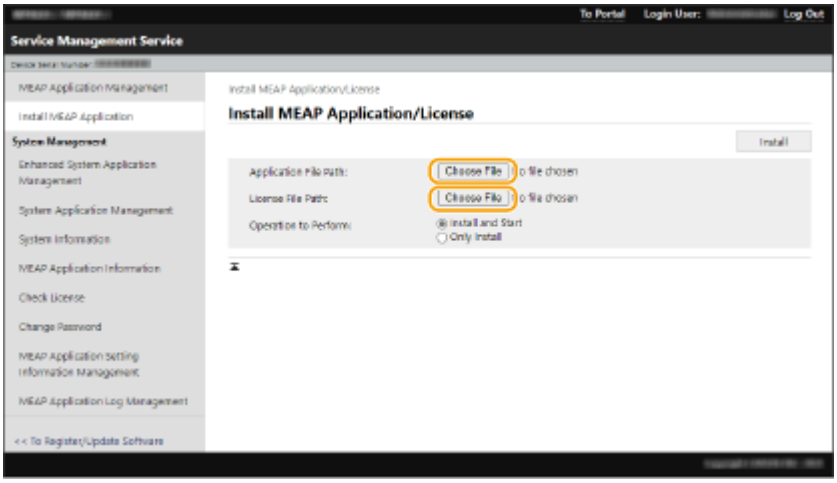
1 **Log in to the Remote UI.** **Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)**

2 **Click [Service Management Service] on the portal page.**

3 **Click [Install MEAP Application].**



4 **Click [Choose File], specify the application file and the license file, and click [OK].**



- Files with a "jar" extension are application files.
- Files with an "lic" extension are license files.

5 Select the operation to perform after installation.

- To start the application after installation, select [Install and Start]. If you do not want to start the application after installation, select [Only Install].

6 Click [Install] ▶ [Yes].

- When the licensing screen is displayed, confirm the contents and click [I Accept].

  ➠ When installation is complete, the MEAP Application Management screen is displayed.

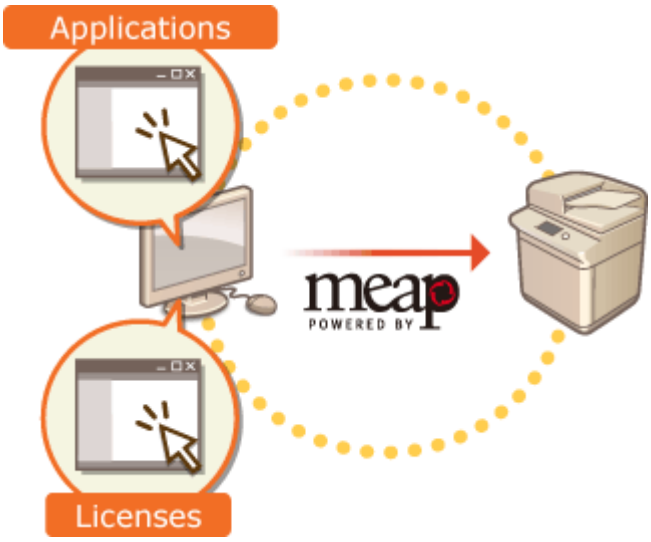
NOTE

- Depending on the MEAP application, the user's manual or related software can be downloaded from the following URL. http://canon.com/fau/downloads
- You can upgrade the MEAP application version in the same procedure as the installation. Stop the MEAP application on the SMS screen before installing. **Managing MEAP Applications(P. 1237)**
- The maximum amount of storage device that applications can use is approximately 1.3 GB.
- If the machine is performing its shutdown process while an application is being installed, an error message may be displayed on the Install page for SMS, and the installation may be cancelled. In this case, try installing the MEAP application again after restarting the machine (turn the main power switch Off, and then On). For instructions on turning On/Off the machine, see **Turning OFF the Machine(P. 33)** , **Turning ON the Machine(P. 32)** .

Managing MEAP Applications

ERJ8-0S1

In addition to checking details and changing settings, you can upgrade MEAP applications or uninstall applications by using the SMS from the Remote UI.



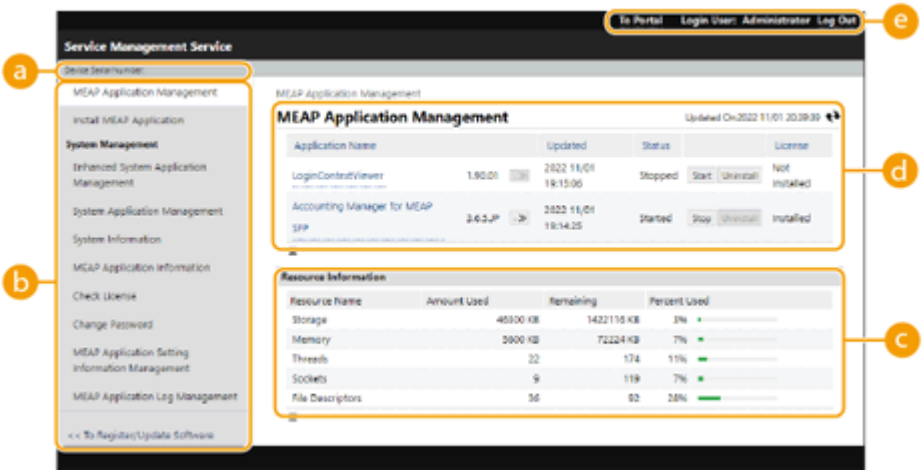
IMPORTANT

- While you are operating on the SMS screen, do not use the [Back] button on your Web browser, the SMS screen may not operate properly.

1 Log in to the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Service Management Service] on the portal page.

3 Configure the settings on the SMS screen.



a **[Device Serial Number: <Serial Number>]**

The machine's serial number is displayed. Use this number when acquiring a license file. **Acquiring the License File(P. 1234)**

Menu

If you click an item, the management page for the item appears.

- [MEAP Application Management]: The management of installed MEAP applications is mainly performed on this page.
- [Install MEAP Application]: A page for the installation and update of MEAP applications is displayed. **Installing MEAP Applications(P. 1234)**
- [System Management]: A page for managing applications and information related to the MEAP system is displayed.

[Enhanced System Application Management]	Installs, uninstalls, and manages system applications that can be enhanced. You can change the login service from this page. **Changing Login Services(P. 1245)**
[System Application Management]	Starts and stops the usage of installed system applications. Changing the SMS login method is performed from this page.
[System Information]	Displays the version and the operation status of a system application.
[MEAP Application Information]	Displays a list of applications (excluding system applications) currently installed and already uninstalled.
[Check License]	Displays the detailed information of license files before installation.
[Change Password]	Normally, it is not necessary to change this setting. Configure this setting especially when you use the "DepartmentID Authentication" login service. You must enter between 8 and 32 alphanumeric characters for the password.
[MEAP Application Setting Information Management]	Displays or deletes information related to MEAP application settings. If there is setting information that is shared between the applications, [Shared Setting Information of Applications] is displayed. It can be deleted in the same way as other items.
[MEAP Application Log Management]	Downloads or deletes log data such as the usage history of MEAP applications.

[Resource Information]

Displays the usage amount, remaining amount, and the usage rate of storage device space as well as memory that is used by a MEAP application and system applications.

[MEAP Application Management]

Displays a MEAP application name and its version, the date of update, operation status, and the license status.

- If you click a MEAP application name, detailed information such as the company's name and the memory usage amount for each application is displayed. License management is performed from here. **Managing MEAP Application Licenses(P. 1242)**
- For the operation status, one of the following is displayed.

[Installed]	The MEAP application has been installed, but it is not ready for use. Even if you restart the machine after stopping the use of the MEAP application, [Installed] is displayed.
[Started]	The MEAP application is ready for use.
[Stopped]	The MEAP application is not ready for use.
[Starting]	The MEAP application is starting.

[Stopping]	The MEAP application is stopping.

- If you click the [Start] / [Stop] button located on the right side of the operation status, you can start/stop the use of the MEAP application.
- If you click [Uninstall], the MEAP application is uninstalled.
- For the license status, one of the following is displayed.

Depending on the MEAP application, the license file may have a term of validity. In addition, the maximum number (counter) for printing or scanning is predetermined.

[Installed]	The valid license is installed.
[Not Installed]	Unable to use the MEAP application as the license file is not installed or is disabled.
[Over Limit]	Some counters set for the MEAP application exceed the maximum value.
[Invalid]	The validity for the license file has expired or all counters set for the MEAP application exceed the maximum value.
[Unnecessary]	You can use the MEAP application even if you do not have a license file.

NOTE

If [Over Limit] or [Invalid] appears

- If the validity of the license file expires or a counter exceeds the maximum value, the MEAP application cannot be used. By adding a license, you can extend the validity or increase the counter's maximum value.
Managing MEAP Application Licenses(P. 1242)

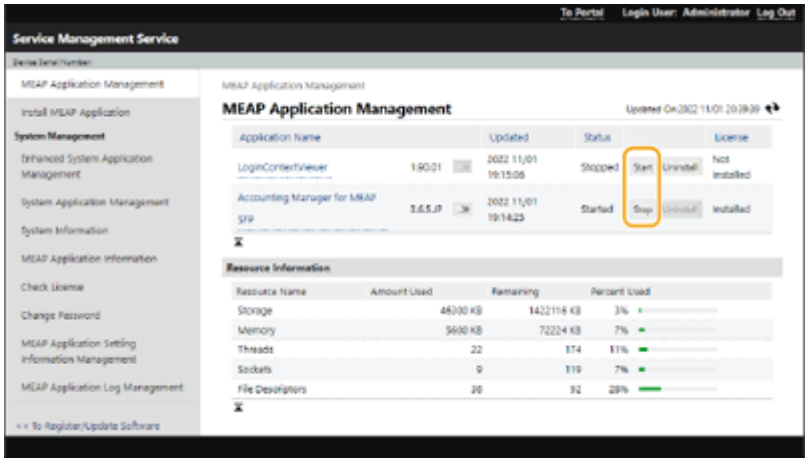
[To Portal]/[Log Out]

Click to display the portal page of the Remote UI or the login screen of the Remote UI.

■Starting or stopping the use of a MEAP application

If you selected [Only Install] in the installation of the MEAP application, you need to start the MEAP application. When you update a MEAP application, stop the MEAP application.

1. Click [MEAP Application Management].
2. Click [Start] / [Stop] for the MEAP application to be used.



NOTE:

- Depending on the MEAP application, you need to restart the machine. Follow the on-screen instructions and restart the machine.

- When the resources required for memory, threads, sockets, or file descriptors has run out, the application will not start, even if you click [Start].

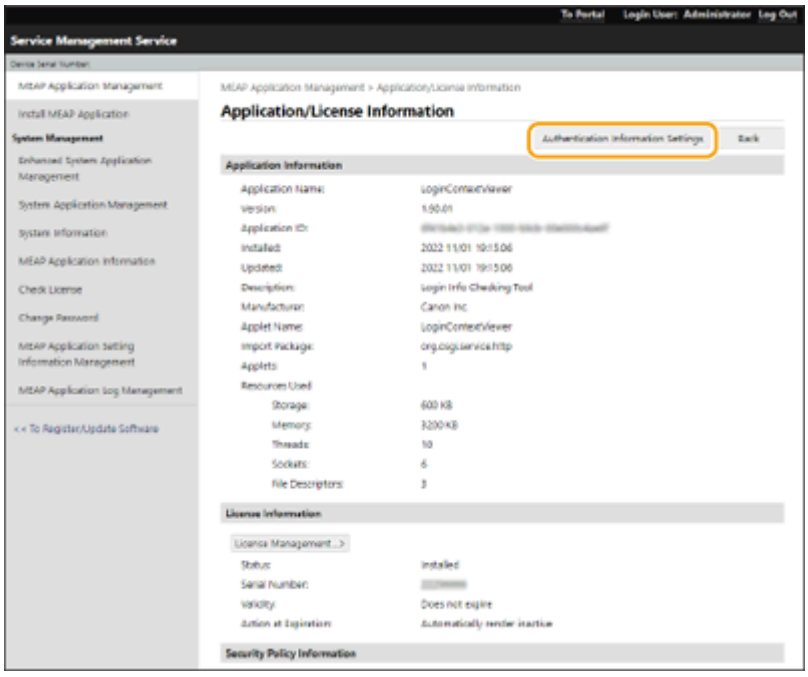
■Configuring the MEAP application's authentication information

Depending on the MEAP application, you may need to configure authentication information.

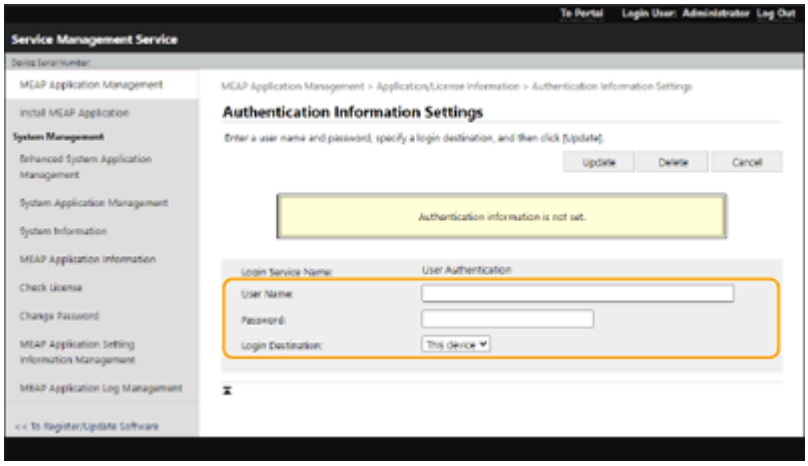
NOTE

- If the login application is changed, reconfirm the authentication information in [Set MEAP Authentication]. It may be necessary to re-enter the authentication information.

1. Click [MEAP Application Management] ▶ click an application to set the authentication information.
2. Click [Authentication Information Settings].



3. Enter the user name and password and select the login destination.



4. Click [Update].

➠ The [Authentication information has been set. Department ID: <ID>] message is displayed.

NOTE:

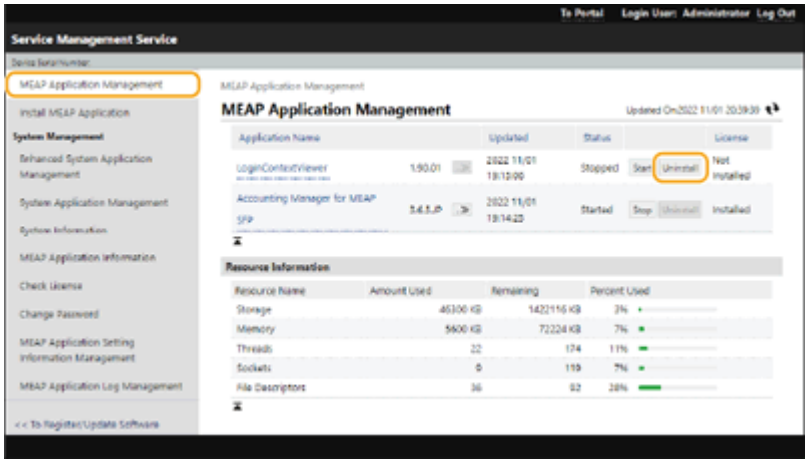
To cancel authentication information

- Click [Delete] ▶ [Yes] on the authentication information page in step 3.

■Uninstalling a MEAP application

When uninstalling a MEAP application, you need to delete the corresponding license files in advance. **Managing MEAP Application Licenses(P. 1242)**

1 Click [MEAP Application Management] ▶ [Uninstall] for the application to be uninstalled.



2 Click [Yes].

- If you uninstall a MEAP application, you may be required to restart the machine. Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the machine.

IMPORTANT:

- If the "Export Package of this application will be unavailable." message is displayed, the MEAP application you are uninstalling is linked with other applications. If this MEAP application is uninstalled, other applications may not be able to be used.

4 When you finish the operation, click [Log Out].

IMPORTANT:

- When you close the SMS, make sure to log out. If you close the Web browser without logging out, you cannot use the SMS for some time.

Managing MEAP Application Licenses

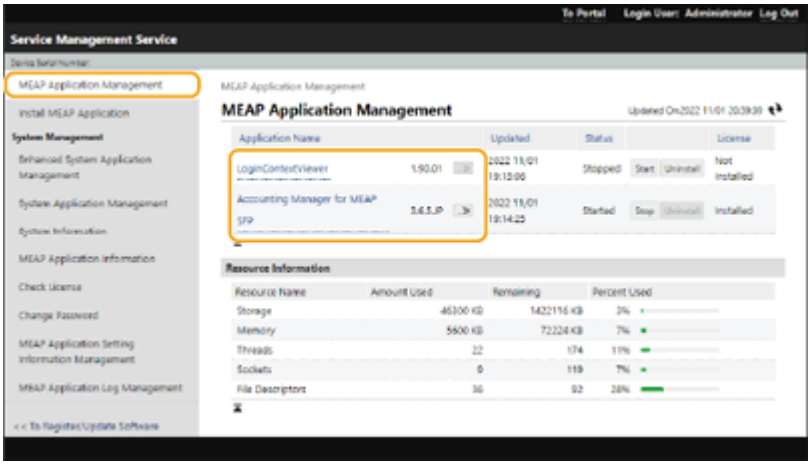
ERJ8-0S2

License file operation may be required at times other than installing a MEAP application. For example, even when the licensed counter value or usage period is exceeded or has expired, you can continue to use the MEAP application by adding a license file. In addition, if you want to delete a MEAP application, you are required to delete the license file in advance.

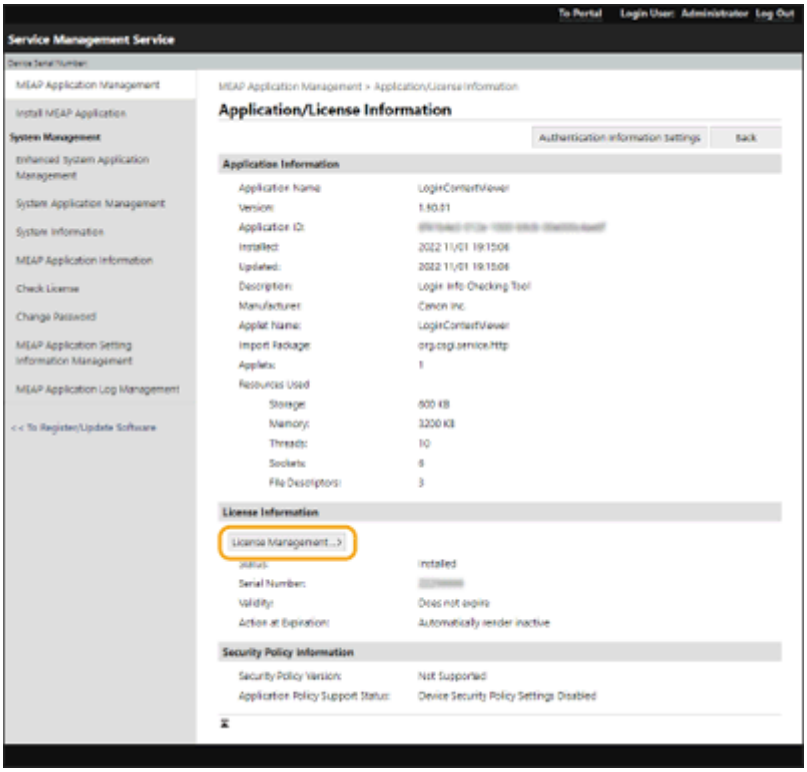
1 Log in to the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Service Management Service] on the portal page.

3 Click [MEAP Application Management], and click the application to manage the license.



4 Click [License Management] and perform the intended operation.



■Adding a license file

1. Click [Choose File], select the license file to install, and click [OK].
2. Click [Install] ▶ [Yes].

   ➠ Installation starts.

NOTE:

- Depending on the MEAP application, you may need to restart (stop and start) the application. **Managing MEAP Applications(P. 1237)**

■Saving the license file on a computer

You can save a backup file on your computer before deleting the license file. If you want to save, you are required to disable the license file in advance.

1. Click [Disable] ▶ [Yes].
2. Click [Download], and specify the location to save the license file.

NOTE:

- The disabled license file and the license file saved on your computer can be installed on the same machine again.

■Deleting the license file

Before deleting the license file, you are required to disable the license file in advance.

1. Click [Disable] ▶ [Yes].
2. Click [Delete] ▶ [Yes].

IMPORTANT:

- Once you have deleted the disabled license file, you cannot download it from the machine.

NOTE

- When there is an application with a license that will expire soon, you can also check the expiration date of the license from <Check License> for MEAP on the Home of the control panel.

Changing Login Services

ERJ8-0S3

The application to implement user authentication is called the "Login Service." The machine is set to use "User Authentication (personal authentication management)" for the login service by default. If you want to use "DepartmentID Authentication," change the login service in the SMS.

Changing the Login Service(P. 1245)
Setting When Using DepartmentID Authentication(P. 1246)

Changing the Login Service

1 Log in to the Remote UI. Starting the Remote UI(P. 687)

2 Click [Service Management Service] on the portal page.

3 Click [System Application Management] ▶ [Start] in [SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication)].

➡ The status becomes [Started].

4 Click [Enhanced System Application Management] ▶ [Switch] in [DepartmentID Authentication].

➡ The status becomes [Start after Restart].

5 Restart the machine. Restarting the Machine(P. 696)

➡ The machine restarts and the changed settings are reflected.

IMPORTANT

When DepartmentID Authentication is started

- If you click [Service Management Service] on the portal page of the Remote UI, the login screen to the SMS is displayed. For security purposes, the machine is configured not to permit login with the default password dedicated for the SMS. Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <Security Settings> ▶ <Authentication/Password Settings> ▶ <Password Settings> ▶ temporally set <Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access> to <On>.
- After logging in to the SMS with the default password, restore the original security level by changing the default password and then resetting <Allow Use of Default Password for Remote Access> to <Off>.
- "MeapSmsLogin" is set as the login password dedicated for the SMS. If you log in with "MeapSmsLogin," the screen for changing the password is displayed. For security purposes, follow the on-screen instructions to change the password.
- The password for the SMS can be changed with [Change Password] in [System Management].

- Make sure that you do not forget your password. Otherwise, you will not be able to access SMS. In this case, contact your dealer or service representative.

Return to User Authentication

- Select [Enhanced System Application Management] ▶ [User Authentication], click [Switch], and restart the machine. If you will not use SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication), after restart of the machine select [System Application Management] ▶ [SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication)], and click [Stop].

Setting When Using DepartmentID Authentication

When implementing Department ID Management with the DepartmentID Authentication, make sure that the administrator (system administrator) manages the Department IDs and PINs. To enhance security, log in with the system administrator's ID (System Manager ID) and make sure to change the system administrator's ID and PIN. Which users become administrator or general users depends on whether Department ID Management and System Manager Settings are set, as indicated in the table below.

Department ID Management	System Manager Settings	Administrator	General Users
On	Set	System Manager	Users authenticated with a Department ID and PIN not for the System Manager
	Not Set	Users authenticated with a Department ID and PIN	None
Off	Set	System Manager	Users other than the System Manager
	Not Set	All users	None

■ Changing the System Manager ID and PIN

1. Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Log In>.
2. Enter <System Manager ID> and <System Manager PIN> and press <Log In>.
   - Immediately after the DepartmentID Authentication has started, both the System Manager ID and PIN are set as "7654321."
   - You cannot register a Department ID or PIN consisting only of 0s, such as "00" or "0000000".
   - Even if you enter fewer than seven digits, zeros are added to the start of the number, and a seven digit number is set. However, the zeros at the start of the number can be omitted when logging in. For example, even if you enter <2>, <02>, or <002>, the PIN is set as <0000002>. However, you can log in by entering <2>, <02>, or <002>.
3. Press <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <System Manager Information Settings>.
4. Enter the necessary information and press<OK>.
   - Enter the same PIN again for confirmation, and press <OK>.

■ Enabling Department ID Management

To enable Department ID Management with the DepartmentID Authentication, you need to register the Department ID and PIN.

1. Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management>.
2. Press <On>.
   - If you want to manage only with the System Manager ID and PIN without implementing Department ID Management, press <Off>.

   IMPORTANT:

   - If you want to return the login service to the User Authentication and use the Department IDs, set Department ID Management of the DepartmentID Authentication to <Off> and start the User Authentication. Then assign Department IDs to users and set Department ID Management of the User Authentication to <On>.
3. Press <Register PIN> ▶ <Register>.
4. Enter <Department ID> and <PIN> ▶ press <OK>.
   - Enter the same PIN again for confirmation, and press <OK>.
   - You cannot register a Department ID or PIN consisting only of 0s, such as "00" or "0000000".
   - Even if you enter fewer than seven digits, zeros are added to the start of the number, and a seven digit number is set. However, the zeros at the start of the number can be omitted when logging in. For example, even if you enter <2>, <02>, or <002>, the PIN is set as <0000002>. However, you can log in by entering <2>, <02>, or <002>.
   - If you do not set a PIN, you can use the machine by entering only the Department ID.
5. Press <OK> ▶ <OK>.

■Login Operation When Department ID Management Using the DepartmentID Authentication is Enabled

When Department ID Management is enabled, you need to log in to use the machine.

Logging in from the control panel

Enter <Department ID> and <PIN> ▶ press <Log In>.



NOTE

When Department ID Management is not implemented

- When only the System Manager ID and PIN are set without Department ID Management, you need to log in to the machine only when you want to configure the settings that require the administrator's authority. Press (Settings/Register) ▶ <Log In>, enter <System Manager ID> and <System Manager PIN>, and press <Log In>.

Logging in from the Remote UI

Enter the Department ID in [Department ID] and PIN in [PIN], and click [Log In].



NOTE

When Department ID Management is not implemented

- When only the System Manager ID and PIN are set without Department ID Management, the login methods differ between the system administrator and general users. For the system administrator, enter [System Manager ID]/[System Manager PIN], and then click [Log In (Administrator)]. General users do not need to enter the Department ID and PIN. Click [Log In (General User)].

■Implementing Function Restrictions and User Management

Configure the settings as necessary.

Checking page totals

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ <Page Totals> ▶ Check the page total

Setting the maximum number of pages for copy/print/scan

(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ <Register PIN> ▶ Select Department ID ▶ <Edit> ▶ <Turn Limit On/Off and Set Page Limit> ▶ Press <On> for functions to restrict ▶ Enter the number of pages ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK>

Setting Department ID Management on functions other than copy/print



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ <Register PIN> ▶ <Limit Functions> ▶ Press <On> for functions to set Department ID Management on ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK>

Deleting Department IDs



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management>▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ <Register PIN> ▶ Select the Department ID ▶ <Delete> ▶ <Yes> ▶ <OK> ▶ <OK>

Blocking Printer Jobs and Remote Scan Jobs When Department ID is Unknown



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ Set <Allow Printer Jobs with Unknown IDs> or <Allow Remote Scan Jobs with Unknown IDs> to <Off> ▶ <OK>

Not authenticate black and white copy/print jobs when using Department ID Management



(Settings/Register) ▶ <Management Settings> ▶ <User Management> ▶ <Department ID Management> ▶ Set <Allow Black & White Copy/Print Jobs> or <Allow Black & White Printer Jobs> to <Off> ▶ <OK>

LINKS

Configuring the Personal Authentication Management Settings(P. 594)

Basic Windows Operations

ERJ8-0S4

Displaying Shared Printers in the Print Server(P. 1250)
Checking the LPR/RAW Printer Port(P. 1250)
Registering Application on Microsoft Entra ID(P. 1251)

NOTE

- Depending on the computer that you use, the operation may differ.

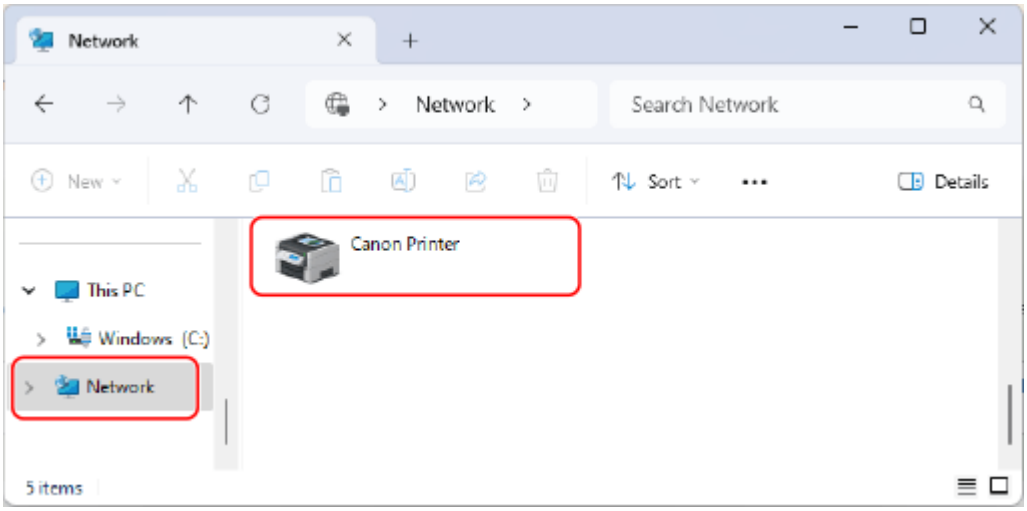
■Displaying Shared Printers in the Print Server

1 Right-click [⊞] ▶ select [File Explorer].

2 Select the print server from [Network].

- To view computers on the network, you may need to turn on network discovery or search the network for computers.

  ➠ The shared printer is displayed.



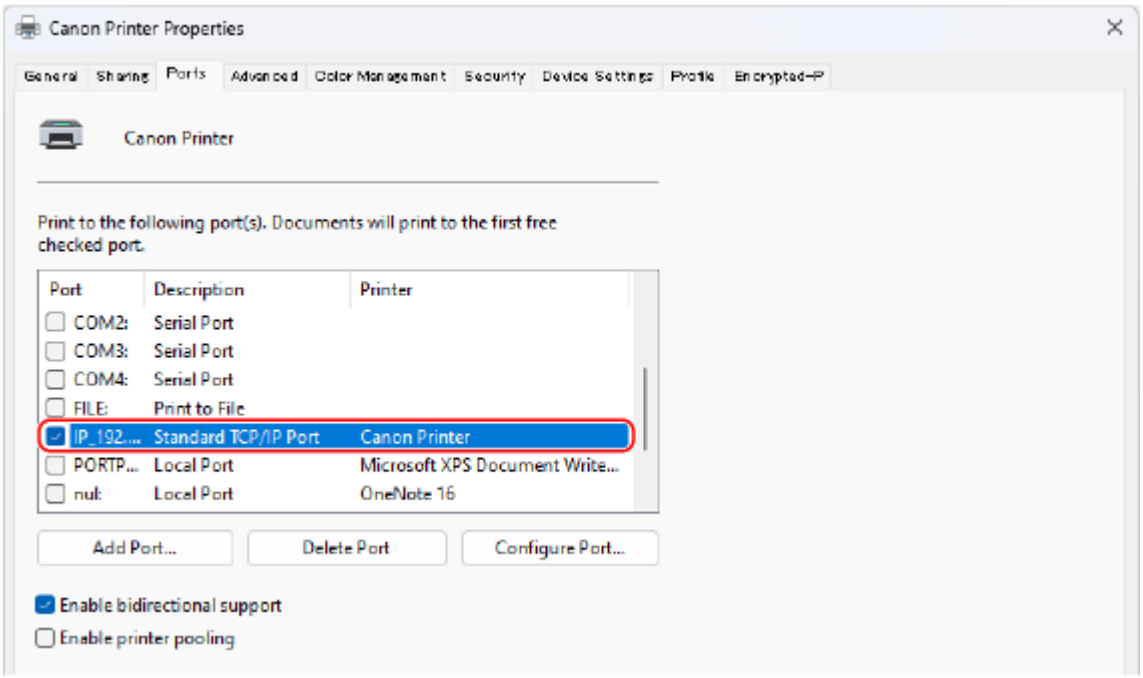
■Checking the LPR/RAW Printer Port

1 Click [⊞] (Start) ▶ [⚙] (Settings) ▶ [Bluetooth & devices] ▶ [Printers & Scanners].

➠ The [Printers & Scanners] screen is displayed.

2 Click the printer driver of the machine ▶ [Printer properties].

3 **On the [Ports] tab, view the port being used.**



■Registering Application on Microsoft Entra ID

1 **Login to Microsoft Entra admin center.**

2 **Click applications on the navigation menu.**

3 **Click where you can register an application on the navigation menu.**

4 **Click where you can start registering a new application.**

5 **Enter the name of the application.**

You can enter any name you want. (Example: Canon "Printer name" Login)

6 **Select the type of the account.**

7 **Click where you can finish your registration.**

➠ A client ID for the application is issued.

Copy the client ID on a text editor to store it.

8 **Issue a secret or register a certificate.**

■Issuing a Secret

1 Click where you can manage a certificate and a secret on the navigation menu.

2 Click where you can manage a new client secret.

3 In the dialog for adding a client secret, enter the description and the valid period of the new client secret and click where you can complete adding the new client secret.

➡ A secret ID and a secret value are issued.

Copy the secret value on a text editor to store it. The secret ID is not used.

IMPORTANT:

- The client secret value will not be displayed again. If you have not stored the client secret value, issue a new client secret.

■Registering a Certificate

If you want to register a certificate, it is necessary to export the certificate of the machine beforehand. **Specifying the domain of Microsoft Entra ID(P. 617)**

1 Click where you can manage a certificate and a secret on the navigation menu.

2 Click where you can upload a certificate.

3 Select a certificate file and click where you can start adding the certificate.

➡ After uploading is complete, copy the thumbprint value to a text editor to store it.

9 On the navigation menu, click where you can add permissions for a registered application to access API.

10 Click where you can add access permissions.

11 Select Microsoft Graph from listed API names from which you can request access permissions.

12 Select Delegated permissions among the access permission types and assign the following access permissions.

- User.Read.All
- Group.Read.All
- GroupMember.Read.All

13 Select Application permissions among the access permission types and assign the following access permissions.

- User.Read.All
- Group.Read.All
- GroupMember.Read.All

NOTE

- Access permissions are used when you cannot login to the machine due to an error of multi-factor authentication. Access permissions are not needed depending on used functions or environments.

14 Click where you can grant admin consent and select Yes.

➠ Admin consent is assigned to access permissions that are selected under Delegated permission or Application permissions.

System Specifications

ERJ8-0S5

This section presents the system specifications for this product. Specifications are subject to change without notice for product improvement or future release.

NOTE

- To check the specifications of the main unit and optional equipment for this product, see **Hardware Specifications(P. 112)** .

■ Functional Specifications

Fax Function(P. 1255)
Send Functions(P. 1256)
Printer Functions(P. 1258)
Management Functions(P. 1261)

■ Environment To Use the Machine

System Environment(P. 1267)
Network Environment(P. 1269)
System Options(P. 1271)

Fax Function

ERJ8-0S6

Telephone Line Used *1	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
Scan Line Density	**Normal** **G3**: 8 pels*2/mm x 3.85 line/mm **Fine** **G3**: 8 pels*2/mm x 7.7 line/mm **Super-Fine** **G3**: 8 pels*2/mm x 15.4 line/mm **Ultra-Fine** **G3**: 16 pels*2/mm x 15.4 line/mm
Transmission Speed	**Super G3**: 33.6 kbps **G3**: 14.4 kbps
Compression Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Type	Super G3, G3
Sending Original Sizes	A4, B5*3, A5*3, A6*3, LGL, LTR, and STMT
Receiving Paper Sizes	A4, B5, A5, A5R, LGL, LTR, STMT, and 16K
No. of Memory RX Jobs	Up to 320 jobs
Transmission Times	**JBIG**: Approximately 2.6 seconds (When sending A4 Canon original paper, Normal 8 pels x 3.85 line/mm ECM (JBIG))

*1 When using an IP telephone service, facsimile communication may not be performed normally via an IP telephone line. It is recommended to use facsimile communication via a general telephone (Public Switched Telephone Network) line.

*2 Pels stands for picture elements (pixels).

*3 Sent as A4.

■ Max. Destinations for Sequential Broadcast Transmission

- You can specify and send to up to 256 destinations at the one time. (If you specify a group, which is made up of several destinations, each destination is counted as a separate destination.)

Send Functions

ERJ8-0S7

■ Push Scan

Type	Color Scanner
Max. Original Scanning Size	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Resolution for Scan	100x100 dpi, 150x150 dpi, 200x100 dpi (Normal), 200x200 dpi (Fine), 200x400 dpi (Superfine)*1, 300x300 dpi, 400x400 dpi (Ultrafine)*1, 600x600 dpi*1
Scanning Speed	See the feeder specifications.
Interface	1000 Base-T/100 Base-TX/10 Base-T (IEEE 802.3 compliant), Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n)
Protocol Supported	File: FTP (TCP/IP), SFTP (TCP/IP), FTPS (TCP/IP), SMB (TCP/IP), WebDAV E-mail/I-Fax: SMTP (send), POP3 (receive)
Output Format *2	TIFF(MMR), JPEG*3, PDF(Compact, OCR (Text Searchable), PDF/A-1b, PDF/A-1a, PDF/A-2a, PDF/A-2b, PDF/A-2u, PDF/A-3a, PDF/A-3b, PDF/A-3u, Encrypted), XPS(Compact, OCR (Text Searchable)), PDF/XPS(User Signature), Office Open XML (PowerPoint, Word)

*1 <Black & White> only.

*2 Some output formats are not available, depending on the combination of settings.

*3 Single-Page only.

■ Pull Scan

Max. Original Scanning Size	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Color mode	Color/Black-and-White Auto Switch, Color, Black-and-White, Grayscale
Resolution for Scan	50 dpi x 50 dpi, 75 dpi x 75 dpi, 150 dpi x 150 dpi, 200 dpi x 200 dpi, 300 dpi x 300 dpi, 400 dpi x 400 dpi*1, 600 dpi x 600 dpi*1 (Users can set resolution by 1dpi between 25 to 9600dpi)
Compatible OS	Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025
Interface	USB2.0High-Speed, 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T (IEEE 802.3 compliant), Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n)
Protocol Supported	TCP/IP
Driver	TWAIN compliant, WIA Compliant

*1 <Black & White> only.

■ Internet/Intranet FAX

Communication Protocol	**Internet FAX** SMTP (send*1)/POP3 (receive*2) **Intranet FAX** SMTP (send/receive*1)
I-Fax Communication Mode	Simple mode, Full mode (ITU-T T.37 and W-NET FAX compliant)
Max. Original Size	A4
Resolution	200 dpi x 100 dpi, 200 dpi x 200 dpi, 200 dpi x 400 dpi*3, 300 dpi x 300 dpi*3, 400 dpi x 400 dpi*3, 600 dpi x 600 dpi*3

*1 Supports SMTP Certification and encrypted (SSL) communication during SMTP Send/Receive.

*2 Supports APOP/POP before SMTP and encrypted (SSL) communication when receiving POP.

*3 Available depending on settings of the other party (capability setting of the receiving machine).

■ Max. Destinations for Sequential Broadcast Transmission

- You can specify and send to up to 256 destinations at the one time. (If you specify a group, which is made up of several destinations, each destination is counted as a separate destination.)

■ Max. Number of Pages That Can Be Sent with One Job

- The maximum number of pages that can be sent with one job is 999.

NOTE

- The maximum number of send jobs that the machine can handle is 64. However, the actual number of send jobs that the machine can handle may be less than 64, depending on the following conditions:
  - When multiple documents are being sent at the same time
  - When large documents are being sent
  - When a large amount of memory is being used for the Mail Box and Fax/I-Fax Inbox

Printer Functions

ERJ8-0S8

■ UFR II Printer Function

Type	Internal
Print Size	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Print Speed	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Data Processing Resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Page Description Language (PDL)	UFR II
Protocol Supported	TCP/IP (LPD/Port9100/IPP/IPPS/FTP/WSD)
Compatible OS	• Windows 10/Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025 • macOS (11.7 or later)
Resident Fonts	None
Interface	USB2.0High-Speed, 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T (IEEE 802.3 compliant), Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n)

■ PCL Printer Function

Type	Internal
Print Size	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Print Speed	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Data Processing Resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Page Description Language (PDL)	PCL5, PCL6
Protocol Supported	TCP/IP (LPD/Port9100/IPP/IPPS/FTP/WSD)
Compatible OS	Windows 10/Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025

Resident Fonts	93 Roman, 10 Bitmap fonts, 2 OCR fonts, Andalé Mono WT J/K/S/T*1 (Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese) , Barcode fonts*2
Interface	USB2.0High-Speed, 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T (IEEE 802.3 compliant), Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n)

*1 Requires optional PCL International Font Set

*2 Require optional Barcode Printing Kit

■ PS Printer Function

Type	Internal
Print Size	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Print Speed	Equivalent to Main Unit specification
Data Processing Resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi, 1200 dpi x 1200 dpi
Page Description Language (PDL)	Adobe PostScript 3
Protocol Supported	TCP/IP (LPD/Port9100/IPP/IPPS/FTP/WSD)
Compatible OS	**Driver** • Windows 10/Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025 • macOS (11.7 or later) **PPD** • Windows 10/Windows 11 • macOS (11.7 or later)
Resident Fonts	136 Roman
Interface	USB2.0High-Speed, 1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T (IEEE 802.3 compliant), Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n)

■ Forced Hold Print Function*1

Maximum Number of Users	200 users*2
Maximum Number of Saved Jobs	2,000 jobs
Maximum Size of Saved Documents	2 GB
Size of Storage Space *3	4 GB

*1 Secure print jobs are included with the forced hold print function.

*2 When a shared document is held, the shared document is counted as having one user.

*3 Indicates the size of storage space reserved for the forced hold print function in the machine.

Management Functions

ERJ8-0S9

■Information Registered in User Authentication

Up to 5,001 users can be registered.

■Registering Department IDs

Up to 1,000 Department IDs can be registered.

■Authentication Functions

- When an Active Directory server is specified as an authentication server, the following system environment is required.

Software (operating system):	Windows Server 2016*1/Windows Server 2019*1/Windows Server 2022*1/Windows Server 2025*2

*1 Users cannot log in with Active Directory authentication if Kerberos Armoring is enabled for KDCrelated policies (group policies). Make sure to disable Kerberos Armoring.

*2 In Windows Server 2025 or later OS, LDAP/LDAPS communication is not possible with the default setting of Windows Server. Install a server certificate on Windows Server and communicate with LDAPS (TLS).

- Kerberos encryption methods for the Active Directory authentication supported by the current version of User Authentication are as follows.

Encryption method	• 128-bit AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) • 256-bit AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) • DES (Data Encryption Standard) • RC4

NOTE

- The available encryption methods may vary, depending on the Active Directory settings.
- Of the available encryption methods, the one with the highest cipher strength is automatically selected.

- When specifying an Active Directory server as an authentication server, use the following ports*1 on the server.

To communicate with a DNS server:	port number 53
To communicate with a KDC (Key Distribution Center):	port number 88
To communicate with a server for LDAP directory service (can be changed to an arbitrary port number for the LDAP service):	port number 389

*1 The above port numbers are default values. These numbers may vary depending on the selected settings.

- When specifying an LDAP server as an authentication server, the following system environment is required.

Software:	OpenLDAP
Operating system:	Requirements are pursuant to the product specifications of the LDAP server.

- When specifying an LDAP server as an authentication server, use the following ports[*1] on the server.

To communicate with the LDAP server using LDAP (when TLS is enabled):	port number 636
To communicate with the LDAP server using LDAP (when TLS is disabled):	port number 389

*1 The port numbers can be changed according to the LDAP server settings.

■ Firewall Settings

- When specifying IP addresses in firewall settings, up to 16 IP addresses (or ranges of IP addresses) can be specified for both IPv4 and IPv6.
- When specifying MAC addresses in firewall settings, up to 100 MAC addresses can be specified.
- The exception addresses and exception port numbers that can be used for communication using the sub line and are registered by default are indicated below.

Exception addresses:	0.0.0.1 to 255.255.255.255
Exception port numbers:	53, 67, 68, 80, 161, 443, 515*, 631*, 3702, 5353, 5357, 5358, 8000*, 8080, 8443*, 9013, 9100*, 10443*, 20010*, 47545

* Inbound filter only

■ Registration of Certificates (Certificates, CA Certificates, S/MIME Certificates)

- The algorithms and formats of keys and certificates that can be registered are as follows.

RSA signature algorithm:	SHA-1/SHA-256/SHA-384[*1]/SHA-512[*1]/MD2[*2]/MD5[*2]
RSA public-key algorithm (key length):	RSA (512 bits/1024 bits/2048 bits/4096 bits[*3])
DSA signature algorithm:	SHA-1[*2]
DSA public-key algorithm (key length):	DSA (1024 bits/2048 bits/3072 bits)[*2]
ECDSA signature algorithm:	SHA-1[*2]/SHA-256/SHA-384/SHA-512
ECDSA public-key algorithm (key length):	ECDSA (P256/P384/P521)
Certificate format:	**Keys, Certificates**: PKCS#12[*2][*3] **CA Certificates, S/MIME Certificates**: X.509 DER/PEM

File extension:	**Keys, Certificates:** pfx/p12*3 **CA Certificates, S/MIME Certificates:** cer/pem
Maximum number of registerable certificates:	**Keys, Certificates**: 6*3 **CA Certificates**: 150 **S/MIME Certificates**: 2,000

*1 Available only when the key algorithm is 1024 bits or more.

*2 Available only when installed by using the Remote UI.

*3 Used for TLS, IEEE802.1x, IPSec, and device signatures.

■ Registration of Certificate Revocation Lists (CRL)

Up to 50 certificate revocation lists (CRL) can be registered. Note, however, that CRL cannot be registered in the following cases.

- The data size of the CRL exceeds 1 MB.
- An unsupported signature algorithm is being used.
- The number of revoked certificates registered in one CRL file exceeds 10,000.

■ Definition of "Weak Encryption"

When <Prohibit Use of Weak Encryption> is set to <On>, the use of the following algorithms are prohibited.

Hash:	MD4, MD5, SHA-1
HMAC:	HMAC-MD5
Common key cryptosystem:	RC2, RC4, DES
Public key cryptosystem:	RSA encryption (512 bits/1024 bits), RSA signature (512 bits/1024 bits), DSA (512 bits/1024 bits), DH (512 bits/1024 bits)

NOTE

- Even when <Prohibit Use of Key/Certificate with Weak Encryption> is set to <On>, the hash algorithm SHA-1, which is used for signing a root certificate, can be used.

■ FIPS 140 Standard Algorithm

When <Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140> is set to <On>, the following algorithms are prohibited from use.

Hash:	MD2, MD4, MD5, SHA-1 (for a purpose other than TLS)
Common key cryptosystem:	RC2, RC4, RC5, DES, ChaCha20-Poly1305, 3DES
Public key cryptosystem:	RSA encryption (512 bits/1024 bits), RSA signature (512 bits/1024 bits), DSA signature (512 bits/1024 bits), DH (512 bits/1024 bits), X25519

■Log Management

- The following types of logs can be managed on the machine. Collected logs can be exported in the CSV file format.

Log Type	Number Indicated as "Log Type" in the CSV File	Description
User Authentication Log	4098	This log contains information related to the authentication status of user authentication (login/logout and user authentication success/failure), the registering/changing/deleting of user information managed with User Authentication, and the management (adding/editing/deleting) of roles with the ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.
Job Log	1001	This log contains information related to the completion of copy/fax/scan/send/print jobs.
Transmission Log	8193	The log contains information related to transmissions.
Advanced Space Save Log	8196	This log contains information related to the saving of files to the Network (Advanced Space of other machines) and Memory Media.
Mail Box Operation Log	8197	This log contains information related to the operations performed on data in the Memory RX Inbox and the Confidential Fax Inbox.
Mail Box Authentication Log	8199	This log contains information related to the authentication status of the Memory RX Inbox and the Confidential Fax Inbox.
Machine Management Log	8198	This log contains information related to the starting/shutting down of the machine, changes made to the settings by using the  (Settings/Register). The Machine Management Log also records changes in user information or security-related settings when the machine is inspected or repaired by your dealer or service representative.
Network Authentication Log	8200	This log is recorded when IPSec communication fails.
Export/Import All Log	8202	This log contains information related to the importing/exporting of the settings by using the Export All/Import All function.
Mail Box Backup Log	8203	This log contains information related to the Memory RX Inbox and the Confidential Fax Inbox.
Application/Software Management Screen Operation Log	3101	This is an operation log for SMS (Service Management Service), software registration/updates, and MEAP application installers, etc.
Security Policy Log	8204	This log contains information related to the setting status of the security policy settings.
Group Management Log	8205	This log contains information related to the setting status (registering/editing/deleting) of the user groups.

System Maintenance Log	8206	This log contains information related to firmware updates and backup/restoration of the MEAP application, etc.
Authentication Print Log	8207	This log contains information and the operation history related to the forced hold print jobs.
Setting Synchronization Log	8208	This log contains information related to the synchronization of machine settings. **Synchronizing Settings for Multiple Canon Multifunction Printers(P. 767)**
Log for Audit Log Management	3001	This log contains information related to the starting and ending of this function (the Audit Log Management function), as well as the exporting of logs, etc.

NOTE

- Logs can contain up to 40,000 records. When the number of records exceeds 40,000, they are deleted, with the oldest records first.

■Import/Export of the Setting Data

See **Settings/Registration(P. 801)** .

■Max. Buttons Registered on the <Home> Screen

- Max. number of Personal buttons: 60 per user (total of 12,000 for all users)
- Max. number of Shared buttons: 60

■Max. Destinations Registered to Address Book

- Address Lists 1 to 10/ Address List for Administrator: 1,600
- One-Touch Address List: 200
- Personal Address List: 25
- Group Address List: 4,000*1 (10 groups*2 x 400 destinations*3)

*1 Total 20,000 for all groups

*2 Max. number of groups per user (a total of 50 groups can be registered in a device)

*3 Max. number of destinations per group

■Images That Can Be Imported for Login Screen Background

- File Size: 1,024 KB
- File Extension: jpg, jpeg, or png
- Image Size: 640 pixels x 442 pixels or smaller

■Visual Message Specifications

File Format	JPEG, PNG, BMP, GIF, Animated GIF, and HTML (on the intranet/internet)

Communication Protocol	SMB, WebDAV, HTTP
Maximum size of the contents	Max. 10 MB
Image Size	Other than HTML: 639 pixels x 400 pixels* * If the image is larger than the above size, it is displayed in a reduced size without changing its aspect ratio. If the image is smaller than the above size, it is displayed without changing the size. HTML: over 639 pixels x 400 pixels can be used (by scrolling through them)

■SCEP Server Support

Only the Network Device Enrollment Service (NDES) of Windows Server 2008 R2/2012 R2/2016 is supported.

System Environment

ERJ8-0SA

WSD Scan	• Windows 10 • Windows 11 • Windows Server 2016 • Windows Server 2019 • Windows Server 2022 • Windows Server 2025
System requirements for the Remote UI *1	**Windows** • Microsoft Edge • Google Chrome **Mac OS** • Safari 11 or later • Google Chrome
Compatible mail forwarding server software	• Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 • Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 • Microsoft Exchange Online • Google Workspace
Compatible mail receiving server software	• Microsoft Exchange Server 2016 • Microsoft Exchange Server 2019 • Microsoft Exchange Online • Google Workspace
File servers available as destinations for file transmission	**FTP** • **Windows 10/Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025**: Internet Information Services 10 **Windows (SMB)** • Windows 10 • Windows 11 • Windows Server 2016 • Windows Server 2019 • Windows Server 2022 • Windows Server 2025 • macOS Ventura • macOS Sonoma • macOS Sequoia **WebDAV** • **Windows 10/Windows 11/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2025**: Internet Information Services 10 • macOS Ventura • macOS Sonoma • macOS Sequoia

Types of LDAP servers	• Windows Server 2016 with Active Directory • Windows Server 2019 with Active Directory • Windows Server 2022 with Active Directory • Windows Server 2025 with Active Directory

*1 Before changing the settings of the machine, set your Web browser to enable all cookies and use JavaScript.

Network Environment

ERJ8-0SC

■Wired LAN Specifications

Interface (Primary line/Secondary line)	10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T (RJ-45)
Protocol Supported	**TCP/IP** • **Frame type**: Ethernet II • **Print applications**: LPD/Raw/IPP/IPPS/FTP/WSD/Mopria/AirPrint/Windows 10 Mobile Print/Universal Print/IPP Everywhere

NOTE

- For precautions related to the sub line, see **Cautions When Using the Sub Line(P. 1206)** .

■Wireless LAN Specifications

Standard	IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g, IEEE 802.11n, IEEE 802.11a
Transmission Scheme	• IEEE 802.11b (Modulation system: DS-SS) • IEEE 802.11g (Modulation system: OFDM method) • IEEE 802.11n (Modulation system: OFDM method) • IEEE 802.11a (Modulation system: OFDM method)
Security (encryption method)	**Infrastructure Mode** • WPA-PSK (AES-CCMP) • WPA2-PSK (AES-CCMP) • WPA3-SAE (AES-CCMP) • WPA-EAP (AES-CCMP) • WPA2-EAP (AES-CCMP) • WPA3-EAP (AES-CCMP) **Access Point Mode** WPA2-PSK (AES-CCMP)
Connection Method	WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup), Manual setup

Port Numbers Available for Direct Connection

Type	Port Number	Protocol
TCP	515	LPD
	9100	RAW

	80, 8000, 8080	HTTP
	80, 631	IPP
	443, 10443	IPPS
	443, 8443	HTTPS
	9013	CPCA (unique Canon protocol)
	5357, 5358	WSD
UDP	161	SNMP
	5353	mDNS
	67, 68	DHCPv4
	3702	WSD
	47545	CPCA (unique Canon protocol)

System Options

ERJ8-0SE

By installing system-related options, you can further enhance the performance of the machine.

File Formats and the Need for Optional Products(P. 1271)

■ Barcode Printing Kit

This option enables you to print barcodes. For more details, see Bar Code Printing via the online manual site.

■ PCL International Font Set

This option enables you to add the following fonts for a PCL printer. As a result, you can output using multiple languages in a SAP Unicode environment.

- Andale® and WorldType® Collection J (Japanese Version)
- Andale® and WorldType® Collection K (Korean Version)
- Andale® and WorldType® Collection S (Simplified Chinese Version)
- Andale® and WorldType® Collection T (Traditional Chinese Version)

In order to support differences in character design depending on the region, four font versions are enabled.

■ Remote Fax Kit

This option is required to use the Remote Fax function. Even if the machine does not have a fax board installed, you can send faxes from a separate machine that has a fax board installed and is on the same network. **Sending and Receiving Faxes via the Machine (Remote Fax)(P. 412)**

■ Wireless LAN 5GHz License

This option enables you to use the 5 GHz band on the wireless LAN.

■ TPM Board

This option enables you to use TPM. **Using TPM(P. 777)**

File Formats and the Need for Optional Products

Optional products may be required, depending on the file format and function you want to use. See the following table.

-: Standard function

✓: Optional products required

File Format (Detailed Setting)	Scan and Send / Scan and Store
JPEG	-
TIFF	-

File Format (Detailed Setting)	Scan and Send / Scan and Store
PDF; Compact	-
PDF (OCR (Text Searchable))	-
PDF (Encrypt)	-
PDF (Device Signature)	-
PDF (Format to PDF/A)	-
XPS (Compact)	-
XPS (OCR (Text Searchable))	-
XPS (Device Signature)	-
OOXML (Word)	-
OOXML (PowerPoint)	-

NOTE

- The following file formats can be used with the Access Stored Files function: JPEG, TIFF, PDF, XPS. To print files in other formats, move the files to your computer and print via the printer driver, etc.

This Font Software is licensed under the SIL Open Font License, Version 1.1.
This license is copied below, and is also available with a FAQ at:
https://openfontlicense.org

SIL OPEN FONT LICENSE Version 1.1 - 26 February 2007

PREAMBLE
The goals of the Open Font License (OFL) are to stimulate worldwide development of collaborative font projects, to support the font creation efforts of academic and linguistic communities, and to provide a free and open framework in which fonts may be shared and improved in partnership with others.

The OFL allows the licensed fonts to be used, studied, modified and redistributed freely as long as they are not sold by themselves. The fonts, including any derivative works, can be bundled, embedded, redistributed and/or sold with any software provided that any reserved names are not used by derivative works. The fonts and derivatives, however, cannot be released under any other type of license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the fonts or their derivatives.

DEFINITIONS
"Font Software" refers to the set of files released by the Copyright Holder(s) under this license and clearly marked as such. This may include source files, build scripts and documentation.

"Reserved Font Name" refers to any names specified as such after the copyright statement(s).

"Original Version" refers to the collection of Font Software components as distributed by the Copyright Holder(s).

"Modified Version" refers to any derivative made by adding to, deleting, or substituting -- in part or in whole -- any of the components of the Original Version, by changing formats or by porting the Font Software to a new environment.

"Author" refers to any designer, engineer, programmer, technical writer or other person who contributed to the Font Software.

PERMISSION & CONDITIONS
Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Font Software, to use, study, copy, merge, embed, modify, redistribute, and sell modified and unmodified copies of the Font Software, subject to the following conditions:

1) Neither the Font Software nor any of its individual components,

in Original or Modified Versions, may be sold by itself.

2) Original or Modified Versions of the Font Software may be bundled, redistributed and/or sold with any software, provided that each copy contains the above copyright notice and this license. These can be included either as stand-alone text files, human-readable headers or in the appropriate machine-readable metadata fields within text or binary files as long as those fields can be easily viewed by the user.

3) No Modified Version of the Font Software may use the Reserved Font Name(s) unless explicit written permission is granted by the corresponding Copyright Holder. This restriction only applies to the primary font name as presented to the users.

4) The name(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) or the Author(s) of the Font Software shall not be used to promote, endorse or advertise any Modified Version, except to acknowledge the contribution(s) of the Copyright Holder(s) and the Author(s) or with their explicit written permission.

5) The Font Software, modified or unmodified, in part or in whole, must be distributed entirely under this license, and must not be distributed under any other license. The requirement for fonts to remain under this license does not apply to any document created using the Font Software.

TERMINATION
This license becomes null and void if any of the above conditions are not met.

DISCLAIMER
THE FONT SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHT, PATENT, TRADEMARK, OR OTHER RIGHT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE FONT SOFTWARE OR FROM OTHER DEALINGS IN THE FONT SOFTWARE.